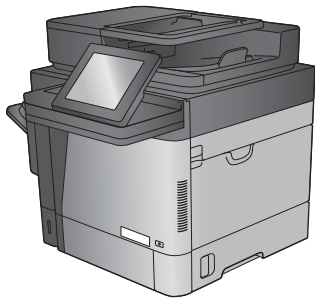


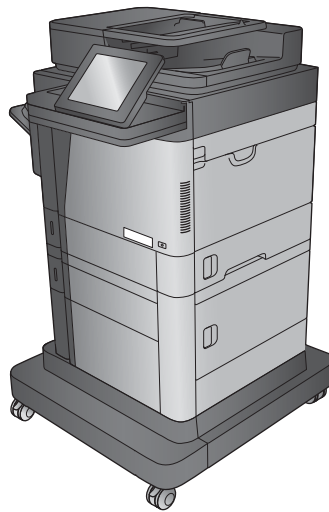


LaserJet Enterprise MFP M630

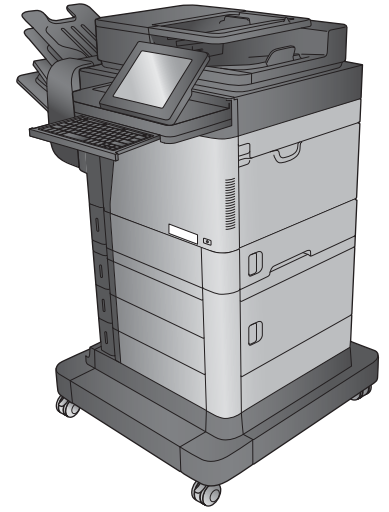
Repair Manual



M630dn
M630h



M630f



M630z



www.hp.com/support/ljMFPM630
For product theory and troubleshooting information, see the Troubleshooting Manual.



HP LaserJet Enterprise MFP M630

Repair Manual

Copyright and License

© 2014 Copyright Hewlett-Packard Development Company, L.P.

Reproduction, adaptation, or translation without prior written permission is prohibited, except as allowed under the copyright laws.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice.


The only warranties for HP products and services are set forth in the express warranty statements accompanying such products and services. Nothing herein should be construed as constituting an additional warranty. HP shall not be liable for technical or editorial errors or omissions contained herein.

Edition 1, 9/2014


Trademark Credits


Microsoft®, Windows®, Windows® XP, and Windows Vista® are U.S. registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

Conventions used in this guide


 **TIP:** Helpful hints or shortcuts.

Reinstallation tip: Reinstallation helpful hints, shortcuts, or considerations.

 **NOTE:** Information that explains a concept or how to complete a task.

 **IMPORTANT:** Information that help the user to avoid potential product error conditions.

 **CAUTION:** Procedures that the user must follow to avoid losing data or damaging the product.

 **WARNING!** Procedures that the user must follow to avoid personal injury, catastrophic loss of data, or extensive damage to the product.

For additional service and support information

HP service personnel, go to the Link Service Access Work Bench (SAW) at <http://h41302.www4.hp.com/km/saw/home.do>.

Channel partners, go to Link HP Channel Services Network (CNS) at <https://h30125.www3.hp.com/hpcsn>.

- Install and configure
- Product specifications
- Up to date control-panel message (CPMD) troubleshooting
- Solutions for product issues and emerging issues
- Remove and replace part instructions and videos
- Service advisories
- Warranty & regulatory information

Table of contents

1 Removal and replacement	1
For additional service and support information	2
Removal and replacement strategy	3
Considerations during removal and replacement	3
Required tools	5
Types of screws	5
Service approach	5
Before performing service	6
After performing service	6
Parts removal order	6
Customer self-repair (CSR) assemblies	7
Toner cartridge	8
Introduction	8
Step 1: Remove the toner cartridge	8
Step 2: Unpack the replacement toner cartridge	9
Step 3: Install the toner cartridge	10
Parts Return	13
Staple cartridge (for models with a stapler/stacker)	14
Introduction	14
Step 1: Remove the staple cartridge	14
Step 2: Unpack the replacement staple cartridge	15
Step 3: Install the staple cartridge	16
Parts Return	17
Backside background selector	18
Introduction	18
Step 1: Remove the backside background selector	18
Step 2: Unpack the replacement backside background selector	20
Step 3: Install the backside background selector	21
Parts Return	22
Formatter	23
Introduction	23
Step 1: Remove the formatter	24

Step 2: Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD) or solid-state memory (SSM)	25
Identify the component type	25
Remove the HDD	26
Remove the SSM	27
Step 3: Remove the DIMM	28
Step 4: Remove the fax PCA	29
Step 5: Unpack the replacement formatter	30
Step 6: Install the HDD or SSM	31
Step 7: Install the DIMM	34
Step 8: Install the fax PCA	36
Step 9: Install the formatter	37
Step 10: Test the installation	38
Parts Return	39
Hard-disk drive (HDD) or solid-state memory (SSM)	25
Introduction	40
Step 1: Remove the formatter	40
Step 2: Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD) or solid-state memory (SSM)	25
Identify the component type	42
Remove the HDD	43
Remove the SSM	44
Step 3: Unpack the replacement HDD or SSM	45
Step 4: Install the HDD or SSM	45
Install the HDD	46
Install the SSM	49
Step 5: Install the formatter	37
Step 6: Test the installation	51
Step 7: Reinstall the product firmware	52
Parts Return	53
Memory DIMM	54
Introduction	54
Step 1: Remove the formatter	54
Step 2: Remove the memory DIMM	55
Step 3: Unpack the replacement DIMM	56
Step 4: Reinstall the memory DIMM	57
Step 5: Install the formatter	37
Step 6: Test the installation	59
Parts Return	60
Fax printed-circuit assembly (PCA)	61
Introduction	61
Step 1: Remove the formatter	61
Step 2: Remove the fax PCA	62

Step 3: Unpack the replacement fax PCA	64
Step 4: Install the fax PCA	65
Step 5: Install the formatter	37
Step 6: Test the installation	66
Parts Return	67
Output bin and bin base assembly	68
Introduction	68
Step 1: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly	68
Step 2: Unpack the replacement output bin and bin base assembly	68
Step 3: Install the output bin and bin base assembly	69
Parts Return	69
Duplex accessory	70
Introduction	70
Step 1: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox	70
Step 2: Remove the duplex accessory	72
Step 3: Unpack the replacement duplex accessory	73
Step 4: Install the duplex accessory	73
Step 5: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox	74
Step 6: Turn the product power on	75
Parts Return	75
Fuser-entrance guide	76
Introduction	76
Step 1: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox	76
Step 2: Remove the duplex accessory	78
Step 3: Remove the fuser-entrance guide	79
Step 4: Unpack the replacement fuser-entrance guide	80
Step 5: Install the fuser-entrance guide	80
Step 6: Install the duplex accessory	80
Step 7: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox	81
Step 8: Turn the product power on	82
Parts Return	82
Fuser	83
Introduction	83
Step 1: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox	83
Step 2: Remove the duplex accessory	85
Step 3: Remove the fuser-entrance guide	86
Step 4: Remove the fuser	87
Step 5: Unpack the replacement fuser	87
Step 6: Install the fuser	87
Step 7: Install the fuser-entrance guide	88
Step 8: Install the duplex accessory	88

Step 9: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox	89
Step 10: Turn the product power on	90
Step 11: Reset the supplies counter	90
Parts Return	91
Control-panel assembly	92
Introduction	92
Step 1: Remove the control panel	93
Step 2: Remove the keyboard (M630z only)	97
Step 3: Unpack the replacement control-panel assembly	101
Step 4: Install the keyboard (M630z only)	102
Step 5: Install the control-panel assembly	105
Parts Return	109
Keyboard assembly (M630z only)	92
Introduction	92
Step 1: Remove the control panel	111
Step 2: Remove the keyboard	97
Step 3: Unpack the replacement keyboard assembly	118
Step 4: Install the keyboard	102
Step 5: Install the control-panel assembly	122
Parts Return	126
Tray 1 pickup, feed, and separation rollers	127
Introduction	127
Step 1: Remove the Tray 1 pickup, feed, and separation rollers	127
Step 2: Unpack the replacement rollers	131
Step 3: Install the Tray 1 pickup, feed, and separation rollers	132
Parts Return	136
Tray 2-5 pickup and feed rollers	137
Introduction	137
Step 1: Remove the Tray 2 - 5 pickup and feed rollers	137
Step 2: Unpack the replacement rollers	140
Step 3: Install the Tray 2 - 5 pickup and feed rollers	141
Parts Return	143
Transfer roller	144
Introduction	144
Step 1: Remove the transfer roller	144
Step 2: Unpack the replacement roller	148
Step 3: Install the transfer roller	149
Parts Return	151
Document-feeder maintenance kit	152
Introduction	152
Step 1: Remove the document-feeder rollers	152

Step 2: Remove the document-feeder separation pad	154
Step 3: Unpack the replacement rollers and separation pad	155
Step 4: Install the document-feeder separation pad	156
Step 5: Install the document-feeder rollers	159
Step 6: Reset the supplies counter	160
Parts Return	160
Document feeder white backing	161
Introduction	161
Step 1: Remove the document feeder white backing	161
Step 2: Unpack the replacement document feeder white backing	162
Step 3: Install the document feeder white backing	164
Parts Return	168
Document feeder and image scanner assemblies	169
Document-feeder mylar strip	170
Introduction	170
Step 1: Remove the document-feeder mylar strip	170
Step 2: Unpack the replacement mylar strip	173
Step 3: Install the document-feeder mylar strip	173
Parts Return	175
Document-feeder roller cover	176
Reinstall the document-feeder roller cover	181
Scanner rear cover	182
Introduction	182
Step 1: Remove the scanner rear cover	182
Step 2: Install the scanner rear cover	183
Step 3: Turn the product power on	184
Scanner control board (SCB)	185
Introduction	185
Step 1: Remove the scanner rear cover	185
Step 2: Remove the SCB	186
Step 4: Unpack the replacement SCB	192
Step 4: Install the SCB	193
Step 5: Install the scanner rear cover	199
Step 6: Turn the product power on	200
Parts Return	200
Document feeder	201
Introduction	201
Step 1: Remove the backside background selector	202
Step 2: Remove the scanner rear cover	203
Step 3: Remove the SCB	204
Step 4: Remove the document feeder	210

Step 5: Unpack the replacement document feeder	211
Step 6: Install the document feeder	212
Step 7: Install the SCB	213
Step 8: Install the scanner rear cover	219
Step 9: Install the backside background selector	221
Step 10: Install the document feeder white backing	223
Step 11: Reset the supplies counters and calibrate the scanner	227
Parts Return	228
Document-feeder hinge assembly	229
Remove the document-feeder hinge assembly	229
Image scanner assembly	230
Introduction	230
Step 1: Remove the scanner rear cover	231
Step 2: Remove the SCB	231
Step 3: Remove the document feeder	237
Step 4: Remove the image scanner assembly	238
Step 5: Unpack the replacement image scanner assembly	246
Step 6: Install the image scanner assembly	247
Step 7: Install the document feeder	254
Step 8: Install the SCB	256
Step 9: Install the scanner rear cover	262
Step 10: Install the replacement document feeder white backing	223
Step 11: Reset the supplies counters and calibrate the scanner	271
Parts Return	271
Covers, doors, tray, and external panels (product base)	272
Identification and location (product base)	273
Front cover	274
Introduction	274
Step 1: Remove the front cover	274
Step 2: Unpack the replacement front cover	277
Step 3: Install the front cover	277
Step 4: Turn the product power on	281
Parts Return	281
Envelope feeder cover	282
Image scanner cable cover	283
Introduction	283
Step 1: Remove the image scanner cable cover	283
Step 2: Unpack the replacement image scanner cable cover	284
Step 3: Install the image scanner cable cover	285
Step 4: Turn the product power on	286
Parts Return	286

Tray 1 cover	287
Introduction	287
Step 1: Remove the Tray 1 cover	287
Step 2: Unpack the replacement Tray 1 cover	290
Step 3: Install the Tray 1 cover	291
Step 4: Turn the product power on	293
Parts Return	294
Tray	295
Side-rear cover	296
Introduction	296
Step 1: Remove the formatter	24
Step 2: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox	297
Step 3: Remove the duplex accessory	299
Step 4: Remove the side-rear cover	300
Step 5: Unpack the replacement side-rear cover	301
Step 6: Install the side-rear cover	301
Step 7: Install the duplex accessory	302
Step 8: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox	303
Step 9: Install the formatter	37
Step 10: Test the installation	305
Parts Return	306
Front-left cover and logo panel assembly	307
Remove the front-left cover and logo panel assembly	307
Install the front-left cover and logo panel assembly	310
Power-switch assembly	314
Introduction	314
Step 1: Remove the front cover	314
Step 2: Remove the power-switch assembly	317
Step 3: Unpack the replacement power-switch assembly	317
Step 4: Install the power-switch assembly	318
Step 5: Install the front cover	318
Step 6: Turn the product power on	322
Parts Return	322
Rear-right cover	323
Introduction	323
Step 1: Remove the rear-right cover	323
Step 2: Unpack the replacement rear-right cover	324
Step 3: Install the rear-right cover	325
Step 4: Turn the product power on	326
Parts Return	326
Rear-left cover	327

Introduction	327
Step 1: Remove the image scanner cable cover	327
Step 2: Remove the rear-right cover	328
Step 3: Remove the rear-left cover	329
Step 4: Unpack the replacement rear-left cover	330
Step 5: Install the rear-left cover	331
Step 6: Install the rear-right cover	332
Step 7: Install the image scanner cable cover	333
Step 8: Turn the product power on	334
Parts Return	334
Rear-top cover	335
Introduction	335
Step 1: Remove the image scanner cable cover	335
Step 2: Remove the rear-right cover	336
Step 3: Remove the rear-left cover	337
Step 4: Remove the rear-top cover	338
Step 5: Unpack the replacement rear-top cover	339
Step 6: Install the rear-top cover	340
Step 7: Install the rear-left cover	341
Step 8: Install the rear-right cover	342
Step 9: Install the image scanner cable cover	343
Step 10: Turn the product power on	344
Parts Return	344
Right-lower door	345
Introduction	345
Step 1: Remove the Tray 1 cover	345
Step 2: Remove the rear-right cover	348
Step 3: Remove the right-lower door	349
Step 4: Unpack the replacement right-lower door	351
Step 5: Install the right-lower door	351
Step 6: Install the rear-right cover	353
Step 7: Install the Tray 1 cover	354
Step 8: Turn the product power on	356
Parts Return	357
Document-feeder hinge cover	358
Remove the document-feeder hinge cover	358
Install the document-feeder hinge cover	360
Main assemblies	361
Registration assembly	362
Cassette-door-open detection switch (SW105)	363
Introduction	363

Step 1: Remove the cassette-door-open detection switch	363
Step 2: Unpack the replacement switch assembly	365
Step 3: Install the cassette-door-open detection switch	366
Step 4: Turn the product power on	368
Parts Return	368
Reverse assembly upper guide assembly	369
Install the reverse assembly upper guide assembly	370
Reverse assembly	371
Laser/scanner assembly	375
Remove the laser/scanner assembly	375
Cartridge sensor assembly	378
Remove the cartridge sensor assembly	378
Temperature sensor	380
Remove the temperature sensor	380
DC controller shield-plate assembly	382
Introduction	382
Step 1: Remove the image scanner cable cover	382
Step 2: Remove the rear-right cover	383
Step 3: Remove the rear-top cover	384
Step 4: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly	385
Step 5: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly	386
Step 6: Install the rear-top cover	387
Step 7: Install the rear-right cover	388
Step 8: Install the image scanner cable cover	389
Step 9: Turn the product power on	390
DC controller	391
Introduction	391
Step 1: Remove the image scanner cable cover	392
Step 2: Remove the rear-right cover	392
Step 3: Remove the rear-top cover	393
Step 4: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly	394
Step 5: Remove the DC controller	395
Step 6: Unpack the replacement DC controller	397
Step 7: Install the DC controller	398
Step 8: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly	399
Step 9: Install the rear-top cover	399
Step 10: Install the rear-right cover	400
Step 11: Install the image scanner cable cover	401
Step 12: Turn the product power on	402
Parts Return	402
Tray 1 pickup assembly	403

Introduction	403
Step 1: Remove the image scanner cable cover	404
Step 2: Remove the rear-top cover	404
Step 3: Remove the Tray 1 cover	405
Step 4: Remove the rear-right cover	408
Step 5: Remove the right-lower door	409
Step 6: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly	411
Step 7: Remove the Tray 1 pickup assembly	412
Step 8: Unpack the replacement Tray 1 pickup assembly	414
Step 9: Install the Tray 1 pickup assembly	415
Step 10: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly	417
Step 11: Install the right-lower door	418
Step 12: Install the rear-right cover	420
Step 13: Install the Tray 1 cover	421
Step 14: Install the rear-top cover	423
Step 15: Install the image scanner cable cover	424
Step 16: Turn the product power on	425
Parts Return	425
Interconnect board (ICB)	426
Introduction	426
Step 1: Remove the formatter	24
Step 2: Remove the image scanner cable cover	428
Step 3: Remove the rear-right cover	428
Step 4: Remove the rear-top cover	429
Step 5: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly	430
Step 6: Remove the ICB	431
Step 7: Unpack the replacement interconnect board	433
Step 8: Install the ICB	434
Step 9: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly	436
Step 10: Install the rear-top cover	437
Step 11: Install the rear-right cover	438
Step 12: Install the image scanner cable cover	439
Step 13: Install the formatter	37
Step 14: Test the installation	441
Parts Return	442
Feed motor (M101)	443
Introduction	443
Step 1: Remove the image scanner cable cover	443
Step 2: Remove the rear-right cover	444
Step 3: Remove the rear-top cover	445
Step 4: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly	446

Step 5: Remove the feed motor	447
Step 6: Unpack the replacement feed motor	448
Step 7: Install the feed motor	448
Step 8: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly	449
Step 9: Install the rear-top cover	450
Step 10: Install the rear-right cover	451
Step 11: Install the image scanner cable cover	452
Step 12: Turn the product power on	453
Parts Return	453
Drum motor (M102)	454
Remove the drum motor	454
Fuser motor (M299)	455
Remove the fuser motor	455
Main fan (FN101)	456
Remove the main fan	456
Laser/scanner fan (FN102)	458
Remove the laser/scanner fan	458
Install the laser/scanner fan	459
Cartridge front-side fan (FN103)	460
Remove the cartridge front-side fan	460
Install the cartridge front-side fan	461
Low-voltage power supply fan (FN104)	462
Remove the low-voltage power supply fan	462
Install the low-voltage power supply fan	463
Reverse assembly fan (FN105)	464
Remove the reverse assembly fan	464
Cartridge fan (FN301)	467
Remove the cartridge fan	467
Install the cartridge fan	470
Interlock switch assembly (SW101 and SW106)	471
Remove the interlock switch assembly	471
Output accessory detection switch (SW104)	474
Remove the output accessory detection switch	474
Low-voltage power supply (LVPS)	479
Introduction	479
Step 1: Remove the formatter	24
Step 2: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox	481
Step 3: Remove the duplex accessory	482
Step 4: Remove the side-rear cover	483
Step 5: Remove the image scanner cable cover	484
Step 6: Remove the rear-right cover	485

Step 7: Remove the rear-left cover	486
Step 8: Remove the rear-top cover	487
Step 9: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly	488
Step 10: Remove the ICB	489
Step 11: Remove the LVPS	491
Step 12: Unpack the replacement LVPS	496
Step 13: Install the LVPS	498
Step 14: Install the ICB	503
Step 15: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly	505
Step 16: Install the rear-top cover	506
Step 17: Install the rear-left cover	507
Step 18: Install the rear-right cover	508
Step 19: Install the image scanner cable cover	509
Step 20: Install the side-rear cover	510
Step 21: Install the duplex accessory	511
Step 22: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox	511
Step 23: Install the formatter	37
Step 24: Test the installation	514
Parts Return	515
Lifter base assembly	516
Remove the lifter base assembly	516
Lifter assembly	518
Remove the lifter assembly	518
High-voltage power supply (HVPS)	521
Introduction	522
Step 1: Remove the formatter	24
Step 2: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox	523
Step 3: Remove the duplex accessory	525
Step 4: Remove the fuser-entrance guide	526
Step 5: Remove the fuser	527
Step 6: Remove the front cover	527
Step 7: Remove the side-rear cover	529
Step 8: Remove the image scanner cable cover	530
Step 9: Remove the rear-right cover	531
Step 10: Remove the rear-left cover	532
Step 11: Remove the rear-top cover	533
Step 12: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly	534
Step 13: Remove the DC controller	535
Step 14: Remove the ICB	537
Step 15: Remove the LVPS	539
Step 16: Remove the HVPS	544

Step 17: Unpack the replacement HVPS	551
Step 18: Install the HVPS	551
Step 19: Install the LVPS	561
Step 20: Install the ICB	566
Step 21: Install the DC controller	568
Step 22: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly	569
Step 23: Install the rear-top cover	570
Step 24: Install the rear-left cover	571
Step 25: Install the rear-right cover	572
Step 26: Install the side-rear cover	573
Step 27: Install the image scanner cable cover	574
Step 28: Install the front cover	575
Step 29: Install the fuser	578
Step 30: Install the fuser-entrance guide	579
Step 31: Install the duplex accessory	579
Step 32: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox	580
Step 33: Install the formatter	37
Step 34: Test the installation	582
Parts Return	583
Feed roller assembly	584
Remove the feed roller assembly	584
Pickup drive assembly	585
Introduction	585
Step 1: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox	586
Step 2: Remove the Tray 1 cover	587
Step 3: Remove the image scanner cable cover	590
Step 4: Remove the rear-right cover	591
Step 5: Remove the rear-left cover	592
Step 6: Remove the rear-top cover	593
Step 7: Remove the right-lower door	594
Step 8: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly	596
Step 9: Remove the DC controller	597
Step 10: Remove the feed motor	598
Step 11: Remove the pickup drive assembly	599
Step 12: Unpack the replacement pickup drive assembly	599
Step 13: Install the pickup drive assembly	600
Step 14: Install the feed motor	601
Step 15: Install the DC controller	601
Step 16: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly	602
Step 17: Install the right-lower door	603
Step 18: Install the rear-top cover	605

Step 19: Install the rear-left cover	606
Step 20: Install the rear-right cover	607
Step 21: Install the image scanner cable cover	608
Step 22: Install the Tray 1 cover	609
Step 23: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox	611
Step 24: Turn the product power on	613
Parts Return	613
Cassette pickup assembly	614
Introduction	615
Step 1: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox	615
Step 2: Remove the Tray 1 cover	616
Step 3: Remove the cassette-door-open detection switch	619
Step 4: Remove the image scanner cable cover	621
Step 5: Remove the rear-right cover	622
Step 6: Remove the rear-left cover	623
Step 7: Remove the rear-top cover	624
Step 8: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly	625
Step 9: Remove the DC controller	626
Step 10: Remove the Tray 1 pickup assembly	628
Step 11: Remove the feed motor	630
Step 12: Remove the pickup drive assembly	631
Step 13: Remove the cassette pickup assembly	631
Step 14: Unpack the replacement cassette pickup assembly	635
Step 15: Install the cassette pickup assembly	635
Step 16: Install the pickup drive assembly	639
Step 17: Install the feed motor	640
Step 18: Install the Tray 1 pickup assembly	640
Step 19: Install the DC controller	643
Step 20: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly	644
Step 21: Install the rear-top cover	645
Step 22: Install the rear-left cover	646
Step 23: Install the rear-right cover	647
Step 24: Install the image scanner cable cover	648
Step 25: Install the cassette-door-open detection switch	649
Step 26: Install the Tray 1 cover	651
Step 27: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox	653
Step 28: Turn the product power on	655
Parts Return	655
Optional input and output accessories	656
1x500-sheet paper feeder	657
Rear cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	658

Left cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	659
Remove the left cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	659
Right cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	663
Remove the right cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	663
Right-front cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	666
Remove the right-front cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	666
Front-upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	667
Remove the front-upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	667
Pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	669
Remove the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	669
Install the pickup drive assembly	670
Pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	671
Remove the pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	671
Install the pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	674
Lifter base assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	675
Remove the lifter base assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	675
Lifter assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	676
Remove the lifter assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	676
Controller printed-circuit assembly (PCA) (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	678
Remove the controller PCA (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	678
1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet	679
Rear and rear lower cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	680
Stock box door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	681
Stock box and rails (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	682
Remove the stock box and rails	682
Left cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	684
Remove the left cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	684
Front upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	685
Remove the front upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	685
Right-front cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	686
Remove the right-front cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	686
Right door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	687
Right center cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	689
Remove the right center cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	689
Right-door hinge cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	690
Remove the right-door hinge cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	690
Pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	692

Remove the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	692
Install the paper drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	694
Paper-pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	692
Remove the paper-pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	695
Install the paper-pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	698
Lifter base assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	699
Remove the lifter base assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	699
Lifter assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	700
Remove the lifter assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) ...	700
Controller printed-circuit assembly (PCA) (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	702
Remove the controller PCA (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	702
2,500-sheet high capacity input (HCI)	704
Rear and rear lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder)	705
Right door (HCI optional paper feeder)	706
Right center cover (HCI optional paper feeder)	707
Remove the right center cover (HCI optional paper feeder)	707
Right lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder)	708
Remove the right center cover (HCI optional paper feeder)	708
Front upper cover (HCI optional paper feeder)	709
Right front cover (HCI optional paper feeder)	710
Remove the right front cover (HCI optional paper feeder)	710
Left cover (HCI optional paper feeder)	711
Tray 3 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)	712
Remove the Tray 3 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)	712
Install the Tray 3 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)	715
Tray 4 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)	716
Remove the Tray 4 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)	716
Install the Tray 4 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)	715
Tray 5 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)	720
Remove the Tray 5 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)	720
Pickup drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)	722
Remove the pickup drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)	722
Install the pickup drive assembly	723
Tray 3 lifter base assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)	724
Remove the Tray 3 lifter base assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)	724
Tray 4 lifter base assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)	726

Remove the Tray 4 lifter base assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)	726
Tray 3 lifter assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)	728
Remove the Tray 3 lifter assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)	728
Tray 4 lifter assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)	729
Remove the Tray 4 lifter assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)	729
Tray 5 lifter drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)	730
Remove the Tray 5 lifter drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)	730
Controller printed-circuit assembly (PCA) (HCI optional paper feeder)	731
Remove the controller PCA (HCI optional paper feeder)	731
Stapling mailbox	732
Front cover (stapling mailbox)	733
Rear cover (stapling mailbox)	734
Handle assembly (stapling mailbox)	735
Remove the handle assembly	735
Top cover (stapling mailbox)	737
Remove the top cover	737
Output bin 3 (stapling mailbox)	738
Output bin assembly cover (stapling mailbox)	740
Remove the output bin assembly cover	740
Driver printed-circuit assembly (PCA) (stapling mailbox)	742
Output bin sensor printed-circuit assembly (PCA) (stapling mailbox)	744
Remove the output bin sensor PCA	744
Stapler assembly (stapling mailbox)	745
Remove the stapler assembly	745
Jogger assembly (stapling mailbox)	746
Remove the jogger assembly	746
Output bin solenoid (stapling mailbox)	747
Remove the output bin solenoid	747
Output bin assembly (stapling mailbox)	749
Remove the output bin assembly	749
Stage top assembly (stapling mailbox)	751
Remove the stage top assembly	751
Install the stage top assembly	760
Stage assembly (stapling mailbox)	761
Remove the stage assembly	761
Output bin 3 drive assembly (stapling mailbox)	764
Remove the output bin 3 drive assembly	764

2 Parts and diagrams 769

For additional service and support information	770
Order parts, accessories, and supplies	771

Ordering information	771
Related documentation	771
Supplies part numbers	772
Customer self-repair kits	772
Service replacement kits	774
Accessories	775
How to use the parts lists and diagrams	776
Document feeder and scanner components	778
Document feeder components	780
Document feeder components (1 of 2)	780
Document feeder components (2 of 2)	782
Scanner control board (SCB)	784
Control panel	786
Covers	788
Upper plate assembly	790
Internal components	792
Internal components (1 of 5)	792
Internal components (2 of 5)	794
Internal components (3 of 5)	796
Internal components (4 of 5)	798
Internal components (5 of 5)	800
High-voltage power supply	802
1x500-sheet paper feeder	804
1x500-sheet paper feeder covers	804
1x500-sheet paper feeder components	806
1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet	808
1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers	808
1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components	810
2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder	812
2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers	812
2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (1 of 2)	814
2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (2 of 2)	816
Stapling mailbox	818
Stapling mailbox covers	818
Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2)	820
Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2)	822
Envelope feeder	824
Envelope feeder covers	824
Envelope feeder components (1 of 2)	826
Envelope feeder components (2 of 2)	828
Alphabetical parts list	830

Numerical parts list 843

Index 857

List of tables

Table 1-1	Identification and location (product base)	273
Table 2-1	Ordering information	771
Table 2-2	Related documentation and software	771
Table 2-3	Supplies part numbers	772
Table 2-4	Customer self-repair kits	772
Table 2-5	Service replacement kits	774
Table 2-6	Accessories	775
Table 2-7	Document feeder and scanner components	779
Table 2-8	Document feeder components (1 of 2)	781
Table 2-9	Document feeder components (2 of 2)	783
Table 2-10	Scanner control board (SCB)	785
Table 2-11	Control panel	787
Table 2-12	Covers	789
Table 2-13	Upper plate assembly	791
Table 2-14	Internal components (1 of 5)	793
Table 2-15	Internal components (2 of 5)	795
Table 2-16	Internal components (3 of 5)	797
Table 2-17	Internal components (4 of 5)	799
Table 2-18	Internal components (5 of 5)	801
Table 2-19	High-voltage power supply	803
Table 2-20	1x500-sheet paper feeder covers	805
Table 2-21	1x500-sheet paper feeder components	807
Table 2-22	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers	809
Table 2-23	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components	811
Table 2-24	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers	813
Table 2-25	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (1 of 2)	815
Table 2-26	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (2 of 2)	817
Table 2-27	Stapling mailbox covers	819
Table 2-28	Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2)	821
Table 2-29	Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2)	823
Table 2-30	Envelope feeder covers	825
Table 2-31	Envelope feeder components (1 of 2)	827

Table 2-32 Envelope feeder components (2 of 2) 829

List of figures

Figure 1-1	Screwdrivers	5
Figure 1-2	Open the top cover	9
Figure 1-3	Remove the toner cartridge	9
Figure 1-4	Recycle and unpack	10
Figure 1-5	Rock the toner cartridge	10
Figure 1-6	Remove the protective shield	11
Figure 1-7	Remove the sealing tape	11
Figure 1-8	Install the toner cartridge	12
Figure 1-9	Close the top cover	13
Figure 1-10	Slide the stapler/stacker away from the product	14
Figure 1-11	Open the staple-cartridge door	15
Figure 1-12	Remove the staple cartridge	15
Figure 1-13	Recycle and unpack	16
Figure 1-14	Install the cartridge and close the stapler door	16
Figure 1-15	Slide the stapler back to the product	16
Figure 1-16	Open the document-feeder door	18
Figure 1-17	Rotate the input tray up	19
Figure 1-18	Release two tabs	19
Figure 1-19	Remove the backside background selector	20
Figure 1-20	Recycle and unpack	20
Figure 1-21	Install the background selector	21
Figure 1-22	Rotate the input tray down	21
Figure 1-23	Close the document-feeder door	22
Figure 1-24	Remove the formatter	24
Figure 1-25	Remove the formatter	24
Figure 1-26	Remove the HDD	26
Figure 1-27	Release the clip	27
Figure 1-28	Remove the clip	27
Figure 1-29	Remove the SSM	28
Figure 1-30	Release two clips	28
Figure 1-31	Remove the DIMM	29
Figure 1-32	Locate the fax PCA	29

Figure 1-33	Release the connector end of the fax PCA	30
Figure 1-34	Remove the fax PCA	30
Figure 1-35	Recycle and unpack	31
Figure 1-36	Press down on the HDD	32
Figure 1-37	Install the black plastic HDD case	32
Figure 1-38	Make sure that the HDD is flat against the formatter	33
Figure 1-39	Install the SSM	33
Figure 1-40	Install the retainer clip	34
Figure 1-41	Rotate the retainer	34
Figure 1-42	Insert the DIMM into the holder	35
Figure 1-43	Install the DIMM	35
Figure 1-44	Make sure that the retaining clips snap into place	36
Figure 1-45	Insert the fax port into the holder	36
Figure 1-46	Install the fax PCA	37
Figure 1-47	Align the formatter with the guides and push the formatter into the slot	37
Figure 1-48	Tighten the two thumbscrews	38
Figure 1-49	Verify that the formatter is functioning	39
Figure 1-50	Remove the formatter	41
Figure 1-51	Remove the formatter	41
Figure 1-52	Remove the HDD	43
Figure 1-53	Release the clip	44
Figure 1-54	Remove the clip	44
Figure 1-55	Remove the SSM	45
Figure 1-56	Check the HDD for foam pads	46
Figure 1-57	Install the HDD	46
Figure 1-58	Check the HDD installation	47
Figure 1-59	Install the foam pads	47
Figure 1-60	Press down on the HDD	48
Figure 1-61	Install the HDD	48
Figure 1-62	Check the HDD installation	49
Figure 1-63	Install the SSM	49
Figure 1-64	Install the retainer clip	50
Figure 1-65	Rotate the retainer	50
Figure 1-66	Align the formatter with the guides and push the formatter into the slot	51
Figure 1-67	Tighten the two thumbscrews	51
Figure 1-68	Remove the formatter	55
Figure 1-69	Remove the formatter	55
Figure 1-70	Release two clips	56
Figure 1-71	Remove the DIMM	56
Figure 1-72	Insert the DIMM into the holder	57
Figure 1-73	Install the DIMM	58

Figure 1-74	Make sure that the retaining clips snap into place	58
Figure 1-75	Align the formatter with the guides and push the formatter into the slot	59
Figure 1-76	Tighten the two thumbscrews	59
Figure 1-77	Verify that the formatter is functioning	60
Figure 1-78	Remove the formatter	62
Figure 1-79	Remove the formatter	62
Figure 1-80	Locate the fax PCA	63
Figure 1-81	Release the connector end of the fax PCA	63
Figure 1-82	Remove the fax PCA	64
Figure 1-83	Insert the fax port of the fax PCA into the holder	65
Figure 1-84	Install the fax PCA	65
Figure 1-85	Align the formatter with the guides and push the formatter into the slot	66
Figure 1-86	Tighten the two thumbscrews	66
Figure 1-87	Verify that the formatter is functioning	67
Figure 1-88	Remove the output bin	68
Figure 1-89	Install the output bin	69
Figure 1-90	Remove the output bin	71
Figure 1-91	Remove the stapling mailbox	72
Figure 1-92	Remove the duplex accessory	73
Figure 1-93	Install the duplex accessory	74
Figure 1-94	Install the output bin	74
Figure 1-95	Install the stapling mailbox	75
Figure 1-96	Remove the output bin	77
Figure 1-97	Remove the stapling mailbox	78
Figure 1-98	Remove the duplex accessory	79
Figure 1-99	Remove the fuser-entrance guide	79
Figure 1-100	Install the fuser-entrance guide	80
Figure 1-101	Install the duplex accessory	81
Figure 1-102	Install the output bin	81
Figure 1-103	Install the stapling mailbox	82
Figure 1-104	Remove the output bin	84
Figure 1-105	Remove the stapling mailbox	85
Figure 1-106	Remove the duplex accessory	86
Figure 1-107	Remove the fuser-entrance guide	86
Figure 1-108	Remove the fuser	87
Figure 1-109	Install the fuser	88
Figure 1-110	Install the fuser-entrance guide	88
Figure 1-111	Install the duplex accessory	89
Figure 1-112	Install the output bin	89
Figure 1-113	Install the stapling mailbox	90
Figure 1-114	Remove third party devices	93

Figure 1-115	Tilt the control panel up	93
Figure 1-116	Remove the cover	94
Figure 1-117	Slide the keyboard out	94
Figure 1-118	Disconnect two connectors	95
Figure 1-119	Remove one screw	95
Figure 1-120	Slide the control panel to the right	96
Figure 1-121	Remove the control-panel assembly	96
Figure 1-122	Place the control-panel assembly on a flat surface	97
Figure 1-123	Release the flat cable	97
Figure 1-124	Disconnect the flat cable	98
Figure 1-125	Tilt the screen down	98
Figure 1-126	Slide the keyboard tray out	99
Figure 1-127	Turn the control panel face-down	99
Figure 1-128	Remove the keyboard	100
Figure 1-129	Recycle and unpack	101
Figure 1-130	Align the edges of the tray with the slots in the control panel	102
Figure 1-131	Slide the keyboard tray in	102
Figure 1-132	Turn the control panel face-up	103
Figure 1-133	Tilt the screen up	103
Figure 1-134	Position the flat cable in the connector	104
Figure 1-135	Close the latch to lock the flat cable into position	104
Figure 1-136	Verify that the cable is securely fastened in the connector	105
Figure 1-137	Install the cable and wire harness	105
Figure 1-138	Insert the tabs on the control panel into the slots	106
Figure 1-139	Slide the control panel to the left	106
Figure 1-140	Slide the keyboard out	107
Figure 1-141	Connect two connectors	107
Figure 1-142	Install the screw	108
Figure 1-143	Install the cover	108
Figure 1-144	Install third party devices	109
Figure 1-145	Test the keyboard	109
Figure 1-146	Tilt the control panel up	111
Figure 1-147	Remove the cover	111
Figure 1-148	Slide the keyboard out	112
Figure 1-149	Disconnect two connectors	112
Figure 1-150	Remove one screw	113
Figure 1-151	Slide the control panel to the right	113
Figure 1-152	Remove the control-panel assembly	114
Figure 1-153	Place the control-panel assembly on a flat surface	115
Figure 1-154	Release the flat cable	115
Figure 1-155	Disconnect the flat cable	116

Figure 1-156	Tilt the screen down	116
Figure 1-157	Slide the keyboard tray out	117
Figure 1-158	Turn the control panel face-down	117
Figure 1-159	Remove the keyboard	118
Figure 1-160	Align the edges of the tray with the slots in the control panel	119
Figure 1-161	Slide the keyboard tray in	119
Figure 1-162	Turn the control panel face-up	120
Figure 1-163	Tilt the screen up	120
Figure 1-164	Position the flat cable in the connector	121
Figure 1-165	Close the latch to lock the flat cable into position	121
Figure 1-166	Verify that the cable is securely fastened in the connector	122
Figure 1-167	Install the cable and wire harness	122
Figure 1-168	Insert the tabs on the control panel into the slots	123
Figure 1-169	Slide the control panel to the left	123
Figure 1-170	Slide the keyboard out	124
Figure 1-171	Connect two connectors	124
Figure 1-172	Install the screw	125
Figure 1-173	Install the cover	125
Figure 1-174	Test the keyboard	126
Figure 1-175	Turn the power off	128
Figure 1-176	Remove the envelope feeder or the environment cover	128
Figure 1-177	Open the separation roller cover	129
Figure 1-178	Remove the separation roller	129
Figure 1-179	Remove one screw	130
Figure 1-180	Remove the bushing	130
Figure 1-181	Remove the roller cover	131
Figure 1-182	Remove the rollers	131
Figure 1-183	Open the separation roller cover	132
Figure 1-184	Install the separation roller	133
Figure 1-185	Install the rollers	133
Figure 1-186	Install the roller cover	134
Figure 1-187	Install the bushing	134
Figure 1-188	Install one screw	135
Figure 1-189	Install the envelope feeder or the environment cover	135
Figure 1-190	Turn the power on	136
Figure 1-191	Turn the power off	138
Figure 1-192	Identify the product model	138
Figure 1-193	Remove the tray or trays	139
Figure 1-194	Locate the pickup and feed rollers	140
Figure 1-195	Remove the rollers	140
Figure 1-196	install the rollers	141

Figure 1-197	Install the tray or trays	142
Figure 1-198	Turn the power on	143
Figure 1-199	Turn the power off	145
Figure 1-200	Open the top cover	146
Figure 1-201	Remove the toner cartridge	147
Figure 1-202	Remove the transfer roller	148
Figure 1-203	Install the transfer roller	149
Figure 1-204	Install the toner cartridge	150
Figure 1-205	Turn the power on	151
Figure 1-206	Open the document-feeder door	153
Figure 1-207	Open the access door	153
Figure 1-208	Remove the document-feeder roller	154
Figure 1-209	Release one tab	154
Figure 1-210	Remove the document-feeder separation pad	155
Figure 1-211	Check the spring	155
Figure 1-212	Position the separation pad on the product	156
Figure 1-213	Check the spring	157
Figure 1-214	Check the tabs	157
Figure 1-215	Install the separation pad	158
Figure 1-216	Install the document-feeder roller	159
Figure 1-217	Rotate the roller up	159
Figure 1-218	Close the access door	160
Figure 1-219	Open the document feeder	161
Figure 1-220	Remove the white backing	162
Figure 1-221	Remove remaining adhesive	162
Figure 1-222	Place the white backing on the scanner	164
Figure 1-223	Peel off the adhesive backing	164
Figure 1-224	Place the two mylar-spacer strips onto the adhesive	165
Figure 1-225	Peel off the adhesive backing	165
Figure 1-226	Verify that the white backing is correctly aligned	166
Figure 1-227	Close the document feeder and press down	166
Figure 1-228	Open the document feeder	167
Figure 1-229	Press along the white backing	167
Figure 1-230	Peel off the protective sheet	168
Figure 1-231	Close the document feeder	168
Figure 1-232	Turn the power off	171
Figure 1-233	Open the document feeder cover	171
Figure 1-234	Locate the mylar strip	172
Figure 1-235	Remove the mylar strip	172
Figure 1-236	Remove any remaining adhesive	173
Figure 1-237	Install the document-feeder mylar strip	174

Figure 1-238	Press down firmly on the strip	174
Figure 1-239	Close the document feeder cover	175
Figure 1-240	Turn the power on	175
Figure 1-241	Open the document-feeder cover	176
Figure 1-242	Remove four screws	176
Figure 1-243	Note the location of the tabs	177
Figure 1-244	Release two tabs	177
Figure 1-245	Remove the cover	178
Figure 1-246	Remove three springs	178
Figure 1-247	Slide the shaft and rollers to the left	179
Figure 1-248	Move the document-feeder roller assembly out of the way	179
Figure 1-249	Release one hinge pin	180
Figure 1-250	Remove the document-feeder roller cover	180
Figure 1-251	Check the roller shaft	181
Figure 1-252	Check the document-feeder roller cover and document-feeder roller assembly	181
Figure 1-253	Remove two screws	182
Figure 1-254	Remove the cover	183
Figure 1-255	Install the cover	183
Figure 1-256	Install two screws	184
Figure 1-257	Remove two screws	186
Figure 1-258	Remove the cover	186
Figure 1-259	Disconnect four connectors	187
Figure 1-260	Release four retainers	187
Figure 1-261	Remove one screw and the ground wire	188
Figure 1-262	Remove one screw	188
Figure 1-263	Release one retainer	189
Figure 1-264	Partially slide the SCB out	189
Figure 1-265	Release three connectors	190
Figure 1-266	Remove the FFC	190
Figure 1-267	Release two tabs	191
Figure 1-268	Remove the ferrite and holder	191
Figure 1-269	Remove the FFC	192
Figure 1-270	Remove the SCB	192
Figure 1-271	Install the SCB	193
Figure 1-272	Connect the FFC	194
Figure 1-273	Install the ferrite and holder	194
Figure 1-274	Check the two tabs	195
Figure 1-275	Connect the FFC	195
Figure 1-276	Connect three connectors	196
Figure 1-277	Slide the SCB in	196
Figure 1-278	Fasten one retainer	197

Figure 1-279	Install one screw	197
Figure 1-280	Install the ground wire and one screw	198
Figure 1-281	Install the wire harnesses	198
Figure 1-282	Connect four connectors	199
Figure 1-283	Install the cover	199
Figure 1-284	Install two screws	200
Figure 1-285	Open the document-feeder door	202
Figure 1-286	Rotate the input tray up	202
Figure 1-287	Release two tabs	203
Figure 1-288	Remove the backside background selector	203
Figure 1-289	Remove two screws	204
Figure 1-290	Remove the cover	204
Figure 1-291	Disconnect four connectors	205
Figure 1-292	Release four retainers	205
Figure 1-293	Remove one screw and the ground wire	206
Figure 1-294	Remove one screw	206
Figure 1-295	Release one retainer	207
Figure 1-296	Partially slide the SCB out	207
Figure 1-297	Release three connectors	208
Figure 1-298	Remove the FFC	208
Figure 1-299	Release two tabs	209
Figure 1-300	Remove the ferrite and holder	209
Figure 1-301	Remove the FFC	210
Figure 1-302	Remove the SCB	210
Figure 1-303	Loosen two screws	211
Figure 1-304	Remove the document feeder	211
Figure 1-305	Route the document feeder FFC and cables	212
Figure 1-306	Install the document feeder	213
Figure 1-307	Tighten two screws	213
Figure 1-308	Install the SCB	214
Figure 1-309	Connect the FFC	214
Figure 1-310	Install the ferrite and holder	215
Figure 1-311	Check the two tabs	215
Figure 1-312	Connect the FFC	216
Figure 1-313	Connect three connectors	216
Figure 1-314	Slide the SCB in	217
Figure 1-315	Fasten one retainer	217
Figure 1-316	Install one screw	218
Figure 1-317	Install the ground wire and one screw	218
Figure 1-318	Install the wire harnesses	219
Figure 1-319	Connect four connectors	219

Figure 1-320	Install the cover	220
Figure 1-321	Install two screws	220
Figure 1-322	Install the background selector	221
Figure 1-323	Rotate the input tray down	221
Figure 1-324	Close the document-feeder door	222
Figure 1-325	Place the white backing on the scanner	223
Figure 1-326	Peel off the adhesive backing	223
Figure 1-327	Place the two mylar-spacer strips onto the adhesive	224
Figure 1-328	Peel off the adhesive backing	224
Figure 1-329	Verify that the white backing is correctly aligned	225
Figure 1-330	Close the document feeder and press down	225
Figure 1-331	Open the document feeder	226
Figure 1-332	Press along the white backing	226
Figure 1-333	Peel off the protective sheet	227
Figure 1-334	Close the document feeder	227
Figure 1-335	Remove the document-feeder hinge assembly	229
Figure 1-336	Remove two screws	231
Figure 1-337	Remove the cover	231
Figure 1-338	Disconnect four connectors	232
Figure 1-339	Release four retainers	232
Figure 1-340	Remove one screw and the ground wire	233
Figure 1-341	Remove one screw	233
Figure 1-342	Release one retainer	234
Figure 1-343	Partially slide the SCB out	234
Figure 1-344	Release three connectors	235
Figure 1-345	Remove the FFC	235
Figure 1-346	Release two tabs	236
Figure 1-347	Remove the ferrite and holder	236
Figure 1-348	Remove the FFC	237
Figure 1-349	Remove the SCB	237
Figure 1-350	Loosen two screws	238
Figure 1-351	Remove the document feeder	238
Figure 1-352	Release the scanner latch	239
Figure 1-353	Open the image scanner assembly	239
Figure 1-354	Remove one screw	240
Figure 1-355	Release one tab	240
Figure 1-356	Remove one screw	241
Figure 1-357	Remove the scanner cable cover	241
Figure 1-358	Feed the cables through the opening	242
Figure 1-359	Disconnect one connector	242
Figure 1-360	Close the image scanner assembly	243

Figure 1-361	Remove one screw	243
Figure 1-362	Release the cover	244
Figure 1-363	Release three tabs	244
Figure 1-364	Remove the cover	245
Figure 1-365	Remove three screws	245
Figure 1-366	Slide the image scanner assembly until it stops	246
Figure 1-367	Remove the scanner assembly	246
Figure 1-368	Install the lower scanner cover tab	247
Figure 1-369	Install the scanner assembly	248
Figure 1-370	Slide the image scanner assembly as shown	248
Figure 1-371	Install three screws	249
Figure 1-372	Install one screw	249
Figure 1-373	Engage the tabs	250
Figure 1-374	Engage three tabs	250
Figure 1-375	Install one screw	251
Figure 1-376	Install one screw	251
Figure 1-377	Release the scanner latch	252
Figure 1-378	Open the image scanner assembly	252
Figure 1-379	Connect one connector	253
Figure 1-380	Feed the cables through the opening	253
Figure 1-381	Install the scanner cable cover	254
Figure 1-382	Install one screw	254
Figure 1-383	Route the document feeder FFC and cables	255
Figure 1-384	Install the document feeder	255
Figure 1-385	Tighten two screws	256
Figure 1-386	Install the SCB	256
Figure 1-387	Connect the FFC	257
Figure 1-388	Install the ferrite and holder	257
Figure 1-389	Check the two tabs	258
Figure 1-390	Connect the FFC	258
Figure 1-391	Connect three connectors	259
Figure 1-392	Slide the SCB in	259
Figure 1-393	Fasten one retainer	260
Figure 1-394	Install one screw	260
Figure 1-395	Install the ground wire and one screw	261
Figure 1-396	Install the wire harnesses	261
Figure 1-397	Connect four connectors	262
Figure 1-398	Install the cover	262
Figure 1-399	Install two screws	263
Figure 1-400	Open the document feeder	264
Figure 1-401	Remove the white backing	264

Figure 1-402	Remove remaining adhesive	265
Figure 1-403	Place the white backing on the scanner	265
Figure 1-404	Peel off the adhesive backing	266
Figure 1-405	Place the two mylar-spacer strips onto the adhesive	266
Figure 1-406	Peel off the adhesive backing	267
Figure 1-407	Verify that the white backing is correctly aligned	267
Figure 1-408	Close the document feeder and press down	268
Figure 1-409	Open the document feeder	268
Figure 1-410	Press along the white backing	269
Figure 1-411	Peel off the protective sheet	269
Figure 1-412	Close the document feeder	270
Figure 1-413	Identification and location (product base)	273
Figure 1-414	Remove two screws	275
Figure 1-415	Release two tabs	275
Figure 1-416	Release the right-upper corner	276
Figure 1-417	Slide the cover to the right	276
Figure 1-418	Remove the cover	277
Figure 1-419	Note of the location of the tabs	278
Figure 1-420	Align four tabs	278
Figure 1-421	Slide the cover to the left	279
Figure 1-422	Engage one locking pin	279
Figure 1-423	Engage two tabs	280
Figure 1-424	Check cover installation	280
Figure 1-425	Install two screws	281
Figure 1-426	Remove the envelope feeder cover	282
Figure 1-427	Remove one screw	284
Figure 1-428	Remove the cover	284
Figure 1-429	Install the cover	285
Figure 1-430	Install one screw	286
Figure 1-431	Secure the outer retaining pins	288
Figure 1-432	Release two outer retaining pins	288
Figure 1-433	Release one pin	289
Figure 1-434	Release the left-side spring	289
Figure 1-435	Release the right-side spring	290
Figure 1-436	Remove the cover	290
Figure 1-437	Install the cover	291
Figure 1-438	Engage the right-side spring	292
Figure 1-439	Engage the left-side spring	292
Figure 1-440	Engage two outer retaining pins	293
Figure 1-441	Remove the low adhesive tape	293
Figure 1-442	Open the tray	295

Figure 1-443	Remove the tray	295
Figure 1-444	Remove the formatter	297
Figure 1-445	Remove the formatter	297
Figure 1-446	Remove the output bin	298
Figure 1-447	Remove the stapling mailbox	299
Figure 1-448	Remove the duplex accessory	300
Figure 1-449	Remove one screw	300
Figure 1-450	Remove the side-rear cover	301
Figure 1-451	Recycle and unpack	301
Figure 1-452	Install the side-rear cover	302
Figure 1-453	Install one screw	302
Figure 1-454	Install the duplex accessory	303
Figure 1-455	Install the output bin	303
Figure 1-456	Install the stapling mailbox	304
Figure 1-457	Align the formatter with the guides and push the formatter into the slot	305
Figure 1-458	Tighten the two thumbscrews	305
Figure 1-459	Verify that the formatter is functioning	306
Figure 1-460	Remove two screws	307
Figure 1-461	Note the locations of the tabs and pins	308
Figure 1-462	Release one tab	308
Figure 1-463	Release two tabs	309
Figure 1-464	Release the assembly	309
Figure 1-465	Remove the assembly	310
Figure 1-466	Separate the logo panel and front-left cover	310
Figure 1-467	Note the locations of the tabs and pins	311
Figure 1-468	Align the hook tabs on the top of the assembly	311
Figure 1-469	Position the tab on the assembly behind the fan duct	312
Figure 1-470	Install the assembly	312
Figure 1-471	Verify that the left-side tab is correctly installed	313
Figure 1-472	Verify that the reverse assembly fan is correctly installed	313
Figure 1-473	Remove two screws	315
Figure 1-474	Release two tabs	315
Figure 1-475	Release the right-upper corner	316
Figure 1-476	Slide the cover to the right	316
Figure 1-477	Remove the cover	317
Figure 1-478	Remove the power-switch assembly	317
Figure 1-479	Install the power-switch assembly	318
Figure 1-480	Note of the location of the tabs	319
Figure 1-481	Align four tabs	319
Figure 1-482	Slide the cover to the left	320
Figure 1-483	Engage one locking pin	320

Figure 1-484	Engage two tabs	321
Figure 1-485	Check cover installation	321
Figure 1-486	Install two screws	322
Figure 1-487	Remove three screws	324
Figure 1-488	Remove the cover	324
Figure 1-489	Install the cover	325
Figure 1-490	Install three screws	326
Figure 1-491	Remove one screw	328
Figure 1-492	Remove the cover	328
Figure 1-493	Remove three screws	329
Figure 1-494	Remove the cover	329
Figure 1-495	Remove three screws	330
Figure 1-496	Remove the cover	330
Figure 1-497	Install the cover	331
Figure 1-498	Install three screws	332
Figure 1-499	Install the cover	332
Figure 1-500	Install three screws	333
Figure 1-501	Install the cover	333
Figure 1-502	Install one screw	334
Figure 1-503	Remove one screw	336
Figure 1-504	Remove the cover	336
Figure 1-505	Remove three screws	337
Figure 1-506	Remove the cover	337
Figure 1-507	Remove three screws	338
Figure 1-508	Remove the cover	338
Figure 1-509	Remove one screw	339
Figure 1-510	Remove the cover	339
Figure 1-511	Install the cover	340
Figure 1-512	Install one screw	341
Figure 1-513	Install the cover	341
Figure 1-514	Install three screws	342
Figure 1-515	Install the cover	342
Figure 1-516	Install three screws	343
Figure 1-517	Install the cover	343
Figure 1-518	Install one screw	344
Figure 1-519	Secure the outer retaining pins	346
Figure 1-520	Release two outer retaining pins	346
Figure 1-521	Release one pin	347
Figure 1-522	Release the left-side spring	347
Figure 1-523	Release the right-side spring	348
Figure 1-524	Remove the cover	348

Figure 1-525	Remove three screws	349
Figure 1-526	Remove the cover	349
Figure 1-527	Rotate the stopper	350
Figure 1-528	Remove the shaft	350
Figure 1-529	Remove the door	351
Figure 1-530	Install the door	352
Figure 1-531	Install the shaft	352
Figure 1-532	Rotate the stopper	353
Figure 1-533	Install the cover	353
Figure 1-534	Install three screws	354
Figure 1-535	Install the cover	354
Figure 1-536	Engage the right-side spring	355
Figure 1-537	Engage the left-side spring	355
Figure 1-538	Engage two outer retaining pins	356
Figure 1-539	Remove the low adhesive tape	356
Figure 1-540	Remove one screw	358
Figure 1-541	Release the corner of the cover	359
Figure 1-542	Remove the document feeder hinge cover	359
Figure 1-543	Install the document-feeder hinge cover	360
Figure 1-544	Remove the registration assembly and grounding plate	362
Figure 1-545	Remove the registration assembly	362
Figure 1-546	Remove two screws	364
Figure 1-547	Remove the cover	364
Figure 1-548	Remove one screw	365
Figure 1-549	Remove the switch	365
Figure 1-550	Connect one connector	366
Figure 1-551	Install one screw	367
Figure 1-552	Install the cover	367
Figure 1-553	Install two screws	368
Figure 1-554	Remove the reverse assembly upper guide assembly	369
Figure 1-555	Install the reverse assembly upper guide assembly	370
Figure 1-556	Remove one screw and the cover	371
Figure 1-557	Release one tab and one clip	371
Figure 1-558	Rotate the cover	372
Figure 1-559	Remove the cover	372
Figure 1-560	Disconnect two connectors	373
Figure 1-561	Remove two screws	373
Figure 1-562	Lift up the front of the assembly	374
Figure 1-563	Remove the reverse assembly	374
Figure 1-564	Remove the cover	375
Figure 1-565	Disconnect one connector	376

Figure 1-566	Disconnect one connector	376
Figure 1-567	Remove the laser/scanner assembly	377
Figure 1-568	Remove the cover	378
Figure 1-569	Remove the cartridge sensor assembly	379
Figure 1-570	Remove the antistatic spring	380
Figure 1-571	Disconnect one connector	381
Figure 1-572	Remove the temperature sensor	381
Figure 1-573	Remove one screw	383
Figure 1-574	Remove the cover	383
Figure 1-575	Remove three screws	384
Figure 1-576	Remove the cover	384
Figure 1-577	Remove one screw	385
Figure 1-578	Remove the cover	385
Figure 1-579	Remove six screws	386
Figure 1-580	Disconnect one connector and remove the shield	386
Figure 1-581	Install the shield and connect one connector	387
Figure 1-582	Remove six screws	387
Figure 1-583	Install the cover	388
Figure 1-584	Install one screw	388
Figure 1-585	Install the cover	389
Figure 1-586	Install three screws	389
Figure 1-587	Install the cover	390
Figure 1-588	Install one screw	390
Figure 1-589	Remove one screw	392
Figure 1-590	Remove the cover	392
Figure 1-591	Remove three screws	393
Figure 1-592	Remove the cover	393
Figure 1-593	Remove one screw	394
Figure 1-594	Remove the cover	394
Figure 1-595	Remove six screws	395
Figure 1-596	Disconnect one connector and remove the shield	395
Figure 1-597	Disconnect all of the connectors	396
Figure 1-598	Remove two screws and release one tab	396
Figure 1-599	Remove the DC controller	397
Figure 1-600	Install the DC controller	398
Figure 1-601	Connect all of the connectors	398
Figure 1-602	Install the shield and connect one connector	399
Figure 1-603	Remove six screws	399
Figure 1-604	Install the cover	400
Figure 1-605	Install one screw	400
Figure 1-606	Install the cover	401

Figure 1-607	Install three screws	401
Figure 1-608	Install the cover	402
Figure 1-609	Install one screw	402
Figure 1-610	Remove one screw	404
Figure 1-611	Remove the cover	404
Figure 1-612	Remove one screw	405
Figure 1-613	Remove the cover	405
Figure 1-614	Secure the outer retaining pins	406
Figure 1-615	Release two outer retaining pins	406
Figure 1-616	Release one pin	407
Figure 1-617	Release the left-side spring	407
Figure 1-618	Release the right-side spring	408
Figure 1-619	Remove the cover	408
Figure 1-620	Remove three screws	409
Figure 1-621	Remove the cover	409
Figure 1-622	Rotate the stopper	410
Figure 1-623	Remove the shaft	410
Figure 1-624	Remove the door	411
Figure 1-625	Remove six screws	411
Figure 1-626	Disconnect one connector and remove the shield	412
Figure 1-627	Remove three screws and the Tray 1 gear cover	412
Figure 1-628	Disconnect two connectors	413
Figure 1-629	Release the wire harnesses	413
Figure 1-630	Remove four screws	414
Figure 1-631	Remove the Tray 1 pickup assembly	414
Figure 1-632	Install the Tray 1 pickup assembly	415
Figure 1-633	Install four screws	416
Figure 1-634	Install the wire harnesses in the guide	416
Figure 1-635	Connect two connectors	417
Figure 1-636	Install the Tray 1 gear cover	417
Figure 1-637	Install the shield and connect one connector	418
Figure 1-638	Remove six screws	418
Figure 1-639	Install the door	419
Figure 1-640	Install the shaft	419
Figure 1-641	Rotate the stopper	420
Figure 1-642	Install the cover	420
Figure 1-643	Install three screws	421
Figure 1-644	Install the cover	421
Figure 1-645	Engage the right-side spring	422
Figure 1-646	Engage the left-side spring	422
Figure 1-647	Engage two outer retaining pins	423

Figure 1-648	Remove the low adhesive tape	423
Figure 1-649	Install the cover	424
Figure 1-650	Install one screw	424
Figure 1-651	Install the cover	425
Figure 1-652	Install one screw	425
Figure 1-653	Remove the formatter	427
Figure 1-654	Remove the formatter	427
Figure 1-655	Remove one screw	428
Figure 1-656	Remove the cover	428
Figure 1-657	Remove three screws	429
Figure 1-658	Remove the cover	429
Figure 1-659	Remove one screw	430
Figure 1-660	Remove the cover	430
Figure 1-661	Remove six screws	431
Figure 1-662	Disconnect one connector and remove the shield	431
Figure 1-663	Disconnect four connectors	432
Figure 1-664	Disconnect three connectors	432
Figure 1-665	Remove two screws	433
Figure 1-666	Remove the ICB	433
Figure 1-667	Recycle and unpack	434
Figure 1-668	Install the ICB	434
Figure 1-669	Install two screws	435
Figure 1-670	Connect three connectors	435
Figure 1-671	Connect four connectors	436
Figure 1-672	Install the shield and connect one connector	436
Figure 1-673	Remove six screws	437
Figure 1-674	Install the cover	437
Figure 1-675	Install one screw	438
Figure 1-676	Install the cover	438
Figure 1-677	Install three screws	439
Figure 1-678	Install the cover	439
Figure 1-679	Install one screw	440
Figure 1-680	Align the formatter with the guides and push the formatter into the slot	440
Figure 1-681	Tighten the two thumbscrews	441
Figure 1-682	Verify that the formatter is functioning	442
Figure 1-683	Remove one screw	444
Figure 1-684	Remove the cover	444
Figure 1-685	Remove three screws	445
Figure 1-686	Remove the cover	445
Figure 1-687	Remove one screw	446
Figure 1-688	Remove the cover	446

Figure 1-689	Remove six screws	447
Figure 1-690	Disconnect one connector and remove the shield	447
Figure 1-691	Remove the feed motor	448
Figure 1-692	Install the feed motor	449
Figure 1-693	Install the shield and connect one connector	449
Figure 1-694	Remove six screws	450
Figure 1-695	Install the cover	450
Figure 1-696	Install one screw	451
Figure 1-697	Install the cover	451
Figure 1-698	Install three screws	452
Figure 1-699	Install the cover	452
Figure 1-700	Install one screw	453
Figure 1-701	Remove the drum motor	454
Figure 1-702	Remove the fuser motor	455
Figure 1-703	Release two tabs	456
Figure 1-704	Remove the fan duct	456
Figure 1-705	Remove two screws and the cover	457
Figure 1-706	Remove the main fan	457
Figure 1-707	Remove the laser/scanner fan	458
Figure 1-708	Install the laser/scanner fan	459
Figure 1-709	Remove the cartridge front-side fan	460
Figure 1-710	Install the cartridge front-side fan	461
Figure 1-711	Remove the low-voltage power supply fan	462
Figure 1-712	Install the low-voltage power supply fan	463
Figure 1-713	Remove one in-line connector	464
Figure 1-714	Disconnect one in-line connector	464
Figure 1-715	Release the fan and duct	465
Figure 1-716	Remove the fan and duct	465
Figure 1-717	Separate the fan from the duct	466
Figure 1-718	Release two tabs	467
Figure 1-719	Remove the fan duct	467
Figure 1-720	Remove two screws and the cover	468
Figure 1-721	Disconnect one connector	468
Figure 1-722	Release the fan duct	469
Figure 1-723	Remove the fan duct	469
Figure 1-724	Remove the cartridge fan	470
Figure 1-725	Install the cartridge fan	470
Figure 1-726	Remove the Tray 1 gear cover	471
Figure 1-727	Disconnect two connectors	472
Figure 1-728	Remove one screw	472
Figure 1-729	Release one tab	473

Figure 1-730	Remove the assembly	473
Figure 1-731	Remove five screws and the plate	474
Figure 1-732	Remove one screw	475
Figure 1-733	Remove the guide	475
Figure 1-734	Remove four screws	476
Figure 1-735	Remove five screws	476
Figure 1-736	Release one tab	477
Figure 1-737	Remove the sheet-metal plate	477
Figure 1-738	Remove one screw	478
Figure 1-739	Remove the output accessory detection switch	478
Figure 1-740	Remove the formatter	480
Figure 1-741	Remove the formatter	481
Figure 1-742	Remove the output bin	481
Figure 1-743	Remove the stapling mailbox	482
Figure 1-744	Remove the duplex accessory	483
Figure 1-745	Remove one screw	483
Figure 1-746	Remove the side-rear cover	484
Figure 1-747	Remove one screw	484
Figure 1-748	Remove the cover	485
Figure 1-749	Remove three screws	485
Figure 1-750	Remove the cover	486
Figure 1-751	Remove three screws	486
Figure 1-752	Remove the cover	487
Figure 1-753	Remove one screw	487
Figure 1-754	Remove the cover	488
Figure 1-755	Remove six screws	488
Figure 1-756	Disconnect one connector and remove the shield	489
Figure 1-757	Disconnect four connectors	489
Figure 1-758	Disconnect three connectors	490
Figure 1-759	Remove two screws	490
Figure 1-760	Remove the ICB	491
Figure 1-761	Remove the sheet-metal plate	491
Figure 1-762	Remove one screw	492
Figure 1-763	Remove the guide	492
Figure 1-764	Remove four screws	493
Figure 1-765	Remove two screws	493
Figure 1-766	Release one tab	494
Figure 1-767	Remove the sheet-metal plate	494
Figure 1-768	Disconnect seven connectors	495
Figure 1-769	Remove three screws	495
Figure 1-770	Release one tab	496

Figure 1-771	Remove the LVPS	496
Figure 1-772	Recycle and unpack	497
Figure 1-773	Install the LVPS	498
Figure 1-774	Check one tab	498
Figure 1-775	Install three screws	499
Figure 1-776	Connect seven connectors	499
Figure 1-777	Install the sheet-metal plate	500
Figure 1-778	Check one tab	500
Figure 1-779	Install five screws	501
Figure 1-780	Install four screws	501
Figure 1-781	Install the guide	502
Figure 1-782	Install one screw	502
Figure 1-783	Install the sheet-metal plate	503
Figure 1-784	Install the ICB	503
Figure 1-785	Install two screws	504
Figure 1-786	Connect three connectors	504
Figure 1-787	Connect four connectors	505
Figure 1-788	Install the shield and connect one connector	505
Figure 1-789	Remove six screws	506
Figure 1-790	Install the cover	506
Figure 1-791	Install one screw	507
Figure 1-792	Install the cover	507
Figure 1-793	Install three screws	508
Figure 1-794	Install the cover	508
Figure 1-795	Install three screws	509
Figure 1-796	Install the cover	509
Figure 1-797	Install one screw	510
Figure 1-798	Install the side-rear cover	510
Figure 1-799	Install one screw	511
Figure 1-800	Install the duplex accessory	511
Figure 1-801	Install the output bin	512
Figure 1-802	Install the stapling mailbox	513
Figure 1-803	Align the formatter with the guides and push the formatter into the slot	514
Figure 1-804	Tighten the two thumbscrews	514
Figure 1-805	Verify that the formatter is functioning	515
Figure 1-806	Disconnect one connector	516
Figure 1-807	Remove the lifter assembly	517
Figure 1-808	Remove one spring	517
Figure 1-809	Release the wire harnesses	518
Figure 1-810	Remove the the guide	519
Figure 1-811	Disconnect one connector and remove one spring	519

Figure 1-812	Remove the lifter assembly	520
Figure 1-813	Remove the formatter	523
Figure 1-814	Remove the formatter	523
Figure 1-815	Remove the output bin	524
Figure 1-816	Remove the stapling mailbox	525
Figure 1-817	Remove the duplex accessory	526
Figure 1-818	Remove the fuser-entrance guide	526
Figure 1-819	Remove the fuser	527
Figure 1-820	Remove two screws	527
Figure 1-821	Release two tabs	528
Figure 1-822	Release the right-upper corner	528
Figure 1-823	Slide the cover to the right	529
Figure 1-824	Remove the cover	529
Figure 1-825	Remove one screw	530
Figure 1-826	Remove the side-rear cover	530
Figure 1-827	Remove one screw	531
Figure 1-828	Remove the cover	531
Figure 1-829	Remove three screws	532
Figure 1-830	Remove the cover	532
Figure 1-831	Remove three screws	533
Figure 1-832	Remove the cover	533
Figure 1-833	Remove one screw	534
Figure 1-834	Remove the cover	534
Figure 1-835	Remove six screws	535
Figure 1-836	Disconnect one connector and remove the shield	535
Figure 1-837	Disconnect all of the connectors	536
Figure 1-838	Remove two screws and release one tab	536
Figure 1-839	Remove the DC controller	537
Figure 1-840	Disconnect four connectors	537
Figure 1-841	Disconnect three connectors	538
Figure 1-842	Remove two screws	538
Figure 1-843	Remove the ICB	539
Figure 1-844	Remove the sheet-metal plate	539
Figure 1-845	Remove one screw	540
Figure 1-846	Remove the guide	540
Figure 1-847	Remove four screws	541
Figure 1-848	Remove two screws	541
Figure 1-849	Release one tab	542
Figure 1-850	Remove the sheet-metal plate	542
Figure 1-851	Disconnect seven connectors	543
Figure 1-852	Remove three screws	543

Figure 1-853	Release one tab	544
Figure 1-854	Remove the LVPS	544
Figure 1-855	Release two tabs	545
Figure 1-856	Remove the fan duct	545
Figure 1-857	Remove the cover	546
Figure 1-858	Disconnect two connectors and remove four screws	546
Figure 1-859	Remove two screws and release one tab	547
Figure 1-860	Release the guide	547
Figure 1-861	Remove the guide	548
Figure 1-862	Release the wire harnesses and remove four screws	548
Figure 1-863	Feed the wire harnesses through the hole	549
Figure 1-864	Feed the wire harnesses through the hole	549
Figure 1-865	Remove the HVPS	550
Figure 1-866	Remove one screw and release the wire harness	550
Figure 1-867	Remove the feed assembly	551
Figure 1-868	Recycle and unpack	551
Figure 1-869	Check the drive belts and belt shafts	552
Figure 1-870	Check the foot and slot	552
Figure 1-871	Install the feed assembly	553
Figure 1-872	Verify the feed assembly installation	553
Figure 1-873	Install five screws	554
Figure 1-874	Connect one wire harness and install one screw and release	554
Figure 1-875	Partially install the HVPS	555
Figure 1-876	Feed the wire harnesses through the hole	555
Figure 1-877	Feed the wire harnesses through the hole	556
Figure 1-878	Install four screws and install the wire harnesses	556
Figure 1-879	Install the guide	557
Figure 1-880	Check the guide	557
Figure 1-881	Install two screws	558
Figure 1-882	Install four screws and connect two connectors	558
Figure 1-883	Install the cover	559
Figure 1-884	Install the fan duct	559
Figure 1-885	Check two tabs	560
Figure 1-886	Install the LVPS	561
Figure 1-887	Check one tab	561
Figure 1-888	Install three screws	562
Figure 1-889	Connect seven connectors	562
Figure 1-890	Install the sheet-metal plate	563
Figure 1-891	Check one tab	563
Figure 1-892	Install five screws	564
Figure 1-893	Install four screws	564

Figure 1-894	Install the guide	565
Figure 1-895	Install one screw	565
Figure 1-896	Install the sheet-metal plate	566
Figure 1-897	Install the ICB	566
Figure 1-898	Install two screws	567
Figure 1-899	Connect three connectors	567
Figure 1-900	Connect four connectors	568
Figure 1-901	Install the DC controller	568
Figure 1-902	Connect all of the connectors	569
Figure 1-903	Install the shield and connect one connector	569
Figure 1-904	Remove six screws	570
Figure 1-905	Install the cover	570
Figure 1-906	Install one screw	571
Figure 1-907	Install the cover	571
Figure 1-908	Install three screws	572
Figure 1-909	Install the cover	572
Figure 1-910	Install three screws	573
Figure 1-911	Install the side-rear cover	573
Figure 1-912	Install one screw	574
Figure 1-913	Install the cover	574
Figure 1-914	Install one screw	575
Figure 1-915	Note of the location of the tabs	575
Figure 1-916	Align four tabs	576
Figure 1-917	Slide the cover to the left	576
Figure 1-918	Engage one locking pin	577
Figure 1-919	Engage two tabs	577
Figure 1-920	Check cover installation	578
Figure 1-921	Install two screws	578
Figure 1-922	Install the fuser	579
Figure 1-923	Install the fuser-entrance guide	579
Figure 1-924	Install the duplex accessory	580
Figure 1-925	Install the output bin	580
Figure 1-926	Install the stapling mailbox	581
Figure 1-927	Align the formatter with the guides and push the formatter into the slot	582
Figure 1-928	Tighten the two thumbscrews	582
Figure 1-929	Verify that the formatter is functioning	583
Figure 1-930	Remove the feed roller assembly	584
Figure 1-931	Remove the output bin	586
Figure 1-932	Remove the stapling mailbox	587
Figure 1-933	Secure the outer retaining pins	588
Figure 1-934	Release two outer retaining pins	588

Figure 1-935	Release one pin	589
Figure 1-936	Release the left-side spring	589
Figure 1-937	Release the right-side spring	590
Figure 1-938	Remove the cover	590
Figure 1-939	Remove one screw	591
Figure 1-940	Remove the cover	591
Figure 1-941	Remove three screws	592
Figure 1-942	Remove the cover	592
Figure 1-943	Remove three screws	593
Figure 1-944	Remove the cover	593
Figure 1-945	Remove one screw	594
Figure 1-946	Remove the cover	594
Figure 1-947	Rotate the stopper	595
Figure 1-948	Remove the shaft	595
Figure 1-949	Remove the door	596
Figure 1-950	Remove six screws	596
Figure 1-951	Disconnect one connector and remove the shield	597
Figure 1-952	Disconnect all of the connectors	597
Figure 1-953	Remove two screws and release one tab	598
Figure 1-954	Remove the DC controller	598
Figure 1-955	Remove the feed motor	599
Figure 1-956	Remove the pickup drive assembly	599
Figure 1-957	Install the pickup drive assembly	600
Figure 1-958	Check the pickup drive assembly gears	601
Figure 1-959	Install the feed motor	601
Figure 1-960	Install the DC controller	602
Figure 1-961	Connect all of the connectors	602
Figure 1-962	Install the shield and connect one connector	603
Figure 1-963	Remove six screws	603
Figure 1-964	Install the door	604
Figure 1-965	Install the shaft	604
Figure 1-966	Rotate the stopper	605
Figure 1-967	Install the cover	605
Figure 1-968	Install one screw	606
Figure 1-969	Install the cover	606
Figure 1-970	Install three screws	607
Figure 1-971	Install the cover	607
Figure 1-972	Install three screws	608
Figure 1-973	Install the cover	608
Figure 1-974	Install one screw	609
Figure 1-975	Install the cover	609

Figure 1-976	Engage the right-side spring	610
Figure 1-977	Engage the left-side spring	610
Figure 1-978	Engage two outer retaining pins	611
Figure 1-979	Remove the low adhesive tape	611
Figure 1-980	Install the output bin	612
Figure 1-981	Install the stapling mailbox	612
Figure 1-982	Remove the output bin	615
Figure 1-983	Remove the stapling mailbox	616
Figure 1-984	Secure the outer retaining pins	617
Figure 1-985	Release two outer retaining pins	617
Figure 1-986	Release one pin	618
Figure 1-987	Release the left-side spring	618
Figure 1-988	Release the right-side spring	619
Figure 1-989	Remove the cover	619
Figure 1-990	Remove two screws	620
Figure 1-991	Remove the cover	620
Figure 1-992	Remove one screw	621
Figure 1-993	Remove the switch	621
Figure 1-994	Remove one screw	622
Figure 1-995	Remove the cover	622
Figure 1-996	Remove three screws	623
Figure 1-997	Remove the cover	623
Figure 1-998	Remove three screws	624
Figure 1-999	Remove the cover	624
Figure 1-1000	Remove one screw	625
Figure 1-1001	Remove the cover	625
Figure 1-1002	Remove six screws	626
Figure 1-1003	Disconnect one connector and remove the shield	626
Figure 1-1004	Disconnect all of the connectors	627
Figure 1-1005	Remove two screws and release one tab	627
Figure 1-1006	Remove the DC controller	628
Figure 1-1007	Remove three screws and the Tray 1 gear cover	628
Figure 1-1008	Disconnect two connectors	629
Figure 1-1009	Release the wire harnesses	629
Figure 1-1010	Remove four screws	630
Figure 1-1011	Remove the Tray 1 pickup assembly	630
Figure 1-1012	Remove the feed motor	631
Figure 1-1013	Remove the pickup drive assembly	631
Figure 1-1014	Remove one screw and the cassette rail	632
Figure 1-1015	Remove seven screws	632
Figure 1-1016	Disengage the cover retainer	633

Figure 1-1017	Remove the sheet-metal plate	633
Figure 1-1018	Remove one screw	634
Figure 1-1019	Disconnect two connectors and remove one screw	634
Figure 1-1020	Remove the cassette pickup assembly	635
Figure 1-1021	Install the cassette pickup assembly	636
Figure 1-1022	Install one screw and connect two connectors	636
Figure 1-1023	Install one screw	637
Figure 1-1024	Install the sheet-metal plate	637
Figure 1-1025	Engage the cover retainer	638
Figure 1-1026	Install seven screws	638
Figure 1-1027	Install the cassette rail and one screw	639
Figure 1-1028	Install the pickup drive assembly	639
Figure 1-1029	Check the pickup drive assembly gears	640
Figure 1-1030	Install the feed motor	640
Figure 1-1031	Install the Tray 1 pickup assembly	641
Figure 1-1032	Install four screws	641
Figure 1-1033	Install the wire harnesses in the guide	642
Figure 1-1034	Connect two connectors	642
Figure 1-1035	Install the Tray 1 gear cover	643
Figure 1-1036	Install the DC controller	643
Figure 1-1037	Connect all of the connectors	644
Figure 1-1038	Install the shield and connect one connector	644
Figure 1-1039	Remove six screws	645
Figure 1-1040	Install the cover	645
Figure 1-1041	Install one screw	646
Figure 1-1042	Install the cover	646
Figure 1-1043	Install three screws	647
Figure 1-1044	Install the cover	647
Figure 1-1045	Install three screws	648
Figure 1-1046	Install the cover	648
Figure 1-1047	Install one screw	649
Figure 1-1048	Connect one connector	649
Figure 1-1049	Install one screw	650
Figure 1-1050	Install the cover	650
Figure 1-1051	Install two screws	651
Figure 1-1052	Install the cover	651
Figure 1-1053	Engage the right-side spring	652
Figure 1-1054	Engage the left-side spring	652
Figure 1-1055	Engage two outer retaining pins	653
Figure 1-1056	Remove the low adhesive tape	653
Figure 1-1057	Install the output bin	654

Figure 1-1058	Install the stapling mailbox	654
Figure 1-1059	Remove the rear cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	658
Figure 1-1060	Left cover tab locations (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	659
Figure 1-1061	Release one tab (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	660
Figure 1-1062	Release one tab (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	660
Figure 1-1063	Release three tabs (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	661
Figure 1-1064	Locate three tabs (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	661
Figure 1-1065	Remove the left cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	662
Figure 1-1066	Left cover tab locations (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	663
Figure 1-1067	Release one tab (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	664
Figure 1-1068	Release four tabs (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	664
Figure 1-1069	Locate three tabs (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	665
Figure 1-1070	Remove the right cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	665
Figure 1-1071	Remove two screws (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	666
Figure 1-1072	Remove the cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	666
Figure 1-1073	Remove three screws (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	667
Figure 1-1074	Remove the front-upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	668
Figure 1-1075	Remove the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	669
Figure 1-1076	Remove the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	669
Figure 1-1077	Gears on the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	670
Figure 1-1078	Remove the tray rail (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	671
Figure 1-1079	Remove the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	672
Figure 1-1080	Remove the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	672
Figure 1-1081	Remove one screw and disconnect three connectors (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	673
Figure 1-1082	Remove one screw (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	673
Figure 1-1083	Remove the pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	674
Figure 1-1084	Gears on the paper drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	674
Figure 1-1085	Disconnect one connector (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	675
Figure 1-1086	Remove the lifter assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	675
Figure 1-1087	Disconnect one connector and remove one spring (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	676
Figure 1-1088	Remove the sheet-metal plate (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	676
Figure 1-1089	Remove the lifter assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	677
Figure 1-1090	Remove the controller PCA (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	678
Figure 1-1091	Remove the rear and rear lower cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	680
Figure 1-1092	Remove the stopper (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	681
Figure 1-1093	Remove the stock box door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	681
Figure 1-1094	Remove four screws (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	682
Figure 1-1095	Remove the stock box (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	682
Figure 1-1096	Remove the stock box rails (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	683
Figure 1-1097	Remove the left cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	684
Figure 1-1098	Remove the front upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	685

Figure 1-1099	Remove the right-front cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	686
Figure 1-1100	Remove the stopper (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	687
Figure 1-1101	Release the link arm (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	687
Figure 1-1102	Remove the right door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	688
Figure 1-1103	Remove the right center cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	689
Figure 1-1104	Remove the screws (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	690
Figure 1-1105	Release two tabs (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	691
Figure 1-1106	Remove the right-door hinge cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	691
Figure 1-1107	Remove the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	692
Figure 1-1108	Remove the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	693
Figure 1-1109	Paper drive assembly gears (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	694
Figure 1-1110	Remove the tray rail (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	695
Figure 1-1111	Remove the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	696
Figure 1-1112	Remove the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	696
Figure 1-1113	Disconnect connectors and remove the screw (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	697
Figure 1-1114	Remove the paper-pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	697
Figure 1-1115	Gears on the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	698
Figure 1-1116	Disconnect connector (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	699
Figure 1-1117	Remove the lifter base assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	699
Figure 1-1118	Disconnect one connector and remove one spring (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	700
Figure 1-1119	Remove the sheet-metal plate (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	701
Figure 1-1120	Remove the lifter assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	701
Figure 1-1121	Disconnect three connectors (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	702
Figure 1-1122	Remove the controller PCA (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	703
Figure 1-1123	Remove rear and rear lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder)	705
Figure 1-1124	Remove the stopper (HCI optional paper feeder)	706
Figure 1-1125	Remove the right door (HCI optional paper feeder)	706
Figure 1-1126	Remove the right center cover (HCI optional paper feeder)	707
Figure 1-1127	Remove the screws (HCI optional paper feeder)	708
Figure 1-1128	Remove the right lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder)	708
Figure 1-1129	Remove the front upper cover (HCI optional paper feeder)	709
Figure 1-1130	Remove the screw (HCI optional paper feeder)	710
Figure 1-1131	Remove the right front cover (HCI optional paper feeder)	710
Figure 1-1132	Remove the left cover (HCI optional paper feeder)	711
Figure 1-1133	Remove the tray rail (HCI optional paper feeder)	712
Figure 1-1134	Remove the pickup drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)	713
Figure 1-1135	Disconnect connectors and remove the screw (HCI optional paper feeder)	713
Figure 1-1136	Remove the Tray 3 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)	714
Figure 1-1137	Paper drive assembly gears (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	715
Figure 1-1138	Remove the tray rail (HCI optional paper feeder)	716
Figure 1-1139	Remove the pickup drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)	717

Figure 1-1140	Disconnect connectors and remove the screw (HCI optional paper feeder)	717
Figure 1-1141	Remove the latch holder (HCI optional paper feeder)	718
Figure 1-1142	Remove the Tray 4 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)	718
Figure 1-1143	Paper drive assembly gears (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	719
Figure 1-1144	Remove the tray rail (HCI optional paper feeder)	720
Figure 1-1145	Disconnect connectors and remove the screw (HCI optional paper feeder)	720
Figure 1-1146	Remove the Tray 5 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)	721
Figure 1-1147	Remove the pickup drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)	722
Figure 1-1148	Gears on the pickup drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)	723
Figure 1-1149	Disconnect connector (HCI optional paper feeder)	724
Figure 1-1150	Remove the Tray 3 lifter base assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)	724
Figure 1-1151	Remove the lifter base assembly spring (HCI optional paper feeder)	725
Figure 1-1152	Disconnect connector (HCI optional paper feeder)	726
Figure 1-1153	Remove the Tray 4 lifter base assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)	726
Figure 1-1154	Remove the lifter base assembly spring (HCI optional paper feeder)	727
Figure 1-1155	Disconnect connectors (HCI optional paper feeder)	728
Figure 1-1156	Remove the Tray 3 lifter assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)	728
Figure 1-1157	Disconnect connectors (HCI optional paper feeder)	729
Figure 1-1158	Remove the Tray 4 lifter assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)	729
Figure 1-1159	Remove the Tray 5 lifter drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)	730
Figure 1-1160	Remove the controller PCA (HCI optional paper feeder)	731
Figure 1-1161	Remove the front cover (stapling mailbox)	733
Figure 1-1162	Remove the lever assembly (stapling mailbox)	733
Figure 1-1163	Remove the rear cover (stapling mailbox)	734
Figure 1-1164	Remove one spring (stapling mailbox)	735
Figure 1-1165	Remove the bushing (stapling mailbox)	735
Figure 1-1166	Remove the bushing (stapling mailbox)	736
Figure 1-1167	Remove the handle assembly (stapling mailbox)	736
Figure 1-1168	Remove the top cover	737
Figure 1-1169	Remove two stoppers (stapling mailbox)	738
Figure 1-1170	Reinstall the two stoppers (stapling mailbox)	738
Figure 1-1171	Remove the output bin (stapling mailbox)	739
Figure 1-1172	Remove the PCA cover (stapling mailbox)	740
Figure 1-1173	Remove the output bin assembly cover (stapling mailbox)	741
Figure 1-1174	Remove the PCA cover (stapling mailbox)	742
Figure 1-1175	Release the wire harnesses (stapling mailbox)	742
Figure 1-1176	Remove the PCA (stapling mailbox)	743
Figure 1-1177	Remove the bushing (stapling mailbox)	744
Figure 1-1178	Remove the output bin sensor PCA (stapling mailbox)	744
Figure 1-1179	Remove the interlock assembly (stapling mailbox)	745
Figure 1-1180	Remove the stapler assembly (stapling mailbox)	745

Figure 1-1181	Disconnect two connectors (stapling mailbox)	746
Figure 1-1182	Remove the jogger assembly (stapling mailbox)	746
Figure 1-1183	Remove the output bin solenoid and sheet-metal plate (stapling mailbox)	747
Figure 1-1184	Remove the output bin solenoid (stapling mailbox)	748
Figure 1-1185	Remove the output-bin flapper assembly (stapling mailbox)	749
Figure 1-1186	Remove two screws (stapling mailbox)	750
Figure 1-1187	Remove the output bin assembly (stapling mailbox)	750
Figure 1-1188	Remove the PCA cover (stapling mailbox)	751
Figure 1-1189	Disconnect four connectors (stapling mailbox)	752
Figure 1-1190	Remove the rear-rail assembly (stapling mailbox)	752
Figure 1-1191	Remove the sheet-metal plate (stapling mailbox)	753
Figure 1-1192	Remove the gear stopper (stapling mailbox)	753
Figure 1-1193	Remove one gear and the belt (stapling mailbox)	754
Figure 1-1194	Release one spring and remove the swing gear (stapling mailbox)	754
Figure 1-1195	Remove one gear and remove the belt (stapling mailbox)	755
Figure 1-1196	Remove the sensor flag (stapling mailbox)	755
Figure 1-1197	Remove the guide (stapling mailbox)	756
Figure 1-1198	Remove one gear (stapling mailbox)	756
Figure 1-1199	Replace the guide (stapling mailbox)	757
Figure 1-1200	Remove the guide (stapling mailbox)	757
Figure 1-1201	Remove the stage top assembly and right door (stapling mailbox)	758
Figure 1-1202	Remove the stopper (stapling mailbox)	758
Figure 1-1203	Remove the right door and inlet guide (stapling mailbox)	759
Figure 1-1204	Remove the paper feed guide (stapling mailbox)	759
Figure 1-1205	Install the stage top assembly (stapling mailbox)	760
Figure 1-1206	Remove two belts and five gears (stapling mailbox)	761
Figure 1-1207	Pull out the shaft (stapling mailbox)	762
Figure 1-1208	Disconnect one connector (stapling mailbox)	762
Figure 1-1209	Remove the stage assembly (stapling mailbox)	763
Figure 1-1210	Remove the stamp assembly (stapling mailbox)	763
Figure 1-1211	Remove the PCA cover (stapling mailbox)	764
Figure 1-1212	Disconnect two connectors (stapling mailbox)	765
Figure 1-1213	Remove one spring (stapling mailbox)	765
Figure 1-1214	Remove the tray support (stapling mailbox)	766
Figure 1-1215	Remove the lifter lever (stapling mailbox)	766
Figure 1-1216	Remove the output bin 3 drive assembly (stapling mailbox)	767
Figure 2-1	Document feeder and scanner components	778
Figure 2-2	Document feeder components (1 of 2)	780
Figure 2-3	Document feeder components (2 of 2)	782
Figure 2-4	Scanner control board (SCB)	784
Figure 2-5	Control panel	786

Figure 2-6	Covers	788
Figure 2-7	Upper plate assembly	790
Figure 2-8	Internal components (1 of 5)	792
Figure 2-9	Internal components (2 of 5)	794
Figure 2-10	Internal components (3 of 5)	796
Figure 2-11	Internal components (4 of 5)	798
Figure 2-12	Internal components (5 of 5)	800
Figure 2-13	High-voltage power supply	802
Figure 2-14	500-sheet paper feeder covers	804
Figure 2-15	1x500-sheet paper feeder components	806
Figure 2-16	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers	808
Figure 2-17	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components	810
Figure 2-18	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers	812
Figure 2-19	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (1 of 2)	814
Figure 2-20	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (2 of 2)	816
Figure 2-21	Stapling mailbox covers	818
Figure 2-22	Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2)	820
Figure 2-23	Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2)	822
Figure 2-24	Envelope feeder covers	824
Figure 2-25	Envelope feeder components (1 of 2)	826
Figure 2-26	Envelope feeder components (2 of 2)	828

1 Removal and replacement

- [For additional service and support information](#)
- [Removal and replacement strategy](#)
- [Customer self-repair \(CSR\) assemblies](#)
- [Document feeder and image scanner assemblies](#)
- [Covers, doors, tray, and external panels \(product base\)](#)
- [Main assemblies](#)
- [Optional input and output accessories](#)

For additional service and support information

HP service personnel, go to the Link Service Access Work Bench (SAW) at <http://h41302.www4.hp.com/km/saw/home.do>.

Channel partners, go to Link HP Channel Services Network (CNS) at <https://h30125.www3.hp.com/hpcsn>.

- Install and configure
- Product specifications
- Up to date control-panel message (CPMD) troubleshooting
- Solutions for product issues and emerging issues
- Remove and replace part instructions and videos
- Service advisories
- Warranty & regulatory information


Removal and replacement strategy

Considerations during removal and replacement

This chapter describes the removal and replacement of field-replaceable units (FRUs) only.



Replacing FRUs is generally the reverse of removal. Notes are included to provide directions for difficult or critical replacement procedures.

HP does not support repairing individual subassemblies or troubleshooting to the printed-circuit assembly (PCA) component level.

 **WARNING!** Never operate or service the product with the protective cover removed from the laser scanner assembly. The reflected beam, although invisible, can cause damage the eyes.

The sheet-metal parts can have sharp edges. Be careful when handling sheet-metal parts.

Turn the product off, wait 5 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product. *If this warning is not followed*, severe injury and damage to the product can result. The power must be on for certain functional checks during troubleshooting. However, the power cord must be disconnected during parts removal. AC voltage is still present inside the product when the power switch is in the off position. The power cord must be *disconnected* before servicing the product.


 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Look for the ESD reminder when removing product parts. Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground *before* touching an ESD-sensitive assembly.


Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the product.

Do not bend or fold the flat flexible cables (FFCs) during removal or installation.

Incorrectly routed or loose wire harnesses might interfere with other internal components or assemblies and be damaged, pinched, or frayed. Make sure that wire harnesses are correctly routed and retained when installing assemblies.

Do not expose the toner cartridge (or toner cartridges), to strong light even for a short time.

 **IMPORTANT:** When an assembly is removed that includes a rating plate or tag (or a product code label), make sure to transfer the plate or tag (or code label) to the replacement assembly.


 **NOTE:** To install a self-tapping screw, first turn it counterclockwise to align it with the existing thread pattern, and then carefully turn it clockwise to tighten. Do not overtighten. If a self-tapping screw-hole becomes stripped, repair the screw-hole or replace the affected assembly.

Always take note of the length, diameter, color, type, and location of each removed screw. Make sure that screws are installed in the original location they were removed from during reinstallation.

During assembly removal and replacement, or if the product is moved, remove the toner cartridge or cartridges.


Toner is a non-poisonous substance composed of plastic and a small number of colored components. If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove. Toner easily breaks down vinyl materials—avoid letting toner contact with vinyl.

During assembly removal and replacement, or if the product is moved, remove the tray cassette or cassettes.

 **TIP:** For clarity, some figures in this chapter show assemblies removed that are not required to be removed to service the product (for example, the scanner and document feeder assemblies). The procedures in this manual are correct for this product.

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152-mm (6-in) shaft length

 **NOTE:** For the best fit, use a JIS #2 Phillips screwdriver for the stapler/stacker.

- Small, flat-blade screwdriver
- Needle-nose pliers
- ESD strap (if one is available)
- Penlight


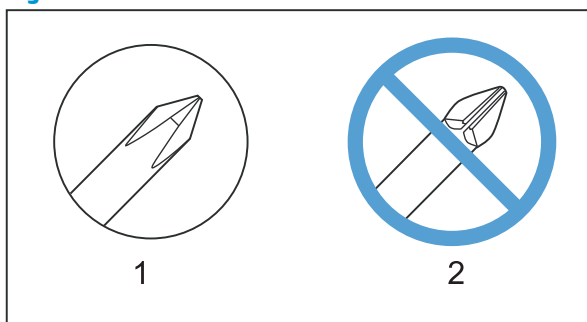

 **CAUTION:** Always use a Phillips screwdriver (callout 1). Do not use a Pozidriv screwdriver (callout 2) or any motorized screwdriver. These can damage screws or screw threads.

Figure 1-1 Screwdrivers



Types of screws

 **WARNING!** Make sure that assemblies are replaced with the correct screw type. Using the incorrect screw (for example, substituting a long screw for the correct shorter screw) can cause damage to the product or interfere with product operation. Do not intermix screws that are removed from one assembly with the screws that are removed from another assembly.

For a complete list of screw types and part numbers, see the Parts chapter.

Service approach

The product uses a field repair strategy. Defective parts are diagnosed and replaced at the Field Replaceable Unit (FRU) assembly level. Repair normally begins by using the product internal diagnostics and the following two-step process:

1. Isolate the problem to the major system (for example, the network or server, or the product).
2. Troubleshoot the problem by using the procedures in the troubleshooting chapter.

After locating a faulty part, the product can usually be repaired at the assembly level by replacing FRUs. Some mechanical assemblies might need to be repaired at the subassembly level. Hewlett-Packard Company does not support replacement of components on the printed circuit assemblies.

The user replaces toner cartridges as they are depleted. Additional instructions about other user-replaceable parts are provided in this section.

The product tracks the amount of use on the customer-replaceable supplies by keeping a page count. The product prompts the user to replace certain items when a supply is depleted or a specific number of pages has been printed.

Swapping toner cartridges between products might cause a misrepresentation of supply life values and is not recommended.

Before performing service

⚠ WARNING! Turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product. *If this warning is not followed, severe injury and damage to the product can result.* The power must be on for certain functional checks during troubleshooting. However, the power supply should be disconnected during parts removal.

1. Remove all paper.
2. Place the product on an ESD mat (if available). If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touching the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground *before* touching an ESD-sensitive assembly.
3. Remove the toner cartridge or toner cartridges.
4. Remove the trays.

After performing service

1. Reinstall the toner cartridge or toner cartridges.
2. Reinstall the trays.
3. Return all paper to the trays.
4. Plug in the power cable and turn on the product.
5. Perform print-quality tests by printing from a host computer, the scanner glass, and the document feeder.

Parts removal order

If needed, a list at the beginning of a removal procedure lists all of the assemblies that must be removed to reach the target assembly. Use these lists to determine which parts must be removed before removing other parts.

For procedures and/or steps that require identifying the right, left, or rear side of the product, face the front of the product for correct orientation.

Customer self-repair (CSR) assemblies

- [Toner cartridge](#)
- [Staple cartridge \(for models with a stapler/stacker\)](#)
- [Backside background selector](#)
- [Formatter](#)
- [Hard-disk drive \(HDD\) or solid-state memory \(SSM\)](#)
- [Memory DIMM](#)
- [Fax printed-circuit assembly \(PCA\)](#)
- [Output bin and bin base assembly](#)
- [Duplex accessory](#)
- [Fuser-entrance guide](#)
- [Fuser](#)
- [Control-panel assembly](#)
- [Keyboard assembly \(M630z only\)](#)
- [Tray 1 pickup, feed, and separation rollers](#)
- [Tray 2-5 pickup and feed rollers](#)
- [Transfer roller](#)
- [Document-feeder maintenance kit](#)
- [Document feeder white backing](#)

Toner cartridge

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the toner cartridge](#)
- [Step 2: Unpack the replacement toner cartridge](#)
- [Step 3: Install the toner cartridge](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

Introduction

This document provides instructions about removing and replacing toner cartridge.


Before servicing

To order a replacement assembly, use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product. To order the kit, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Toner cartridge kit part numbers	
CF281X High-capacity replacement toner cartridge	Toner cartridge kit with instruction guide
CF281A Standard-capacity replacement toner cartridge	

Required tools

No special tools are required to install this kit.

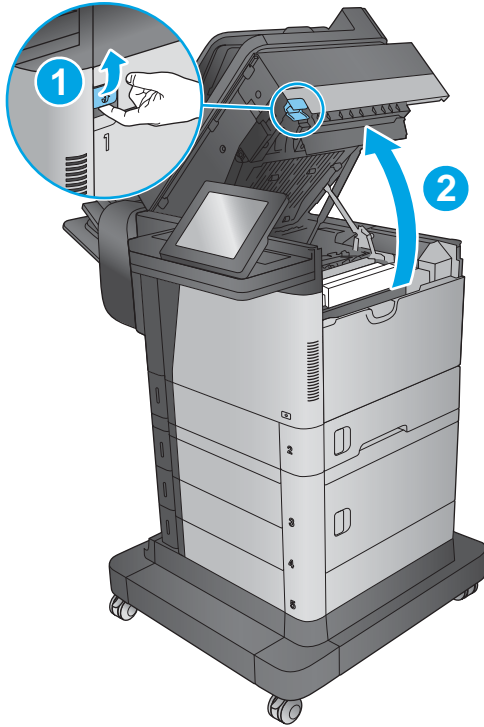
 **CAUTION:** To prevent damage to the toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the product for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on clothing, wipe it off by using a dry cloth and wash the clothes in cold water. Hot water sets toner into fabric.


Step 1: Remove the toner cartridge

1. Pull the top cover release lever (callout 1) to open the top cover (callout 2).

Figure 1-2 Open the top cover

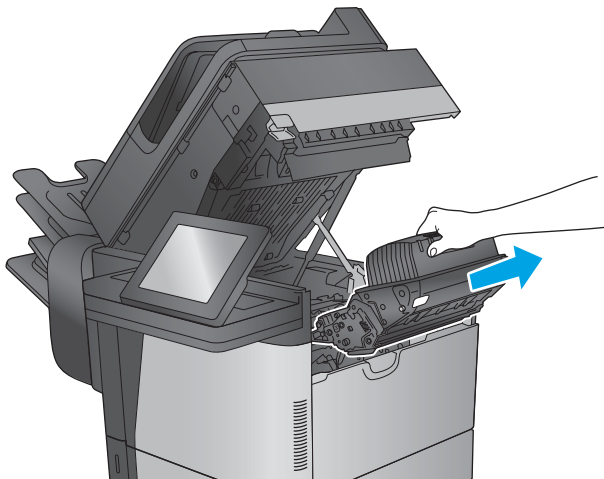


2. Grasp the handle of the used toner cartridge and pull out to remove it.

 **Reinstallation tip:** Align the toner cartridge with its slot, and then insert the toner cartridge into the product.

Close the top cover.

Figure 1-3 Remove the toner cartridge



Step 2: Unpack the replacement toner cartridge

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

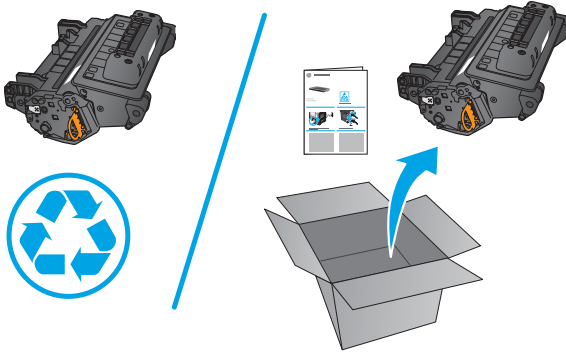
www.Product return and recycling.

CAUTION: To prevent damage to the replacement toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the product for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on clothing, wipe it off by using a dry cloth and wash the clothes in cold water. Hot water sets toner into fabric.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.

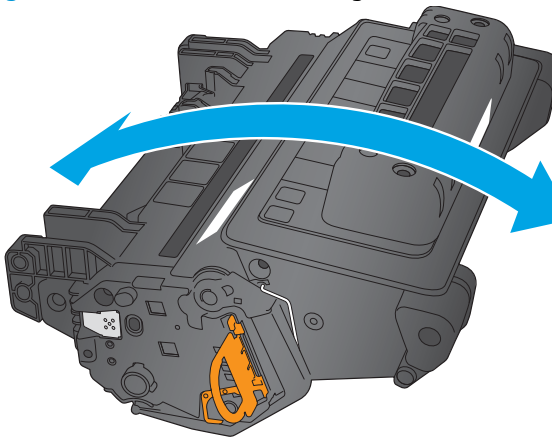
Figure 1-4 Recycle and unpack



Step 3: Install the toner cartridge

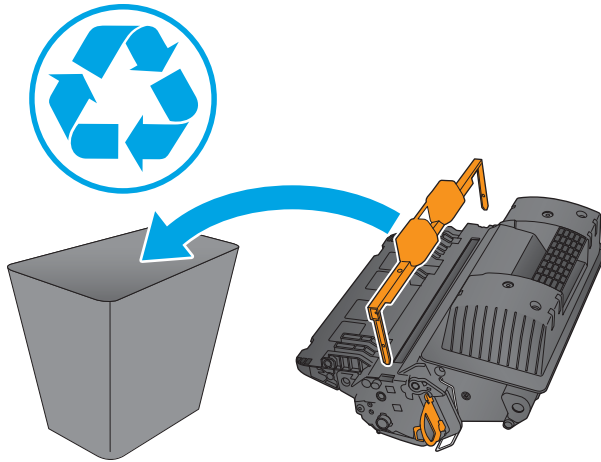
1. Hold both ends of the toner cartridge and rock it 5-6 times.

Figure 1-5 Rock the toner cartridge



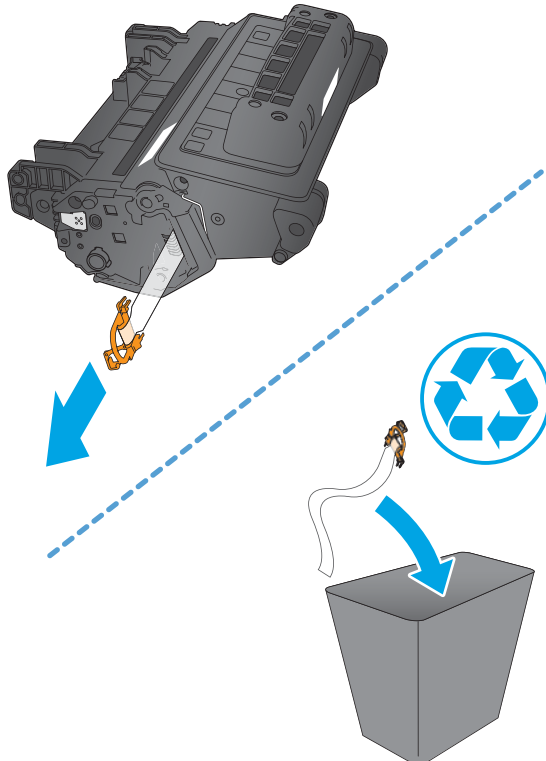
2. Remove the protective shield from the toner cartridge.

Figure 1-6 Remove the protective shield



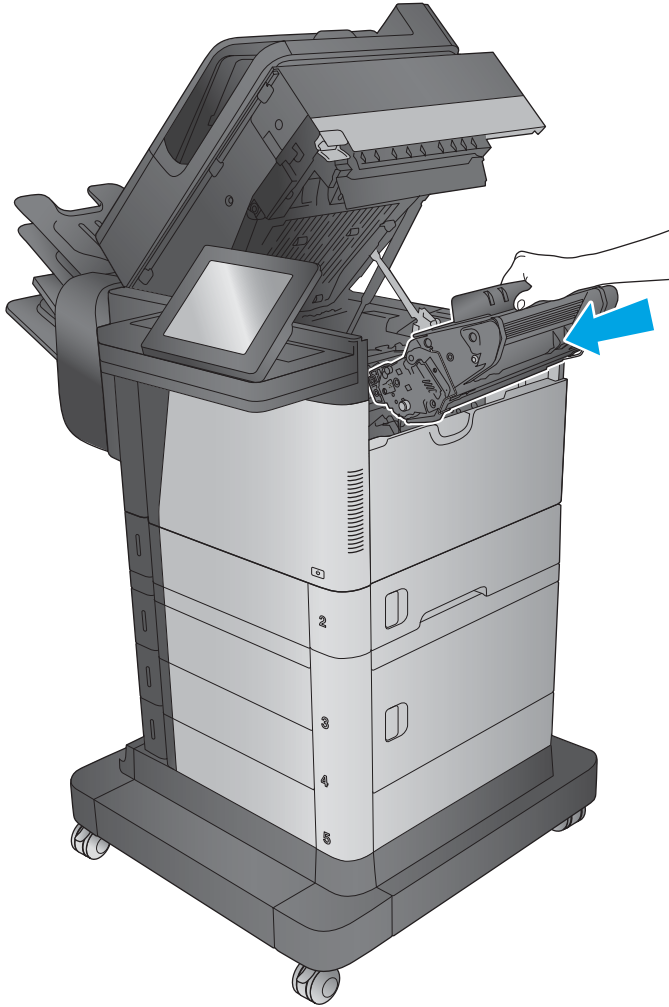
3. Pull on the orange tab to remove the toner sealing tape. Completely remove the sealing tape from the cartridge.

Figure 1-7 Remove the sealing tape



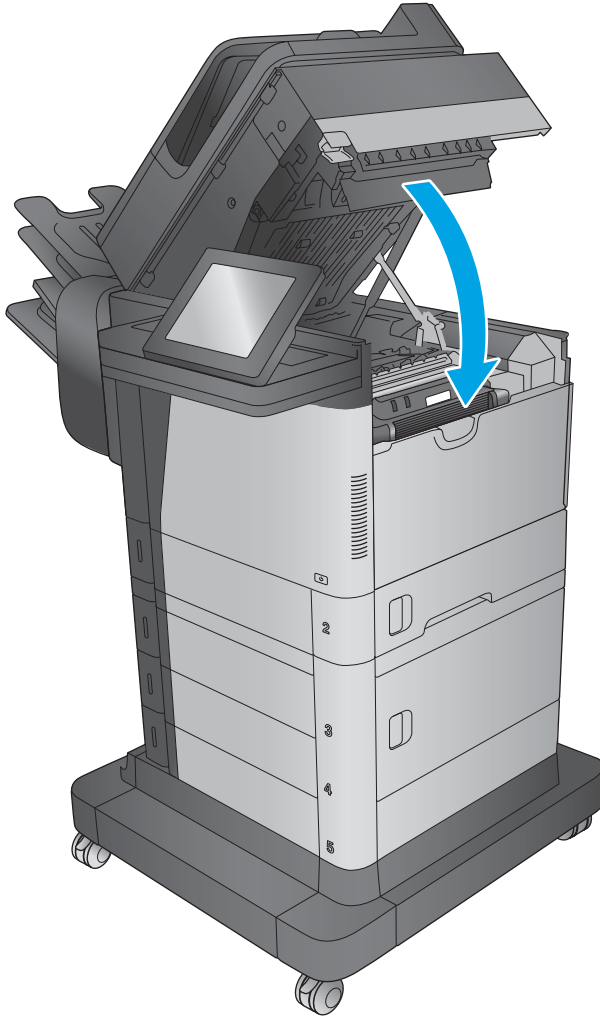
4. Align the toner cartridge with its slot, and then insert the toner cartridge into the product.

Figure 1-8 Install the toner cartridge



5. Close the top cover.

Figure 1-9 Close the top cover



Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Staple cartridge (for models with a stapler/stacker)

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the staple cartridge](#)
- [Step 2: Unpack the replacement staple cartridge](#)
- [Step 3: Install the staple cartridge](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

Introduction

This document provides instructions about removing and replacing the staple cartridge.

Before servicing

To order a replacement assembly, use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product. To order the kit, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Staple cartridge kit part numbers	
C8091A	HP staple cartridge refill kit with instruction guide

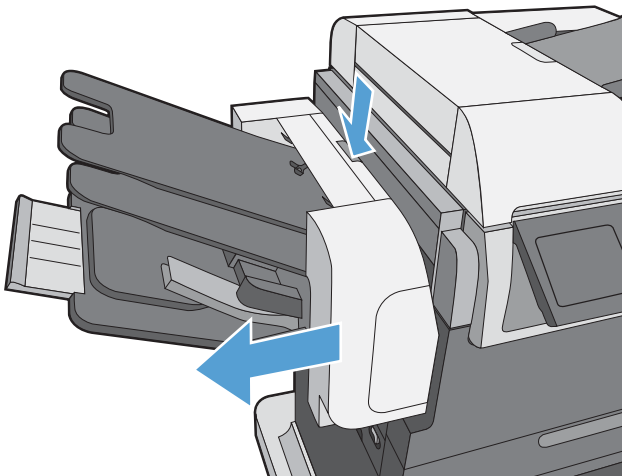
Required tools

No special tools are required to install this kit.

Step 1: Remove the staple cartridge

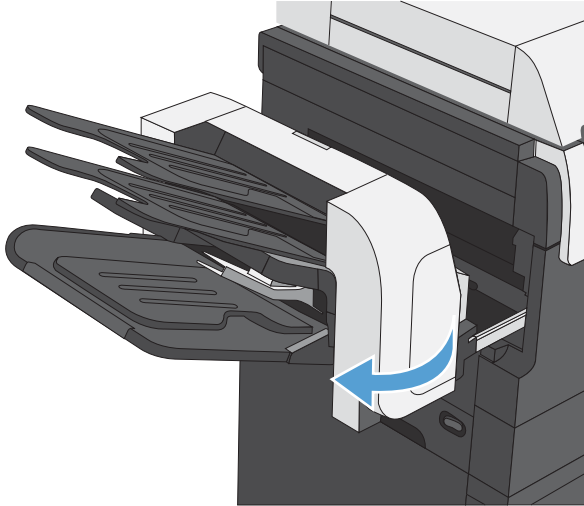
1. Press the release latch, and then slide the stapler/stacker away from the product.

Figure 1-10 Slide the stapler/stacker away from the product



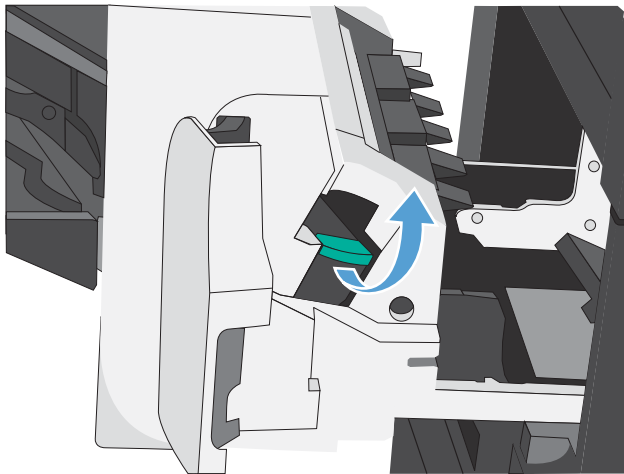
2. Open the staple-cartridge door.

Figure 1-11 Open the staple-cartridge door



3. Lift up on the staple-cartridge green handle, and then pull the cartridge out of the stapler to remove it.

Figure 1-12 Remove the staple cartridge



Step 2: Unpack the replacement staple cartridge

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

www.Product return and recycling.


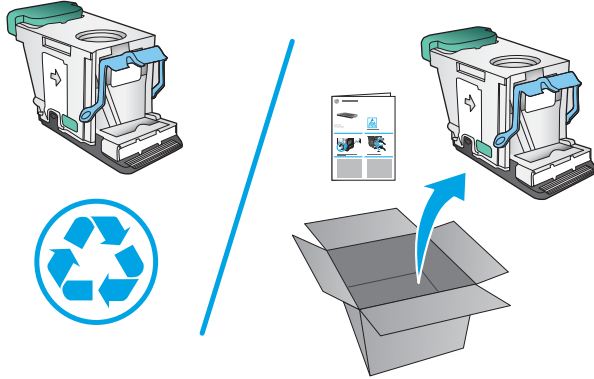
 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.

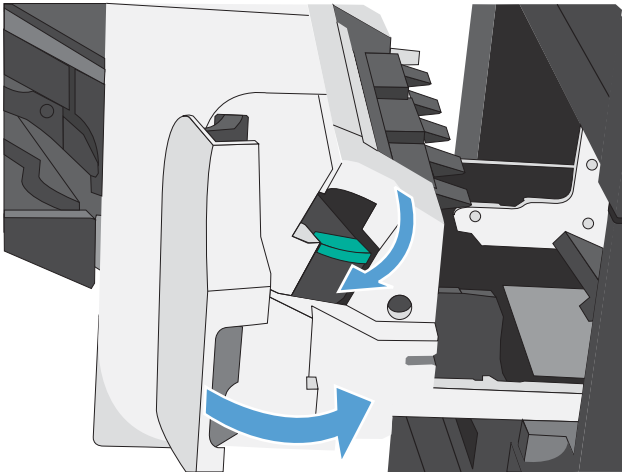
Figure 1-13 Recycle and unpack



Step 3: Install the staple cartridge

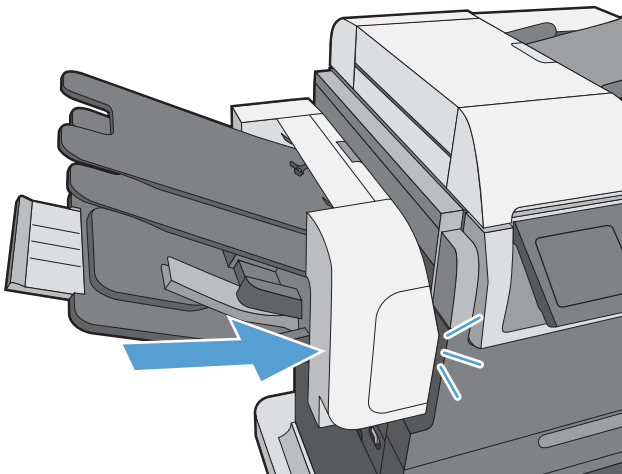
1. Insert the staple cartridge, push down on it to snap it into place, and then close the staple-cartridge door.

Figure 1-14 Install the cartridge and close the stapler door



2. Slide the stapler/stacker toward the product until it latches in place.

Figure 1-15 Slide the stapler back to the product



Parts Return

[www.Product return and recycling.](http://www.Product return and recycling)

Backside background selector

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the backside background selector](#)
- [Step 2: Unpack the replacement backside background selector](#)
- [Step 3: Install the backside background selector](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

Introduction

This document provides instructions about removing and replacing the backside background selector.

Before servicing

To order a replacement assembly, use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product. To order the kit, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Staple cartridge kit part numbers	
5851-5022	Backside background selector kit with instruction guide

Required tools

No special tools are required to install this kit.

Step 1: Remove the backside background selector

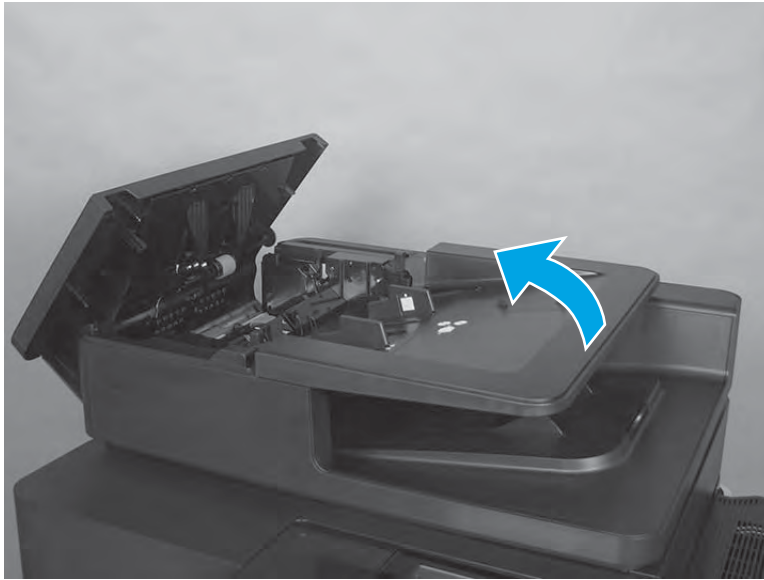
1. Open the document-feeder door.

Figure 1-16 Open the document-feeder door



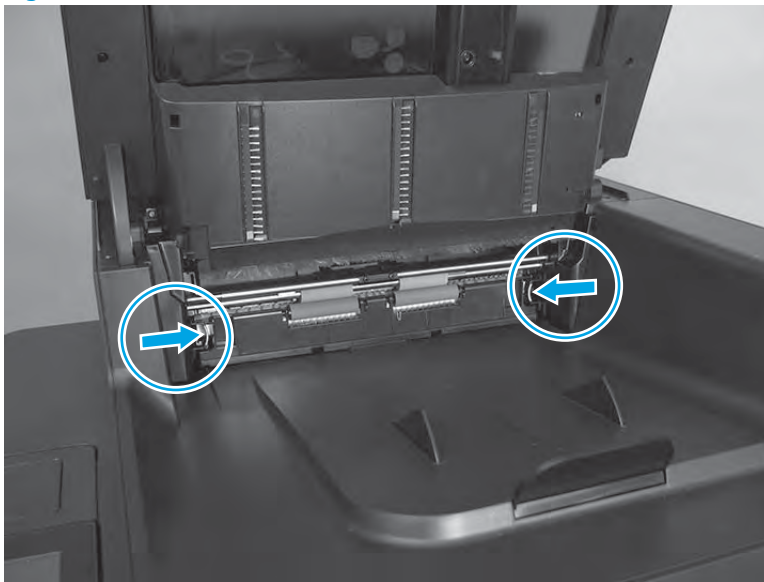
2. Rotate the input tray up.

Figure 1-17 Rotate the input tray up



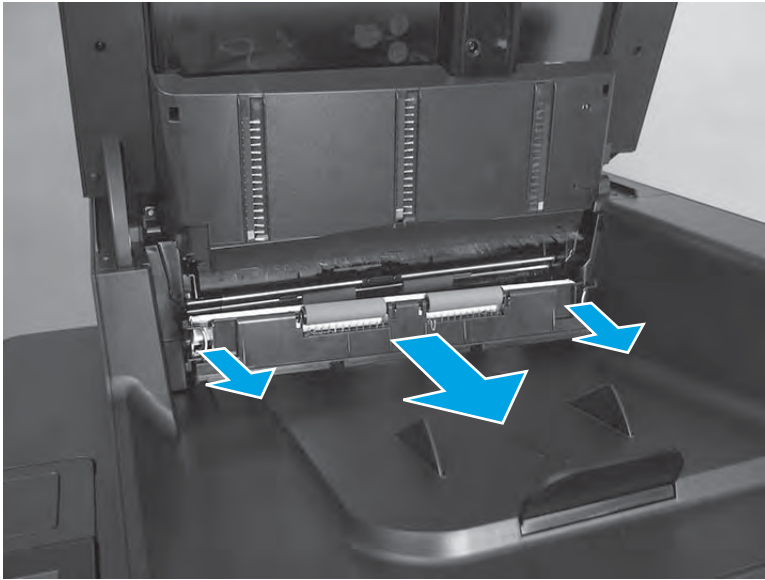
3. Release two tabs.

Figure 1-18 Release two tabs



4. Slide the backside background selector away from the product to remove it.

Figure 1-19 Remove the backside background selector



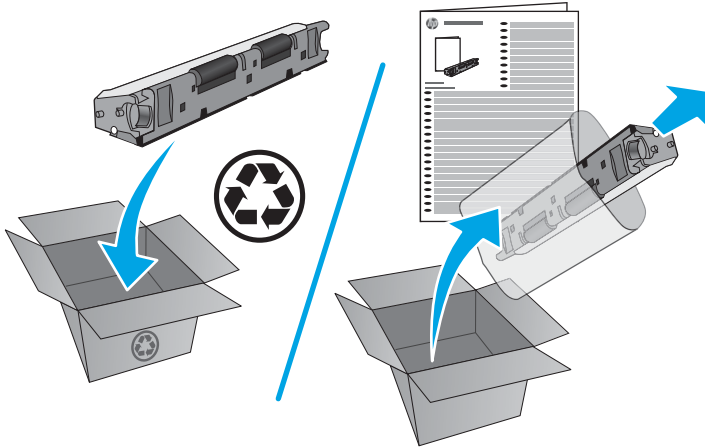
Step 2: Unpack the replacement backside background selector

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

www.Product return and recycling.

 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.

Figure 1-20 Recycle and unpack



Step 3: Install the backside background selector

1. Push in on the background selector until the tabs snap into place.


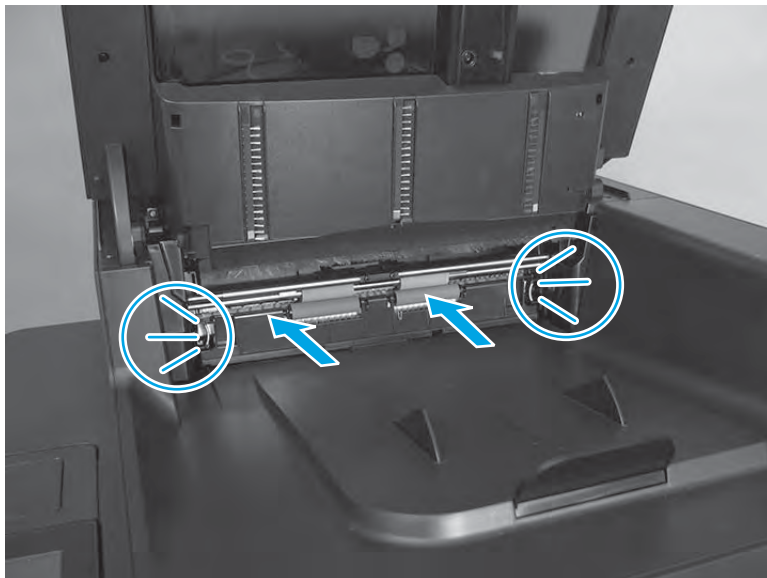
 **Reinstallation tip:** If jams occur after the assembly is installed, make sure that the assembly is fully seated.

Figure 1-21 Install the background selector



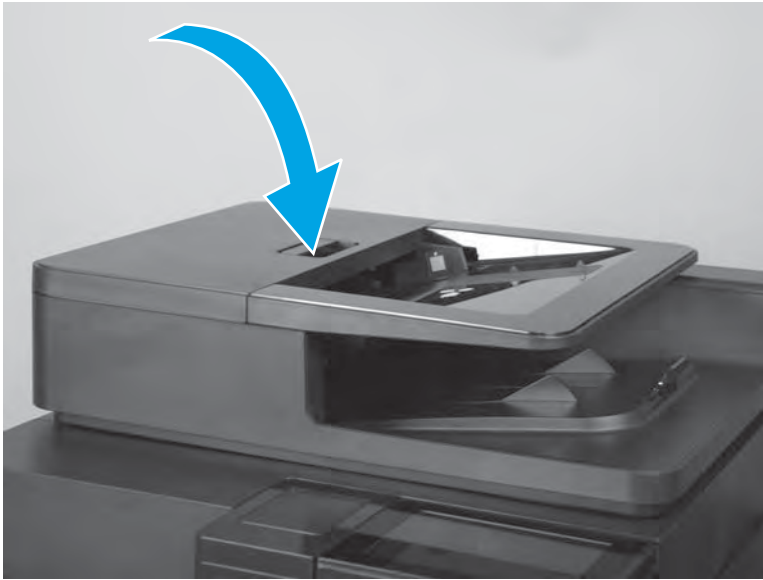
2. Rotate the input tray down.

Figure 1-22 Rotate the input tray down



3. Close the document-feeder door.

Figure 1-23 Close the document-feeder door



Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Formatter

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the formatter](#)
- [Step 2: Remove the hard-disk drive \(HDD\) or solid-state memory \(SSM\)](#)
- [Step 3: Remove the DIMM](#)
- [Step 4: Remove the fax PCA](#)
- [Step 5: Unpack the replacement formatter](#)
- [Step 6: Install the HDD or SSM](#)
- [Step 7: Install the DIMM](#)
- [Step 8: Install the fax PCA](#)
- [Step 9: Install the formatter](#)
- [Step 10: Test the installation](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the formatter.

To replace the formatter, remove the hard-disk drive (HDD) or solid-state memory (SSM) storage device, the DIMM, and the fax printed-circuit assembly (PCA) (if installed) from the defective formatter and then install them on the replacement formatter.



Before servicing


Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the kit.

Formatter kit part numbers	
B3G85-67901	Formatter kit with instruction guide
B3G85-67902 (China/India)	Formatter kit with instruction guide (China/India only)

Required tools

No special tools are required to install this kit.

 **CAUTION:**  This product contains components that can be damaged by electrostatic discharge (ESD). To reduce the chance of ESD damage, place the product on an ESD mat (if available), and wear an ESD wrist strap connected to a grounded surface. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, ground yourself by touching the sheet-metal chassis before touching an ESD-sensitive part.

 **IMPORTANT:** Do not replace the formatter, DC controller, and hard-disk drive/solid-state memory simultaneously during a single product servicing. Doing so might cause the product to become unstable or inoperable.

Step 1: Remove the formatter

1. Do the following steps:

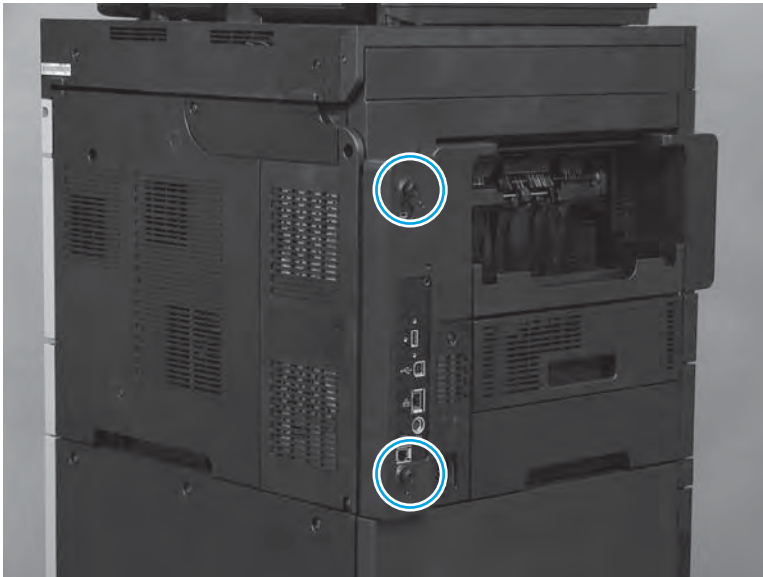
- a. Turn off the product.
- b. Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

- c. Disconnect all cables and accessories attached to the formatter.

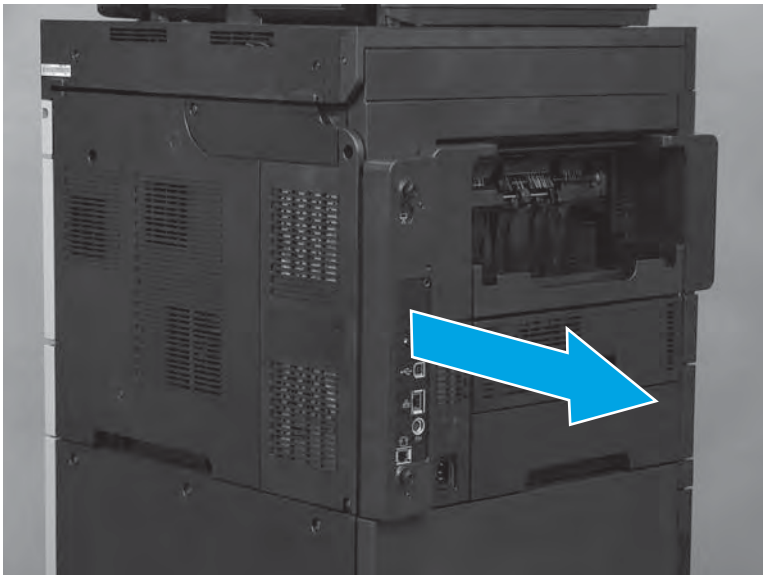
2. Loosen the two thumbscrews on the formatter.

Figure 1-24 Remove the formatter



3. Slide the formatter straight out of the product to remove it.

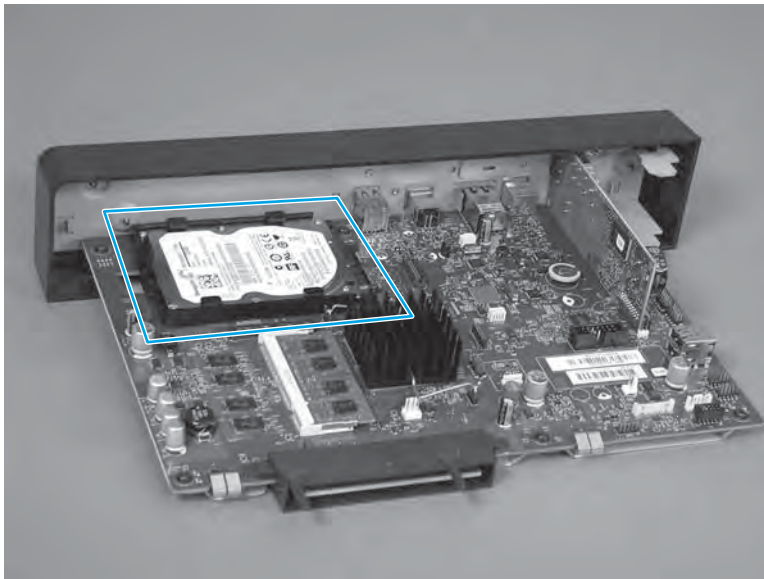
Figure 1-25 Remove the formatter



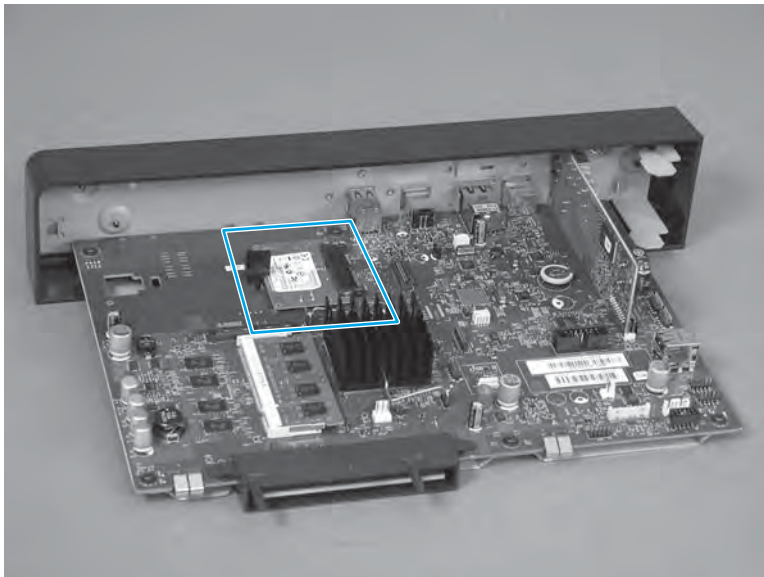
Step 2: Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD) or solid-state memory (SSM)

Identify the component type

- Hard-disk drive (HDD). See [Remove the HDD on page 26](#).



- Solid-state memory (SSM). See [Remove the SSM on page 27](#).

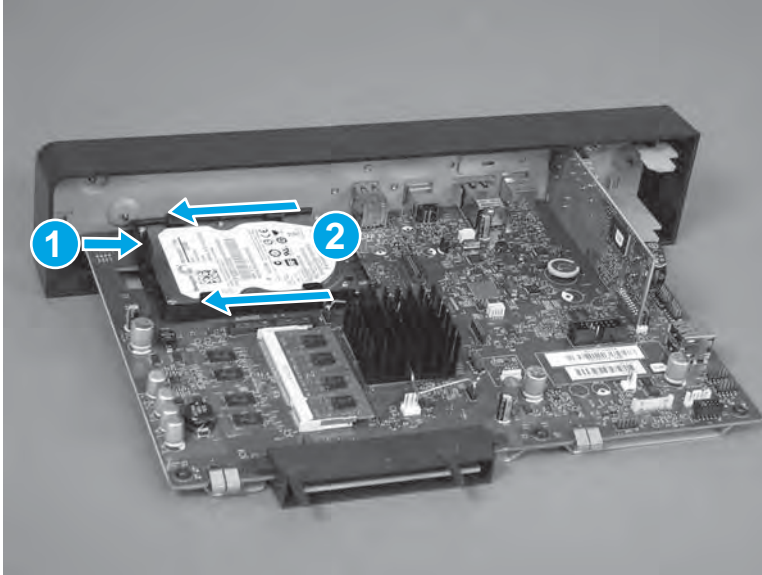


Remove the HDD

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

- ▲ Push and hold the locking lever (callout 1) toward the HDD to release it, and then slide the black plastic HDD case in the direction of the arrows (callout 2) to remove the HDD.

Figure 1-26 Remove the HDD

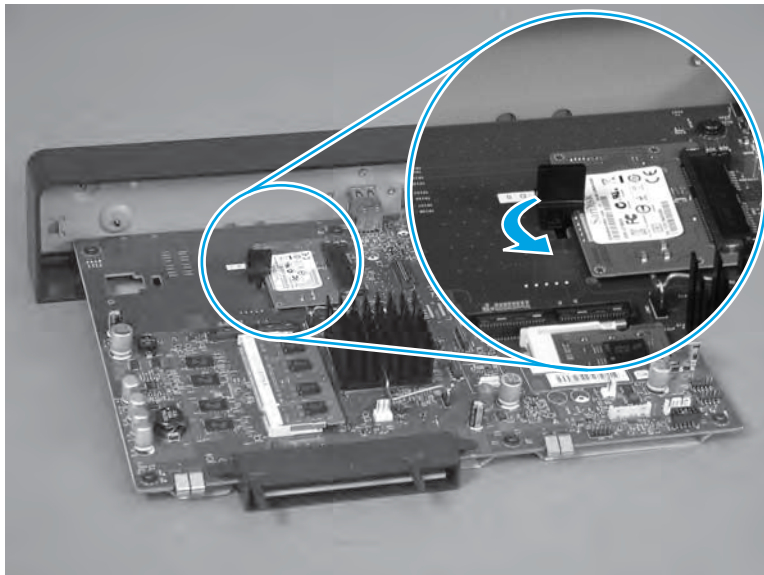


Remove the SSM

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

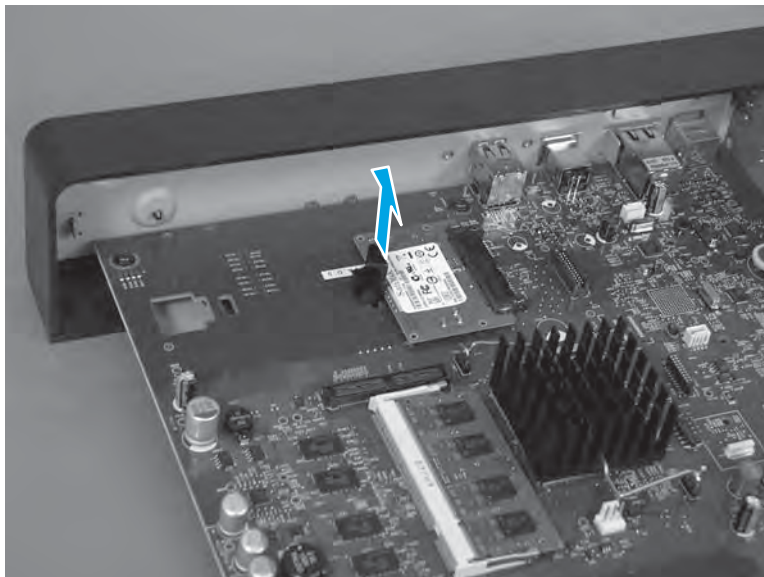
1. Rotate the retainer clip to release it.

Figure 1-27 Release the clip



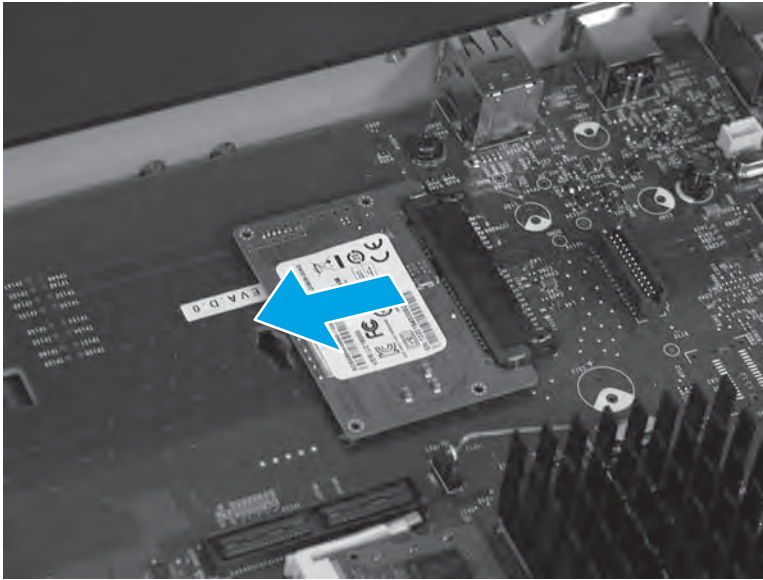
2. Lift the retainer clip up to remove it.

Figure 1-28 Remove the clip



3. Slide the SSM away from the connector to remove it.

Figure 1-29 Remove the SSM

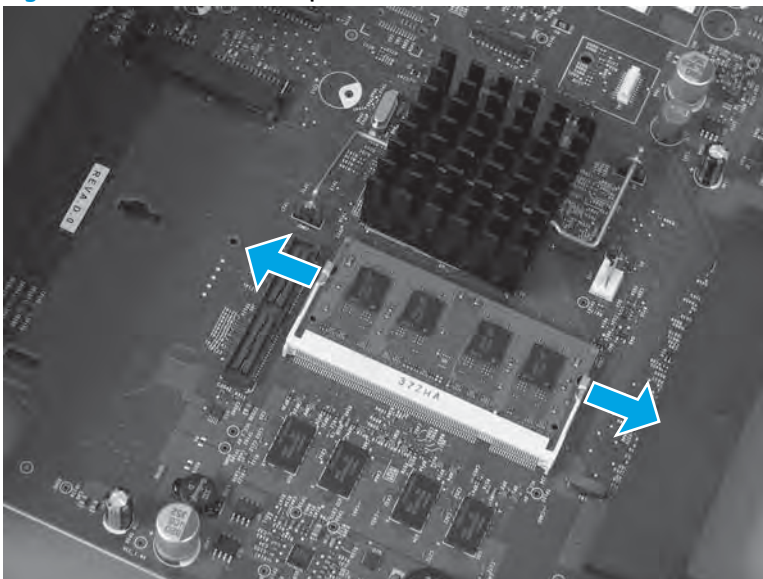


Step 3: Remove the DIMM

CAUTION:  ESD sensitive assembly.

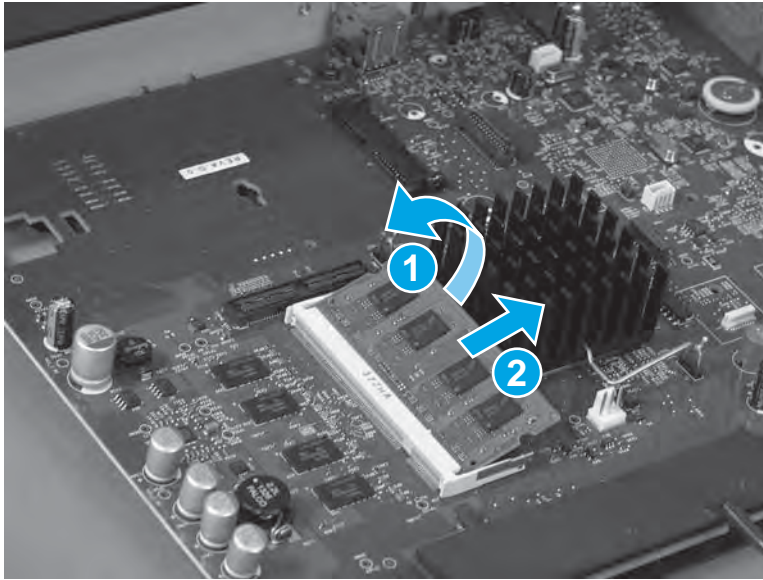
1. Release two clips.

Figure 1-30 Release two clips




2. Rotate the DIMM upward (callout 1), and then remove it (callout 2).

Figure 1-31 Remove the DIMM



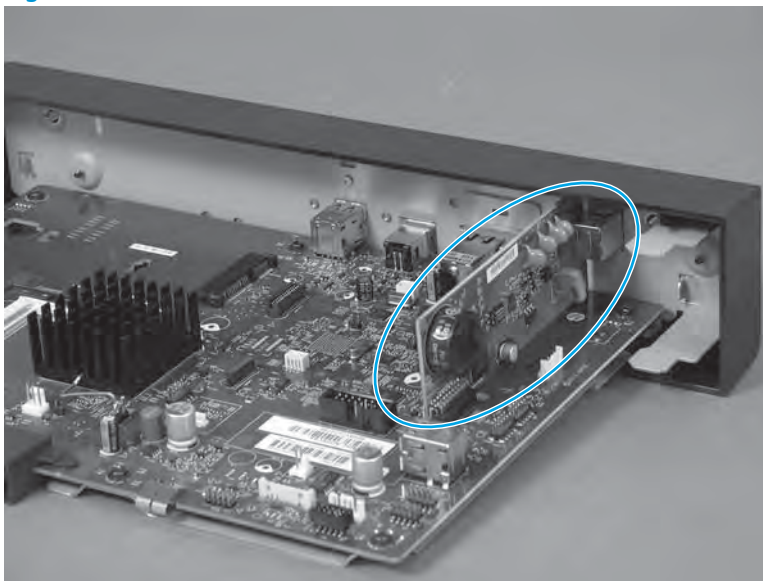
Step 4: Remove the fax PCA

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

 **NOTE:** If your product does not have a fax PCA, go to [Step 5: Unpack the replacement formatter on page 30](#).

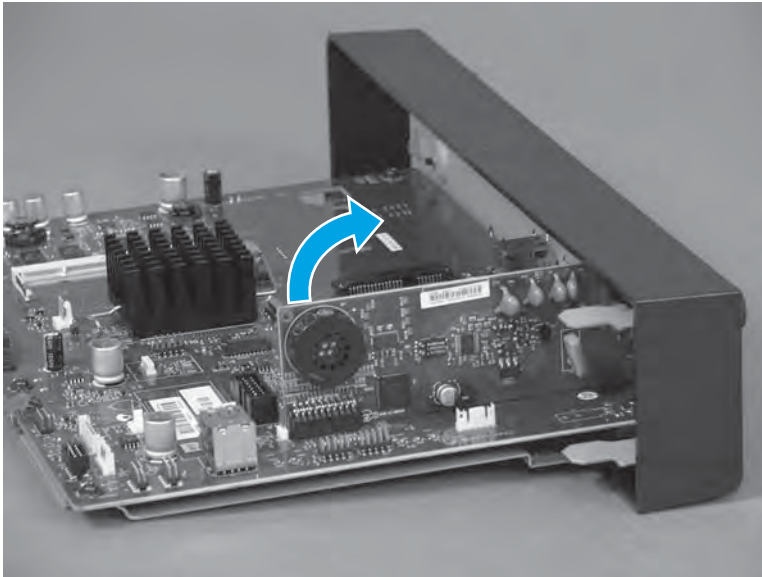
1. Locate the fax PCA that is installed on the formatter.

Figure 1-32 Locate the fax PCA



2. Rotate the connector end (away from the phone port) of the fax PCA up and away from the formatter to release it.

Figure 1-33 Release the connector end of the fax PCA



3. Carefully remove the fax PCA from the formatter bracket.


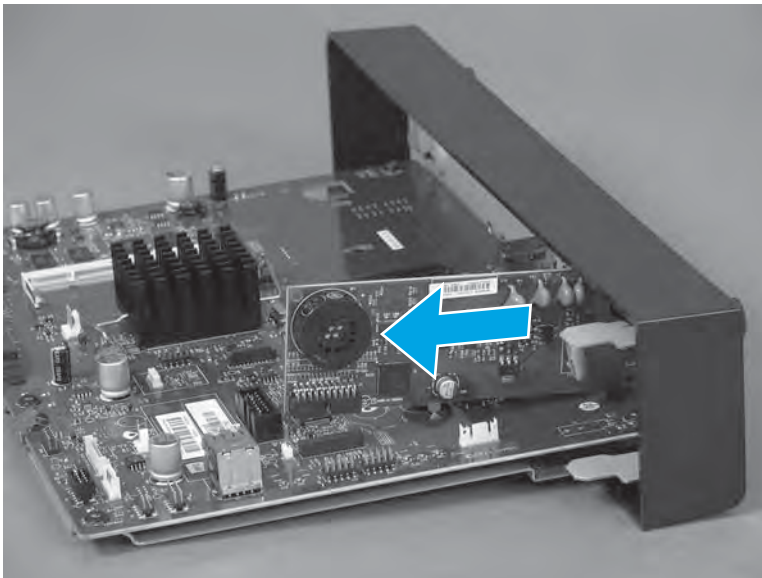
 **NOTE:** Set this part aside. It will be installed on the replacement formatter.

Figure 1-34 Remove the fax PCA




Step 5: Unpack the replacement formatter

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

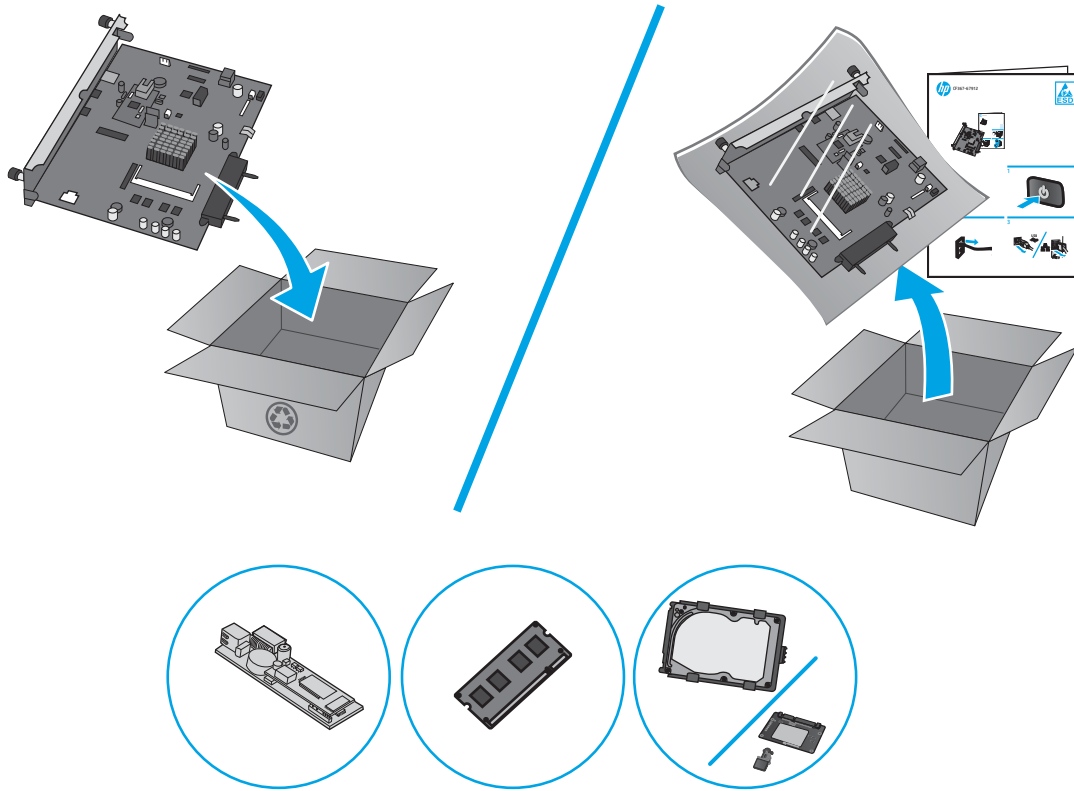
www.Product return and recycling.

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.

Do not dispose of the HDD or SSM, DIMM, or fax PCA (fax models only) that were removed earlier.


Figure 1-35 Recycle and unpack



Step 6: Install the HDD or SSM

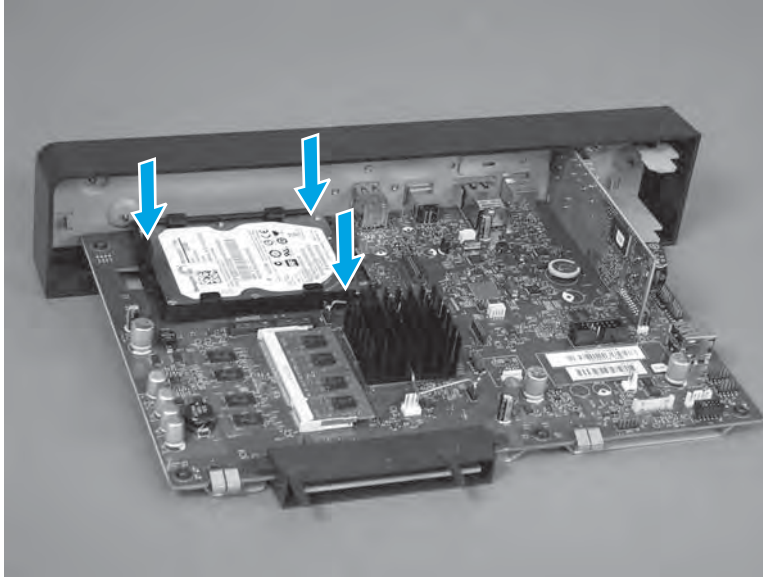
 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

1. To install the HDD, do the following steps:
 - a. If foam pads are installed on the backside of the HDD, press down on the connector-side corners of the HDD and on the locking lever to compress the foam.

 **CAUTION:** Do not press down on the center of the HDD.

 **NOTE:** If there are no foam pads installed on the backside of the HDD, skip this step.

Figure 1-36 Press down on the HDD

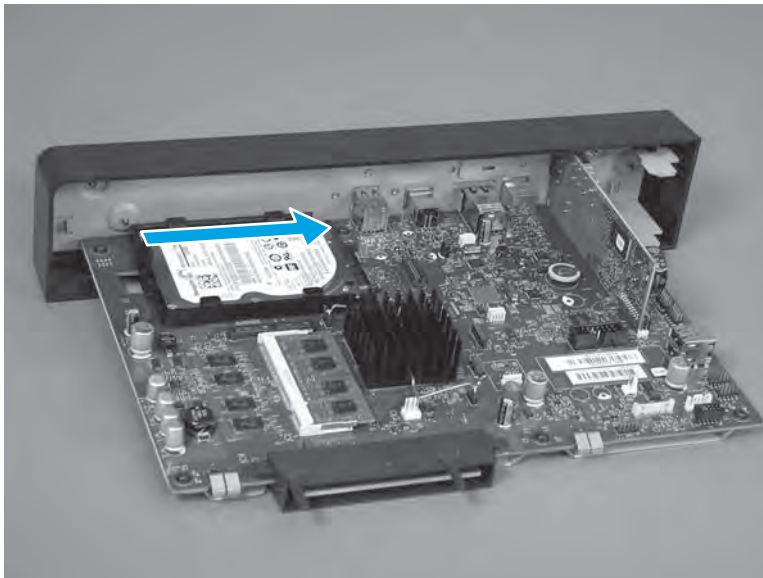


- b.** Slide the HDD into the connector on the formatter.



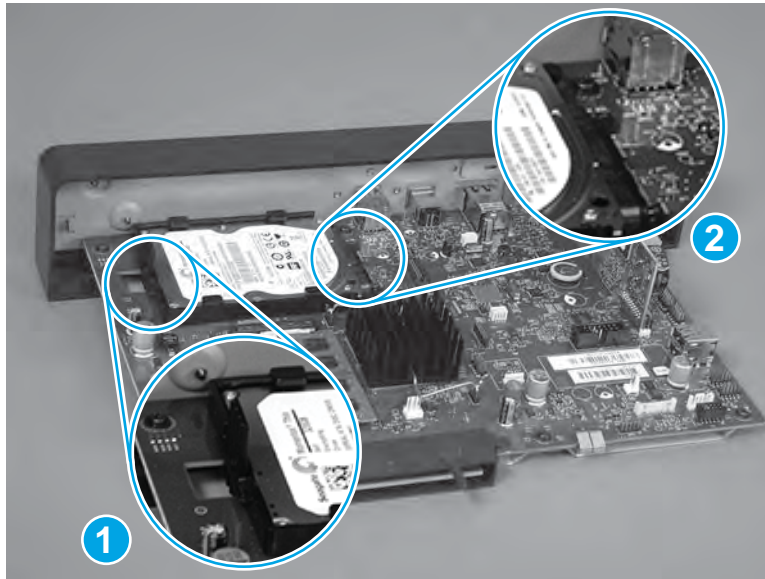
NOTE: If foam pads are installed on the backside of the HDD, make sure that they are compressed enough to allow the HDD to easily slide into the connector, and that the locking lever fits into the slot on the formatter.

Figure 1-37 Install the black plastic HDD case



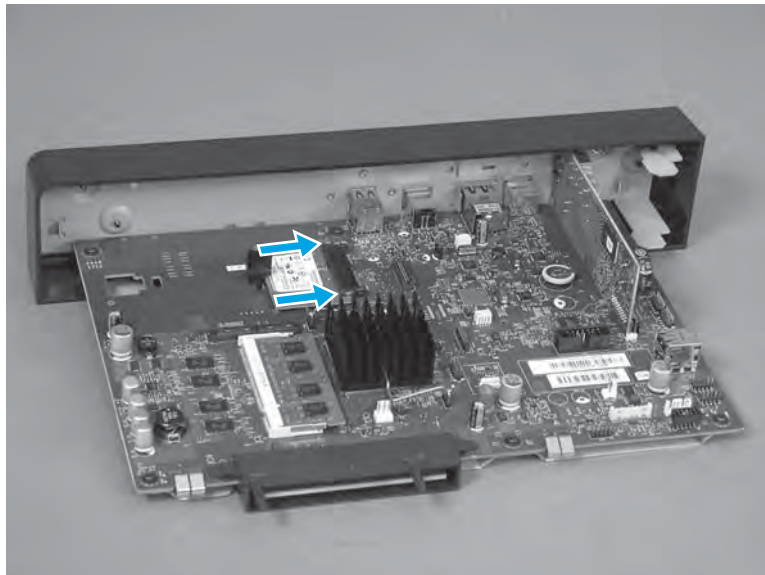
- c. When correctly installed, the HDD locking lever (callout 1) and the connector (callout 2) are securely fastened. Make sure that locking lever prevents the HDD from moving, and that the HDD is fully seated in the connector.

Figure 1-38 Make sure that the HDD is flat against the formatter



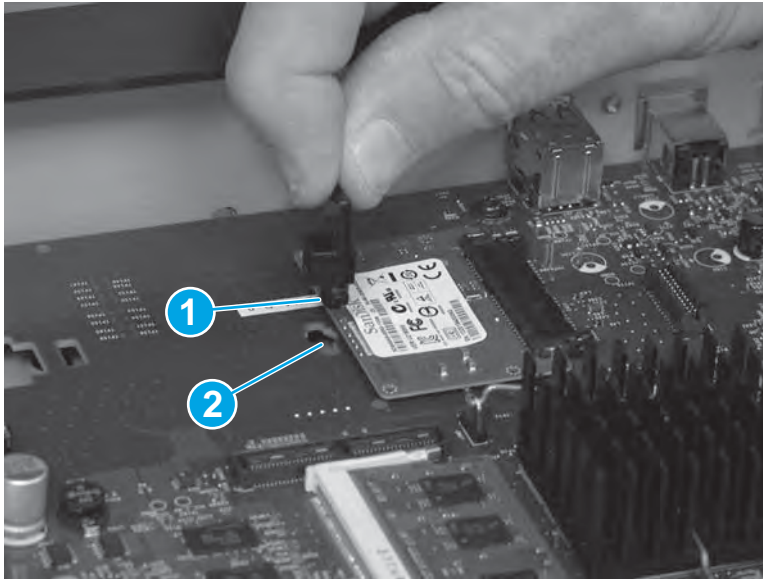
- 2. To install the SSM, do the following steps:
 - a. Slide the SSM in the direction of the arrow to install it.

Figure 1-39 Install the SSM



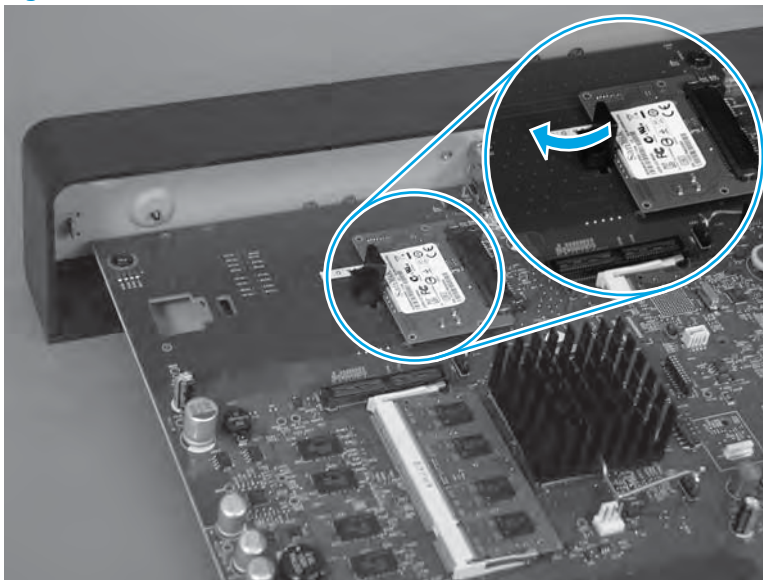
- b. Position the retainer clip (callout 1) in the slot (callout 2).

Figure 1-40 Install the retainer clip



- c. Rotate the retainer clip to lock it.

Figure 1-41 Rotate the retainer



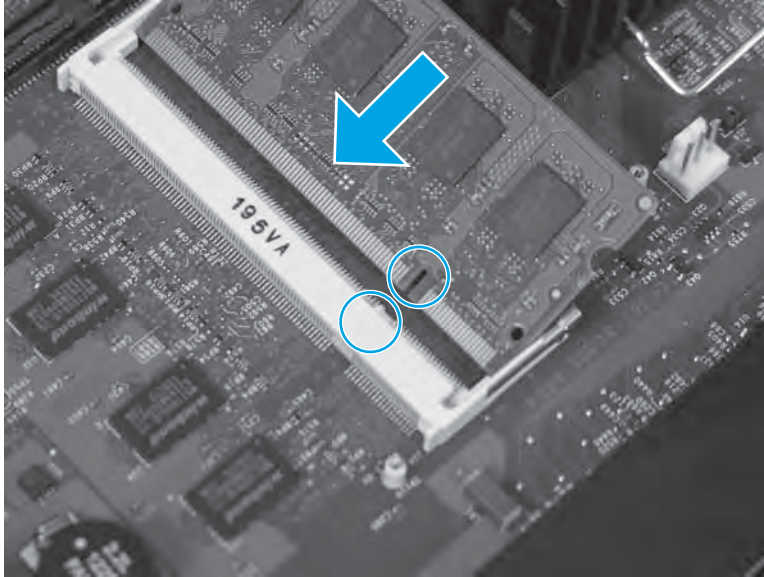
Step 7: Install the DIMM

CAUTION:  ESD sensitive assembly.

1. Carefully insert the DIMM at an angle into the holder on the formatter.

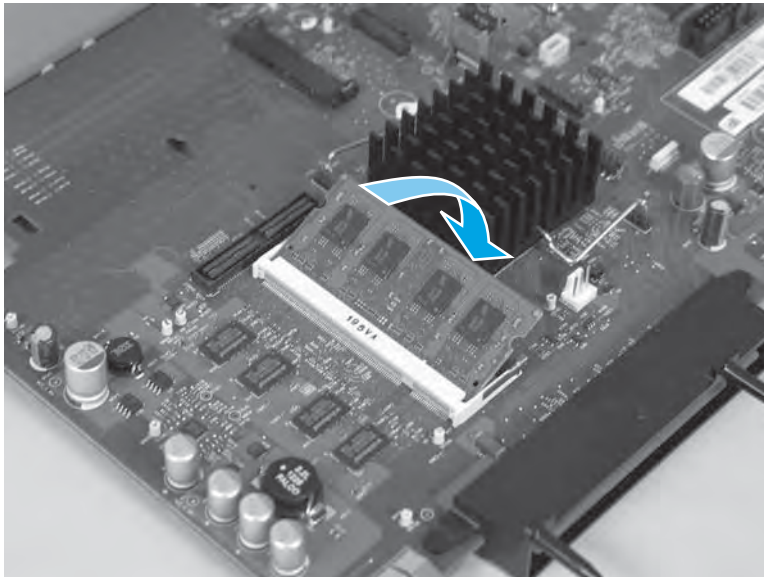
NOTE:  Position the DIMM so that the slot in the DIMM is aligned with the tab in the holder.

Figure 1-42 Insert the DIMM into the holder



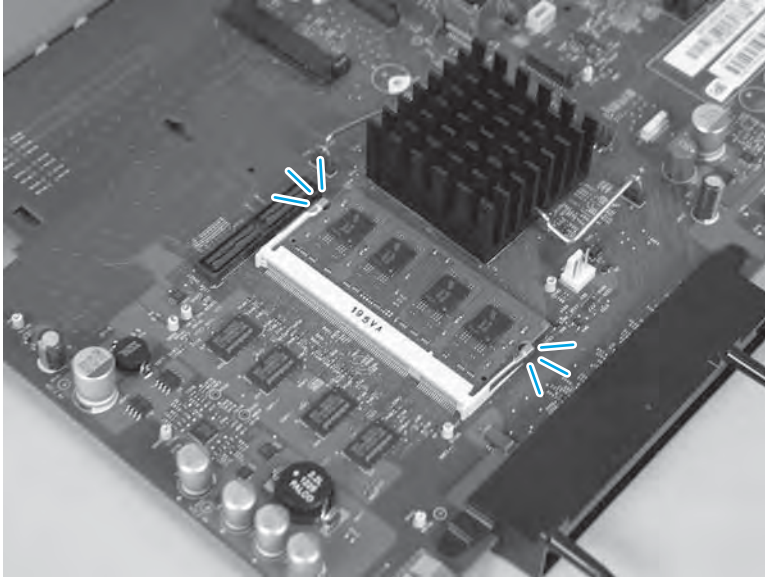
2. Rotate the DIMM in the direction of the arrow to install it.

Figure 1-43 Install the DIMM



3. When the DIMM is installed make sure that the retaining clips on the right and left sides of the DIMM snap into place.

Figure 1-44 Make sure that the retaining clips snap into place



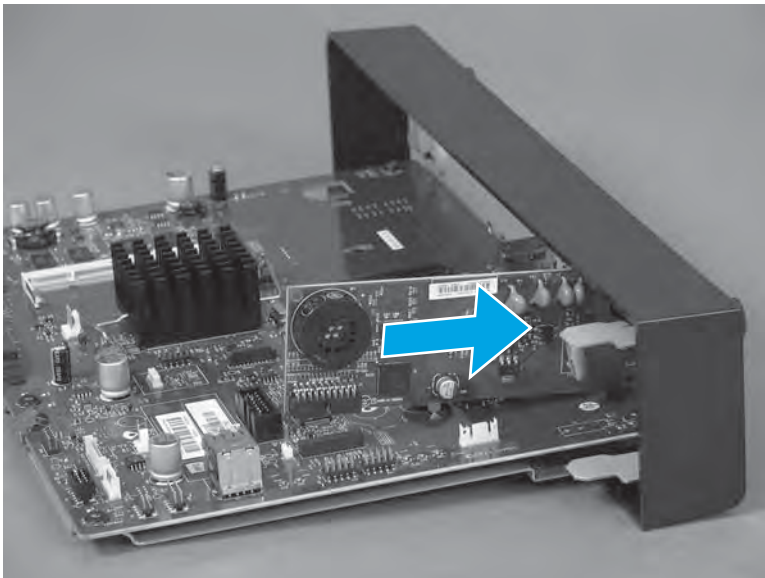
Step 8: Install the fax PCA

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

 **NOTE:** If your product does not have a fax PCA, go to [Step 9: Install the formatter on page 37](#).

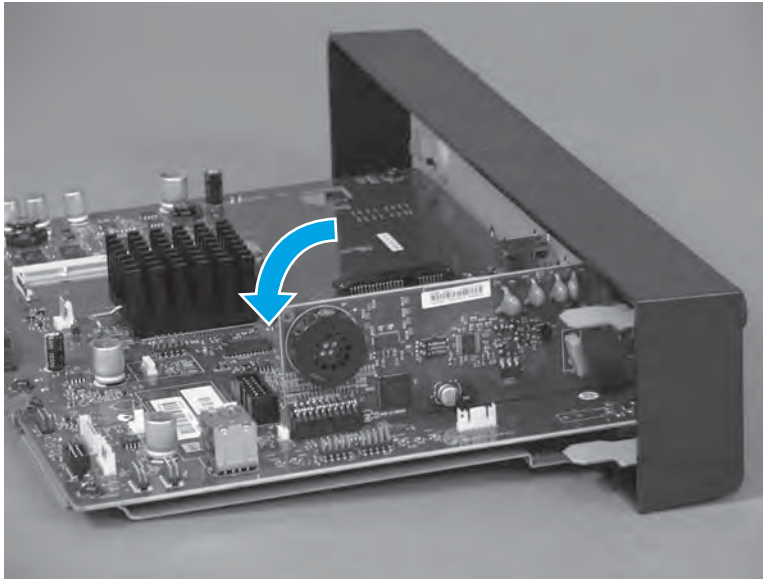
1. Insert the fax port of the fax PCA into the holder on the formatter tray.

Figure 1-45 Insert the fax port into the holder



2. Rotate the connector end of the fax PCA in the direction of the arrow to install it.

Figure 1-46 Install the fax PCA

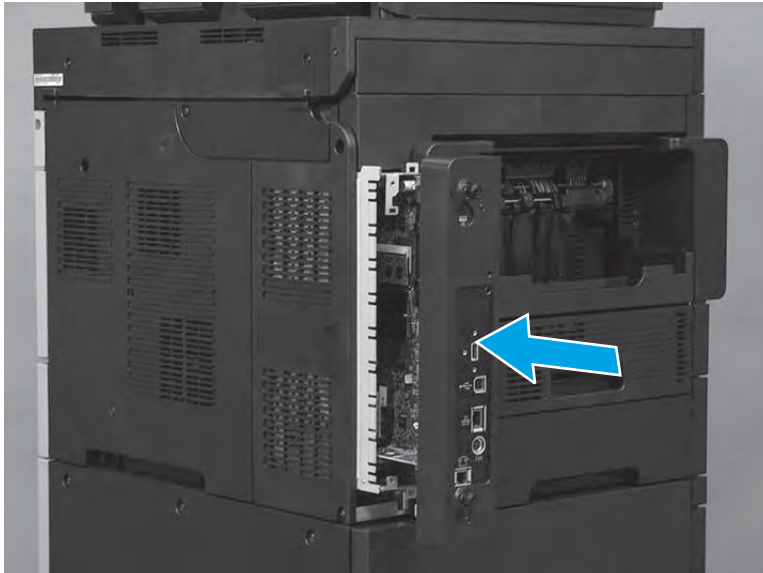


Step 9: Install the formatter

CAUTION:  ESD sensitive assembly.

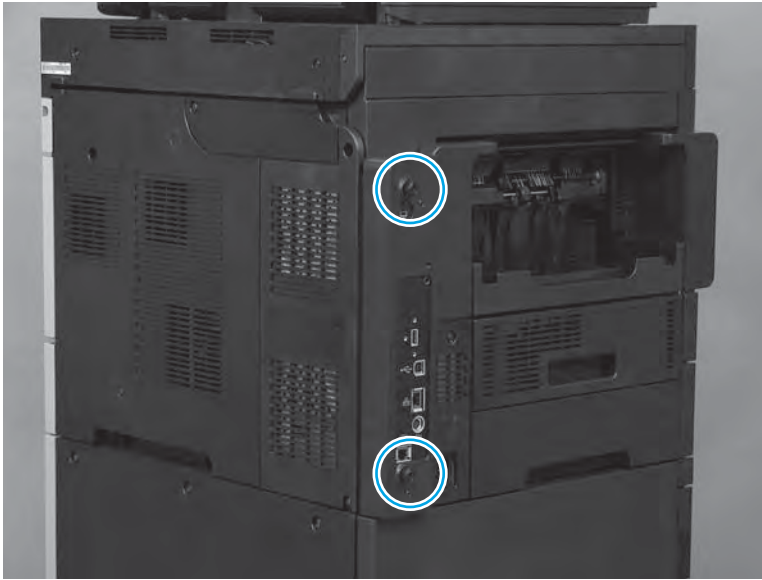
1. Align the formatter with the guides at the top and bottom of the formatter cage and push the formatter into the slot until it is fully seated.

Figure 1-47 Align the formatter with the guides and push the formatter into the slot



2. Finger-tighten the two thumbscrews.

Figure 1-48 Tighten the two thumbscrews



Step 10: Test the installation

1. Do the following steps:
 - a. Reconnect all cables to the formatter.
 - b. Plug in the power cord.
2. Turn on the product.

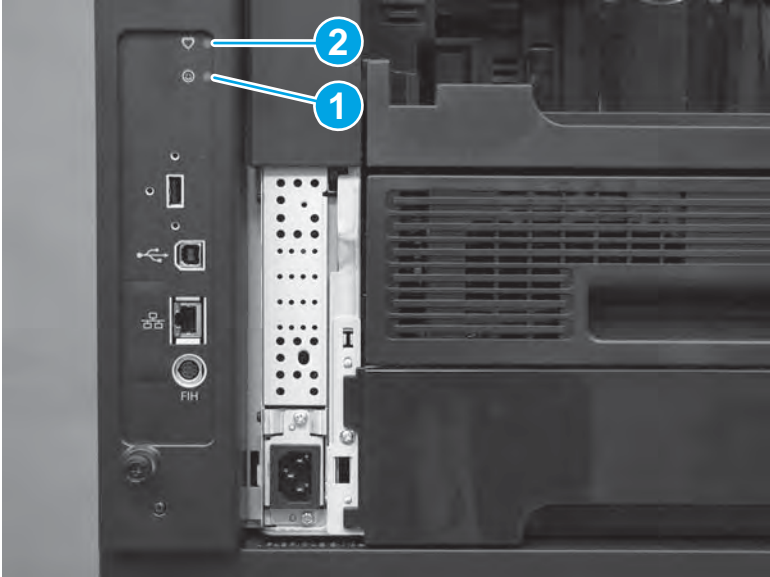
 **TIP:** If the product does not initialize when the power is turned on, make sure that the memory DIMM is correctly installed.

To verify that the formatter is correctly installed, observe the following functions of the LEDs on the formatter:

- The heartbeat LED (callout 1) illuminates if the formatter is functioning correctly.
 - While the product is initializing, the heartbeat LED illuminates solid red for about one second, and then turns solid green for about twenty seconds.
 - After the initialization sequence is complete, the heartbeat LED blinks continuously if the printer is functioning correctly.
- The connectivity LED (callout 2) indicates that the formatter is completely seated. It illuminates green when the product power is turned on and stays green if the formatter is properly seated.

If the LEDs do not correctly function, turn the product power off, remove the formatter, and then reinstall it (make sure that the formatter is fully seated before tightening the thumbscrews).

Figure 1-49 Verify that the formatter is functioning



Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Hard-disk drive (HDD) or solid-state memory (SSM)

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the formatter](#)
- [Step 2: Remove the hard-disk drive \(HDD\) or solid-state memory \(SSM\)](#)
- [Step 3: Unpack the replacement HDD or SSM](#)
- [Step 4: Install the HDD or SSM](#)
- [Step 5: Install the formatter](#)
- [Step 6: Test the installation](#)
- [Step 7: Reinstall the product firmware](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the HDD or SSM.



Before servicing


Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the kit.

Formatter kit part numbers	
B3G85-67903	HDD kit with instruction guide
B3G84-67907	SSM kit with instruction guide

Required tools

No special tools are required to install this kit.

 **CAUTION:**  This product contains components that can be damaged by electrostatic discharge (ESD). To reduce the chance of ESD damage, place the product on an ESD mat (if available), and wear an ESD wrist strap connected to a grounded surface. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, ground yourself by touching the sheet-metal chassis before touching an ESD-sensitive part.

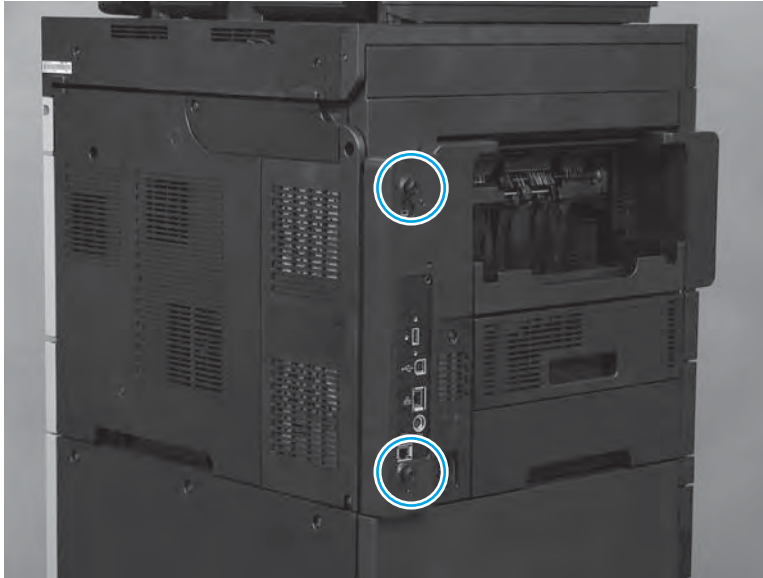
 **IMPORTANT:** Do not replace the formatter, DC controller, and hard-disk drive/solid-state memory simultaneously during a single product servicing. Doing so might cause the product to become unstable or inoperable.

Step 1: Remove the formatter

1. Do the following steps:

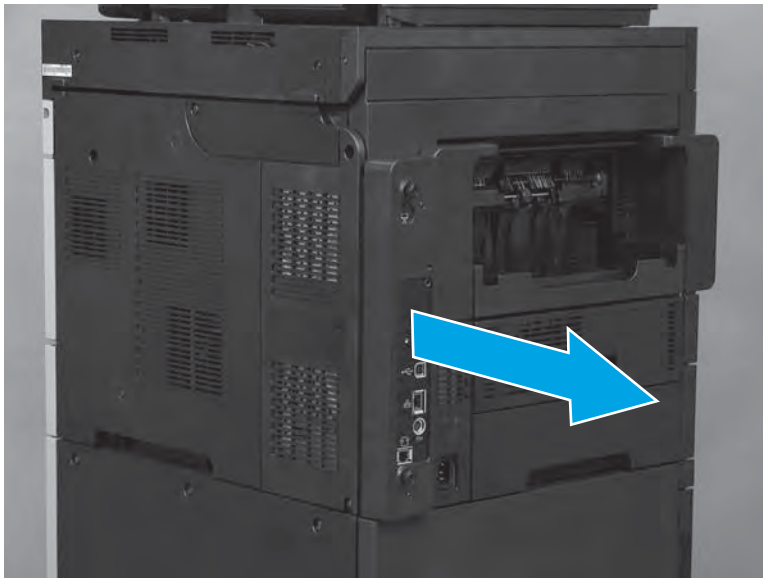
- a. Turn off the product.
 - b. Disconnect the power cable.
-
- ⚠ WARNING!** To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.
- c. Disconnect all cables and accessories attached to the formatter.
2. Loosen the two thumbscrews on the formatter.

Figure 1-50 Remove the formatter



3. Slide the formatter straight out of the product to remove it.

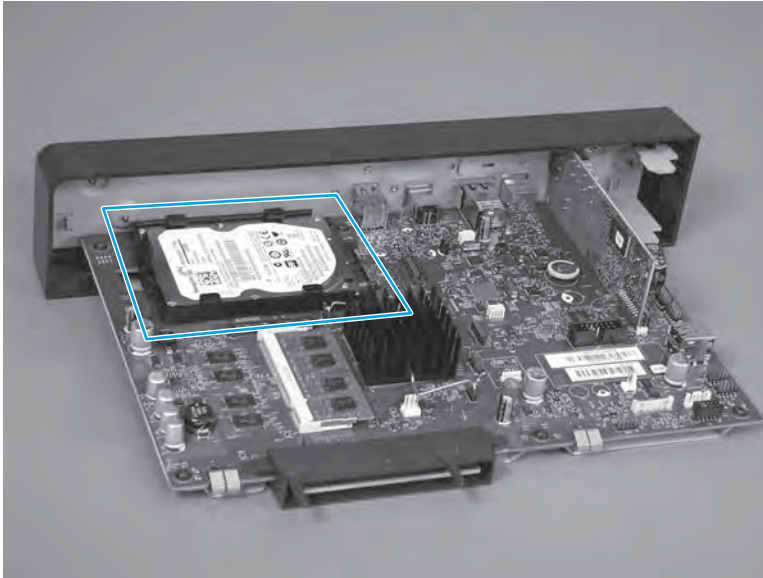
Figure 1-51 Remove the formatter



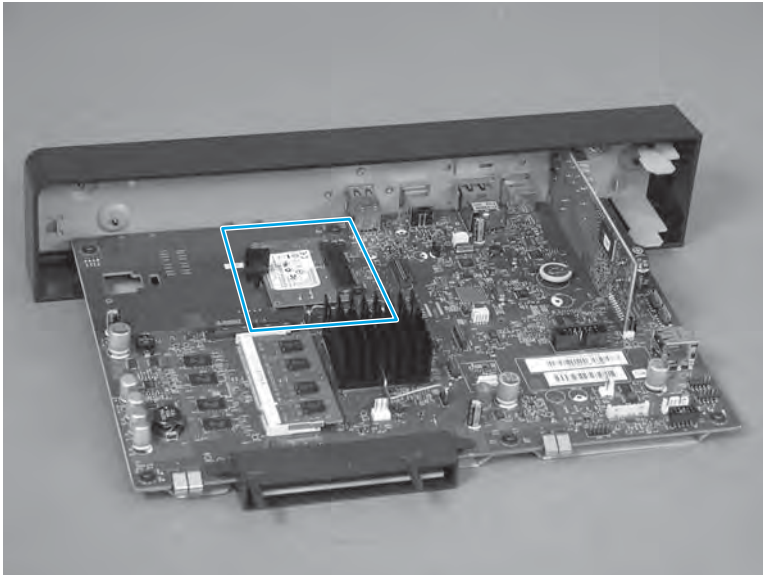
Step 2: Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD) or solid-state memory (SSM)

Identify the component type

- Hard-disk drive (HDD). See [Remove the HDD on page 43](#).



- Solid-state memory (SSM). See [Remove the SSM on page 44](#).

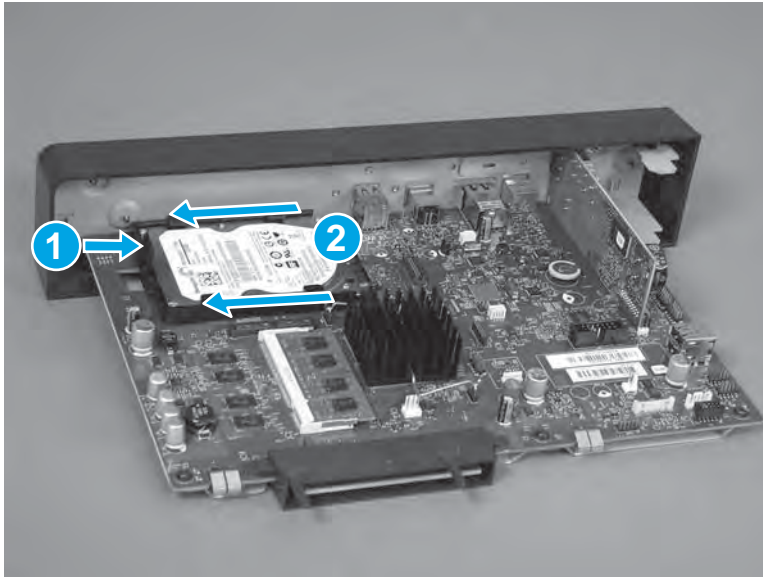


Remove the HDD

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

- ▲ Push and hold the locking lever (callout 1) toward the HDD to release it, and then slide the black plastic HDD case in the direction of the arrows (callout 2) to remove the HDD.

Figure 1-52 Remove the HDD

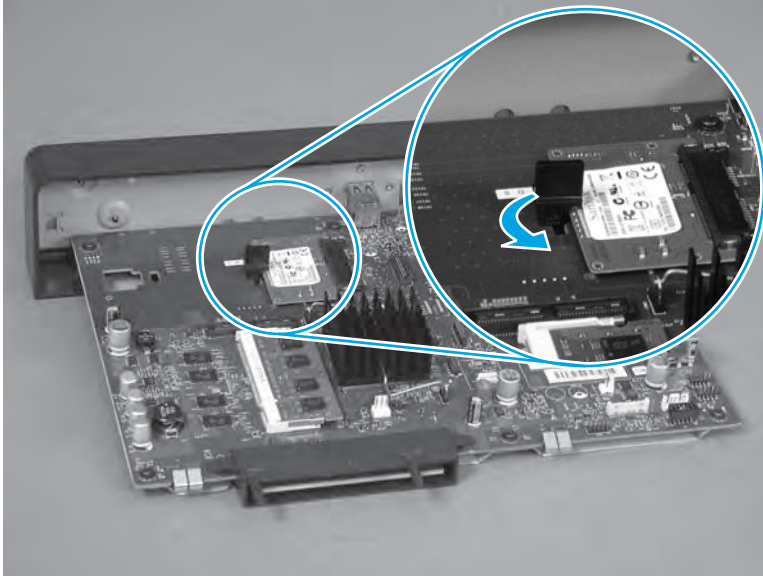


Remove the SSM

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

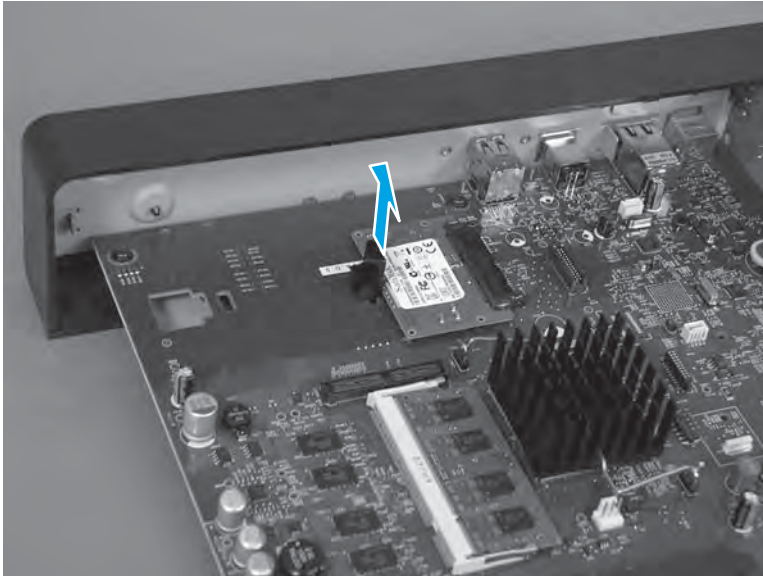
1. Rotate the retainer clip to release it.

Figure 1-53 Release the clip



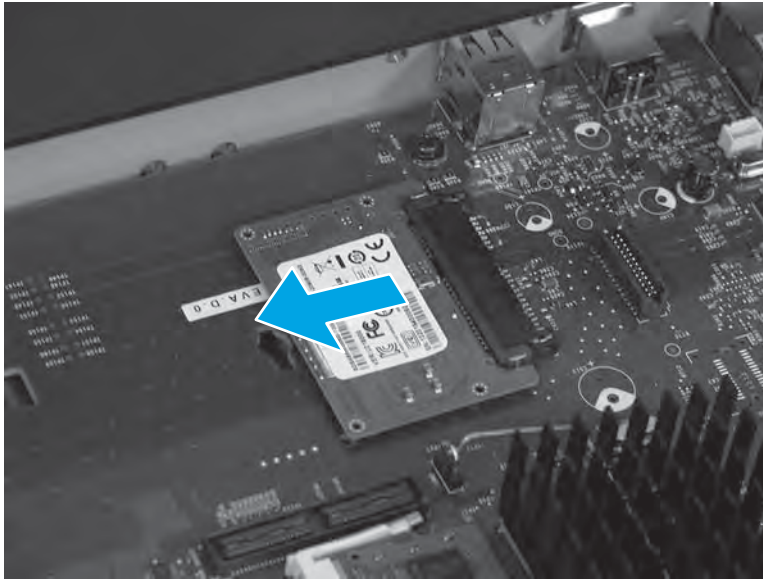
2. Lift the retainer clip up to remove it.

Figure 1-54 Remove the clip



3. Slide the SSM away from the connector to remove it.

Figure 1-55 Remove the SSM

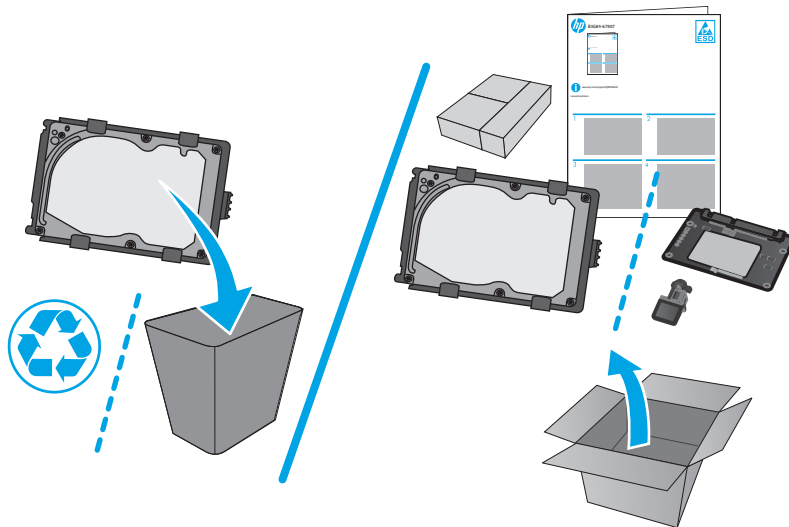


Step 3: Unpack the replacement HDD or SSM

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

[Product return and recycling](#)

 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.



Step 4: Install the HDD or SSM

To install a HDD, go to [Install the HDD on page 46](#).

To install a SSM, go to [Install the SSM on page 49](#).

Install the HDD

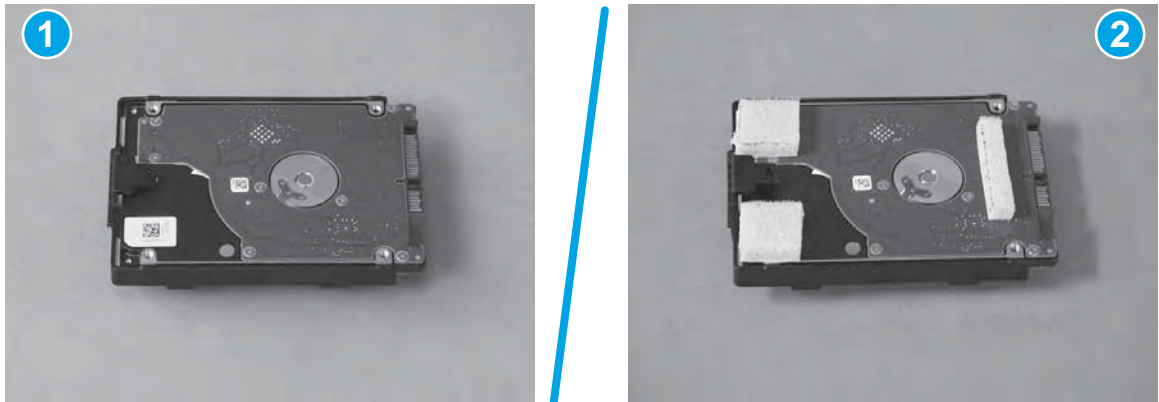
 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

1. To install a HDD, do the following steps:

Look at the underside of the removed defective HDD.

- If the HDD *does not* have foam pads installed (callout 1), go to step [2](#).
- If the HDD *does* have foam pads installed (callout 2), go to step [3](#).

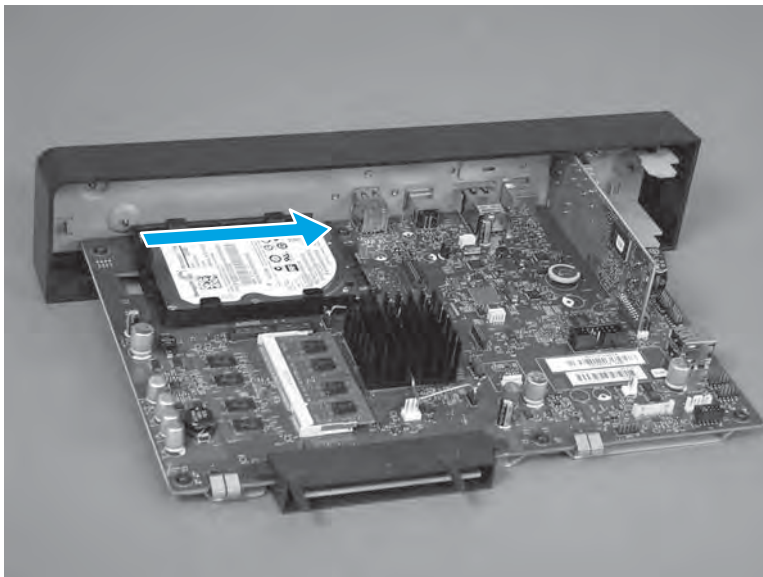
Figure 1-56 Check the HDD for foam pads



2. Install a HDD without foam pads:

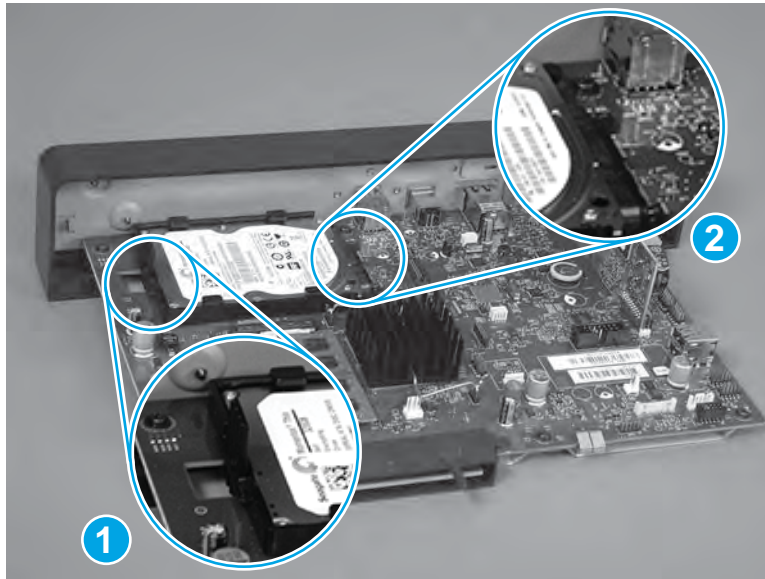
- a. Position the replacement HDD on the formatter, and then slide the HDD into the connector on the formatter.

Figure 1-57 Install the HDD



- b. When correctly installed, the HDD locking lever (callout 1) and the connector (callout 2) are securely fastened. Make sure that locking lever prevents the HDD from moving, and that the HDD is fully seated in the connector.

Figure 1-58 Check the HDD installation



3. Install a HDD with foam pads:

- a. Working with one foam pad at a time, carefully separate it from the other foam pads while removing it from the protective backing. Adhere the pads to the backside of the replacement HDD as shown


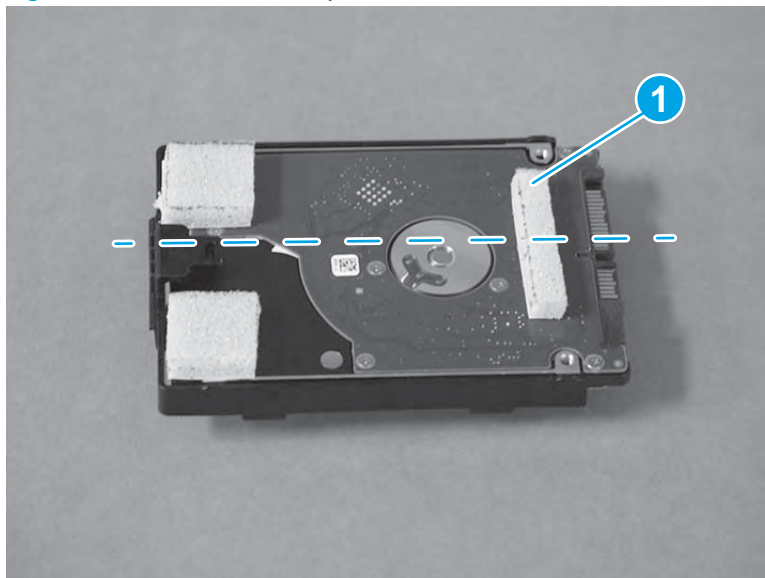
 **NOTE:** Center the long rectangular foam (callout 1) near the connector end of the HDD.

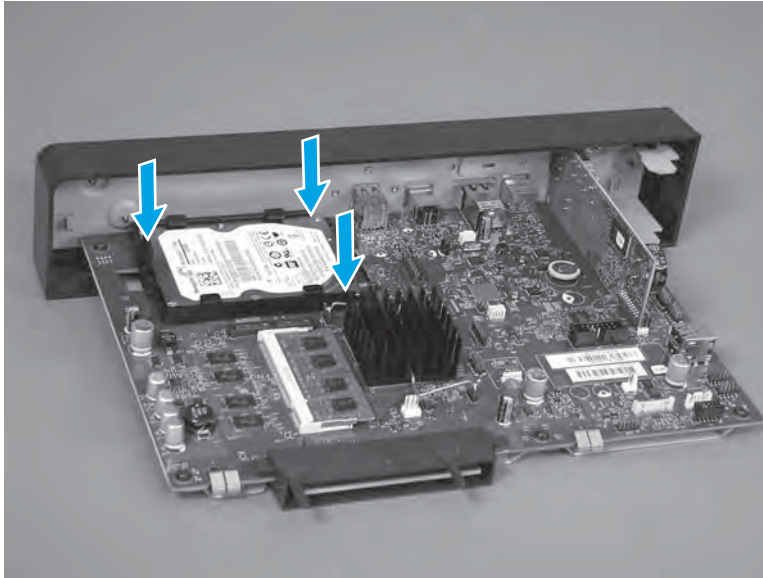
Figure 1-59 Install the foam pads



- b. Carefully press down on the connector-side corners of the HDD and on the locking lever to compress the foam on the backside of the HDD.

CAUTION: Do not press down on the center of the HDD.

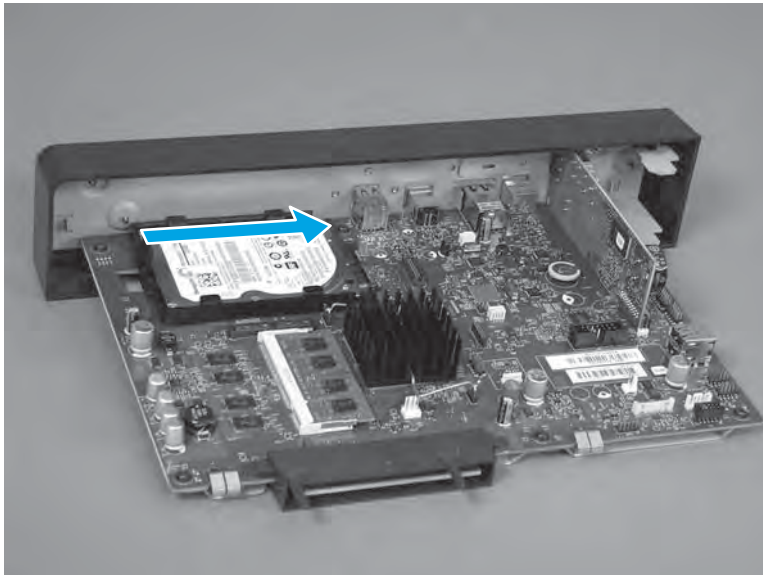
Figure 1-60 Press down on the HDD



- c. With the foam on the backside of the HDD compressed, slide the HDD into the connector on the formatter.

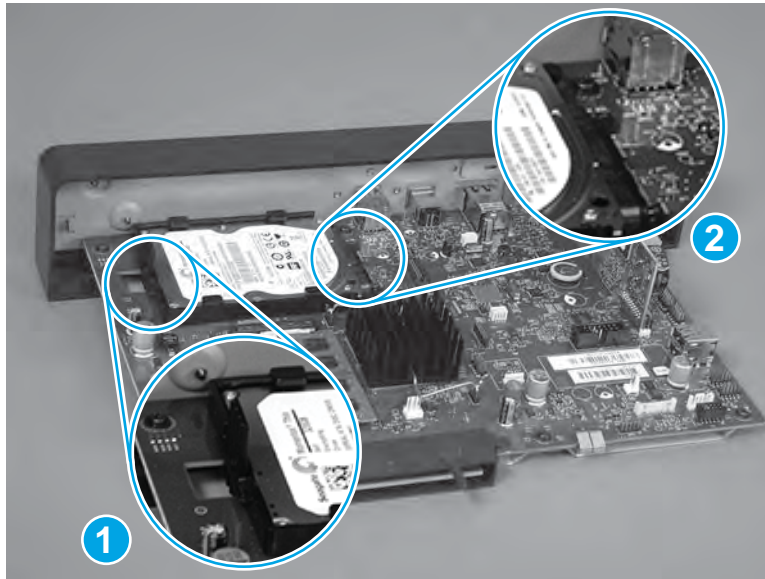
NOTE: Make sure that the foam pads are compressed enough to allow the HDD to easily slide into the connector, and that the locking lever fits into the slot on the formatter.

Figure 1-61 Install the HDD



- d. When correctly installed, the HDD locking lever (callout 1) and the connector (callout 2) are securely fastened. Make sure that locking lever prevents the HDD from moving, and that the HDD is fully seated in the connector.

Figure 1-62 Check the HDD installation

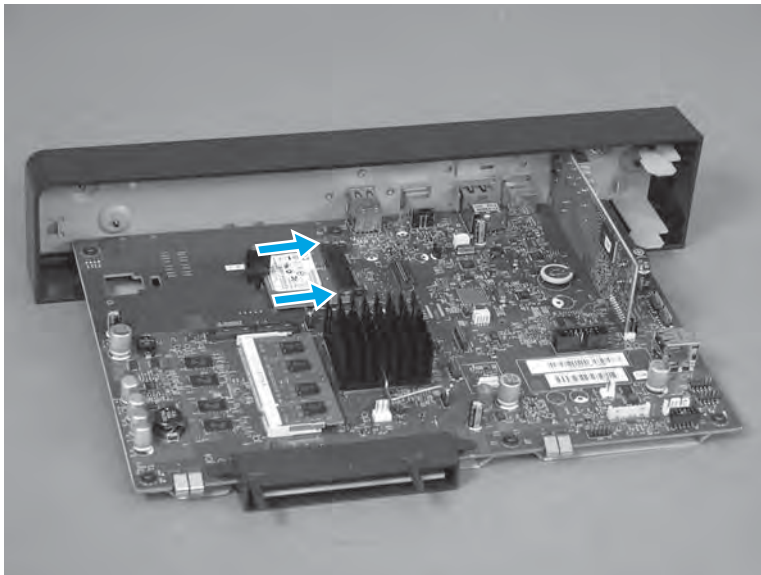


Install the SSM

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

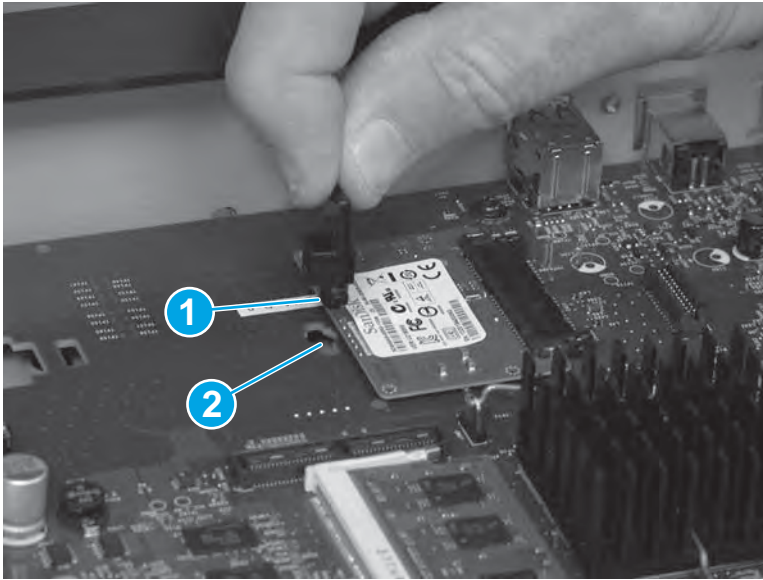
1. Position the SSM on the formatter, and then slide the SSM in the direction of the arrow to install it.

Figure 1-63 Install the SSM



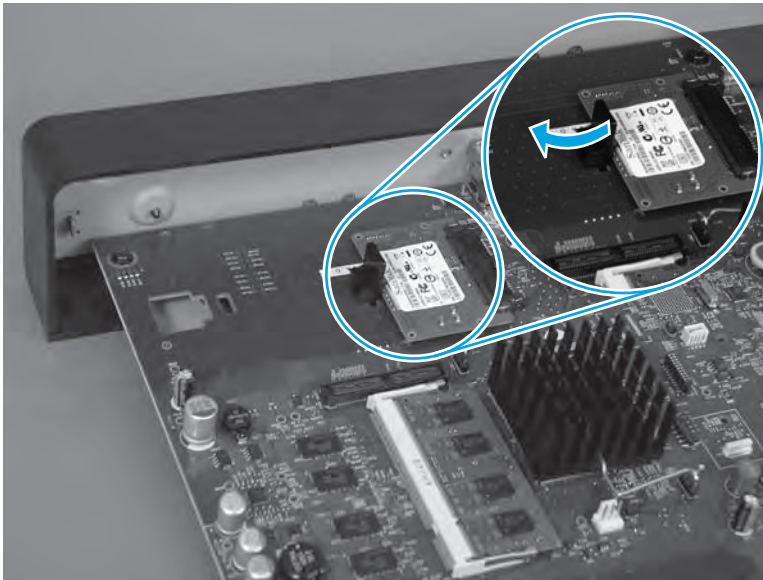
2. Position the retainer clip (callout 1) in the slot (callout 2).

Figure 1-64 Install the retainer clip



3. Rotate the retainer clip to lock it.

Figure 1-65 Rotate the retainer

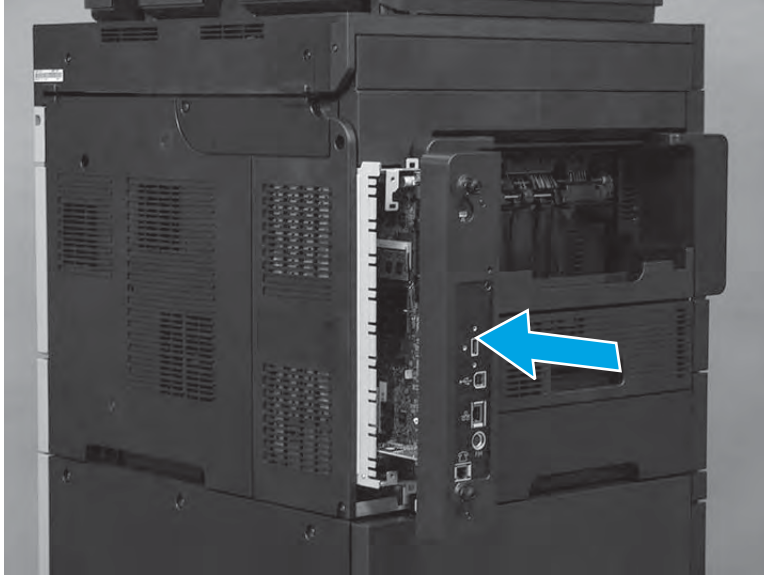


Step 5: Install the formatter

CAUTION:  ESD sensitive assembly.

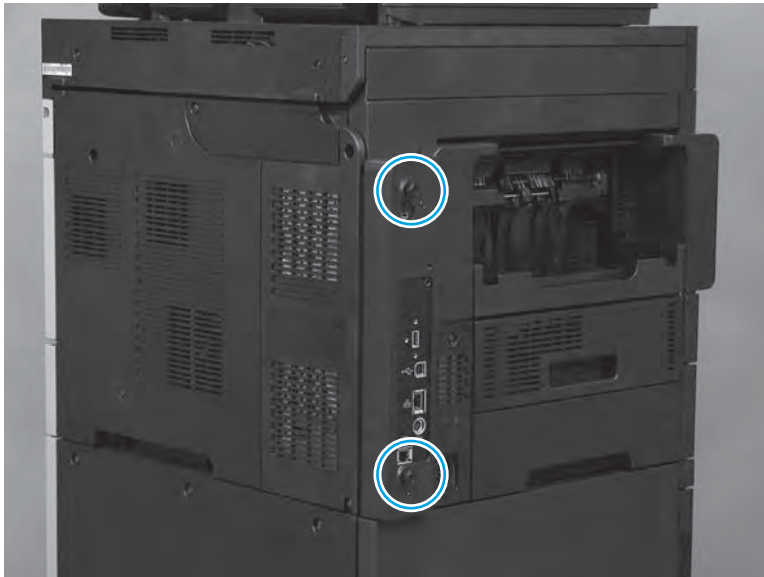
1. Align the formatter with the guides at the top and bottom of the formatter cage and push the formatter into the slot until it is fully seated.

Figure 1-66 Align the formatter with the guides and push the formatter into the slot



2. Finger-tighten the two thumbscrews.

Figure 1-67 Tighten the two thumbscrews



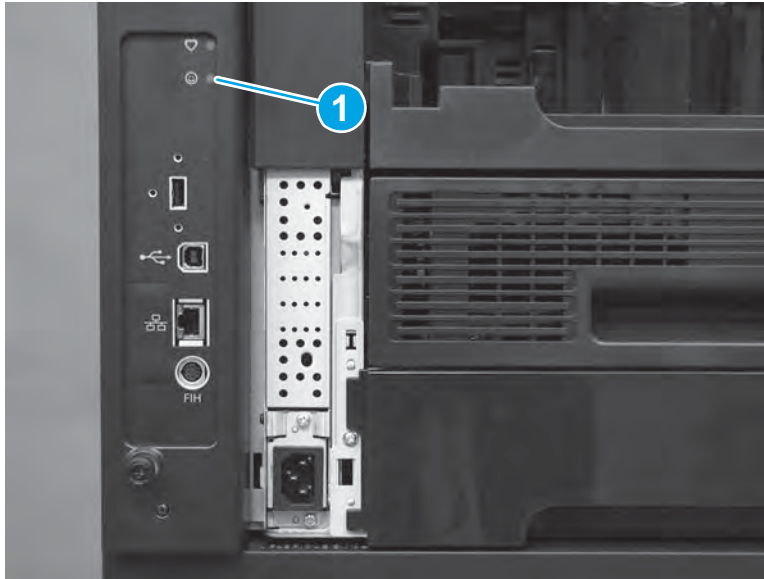
Step 6: Test the installation

1. Do the following steps:
 - a. Reconnect all cables to the formatter.
 - b. Plug in the power cord.
2. Turn on the product.

To verify that the formatter is correctly installed, observe the following function of the connectivity LED on the formatter.

- The connectivity LED (callout 1) indicates that the formatter is completely seated. It illuminates green when the product power is turned on and stays green if the formatter is properly seated.

If the LED does not correctly function, turn the product power off, remove the formatter, and then reinstall it (make sure that the formatter is fully seated before tightening the thumbscrews).



Step 7: Reinstall the product firmware

1. Turn off the product.
2. Do the one of the following:
 - In the U.S., go to www.hp.com/support/ljMFPM630.
 - a. Select **Drivers, Software, and Firmware**, and then select **Cross operating system** (BIOS, Firmware, Diagnostics, etc.).
 - b. Locate the firmware download, and then select **Download**.
 - Outside the U.S., go to www.hp.com/support.
 - a. Select your country/region.
 - b. Select **Product Support & Troubleshooting**.
 - c. Enter the product name, and then select **Search**. Select **Drivers, Software, and Firmware**, and then select **Cross operating system** (BIOS, Firmware, Diagnostics, etc.).
 - d. Locate the firmware download, and then select **Download**.
3. Copy the firmware upgrade file to the root directory of a USB flash drive. The firmware upgrade file has a .bdl extension.
4. Insert the USB flash drive into the USB port on the product control panel.
5. Turn on the product.

6. The following message displays on the control panel: **Error: 99.09.63 Incorrect Disk**. Touch the **OK** button to continue.
7. Wait for the Pre-Boot menu to appear on the control-panel display, and then touch the down arrow ▼ button to scroll to **3 Administrator**. Touch the **OK** button to select it.
8. Touch the down arrow ▼ button to scroll to **6 Manage Disk**. Touch the **OK** button to select it.
9. Touch the down arrow ▼ button to scroll to **+ 6 Boot Device**. Touch the **OK** button to select it.
10. Touch the down arrow ▼ button to scroll to **2 Erase / Unlock**. Touch the **OK** button to select it.
11. The message **Proceed with Requested Action** displays. Touch the **OK** button to select it.
12. Touch the back ↶ button to return to the **Pre-Boot** menu home screen.
13. Touch the down arrow ▼ button to scroll to **3 Administrator**. Touch the **OK** button to select it.
14. Touch the down arrow ▼ button to scroll to **1 Download**. Touch the **OK** button to select it.
15. Touch the down arrow ▼ button to scroll to **3 USB Thumbdrive**. Touch the **OK** button to select it.
16. Several .bdl files might be listed. Touch the down arrow ▼ button to scroll to the firmware upgrade file that was downloaded previously. Touch the **OK** button to select it.
17. Wait while the file transfers. When the transfer is complete, the message **Complete** displays on the screen.
18. Turn the product off, remove the USB flash drive, and then turn the product on. Wait for several minutes while the product initializes. If the upgrade is unsuccessful, try sending the firmware upgrade file again.



NOTE: If the upgrade fails again, contact HP support at www.hp.com/support/ljMFPM630.

Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Memory DIMM

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the formatter](#)
- [Step 2: Remove the memory DIMM](#)
- [Step 3: Unpack the replacement DIMM](#)
- [Step 4: Reinstall the memory DIMM](#)
- [Step 5: Install the formatter](#)
- [Step 6: Test the installation](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the memory dual-inline memory module (DIMM).



Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the kit.

DIMM kit part number	
B3G85-67909	2GB memory DIMM kit with instruction guide
B3G85-67910	1GB memory DIMM kit with instruction guide

Required tools


No special tools are required to install this kit.

 **CAUTION:**  This product contains components that can be damaged by electrostatic discharge (ESD). To reduce the chance of ESD damage, place the product on an ESD mat (if available), and wear an ESD wrist strap connected to a grounded surface. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, ground yourself by touching the sheet-metal chassis before touching an ESD-sensitive part.

Step 1: Remove the formatter

1. Do the following steps:

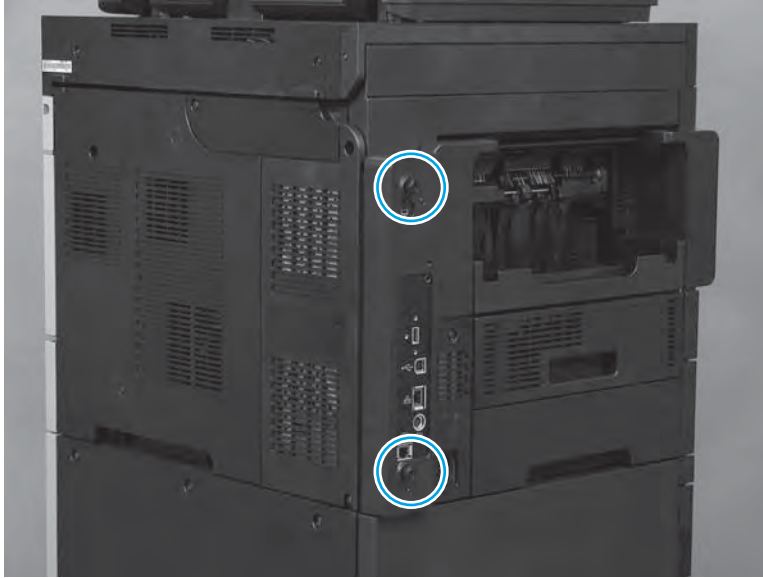
- a. Turn off the product.
- b. Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

- c. Disconnect all cables and accessories attached to the formatter.

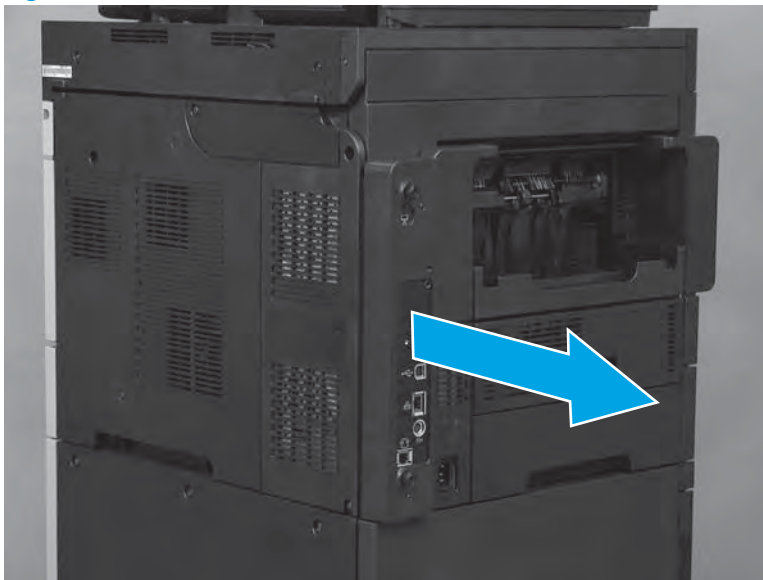
2. Loosen the two thumbscrews on the formatter.

Figure 1-68 Remove the formatter



3. Slide the formatter straight out of the product to remove it.

Figure 1-69 Remove the formatter

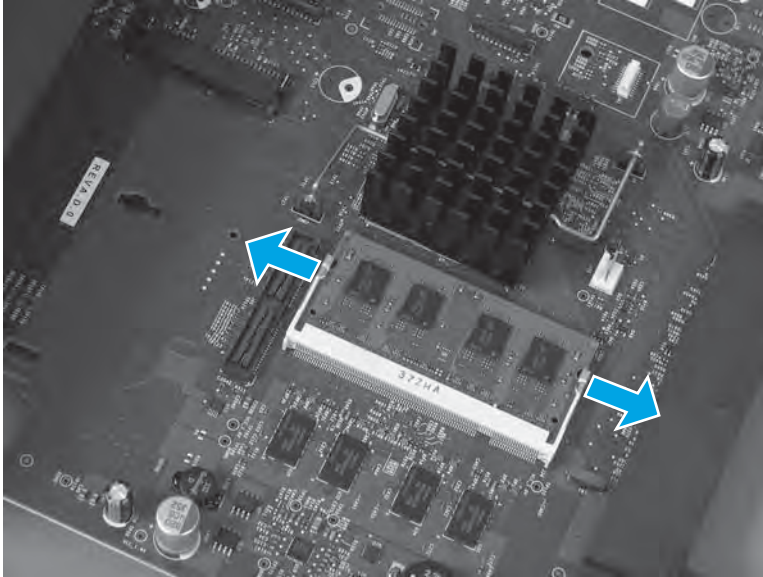


Step 2: Remove the memory DIMM

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

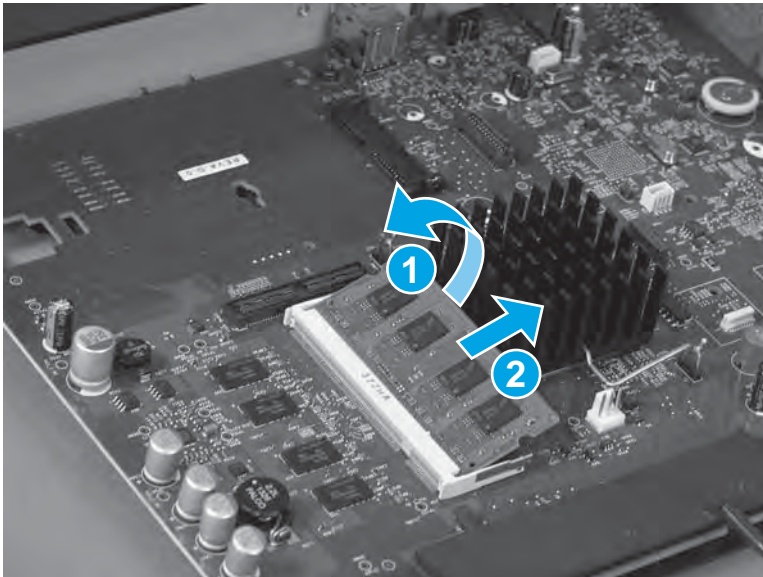
1. Release two clips.

Figure 1-70 Release two clips



2. Rotate the DIMM upward (callout 1), and then remove it (callout 2).

Figure 1-71 Remove the DIMM




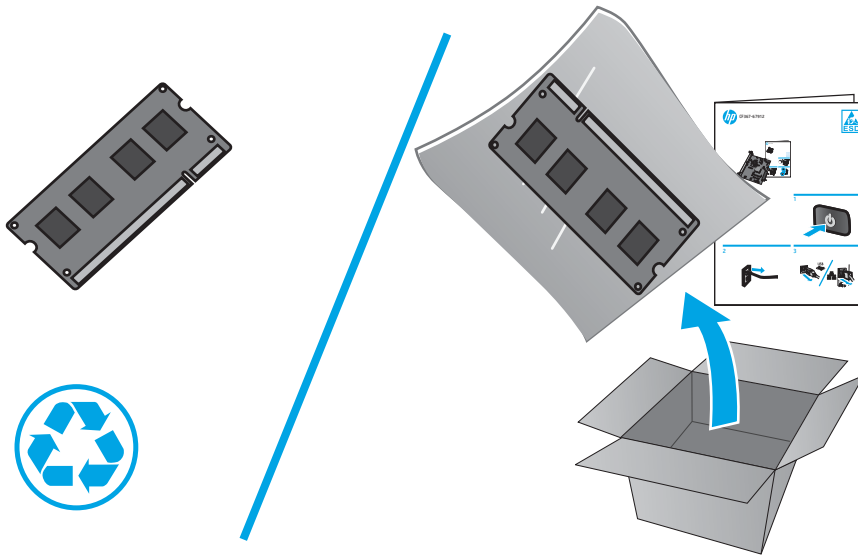
Step 3: Unpack the replacement DIMM

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

www.Product return and recycling.

 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.



Step 4: Reinstall the memory DIMM

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

1. Carefully insert the DIMM at an angle into the holder on the formatter.


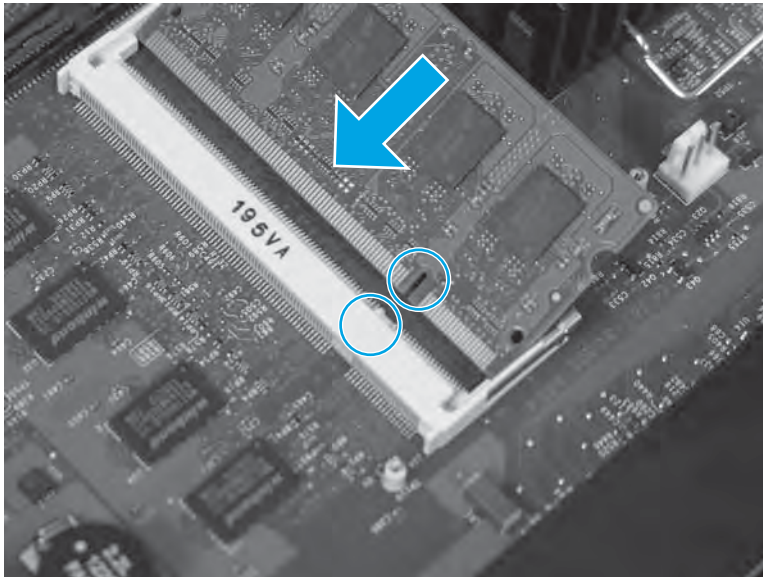
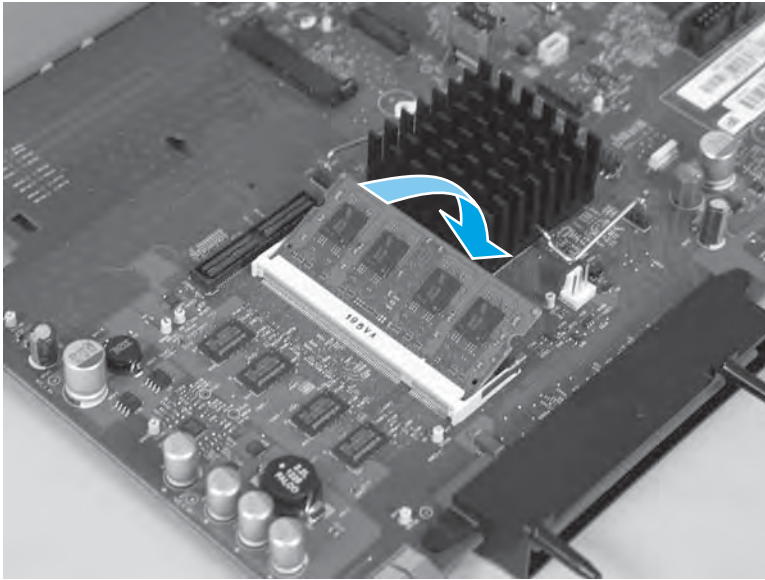
 **NOTE:** Position the DIMM so that the slot in the DIMM is aligned with the tab in the holder.

Figure 1-72 Insert the DIMM into the holder



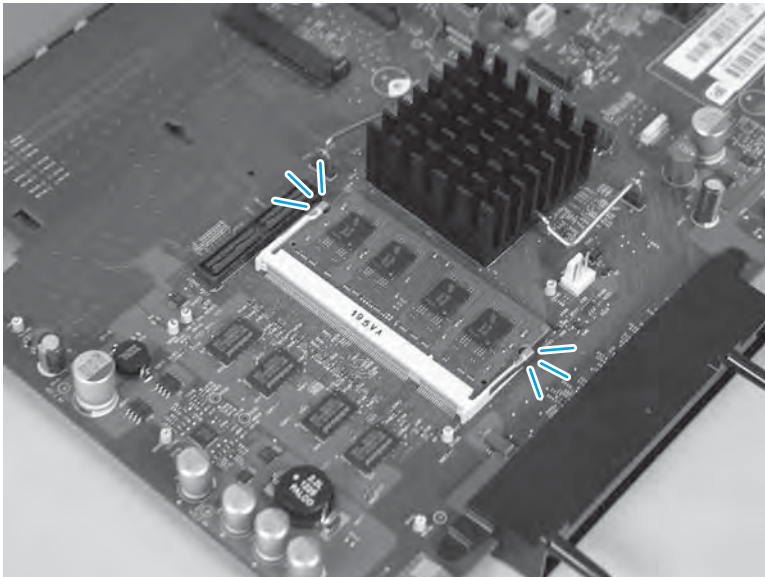
2. Rotate the DIMM in the direction of the arrow to install it.

Figure 1-73 Install the DIMM



3. When the DIMM is installed make sure that the retaining clips on the right and left sides of the DIMM snap into place.

Figure 1-74 Make sure that the retaining clips snap into place

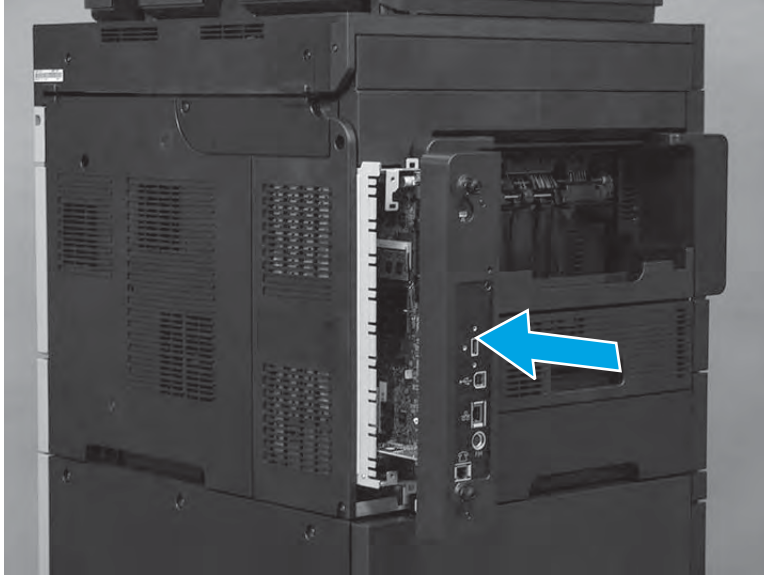


Step 5: Install the formatter

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

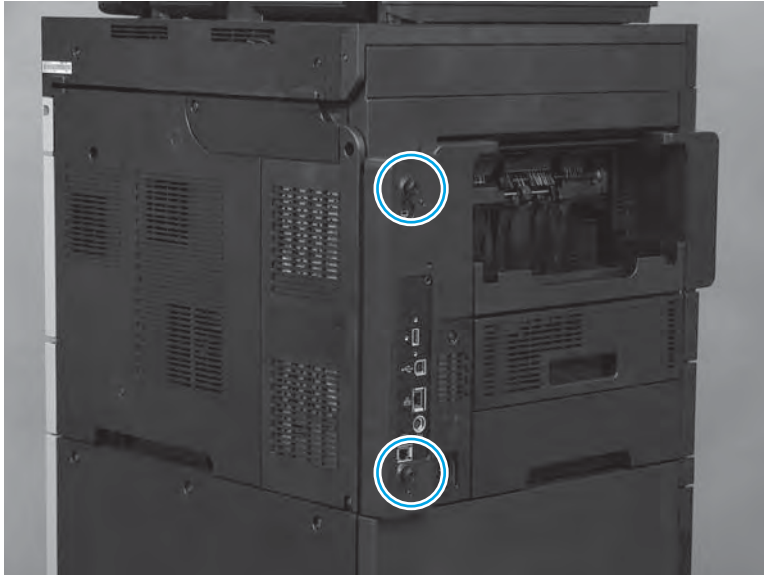
1. Align the formatter with the guides at the top and bottom of the formatter cage and push the formatter into the slot until it is fully seated.

Figure 1-75 Align the formatter with the guides and push the formatter into the slot




2. Finger-tighten the two thumbscrews.

Figure 1-76 Tighten the two thumbscrews



Step 6: Test the installation

1. Do the following steps:
 - a. Reconnect all cables to the formatter.
 - b. Plug in the power cord.
2. Turn on the product.

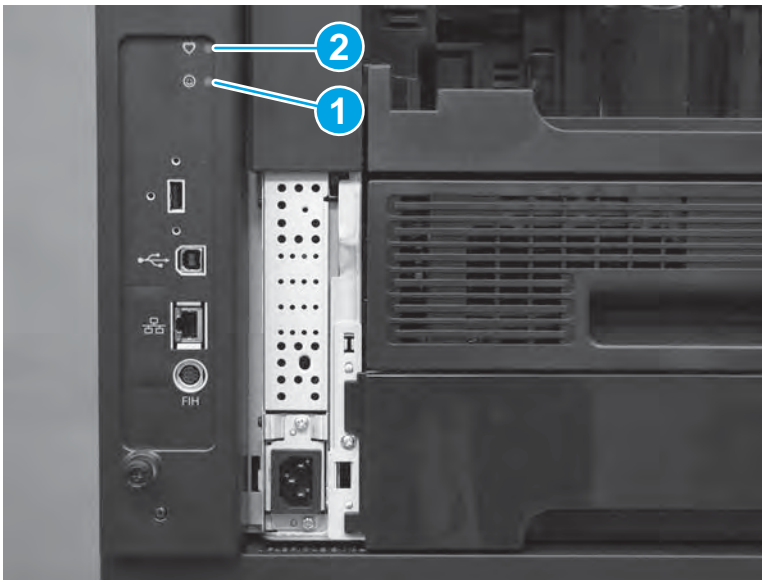
 **TIP:** If the product does not initialize when the power is turned on, make sure that the memory DIMM is correctly installed.

To verify that the formatter is correctly installed, observe the following functions of the LEDs on the formatter:

- The heartbeat LED (callout 1) illuminates if the formatter is functioning correctly.
 - While the product is initializing, the heartbeat LED illuminates solid red for about one second, and then turns solid green for about twenty seconds.
 - After the initialization sequence is complete, the heartbeat LED blinks continuously if the printer is functioning correctly.
- The connectivity LED (callout 2) indicates that the formatter is completely seated. It illuminates green when the product power is turned on and stays green if the formatter is properly seated.

If the LEDs do not correctly function, turn the product power off, remove the formatter, and then reinstall it (make sure that the formatter is fully seated before tightening the thumbscrews).

Figure 1-77 Verify that the formatter is functioning



Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Fax printed-circuit assembly (PCA)

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the formatter](#)
- [Step 2: Remove the fax PCA](#)
- [Step 3: Unpack the replacement fax PCA](#)
- [Step 4: Install the fax PCA](#)
- [Step 5: Install the formatter](#)
- [Step 6: Test the installation](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the fax PCA.



Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the kit.

Fax PCA kit part numbers	
A2W77-67910	Fax PCA kit with instruction guide


Required tools

No special tools are required to install this kit.

 **CAUTION:**  This product contains components that can be damaged by electrostatic discharge (ESD). To reduce the chance of ESD damage, place the product on an ESD mat (if available), and wear an ESD wrist strap connected to a grounded surface. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, ground yourself by touching the sheet-metal chassis before touching an ESD-sensitive part.

Step 1: Remove the formatter

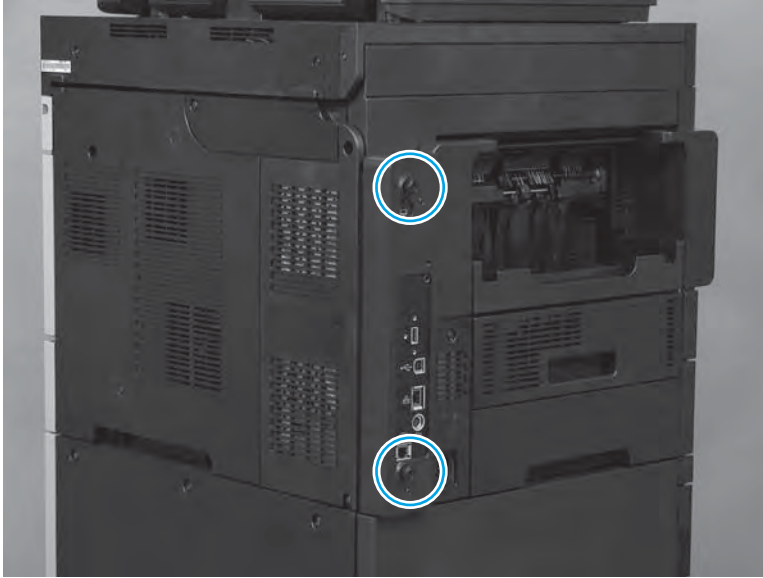
1. Do the following steps:
 - a. Turn off the product.
 - b. Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

- c. Disconnect all cables and accessories attached to the formatter.

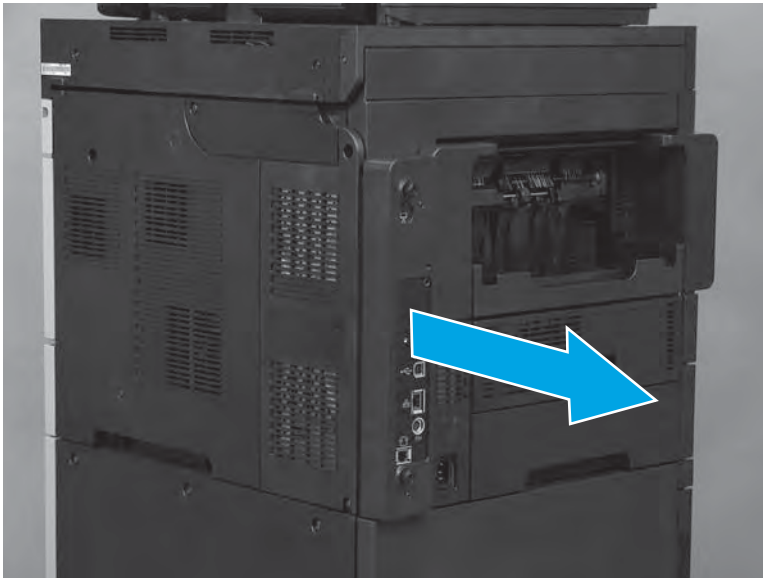
2. Loosen the two thumbscrews on the formatter.

Figure 1-78 Remove the formatter



3. Slide the formatter straight out of the product to remove it.

Figure 1-79 Remove the formatter

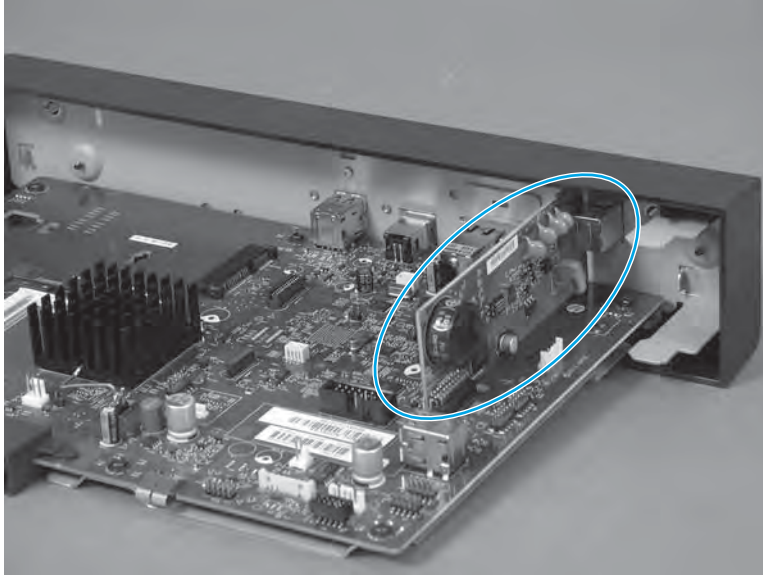


Step 2: Remove the fax PCA

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

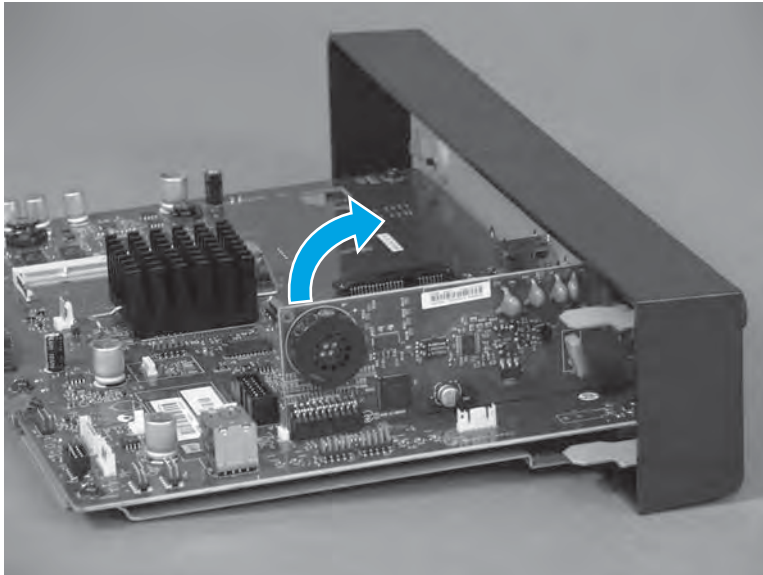
1. Locate the fax PCA that is installed on the formatter.

Figure 1-80 Locate the fax PCA



2. Rotate the connector end (away from the phone port) of the fax PCA up and away from the formatter to release it.

Figure 1-81 Release the connector end of the fax PCA



- Carefully remove the fax PCA from the formatter bracket.


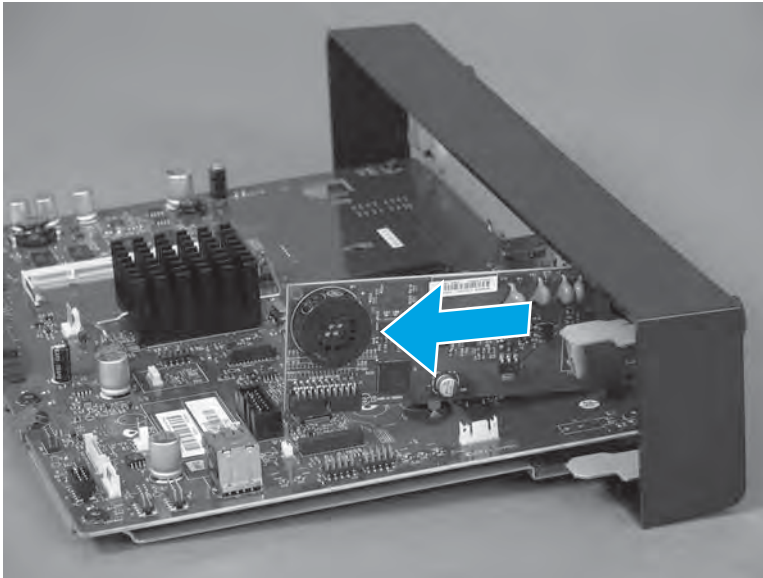
 **NOTE:** Set this part aside. It will be installed on the replacement formatter.

Figure 1-82 Remove the fax PCA

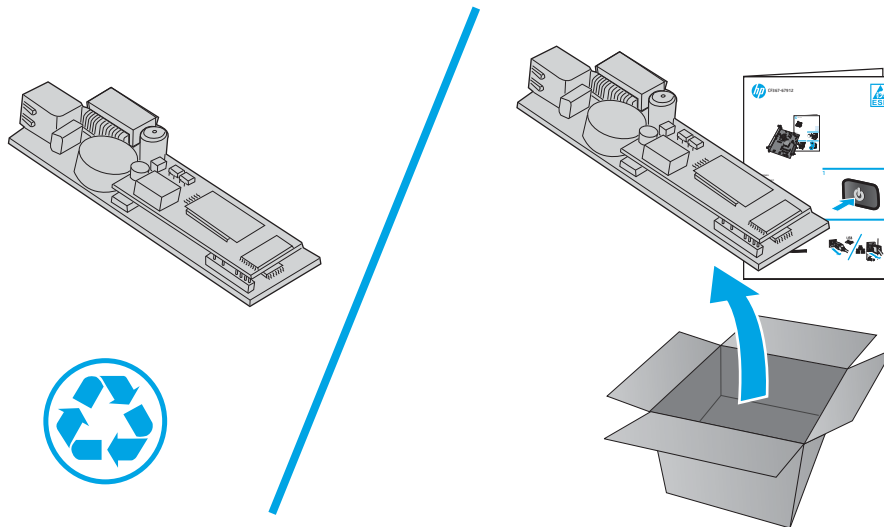


Step 3: Unpack the replacement fax PCA

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

www.Product return and recycling.

 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.

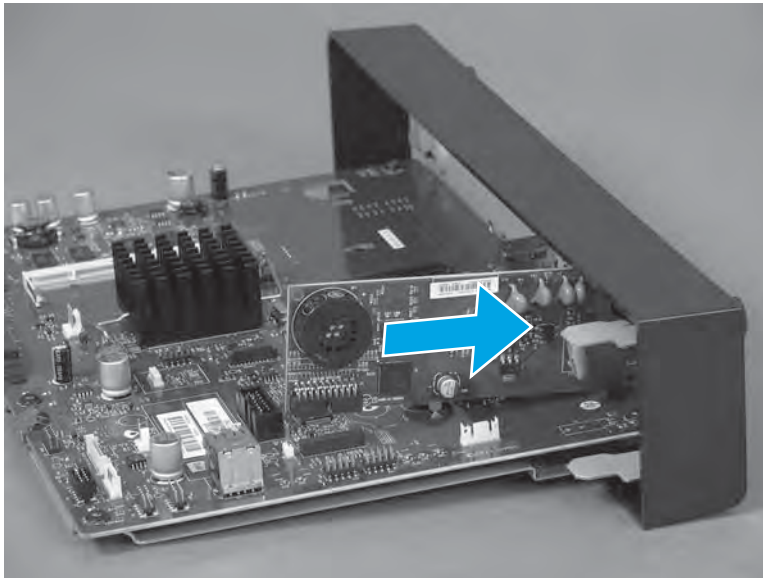


Step 4: Install the fax PCA

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

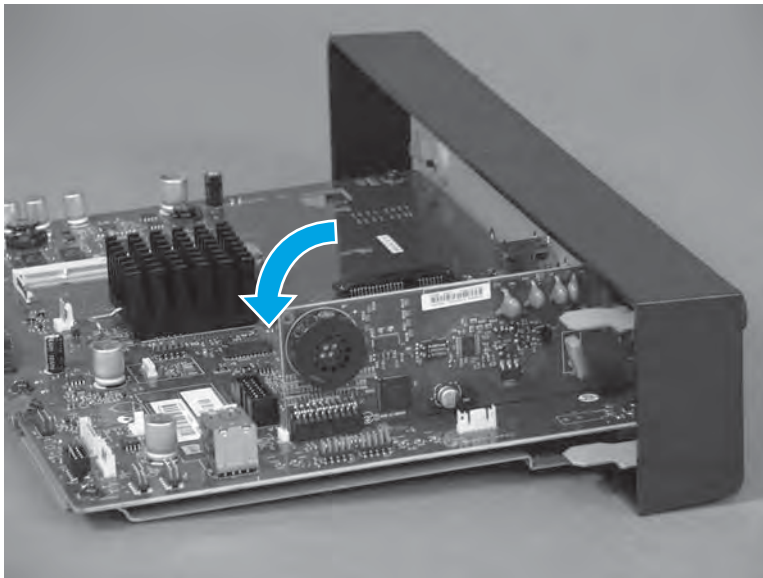
1. Insert the fax port of the fax PCA into the holder on the formatter tray.

Figure 1-83 Insert the fax port of the fax PCA into the holder



2. Rotate the connector end of the fax PCA in the direction of the arrow to install it.

Figure 1-84 Install the fax PCA

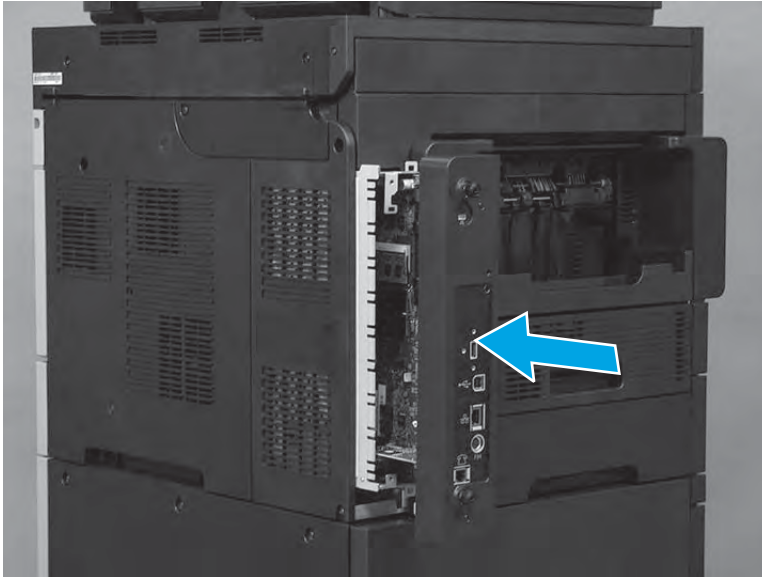


Step 5: Install the formatter

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

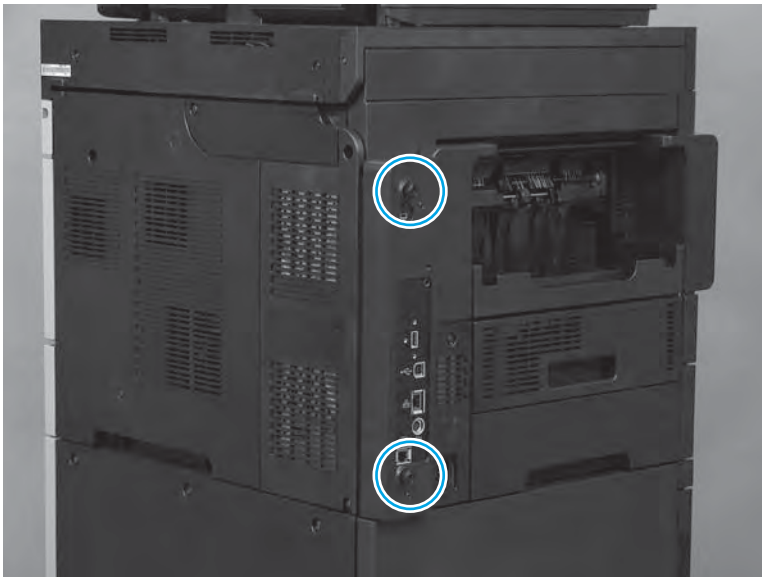
1. Align the formatter with the guides at the top and bottom of the formatter cage and push the formatter into the slot until it is fully seated.

Figure 1-85 Align the formatter with the guides and push the formatter into the slot



2. Finger-tighten the two thumbscrews.


Figure 1-86 Tighten the two thumbscrews



Step 6: Test the installation

1. Do the following steps:

- a. Reconnect all cables to the formatter.
 - b. Plug in the power cord.
2. Turn on the product.

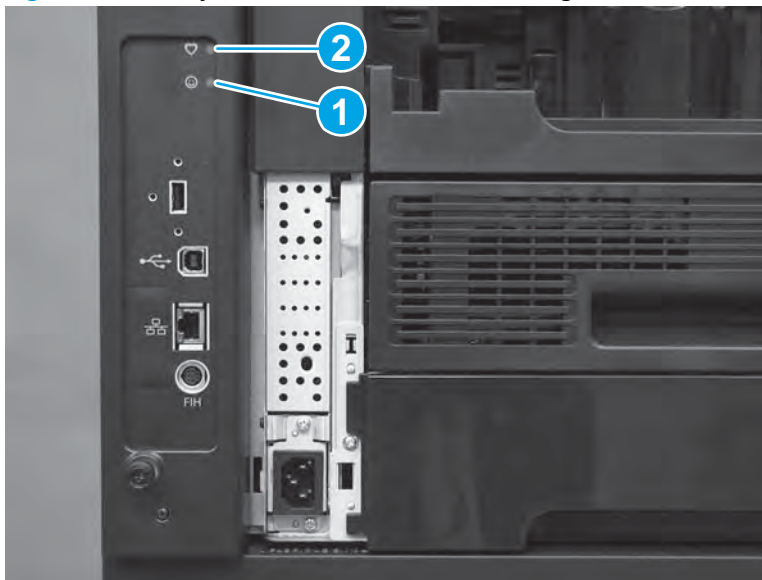
 **TIP:** If the product does not initialize when the power is turned on, make sure that the memory DIMM is correctly installed.

To verify that the formatter is correctly installed, observe the following functions of the LEDs on the formatter:

- The heartbeat LED (callout 1) illuminates if the formatter is functioning correctly.
 - While the product is initializing, the heartbeat LED illuminates solid red for about one second, and then turns solid green for about twenty seconds.
 - After the initialization sequence is complete, the heartbeat LED blinks continuously if the printer is functioning correctly.
- The connectivity LED (callout 2) indicates that the formatter is completely seated. It illuminates green when the product power is turned on and stays green if the formatter is properly seated.

If the LEDs do not correctly function, turn the product power off, remove the formatter, and then reinstall it (make sure that the formatter is fully seated before tightening the thumbscrews).

Figure 1-87 Verify that the formatter is functioning



Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Output bin and bin base assembly

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly](#)
- [Step 2: Unpack the replacement output bin and bin base assembly](#)
- [Step 3: Install the output bin and bin base assembly](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the output bin and bin base assembly.

Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the kit.

Output bin and bin base assembly part number	
B3G84-69702	Output bin assembly kit with instruction guide

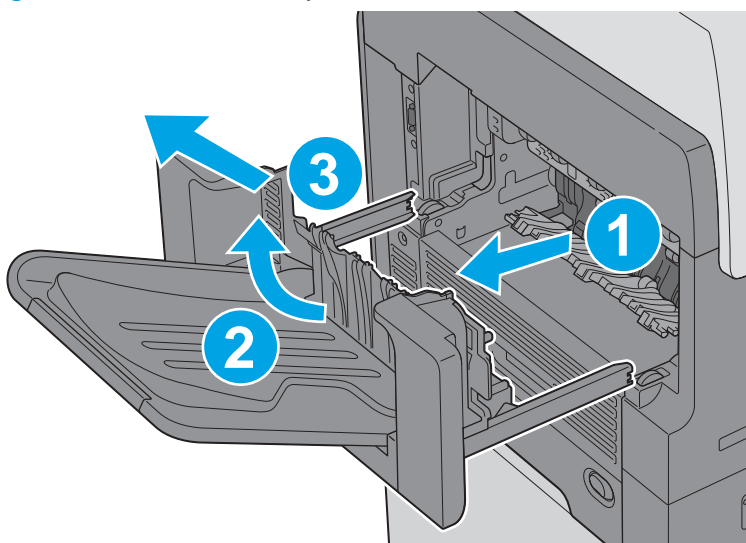
Required tools

No special tools are required to install this kit.

Step 1: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly

- ▲ Slide the bin base away from the product (callout 1) until it stops, slightly lift up on the assembly to disengage the slide rails (callout 2), and then remove the assembly (callout 3).

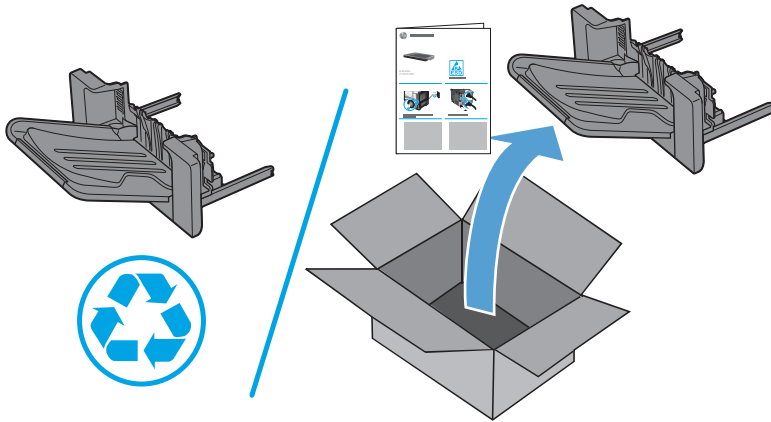
Figure 1-88 Remove the output bin



Step 2: Unpack the replacement output bin and bin base assembly

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

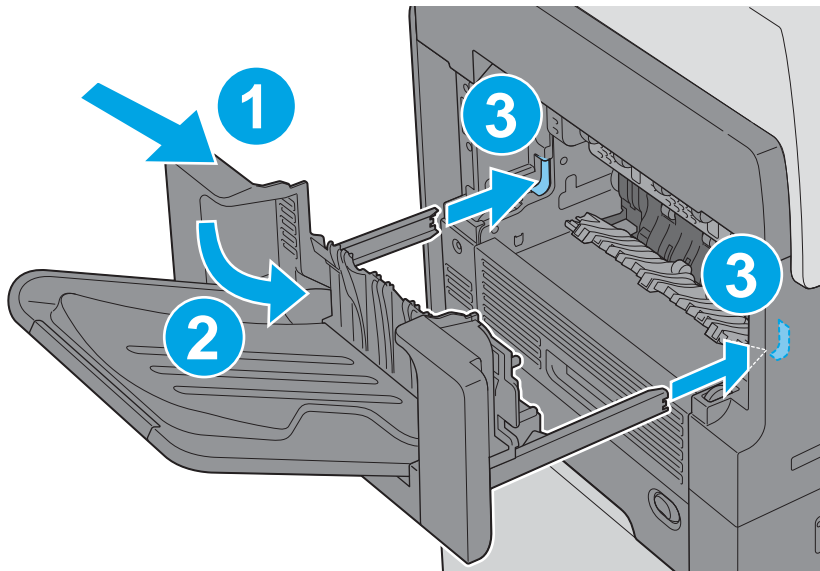
 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.



Step 3: Install the output bin and bin base assembly

- ▲ Position the assembly at an angle to the product (callout 1), lower the assembly into place (callout 2) while engaging the slide rails (callout 3), and then slide the bin base into the product.

Figure 1-89 Install the output bin



Parts Return

Duplex accessory

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox](#)
- [Step 2: Remove the duplex accessory](#)
- [Step 3: Unpack the replacement duplex accessory](#)
- [Step 4: Install the duplex accessory](#)
- [Step 5: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox](#)
- [Step 6: Turn the product power on](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the duplex accessory.

Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the kit.

Duplex accessory part number	
B3G84-67903	Duplex accessory kit with instruction guide

Do the following steps:

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

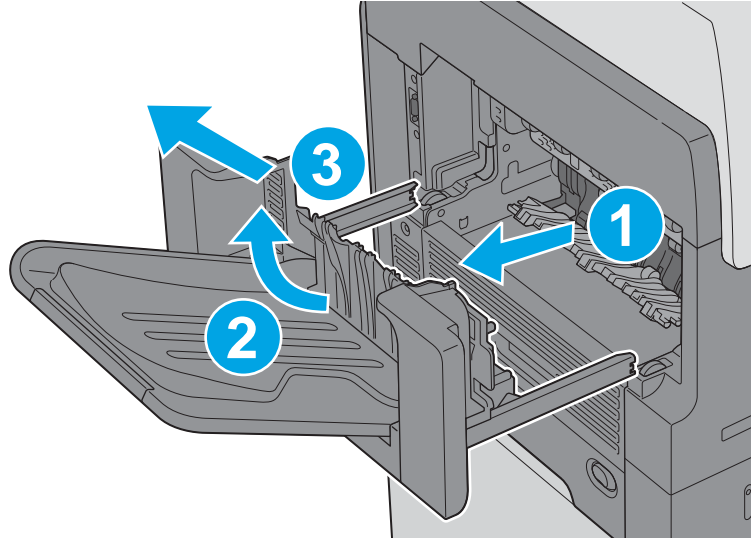
Required tools

No special tools are required to install this kit.

Step 1: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox

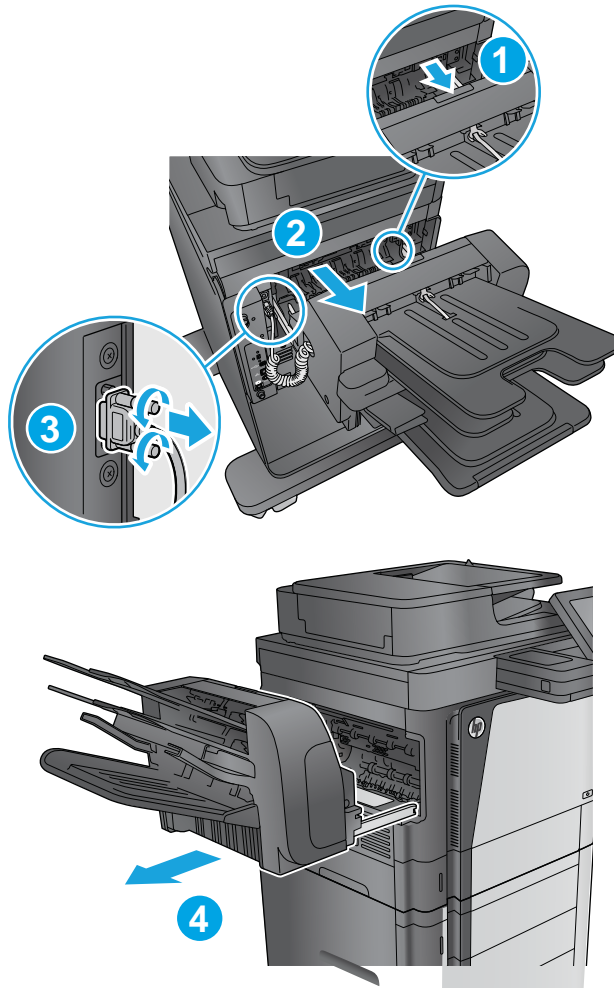
- ▲ Do one of the following steps:
 - M630dn and M630f:** Slide the bin base away from the product (callout 1) until it stops, slightly lift up on the assembly to disengage the slide rails (callout 2), and then remove the assembly (callout 3).

Figure 1-90 Remove the output bin



- b. **M630z:** Press the latch (callout 1), pull the stapling mailbox away from the product (callout 2), disconnect the interface cable (callout 3), and then remove the stapling mailbox (callout 4).

Figure 1-91 Remove the stapling mailbox



Step 2: Remove the duplex accessory

- ▲ Slide the duplex assembly away from the product, slightly lift up on the assembly to disengage the slide rails, and then remove it.


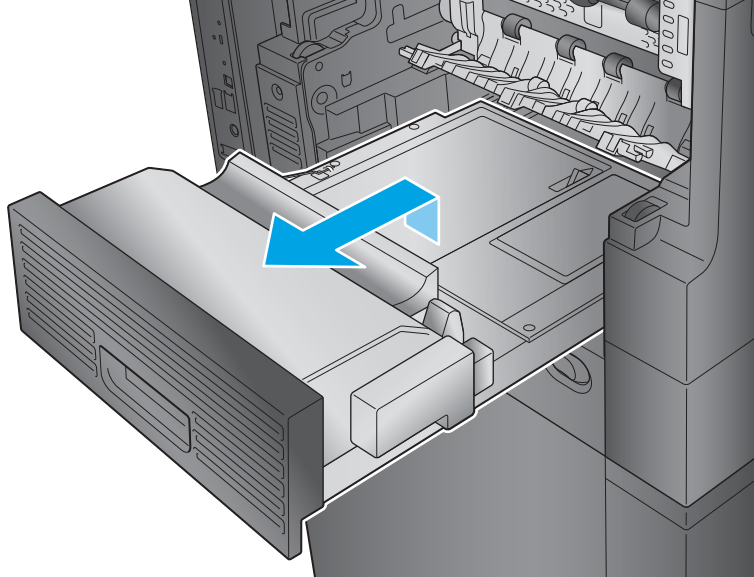
 **NOTE:** Locate the duplexer at the left-hand side of the product.

Figure 1-92 Remove the duplex accessory

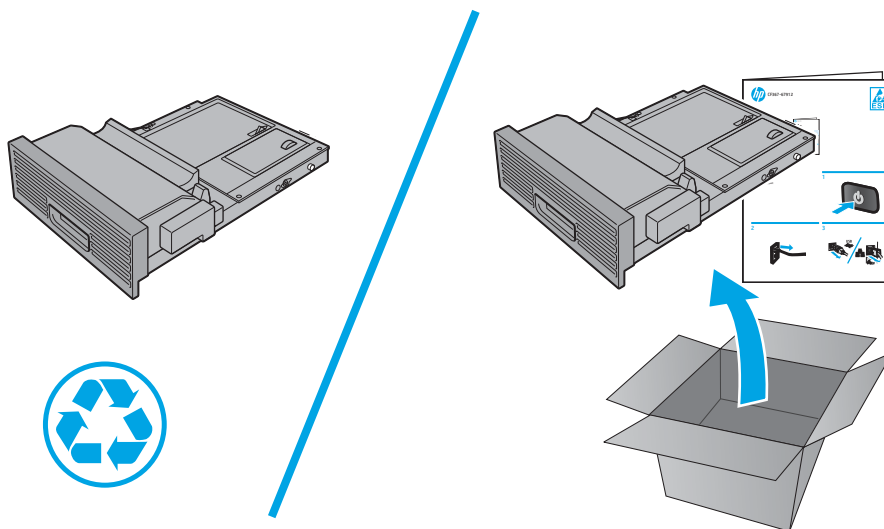


Step 3: Unpack the replacement duplex accessory

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.


www.Product return and recycling.

 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the assembly.



Step 4: Install the duplex accessory

▲ Position the duplex assembly on the product at a slight angle, engage the slide rails, and then slide the duplex assembly all of the way into the product to install it.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that the duplex accessory is full installed.


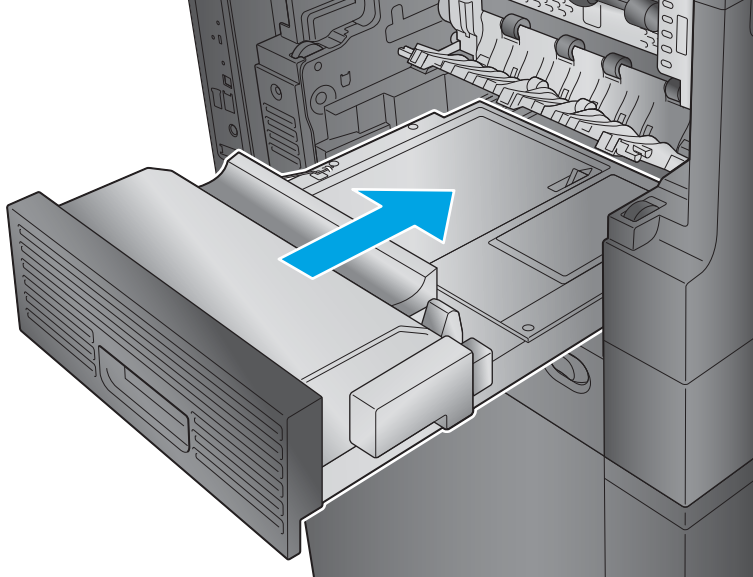
 **NOTE:** After servicing, turn the power off, and then on again so that the product detects the installed duplex accessory.

Figure 1-93 Install the duplex accessory

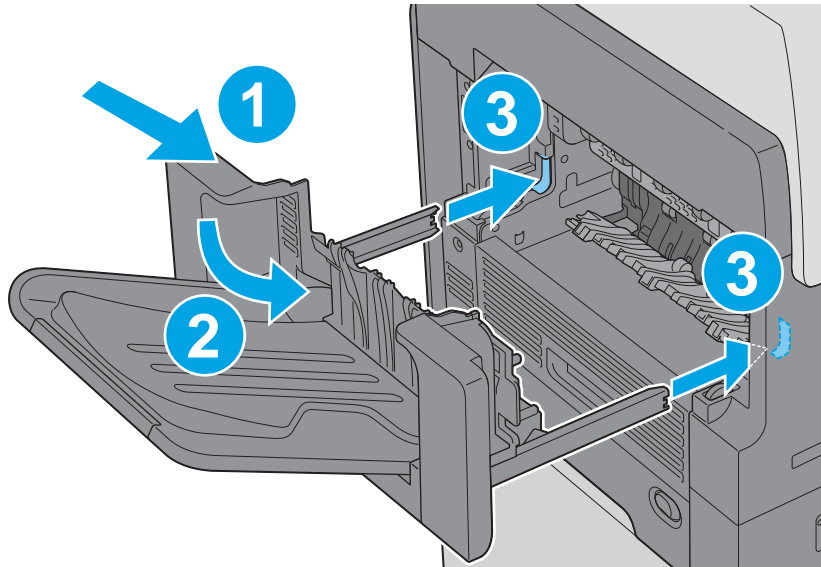


Step 5: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox

▲ Do one of the following:

- a. **M630dn and M630f:** Position the assembly at an angle to the product (callout 1), lower the assembly into place (callout 2) while engaging the slide rails (callout 3), and then slide the bin base into the product.

Figure 1-94 Install the output bin



- b. **M630z:** Position the assembly at an angle to the product (callout 1), lower the assembly into place (callout 2) while engaging the slide rails (callout 3), connect the interface cable (callout 4), and then slide the stapling mailbox (callout 5) into the product.


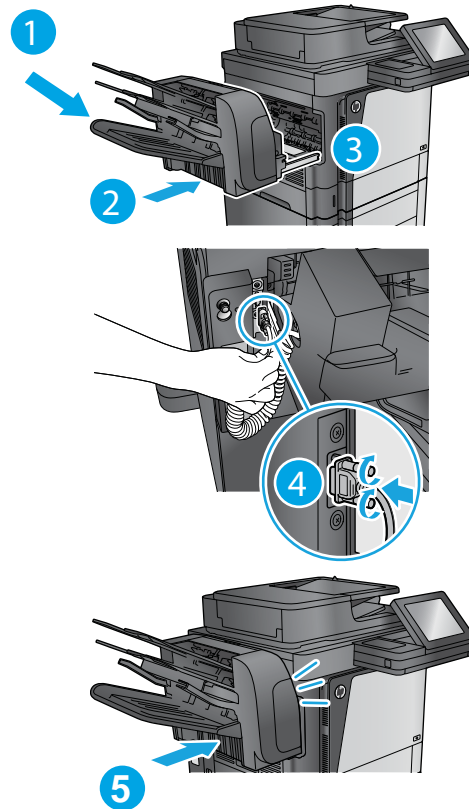
 **TIP:** After servicing, turn the power off, and then on again so that the product detects the installed stapling mailbox.

Figure 1-95 Install the stapling mailbox



Step 6: Turn the product power on

After servicing

Do the following steps:

Connect the power cable.

Turn on the product.

Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Fuser-entrance guide

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox](#)
- [Step 2: Remove the duplex accessory](#)
- [Step 3: Remove the fuser-entrance guide](#)
- [Step 4: Unpack the replacement fuser-entrance guide](#)
- [Step 5: Install the fuser-entrance guide](#)
- [Step 6: Install the duplex accessory](#)
- [Step 7: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox](#)
- [Step 8: Turn the product power on](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the fuser-entrance guide.

Before servicing


Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the kit.

Fuser-entrance guide kit part numbers	
B3G84-67904	Fuser-entrance guide kit with instruction guide

Do the following steps:

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

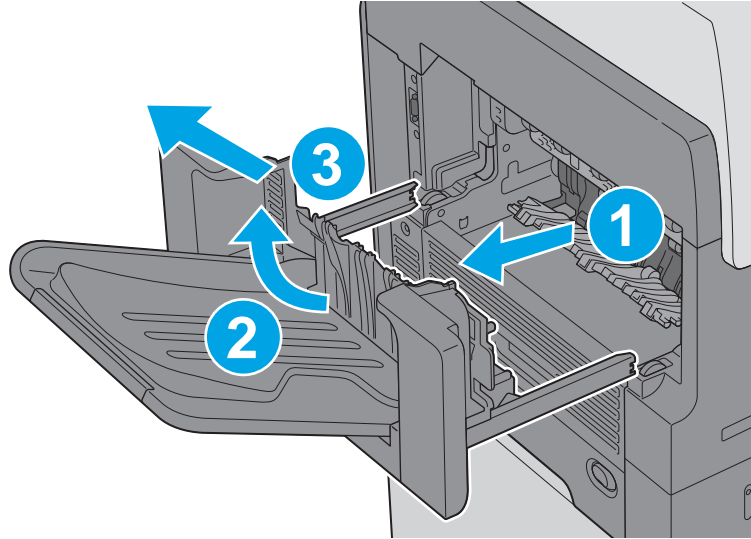
Required tools

No special tools are required to install this kit.

Step 1: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox

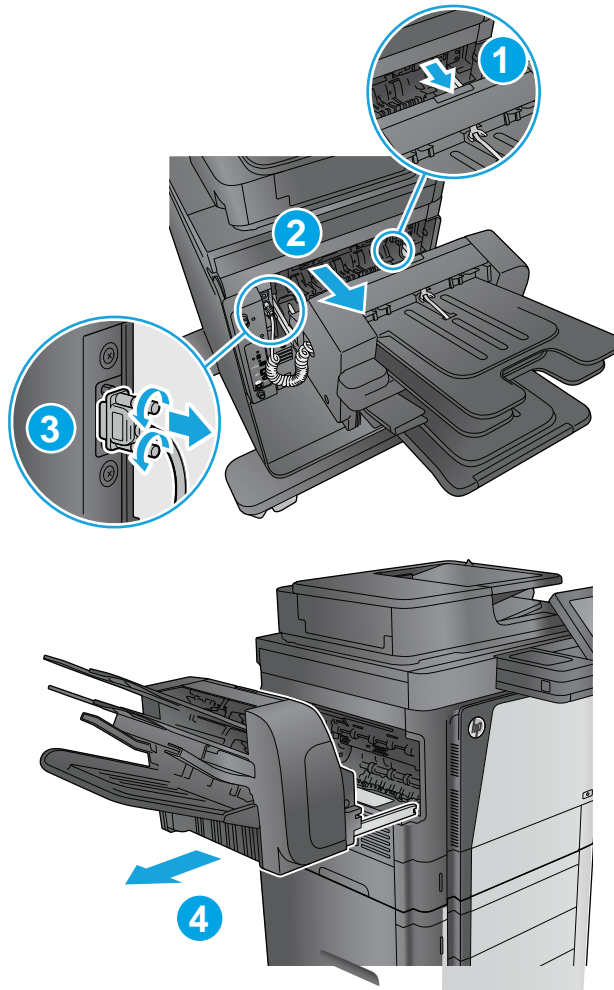
- ▲ Do one of the following steps:
 - M630dn and M630f:** Slide the bin base away from the product (callout 1) until it stops, slightly lift up on the assembly to disengage the slide rails (callout 2), and then remove the assembly (callout 3).

Figure 1-96 Remove the output bin



- b. **M630z:** Press the latch (callout 1), pull the stapling mailbox away from the product (callout 2), disconnect the interface cable (callout 3), and then remove the stapling mailbox (callout 4).

Figure 1-97 Remove the stapling mailbox



Step 2: Remove the duplex accessory

- ▲ Slide the duplex assembly away from the product, slightly lift up on the assembly to disengage the slide rails, and then remove it.


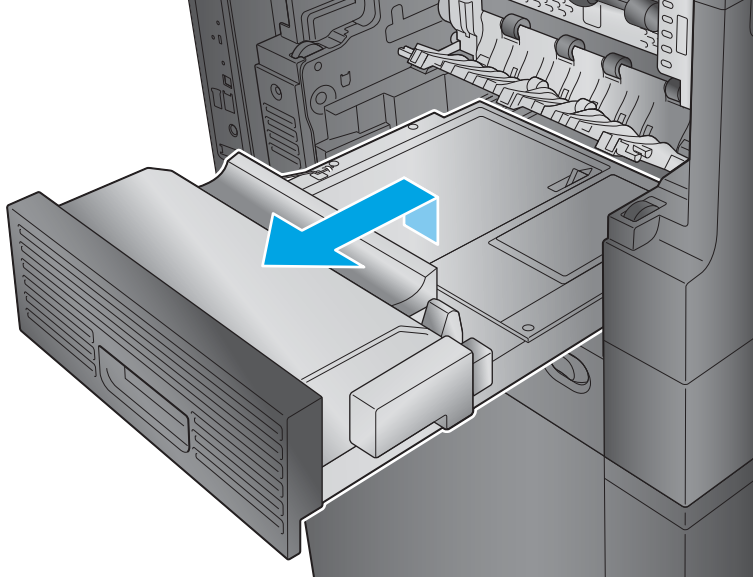
 **NOTE:** Locate the duplexer at the left-hand side of the product.

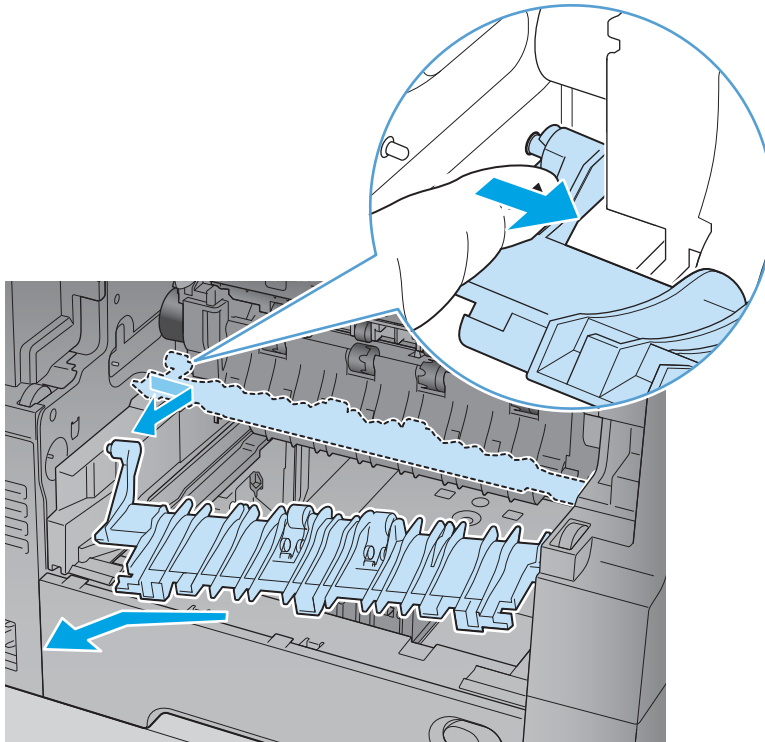
Figure 1-98 Remove the duplex accessory



Step 3: Remove the fuser-entrance guide

1. Flex the rear hinge-pin of the fuser-entrance guide until it clears the mounting hole in the product chassis.
2. Rotate the rear of the guide away of the product and slide the guide to the left to release the front hinge-pin. Remove the fuser-entrance guide.

Figure 1-99 Remove the fuser-entrance guide

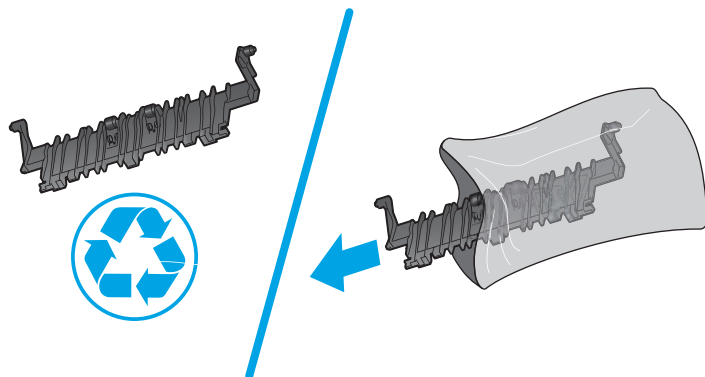


Step 4: Unpack the replacement fuser-entrance guide

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

www.Product return and recycling.

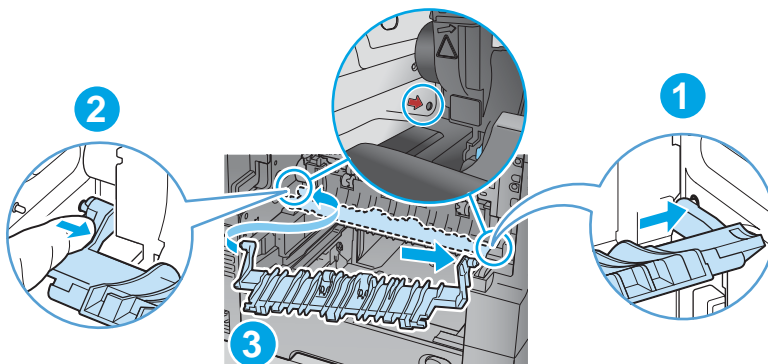
 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.



Step 5: Install the fuser-entrance guide


1. Position the front hinge-pin of the fuser-entrance guide in the mounting hole in the product chassis (callout 1).
2. Slightly flex the rear hinge pin (callout 2), rotate the guide into the product (callout 3) to install it.

Figure 1-100 Install the fuser-entrance guide



Step 6: Install the duplex accessory

- ▲ Position the duplex assembly on the product at a slight angle, engage the slide rails, and then slide the duplex assembly all of the way into the product to install it.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that the duplex accessory is full installed.


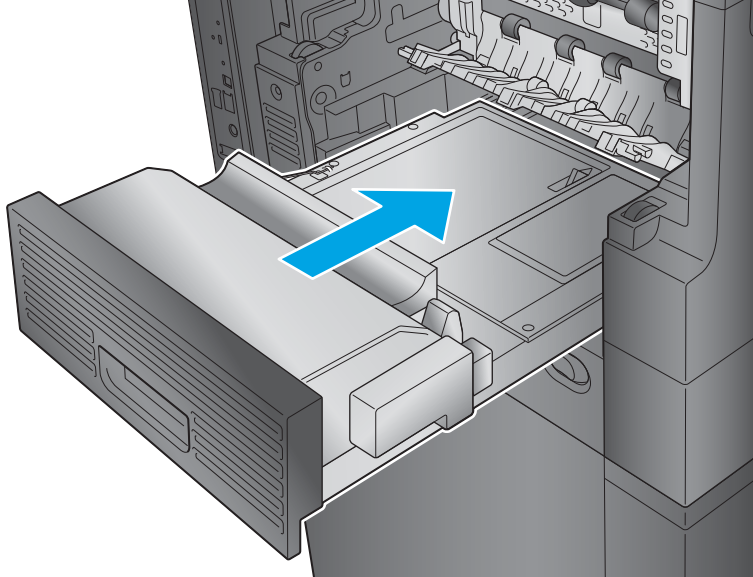
 **NOTE:** After servicing, turn the power off, and then on again so that the product detects the installed duplex accessory.

Figure 1-101 Install the duplex accessory

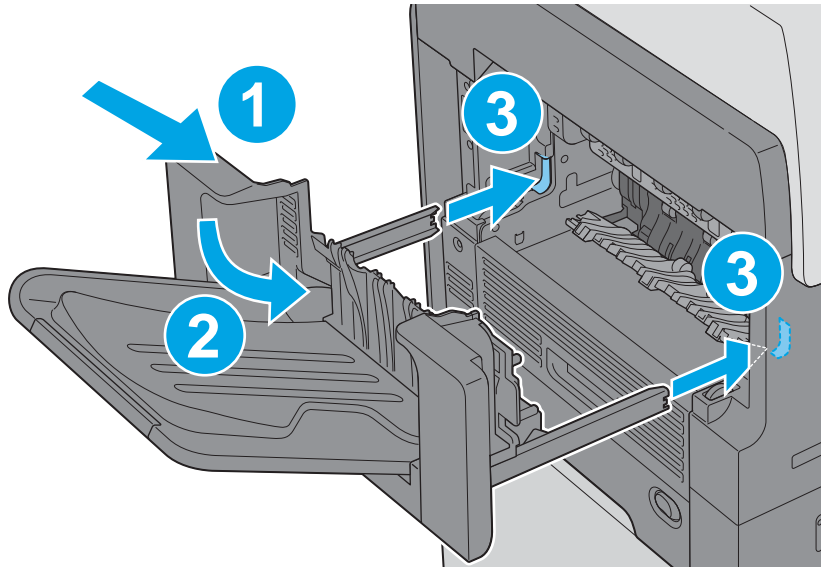


Step 7: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox

▲ Do one of the following:

- a. **M630dn and M630f:** Position the assembly at an angle to the product (callout 1), lower the assembly into place (callout 2) while engaging the slide rails (callout 3), and then slide the bin base into the product.

Figure 1-102 Install the output bin



- b. **M630z:** Position the assembly at an angle to the product (callout 1), lower the assembly into place (callout 2) while engaging the slide rails (callout 3), connect the interface cable (callout 4), and then slide the stapling mailbox (callout 5) into the product.


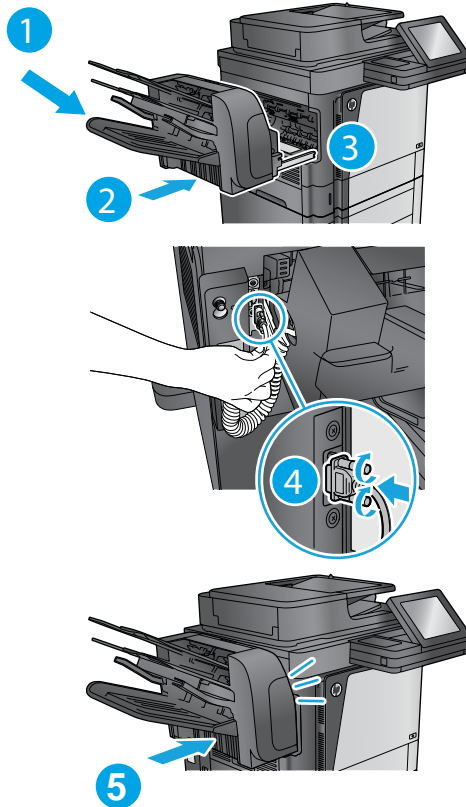
 **TIP:** After servicing, turn the power off, and then on again so that the product detects the installed stapling mailbox.

Figure 1-103 Install the stapling mailbox



Step 8: Turn the product power on

After servicing

Do the following steps:

Connect the power cable.

Turn on the product.

Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Fuser

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox](#)
- [Step 2: Remove the duplex accessory](#)
- [Step 3: Remove the fuser-entrance guide](#)
- [Step 4: Remove the fuser](#)
- [Step 5: Unpack the replacement fuser](#)
- [Step 6: Install the fuser](#)
- [Step 7: Install the fuser-entrance guide](#)
- [Step 8: Install the duplex accessory](#)
- [Step 9: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox](#)
- [Step 10: Turn the product power on](#)
- [Step 11: Reset the supplies counter](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the fuser.

Before servicing


Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the kit.

Fuser kit part numbers	
B3M77-67903	Fuser (110V) kit with instruction guide
B3M78-67903	Fuser (220V) kit with instruction guide

Do the following steps:

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

Required tools

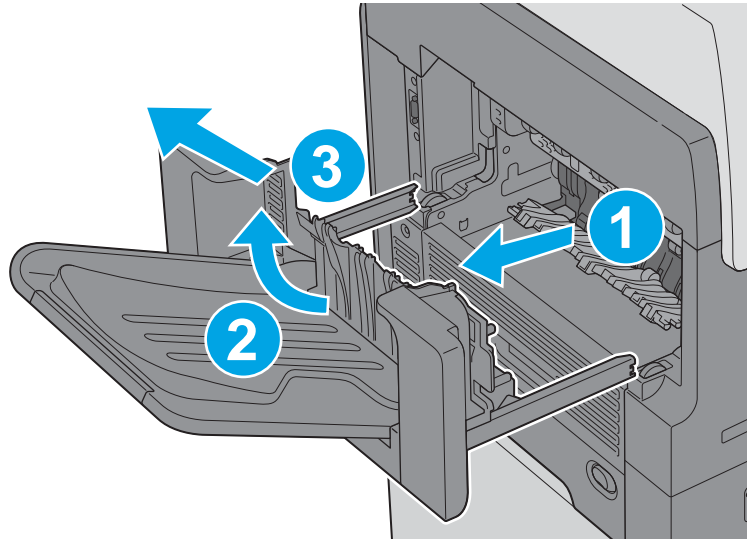
No special tools are required to install this kit.

Step 1: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox

- ▲ Do one of the following steps:

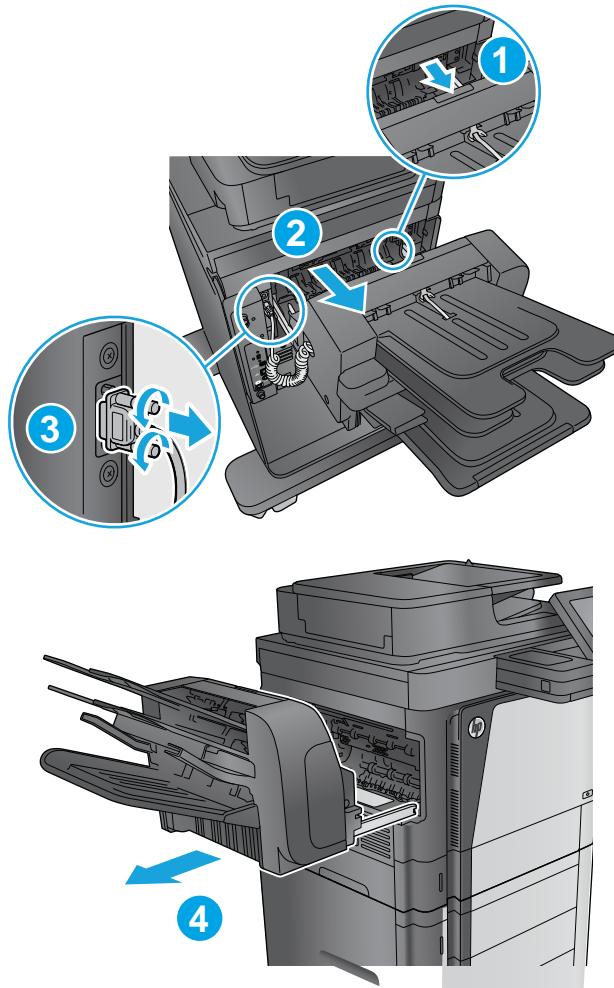
- a. **M630dn and M630f:** Slide the bin base away from the product (callout 1) until it stops, slightly lift up on the assembly to disengage the slide rails (callout 2), and then remove the assembly (callout 3).

Figure 1-104 Remove the output bin



- b. **M630z:** Press the latch (callout 1), pull the stapling mailbox away from the product (callout 2), disconnect the interface cable (callout 3), and then remove the stapling mailbox (callout 4).

Figure 1-105 Remove the stapling mailbox



Step 2: Remove the duplex accessory

- ▲ Slide the duplex assembly away from the product, slightly lift up on the assembly to disengage the slide rails, and then remove it.


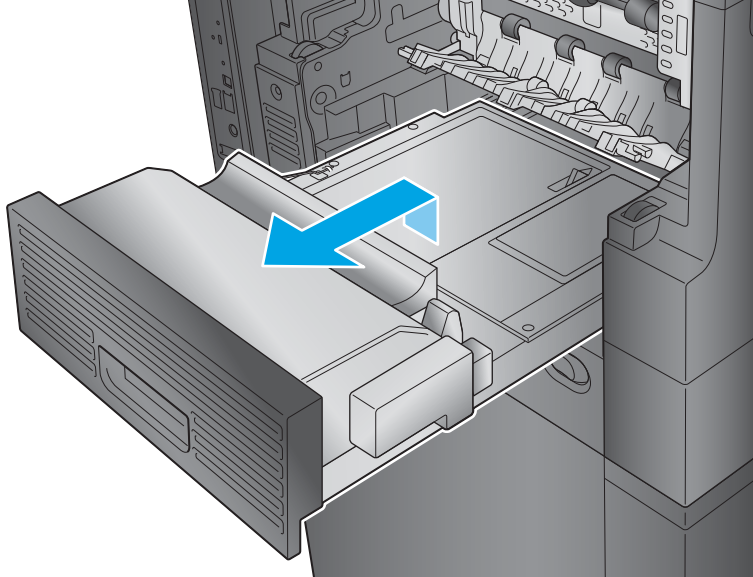
 **NOTE:** Locate the duplexer at the left-hand side of the product.

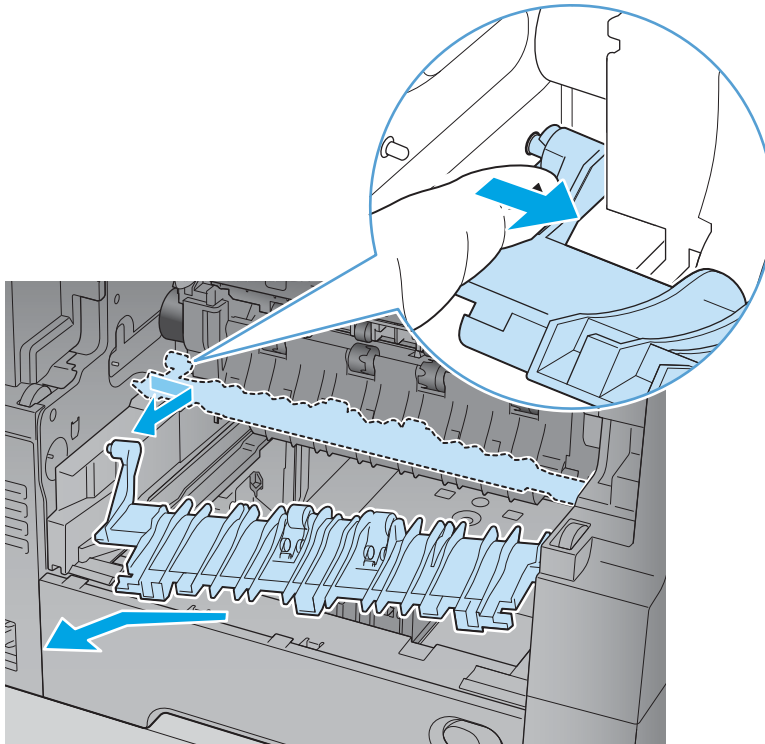
Figure 1-106 Remove the duplex accessory



Step 3: Remove the fuser-entrance guide

1. Flex the rear hinge-pin of the fuser-entrance guide until it clears the mounting hole in the product chassis.
2. Rotate the rear of the guide away of the product and slide the guide to the left to release the front hinge-pin. Remove the fuser-entrance guide.

Figure 1-107 Remove the fuser-entrance guide

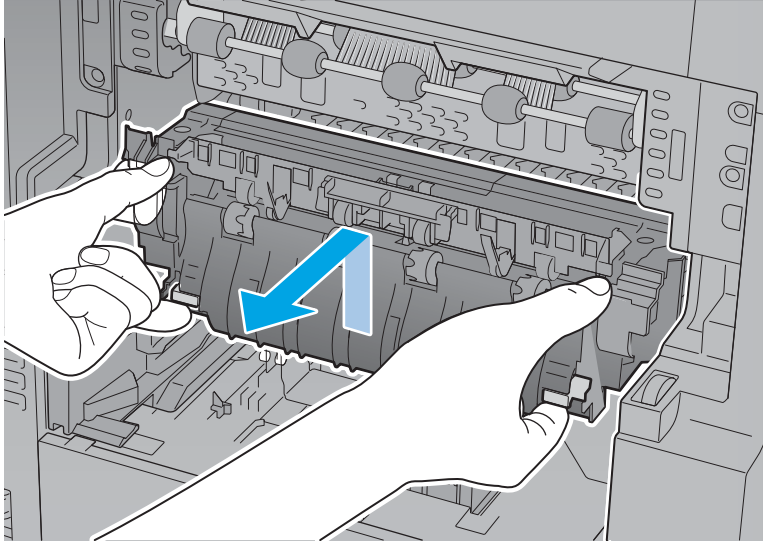


Step 4: Remove the fuser

- ▲ Squeeze the two blue tabs on the fuser to release it, and then slide it out of the product.

⚠ CAUTION: The fuser is very hot. After turning the product power off, allow the fuser to cool for at least 30 minutes before removing it.

Figure 1-108 Remove the fuser

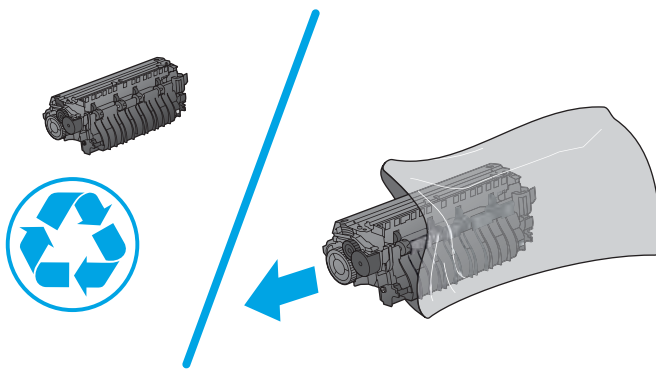


Step 5: Unpack the replacement fuser

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

[Product return and recycling](#)

📝 NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.

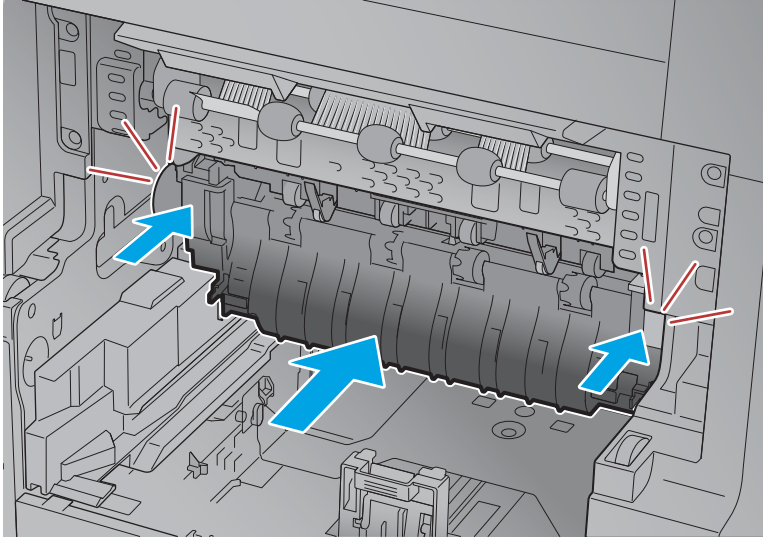


Step 6: Install the fuser

- ▲ Position the fuser in the product, push in to install it, and then make sure that it is fully seated.

💡 TIP: When the fuser is fully seated, the two blue locking levers make an audible click.

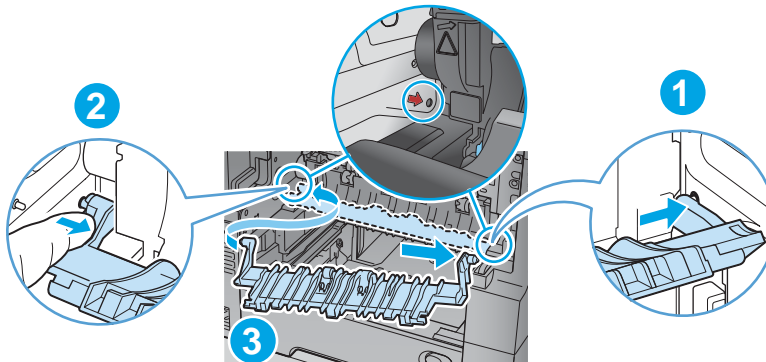
Figure 1-109 Install the fuser



Step 7: Install the fuser-entrance guide


1. Position the front hinge-pin of the fuser-entrance guide in the mounting hole in the product chassis (callout 1).
2. Slightly flex the rear hinge pin (callout 2), rotate the guide into the product (callout 3) to install it.

Figure 1-110 Install the fuser-entrance guide



Step 8: Install the duplex accessory

- ▲ Position the duplex assembly on the product at a slight angle, engage the slide rails, and then slide the duplex assembly all of the way into the product to install it.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that the duplex accessory is full installed.


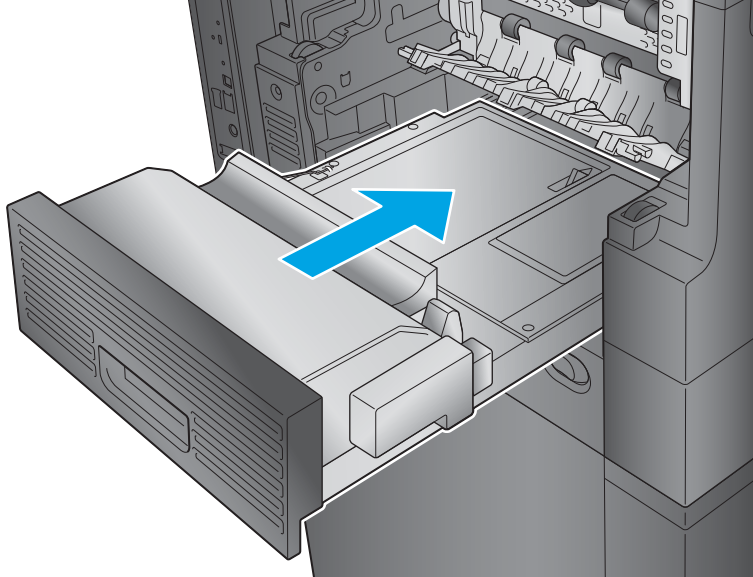
 **NOTE:** After servicing, turn the power off, and then on again so that the product detects the installed duplex accessory.

Figure 1-111 Install the duplex accessory

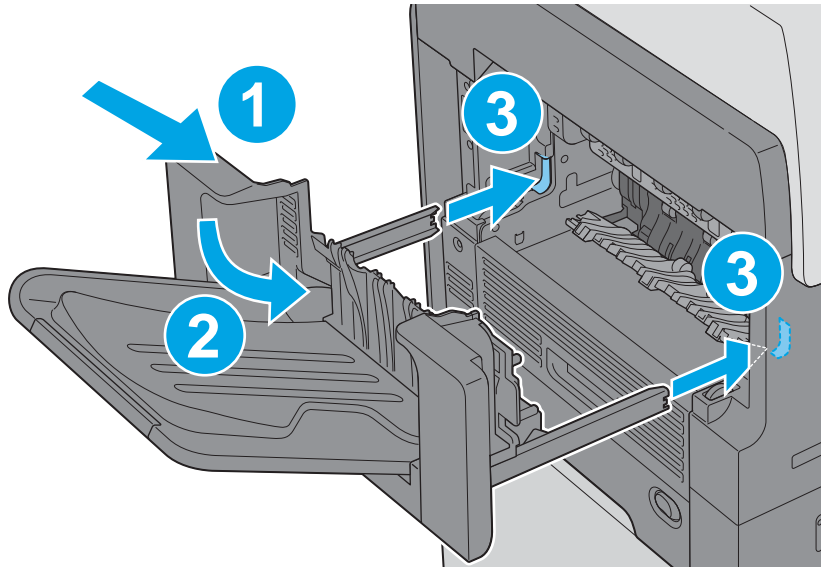


Step 9: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox

▲ Do one of the following:

- a. **M630dn and M630f:** Position the assembly at an angle to the product (callout 1), lower the assembly into place (callout 2) while engaging the slide rails (callout 3), and then slide the bin base into the product.

Figure 1-112 Install the output bin



- b. **M630z:** Position the assembly at an angle to the product (callout 1), lower the assembly into place (callout 2) while engaging the slide rails (callout 3), connect the interface cable (callout 4), and then slide the stapling mailbox (callout 5) into the product.


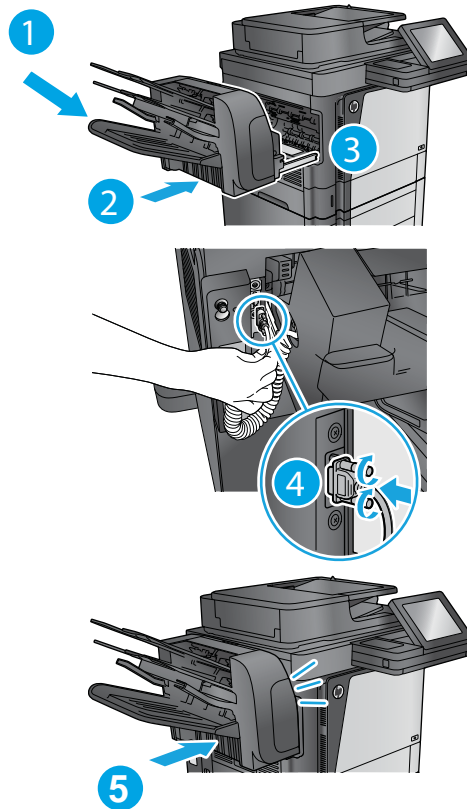
 **TIP:** After servicing, turn the power off, and then on again so that the product detects the installed stapling mailbox.

Figure 1-113 Install the stapling mailbox



Step 10: Turn the product power on

After servicing

Do the following steps:

Connect the power cable.

Turn on the product.

Step 11: Reset the supplies counter

1. From the Home screen on the control panel, scroll to and touch the **Administration** button.
2. Open the following menus:

- [Manage Supplies](#)
 - [Reset Supplies](#)
 - [New Maintenance Kit](#)
3. Select the [Reset](#) item to reset the supplies counter.

Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Control-panel assembly

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the control panel](#)
- [Step 2: Remove the keyboard \(M630z only\)](#)
- [Step 3: Unpack the replacement control-panel assembly](#)
- [Step 4: Install the keyboard \(M630z only\)](#)
- [Step 5: Install the control-panel assembly](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

Introduction

This document provides instructions about removing and replacing the control panel.

The figures in these steps show the M630z model control panel and keyboard. However, this procedure for removing the control panel is correct for all models.



NOTE: The M630dn and M630f models do not have the keyboard or the keyboard FFC installed.

Before servicing

To order a replacement assembly, use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product. To order the kit, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Control panel kit part number	
B3G84-67908	Control panel kit with instruction guide

Required tools

No special tools are required to install this kit.

Step 1: Remove the control panel

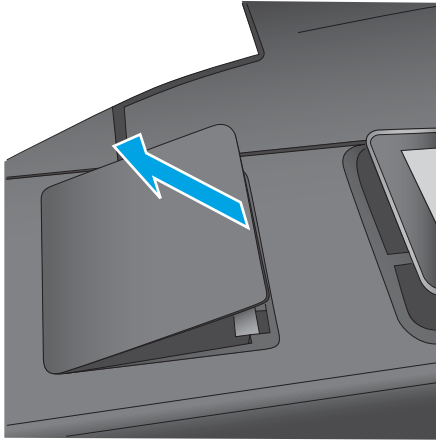
1. Do the following steps:
 - a. Turn off the product.
 - b. Disconnect the power cord.

⚠ WARNING! Turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

2. **Optional step:** Locate and open the Hardware Integration Pocket (HIP) next to the control-panel display. The HIP is covered by a rectangular cover that is retained by clips along its long edges. Using a thin, flat-blade screwdriver along either short edge, gently pry the cover off. If a third-party device is installed under this cover, disconnect and remove the device.

📝 NOTE: Set this device aside. It will be installed on the replacement control panel.

Figure 1-114 Remove third party devices



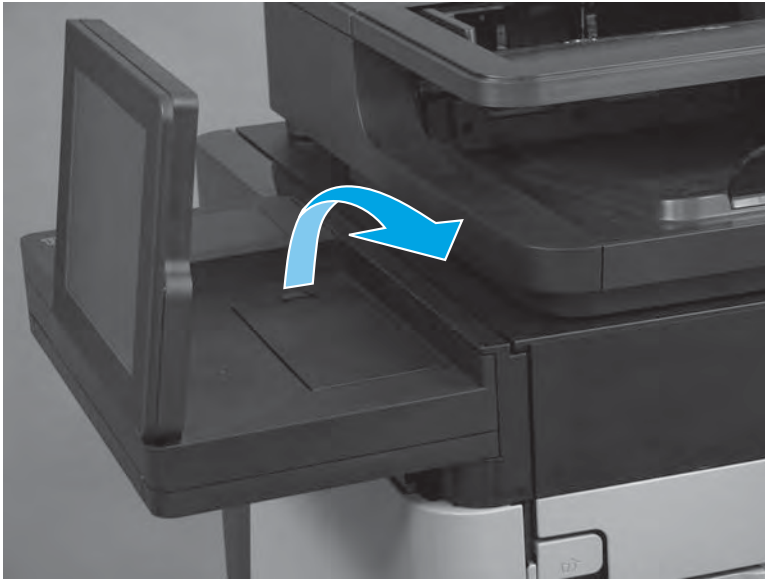
3. Tilt the control panel up.

Figure 1-115 Tilt the control panel up



4. Release one tab, and then remove the cover.

Figure 1-116 Remove the cover



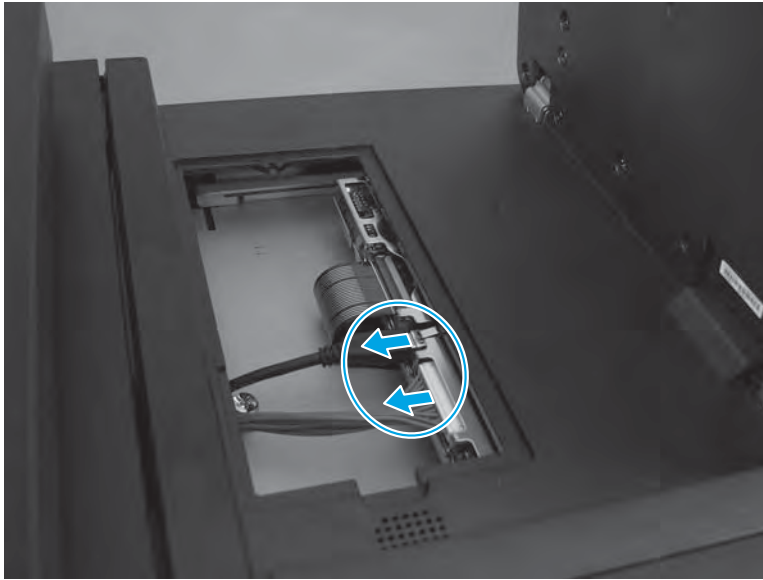
5. **M630z only:** Slide the keyboard about halfway out of the product.

Figure 1-117 Slide the keyboard out



6. Disconnect two connectors.

Figure 1-118 Disconnect two connectors



7. Remove one screw.


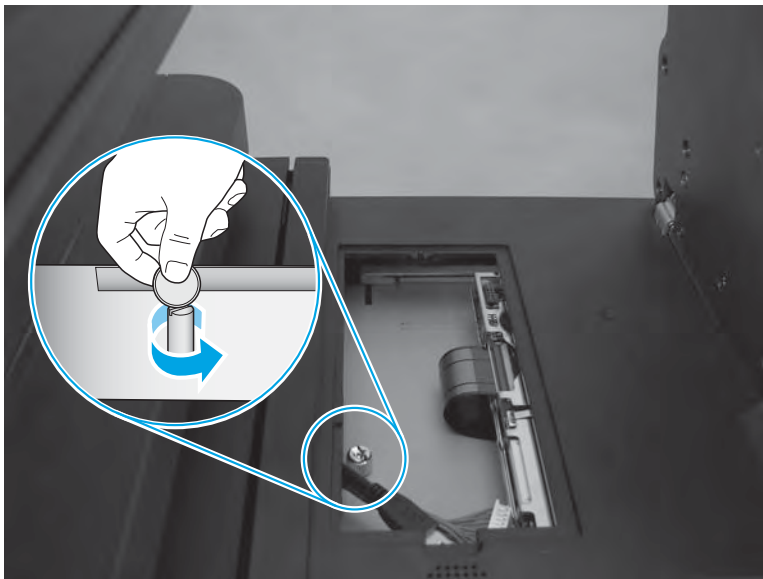
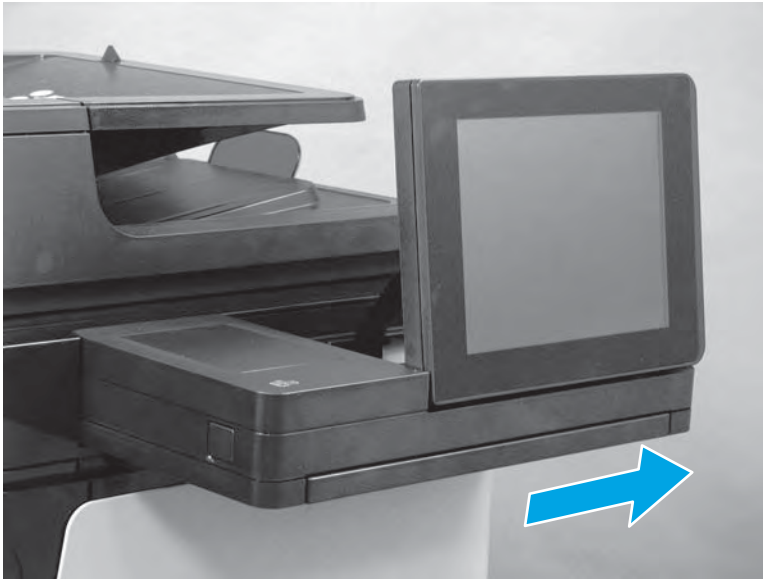
 **TIP:** Use the edge of a coin to loosen the screw.

Figure 1-119 Remove one screw



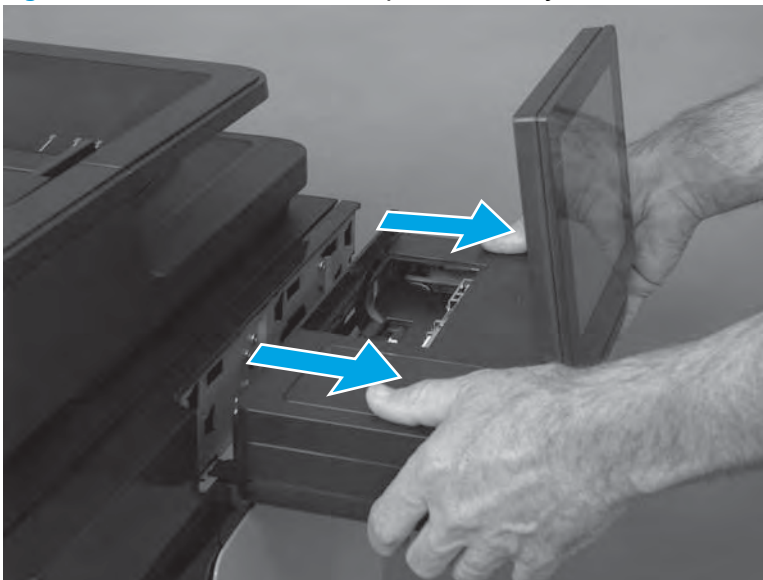
8. Slide the control panel toward the right door.

Figure 1-120 Slide the control panel to the right



9. Slide the control panel towards the front of the product to remove it.

Figure 1-121 Remove the control-panel assembly



Step 2: Remove the keyboard (M630z only)

If your product does not have a keyboard, go to [Step 3: Unpack the replacement control-panel assembly on page 101](#).

1. Place the control-panel assembly on a flat surface.

Figure 1-122 Place the control-panel assembly on a flat surface

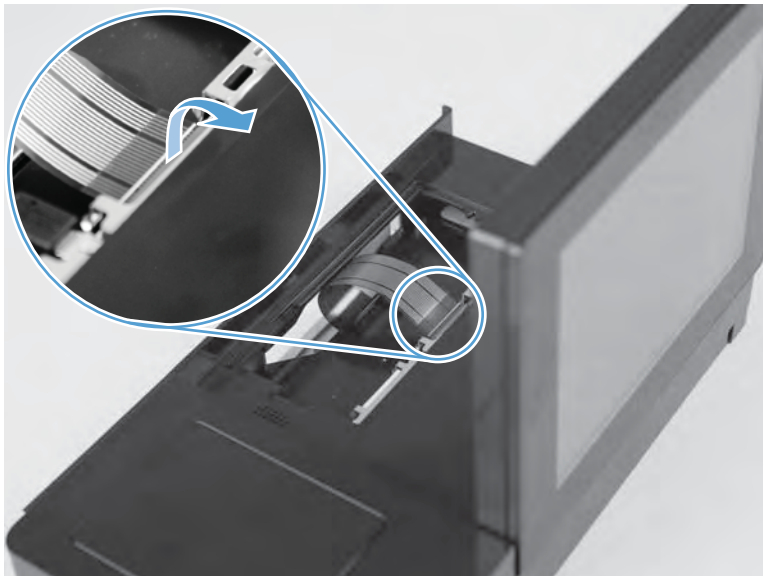


2. Open the hinged latch to release the flat cable.

⚠ CAUTION: Be careful. Do not dislodge the latch from the connector when opening it.

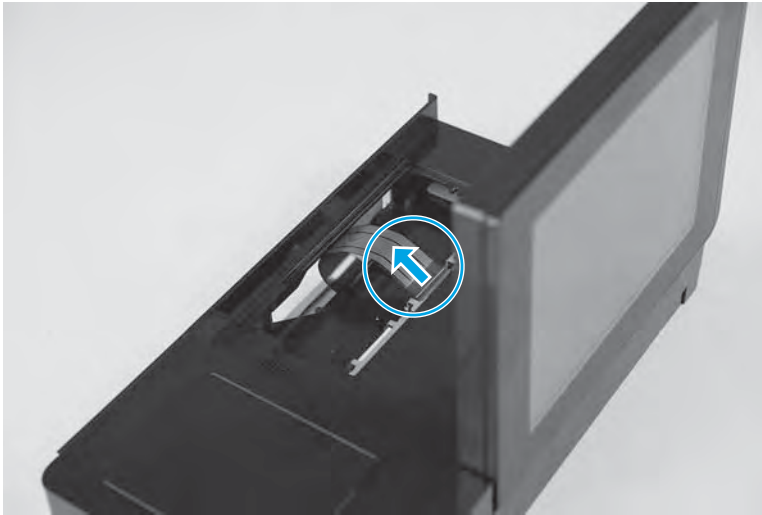
🔧 IMPORTANT: This connector is a Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector that uses a hinged retainer to secure a flat cable. The hinged retainer must be opened to release the flat cable.

Figure 1-123 Release the flat cable



3. Disconnect the flat cable.

Figure 1-124 Disconnect the flat cable



4. Tilt the screen down until it lays flat.

Figure 1-125 Tilt the screen down



5. Slide the keyboard tray all of the way out of the control panel until it stops.

Figure 1-126 Slide the keyboard tray out



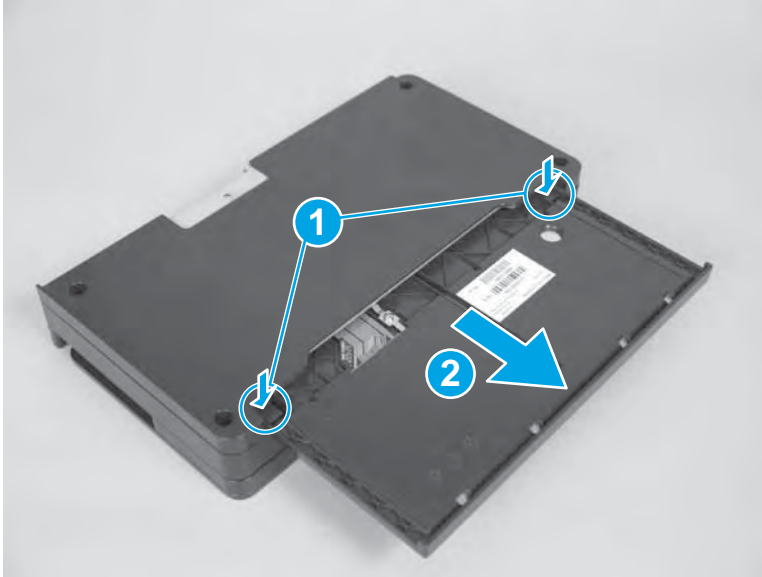
6. Turn the control panel face-down on the surface.

Figure 1-127 Turn the control panel face-down



7. Release and hold two tabs (callout 1) while sliding the keyboard tray away from the control panel (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 1-128 Remove the keyboard



Step 3: Unpack the replacement control-panel assembly

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

www.Product return and recycling.


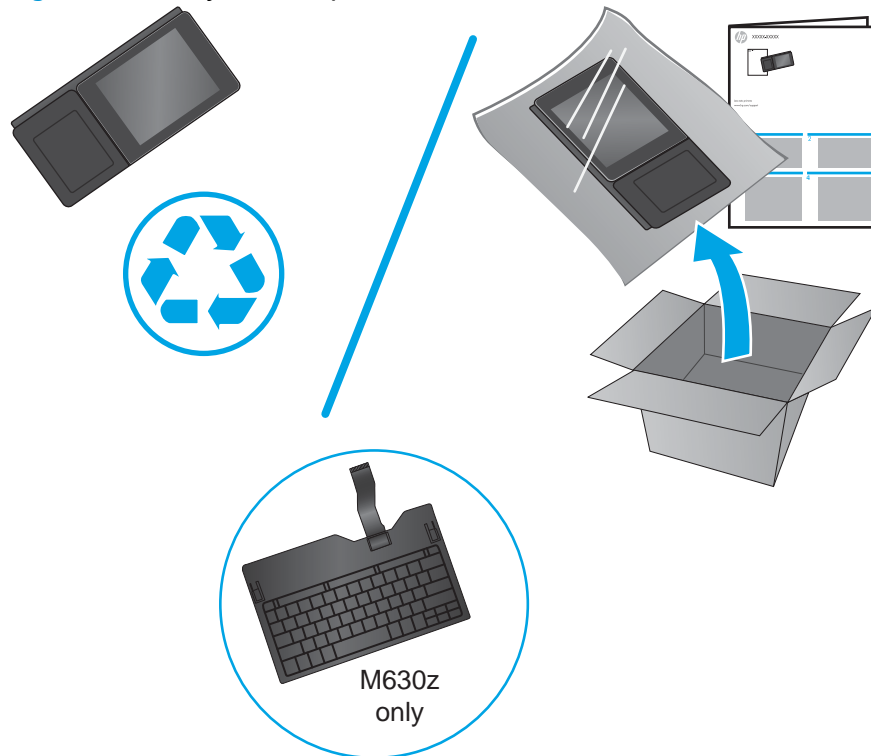

 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.

Figure 1-129 Recycle and unpack



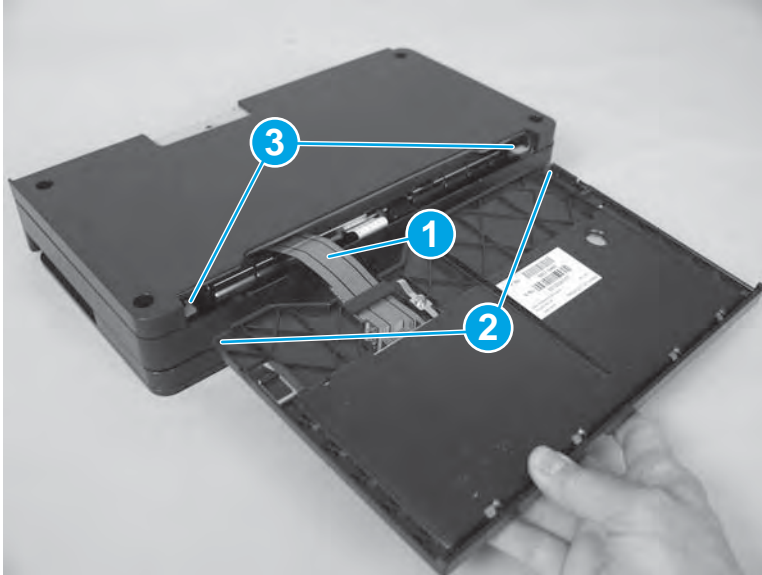
 **NOTE:** The keyboard is not included with the replacement control-panel kit.

Step 4: Install the keyboard (M630z only)

If your product does not have a keyboard, go to [Step 5: Install the control-panel assembly on page 105](#).

1. Turn the keyboard tray upside down, and then position the flat cable (callout 1) inside the tray cavity. Align the edges of the tray (callout 2) with the slots in the control panel (callout 3).

Figure 1-130 Align the edges of the tray with the slots in the control panel



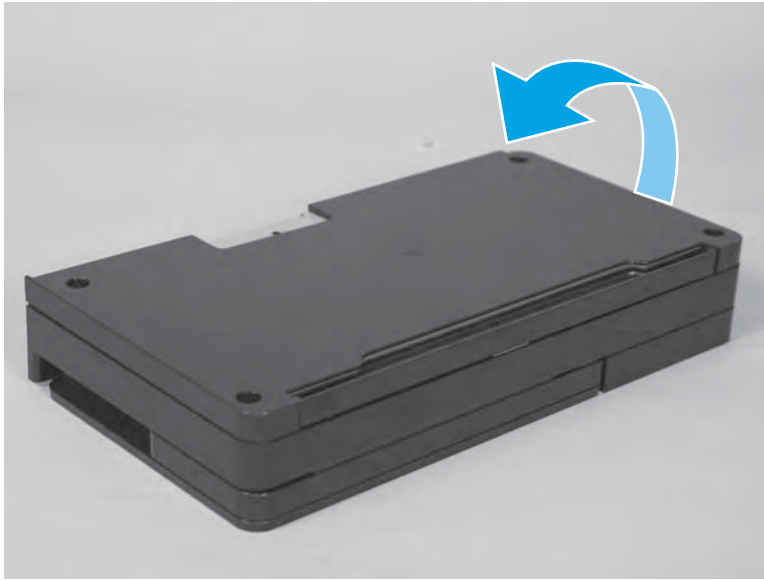
2. Slide the keyboard tray all the way into the control panel.

Figure 1-131 Slide the keyboard tray in



3. Turn the control panel face-up.

Figure 1-132 Turn the control panel face-up



4. Tilt the screen up.

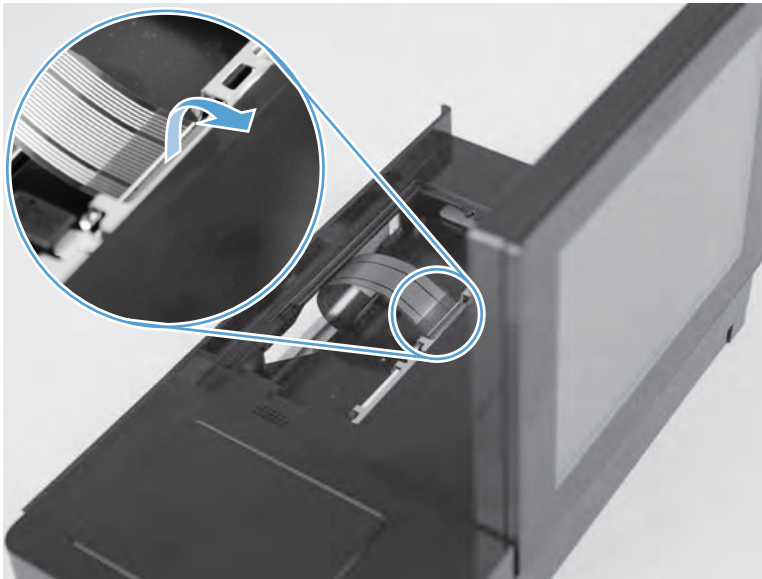
Figure 1-133 Tilt the screen up



5. Open the hinged latch, and then position the flat cable in the connector.

⚠ CAUTION: Be careful. Do not dislodge the latch from the connector when opening it.

Figure 1-134 Position the flat cable in the connector

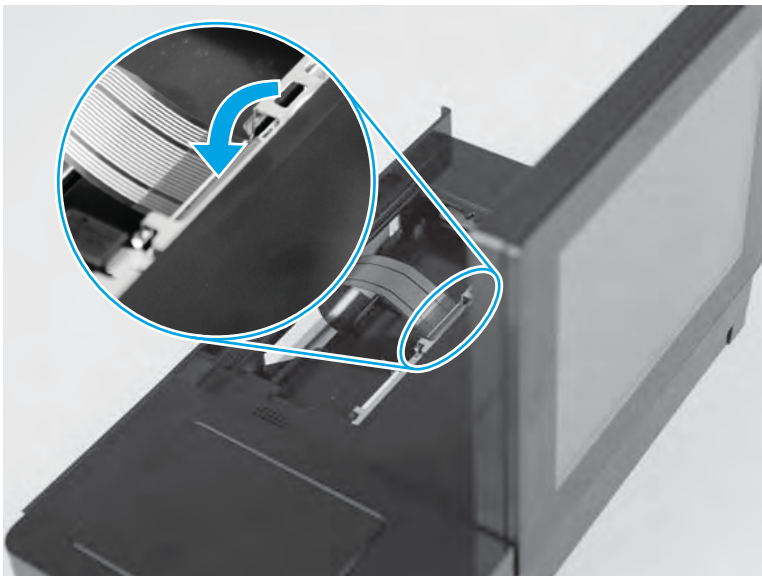


6. Use a finger to carefully close the latch to lock the flat cable into position.

⚠ CAUTION: Be careful. Do not dislodge the latch from the connector when closing it.

📌 IMPORTANT: This connector is a Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector that uses a hinged retainer to secure a flat cable. When the flat cable is reinstalled, fully insert the flat cable in the connector, and then close the hinged retainer to lock the flat cable into the connector and provide proper electrical contact. If the flat cable is not locked into the connector, no electrical contact will occur.

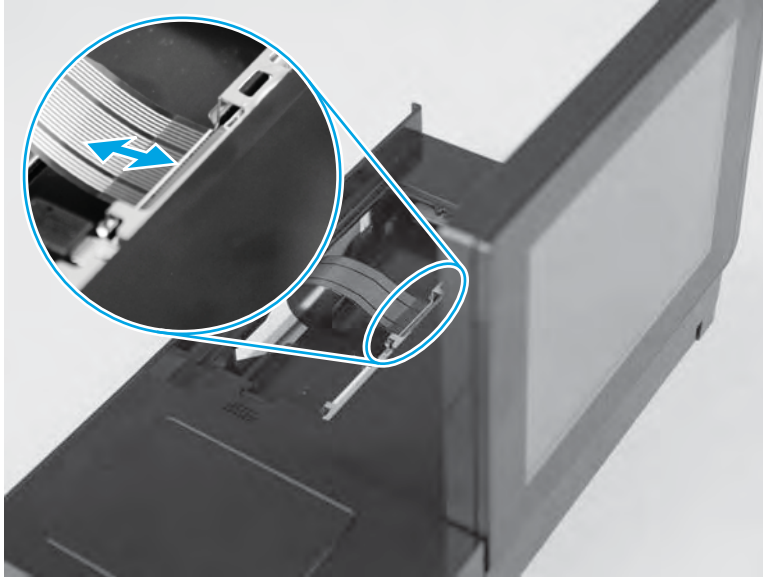
Figure 1-135 Close the latch to lock the flat cable into position



7. Slightly pull on the flat cable to verify that it is securely fastened in the connector.

⚠ CAUTION: Be careful. Do not use full force to pull on the flat cable. A slight pull on the cable is sufficient to verify that it is securely fastened.

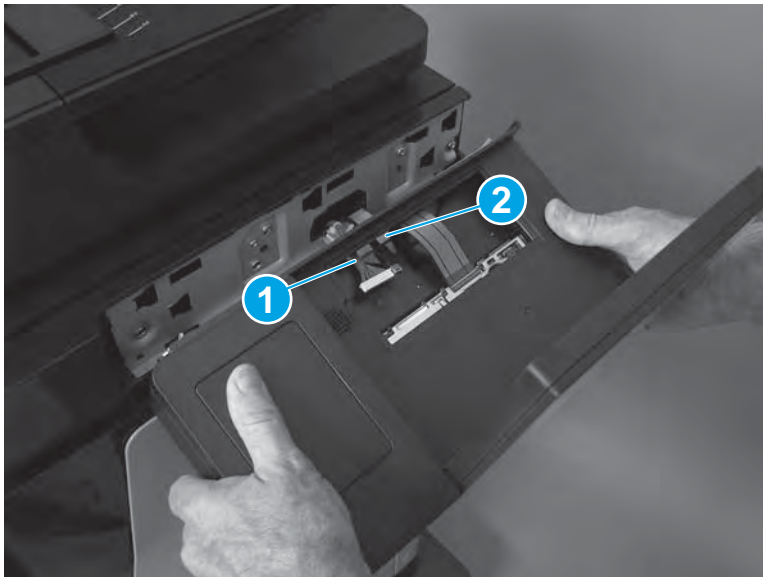
Figure 1-136 Verify that the cable is securely fastened in the connector



Step 5: Install the control-panel assembly

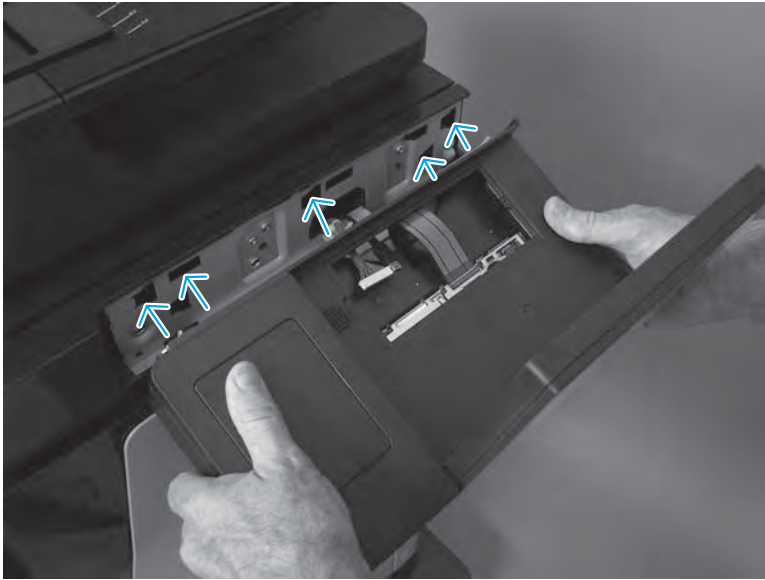
1. Insert the cable and wire harness (callout 1) into the opening at the back of the control panel (callout 2).

Figure 1-137 Install the cable and wire harness



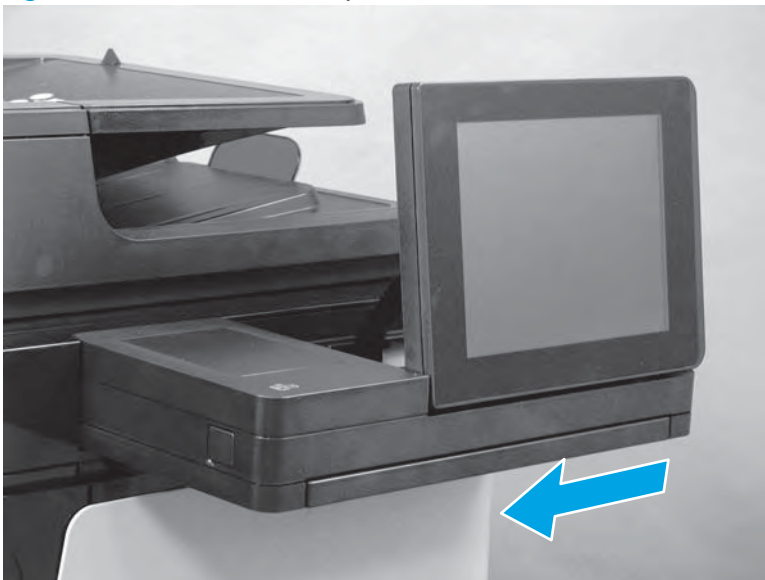
2. Insert the tabs on the control panel into the slots on the product.

Figure 1-138 Insert the tabs on the control panel into the slots



3. Slide the control panel toward the left door to secure it to the product.

Figure 1-139 Slide the control panel to the left



4. **M630z only:** Slide the keyboard about halfway out of the product.

Figure 1-140 Slide the keyboard out



5. Connect two connectors.

CAUTION: To avoid damaging the black USB cable, make sure that the USB symbol (⚡) on the connector at the end of the cable is facing up before installing it in the control panel.

Figure 1-141 Connect two connectors



6. Install the screw.


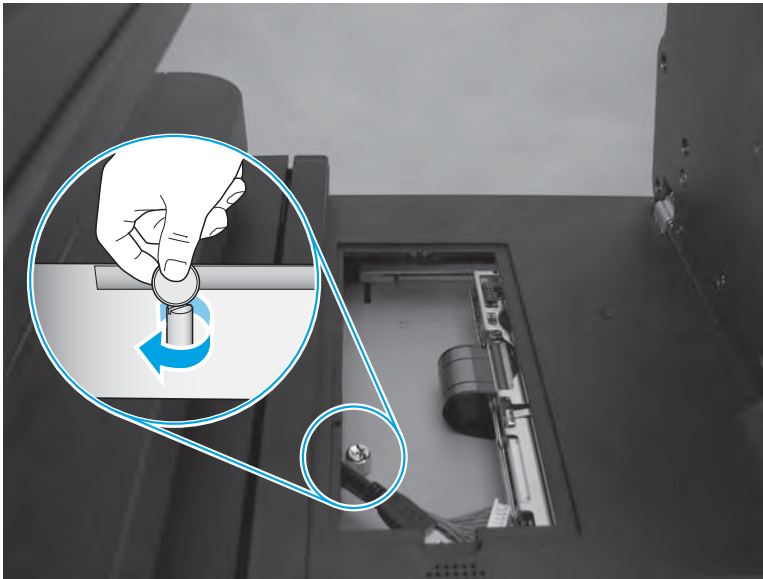
 **TIP:** Use the edge of a coin to tighten the screw.

Figure 1-142 Install the screw



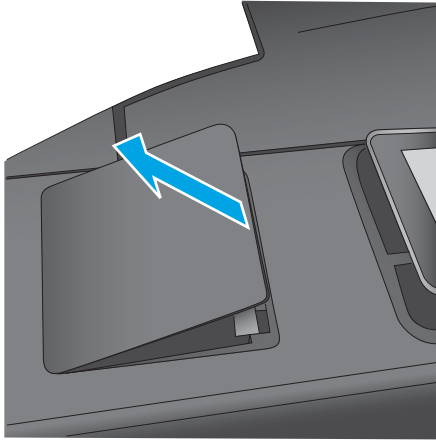
7. Install the cover.

Figure 1-143 Install the cover



8. **Optional step:** If a device was removed from the Hardware Integration Pocket (HIP), open the HIP cover on the replacement control panel, and then reinstall the device.

Figure 1-144 Install third party devices



9. Do the following steps:
 - a. Reconnect any removed interface cables.
 - b. Plug in the power cord.
 - c. Turn on the product.
 - d. **M630z only:** Check to make sure that the keyboard functions correctly. If it does not, make sure that the flat cable is installed correctly in the connector.

Figure 1-145 Test the keyboard



Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Keyboard assembly (M630z only)

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the control panel](#)
- [Step 2: Remove the keyboard](#)
- [Step 3: Unpack the replacement keyboard assembly](#)
- [Step 4: Install the keyboard](#)
- [Step 5: Install the control-panel assembly](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

Introduction

This document provides instructions about removing and replacing the keyboard assembly.

Before servicing

To order a replacement assembly, use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product. To order the kit, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Keyboard assembly part numbers	
5851-5380	US keyboard assembly kit with instruction guide
5851-5008	UK keyboard assembly kit with instruction guide

Required tools

No special tools are required to install this kit.

Step 1: Remove the control panel

1. Do the following:
 - a. Turn off the product.
 - b. Disconnect the power cord.

⚠ WARNING! Turn the product off, wait five seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

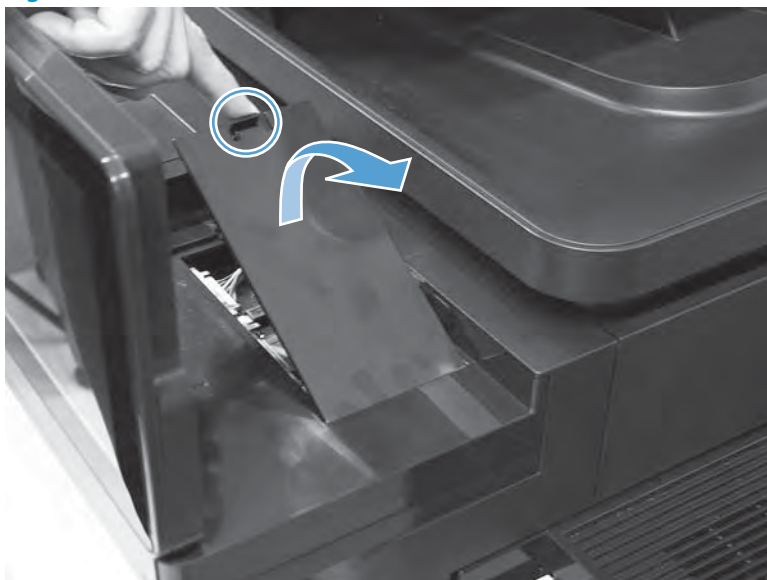
2. Tilt the control panel up.

Figure 1-146 Tilt the control panel up



3. Release one tab, and then remove the cover.

Figure 1-147 Remove the cover



4. Slide the keyboard about halfway out of the product.

Figure 1-148 Slide the keyboard out



5. Disconnect two connectors.

Figure 1-149 Disconnect two connectors



6. Remove one screw.


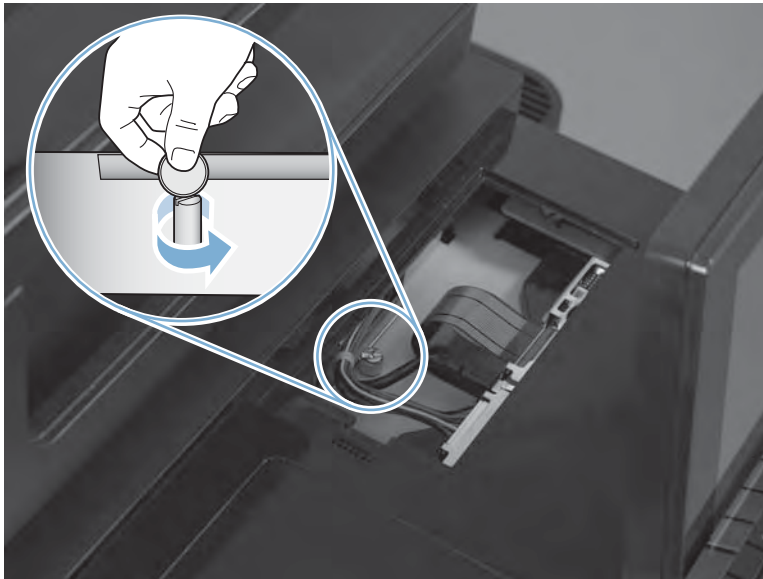
 **TIP:** Use the edge of a coin to loosen the screw.

Figure 1-150 Remove one screw



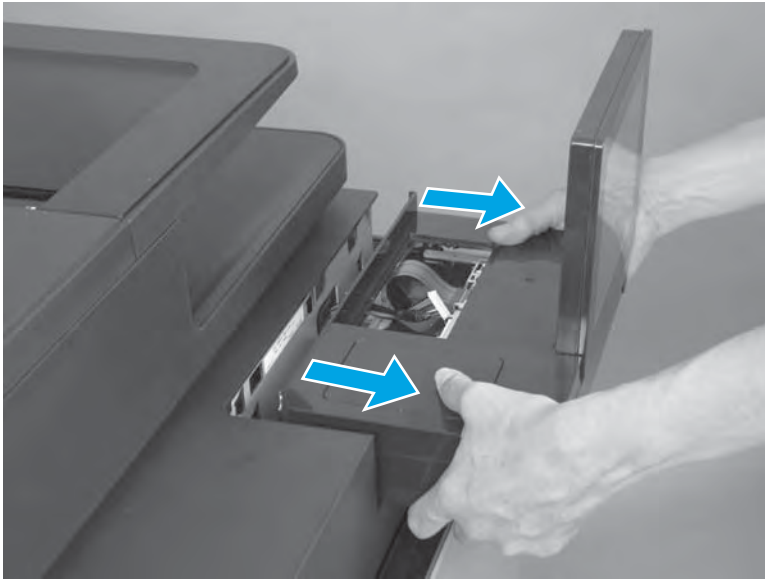
7. Slide the control panel toward the right door.

Figure 1-151 Slide the control panel to the right



8. Slide the control panel towards the front of the product to remove it.

Figure 1-152 Remove the control-panel assembly



Step 2: Remove the keyboard

1. Place the control-panel assembly on a flat surface.

Figure 1-153 Place the control-panel assembly on a flat surface

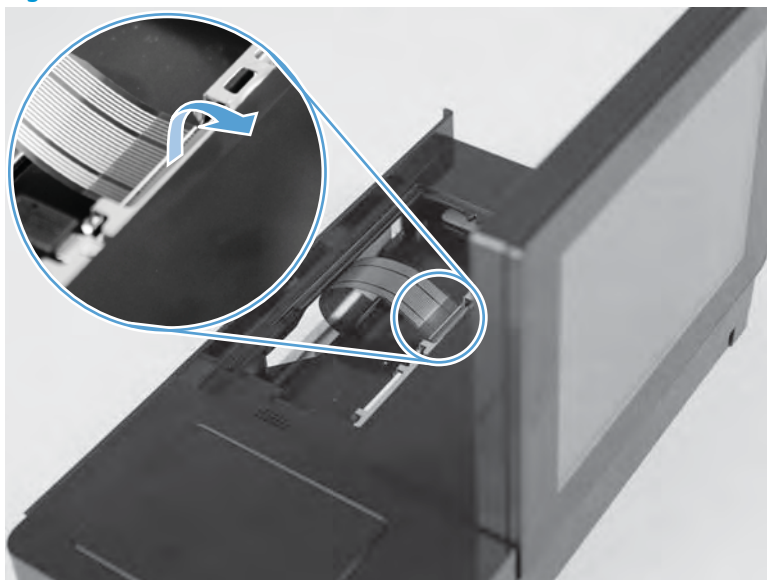


2. Open the hinged latch to release the flat cable.

CAUTION: Be careful. Do not dislodge the latch from the connector when opening it.

IMPORTANT: This connector is a Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector that uses a hinged retainer to secure a flat cable. The hinged retainer must be opened to release the flat cable.

Figure 1-154 Release the flat cable



3. Disconnect the flat cable.

Figure 1-155 Disconnect the flat cable



4. Tilt the screen down until it lays flat.

Figure 1-156 Tilt the screen down



5. Slide the keyboard tray all of the way out of the control panel until it stops.

Figure 1-157 Slide the keyboard tray out



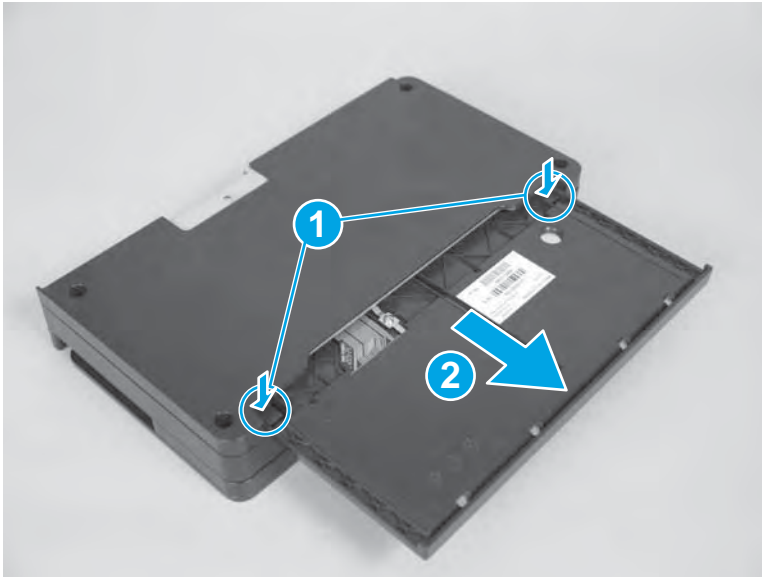
6. Turn the control panel face-down on the surface.

Figure 1-158 Turn the control panel face-down



7. Release and hold two tabs (callout 1) while sliding the keyboard tray away from the control panel (callout 2) to remove it.


Figure 1-159 Remove the keyboard

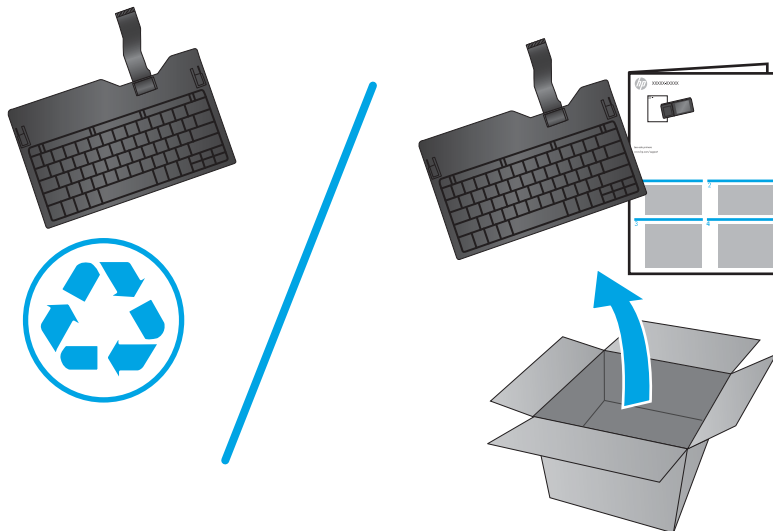


Step 3: Unpack the replacement keyboard assembly

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

www.Product return and recycling

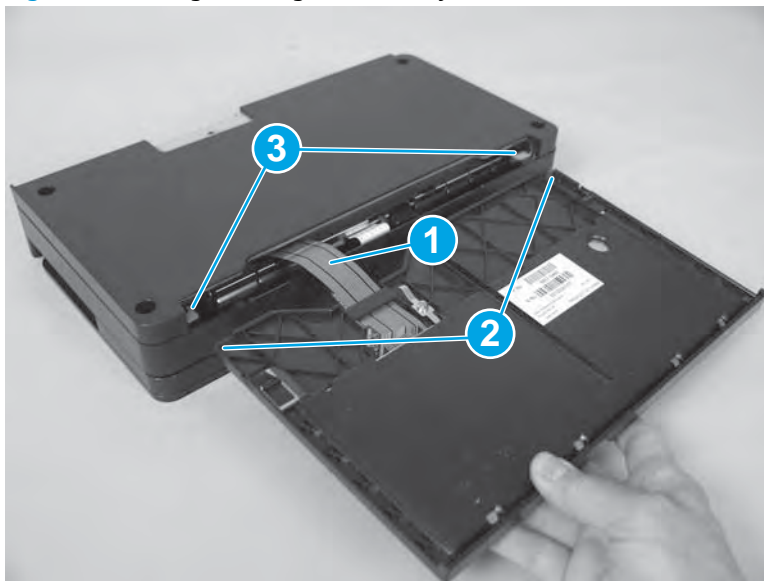
 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.



Step 4: Install the keyboard

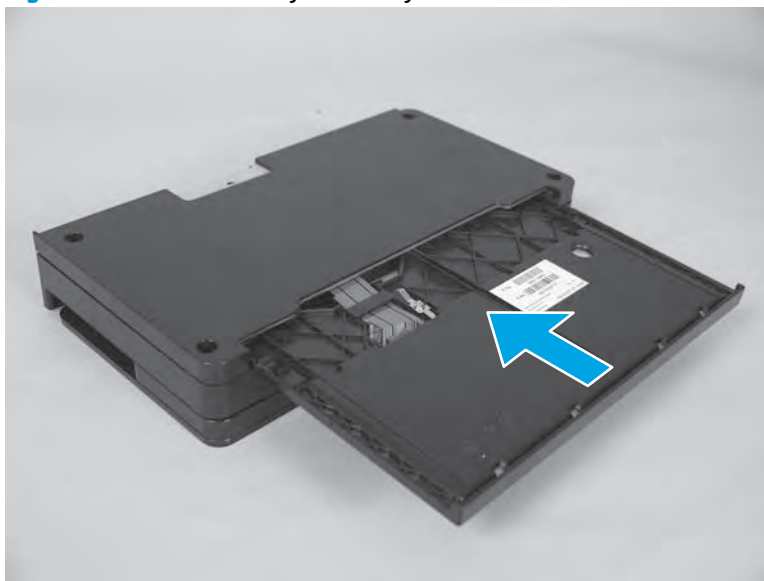
1. Turn the keyboard tray upside down, and then position the flat cable (callout 1) inside the tray cavity. Align the edges of the tray (callout 2) with the slots in the control panel (callout 3).

Figure 1-160 Align the edges of the tray with the slots in the control panel



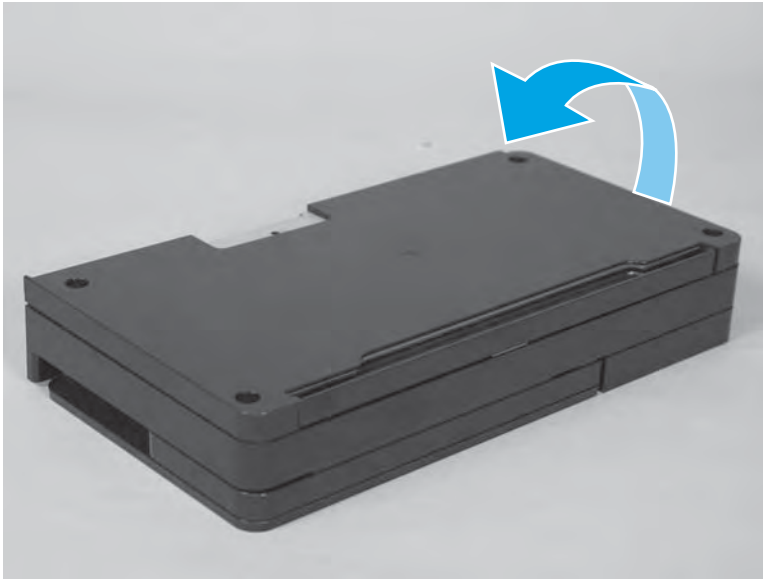
2. Slide the keyboard tray all the way into the control panel.

Figure 1-161 Slide the keyboard tray in



3. Turn the control panel face-up.

Figure 1-162 Turn the control panel face-up



4. Tilt the screen up.

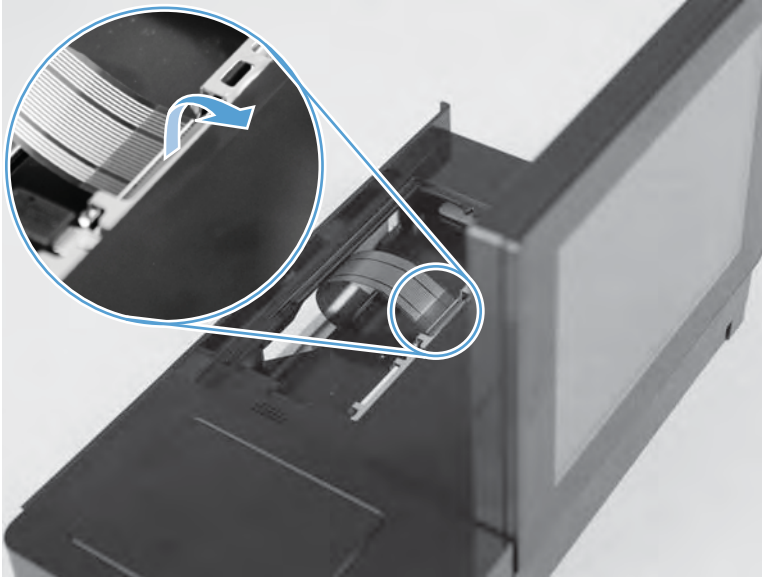
Figure 1-163 Tilt the screen up



5. Open the hinged latch, and then position the flat cable in the connector.

CAUTION: Be careful. Do not dislodge the latch from the connector when opening it.

Figure 1-164 Position the flat cable in the connector

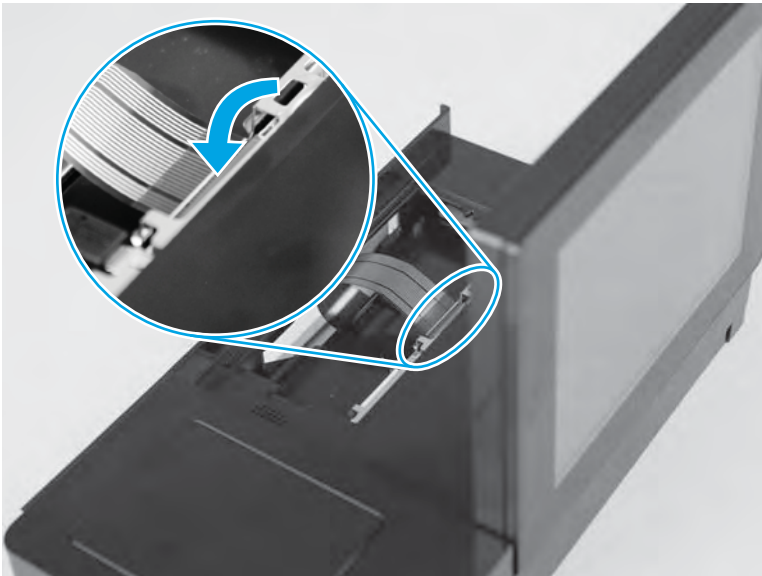


6. Use a finger to carefully close the latch to lock the flat cable into position.

CAUTION: Be careful. Do not dislodge the latch from the connector when closing it.

IMPORTANT: This connector is a Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector that uses a hinged retainer to secure a flat cable. When the flat cable is reinstalled, fully insert the flat cable in the connector, and then close the hinged retainer to lock the flat cable into the connector and provide proper electrical contact. If the flat cable is not locked into the connector, no electrical contact will occur.

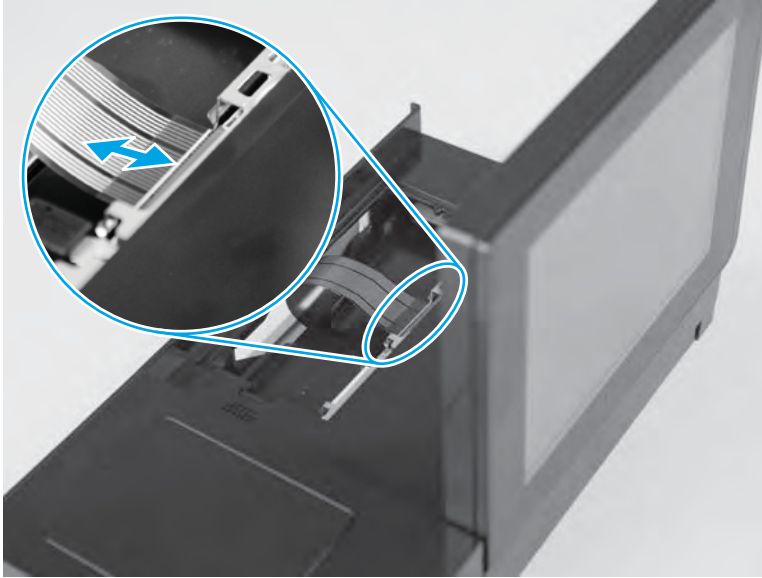
Figure 1-165 Close the latch to lock the flat cable into position



7. Slightly pull on the flat cable to verify that it is securely fastened in the connector.

⚠ CAUTION: Be careful. Do not use full force to pull on the flat cable. A slight pull on the cable is sufficient to verify that it is securely fastened.

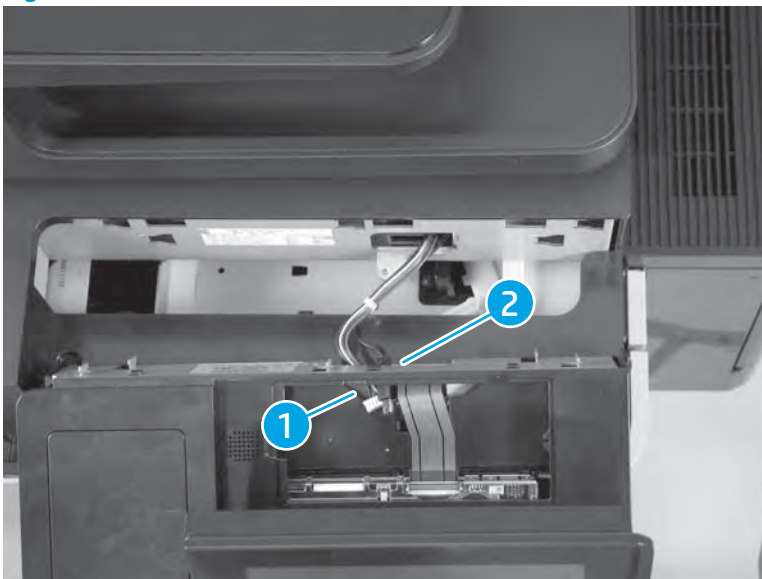
Figure 1-166 Verify that the cable is securely fastened in the connector



Step 5: Install the control-panel assembly

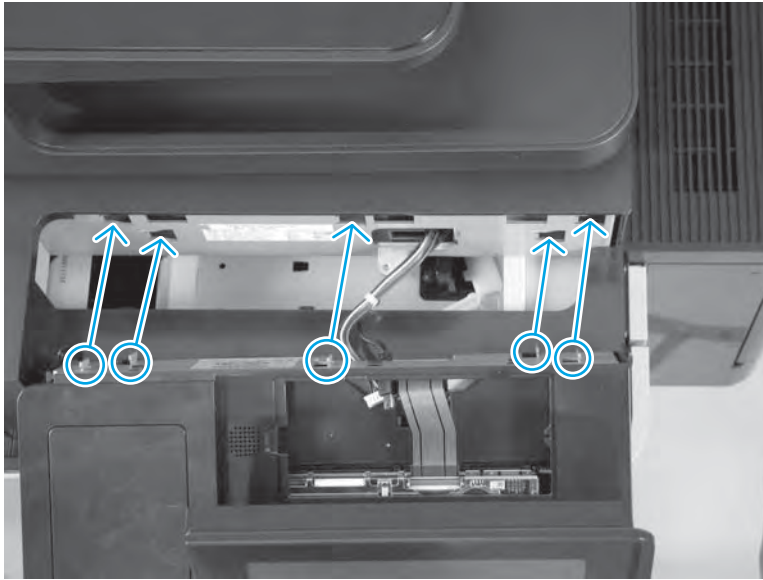
1. Insert the cable and wire harness (callout 1) into the opening at the back of the control panel (callout 2).

Figure 1-167 Install the cable and wire harness



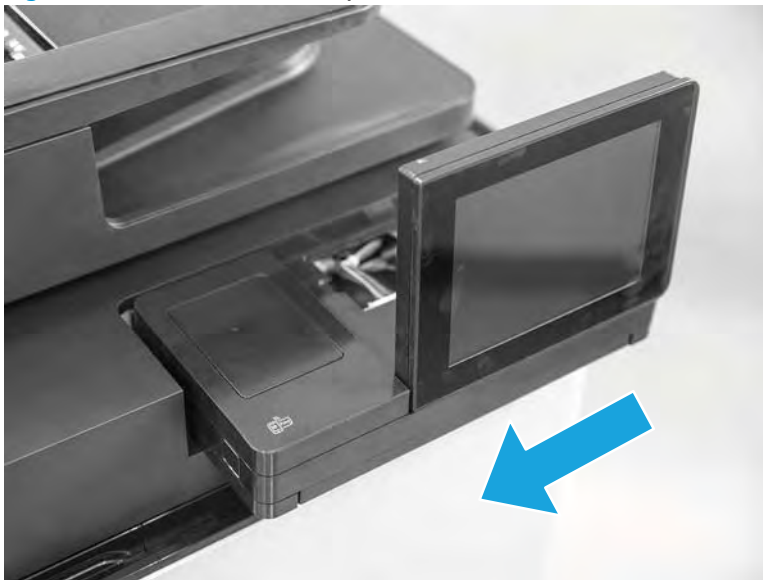
2. Insert the tabs on the control panel into the slots on the product.

Figure 1-168 Insert the tabs on the control panel into the slots



3. Slide the control panel toward the left door to secure it to the product.

Figure 1-169 Slide the control panel to the left



4. Slide the keyboard about halfway out of the product.

Figure 1-170 Slide the keyboard out



5. Connect two connectors.

CAUTION: To avoid damaging the black USB cable, make sure that the USB symbol (🖱️) on the connector at the end of the cable is facing up before installing it in the control panel.

Figure 1-171 Connect two connectors



6. Install the screw.


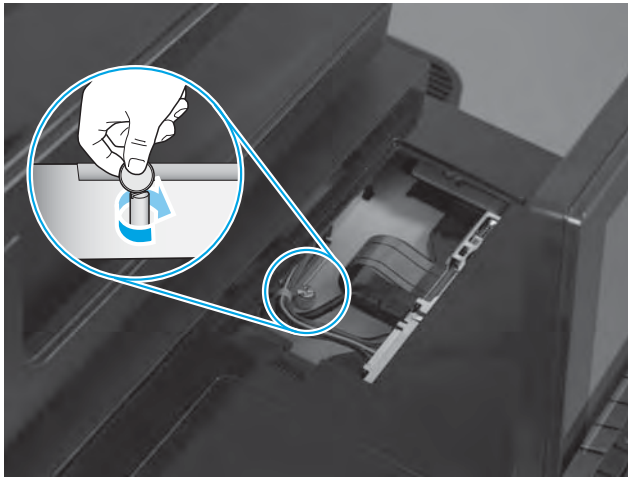
 **TIP:** Use the edge of a coin to tighten the screw.

Figure 1-172 Install the screw



7. Install the cover.

Figure 1-173 Install the cover



8. Do the following steps:

- a.** Reconnect any removed interface cables.
- b.** Plug in the power cord.
- c.** Turn on the product.

- d. Check to make sure that the keyboard functions correctly. If it does not, make sure that the flat cable is installed correctly in the connector.

Figure 1-174 Test the keyboard



Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Tray 1 pickup, feed, and separation rollers

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the Tray 1 pickup, feed, and separation rollers](#)
- [Step 2: Unpack the replacement rollers](#)
- [Step 3: Install the Tray 1 pickup, feed, and separation rollers](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the Tray 1 pickup, feed, and separation rollers.

Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the kit.

Tray 1 pickup, feed, and separation rollers kit part number	
B3G84-67906	Tray 1 pickup, feed, and separation rollers with instruction guide

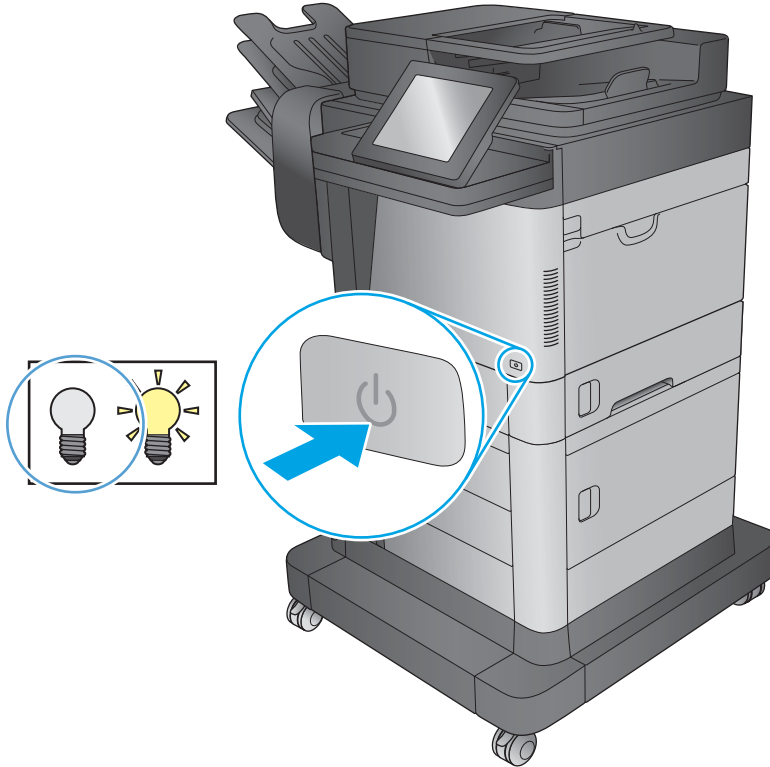
Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

Step 1: Remove the Tray 1 pickup, feed, and separation rollers

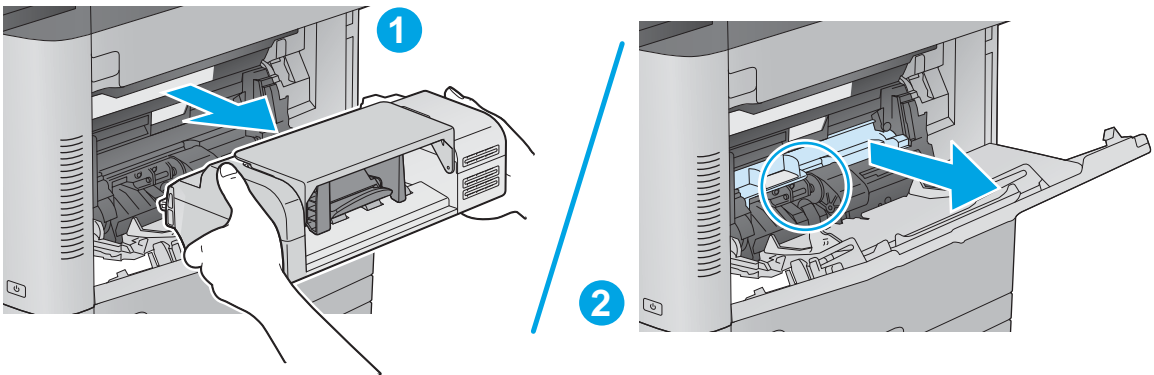
1. Use the power switch to turn the product power off.

Figure 1-175 Turn the power off



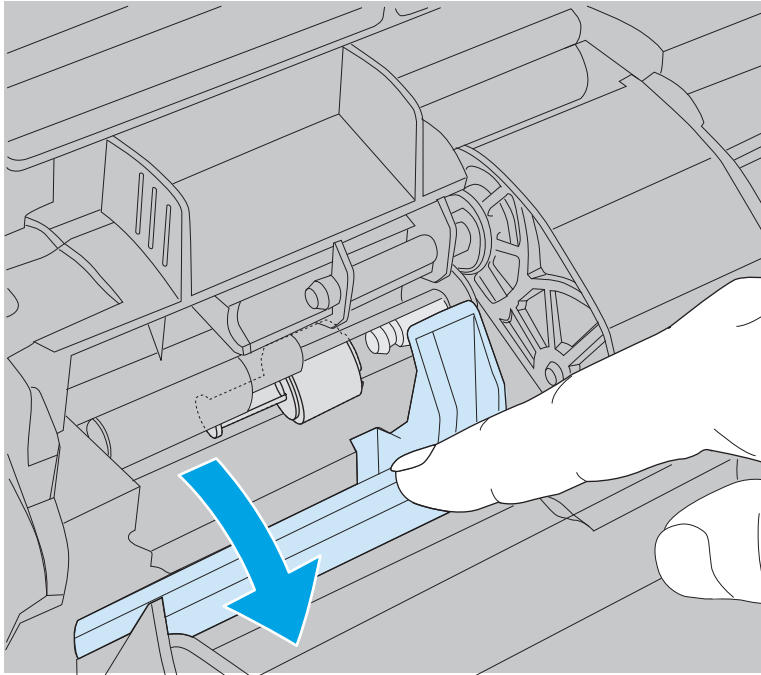
2. Remove the envelope feeder (callout 1), or open Tray 1 and then remove the environment cover (callout 2) depending on product configuration.

Figure 1-176 Remove the envelope feeder or the environment cover



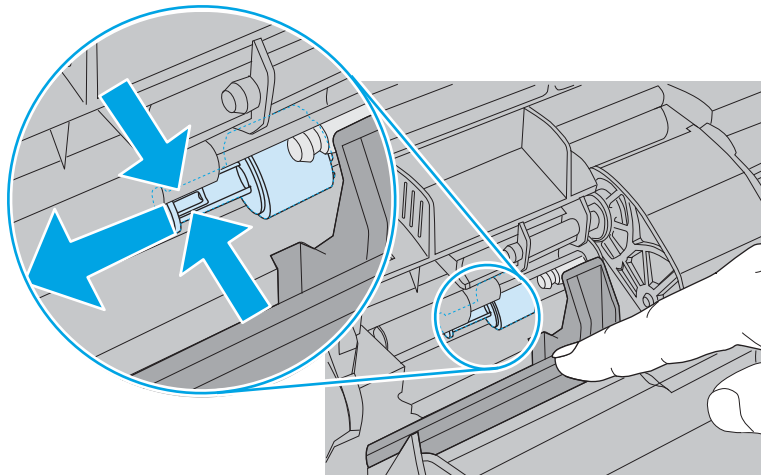
3. Open the separation roller cover.

Figure 1-177 Open the separation roller cover



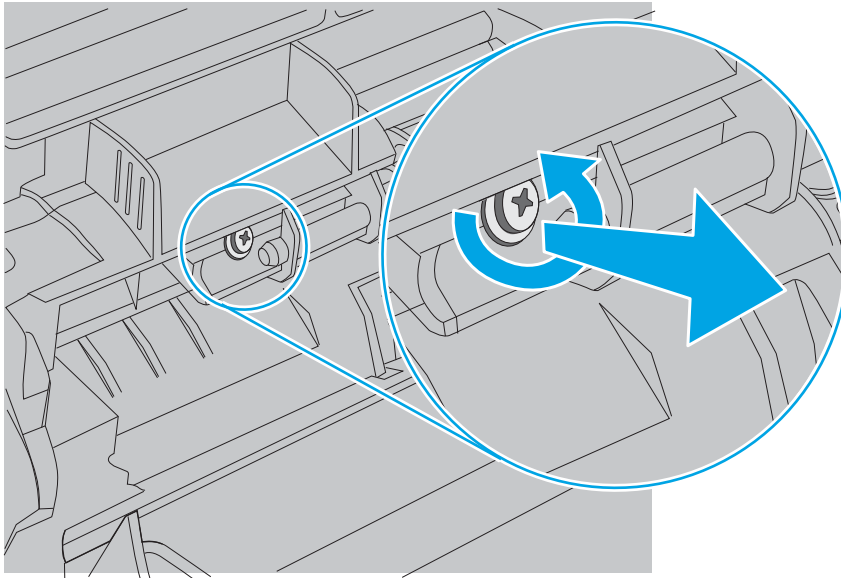
4. Release the separation roller locking tab, and then slide the roller off of the shaft to remove it.

Figure 1-178 Remove the separation roller



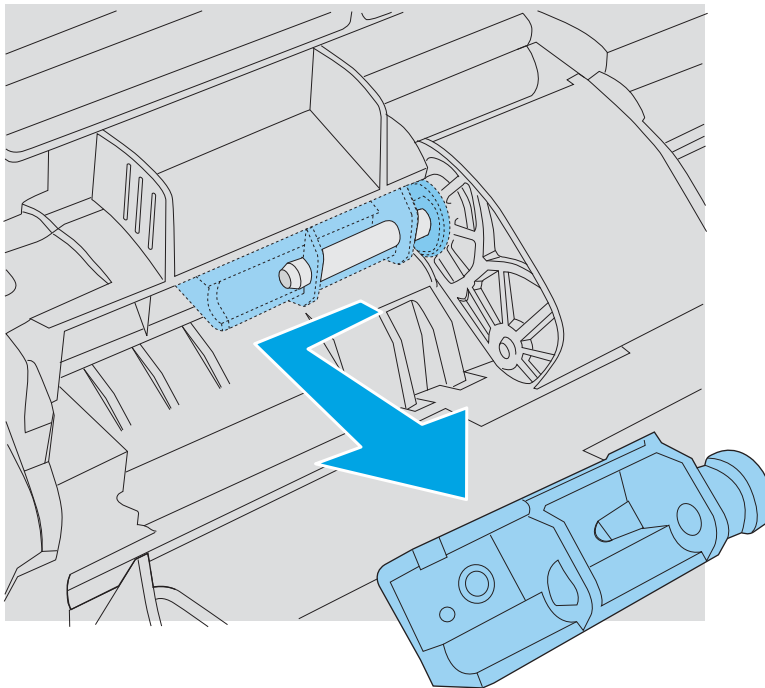
5. Remove one screw.

Figure 1-179 Remove one screw



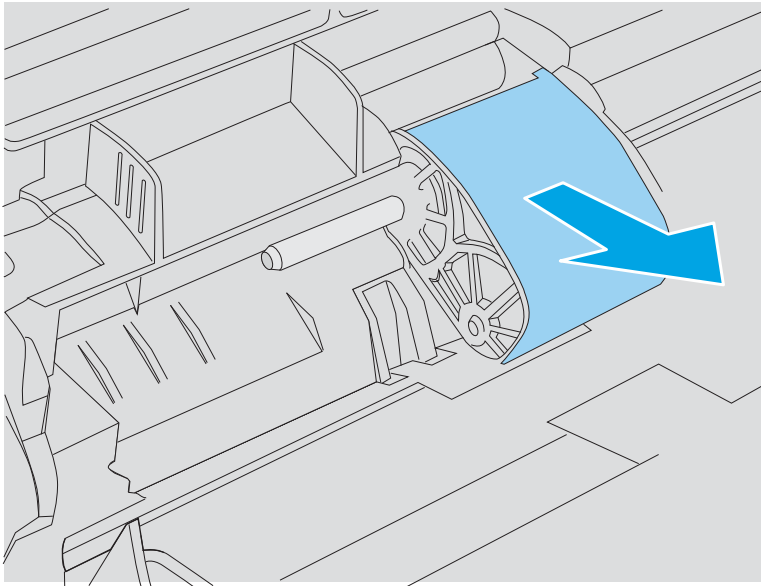
6. Slide the bushing off of the shaft.

Figure 1-180 Remove the bushing



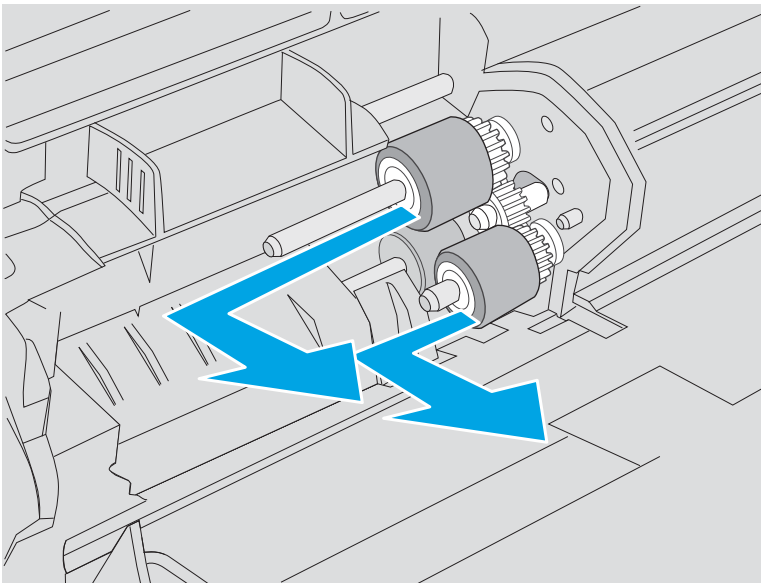
7. Remove the roller cover.

Figure 1-181 Remove the roller cover



8. Remove the pickup and feed rollers.

Figure 1-182 Remove the rollers



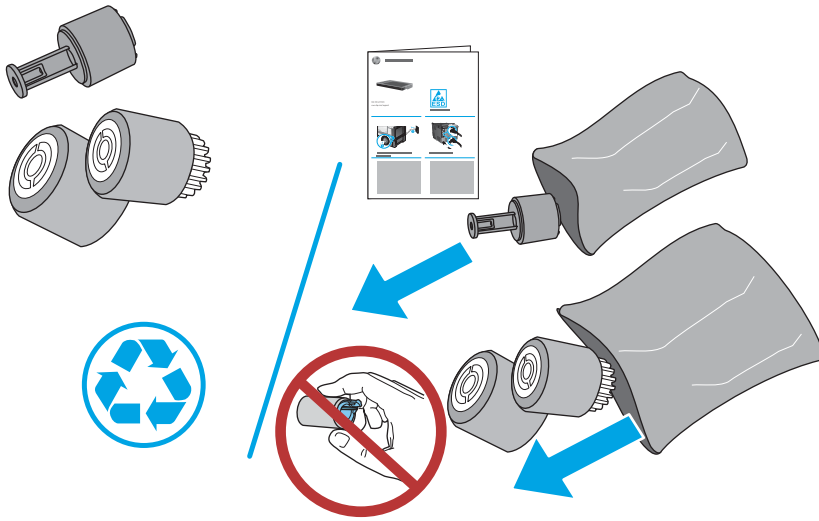
Step 2: Unpack the replacement rollers

Unpack the replacement assemblies from the packaging.

CAUTION: Avoid touching the surface of the replacement rollers. Skin oils on the rollers can cause print-quality problems. Thoroughly wash your hands with soap and water to remove skin oils, and then completely dry them.

www.Product return and recycling

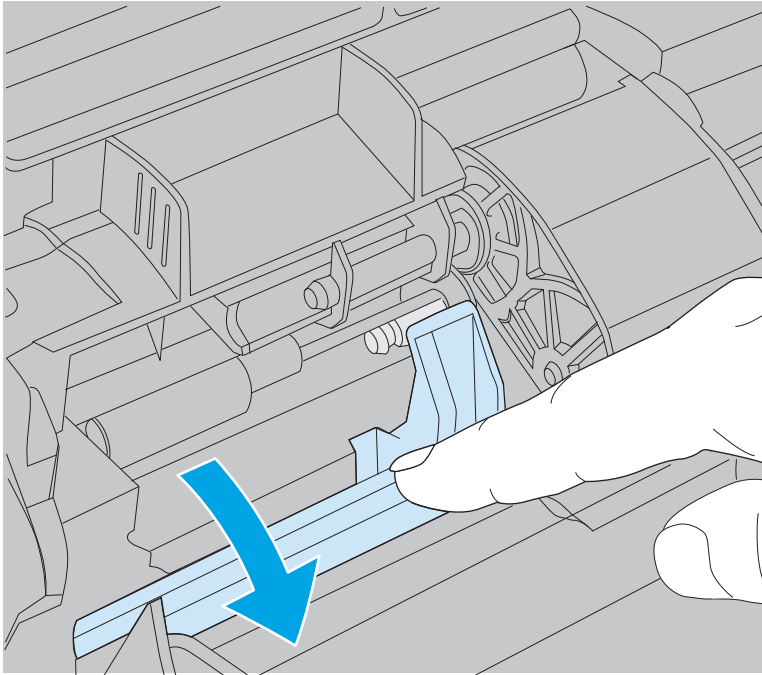
 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assemblies.



Step 3: Install the Tray 1 pickup, feed, and separation rollers

1. Open the separation roller cover.

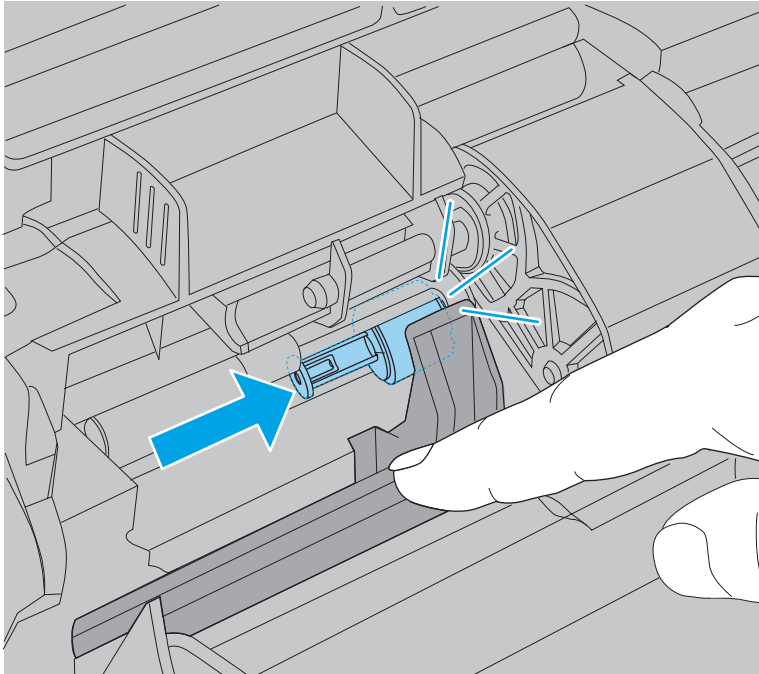
Figure 1-183 Open the separation roller cover



2. Slide the roller onto the shaft to install it, and then close the cover.

 **TIP:** When the roller is fully installed, an audible click is heard.

Figure 1-184 Install the separation roller



3. Install the pickup and feed rollers.


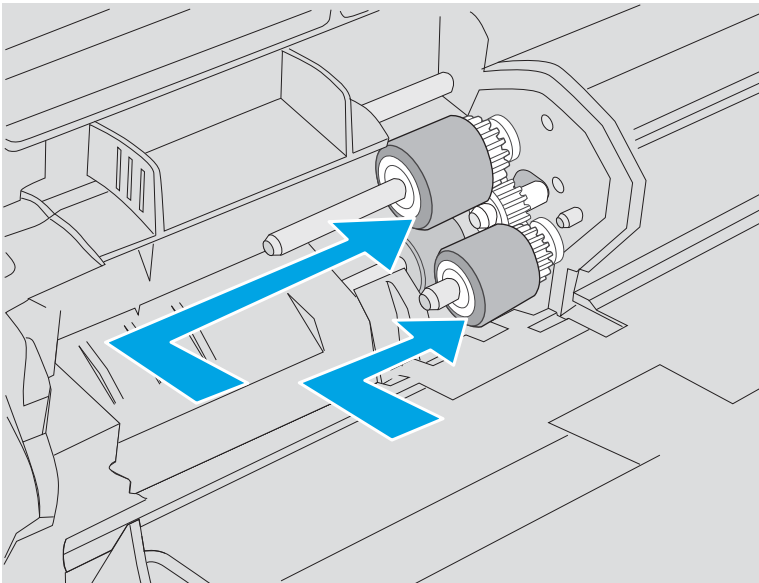
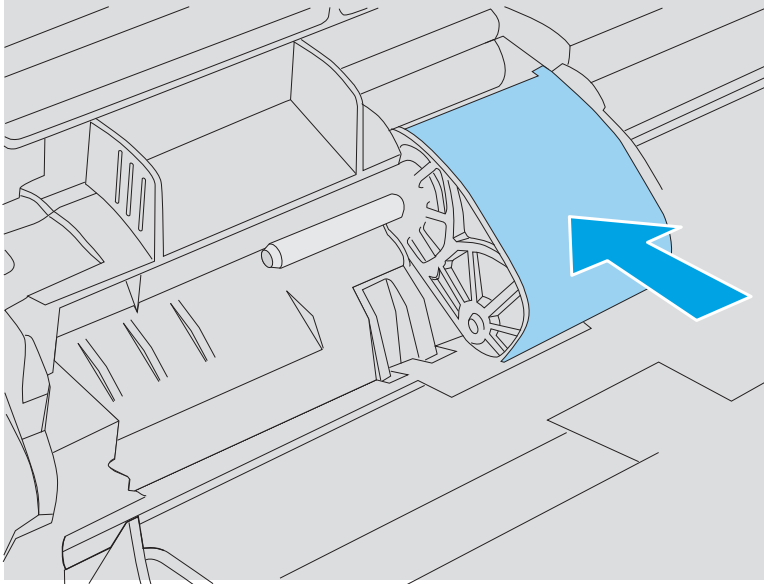
 **TIP:** Install the roller with the white gear on the lower shaft.

Figure 1-185 Install the rollers



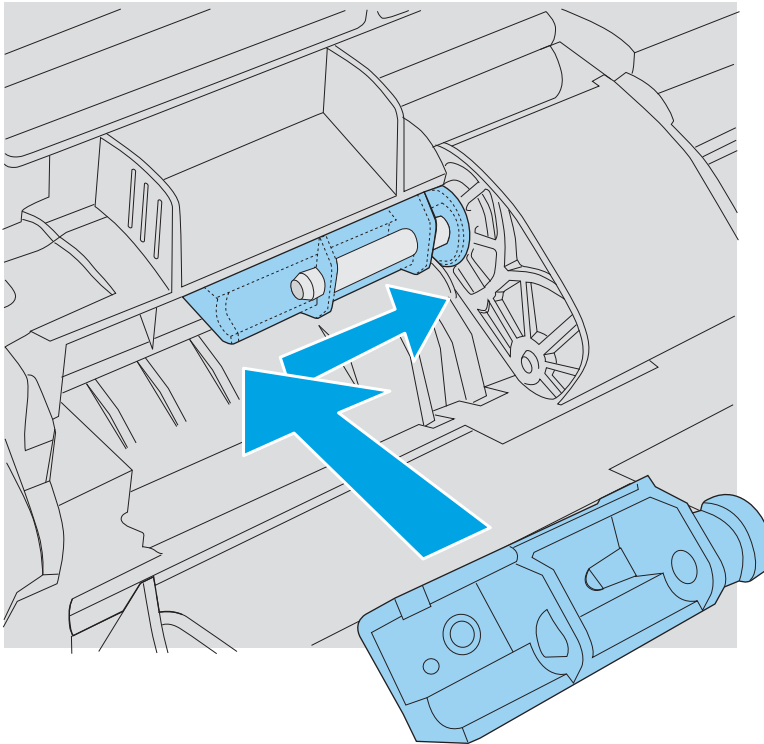
4. Install the roller cover.

Figure 1-186 Install the roller cover



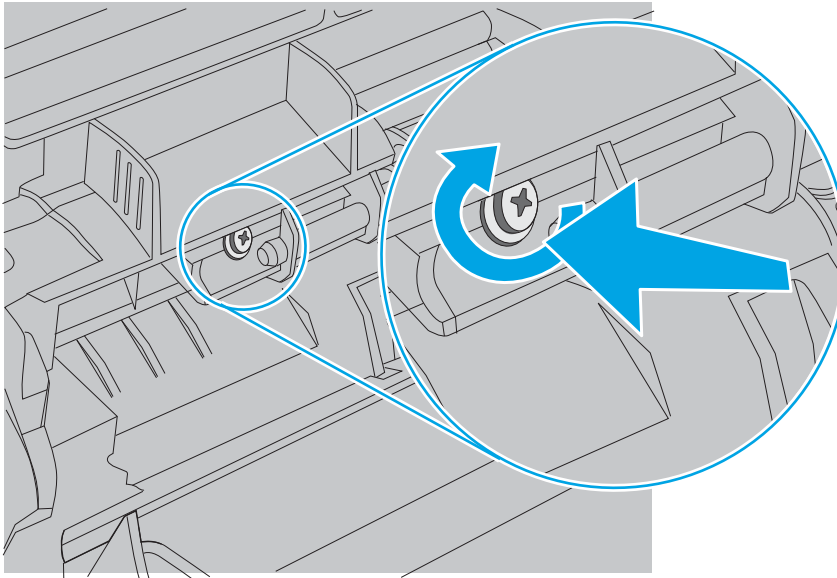
5. Slide the bushing on the shaft to install it.

Figure 1-187 Install the bushing



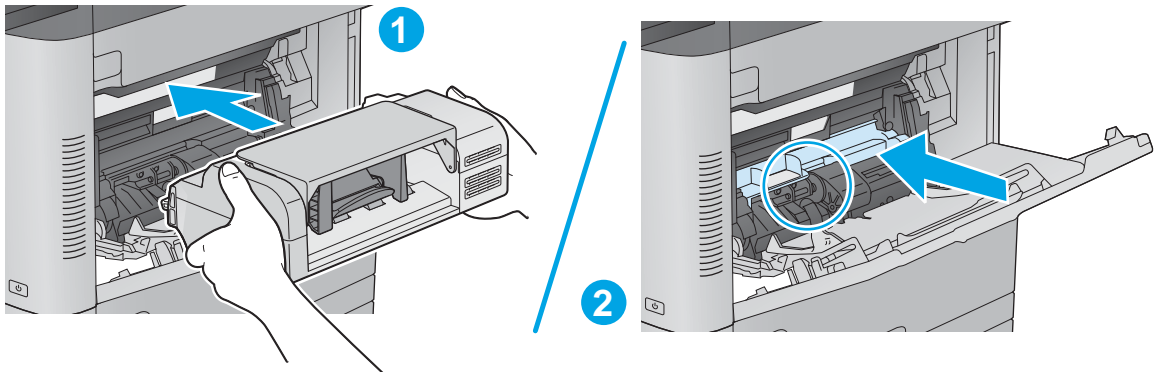
6. Install one screw.

Figure 1-188 Install one screw



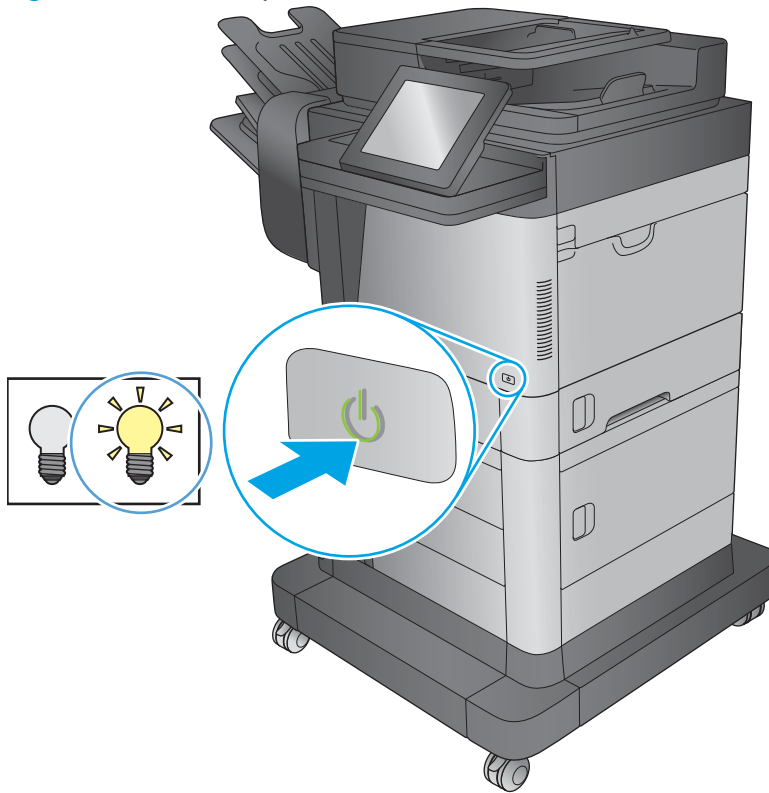
7. Install the envelope feeder (callout 1) *or*, open Tray 1 and then install the environment cover (callout 2) depending on product configuration.

Figure 1-189 Install the envelope feeder or the environment cover



8. Use the power switch to turn the product power on.

Figure 1-190 Turn the power on



Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Tray 2-5 pickup and feed rollers

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the Tray 2 - 5 pickup and feed rollers](#)
- [Step 2: Unpack the replacement rollers](#)
- [Step 3: Install the Tray 2 - 5 pickup and feed rollers](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the Tray 2 - X pickup and feed rollers.

Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the kit.

Tray 2 - X pickup and feed rollers kit part number	
--	--

B3G84-67905

Tray 2 - X pickup and rollers kit with instruction guide
--

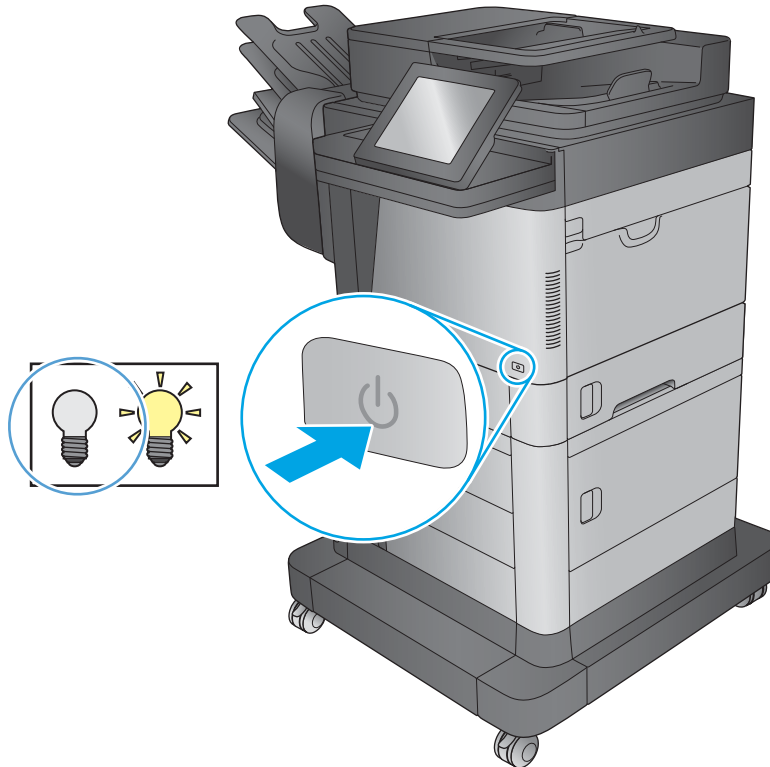
Required tools

- No special tools are required to install this kit.

Step 1: Remove the Tray 2 - 5 pickup and feed rollers

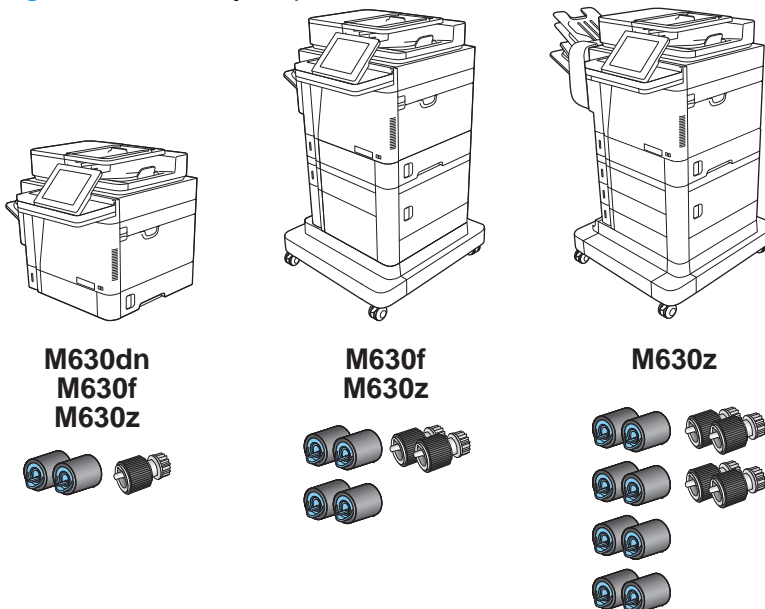
1. Use the power switch to turn the product power off.

Figure 1-191 Turn the power off



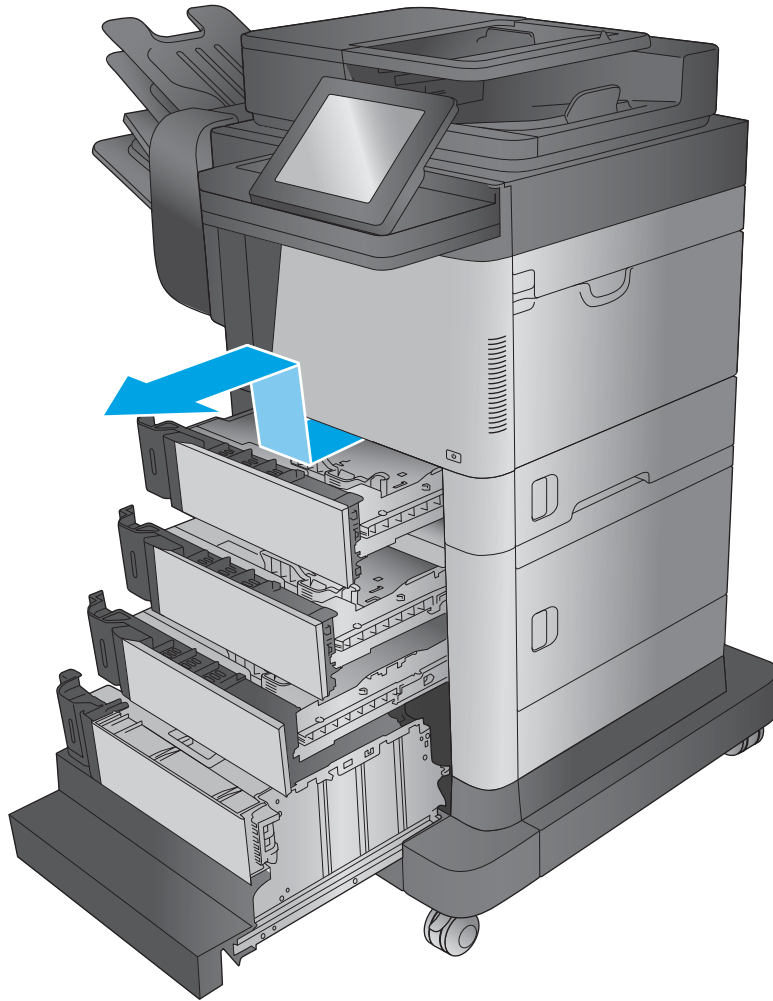
2. The figures in this procedure show the 2,500-sheet high-capacity feeder, however the procedure for replacing the rollers is correct for all product models.

Figure 1-192 Identify the product model



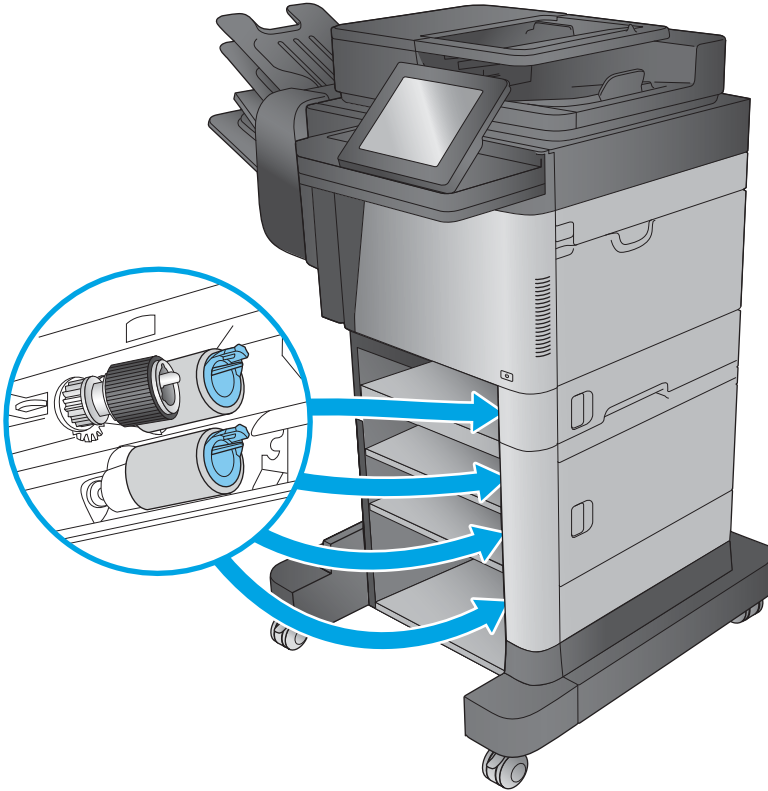
3. Remove the tray or trays.

Figure 1-193 Remove the tray or trays



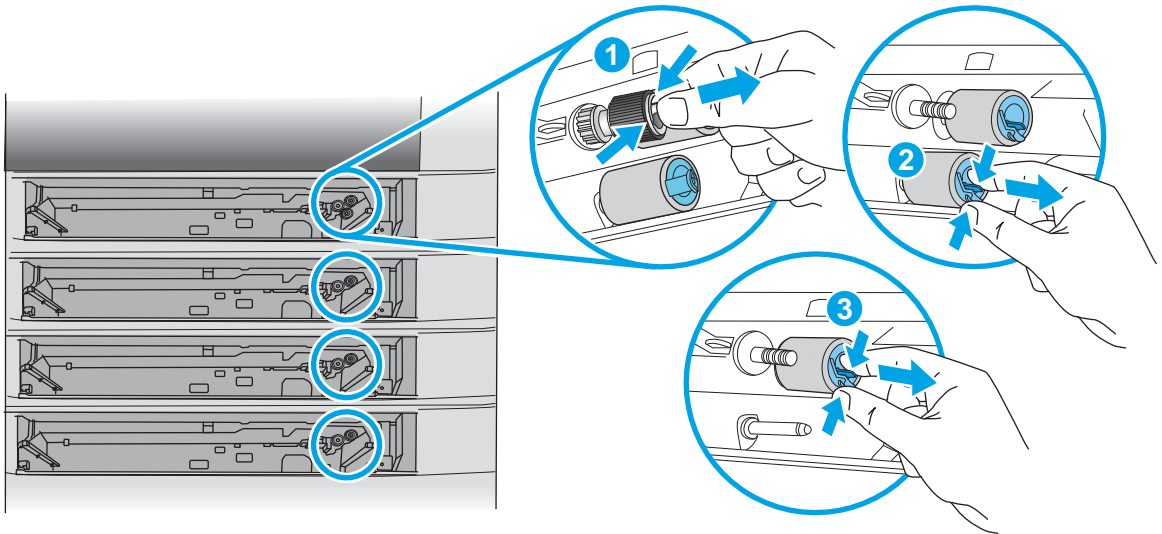
4. Locate the pickup and feed rollers.

Figure 1-194 Locate the pickup and feed rollers



5. Pinch the tab on the pickup roller or feed roller to release it, and then slide the roller off of the shaft.

Figure 1-195 Remove the rollers



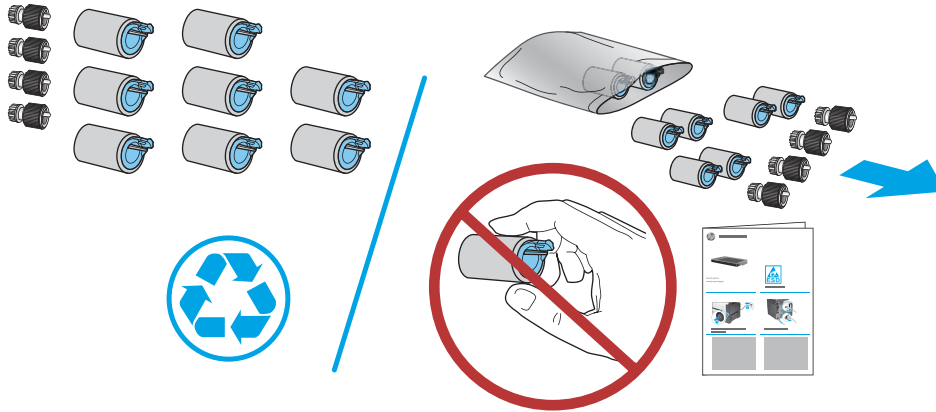
Step 2: Unpack the replacement rollers

Unpack the replacement assemblies from the packaging.

CAUTION: Avoid touching the surface of the replacement rollers. Skin oils on the rollers can cause print-quality problems. Thoroughly wash your hands with soap and water to remove skin oils, and then completely dry them.

www.Product return and recycling

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assemblies.

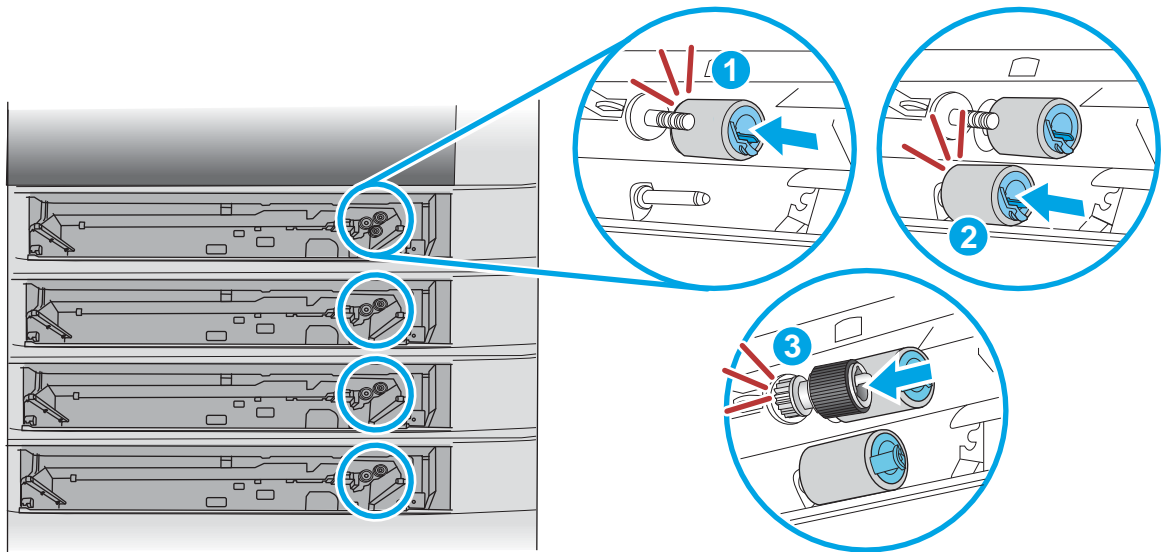


Step 3: Install the Tray 2 - 5 pickup and feed rollers

1. Slide the pickup and feed rollers on the shaft to install them.

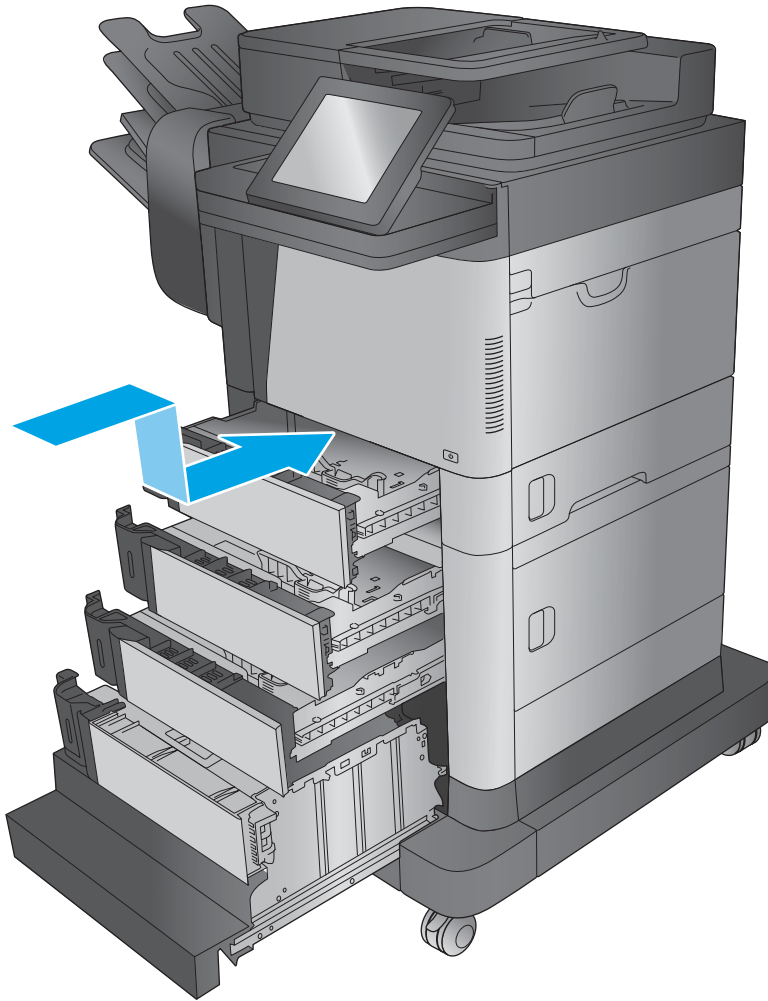
TIP: When the rollers are fully installed, an audible click is heard.

Figure 1-196 install the rollers



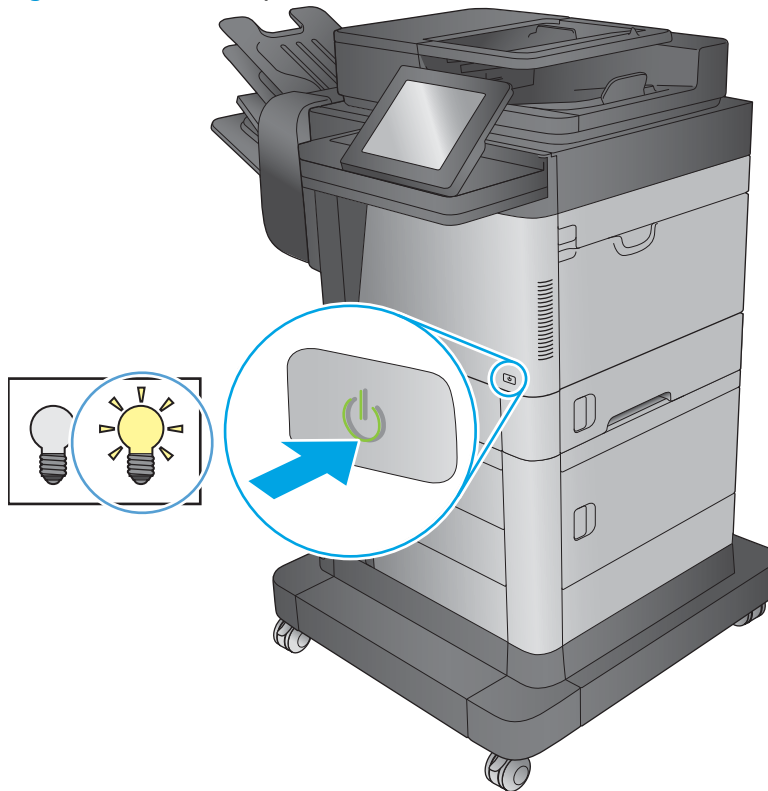
2. Install the tray or trays.

Figure 1-197 Install the tray or trays



3. Use the power switch to turn the product power on.

Figure 1-198 Turn the power on



Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Transfer roller

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the transfer roller](#)
- [Step 2: Unpack the replacement roller](#)
- [Step 3: Install the transfer roller](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the transfer roller.

Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the kit.

Transfer roller kit part number	
B3G84-67901	Transfer roller with instruction guide

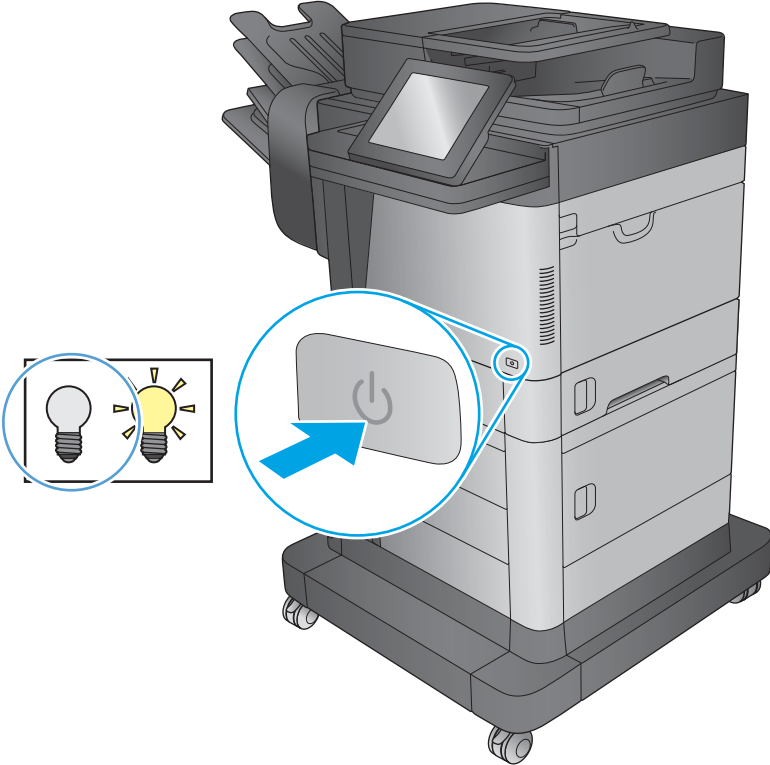
Required tools

- A special removal tool, and a pair of protective gloves are provided in this kit.

Step 1: Remove the transfer roller

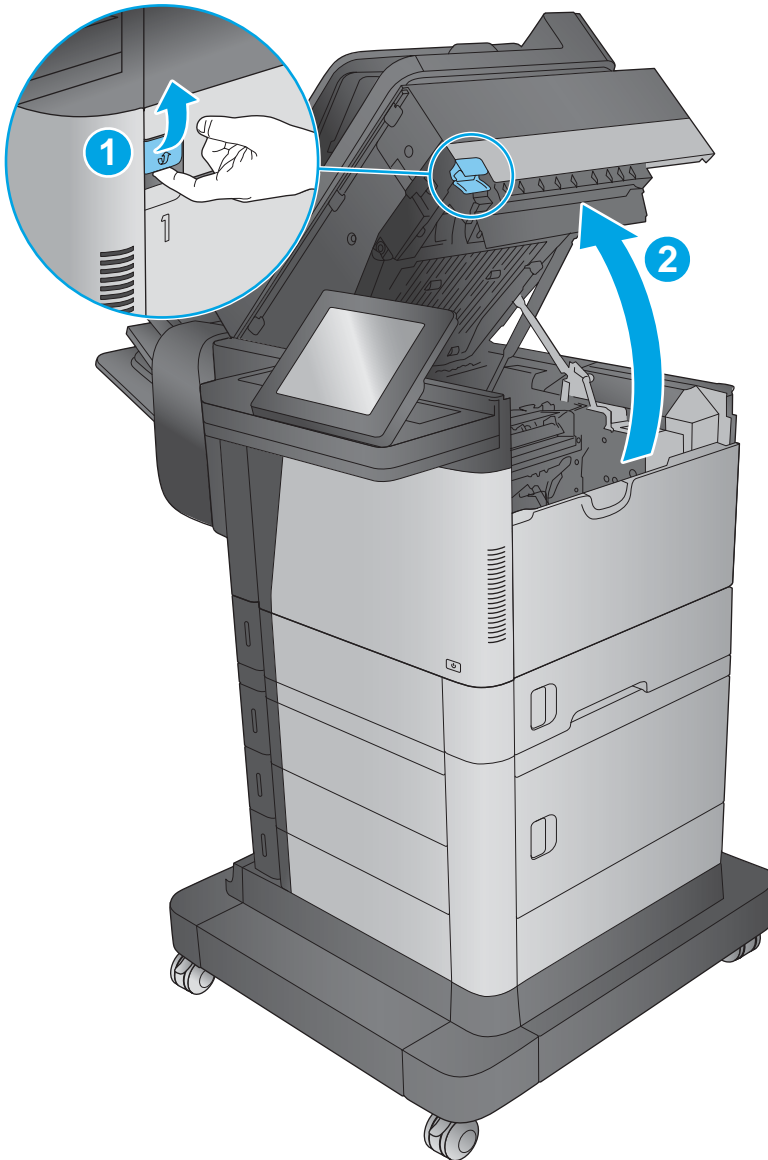
1. Use the power switch to turn the product power off.

Figure 1-199 Turn the power off



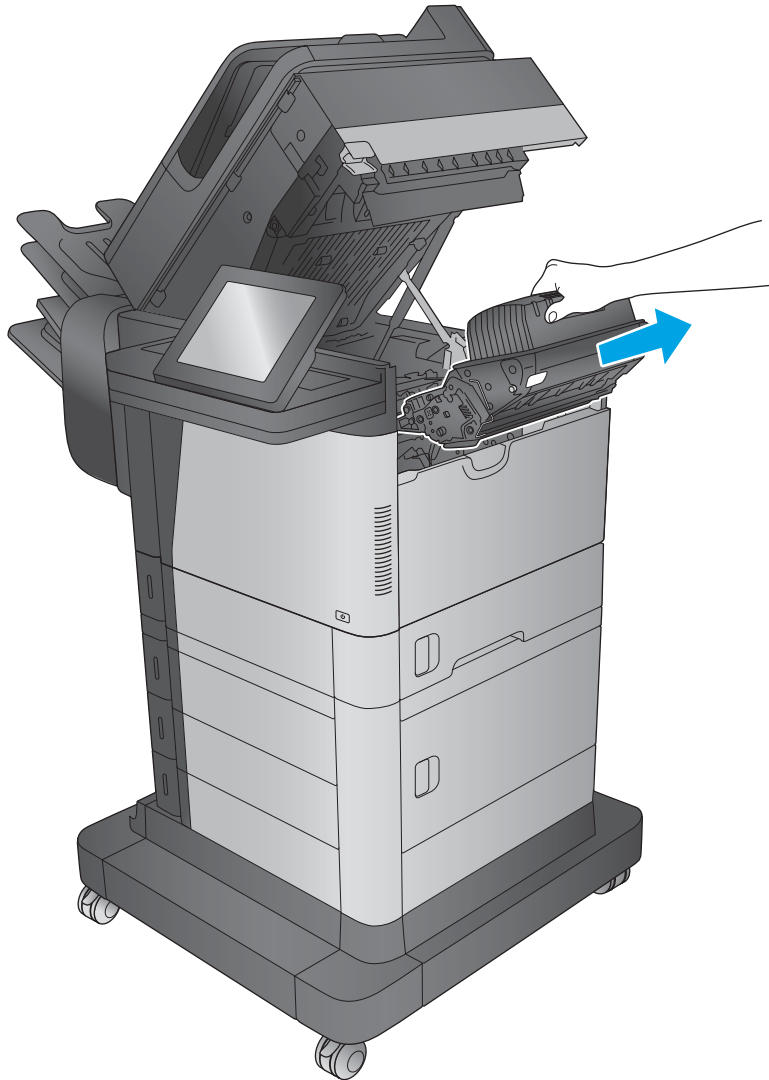
2. Open the top cover.

Figure 1-200 Open the top cover



3. Remove the toner cartridge.

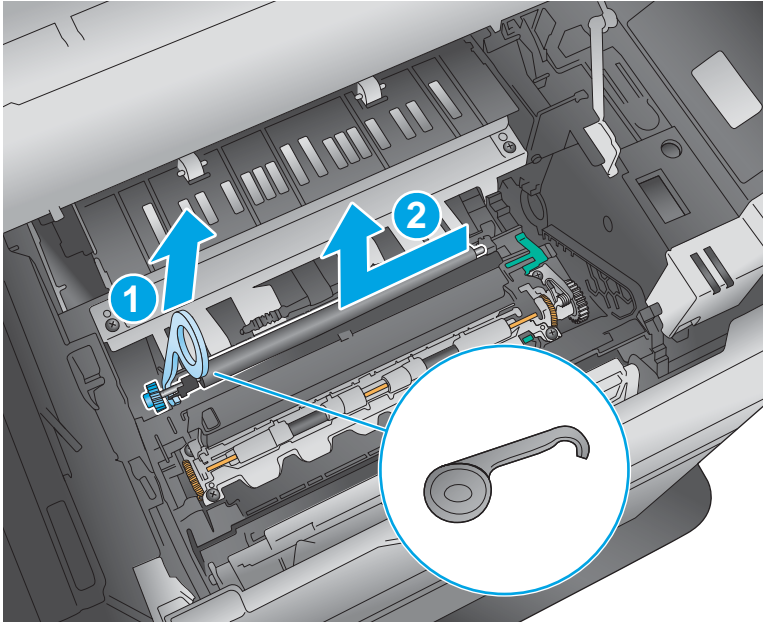
Figure 1-201 Remove the toner cartridge



4. Use the removal tool provided in the kit (or flat-blade screwdriver) to slightly lift the left end of the roller shaft (callout 1; near the blue gear). Slide the transfer roller to the left to remove it (callout 2).


 **TIP:** Open Tray 1 to make removing the roller easier.

Figure 1-202 Remove the transfer roller



Step 2: Unpack the replacement roller

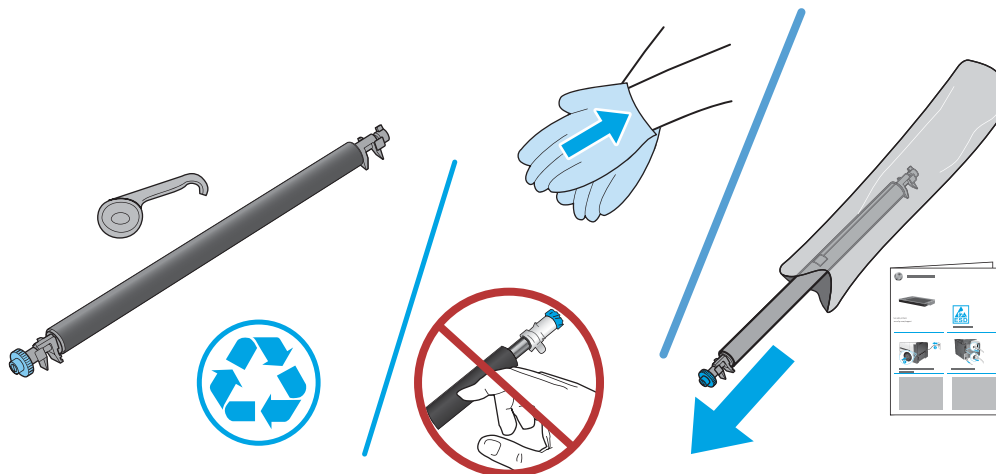
Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:** Skin oils on the roller can cause print-quality problems. Make sure to put on the protective gloves provided with the kit.

If protective gloves are not available, avoid touching the surface of the replacement roller. Thoroughly wash your hands with soap and water to remove skin oils, and then completely dry them.

www.ProductReturnandRecycling

 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.



Step 3: Install the transfer roller

1. Install the left end (callout 1; near the black collar) of the roller assembly in the product, and then rotate the right end down (callout 2) to install it.


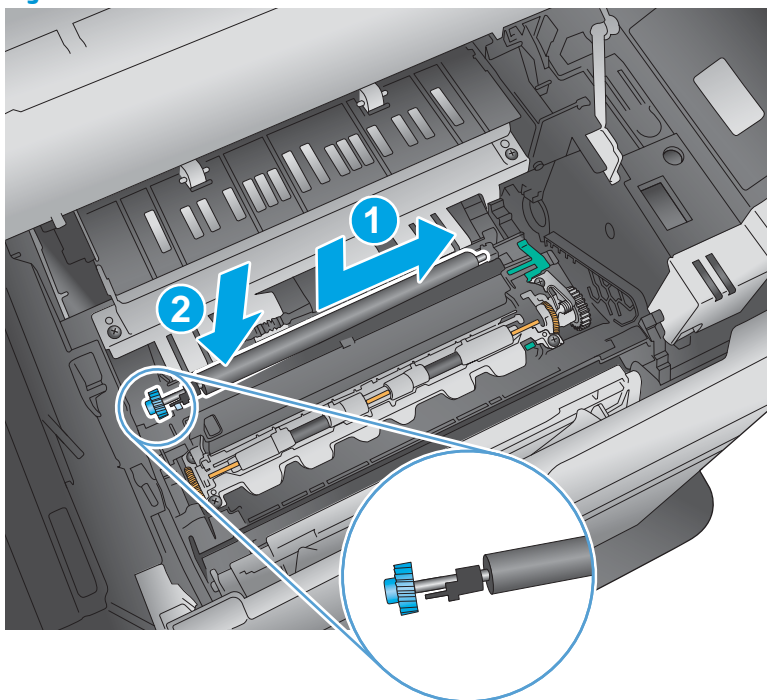
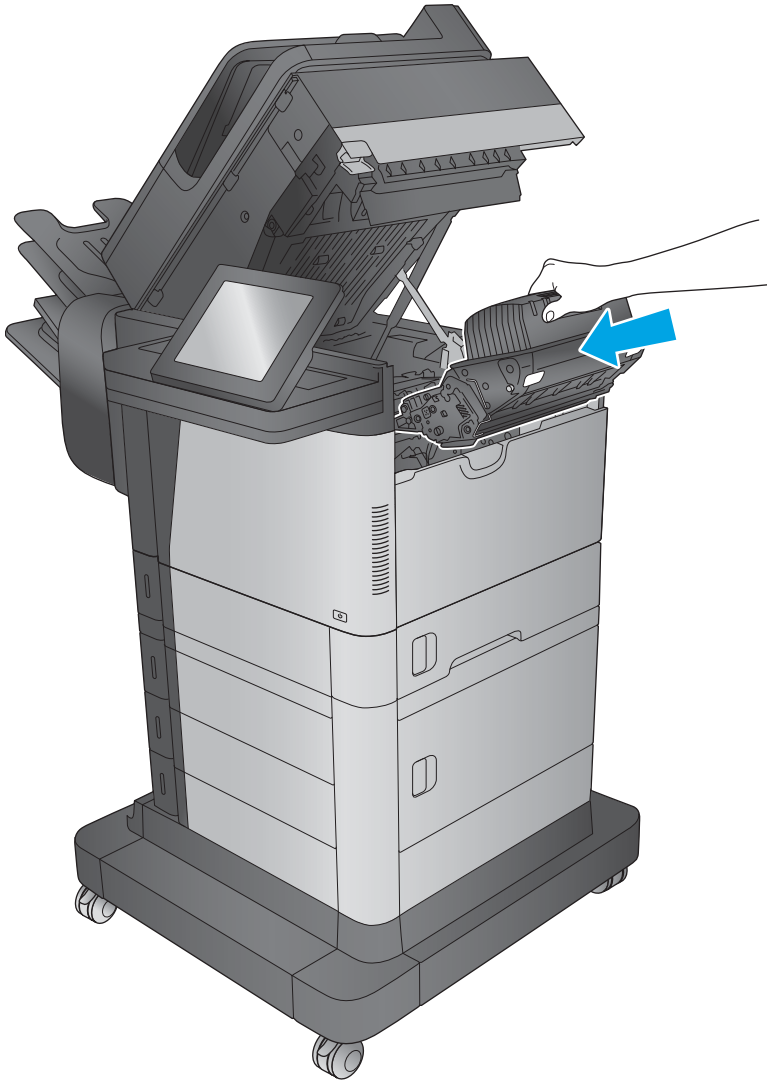
 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that both ends of the roller assembly are fully seated in the holders.

Figure 1-203 Install the transfer roller



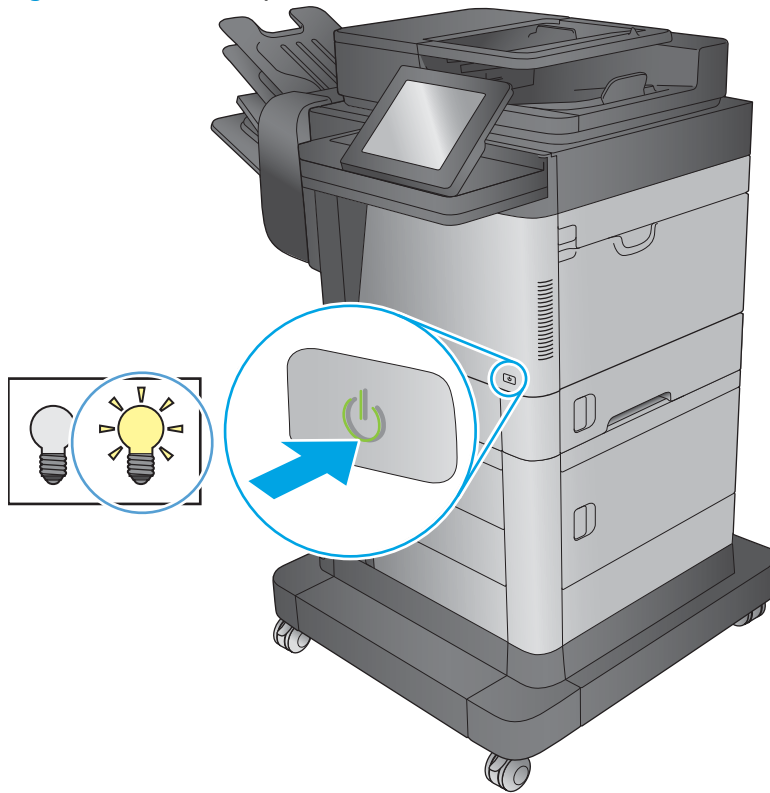
2. Install the toner cartridge.

Figure 1-204 Install the toner cartridge



3. Use the power switch to turn the product power on.

Figure 1-205 Turn the power on



Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Document-feeder maintenance kit

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the document-feeder rollers](#)
- [Step 2: Remove the document-feeder separation pad](#)
- [Step 3: Unpack the replacement rollers and separation pad](#)
- [Step 4: Install the document-feeder separation pad](#)
- [Step 5: Install the document-feeder rollers](#)
- [Step 6: Reset the supplies counter](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the document-feeder roller and separation pad.

Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the kit.

Document-feeder maintenance kit part number	
L2725-60002	Document-feeder maintenance kit with instruction guide

NOTE: The document-feeder maintenance kit includes the pickup and feed rollers assembly and the separation pad assembly.

Required tools

- No special tools are required to install this kit.



IMPORTANT: When a replacement roller is installed, reset the [New Document Feeder Kit](#) supplies counter. See [Step 6: Reset the supplies counter on page 160](#).

Step 1: Remove the document-feeder rollers

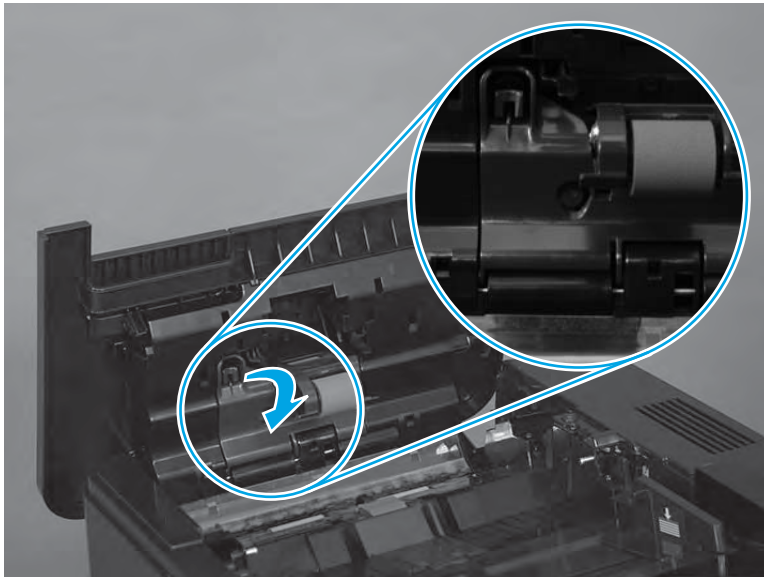
1. Open the document-feeder door.

Figure 1-206 Open the document-feeder door



2. Release one tab, and then open the access door.

Figure 1-207 Open the access door



3. Slide the roller left, and then lift it up and out of the product.


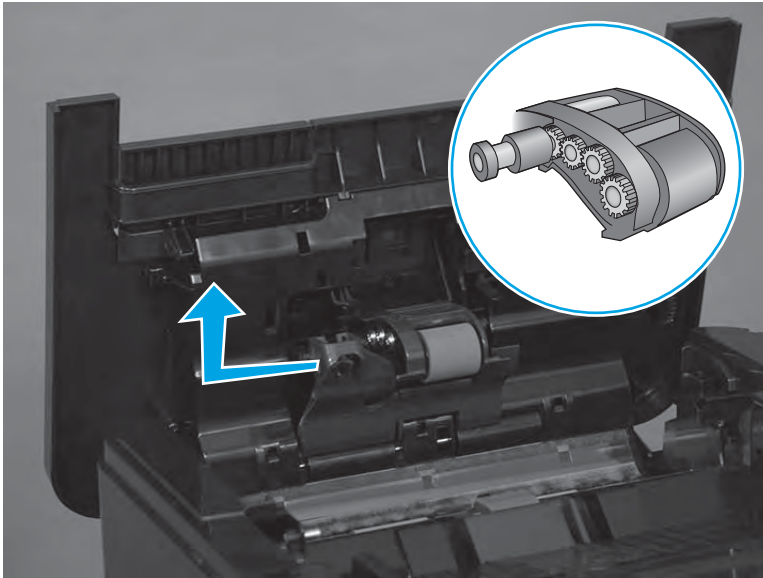
 **NOTE:** If the roller does not drop down when the access door is opened, rotate it down now.

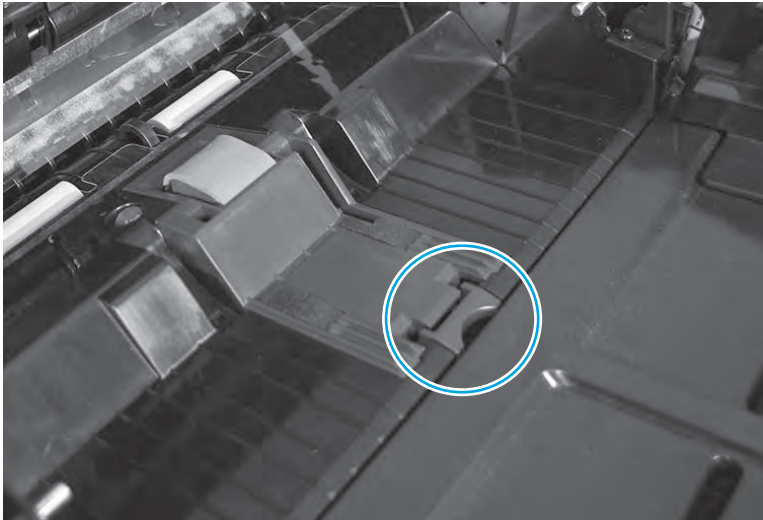
Figure 1-208 Remove the document-feeder roller



Step 2: Remove the document-feeder separation pad

1. Release one tab.

Figure 1-209 Release one tab



2. Rotate the separation pad and holder up (callout 1), and then lift it up (callout 2) to remove it.


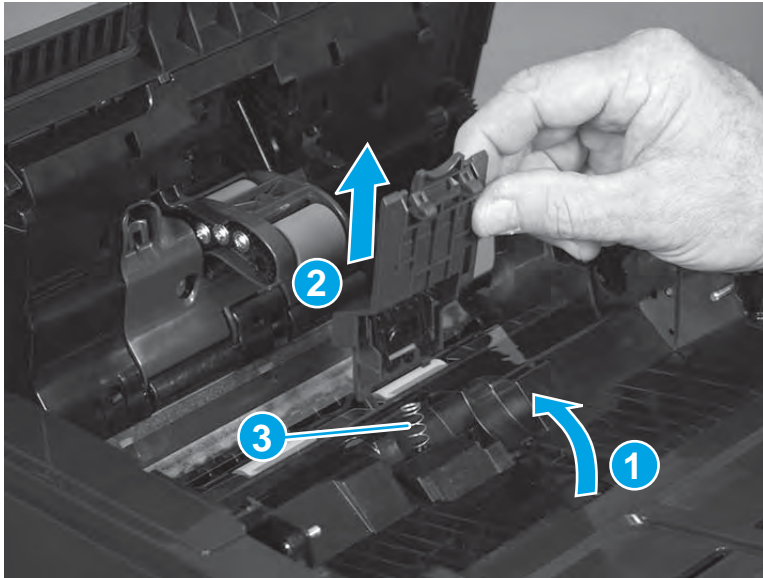
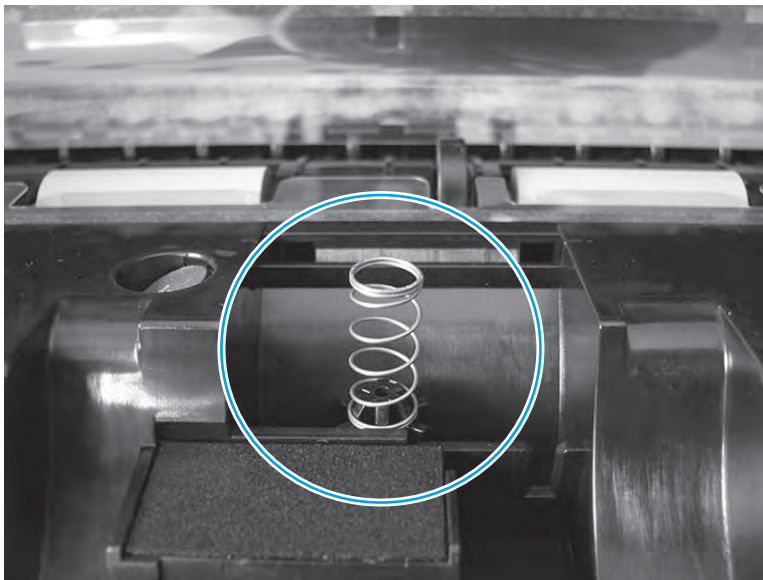
 **IMPORTANT:** The spring (callout 3) under the separation pad and holder can easily be dislodged when the holder is removed.

Figure 1-210 Remove the document-feeder separation pad



3. If the spring becomes dislodged, securely reinstall it as shown.


Figure 1-211 Check the spring

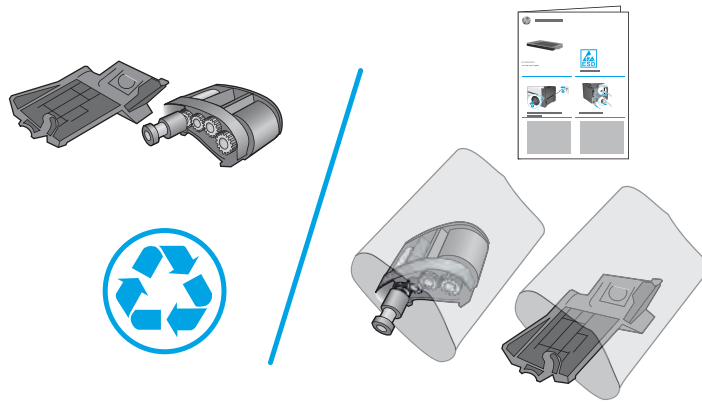


Step 3: Unpack the replacement rollers and separation pad

Unpack the replacement assemblies from the packaging.

www.Product return and recycling

 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assemblies.



Step 4: Install the document-feeder separation pad

1. Position the separation pad on the product.


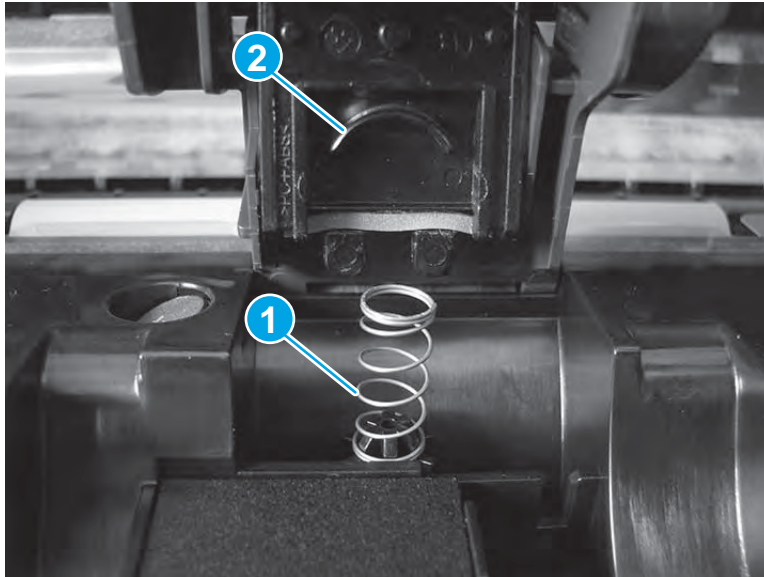
 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure spring does not get bent upon reinstallation of the separation pad.

Figure 1-212 Position the separation pad on the product



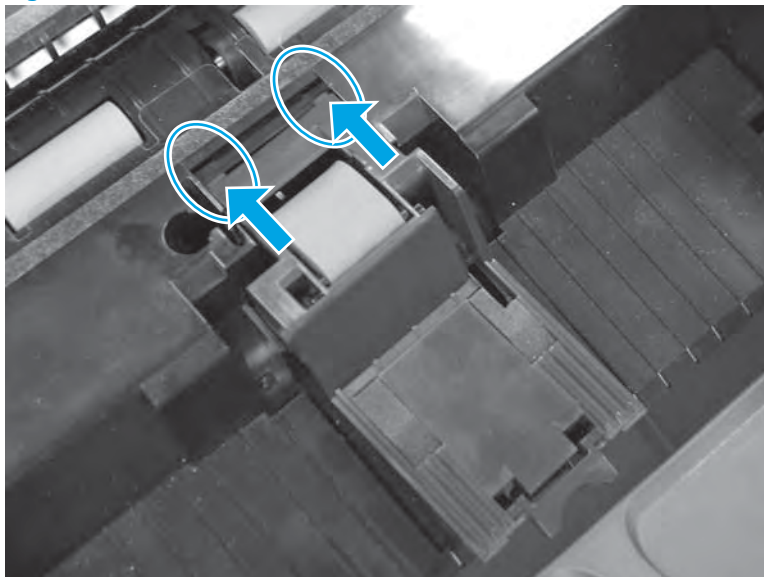
2. When the separation pad and holder is installed, make sure that the separation-pad spring (callout 1) is positioned under and behind the ridge (callout 2) on the bottom of the holder.

Figure 1-213 Check the spring



3. Make sure that the tabs on the separation pad holder are positioned in the provided slots.

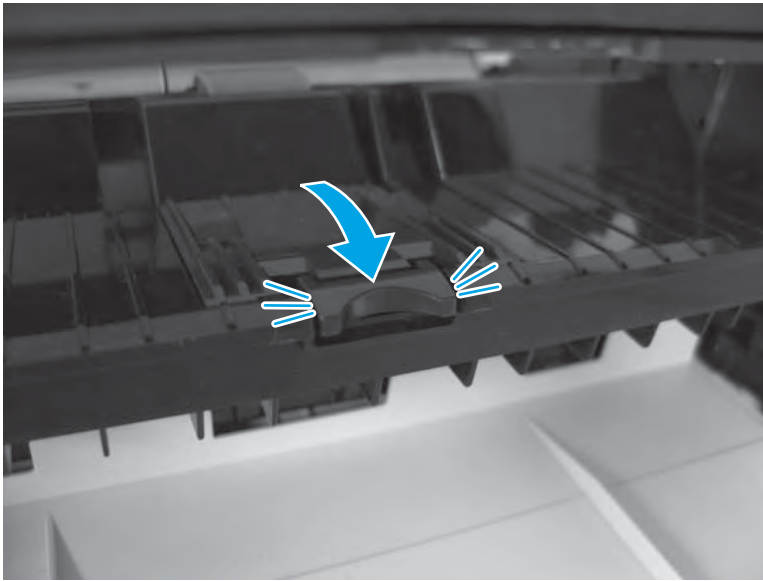
Figure 1-214 Check the tabs



4. Rotate the separation pad down until it snap in place.

 **Reinstallation tip:** When the pad is correctly installed, an audible click should be heard.

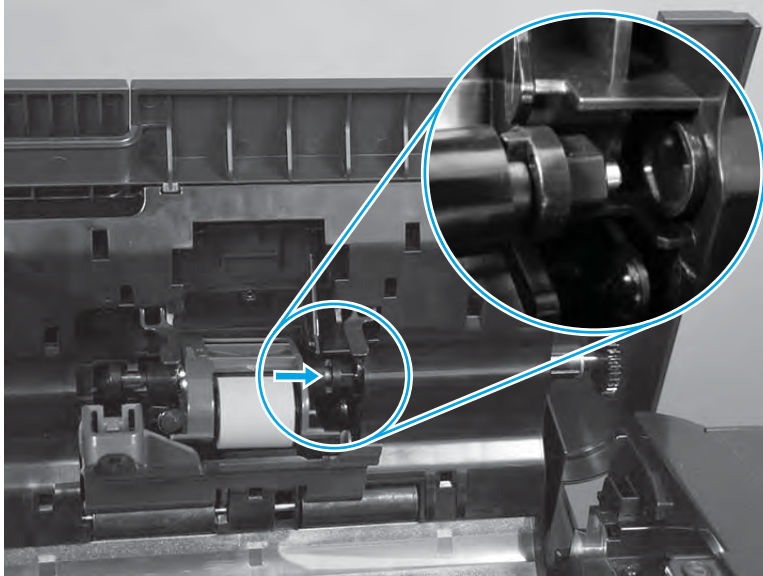
Figure 1-215 Install the separation pad



Step 5: Install the document-feeder rollers

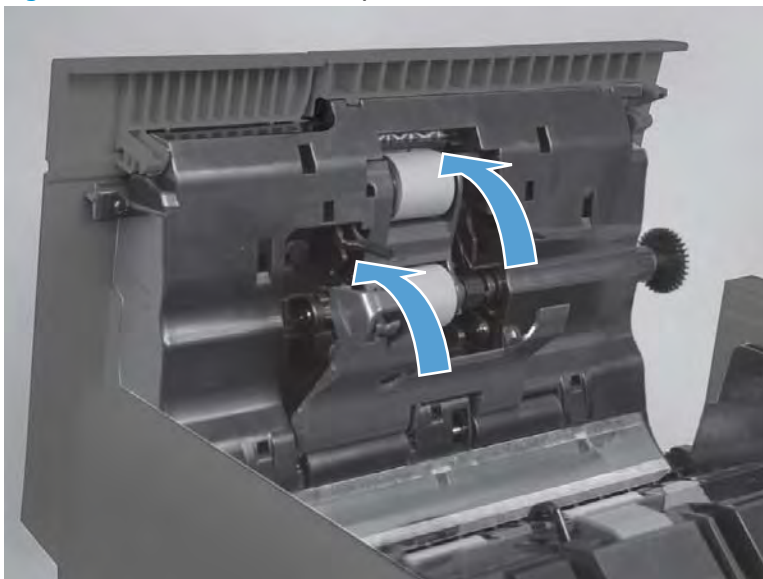
1. The roller assembly is keyed. When reinstalling the roller assembly, position the hex-shaped fitting on the shaft toward the rear of the product.

Figure 1-216 Install the document-feeder roller



2. Rotate the roller up into the document feeder.

Figure 1-217 Rotate the roller up



3. Close the access door.


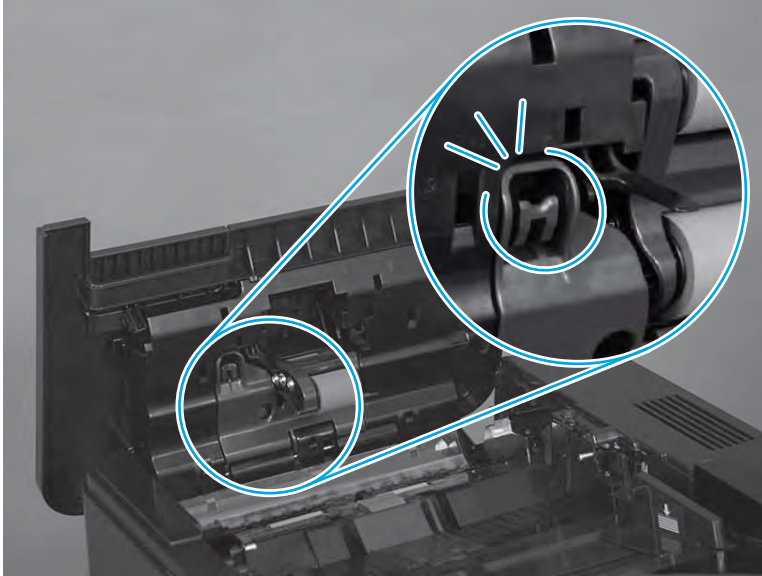
 **Reinstallation tip:** The access door must be fully closed. When closing the door, two audible clicks should be heard. If, after replacing the roller document feeder, a document feeder jam message appears on the control panel display, make sure that the access door is fully closed.

Figure 1-218 Close the access door



Step 6: Reset the supplies counter

1. From the Home screen on the control panel, scroll to and touch the **Administration** button.
2. Open the following menus:
 - **Manage Supplies**
 - **Reset Supplies**
 - **New Document Feeder Kit**
3. Select the **Reset** item to reset the supplies counter.

Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Document feeder white backing

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the document feeder white backing](#)
- [Step 2: Unpack the replacement document feeder white backing](#)
- [Step 3: Install the document feeder white backing](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the document feeder white backing.

Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the kit.

Document feeder white backing kit part number	
---	--

5851-6084	Document feeder white backing kit with instruction guide
------------------	--

Required tools

- No special tools are required to install this kit.

Step 1: Remove the document feeder white backing

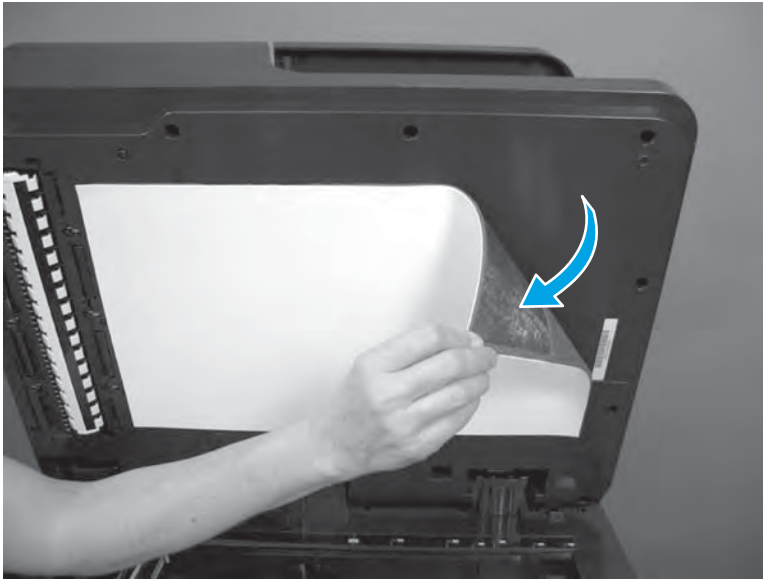
1. Open the document feeder.

Figure 1-219 Open the document feeder



2. Carefully remove the white backing.

Figure 1-220 Remove the white backing



3. Remove any remaining adhesive.

Figure 1-221 Remove remaining adhesive



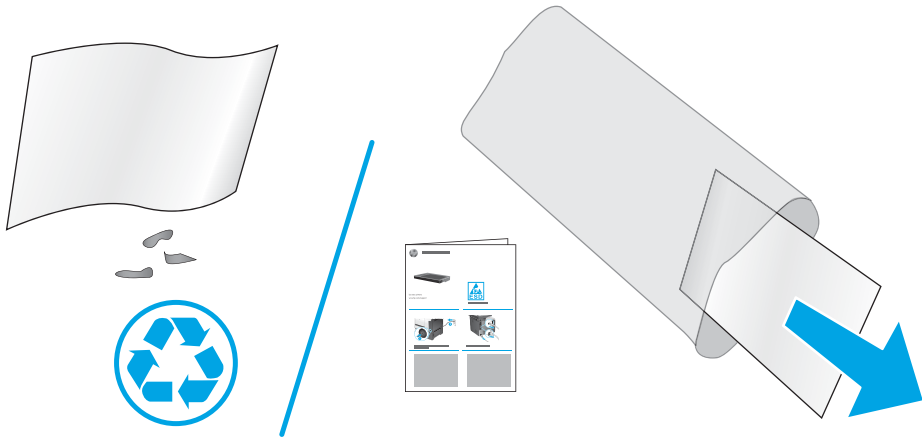
Step 2: Unpack the replacement document feeder white backing

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

www.Product return and recycling



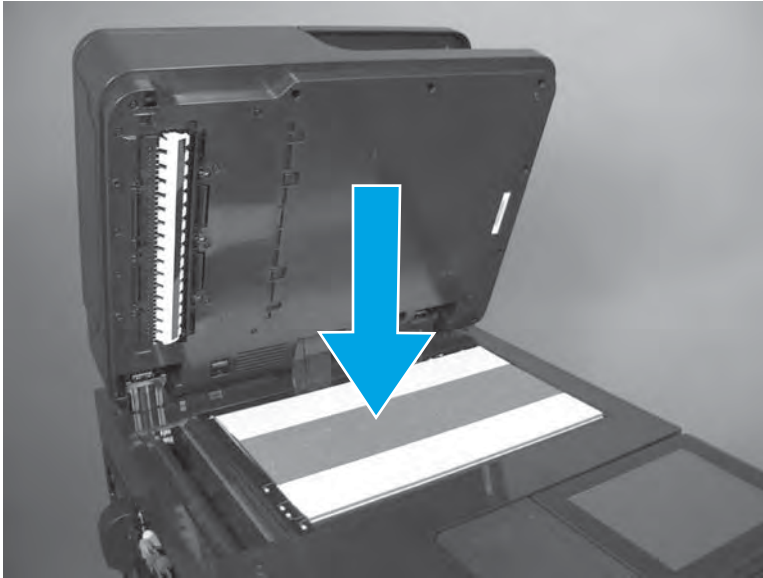
NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.



Step 3: Install the document feeder white backing

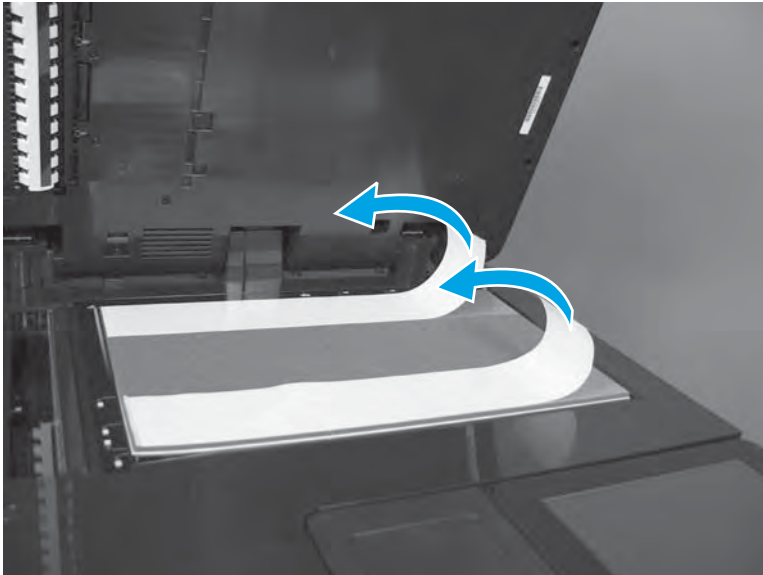
1. Place the white backing on the scanner glass.

Figure 1-222 Place the white backing on the scanner



2. Peel off the two strips of adhesive backing.

Figure 1-223 Peel off the adhesive backing



3. Place the two mylar-spacer strips (included with the kit) onto the adhesive, as shown.


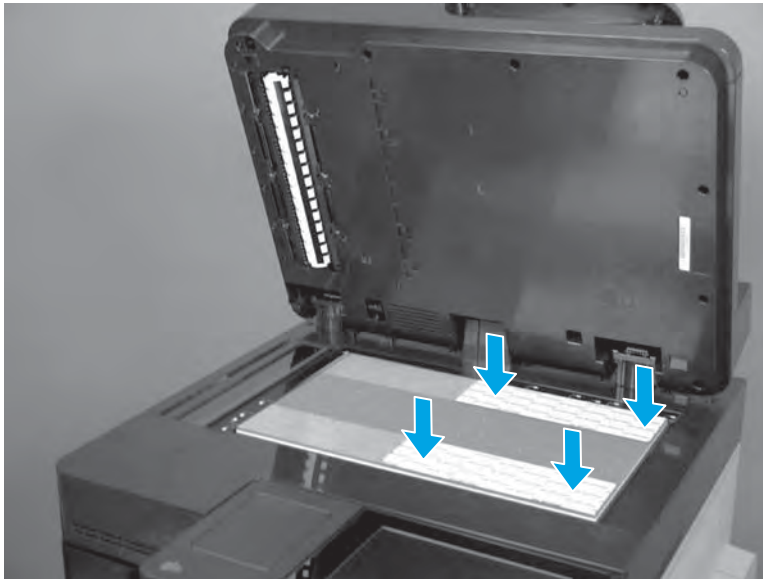
 **IMPORTANT:** Align the mylar with the edges of the adhesive on the white backing.

Figure 1-224 Place the two mylar-spacer strips onto the adhesive



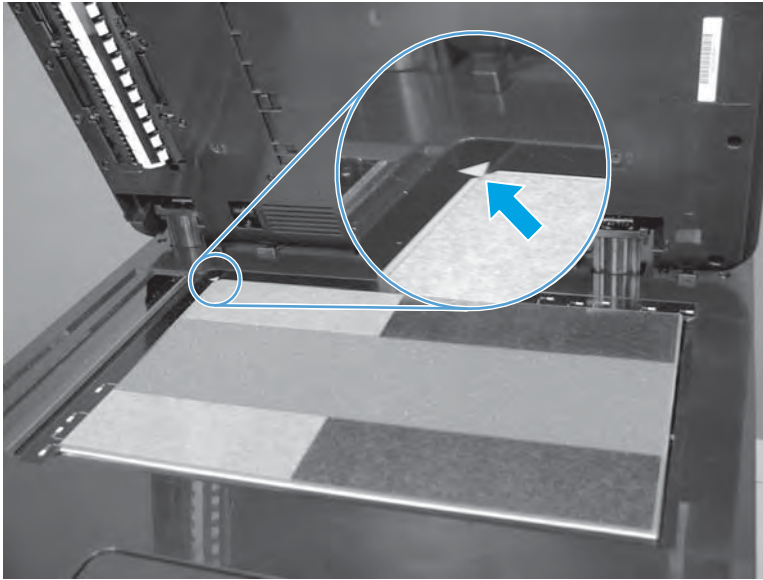
4. Peel off the two strips of adhesive backing.

Figure 1-225 Peel off the adhesive backing



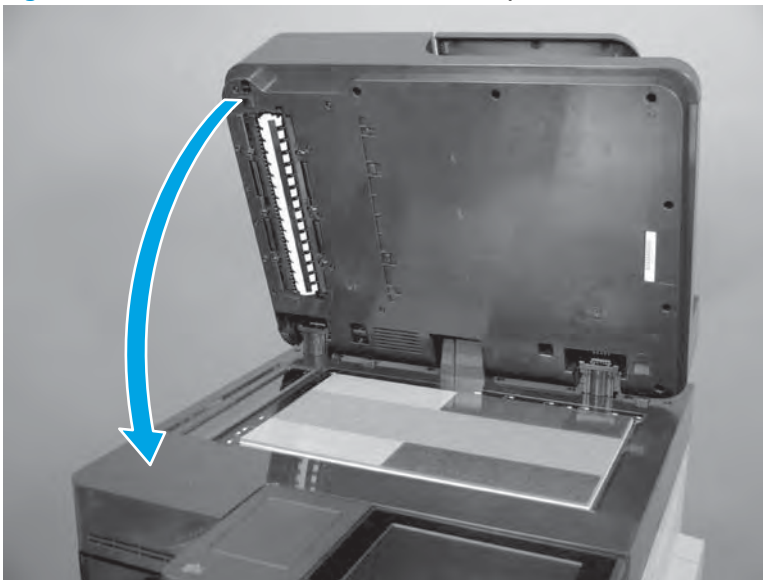
5. Verify that the white backing is aligned with the left rear corner of the scanner glass.

Figure 1-226 Verify that the white backing is correctly aligned



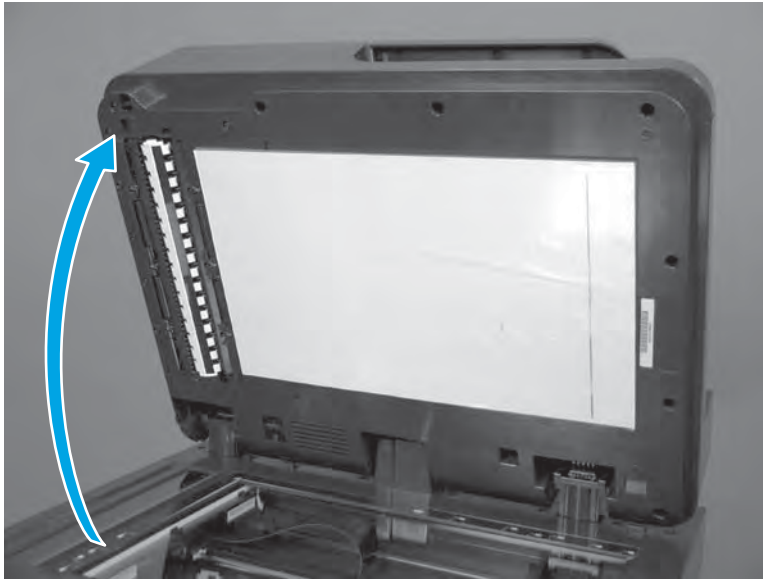
6. Close the document feeder. Press down firmly to adhere the white backing.

Figure 1-227 Close the document feeder and press down



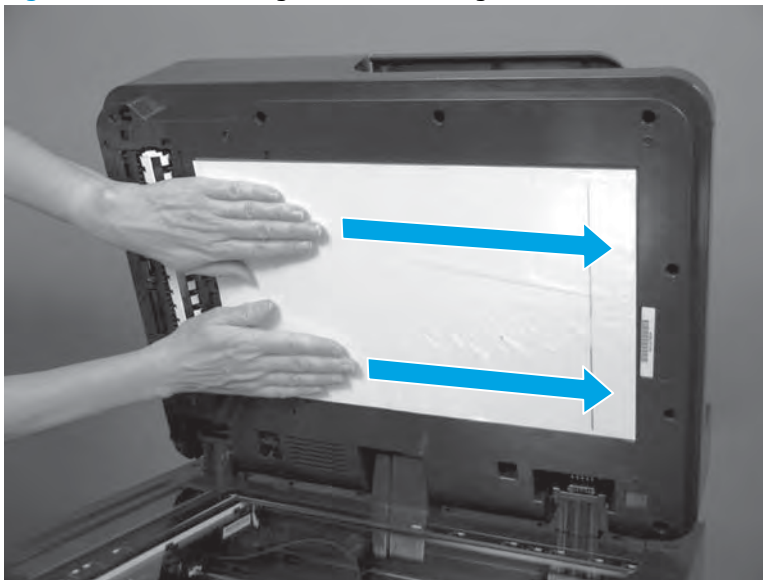
7. Open the document feeder.

Figure 1-228 Open the document feeder



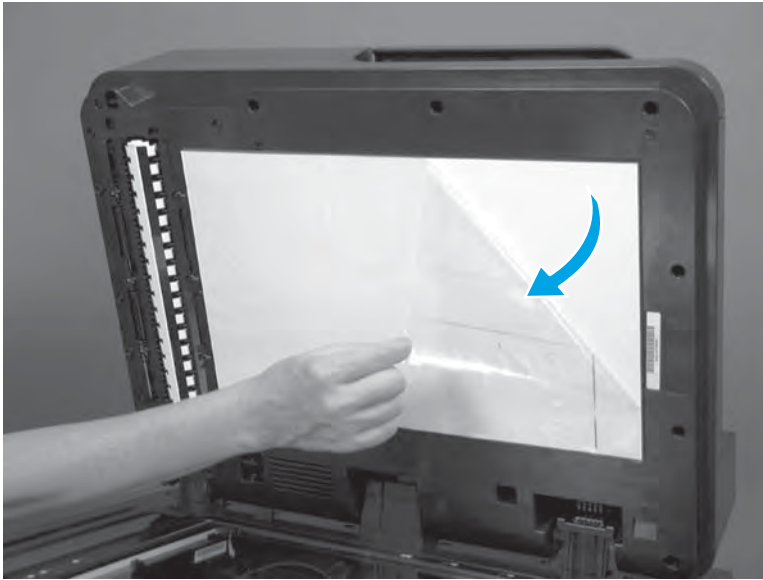
8. Press along the top and bottom of the white backing, over the areas with adhesive.

Figure 1-229 Press along the white backing



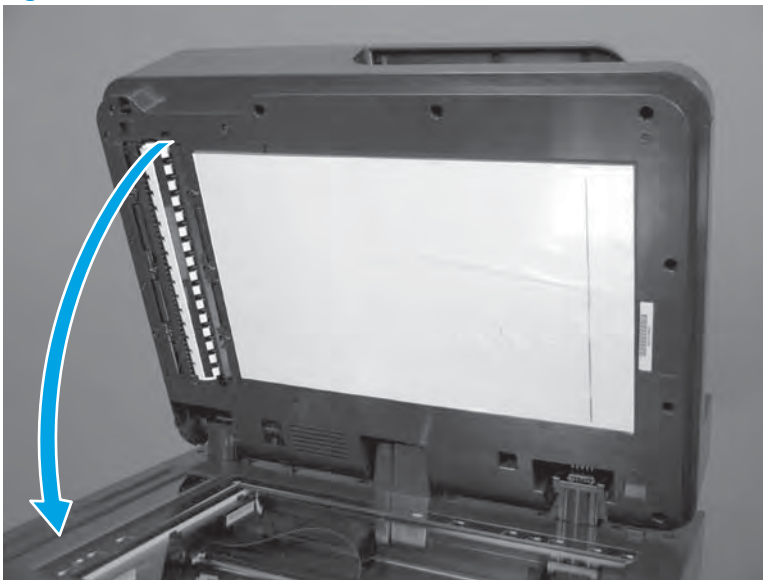
9. Peel off the protective plastic sheet.

Figure 1-230 Peel off the protective sheet



10. Close the document feeder.

Figure 1-231 Close the document feeder



Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Document feeder and image scanner assemblies

- [Document-feeder mylar strip](#)
- [Document-feeder roller cover](#)
- [Scanner rear cover](#)
- [Scanner control board \(SCB\)](#)
- [Document feeder](#)
- [Document-feeder hinge assembly](#)
- [Image scanner assembly](#)

Document-feeder mylar strip

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the document-feeder mylar strip](#)
- [Step 2: Unpack the replacement mylar strip](#)
- [Step 3: Install the document-feeder mylar strip](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the document-feeder mylar strip.

Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the kit.

Document-feeder mylar strip kit part number	
B3G86-67903	Document-feeder mylar strip kit with instruction guide

NOTE: The document-feeder mylar kit contains two mylar guides. Only one guide is required for the product. The second guide is used if the adhesive on the first guide is contaminated during installation.

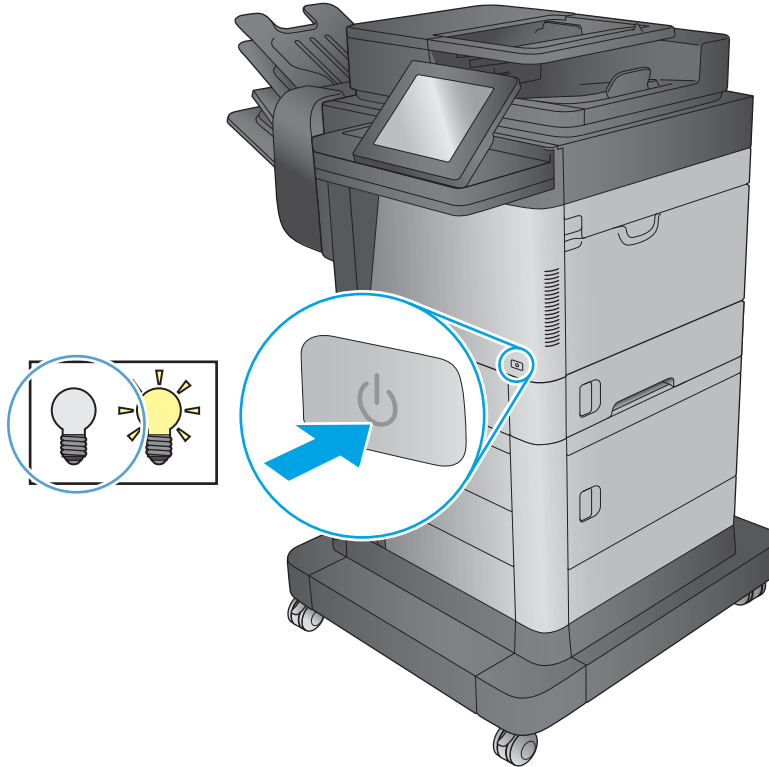
Required tools

- No special tools are required to install this kit.

Step 1: Remove the document-feeder mylar strip

1. Use the power switch to turn the product power off.

Figure 1-232 Turn the power off



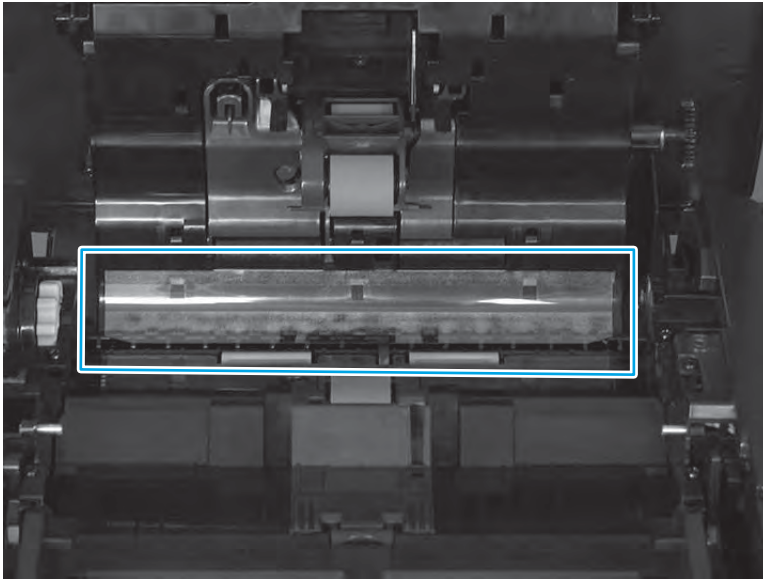
2. Open the document feeder cover.

Figure 1-233 Open the document feeder cover



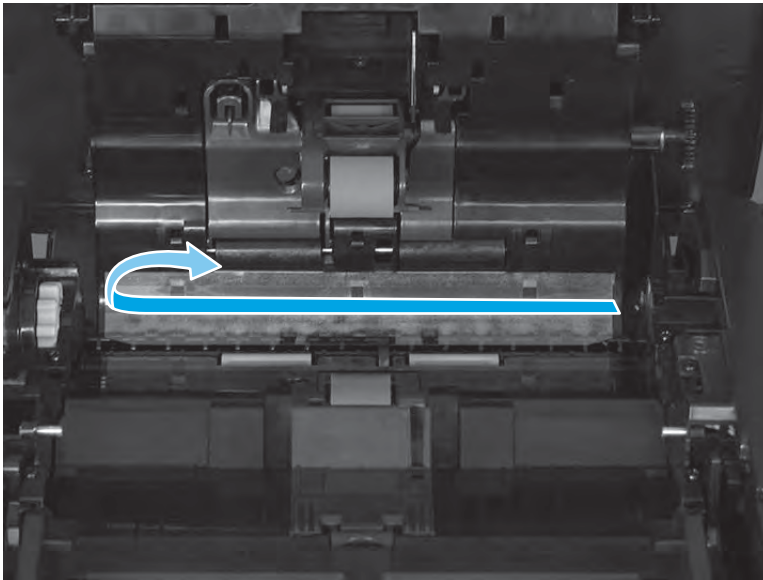
3. Locate the mylar strip inside the document feeder.

Figure 1-234 Locate the mylar strip



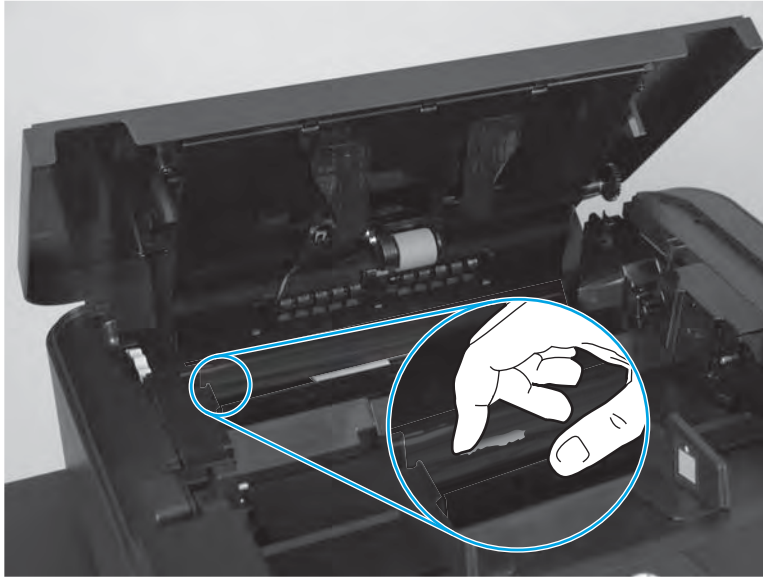
4. Carefully remove the mylar strip.

Figure 1-235 Remove the mylar strip



5. Use a finger to remove any remaining adhesive.

Figure 1-236 Remove any remaining adhesive



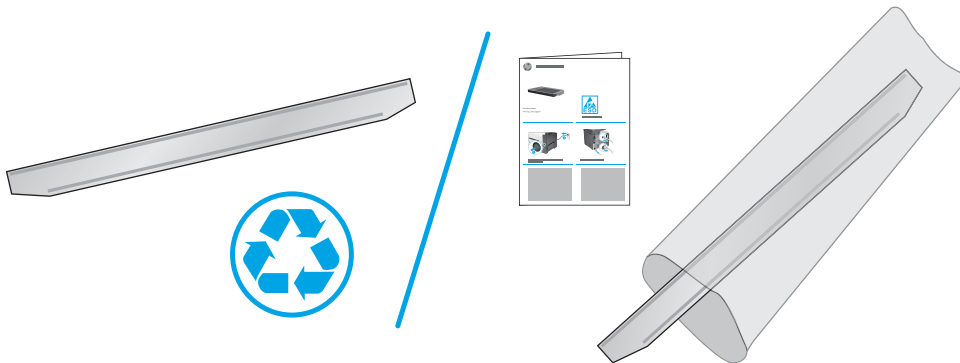
Step 2: Unpack the replacement mylar strip

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

CAUTION: Avoid touching the surface of the replacement mylar strip. Skin oils on the mylar strip can cause print-quality problems. Thoroughly wash your hands with soap and water to remove skin oils, and then completely dry them.

www.Product return and recycling

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.



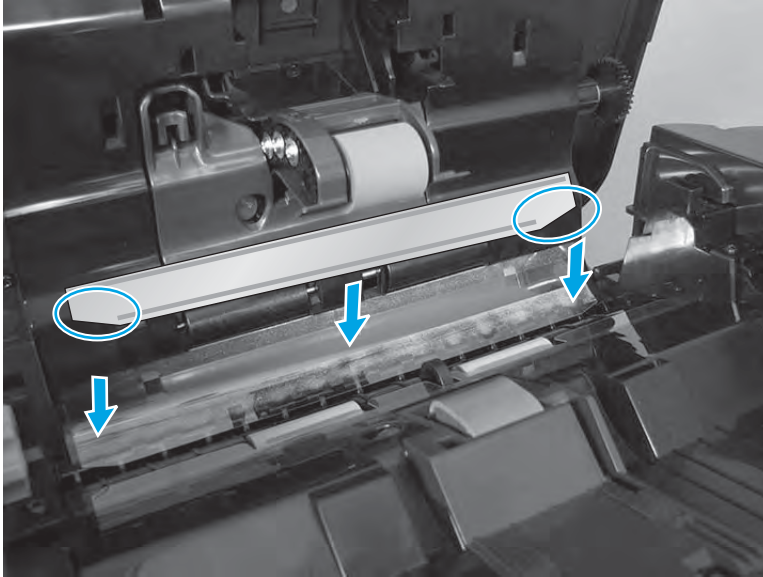
Step 3: Install the document-feeder mylar strip

1. Remove the protective backing from the adhesive portion of the replacement mylar strip, and then position the strip as shown, with the beveled corners on the strip facing the document tray.

IMPORTANT: When handling the replacement mylar strip, do not touch the adhesive portion of the strip.

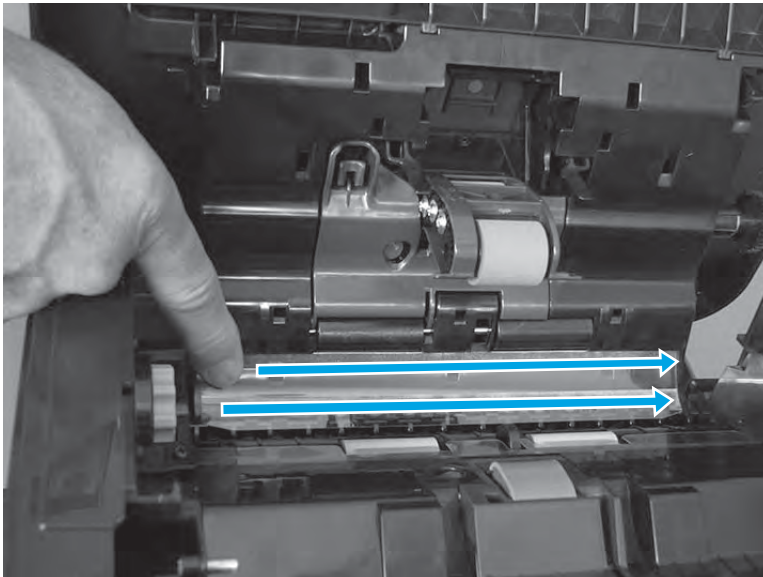
NOTE: Make sure that the adhesive side of the guide is face down.

Figure 1-237 Install the document-feeder mylar strip



2. Press down firmly on the strip to adhere it to the product.

Figure 1-238 Press down firmly on the strip



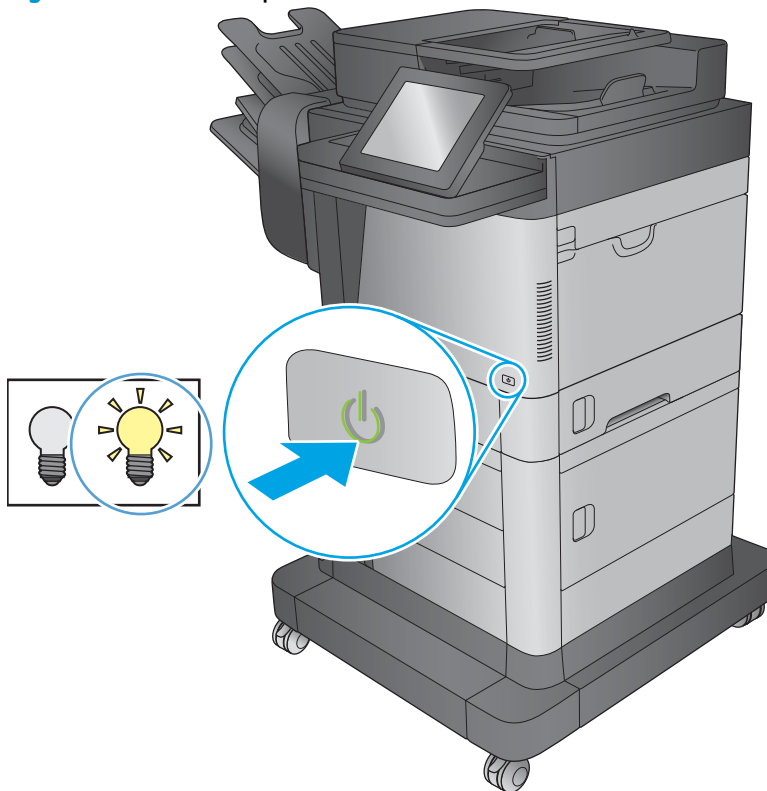
3. Close the document feeder cover.

Figure 1-239 Close the document feeder cover



4. Use the power switch to turn the product power on.

Figure 1-240 Turn the power on



Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Document-feeder roller cover

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

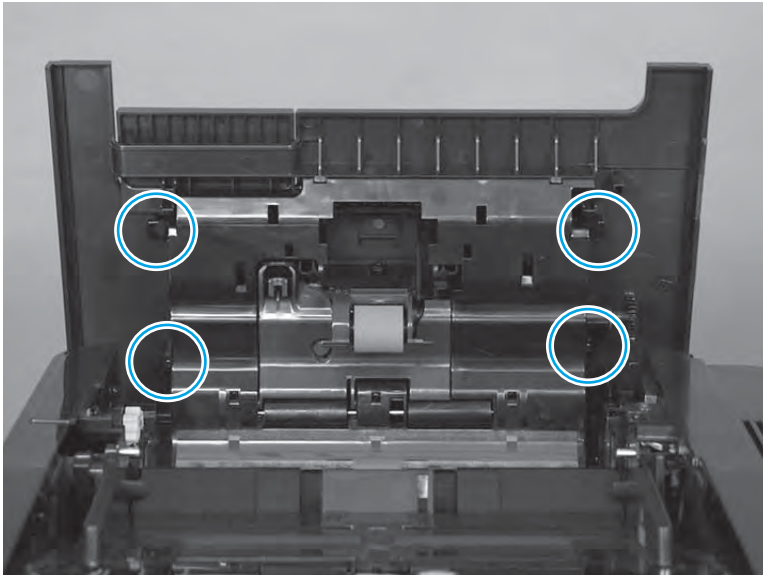
1. Open the document-feeder cover.

Figure 1-241 Open the document-feeder cover



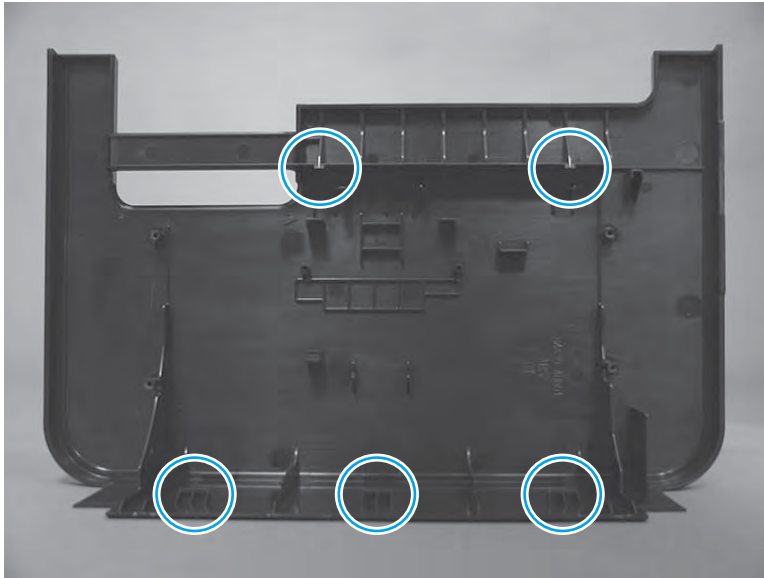
2. Remove four screws.

Figure 1-242 Remove four screws



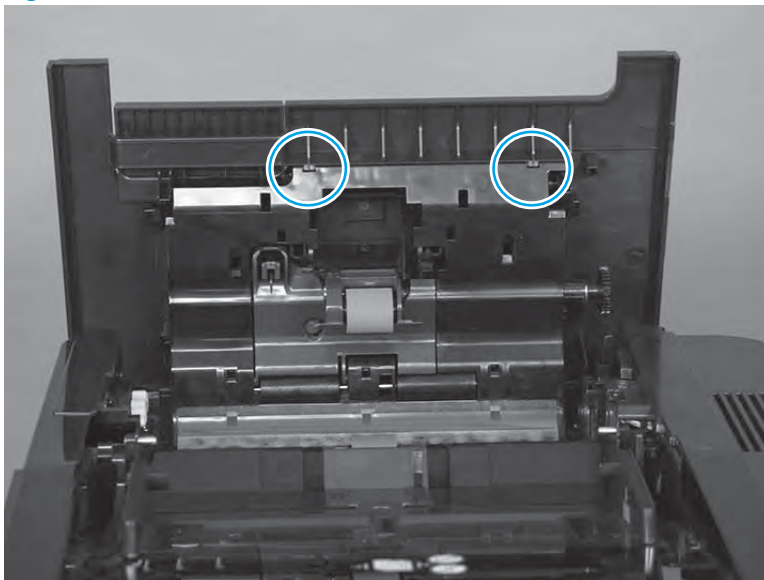
3. Before removing the cover, note the location of the tabs.

Figure 1-243 Note the location of the tabs



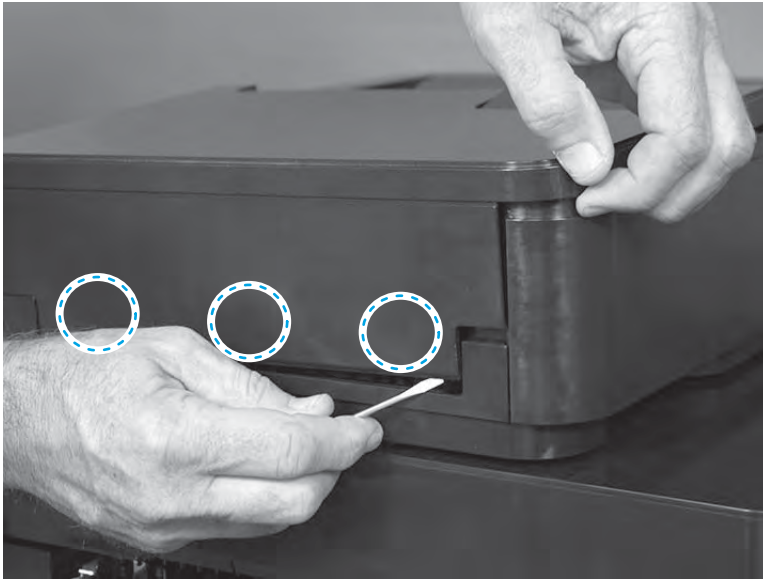
4. Release two tabs.

Figure 1-244 Release two tabs



5. Close the document-feeder cover, and then release the remaining three tabs and remove the cover.

Figure 1-245 Remove the cover



6. Remove three springs.


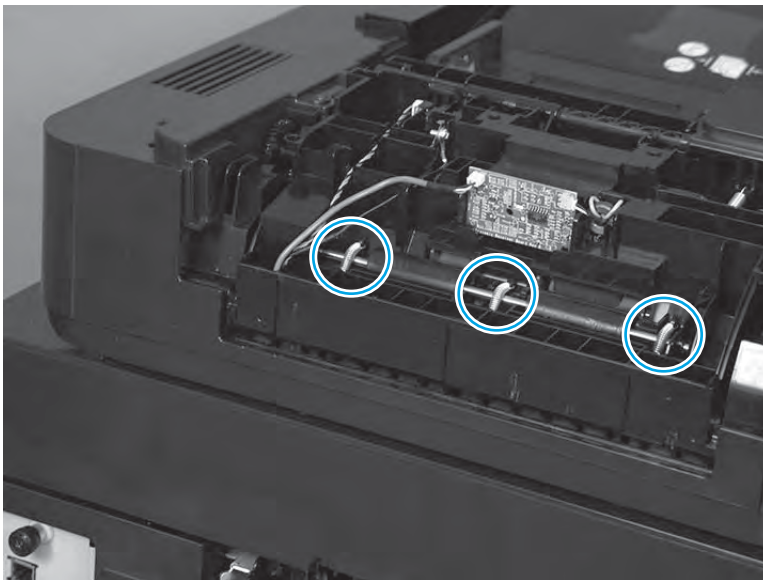
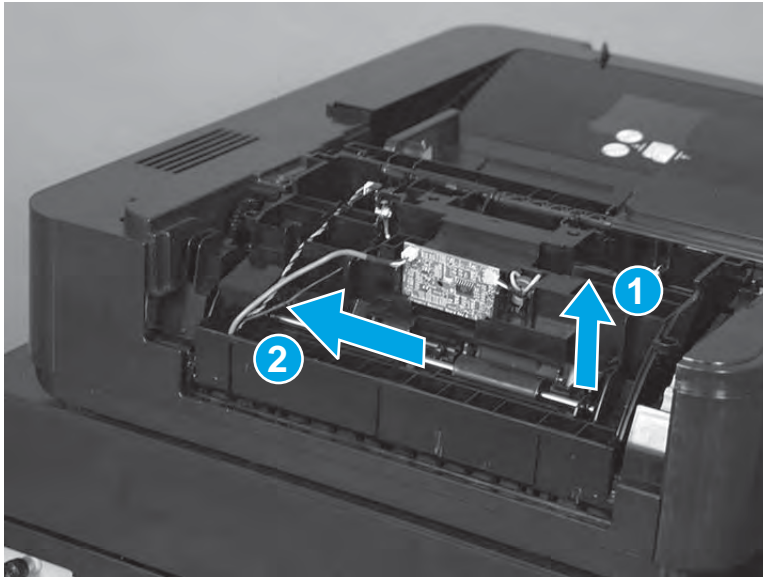
 **Reinstallation tip:** Use needle nose pliers to reattach the spring. Attach the spring to the bottom hook first.

Figure 1-246 Remove three springs



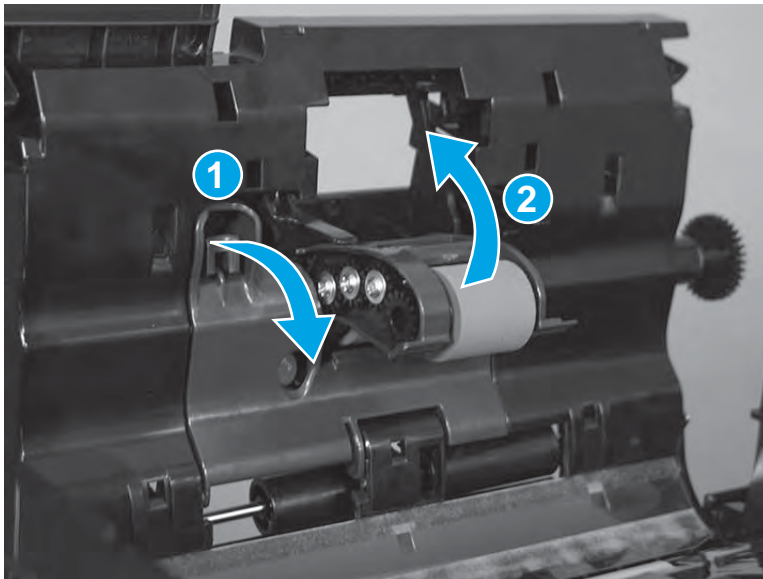
7. Lift the right end of the roller shaft up (callout 1), and then slide the shaft and rollers to the left (callout 2).

Figure 1-247 Slide the shaft and rollers to the left



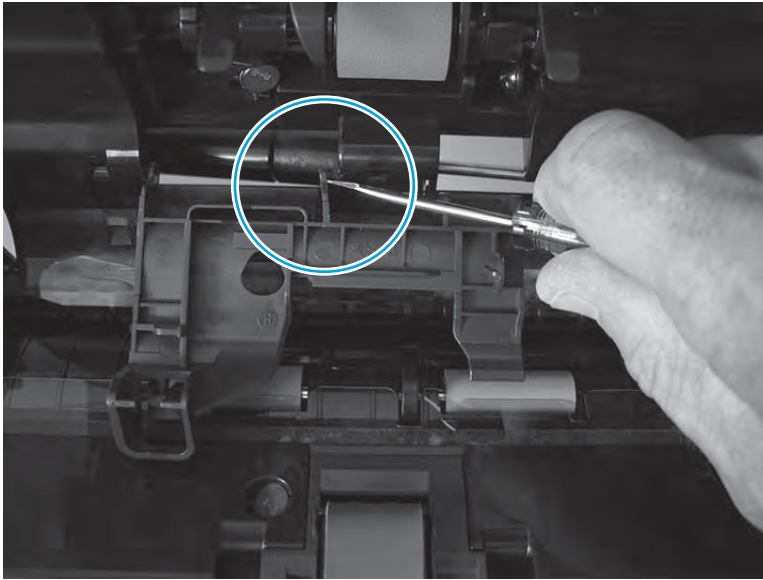
8. Open the document-feeder cover, open the document-feeder roller cover (callout 1), and move the document-feeder roller assembly out of the way (callout 2).

Figure 1-248 Move the document-feeder roller assembly out of the way



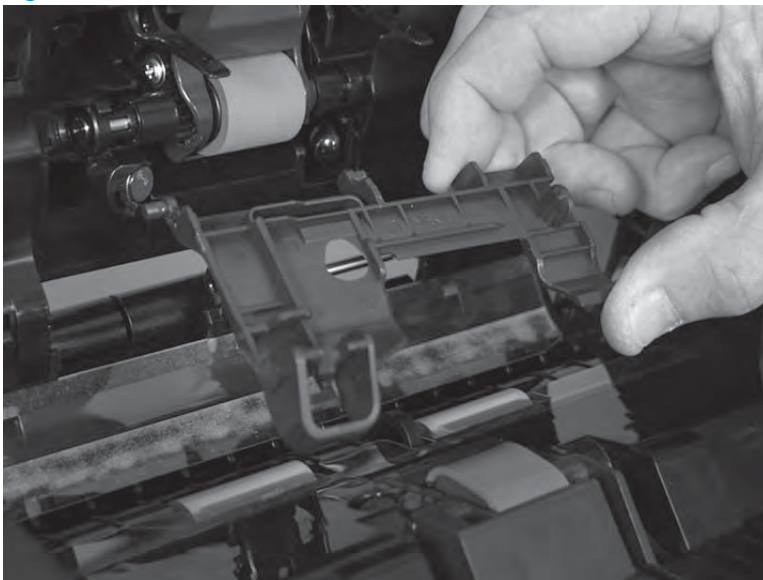
9. Release one hinge pin on the document-feeder roller cover.

Figure 1-249 Release one hinge pin



10. Remove the document-feeder roller cover.

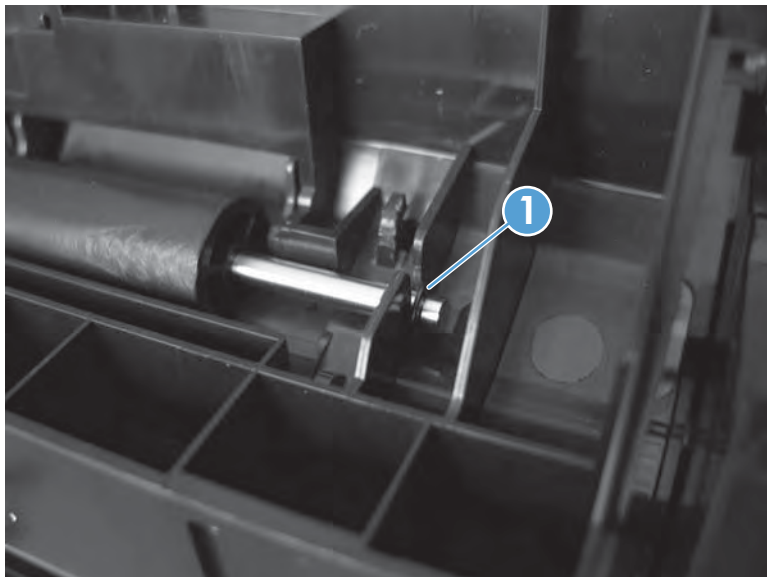
Figure 1-250 Remove the document-feeder roller cover



Reinstall the document-feeder roller cover

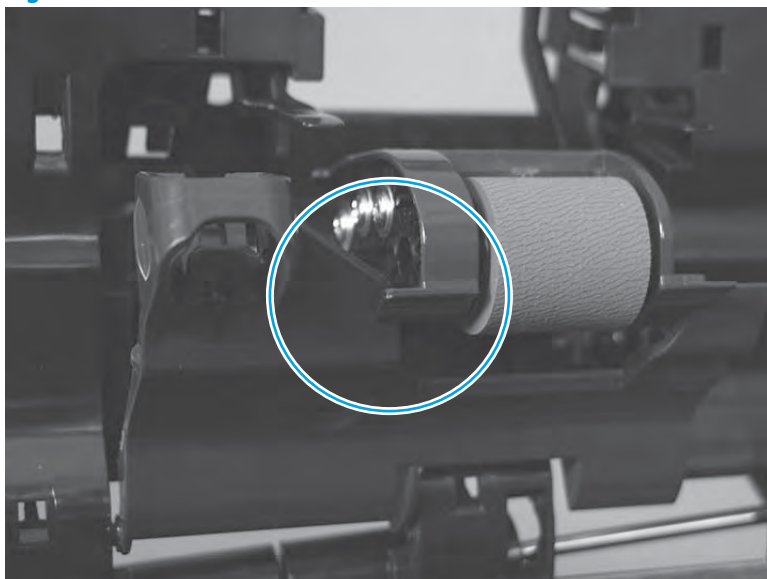
1. Make sure that the end of the roller shaft (callout 1) is correctly installed.

Figure 1-251 Check the roller shaft



2. Make sure the document-feeder roller cover and document-feeder roller assembly are correctly positioned before trying to close the cover.

Figure 1-252 Check the document-feeder roller cover and document-feeder roller assembly



Scanner rear cover

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the scanner rear cover](#)
- [Step 2: Install the scanner rear cover](#)
- [Step 3: Turn the product power on](#)

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the scanner rear cover.

Before servicing

Do the following steps:

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

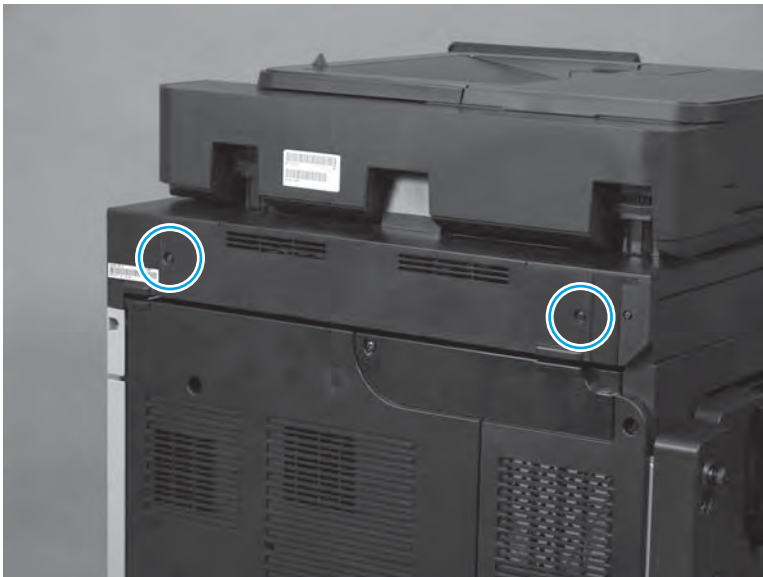
Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

Step 1: Remove the scanner rear cover

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 1-253 Remove two screws



2. Remove the cover.

Figure 1-254 Remove the cover



Step 2: Install the scanner rear cover

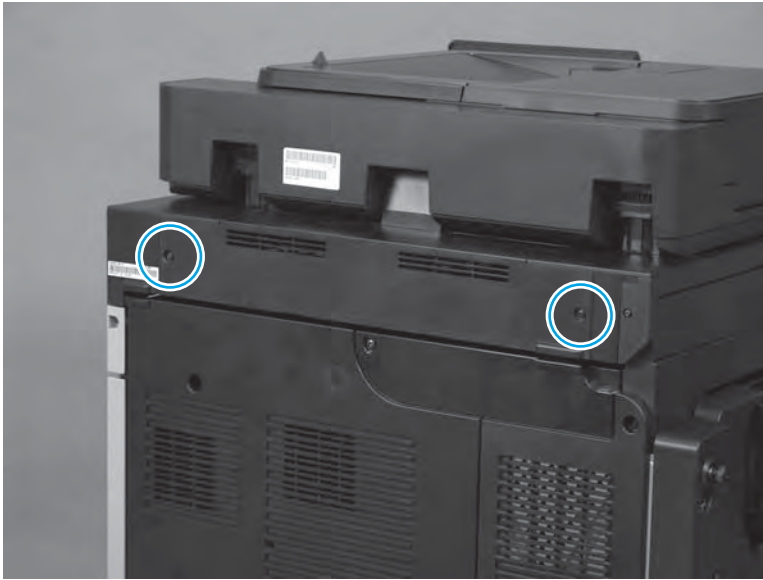
1. Install the cover.

Figure 1-255 Install the cover



2. Install two screws.

Figure 1-256 Install two screws



Step 3: Turn the product power on

After servicing

Do the following steps:

- Connect the power cable.

- Turn on the product.

Scanner control board (SCB)

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the scanner rear cover](#)
- [Step 2: Remove the SCB](#)
- [Step 4: Unpack the replacement SCB](#)
- [Step 4: Install the SCB](#)
- [Step 5: Install the scanner rear cover](#)
- [Step 6: Turn the product power on](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the scanner control board (SCB).

Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the kit.

SCB kit part number	
B3G86-67904	SCB kit with instruction guide

Do the following steps:

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

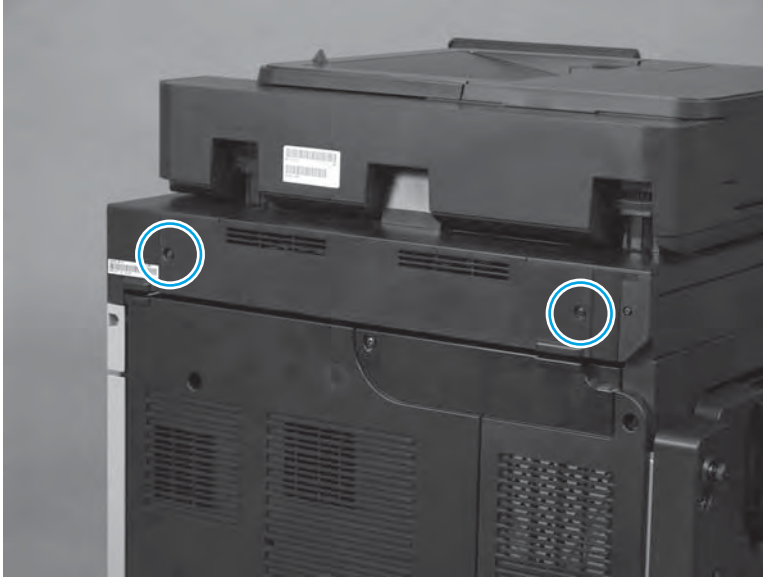
Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

Step 1: Remove the scanner rear cover

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 1-257 Remove two screws



2. Remove the cover.

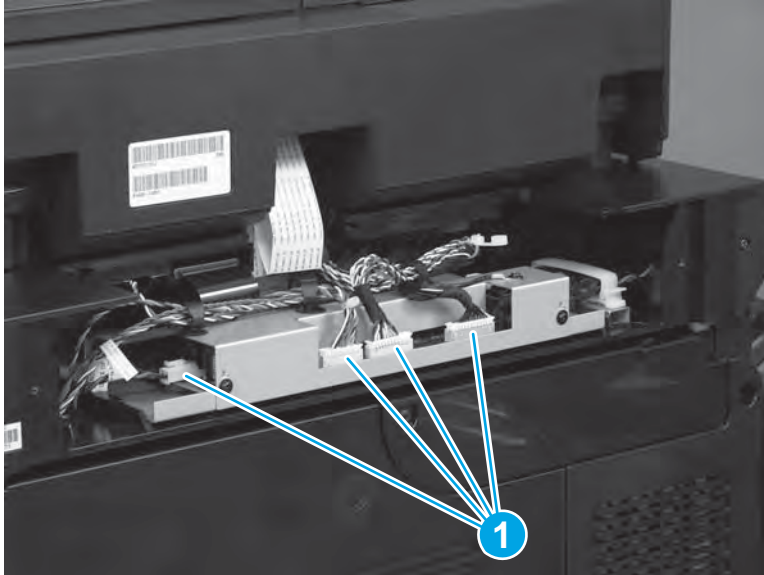
Figure 1-258 Remove the cover



Step 2: Remove the SCB

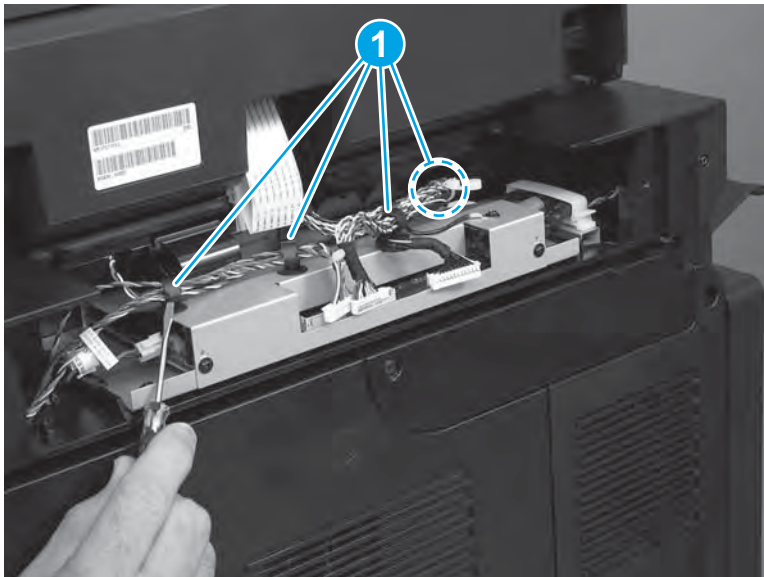
1. Disconnect four connectors (callout 1).

Figure 1-259 Disconnect four connectors



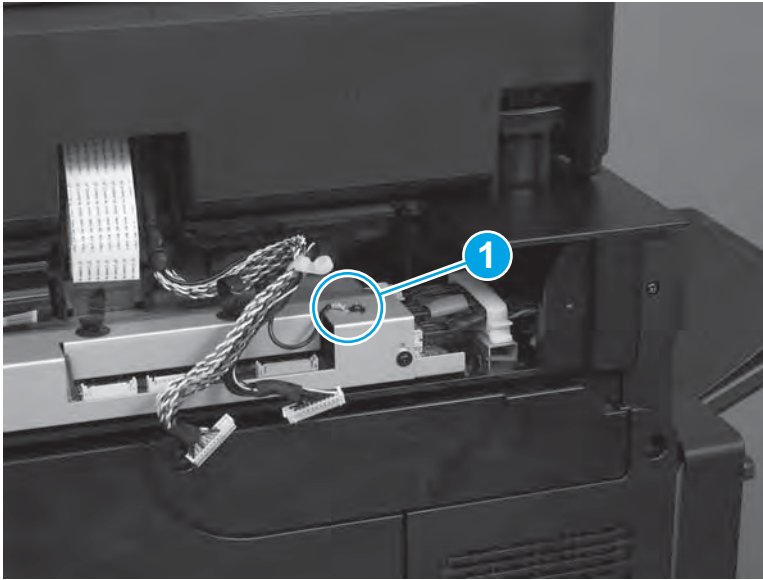
2. Use a small flat-blade screwdriver to release four retainers (callout 1), and then remove the wire harnesses from the retainers.

Figure 1-260 Release four retainers



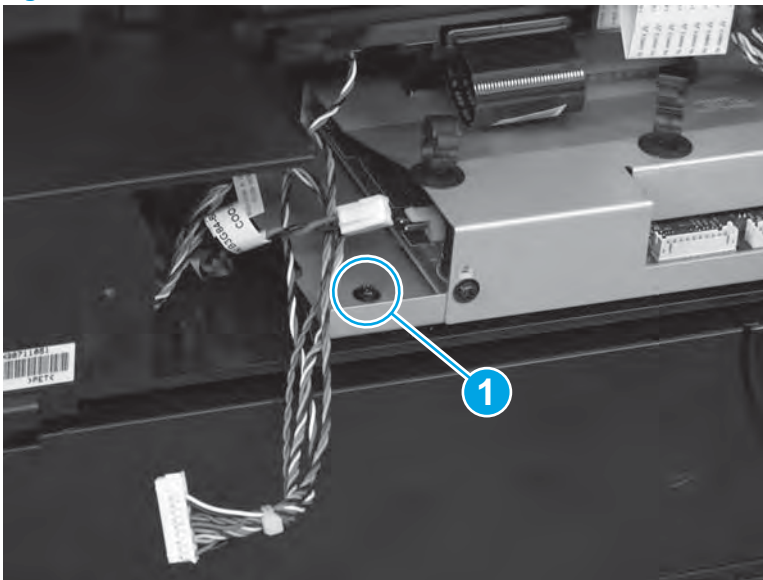
3. On the right side of the SCB, remove one ground screw (callout 1) to release the ground wire.

Figure 1-261 Remove one screw and the ground wire



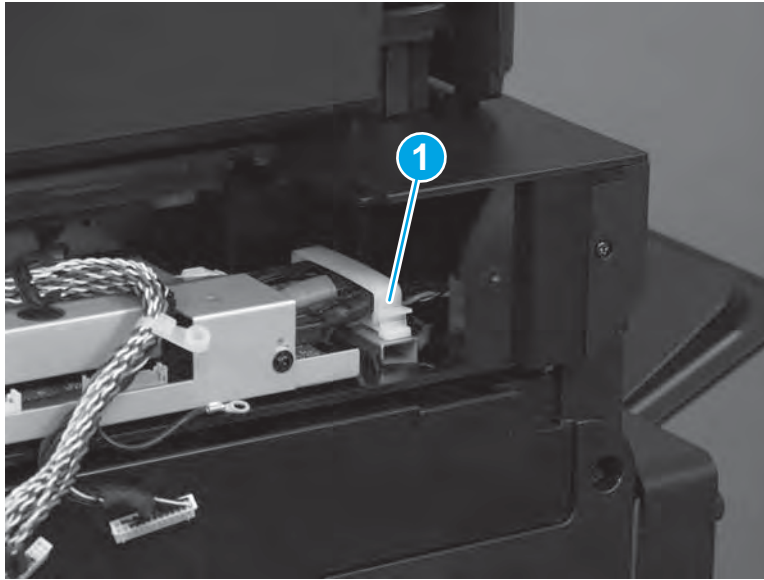
4. On the left side of the SCB, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-262 Remove one screw



5. At the right side of the SCB, press down on the retainer (callout 1) to release it.

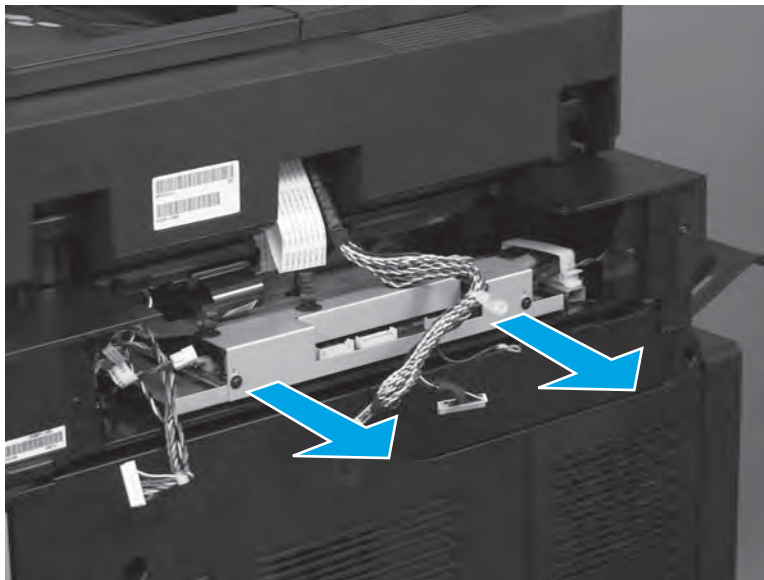
Figure 1-263 Release one retainer



6. Partially slide the SCB out of the product.

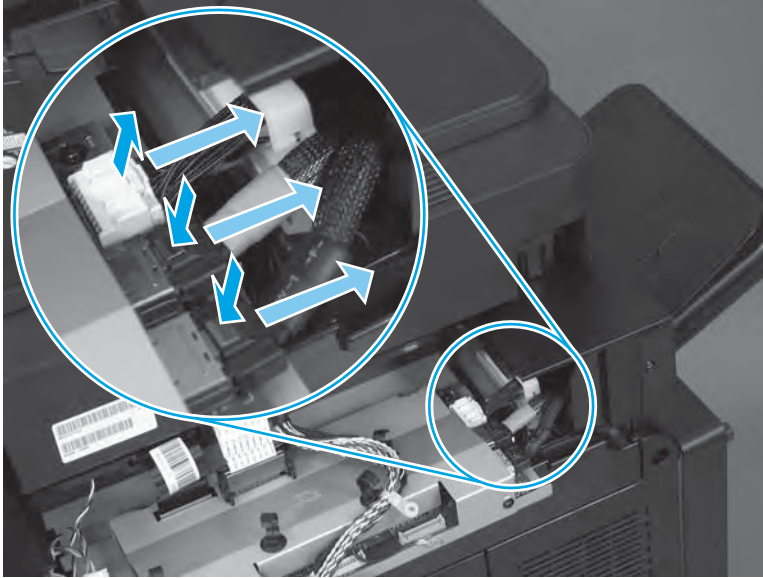
⚠ CAUTION: The SCB is still attached to the product by two FFCs. Do not attempt to completely remove the SCB.

Figure 1-264 Partially slide the SCB out



7. Use a small flat-blade screw driver to release three connectors (callout 1).

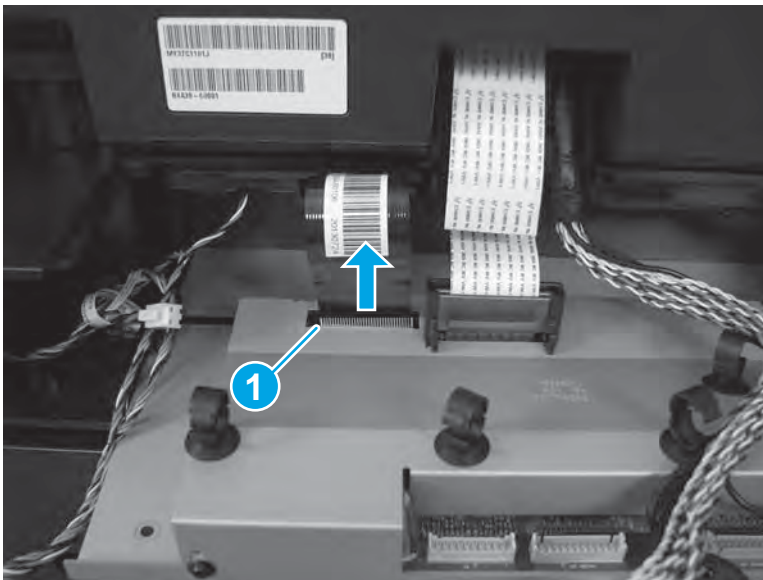
Figure 1-265 Release three connectors



8. Pull straight up on the black scanner FFC (callout 1) to disconnect it.

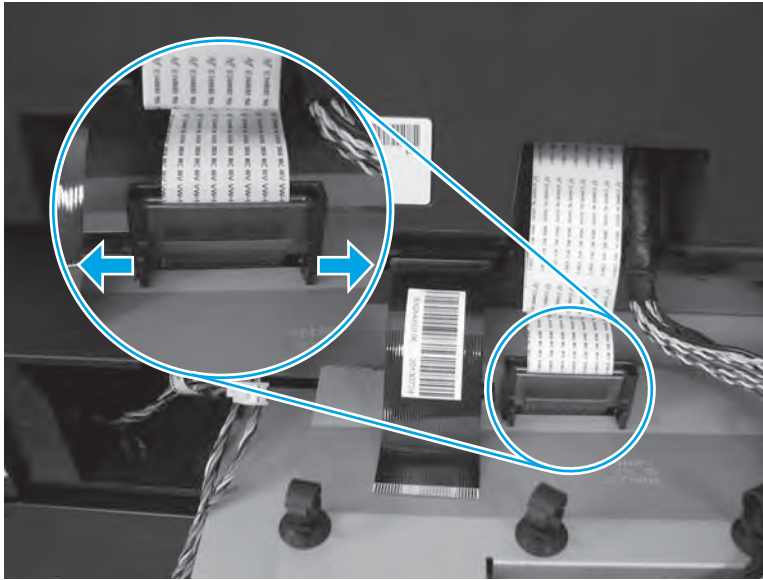
CAUTION: Be careful. The FFC must be pulled straight up and out of the connector to prevent damaging it.

Figure 1-266 Remove the FFC



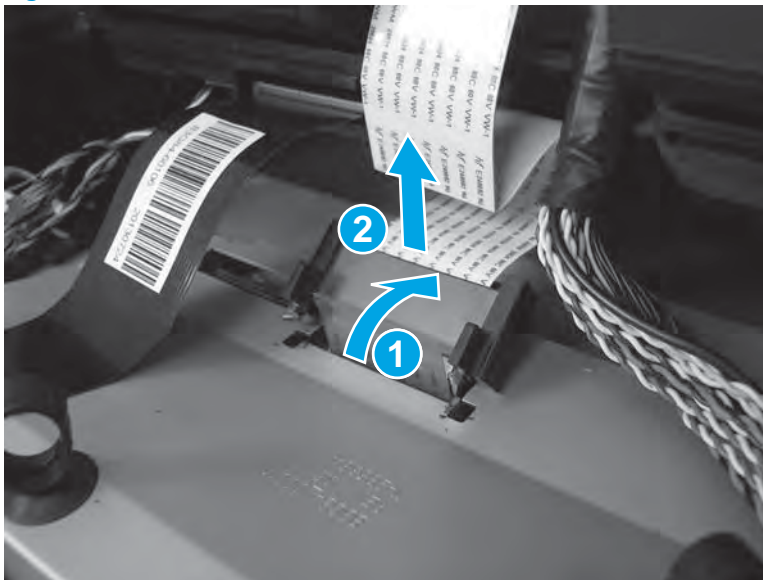
- Carefully push the tabs on the ferrite holder outward to release them.

Figure 1-267 Release two tabs



- Rotate the holder backward (callout 1), and then remove it (callout 2). Slide the holder up the FFC.

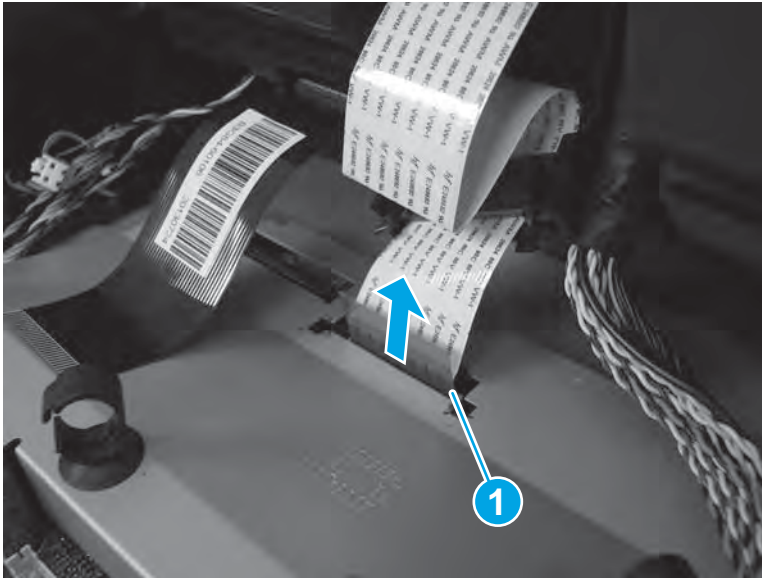
Figure 1-268 Remove the ferrite and holder



11. Pull straight up on the white document-feeder FFC (callout 1) to disconnect it.

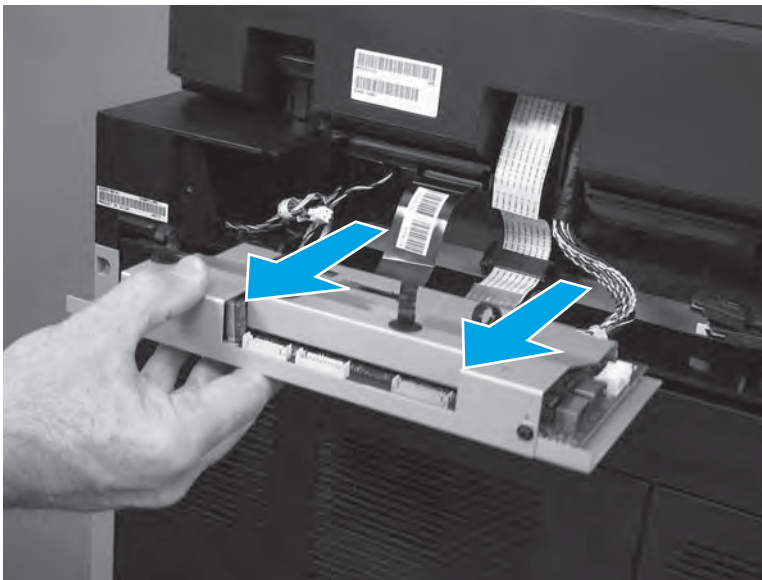
CAUTION: Be careful. The FFC must be pulled straight up and out of the connector to prevent damaging it.

Figure 1-269 Remove the FFC



12. Slide the SCB out of the product to remove it.

Figure 1-270 Remove the SCB

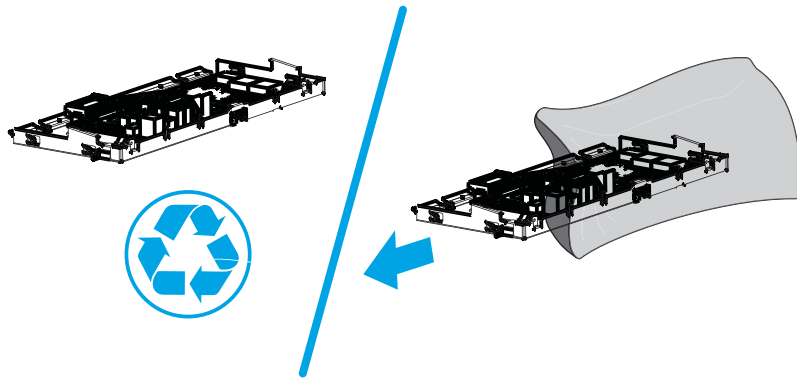


Step 4: Unpack the replacement SCB

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

www.Product return and recycling

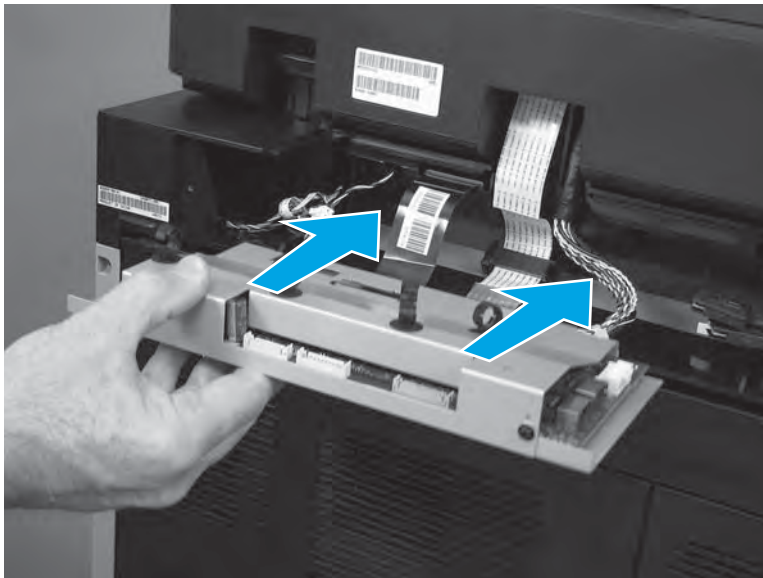
NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.



Step 4: Install the SCB

1. Partially slide the SCB into the product—make sure that the sides of the SCB engage the black plastic rails inside the product.

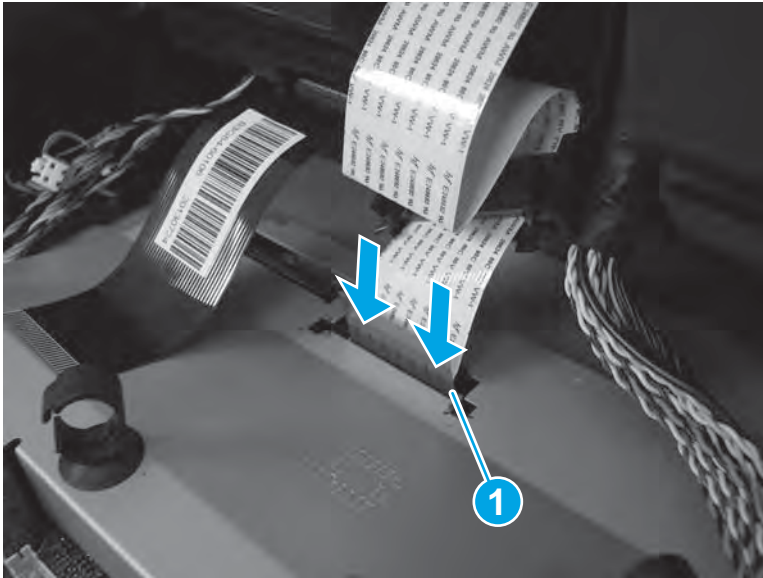
Figure 1-271 Install the SCB



2. Push straight down on the white document-feeder FFC (callout 1) to connect it.

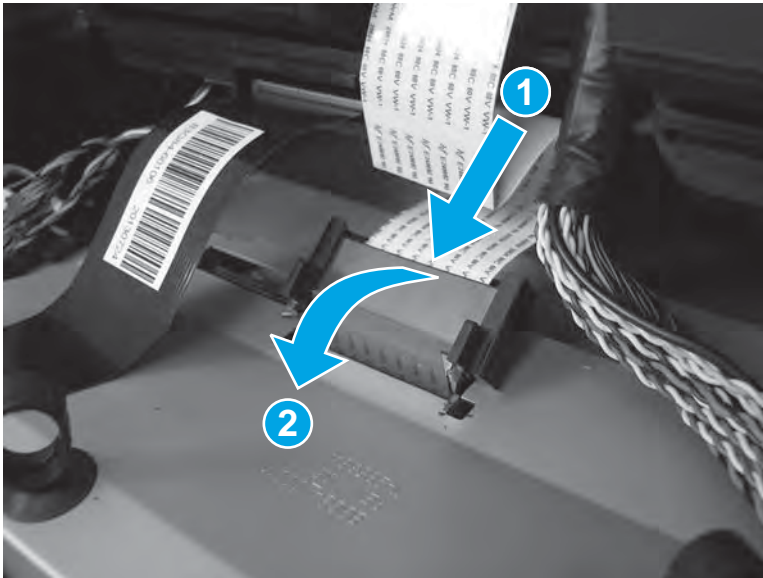
⚠ CAUTION: Be careful. The FFC must be pushed straight down and into the connector to prevent damaging it.

Figure 1-272 Connect the FFC



3. Insert the tabs at the back edge of the ferrite holder in the slot on the SCB chassis (callout 1), and then rotate (callout 2) the holder forward to install it.

Figure 1-273 Install the ferrite and holder



4. Make sure that the tabs on the ferrite holder snap into the SCB chassis.


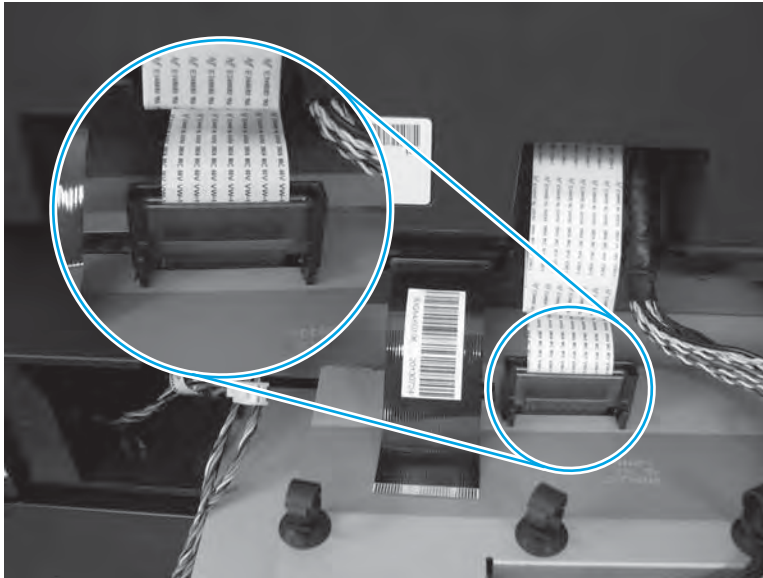
 **NOTE:** When correctly installed, the ferrite holder is flat against the SCB chassis and securely fastened.

Figure 1-274 Check the two tabs



5. Push straight down on the black scanner FFC (callout 1) to connect it.


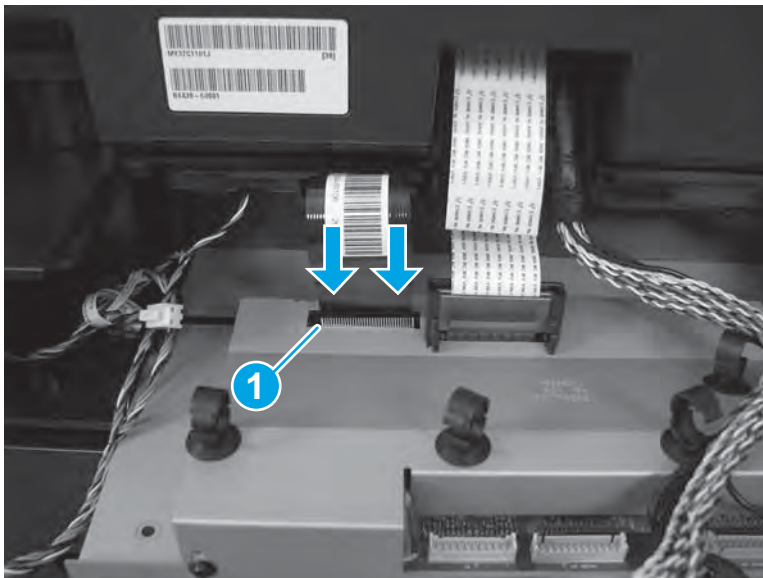

 **CAUTION:** Be careful. The FFC must be pushed straight down and into the connector to prevent damaging it.

Figure 1-275 Connect the FFC

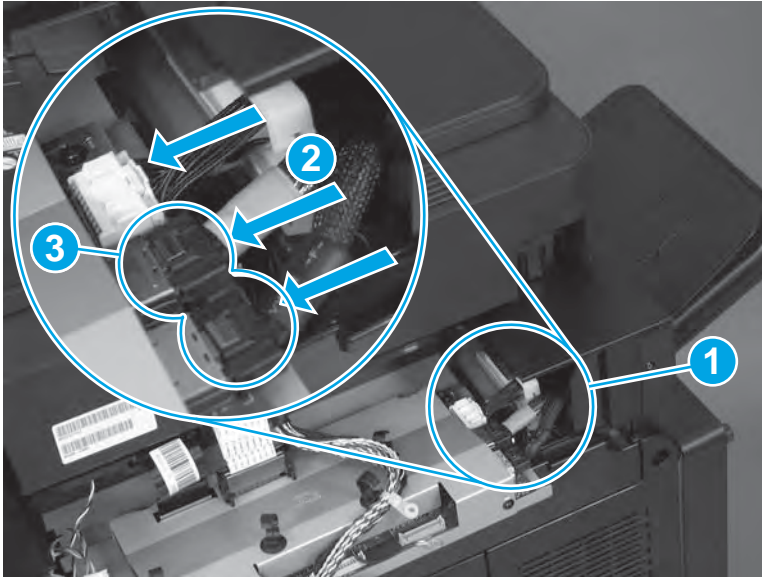


6. Connect three connectors (callout 1).

 **Reinstallation tip:** The wire harness with the blue band (callout 2) connects to the inner connector on the SCB when reinstalled.

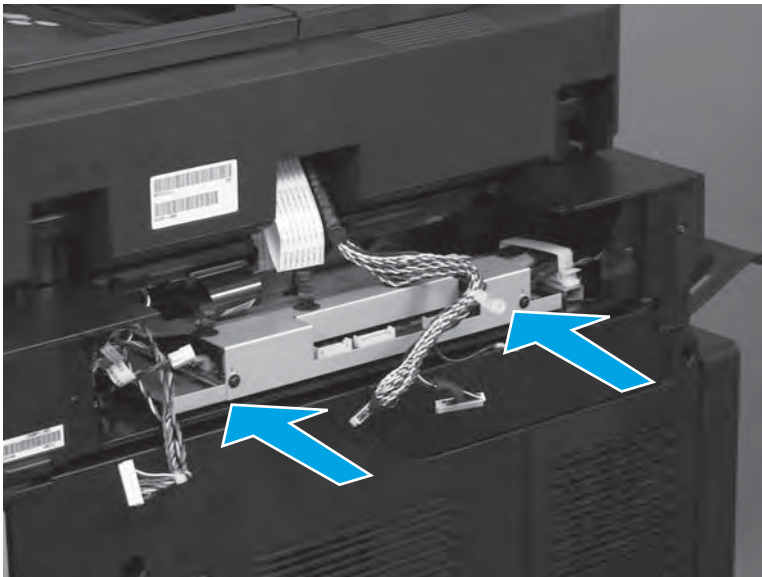
When the two connectors with the metal retainer clips (callout 3) are reinstalled, make sure that the clips snap in place to securely lock the connectors in place.

Figure 1-276 Connect three connectors



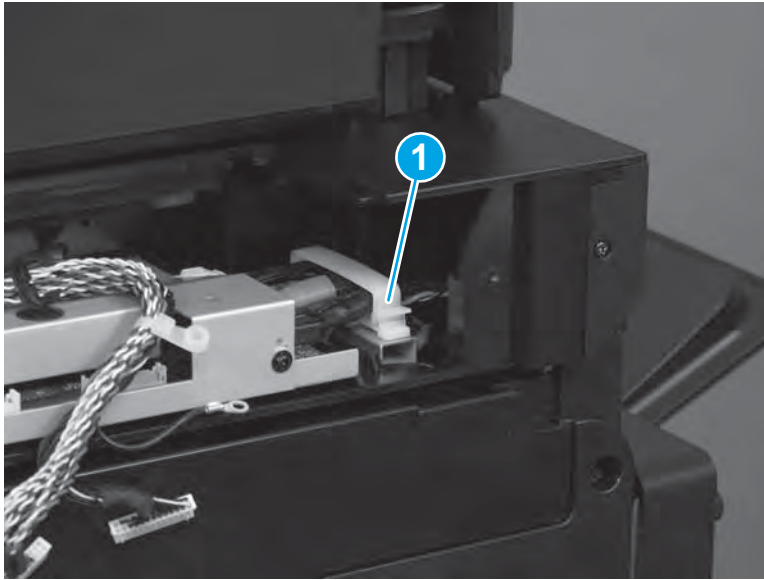
7. Slide the SCB into the product.

Figure 1-277 Slide the SCB in



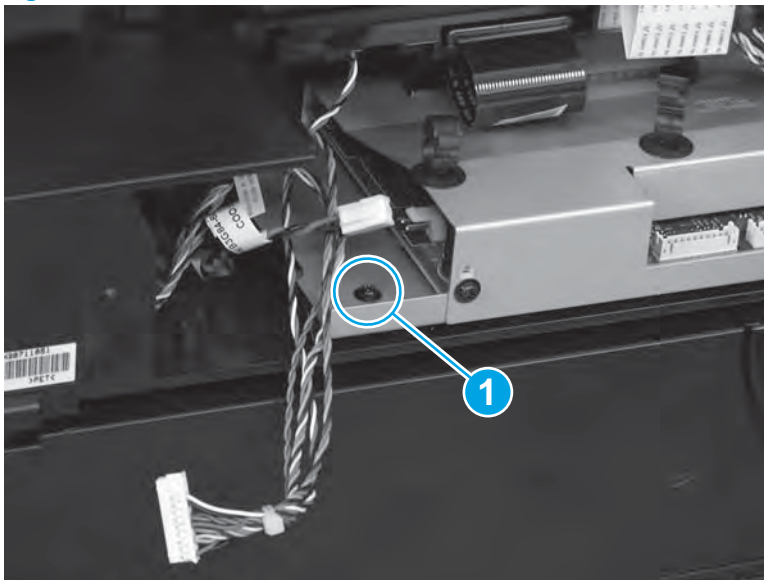
8. At the right side of the SCB, fasten one retainer (callout 1).

Figure 1-278 Fasten one retainer



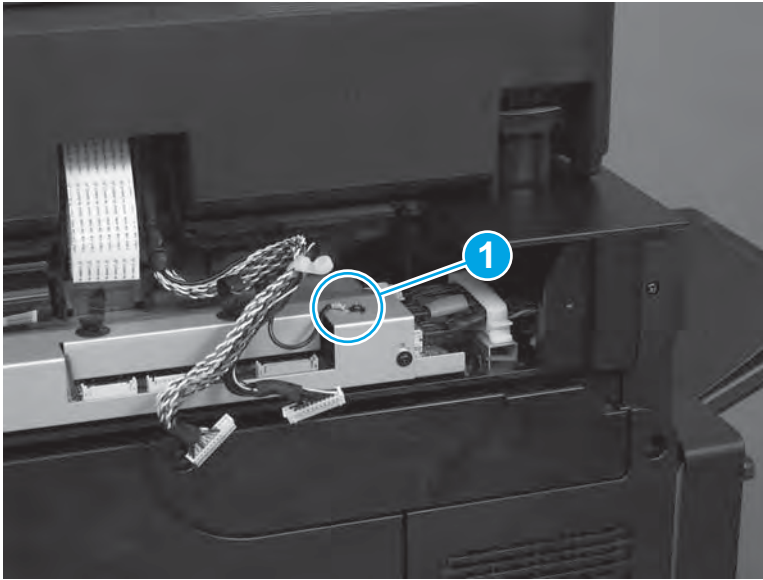
9. At the left side of the SCB, install one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-279 Install one screw



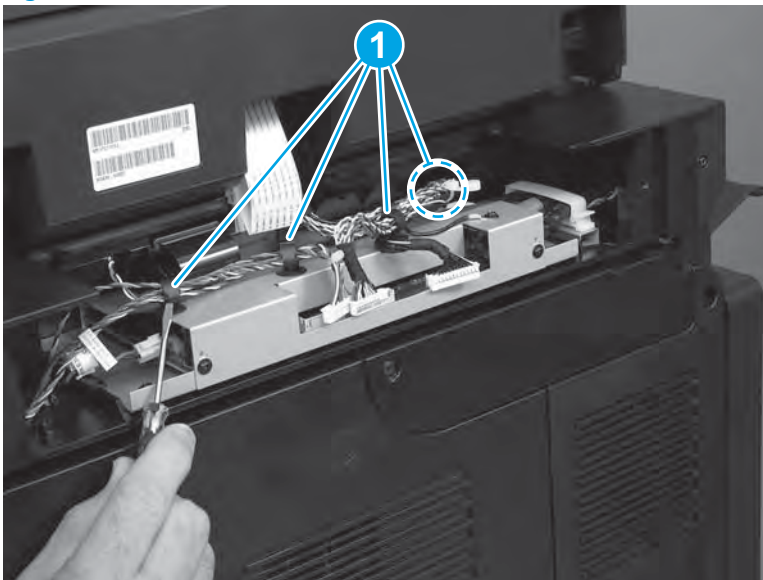
10. At the right side of the SCB, Install the ground wire and one ground screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-280 Install the ground wire and one screw



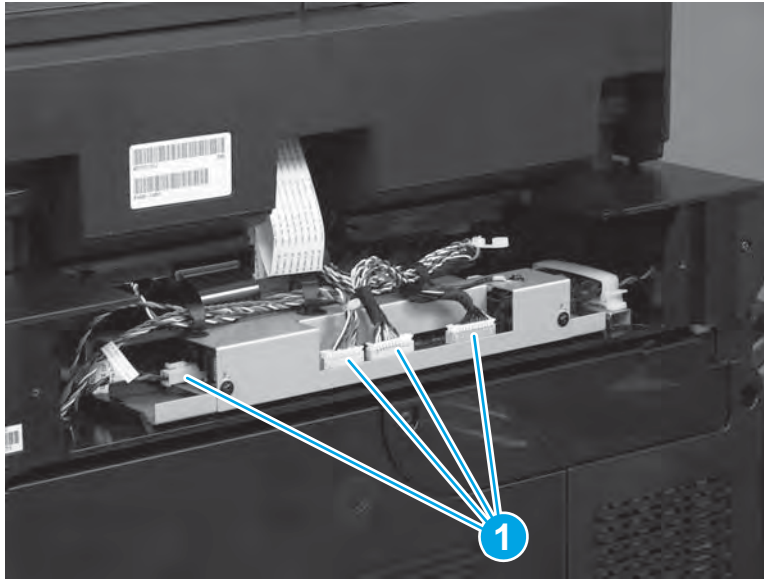
11. Install the wire harnesses in the four retainers (callout 1).

Figure 1-281 Install the wire harnesses



12. Connect four connectors (callout 1).

Figure 1-282 Connect four connectors



Step 5: Install the scanner rear cover

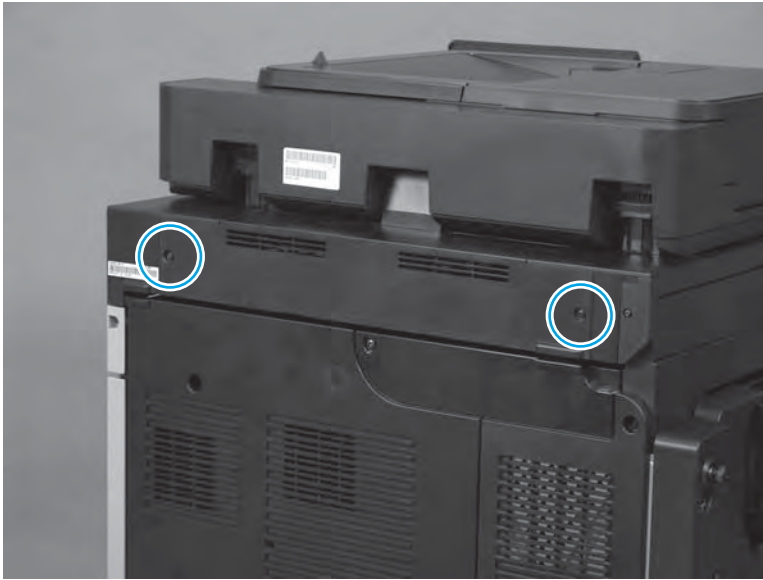
1. Install the cover.

Figure 1-283 Install the cover



2. Install two screws.

Figure 1-284 Install two screws



Step 6: Turn the product power on

After servicing

Do the following steps:

Connect the power cable.

Turn on the product.

Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Document feeder

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the backside background selector](#)
- [Step 2: Remove the scanner rear cover](#)
- [Step 3: Remove the SCB](#)
- [Step 4: Remove the document feeder](#)
- [Step 5: Unpack the replacement document feeder](#)
- [Step 6: Install the document feeder](#)
- [Step 7: Install the SCB](#)
- [Step 8: Install the scanner rear cover](#)
- [Step 9: Install the backside background selector](#)
- [Step 10: Install the document feeder white backing](#)
- [Step 11: Reset the supplies counters and calibrate the scanner](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the document feeder.

Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the kit.

Document feeder kit part number	
---------------------------------	--

B3G86-67901


Document feeder with instruction guide
--

NOTE: The document feeder kit includes the document feeder white backing kit.

Do the following steps:

Turn off the product.


Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

Step 1: Remove the backside background selector

 **Reinstallation tip:** Set the backside background selector selector aside to install it on the replacement document feeder.

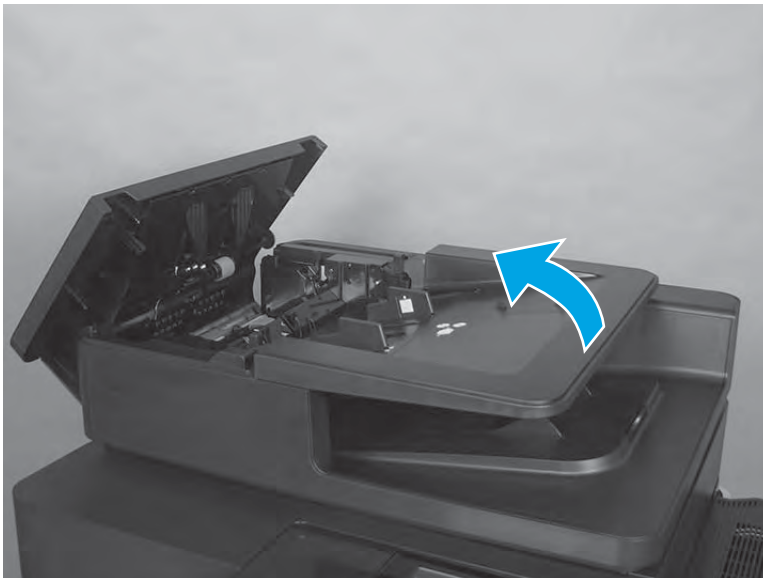
1. Open the document-feeder door.

Figure 1-285 Open the document-feeder door



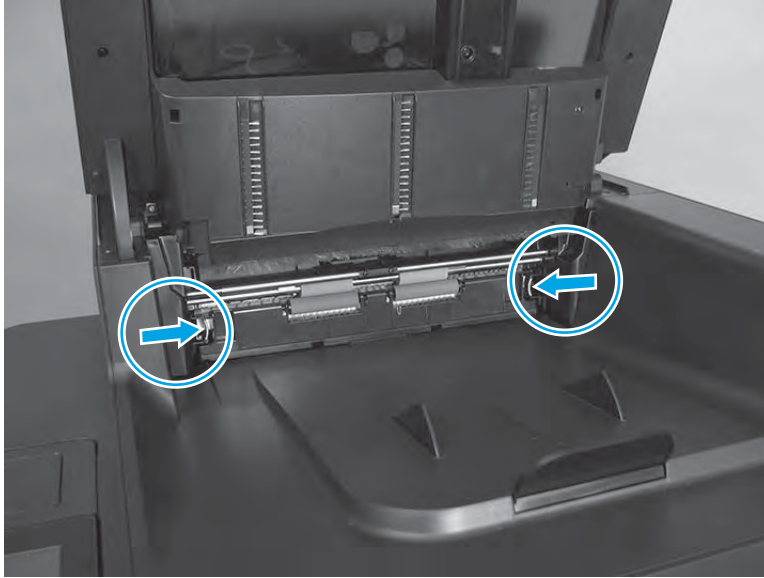
2. Rotate the input tray up.

Figure 1-286 Rotate the input tray up



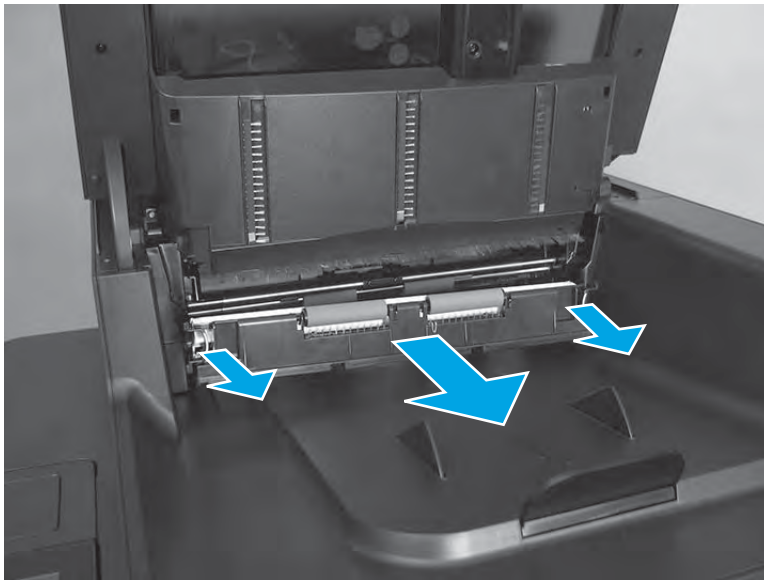
3. Release two tabs.

Figure 1-287 Release two tabs



4. Slide the backside background selector away from the product to remove it.

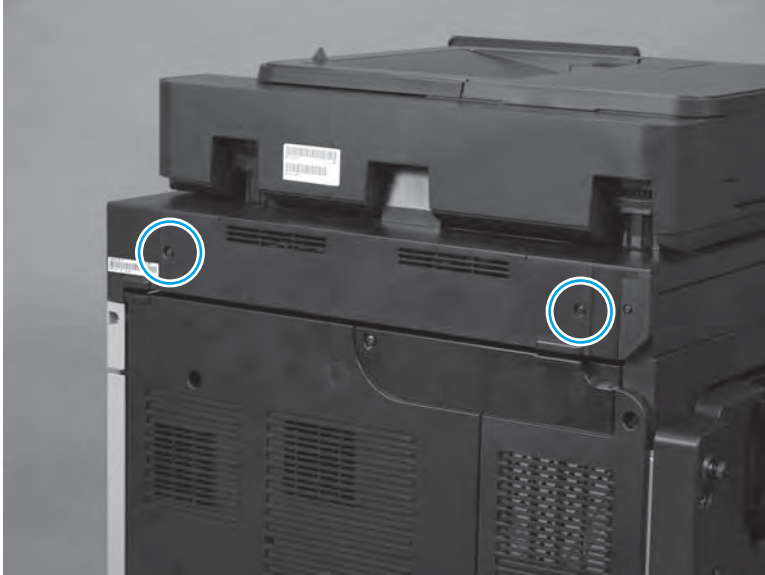
Figure 1-288 Remove the backside background selector



Step 2: Remove the scanner rear cover

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 1-289 Remove two screws



2. Remove the cover.

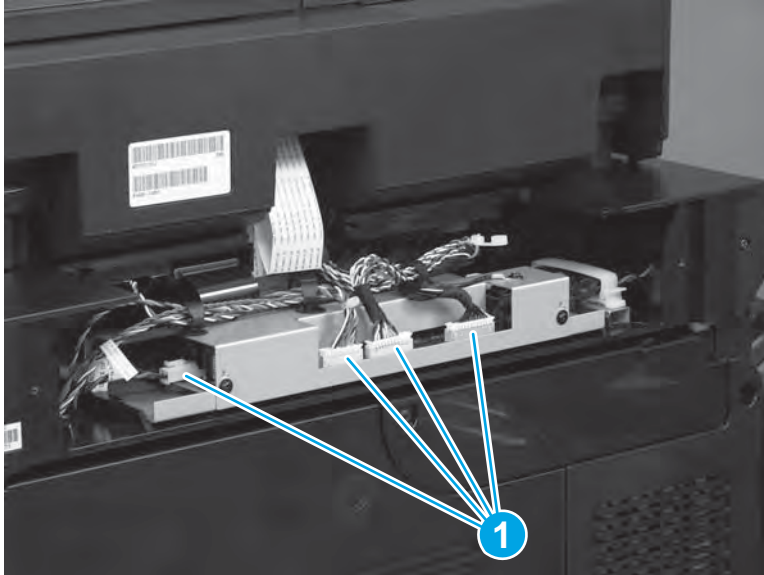
Figure 1-290 Remove the cover



Step 3: Remove the SCB

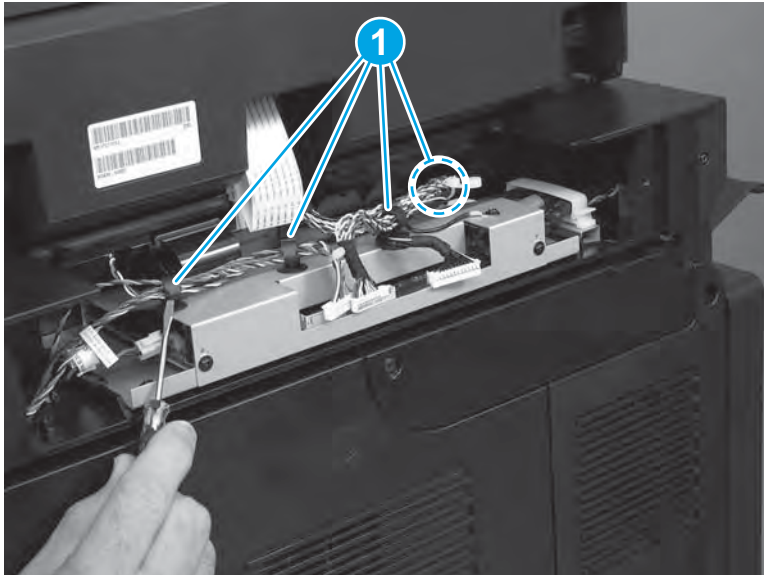
1. Disconnect four connectors (callout 1).

Figure 1-291 Disconnect four connectors



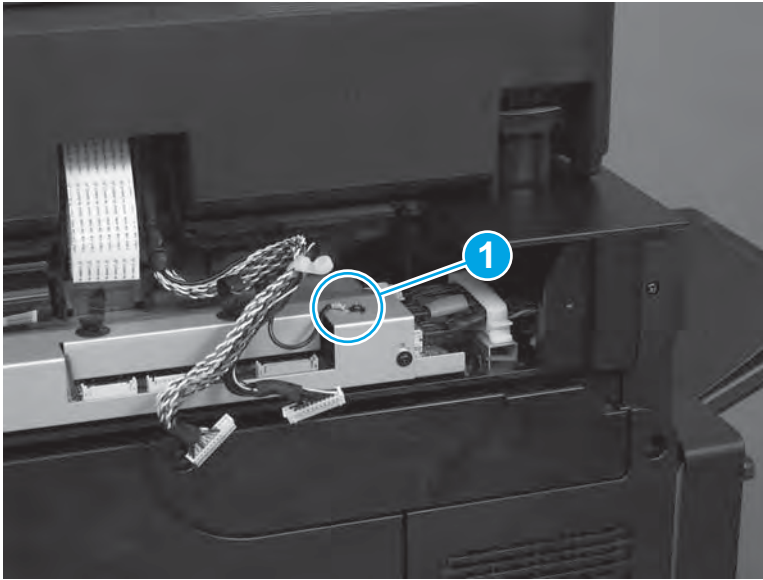
2. Use a small flat-blade screwdriver to release four retainers (callout 1), and then remove the wire harnesses from the retainers.

Figure 1-292 Release four retainers



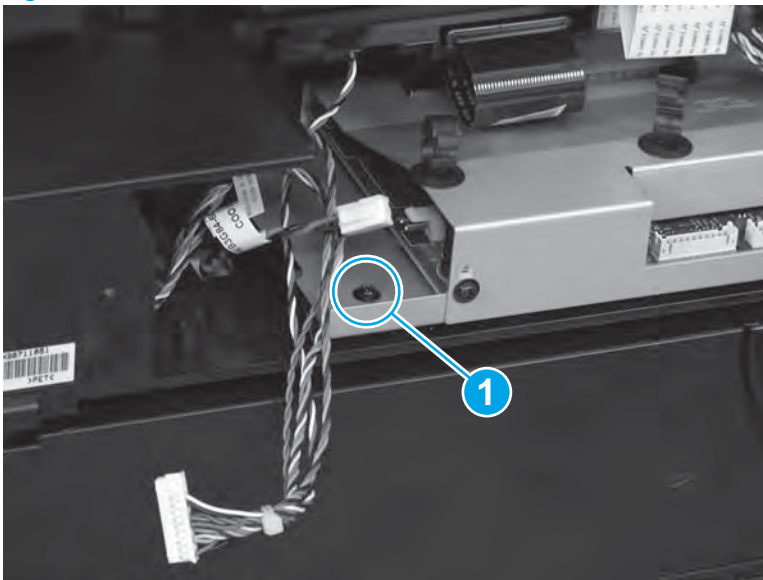
3. On the right side of the SCB, remove one ground screw (callout 1) to release the ground wire.

Figure 1-293 Remove one screw and the ground wire



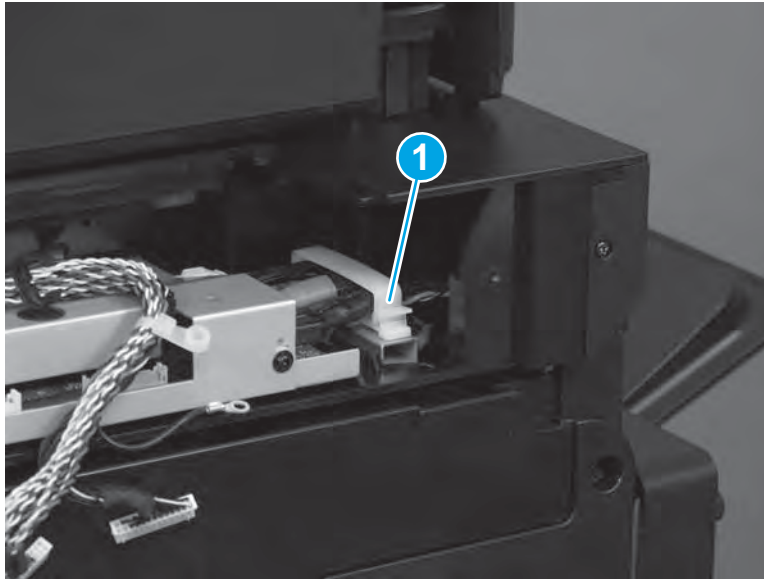
4. On the left side of the SCB, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-294 Remove one screw



5. At the right side of the SCB, press down on the retainer (callout 1) to release it.

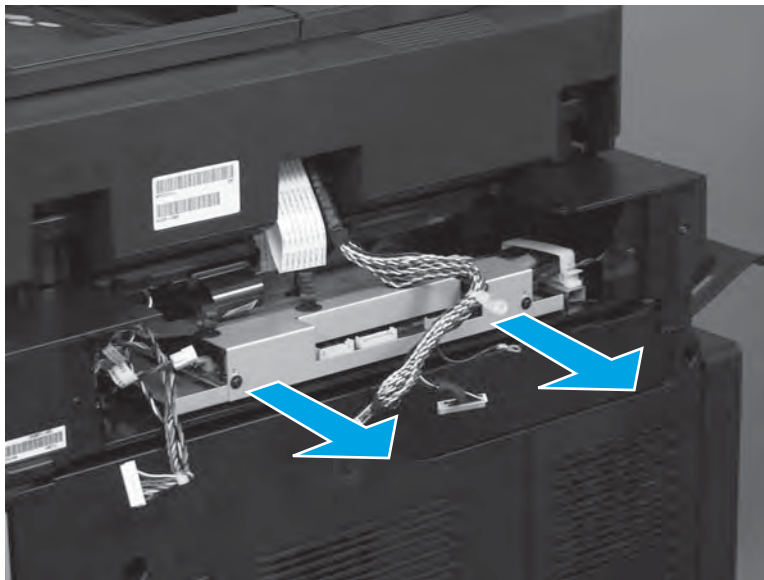
Figure 1-295 Release one retainer



6. Partially slide the SCB out of the product.

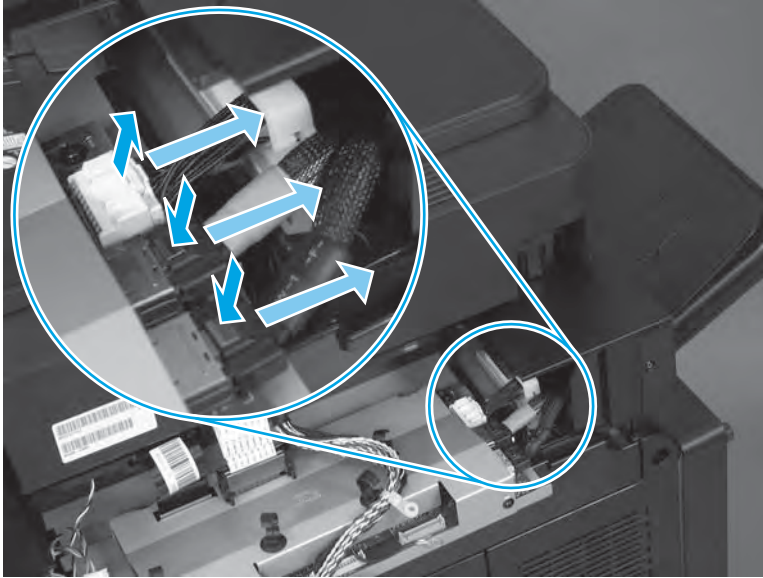
⚠ CAUTION: The SCB is still attached to the product by two FFCs. Do not attempt to completely remove the SCB.

Figure 1-296 Partially slide the SCB out



7. Use a small flat-blade screw driver to release three connectors (callout 1).

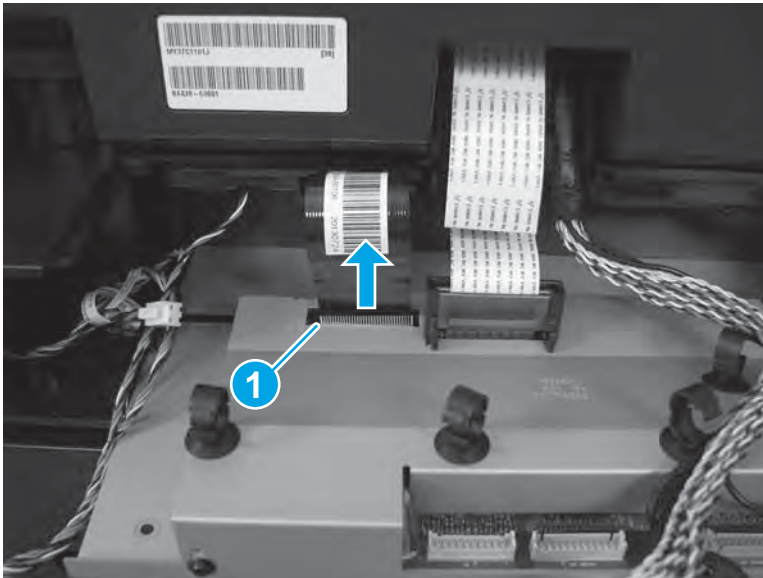
Figure 1-297 Release three connectors



8. Pull straight up on the black scanner FFC (callout 1) to disconnect it.

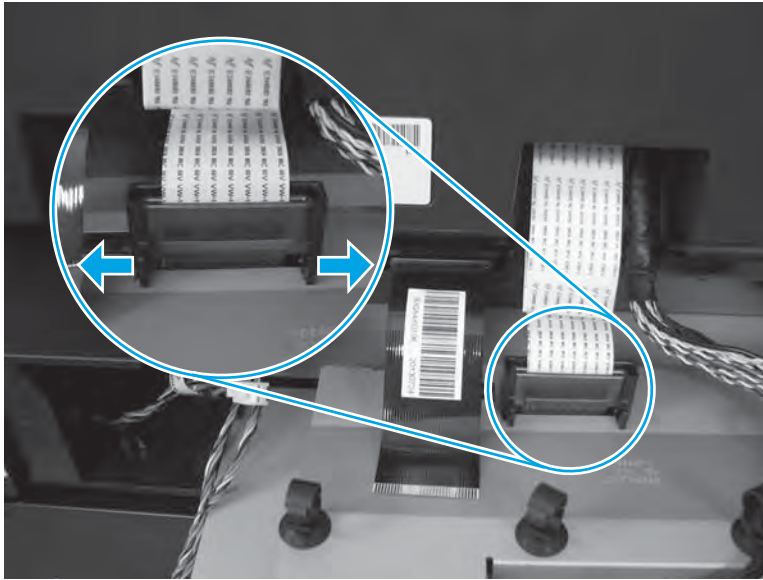
CAUTION: Be careful. The FFC must be pulled straight up and out of the connector to prevent damaging it.

Figure 1-298 Remove the FFC



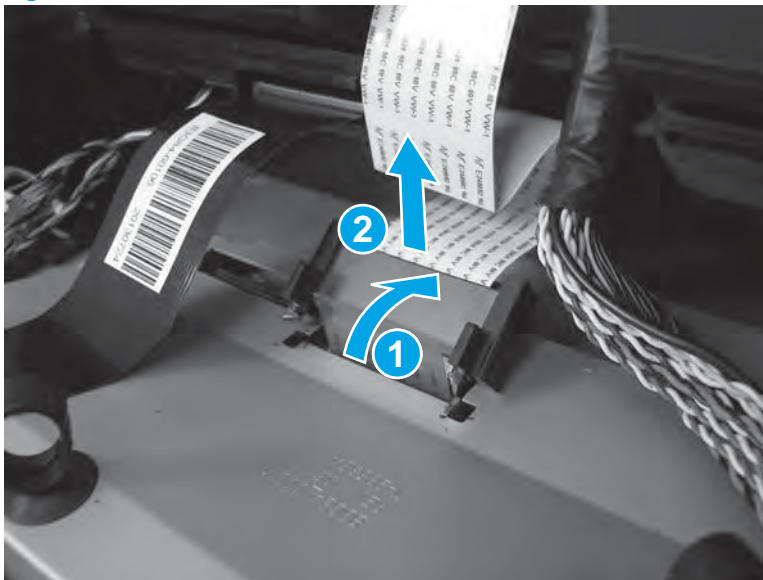
9. Carefully push the tabs on the ferrite holder outward to release them.

Figure 1-299 Release two tabs



10. Rotate the holder backward (callout 1), and then remove it (callout 2). Slide the holder up the FFC.

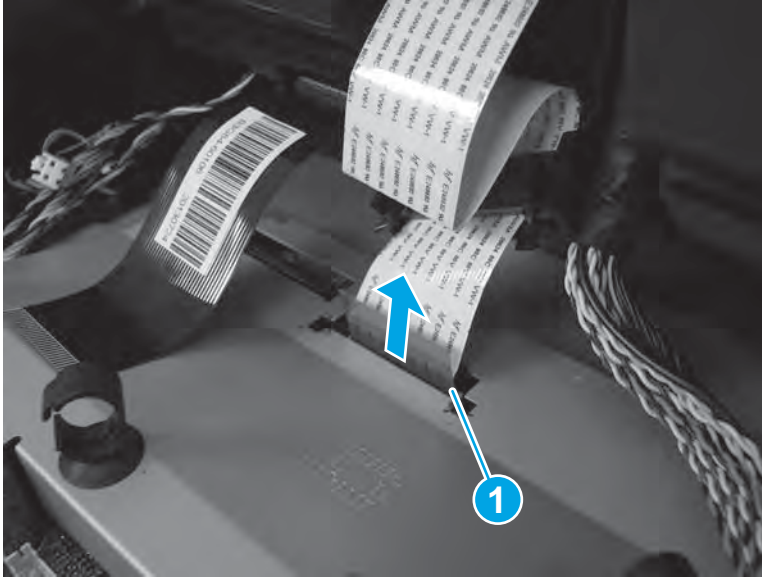
Figure 1-300 Remove the ferrite and holder



11. Pull straight up on the white document-feeder FFC (callout 1) to disconnect it.

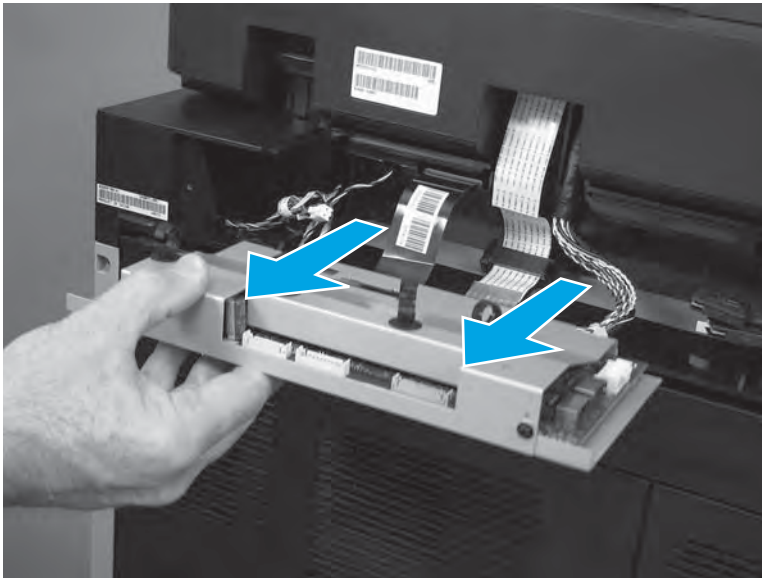
CAUTION: Be careful. The FFC must be pulled straight up and out of the connector to prevent damaging it.

Figure 1-301 Remove the FFC



12. Slide the SCB out of the product to remove it.

Figure 1-302 Remove the SCB

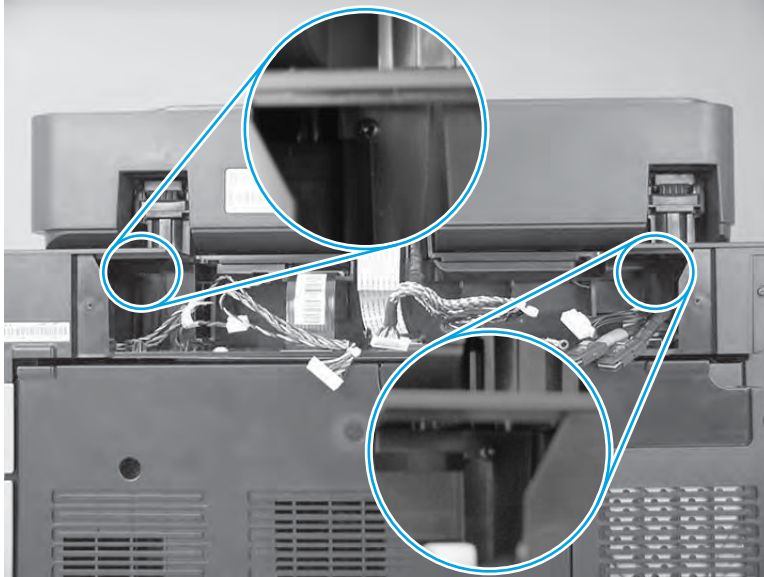


Step 4: Remove the document feeder

1. Loosen, but do not remove, two document-feeder hinge-locking screws. Back them out about 13 mm (0.5 in).

NOTE: Do not remove these screws. They are difficult to reinstall.

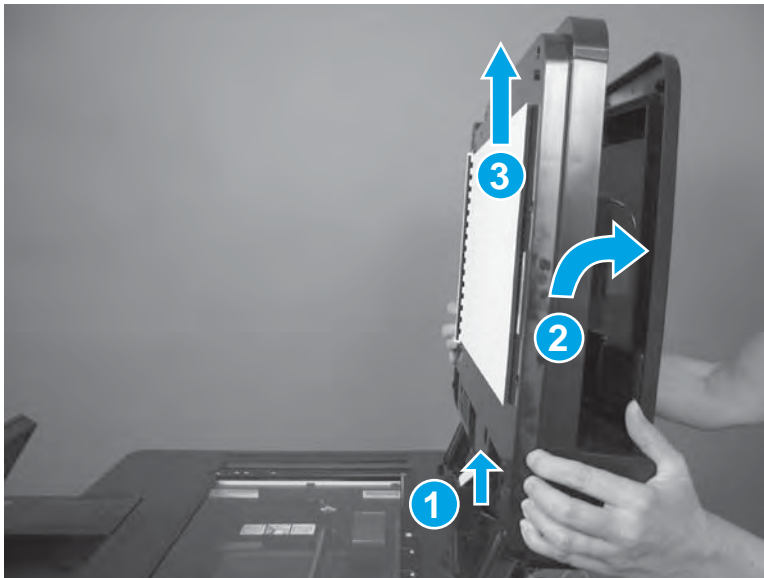
Figure 1-303 Loosen two screws



2. Open the document feeder, lift it up until it stops (callout 1), tilt it back (callout 2), and then pull it straight up (callout 3) to remove it.

CAUTION: The document feeder weighs 5.6 kg (12.3 lb).

Figure 1-304 Remove the document feeder

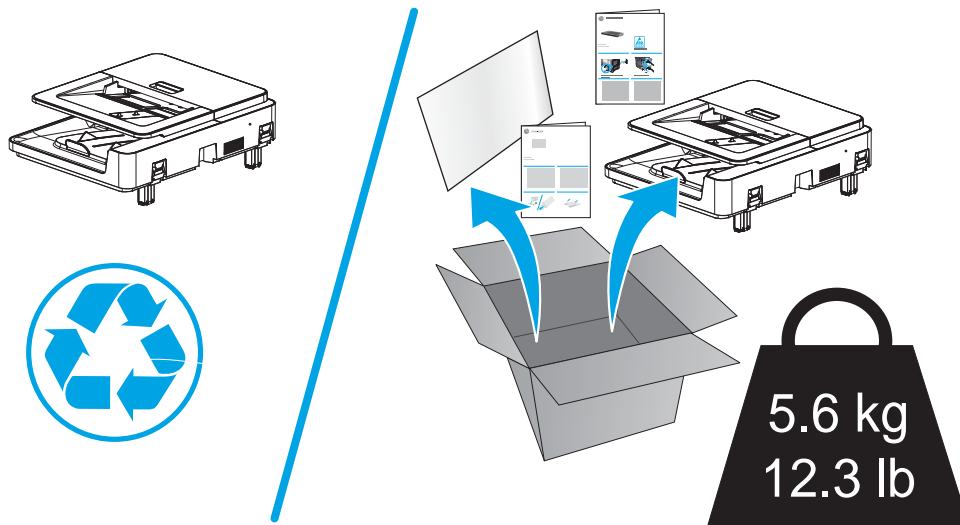


Step 5: Unpack the replacement document feeder

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

www.Product return and recycling

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the assembly.



Step 6: Install the document feeder

1. Before reinstalling the document feeder, make sure that the FFC and the wire harness is correctly routed through the openings in the cover.

CAUTION: If the FFC and wire harness are not correctly routed, they will be damaged when the document feeder is installed.

Figure 1-305 Route the document feeder FFC and cables

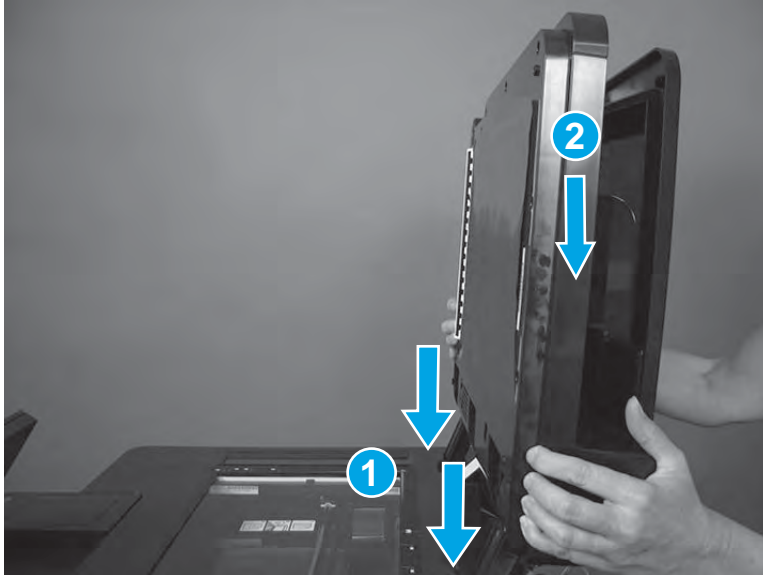


2. Position the document feeder hinges in the holes provided (callout 1), and then lower the hinges into the holes (callout 2).

CAUTION: The document feeder weighs 5.6 kg (12.3 lb).

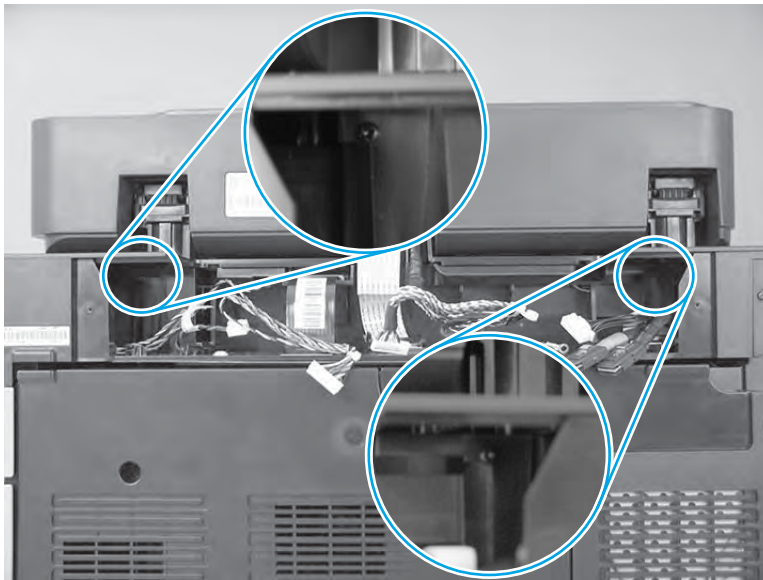
IMPORTANT: Make sure that the document feeder wire harness and FFC are correctly routed at the back of the product before lowering the document feeder into place.

Figure 1-306 Install the document feeder



3. Close the document feeder, and then tighten the two document-feeder hinge-locking screws.

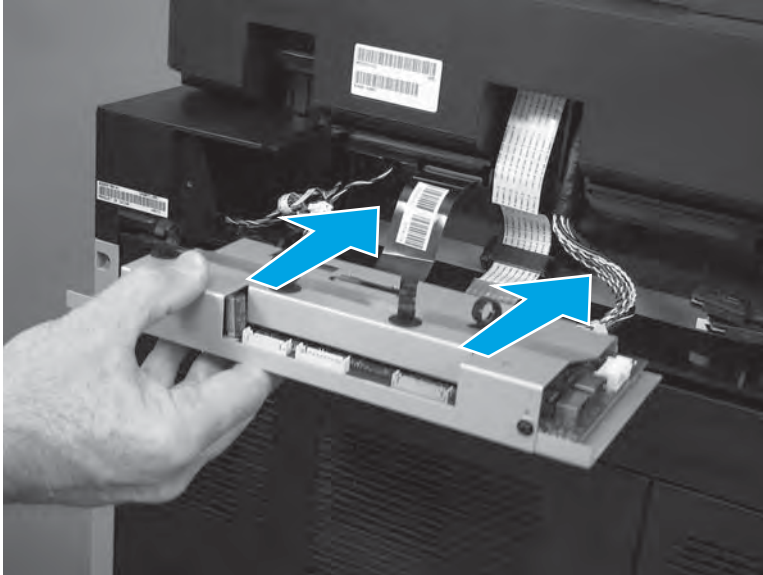
Figure 1-307 Tighten two screws



Step 7: Install the SCB

1. Partially slide the SCB into the product—make sure that the sides of the SCB engage the black plastic rails inside the product.

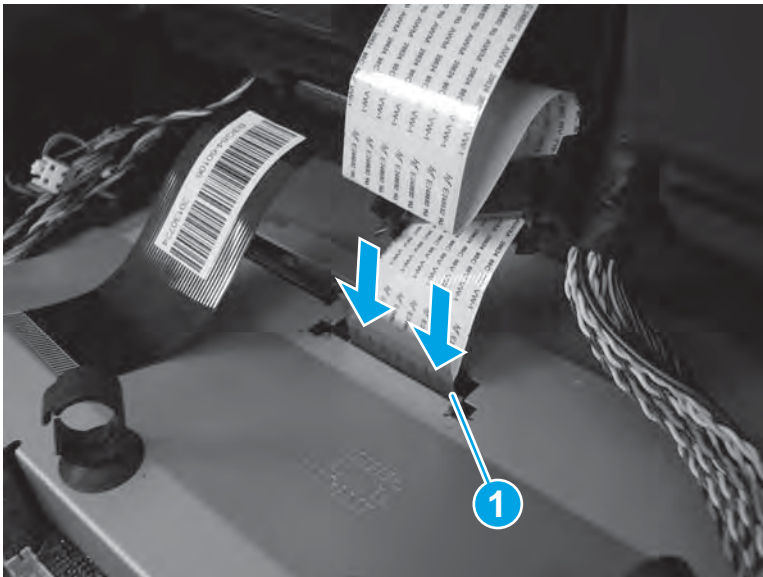
Figure 1-308 Install the SCB



2. Push straight down on the white document-feeder FFC (callout 1) to connect it.

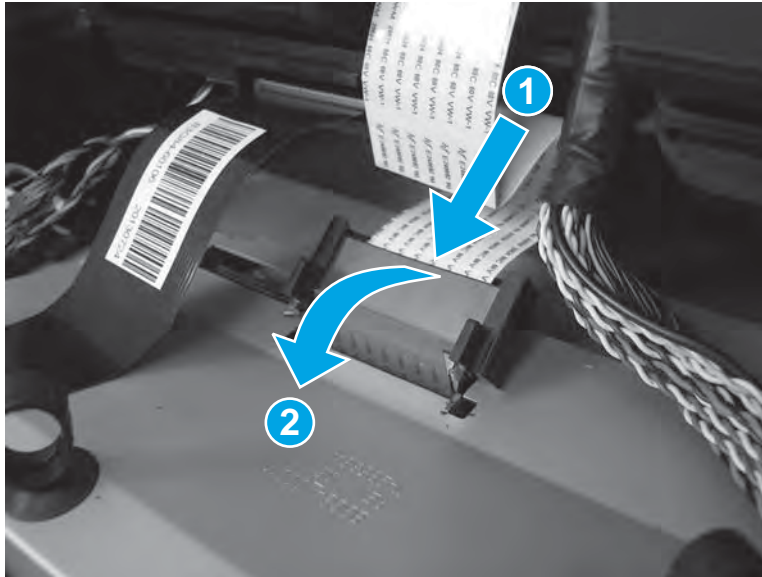
⚠ CAUTION: Be careful. The FFC must be pushed straight down and into the connector to prevent damaging it.

Figure 1-309 Connect the FFC



3. Insert the tabs at the back edge of the ferrite holder in the slot on the SCB chassis (callout 1), and then rotate (callout 2) the holder forward to install it.

Figure 1-310 Install the ferrite and holder

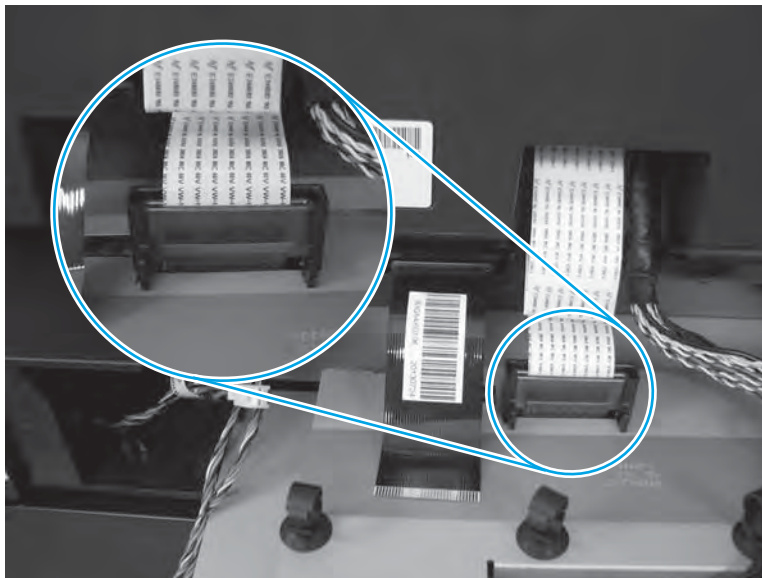


4. Make sure that the tabs on the ferrite holder snap into the SCB chassis.



NOTE: When correctly installed, the ferrite holder is flat against the SCB chassis and securely fastened.

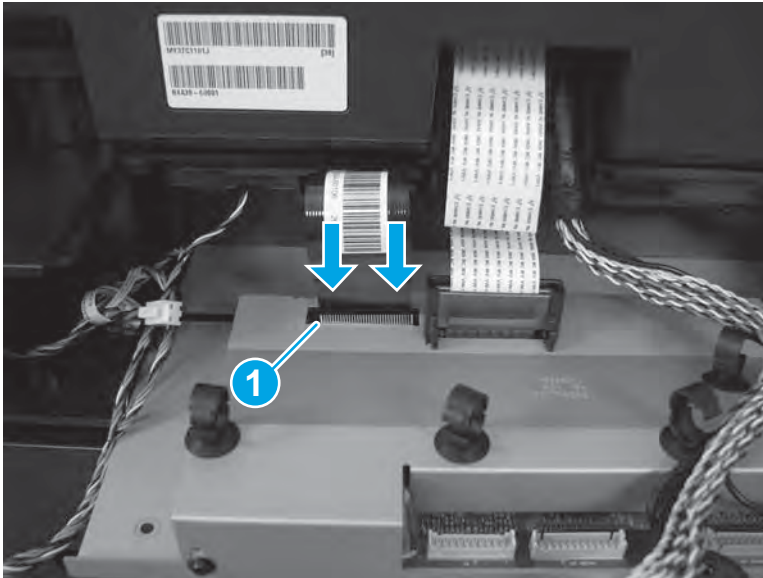
Figure 1-311 Check the two tabs



5. Push straight down on the black scanner FFC (callout 1) to connect it.

⚠ CAUTION: Be careful. The FFC must be pushed straight down and into the connector to prevent damaging it.

Figure 1-312 Connect the FFC

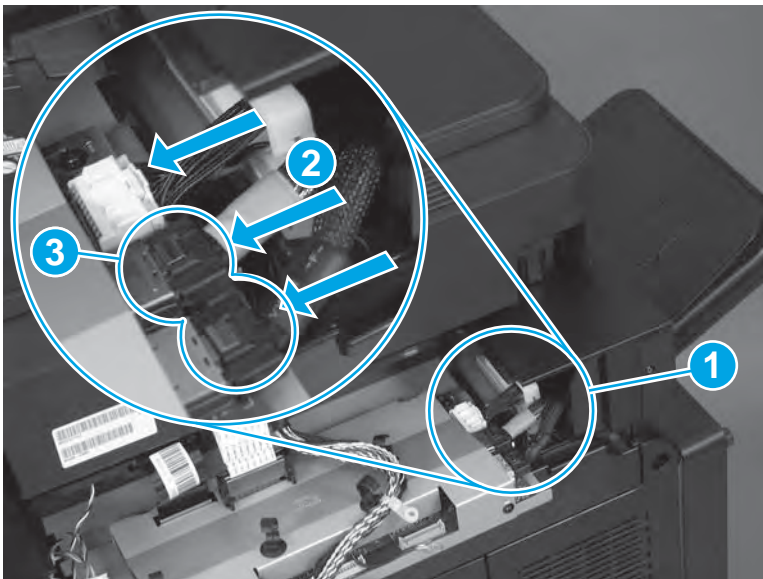


6. Connect three connectors (callout 1).

💡 Reinstallation tip: The wire harness with the blue band (callout 2) connects to the inner connector on the SCB when reinstalled.

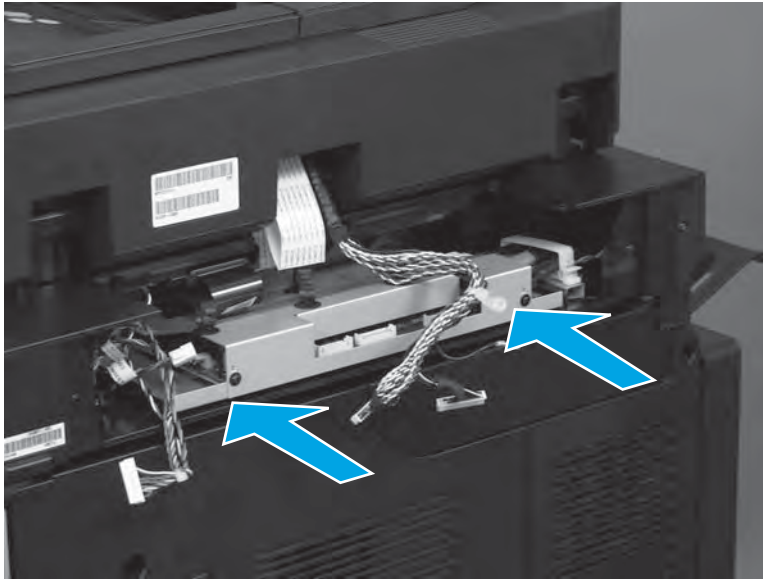
When the two connectors with the metal retainer clips (callout 3) are reinstalled, make sure that the clips snap in place to securely lock the connectors in place.

Figure 1-313 Connect three connectors



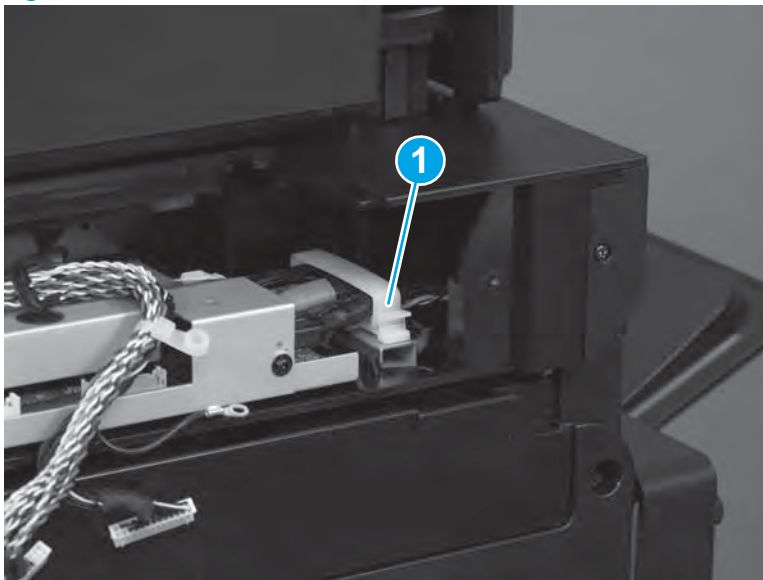
7. Slide the SCB into the product.

Figure 1-314 Slide the SCB in



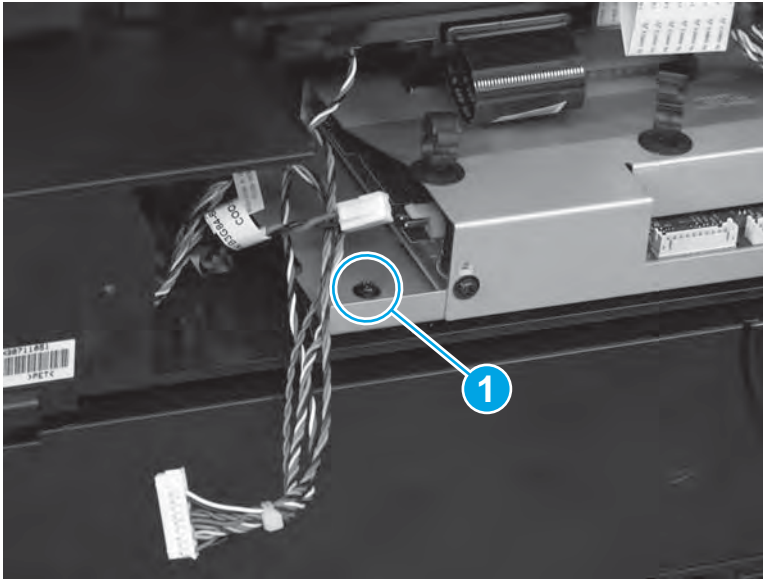
8. At the right side of the SCB, fasten one retainer (callout 1).

Figure 1-315 Fasten one retainer



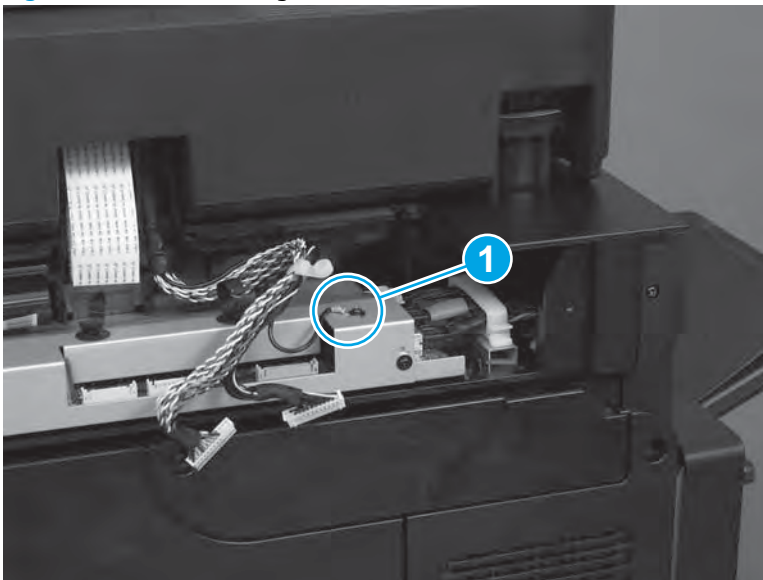
9. At the left side of the SCB, install one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-316 Install one screw



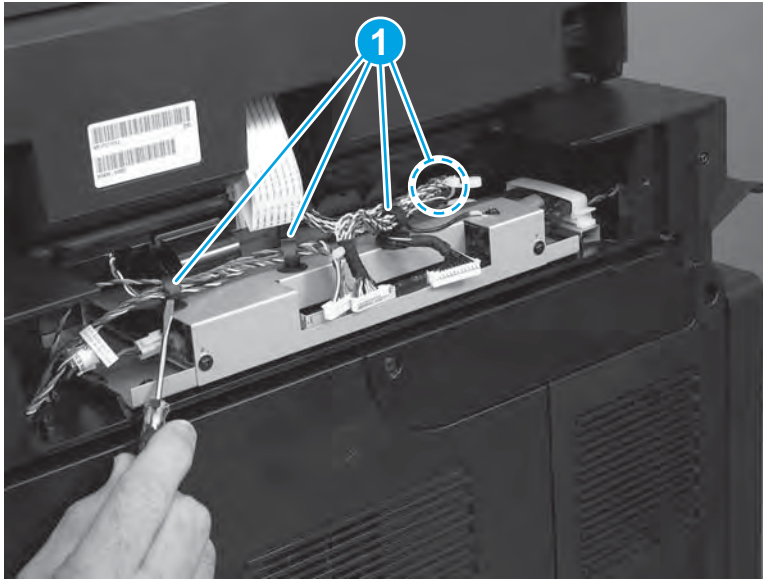
10. At the right side of the SCB, install the ground wire and one ground screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-317 Install the ground wire and one screw



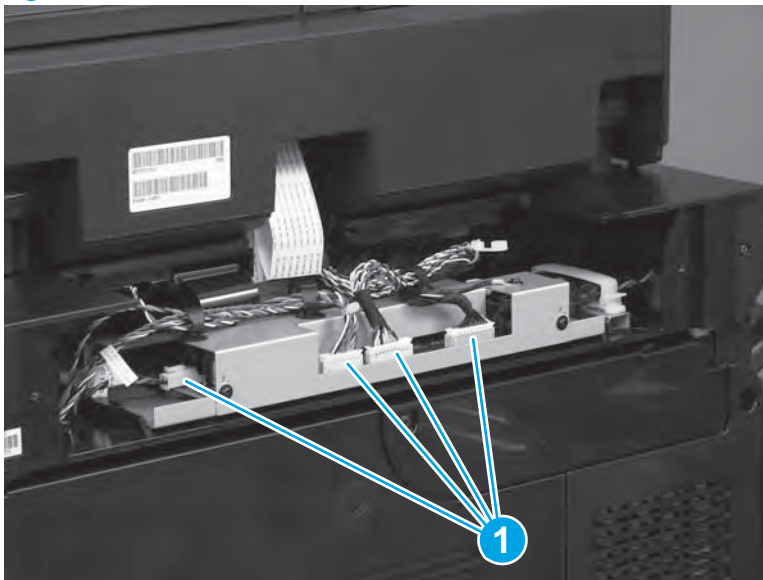
11. Install the wire harnesses in the four retainers (callout 1).

Figure 1-318 Install the wire harnesses



12. Connect four connectors (callout 1).

Figure 1-319 Connect four connectors



Step 8: Install the scanner rear cover

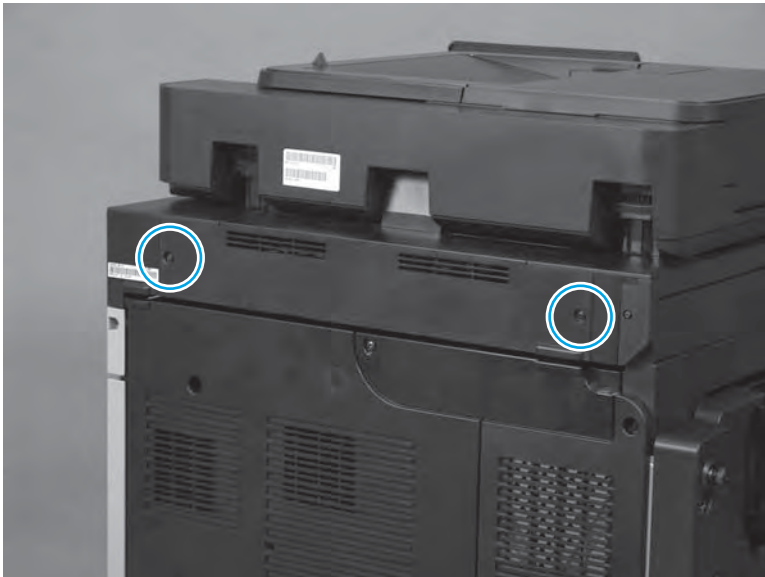
1. Install the cover.

Figure 1-320 Install the cover



2. Install two screws.

Figure 1-321 Install two screws



Step 9: Install the backside background selector

1. Push in on the background selector until the tabs snap into place.


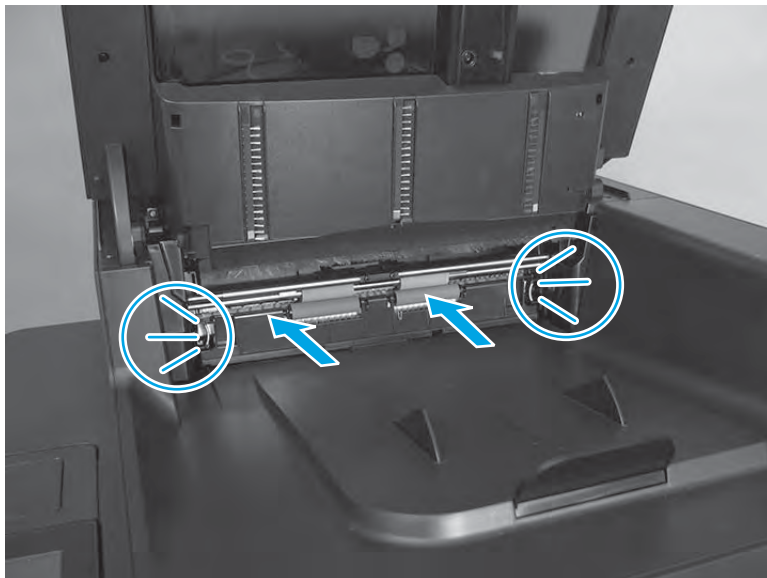
 **Reinstallation tip:** If jams occur after the assembly is installed, make sure that the assembly is fully seated.

Figure 1-322 Install the background selector



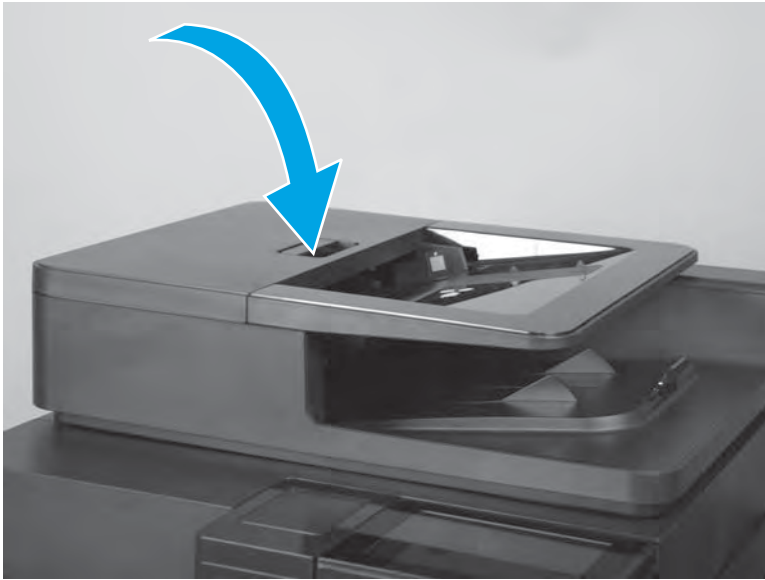
2. Rotate the input tray down.

Figure 1-323 Rotate the input tray down



3. Close the document-feeder door.

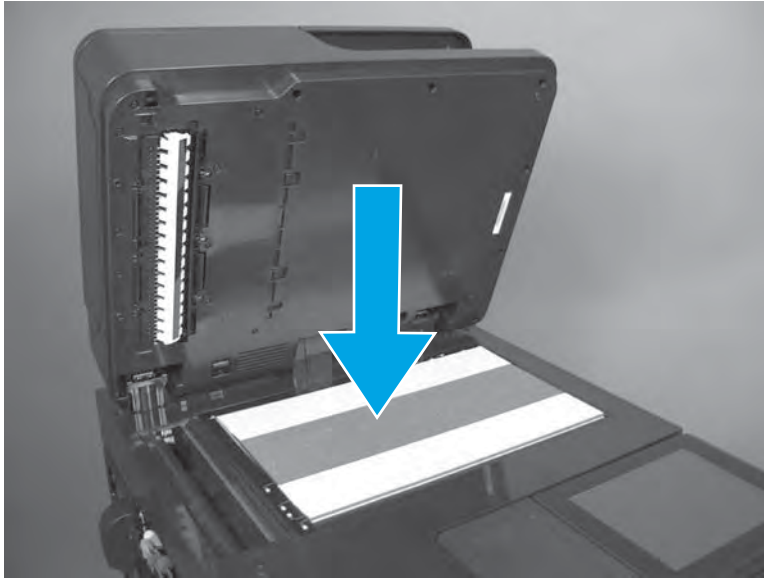
Figure 1-324 Close the document-feeder door



Step 10: Install the document feeder white backing

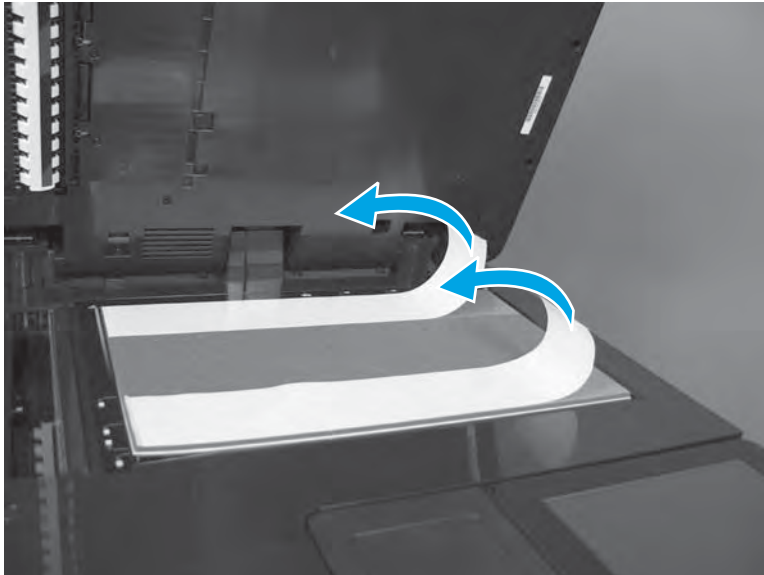
1. Place the white backing on the scanner glass.

Figure 1-325 Place the white backing on the scanner



2. Peel off the two strips of adhesive backing.

Figure 1-326 Peel off the adhesive backing



3. Place the two mylar-spacer strips (included with the kit) onto the adhesive, as shown.


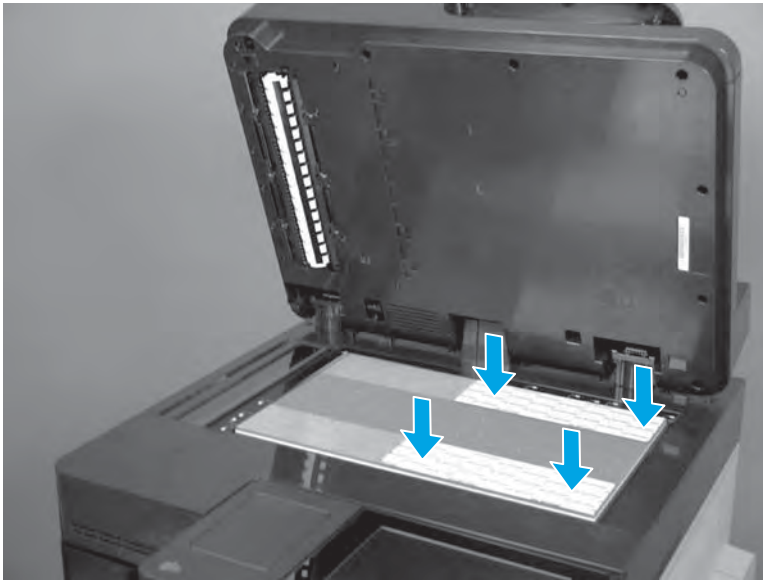
 **IMPORTANT:** Align the mylar with the edges of the adhesive on the white backing.

Figure 1-327 Place the two mylar-spacer strips onto the adhesive



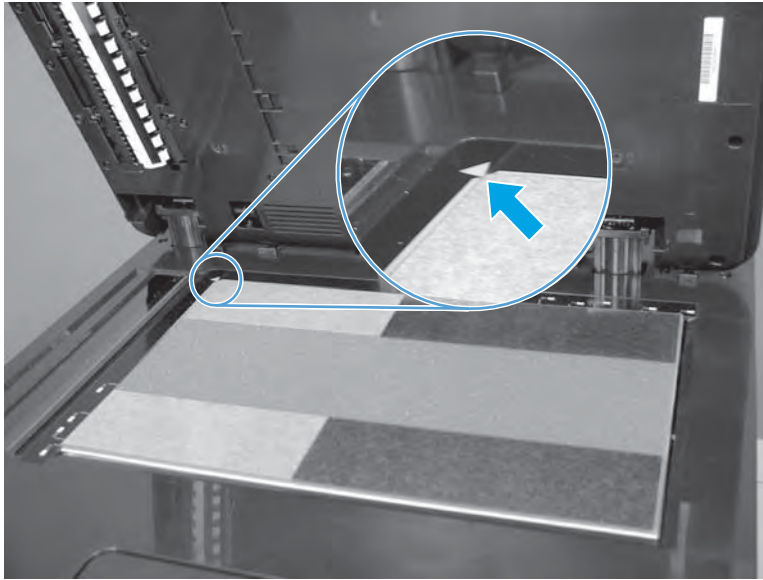
4. Peel off the two strips of adhesive backing.

Figure 1-328 Peel off the adhesive backing



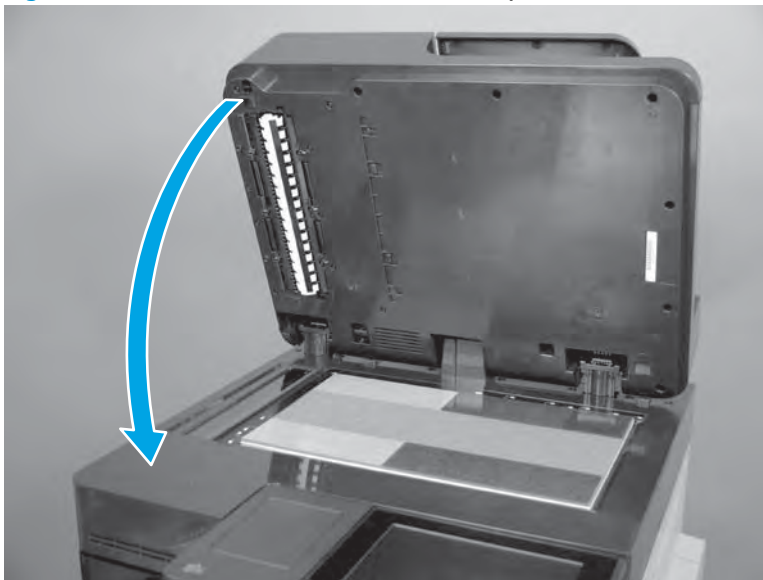
5. Verify that the white backing is aligned with the left rear corner of the scanner glass.

Figure 1-329 Verify that the white backing is correctly aligned



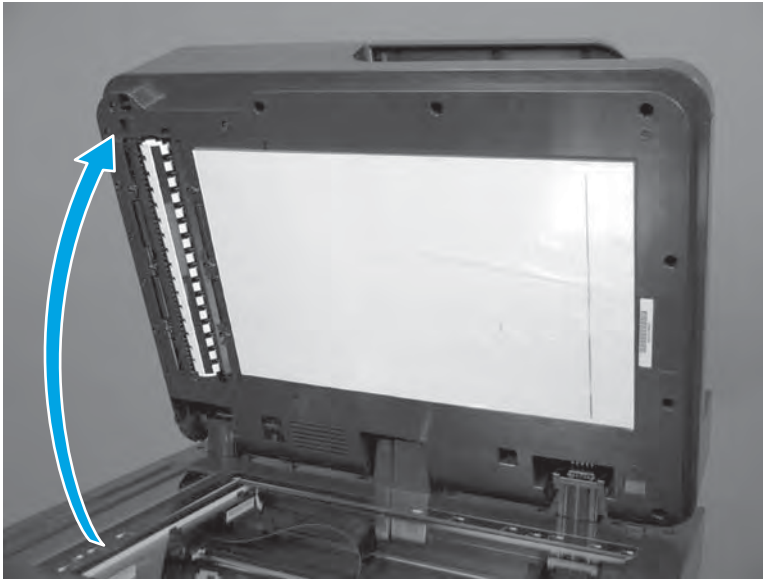
6. Close the document feeder. Press down firmly to adhere the white backing.

Figure 1-330 Close the document feeder and press down



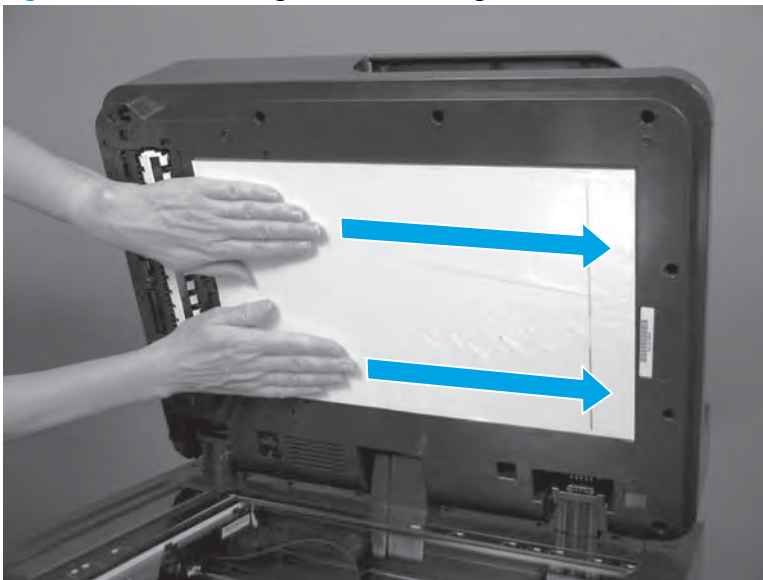
7. Open the document feeder.

Figure 1-331 Open the document feeder



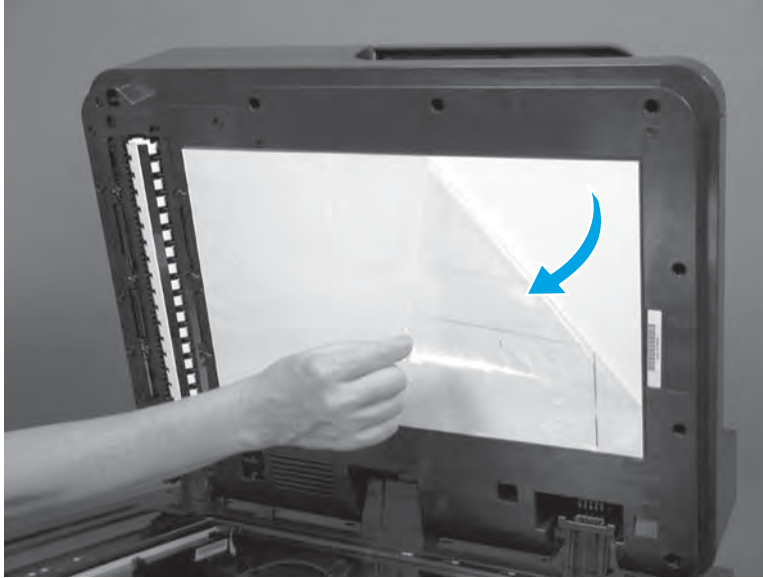
8. Press along the top and bottom of the white backing, over the areas with adhesive.

Figure 1-332 Press along the white backing



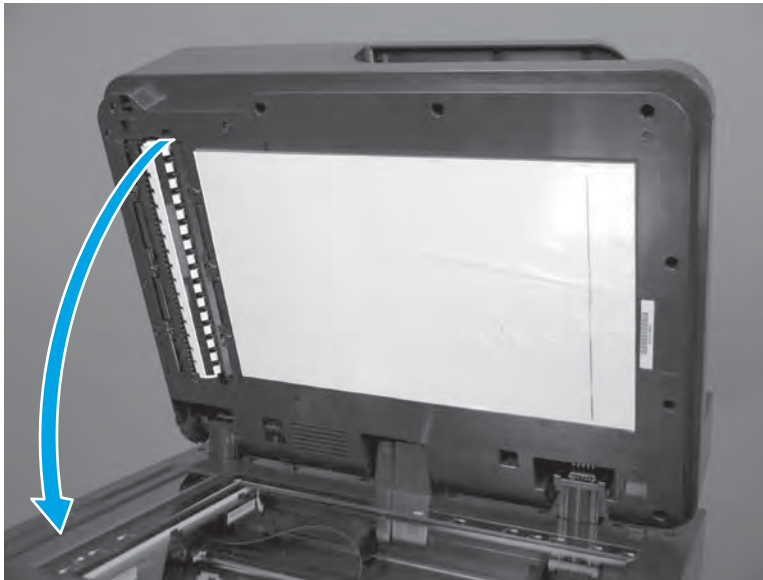
9. Peel off the protective plastic sheet.

Figure 1-333 Peel off the protective sheet



10. Close the document feeder.

Figure 1-334 Close the document feeder



Step 11: Reset the supplies counters and calibrate the scanner

If a replacement document feeder is installed, perform the following task after reassembling the product:

Turn the product on.

1. Use the [Service](#) menu to reset the [Document Feeder Kit Interval](#) and [ADF Count](#) firmware counters.
 - a. From the Home screen on the control panel, scroll to and touch the [Device Maintenance](#) button.
 - b. Open the [Service](#) menu.

- c. On the sign-in screen, select the [Service Access Code](#) option from the drop-down list.
 - d. Enter the following service access code for this product: 09063014.
 - e. Reset the following values:
 - [Document Feeder Kit Interval](#); set to zero
 - [ADF Count](#); set to zero
2. Use the [Manage Supplies](#) menu to reset the [New Document Feeder Kit](#) supplies counter.
 - a. From the Home screen on the control panel, scroll to and touch the [Supplies](#) button.
 - b. Open the following menus:
 - [Manage Supplies](#)
 - [Reset Supplies](#)
 - [New Document Feeder Kit](#)
 - c. Select the [Reset](#) item.
3. Use the [Calibration/Cleaning](#) menu to calibrate the scanner.
 - a. From the Home screen on the control panel, scroll to and touch the [Device Maintenance](#) button.
 - b. Open the following menus:
 - [Calibration/Cleaning](#)
 - [Calibrate Scanner](#)
 - c. Touch the [Next](#) button to start the calibration process. Follow the on-screen prompts.
 - d. Wait while the product calibrates the scanner.

Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Document-feeder hinge assembly

Remove the following assemblies:

- Scanner rear cover. See [Scanner rear cover on page 182](#).
- Scanner control board (SCB). See [Scanner control board \(SCB\) on page 185](#).
- Document feeder. See [Document feeder on page 201](#).

Remove the document-feeder hinge assembly

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

For each hinge, remove four screws and then remove the hinge assembly.

Figure 1-335 Remove the document-feeder hinge assembly

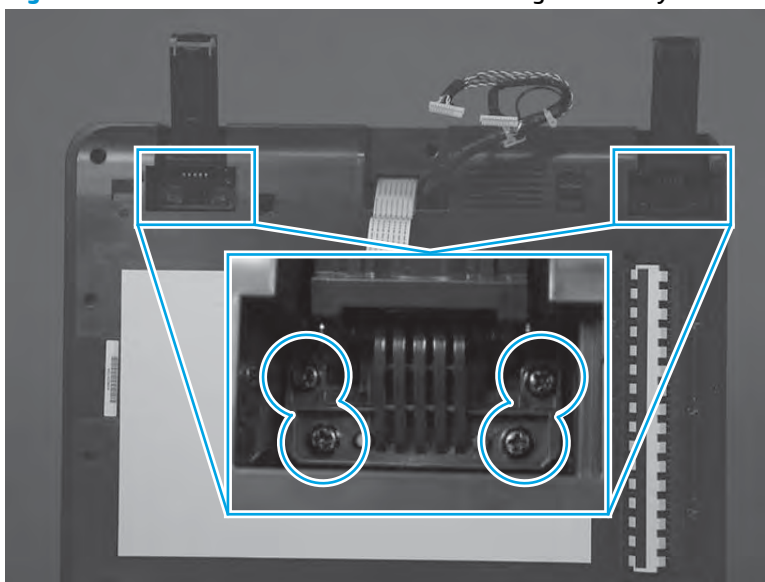


Image scanner assembly

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the scanner rear cover](#)
- [Step 2: Remove the SCB](#)
- [Step 3: Remove the document feeder](#)
- [Step 4: Remove the image scanner assembly](#)
- [Step 5: Unpack the replacement image scanner assembly](#)
- [Step 6: Install the image scanner assembly](#)
- [Step 7: Install the document feeder](#)
- [Step 8: Install the SCB](#)
- [Step 9: Install the scanner rear cover](#)
- [Step 10: Install the replacement document feeder white backing](#)
- [Step 11: Reset the supplies counters and calibrate the scanner](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the image scanner assembly.

Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the kit.

image scanner assembly kit part number	
B3G86-67905	Image scanner assembly kit with instruction guide
NOTE: The image scanner kit includes the document feeder white backing kit.	

Do the following steps:

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

If installed, remove the optional stapler mailbox.

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

Step 1: Remove the scanner rear cover

1. Remove two screws.

Figure 1-336 Remove two screws



2. Remove the cover.

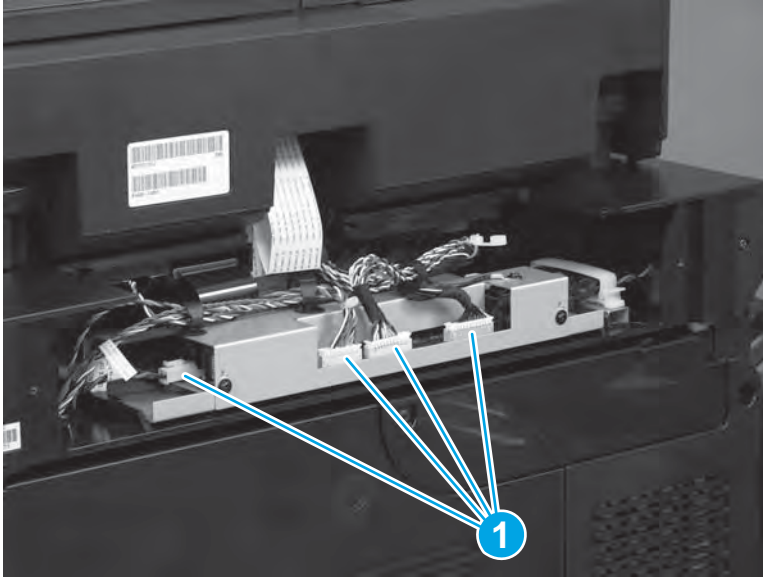
Figure 1-337 Remove the cover



Step 2: Remove the SCB

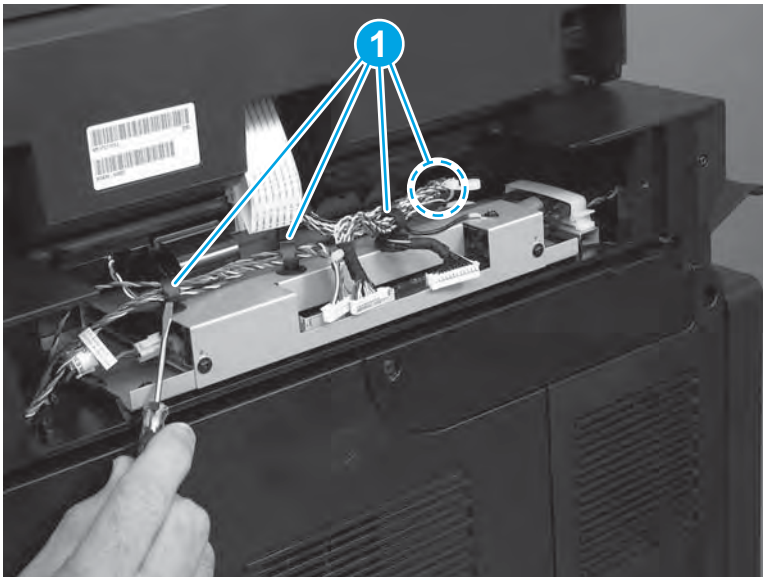
1. Disconnect four connectors (callout 1).

Figure 1-338 Disconnect four connectors



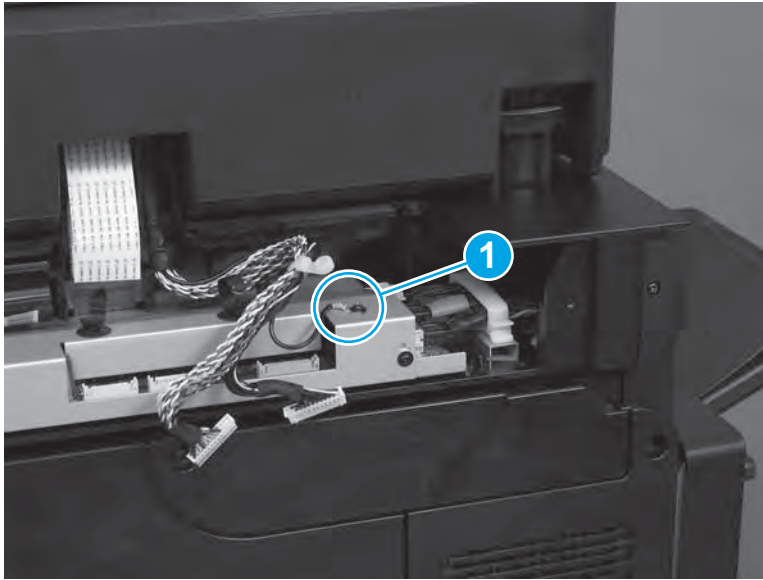
2. Use a small flat-blade screwdriver to release four retainers (callout 1), and then remove the wire harnesses from the retainers.

Figure 1-339 Release four retainers



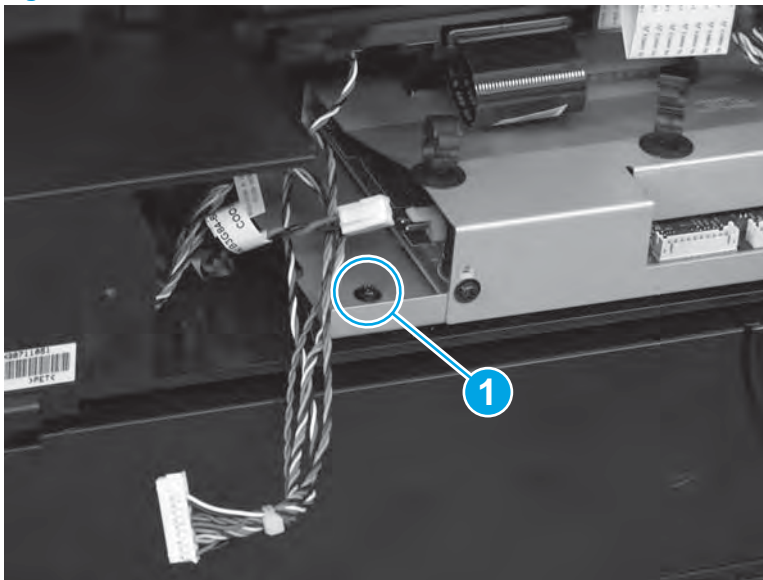
3. On the right side of the SCB, remove one ground screw (callout 1) to release the ground wire.

Figure 1-340 Remove one screw and the ground wire



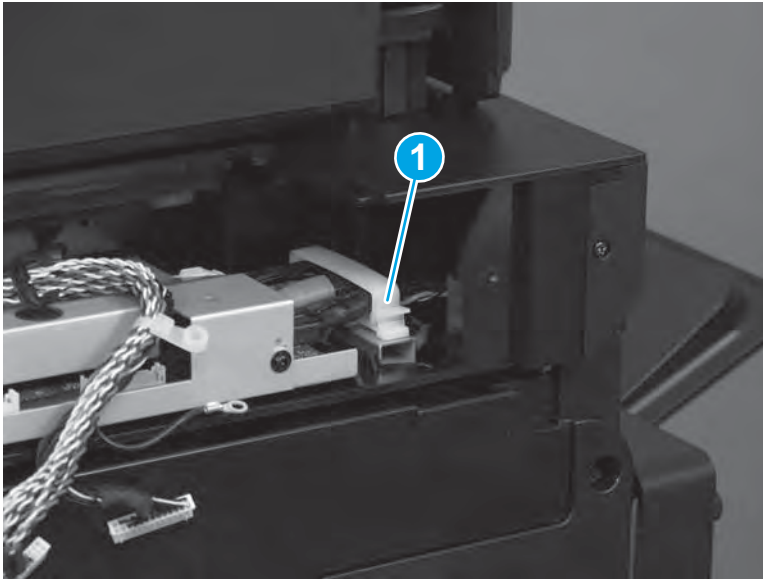
4. On the left side of the SCB, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-341 Remove one screw



5. At the right side of the SCB, press down on the retainer (callout 1) to release it.

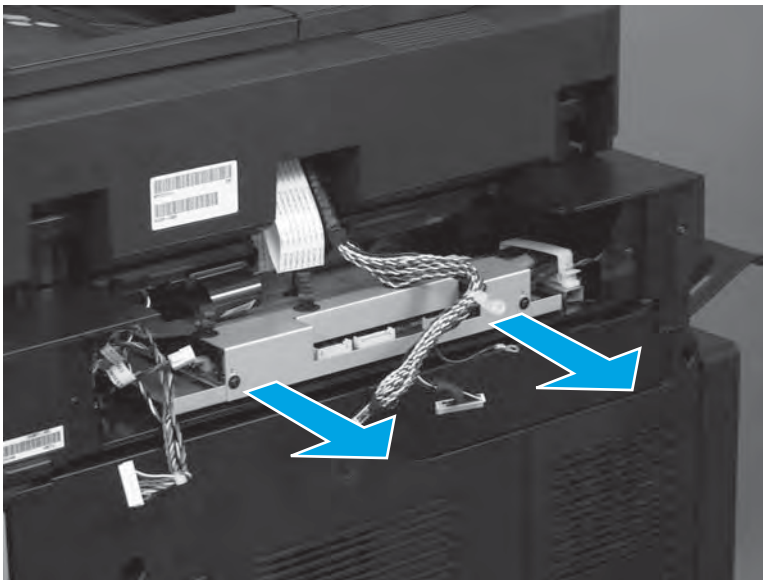
Figure 1-342 Release one retainer



6. Partially slide the SCB out of the product.

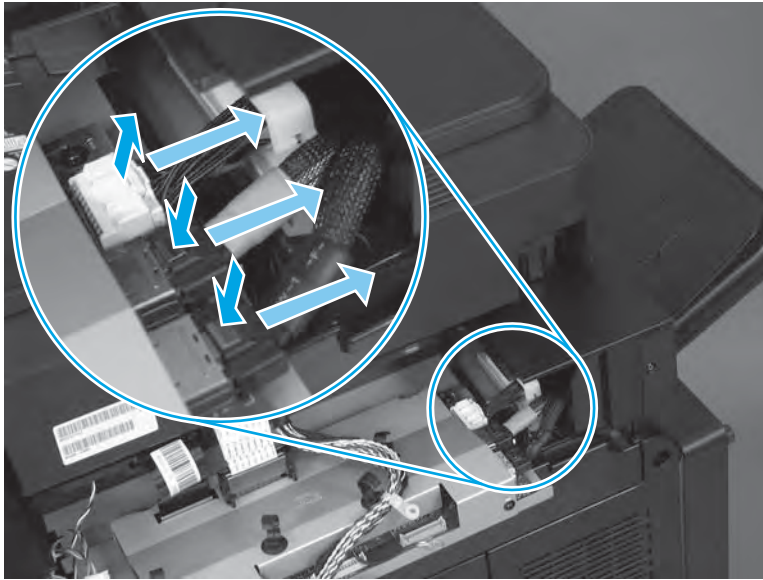
CAUTION: The SCB is still attached to the product by two FFCs. Do not attempt to completely remove the SCB.

Figure 1-343 Partially slide the SCB out



7. Use a small flat-blade screw driver to release three connectors (callout 1).

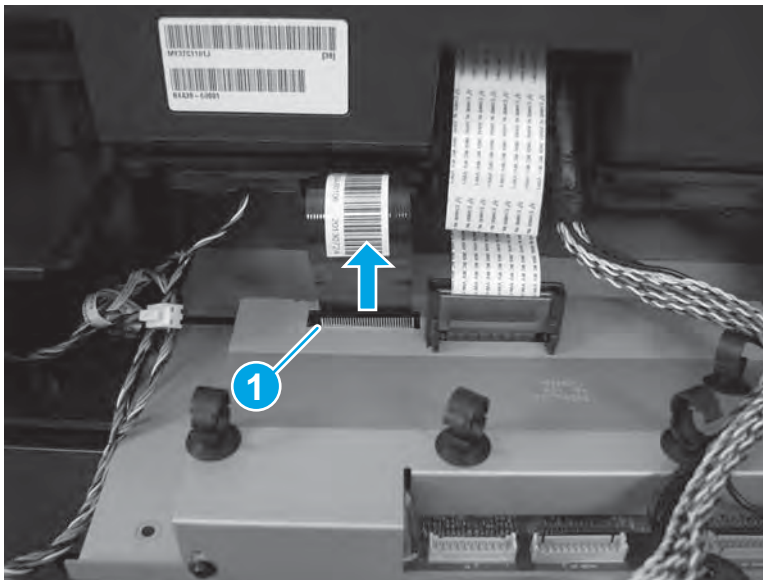
Figure 1-344 Release three connectors



8. Pull straight up on the black scanner FFC (callout 1) to disconnect it.

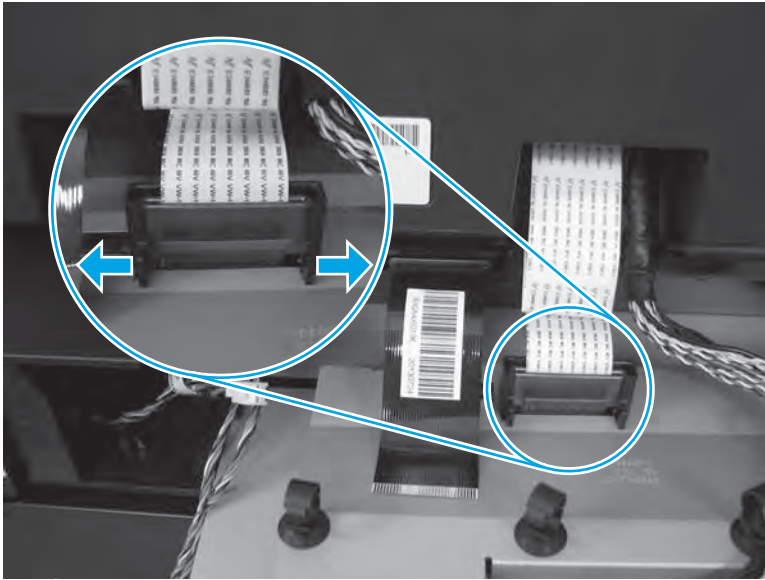
⚠ CAUTION: Be careful. The FFC must be pulled straight up and out of the connector to prevent damaging it.

Figure 1-345 Remove the FFC



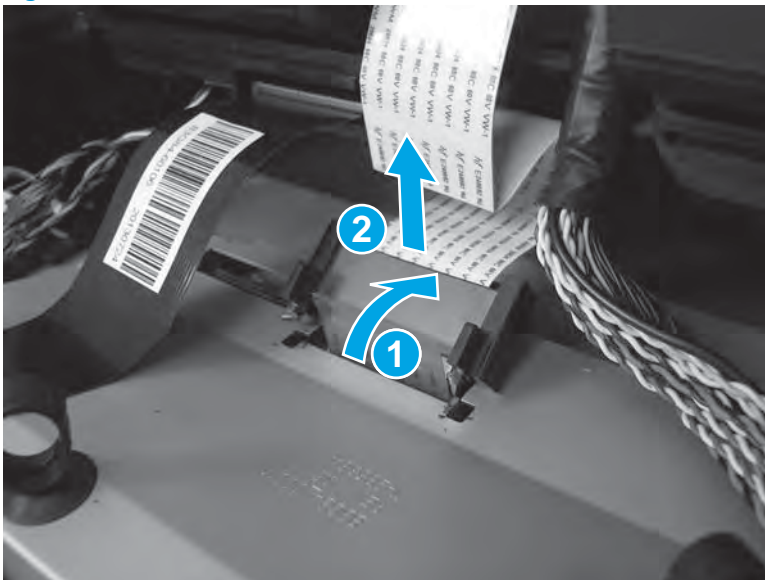
- Carefully push the tabs on the ferrite holder outward to release them.

Figure 1-346 Release two tabs



- Rotate the holder backward (callout 1), and then remove it (callout 2). Slide the holder up the FFC.

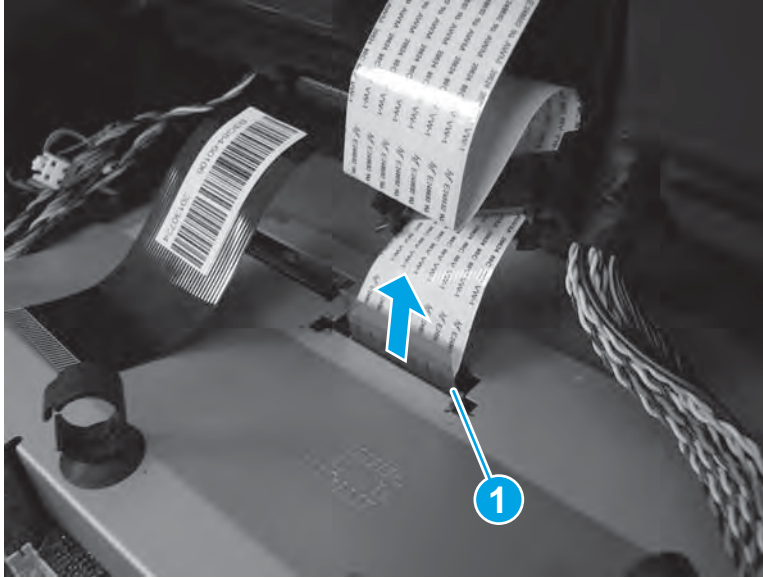
Figure 1-347 Remove the ferrite and holder



11. Pull straight up on the white document-feeder FFC (callout 1) to disconnect it.

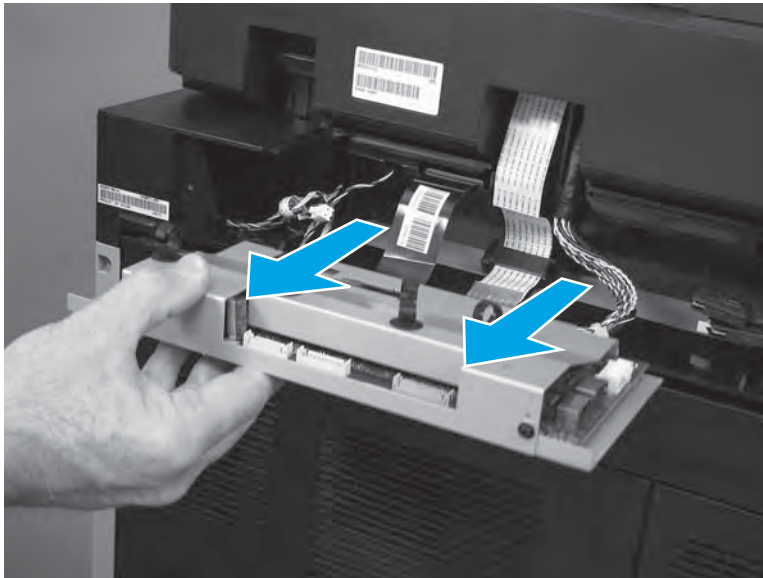
CAUTION: Be careful. The FFC must be pulled straight up and out of the connector to prevent damaging it.

Figure 1-348 Remove the FFC



12. Slide the SCB out of the product to remove it.

Figure 1-349 Remove the SCB

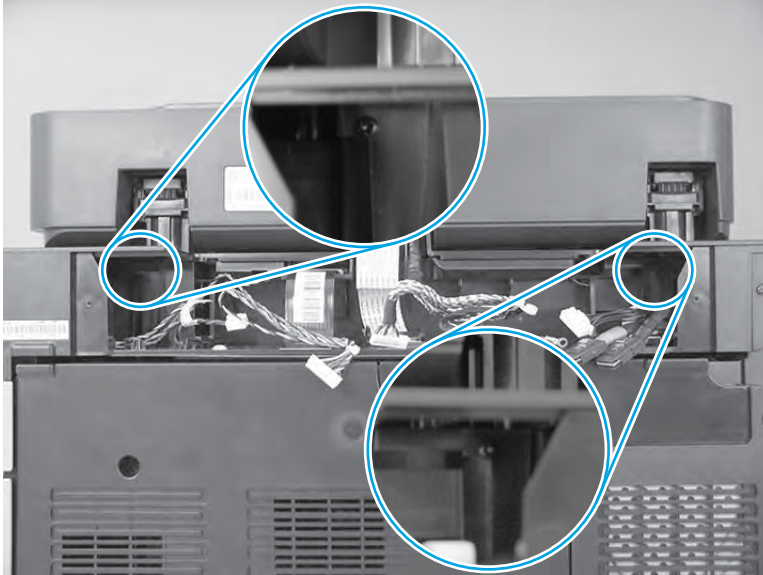


Step 3: Remove the document feeder

1. Loosen, but do not remove, two document-feeder hinge-locking screws. Back them out about 13 mm (0.5 in).

NOTE: Do not remove these screws. They are difficult to reinstall.

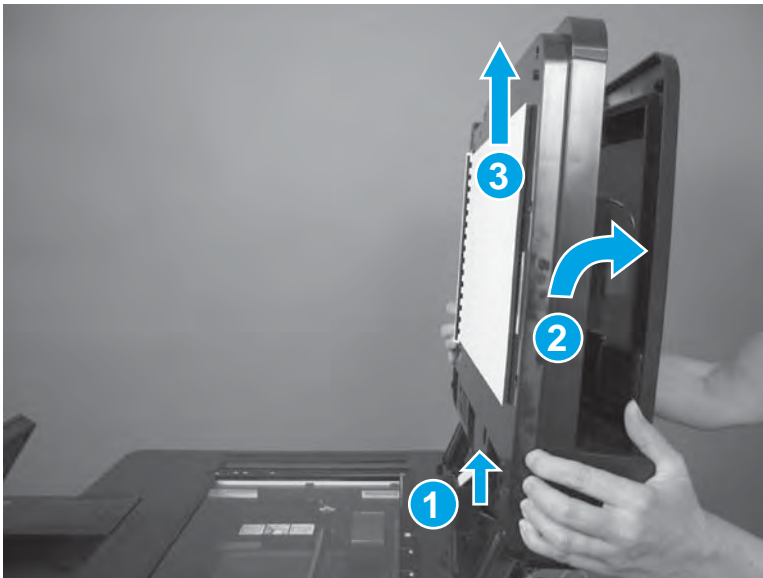
Figure 1-350 Loosen two screws



2. Open the document feeder, lift it up until it stops (callout 1), tilt it back (callout 2), and then pull it straight up (callout 3) to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: The document feeder weighs 5.6 kg (12.3 lb).

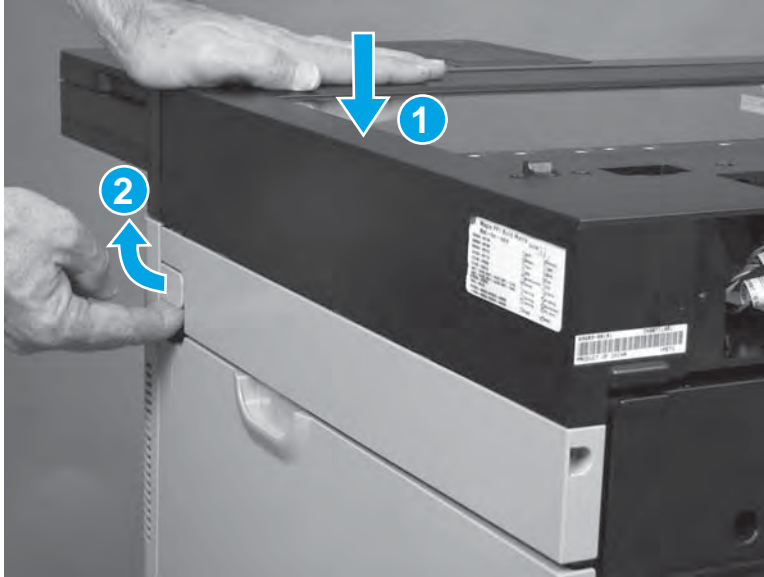
Figure 1-351 Remove the document feeder



Step 4: Remove the image scanner assembly

1. Firmly hold down the top of the scanner (callout 1), and then release the top cover latch (callout 2).

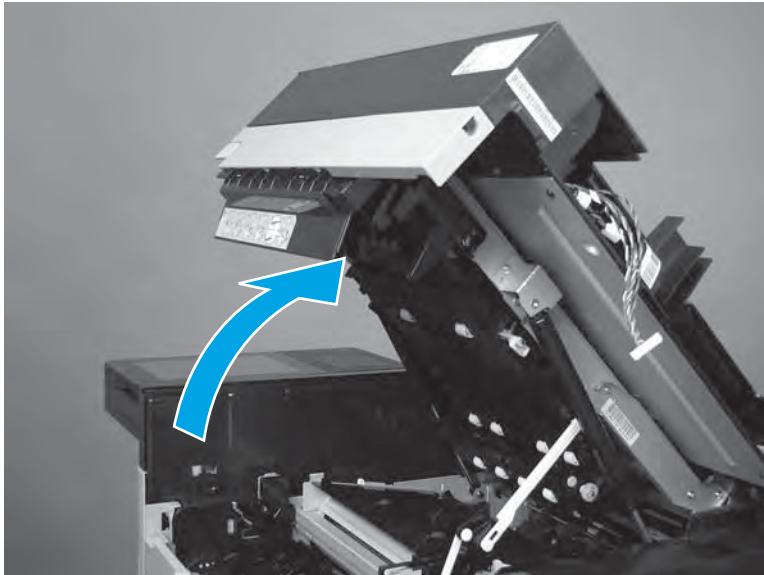
Figure 1-352 Release the scanner latch



2. Carefully open the image top cover.

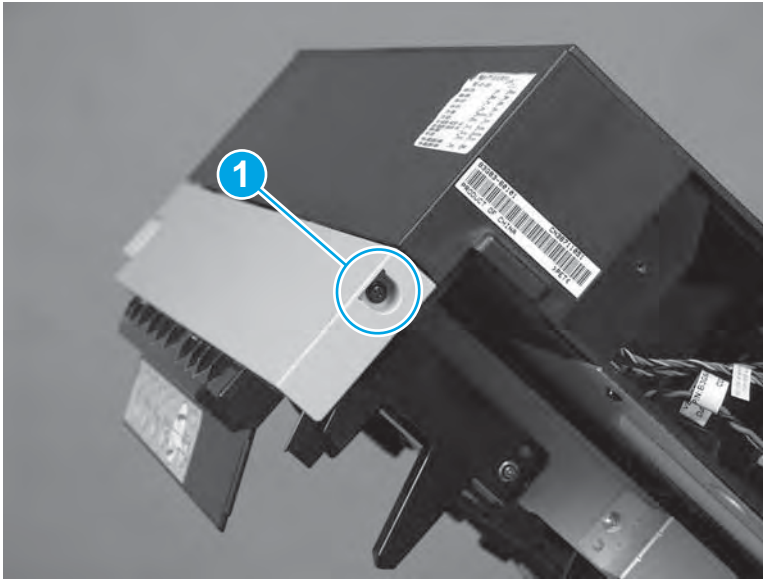
CAUTION: The image scanner assembly is mounted on pneumatic pistons that can cause the scanner to open uncontrollably quick when the document feeder is not installed.

Figure 1-353 Open the image scanner assembly



3. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-354 Remove one screw



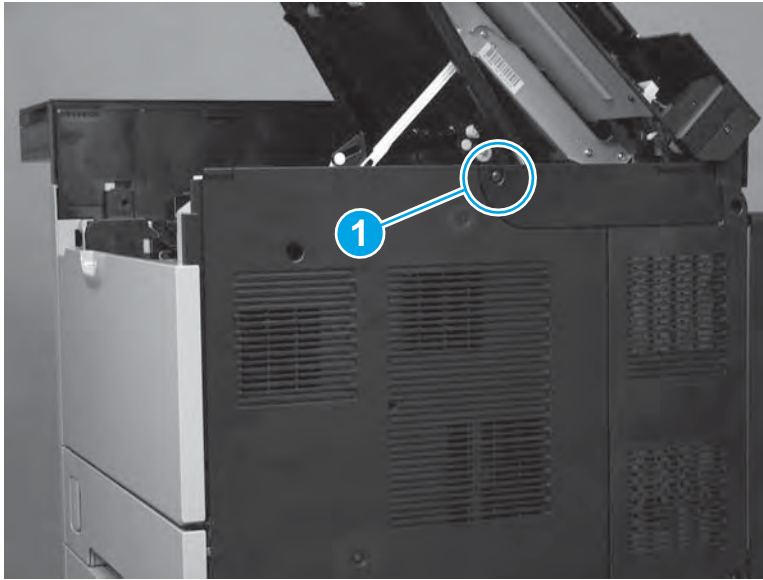
4. Carefully flex the corner of the scanner front-lower cover to release one tab.

Figure 1-355 Release one tab



5. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-356 Remove one screw



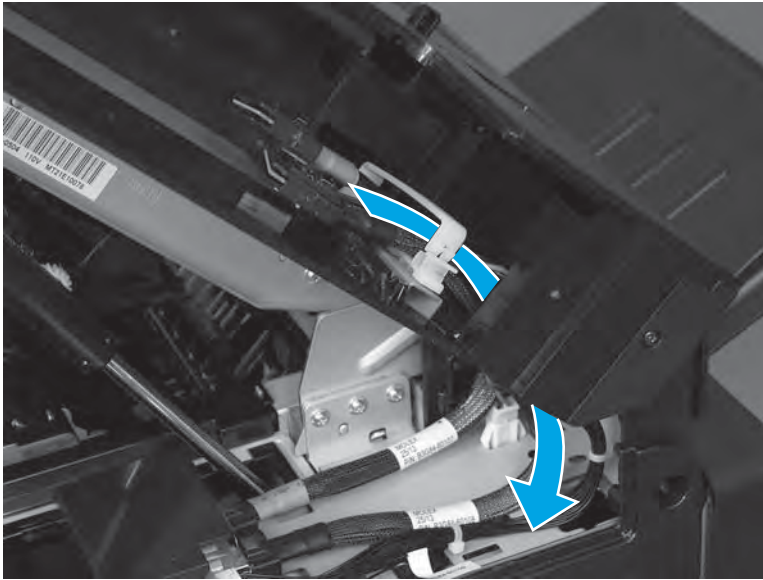
6. Remove the scanner cable cover.

Figure 1-357 Remove the scanner cable cover



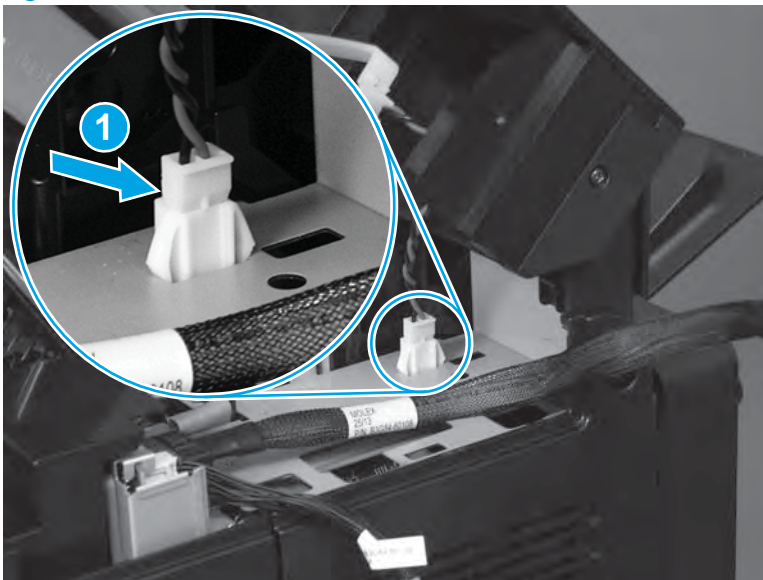
7. Carefully feed three cables through the opening in the image scanner assembly.

Figure 1-358 Feed the cables through the opening



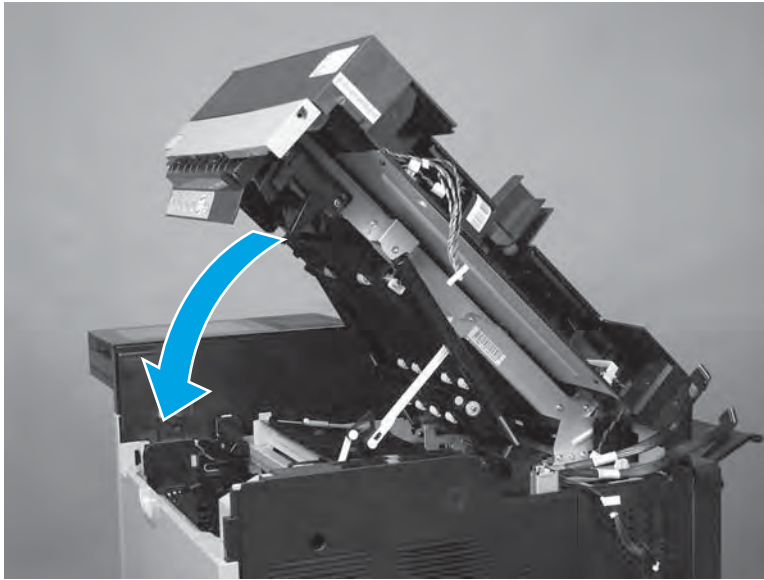
8. Push in on one connector (callout 1) to release it, and then disconnect the connector.

Figure 1-359 Disconnect one connector



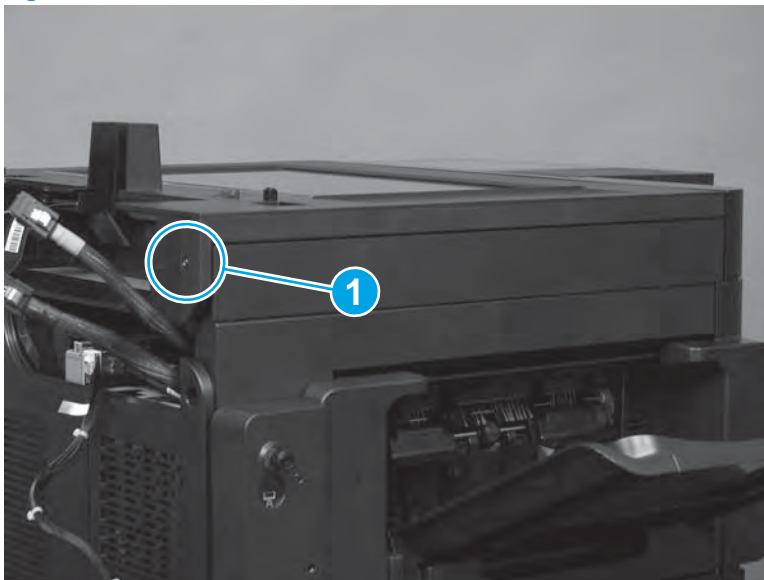
9. Carefully close the top cover.

Figure 1-360 Close the image scanner assembly



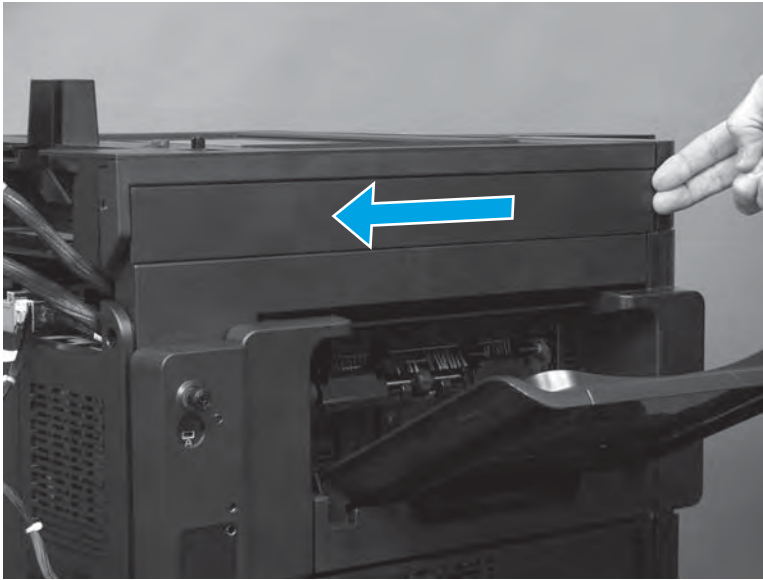
10. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-361 Remove one screw



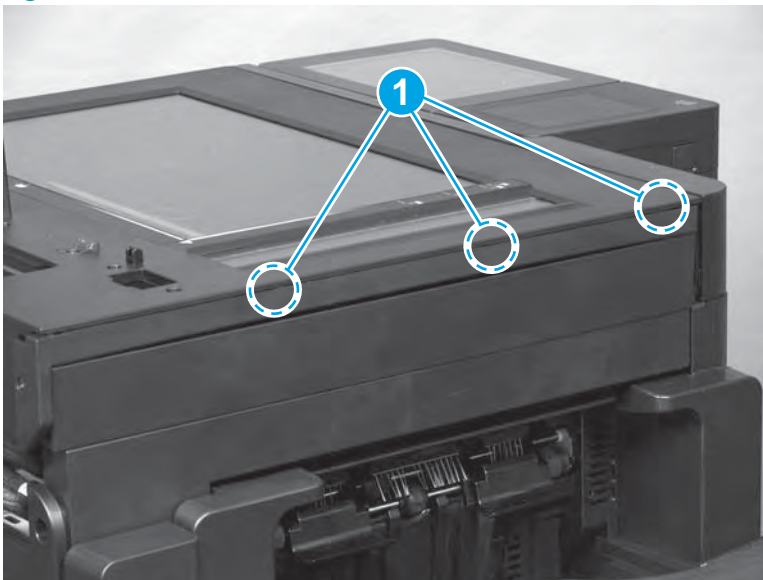
11. Slide the hinge cover to the left to release it.

Figure 1-362 Release the cover



12. Release three tabs (callout 1).

Figure 1-363 Release three tabs



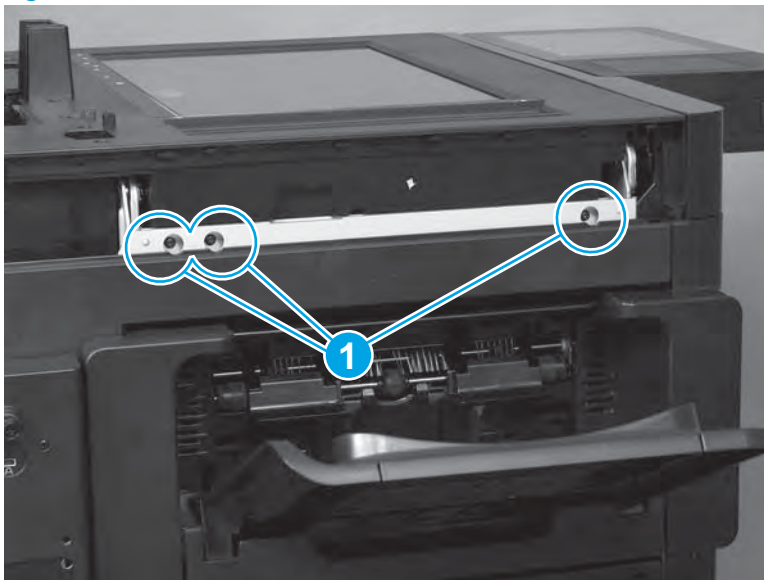
13. Remove the hinge cover.

Figure 1-364 Remove the cover



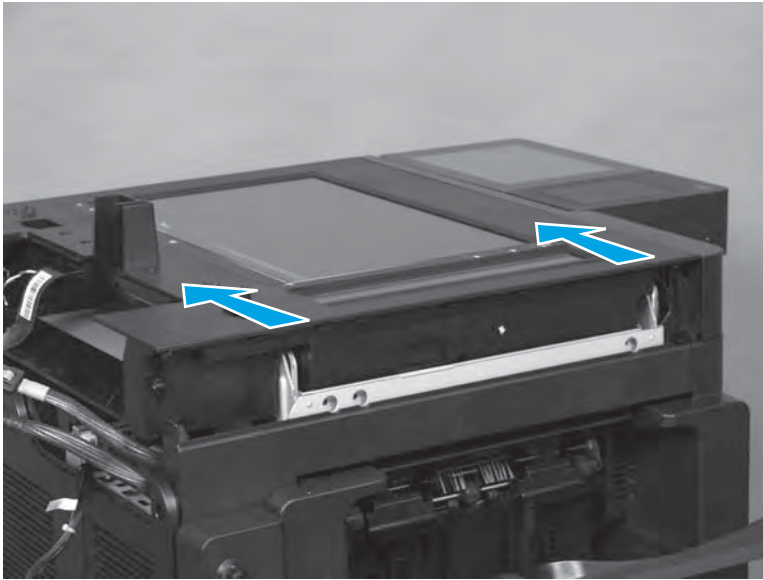
14. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-365 Remove three screws



15. Slide the image scanner assembly towards the right side of the product until it stops.

Figure 1-366 Slide the image scanner assembly until it stops



16. Carefully lift the image scanner assembly up and off of the product.

CAUTION: The image scanner assembly scanner weighs 6.2 kg (11.4lb).

Figure 1-367 Remove the scanner assembly



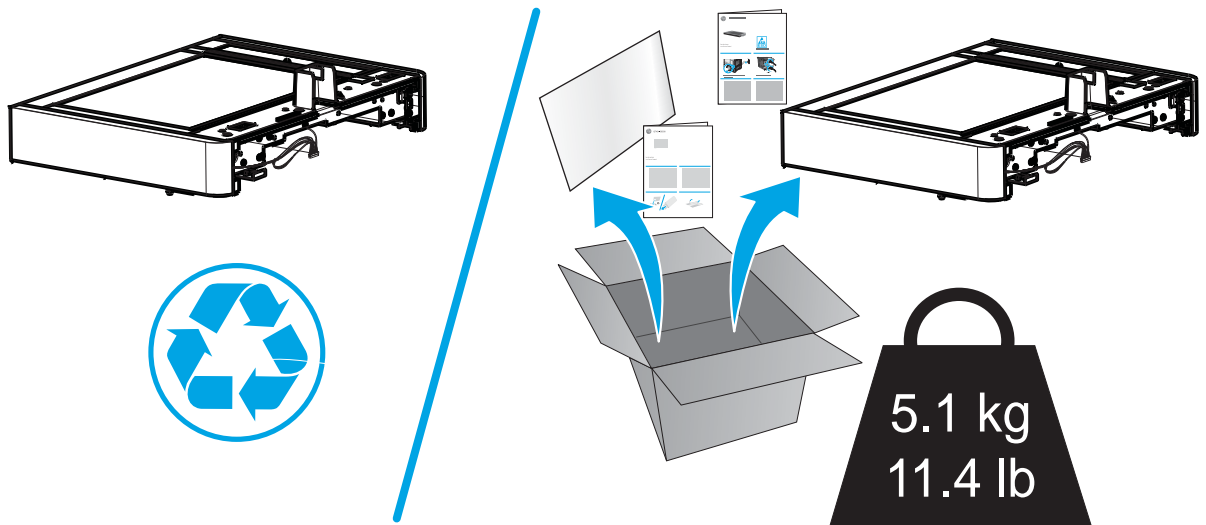
- 17.

Step 5: Unpack the replacement image scanner assembly

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

www.Product return and recycling

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.



Step 6: Install the image scanner assembly

1. When the replacement image scanner assembly is installed on the product, make sure that the tab on the assembly fits behind the corner of the lower scanner cover (callout 1).


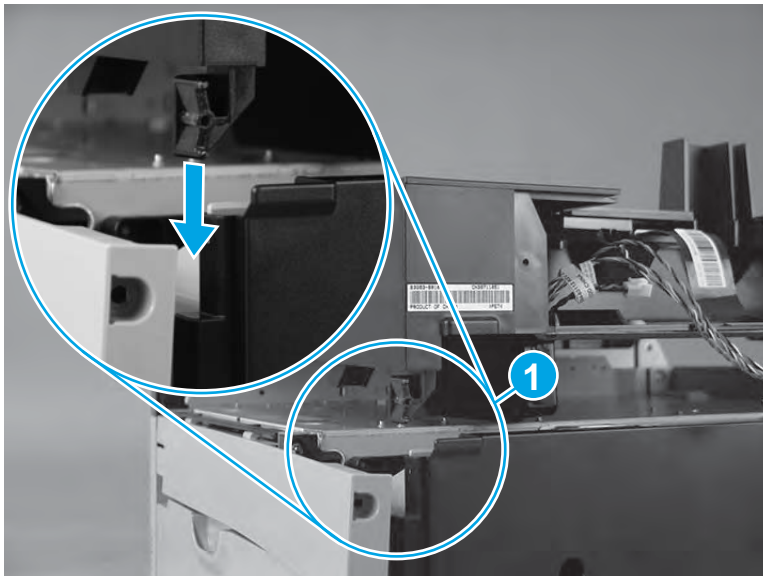
 **IMPORTANT:** Do not dislodge this cover when installing the replacement image scanner assembly.

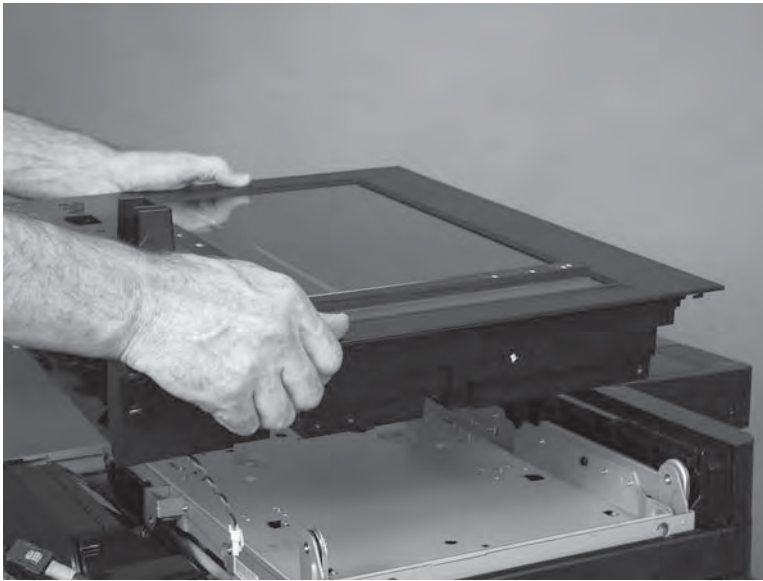
Figure 1-368 Install the lower scanner cover tab



2. Carefully position the image scanner assembly on the product.

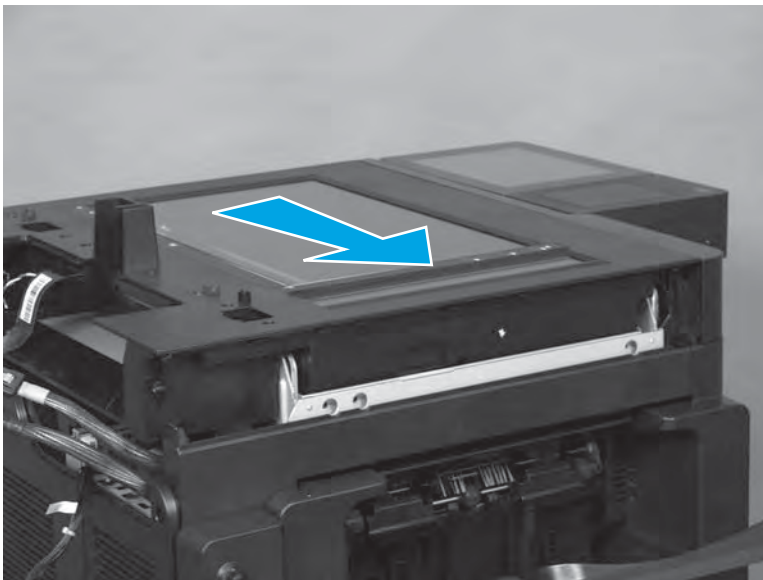
⚠ CAUTION: The image scanner assembly scanner weighs 6.2 kg (11.4lb).

Figure 1-369 Install the scanner assembly



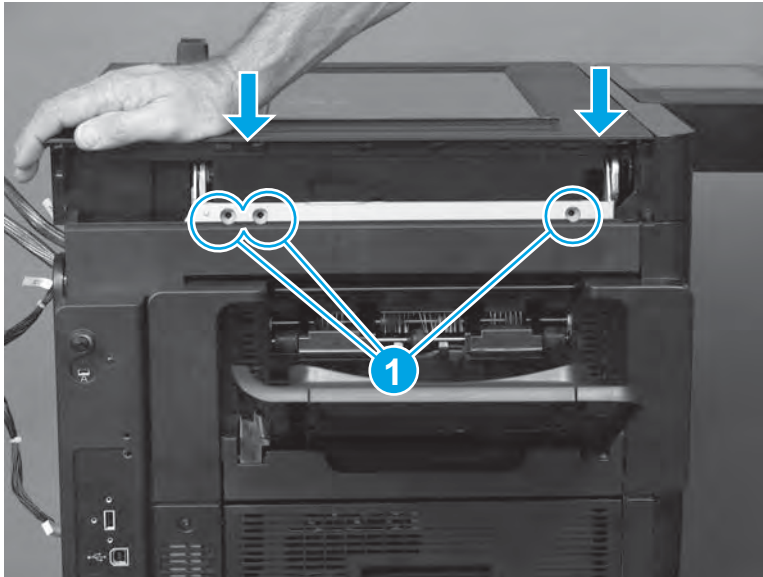
3. Slide the image scanner assembly toward the left side of the product until it is tight up against the sheet-metal bracket.

Figure 1-370 Slide the image scanner assembly as shown



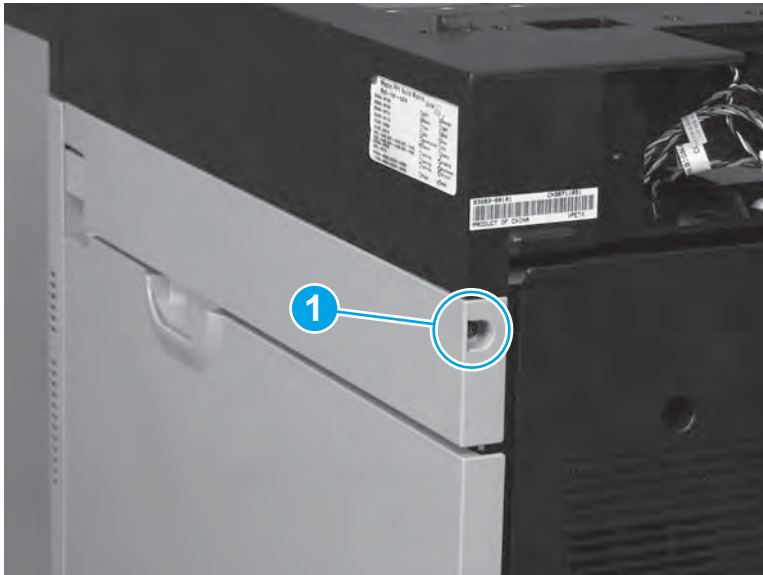
4. Push down on the assembly to align the mounting screw holes with the sheet-metal bracket, and then install three screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-371 Install three screws



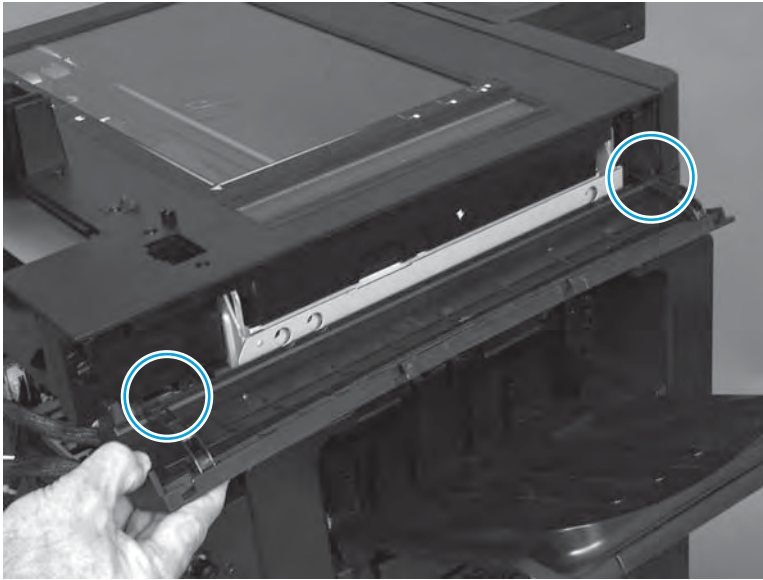
5. Install one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-372 Install one screw



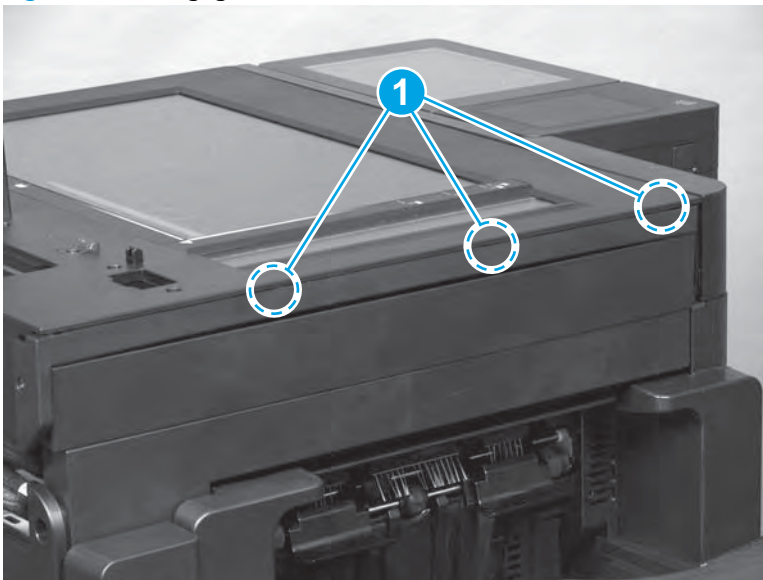
6. Engage the tabs on the hinge cover with the product as it is installed.

Figure 1-373 Engage the tabs



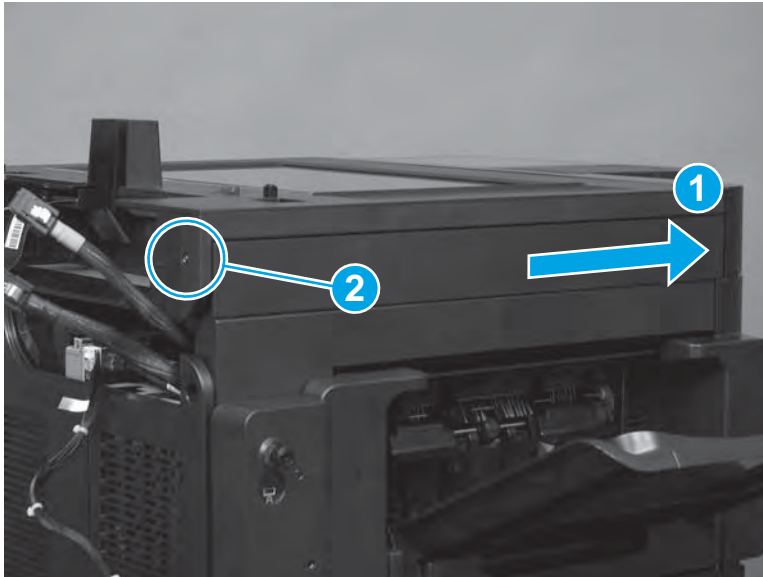
7. Make sure to engage the three tabs (callout 1) at the top of the cover.

Figure 1-374 Engage three tabs



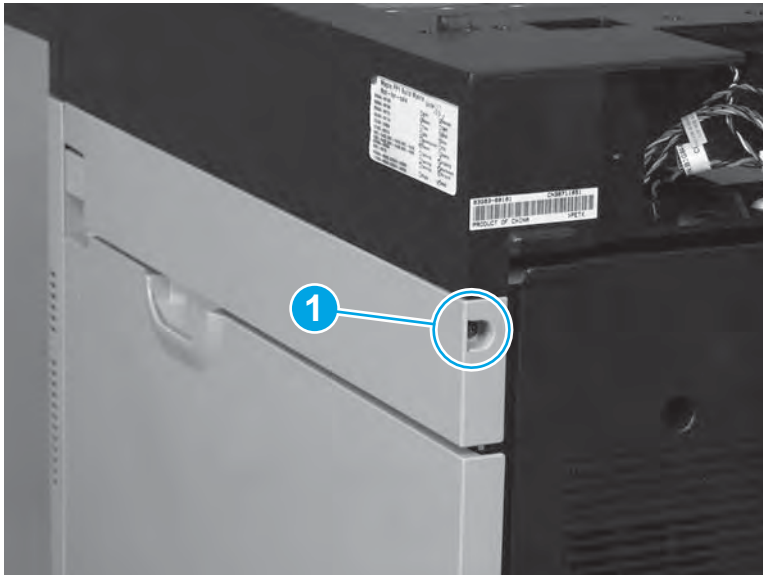
8. Slide the cover to the right to the (callout 1) to engage the corner of the cover with the product, and then install one screw (callout 2).

Figure 1-375 Install one screw



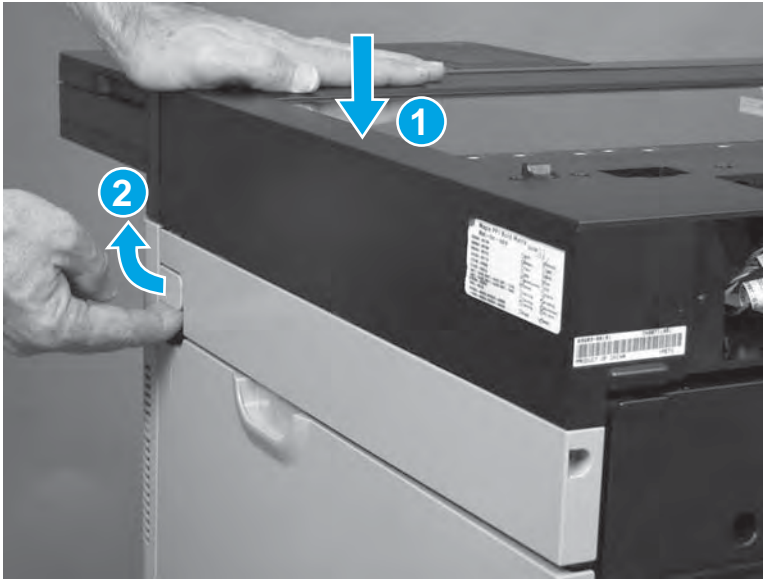
9. Install one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-376 Install one screw



10. Hold down the top of the scanner firmly and release the top cover latch.

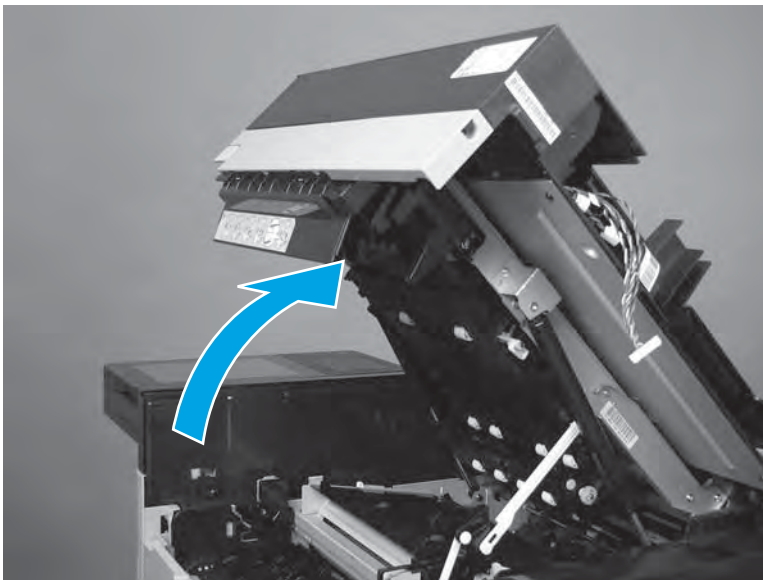
Figure 1-377 Release the scanner latch



11. Carefully open the top cover.

CAUTION: The image scanner assembly is mounted on pneumatic pistons that can cause the scanner to open uncontrollably quick when the document feeder is not installed.

Figure 1-378 Open the image scanner assembly



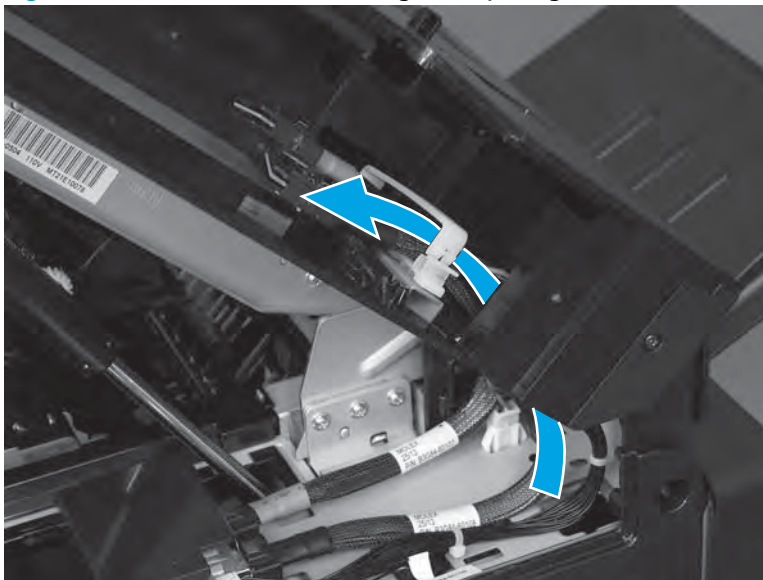
12. Connect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 1-379 Connect one connector



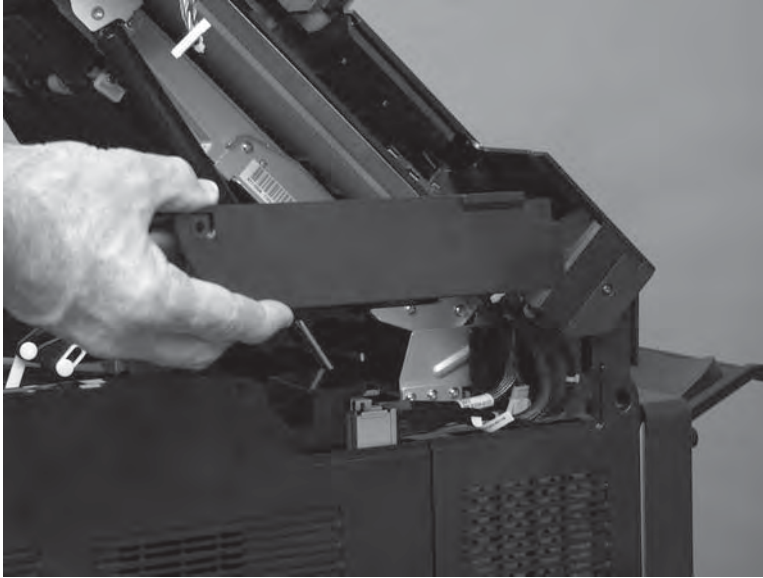
13. Carefully feed three cables through the opening in the image scanner assembly.

Figure 1-380 Feed the cables through the opening



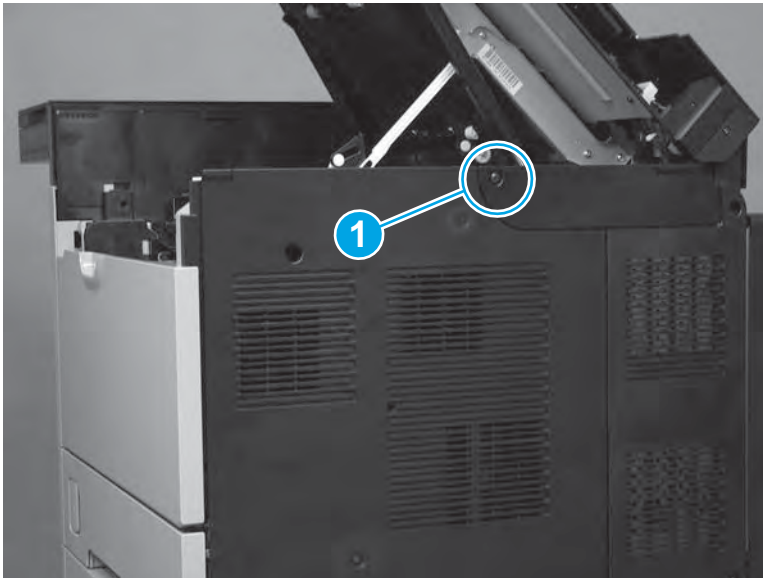
14. Install the scanner cable cover.

Figure 1-381 Install the scanner cable cover



15. Install one screw (callout 1), and then close the top cover.

Figure 1-382 Install one screw



Step 7: Install the document feeder

1. Before reinstalling the document feeder, make sure that the FFC and the wire harness is correctly routed through the openings in the cover.

CAUTION: If the FFC and wire harness are not correctly routed, they will be damaged when the document feeder is installed.

Figure 1-383 Route the document feeder FFC and cables

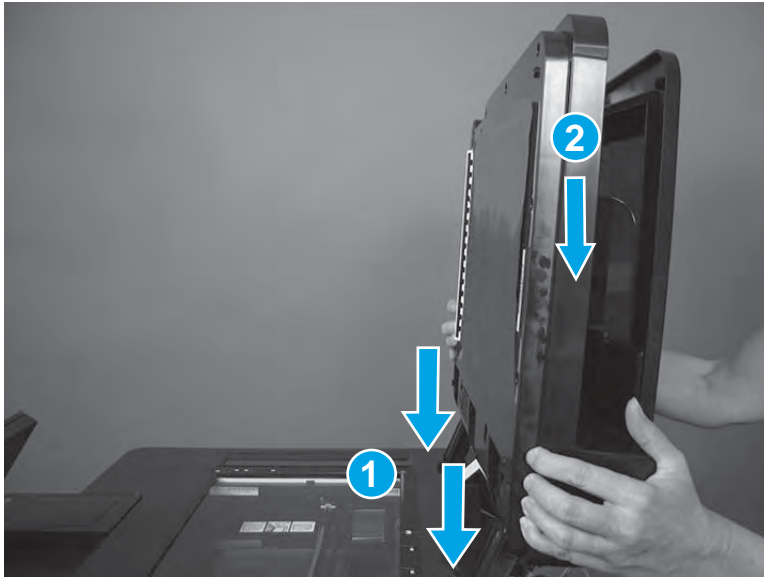


2. Position the document feeder hinges in the holes provided (callout 1), and then lower the hinges into the holes (callout 2).

CAUTION: The document feeder weighs 5.6 kg (12.3 lb).

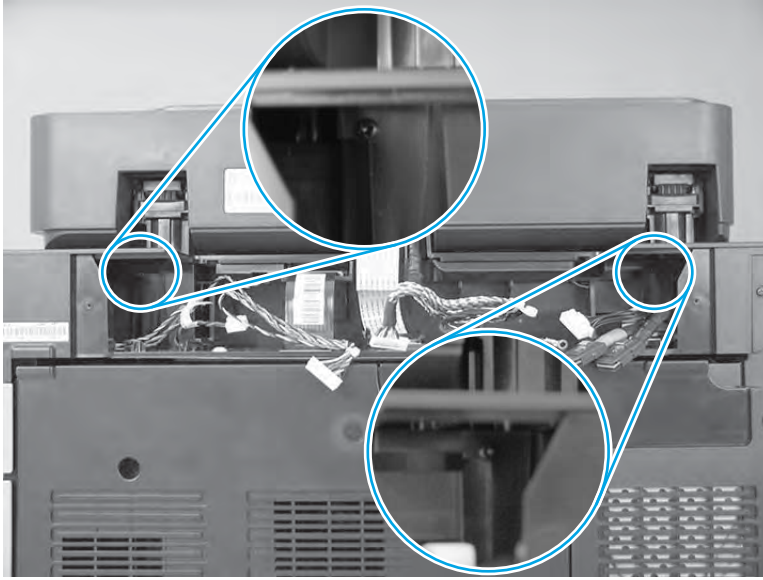
IMPORTANT: Make sure that the document feeder wire harness and FFC are correctly routed at the back of the product before lowering the document feeder into place.

Figure 1-384 Install the document feeder



3. Close the document feeder, and then tighten the two document-feeder hinge-locking screws.

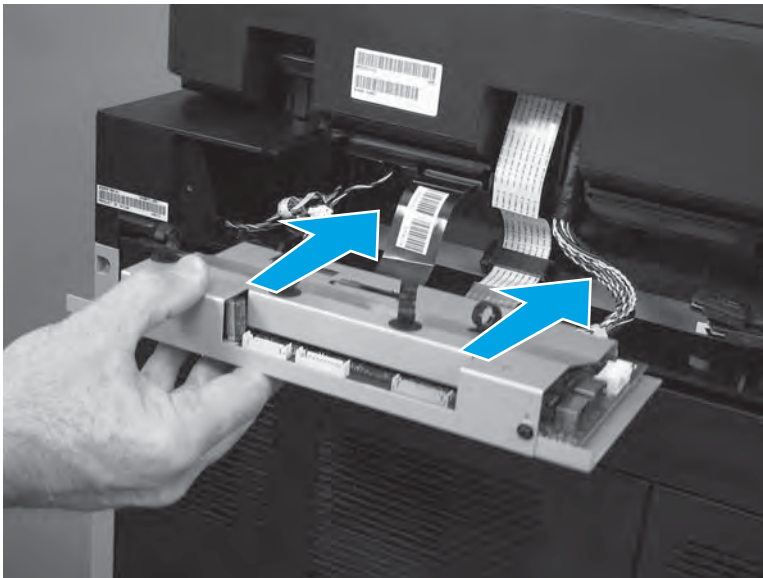
Figure 1-385 Tighten two screws



Step 8: Install the SCB

1. Partially slide the SCB into the product—make sure that the sides of the SCB engage the black plastic rails inside the product.

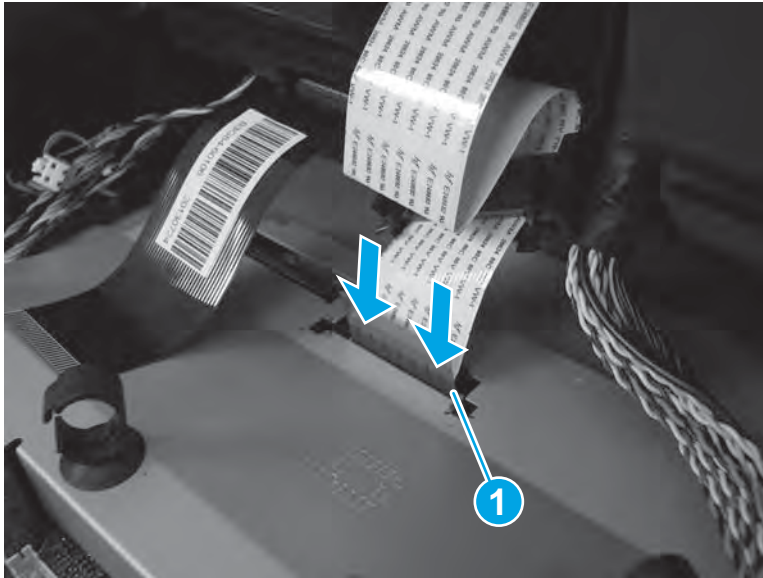
Figure 1-386 Install the SCB



2. Push straight down on the white document-feeder FFC (callout 1) to connect it.

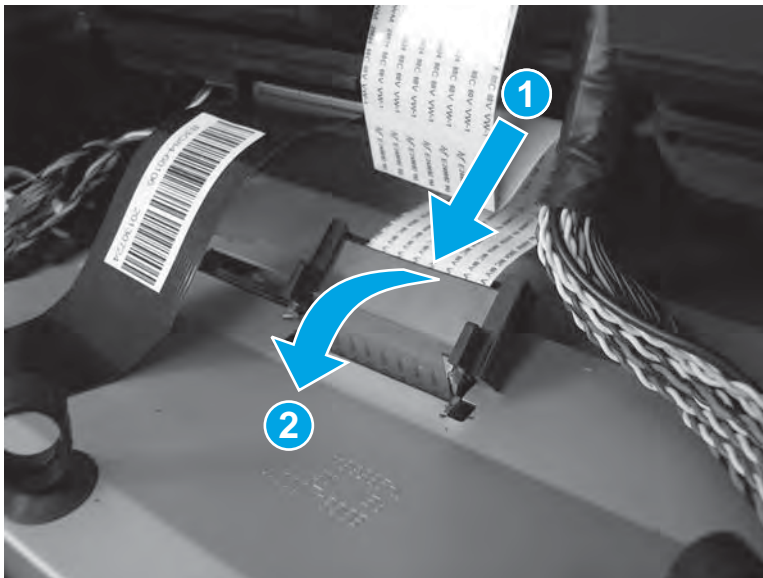
CAUTION: Be careful. The FFC must be pushed straight down and into the connector to prevent damaging it.

Figure 1-387 Connect the FFC



3. Insert the tabs at the back edge of the ferrite holder in the slot on the SCB chassis (callout 1), and then rotate (callout 2) the holder forward to install it.

Figure 1-388 Install the ferrite and holder



4. Make sure that the tabs on the ferrite holder snap into the SCB chassis.


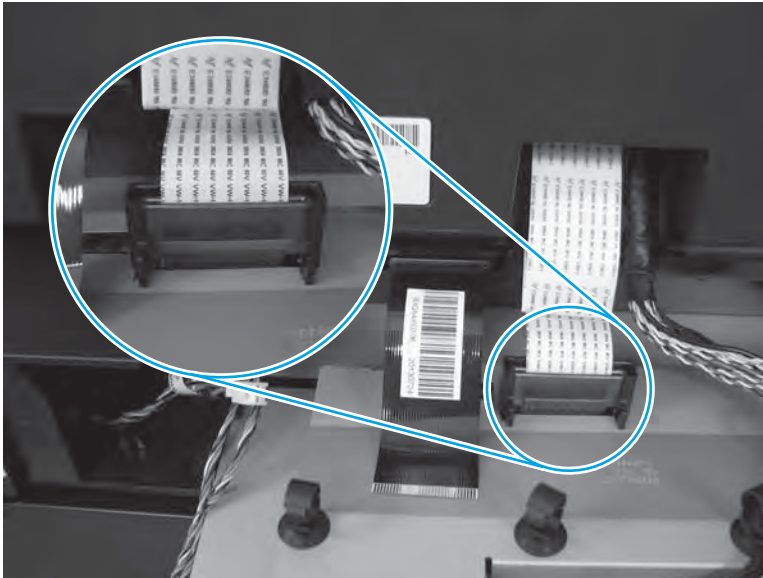
 **NOTE:** When correctly installed, the ferrite holder is flat against the SCB chassis and securely fastened.

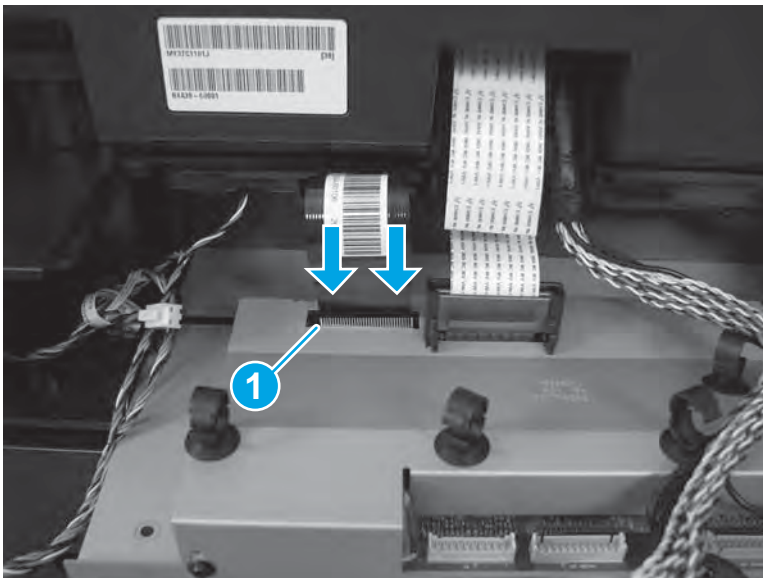
Figure 1-389 Check the two tabs




5. Push straight down on the black scanner FFC (callout 1) to connect it.

 **CAUTION:** Be careful. The FFC must be pushed straight down and into the connector to prevent damaging it.

Figure 1-390 Connect the FFC

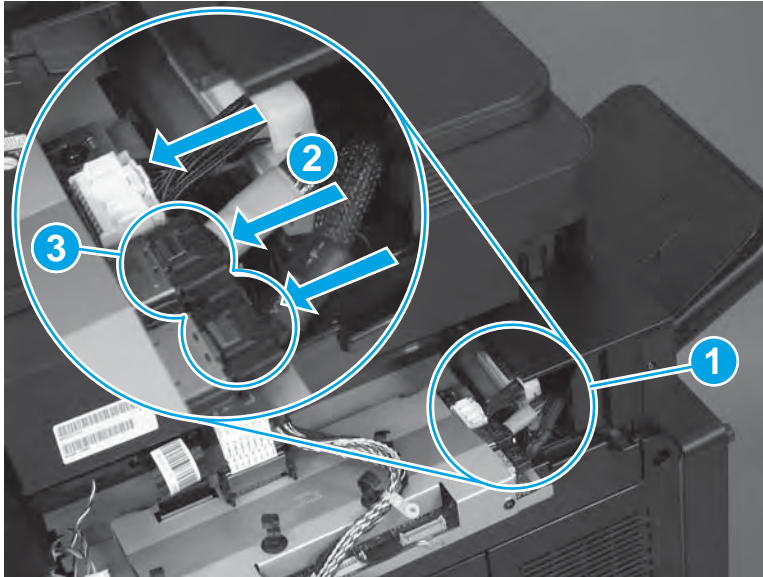


6. Connect three connectors (callout 1).

 **Reinstallation tip:** The wire harness with the blue band (callout 2) connects to the inner connector on the SCB when reinstalled.

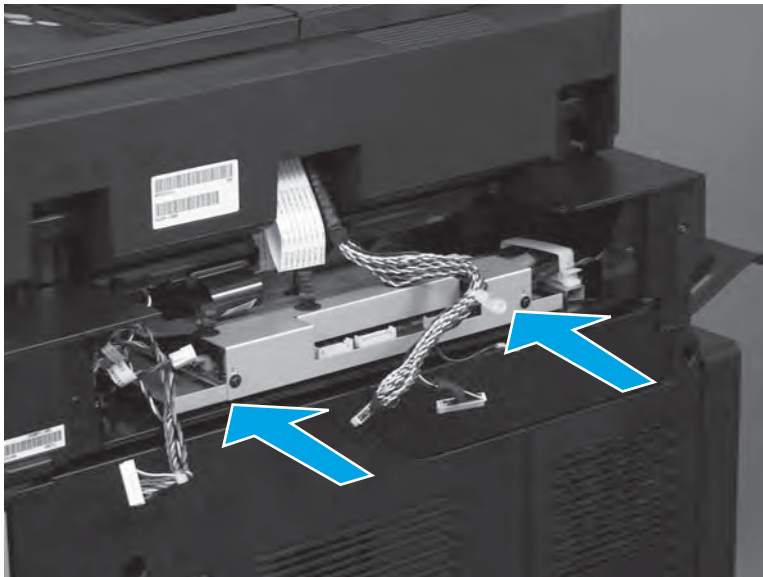
When the two connectors with the metal retainer clips (callout 3) are reinstalled, make sure that the clips snap in place to securely lock the connectors in place.

Figure 1-391 Connect three connectors



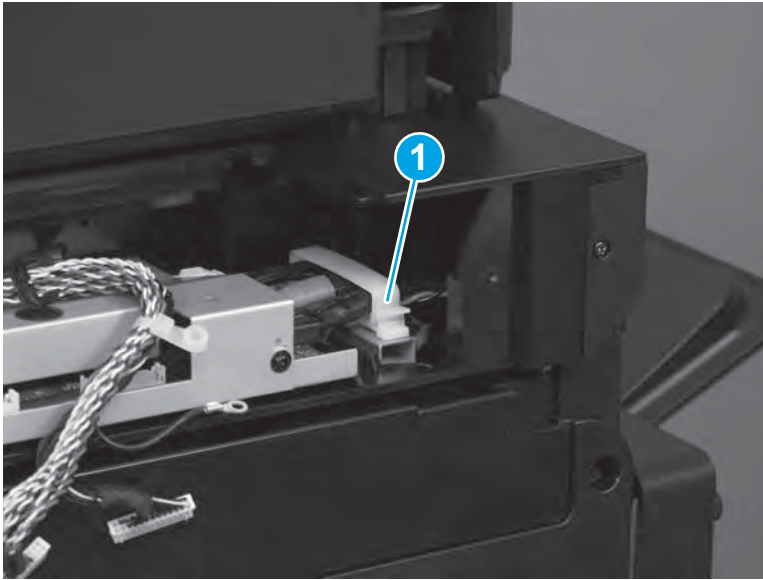
7. Slide the SCB into the product.

Figure 1-392 Slide the SCB in



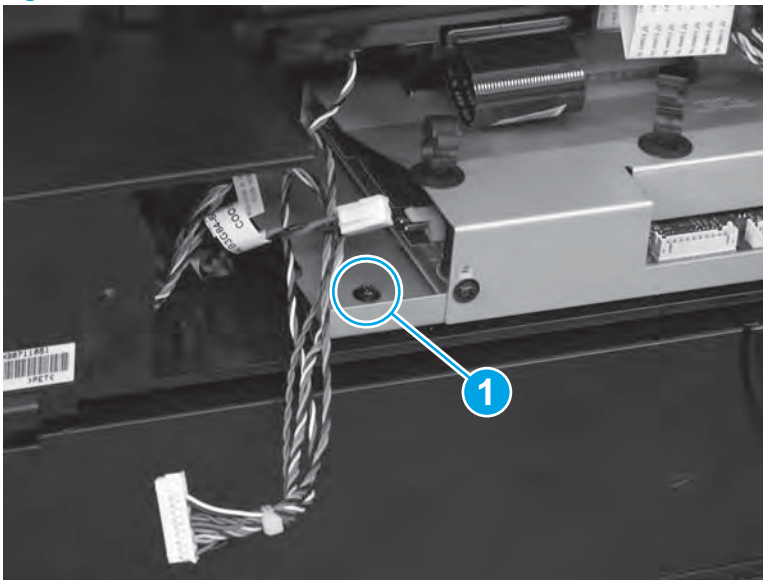
8. At the right side of the SCB, fasten one retainer (callout 1).

Figure 1-393 Fasten one retainer



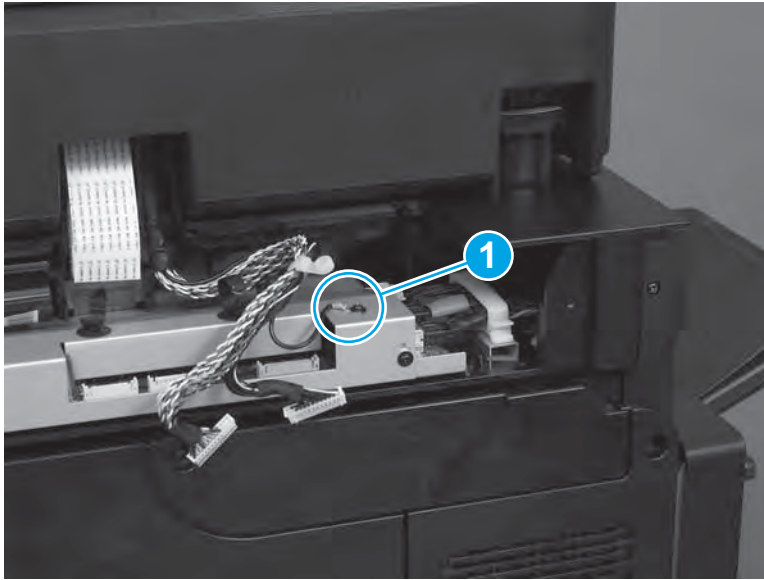
9. At the left side of the SCB, install one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-394 Install one screw



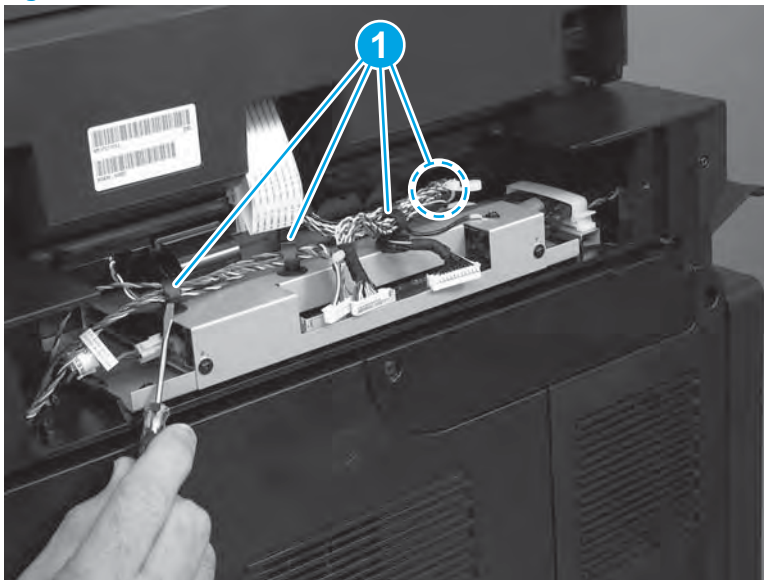
10. At the right side of the SCB, install the ground wire and one ground screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-395 Install the ground wire and one screw



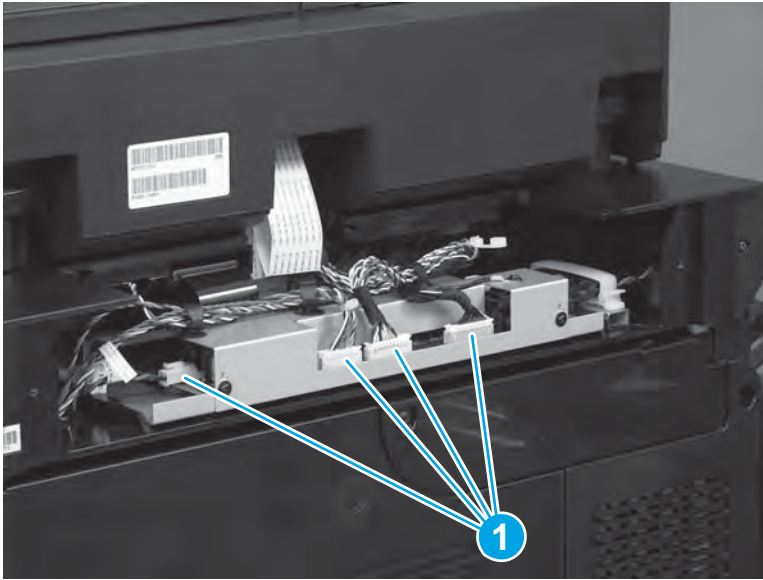
11. Install the wire harnesses in the four retainers (callout 1).

Figure 1-396 Install the wire harnesses



12. Connect four connectors (callout 1).

Figure 1-397 Connect four connectors



Step 9: Install the scanner rear cover

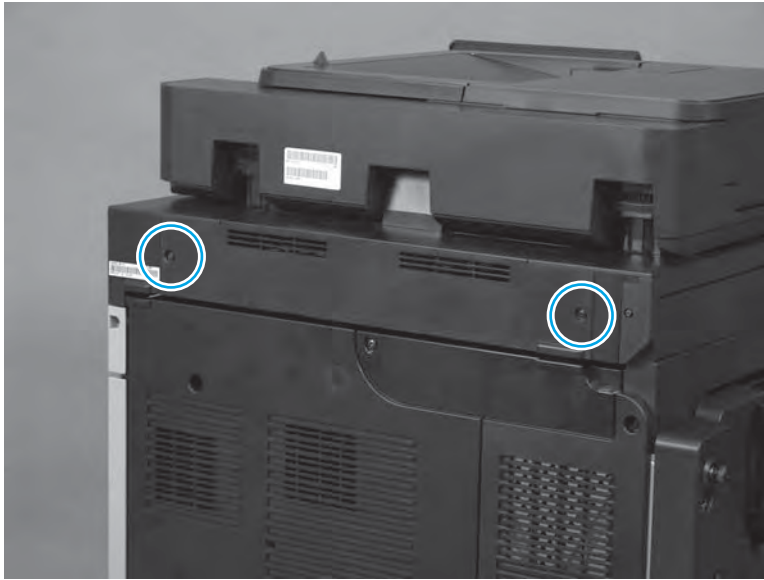
1. Install the cover.

Figure 1-398 Install the cover




2. Install two screws.

Figure 1-399 Install two screws



Step 10: Install the replacement document feeder white backing

 **IMPORTANT:** When a replacement image scanner assembly is installed, the document feeder white backing must also be replaced.

1. Open the document feeder.

Figure 1-400 Open the document feeder



2. Carefully remove the white backing.

Figure 1-401 Remove the white backing



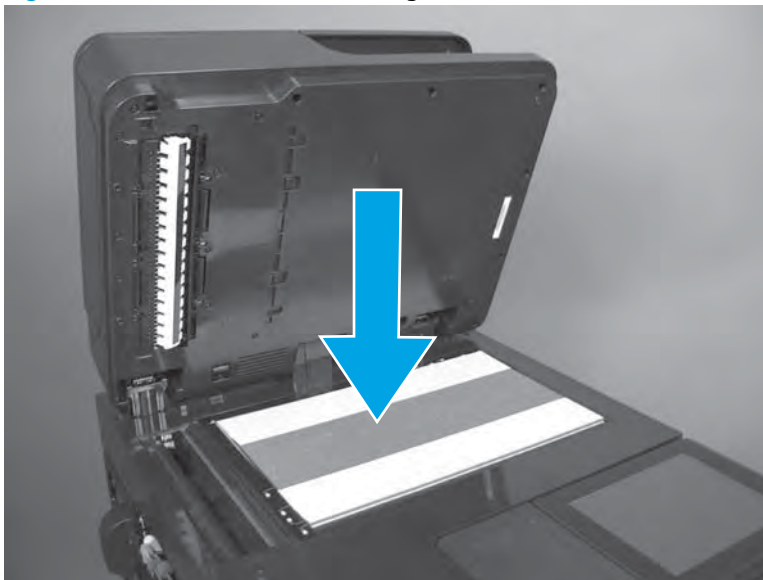
3. Remove any remaining adhesive.

Figure 1-402 Remove remaining adhesive



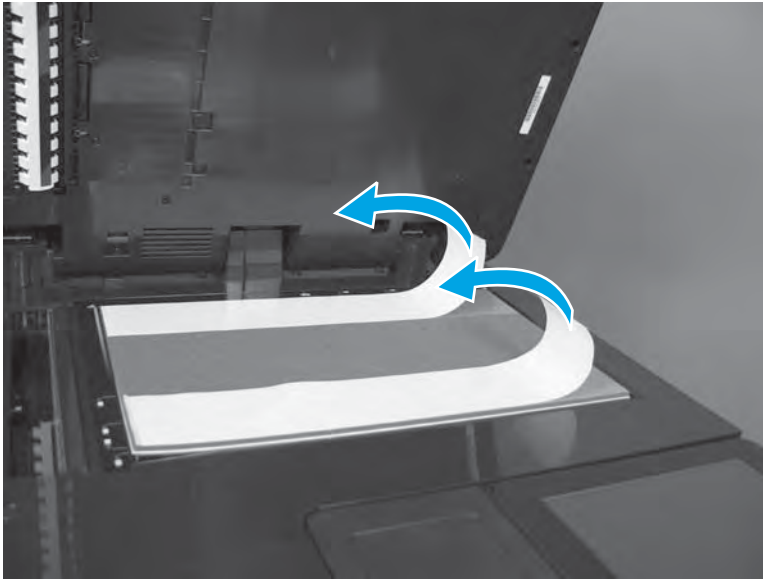
1. Place the white backing on the scanner glass.

Figure 1-403 Place the white backing on the scanner



2. Peel off the two strips of adhesive backing.

Figure 1-404 Peel off the adhesive backing



3. Place the two mylar-spacer strips (included with the kit) onto the adhesive, as shown.


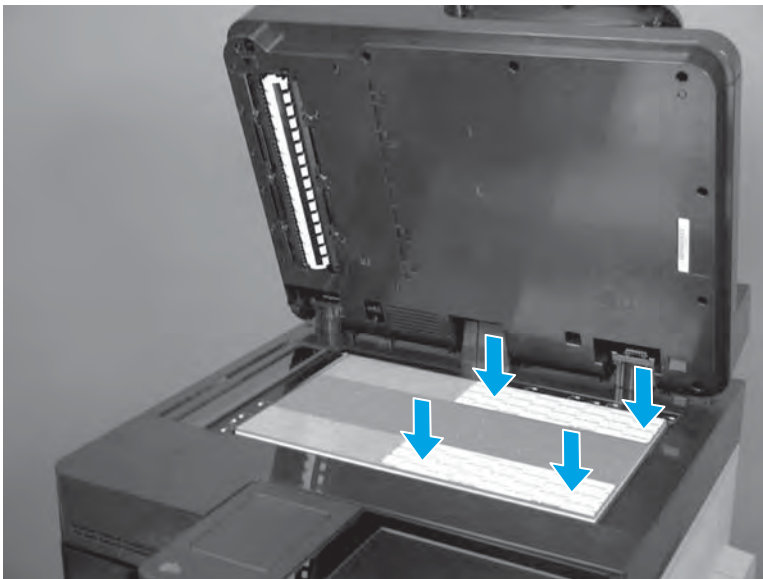
 **IMPORTANT:** Align the mylar with the edges of the adhesive on the white backing.

Figure 1-405 Place the two mylar-spacer strips onto the adhesive



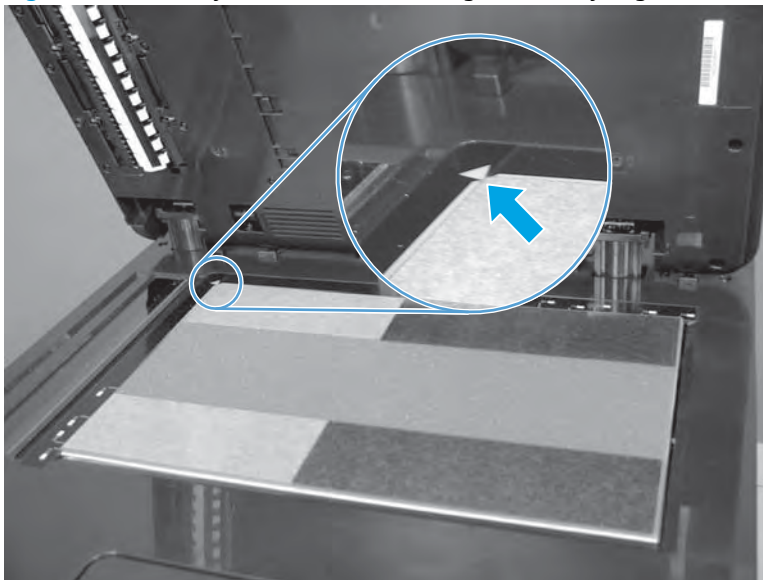
4. Peel off the two strips of adhesive backing.

Figure 1-406 Peel off the adhesive backing



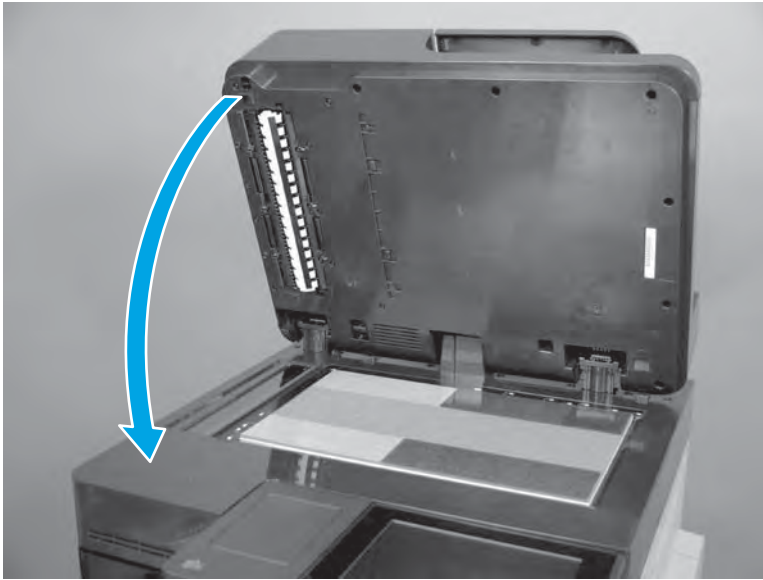
5. Verify that the white backing is aligned with the left rear corner of the scanner glass.

Figure 1-407 Verify that the white backing is correctly aligned



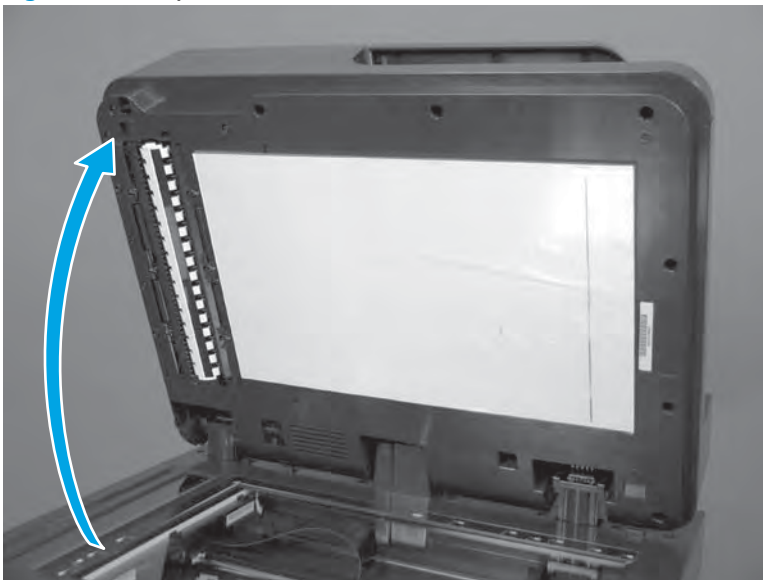
6. Close the document feeder. Press down firmly to adhere the white backing.

Figure 1-408 Close the document feeder and press down



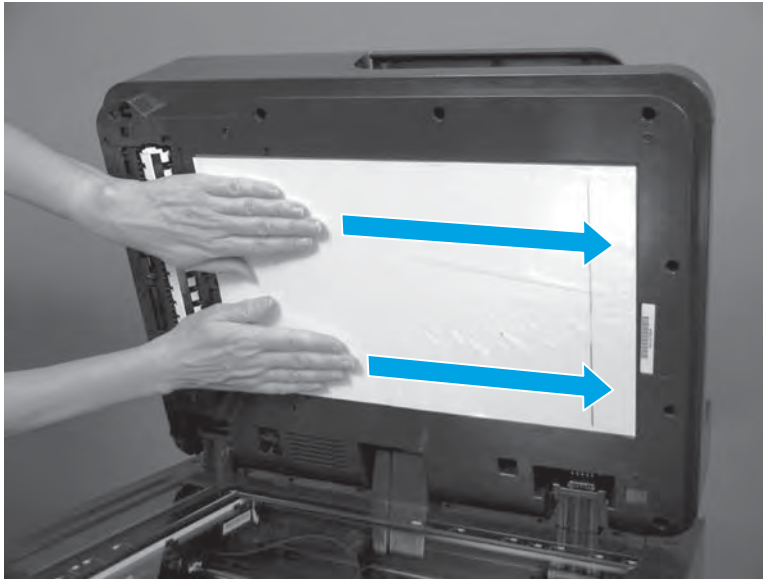
7. Open the document feeder.

Figure 1-409 Open the document feeder



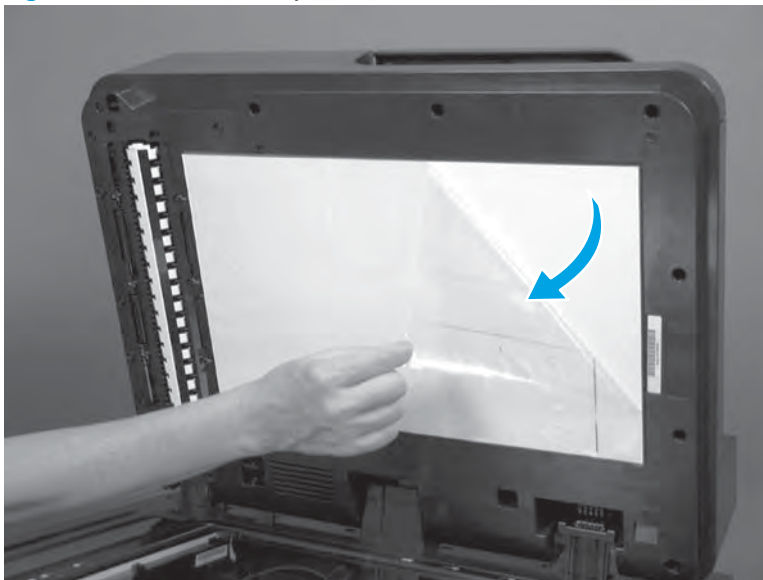
8. Press along the top and bottom of the white backing, over the areas with adhesive.

Figure 1-410 Press along the white backing



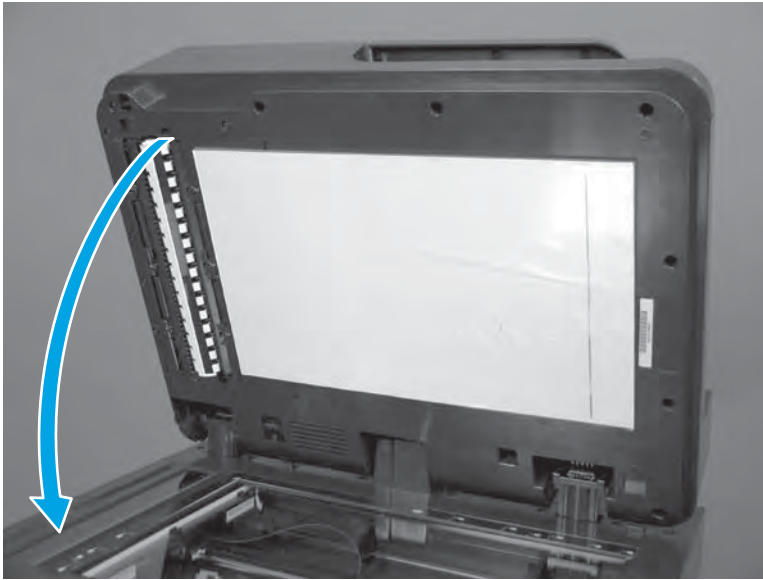
9. Peel off the protective plastic sheet.

Figure 1-411 Peel off the protective sheet



10. Close the document feeder.

Figure 1-412 Close the document feeder



Step 11: Reset the supplies counters and calibrate the scanner

If a replacement scanner is installed, perform the following tasks after reassembling the product:

Turn the product on.

1. Use the **Service** menu to reset the **Flatbed Count** firmware counter.
 - a. From the Home screen on the control panel, scroll to and touch the **Device Maintenance** button.
 - b. Open the **Service** menu.
 - c. On the sign-in screen, select the **Service Access Code** option from the drop-down list.
 - d. Enter the following service access code for this product: 09063014.
 - e. Reset the **Flatbed Count** to zero.
2. Use the **Calibration/Cleaning** menu to calibrate the scanner.
 - a. From the Home screen on the control panel, scroll to and touch the **Device Maintenance** button.
 - b. Open the following menus:
 - **Calibration/Cleaning**
 - **Calibrate Scanner**
 - c. Touch the **Next** button to start the calibration process. Follow the on-screen prompts.
 - d. Wait while the product calibrates the scanner.

Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Covers, doors, tray, and external panels (product base)

- [Identification and location \(product base\)](#)
- [Front cover](#)
- [Envelope feeder cover](#)
- [Image scanner cable cover](#)
- [Tray 1 cover](#)
- [Tray](#)
- [Side-rear cover](#)
- [Front-left cover and logo panel assembly](#)
- [Power-switch assembly](#)
- [Rear-right cover](#)
- [Rear-left cover](#)
- [Rear-top cover](#)
- [Right-lower door](#)
- [Document-feeder hinge cover](#)

Identification and location (product base)

Figure 1-413 Identification and location (product base)

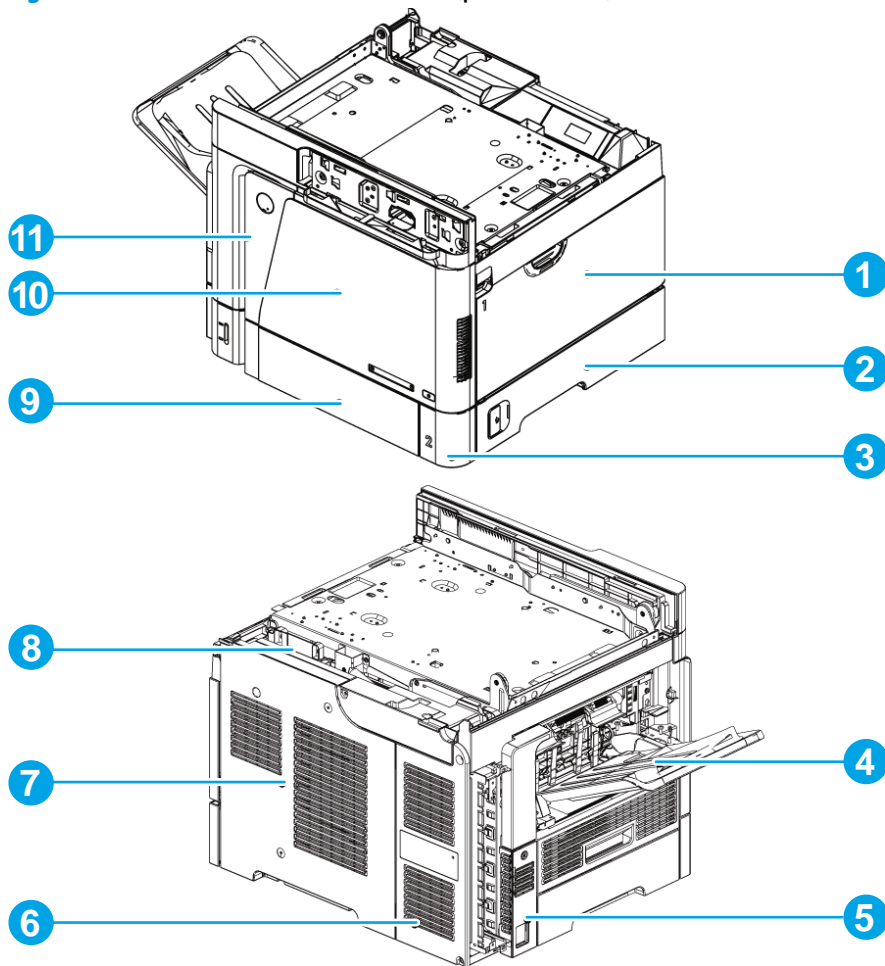


Table 1-1 Identification and location (product base)

Item	Description	Item	Description
1	Tray 1 (multipurpose tray) cover	7	Right rear cover
2	Lower-right cover	8	Rear top cover
3	Power-switch assembly	9	Tray 2 (cassette)
4	Tray 1 base assembly	10	Front cover
5	Rear-left corner cover	11	Left cover
6	Left-rear cover		

Front cover

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the front cover](#)
- [Step 2: Unpack the replacement front cover](#)
- [Step 3: Install the front cover](#)
- [Step 4: Turn the product power on](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the front cover.

Before servicing


Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the kit.

Front cover kit part number	
B3G85-67905	Front cover assembly with instruction guide

Do the following steps:

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

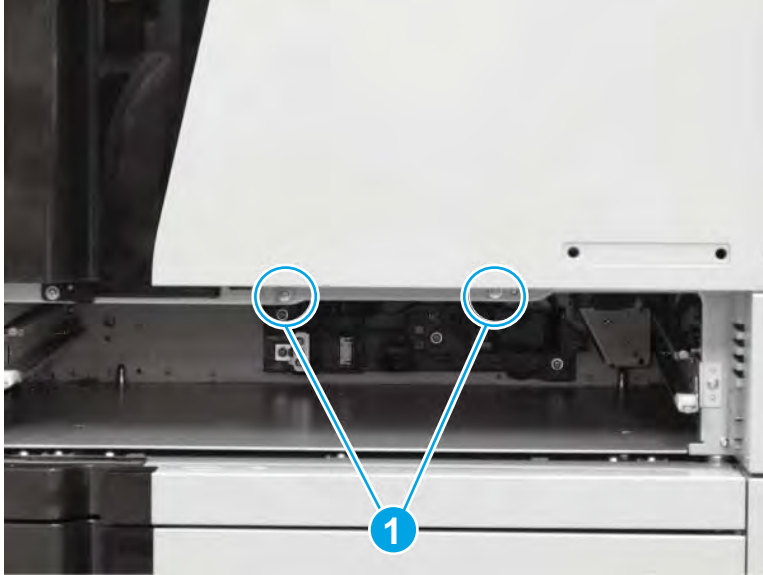
Required tools

#2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

Step 1: Remove the front cover

1. Remove Tray 2, and then remove two screws (callout 1).

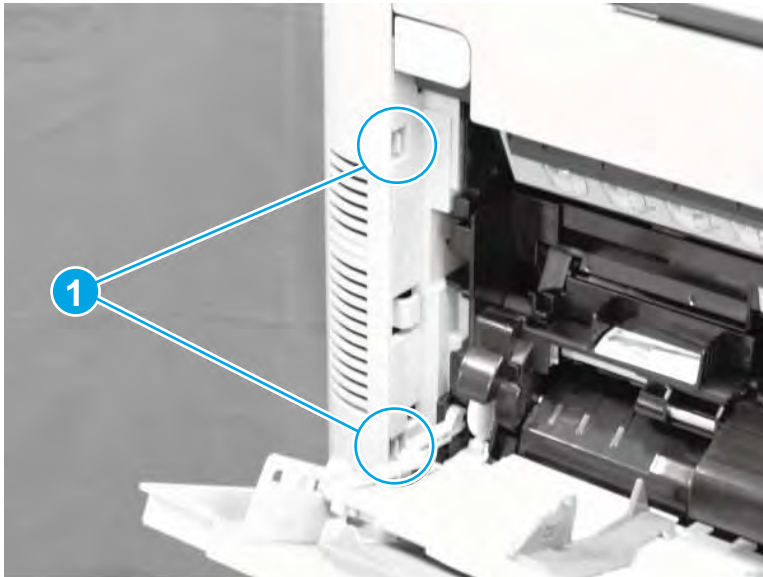
Figure 1-414 Remove two screws



2. Open Tray 1, and then push in on two tabs (callout 1) to release them.

 **TIP:** Release the lower tab first, and then release the upper tab.

Figure 1-415 Release two tabs



- Carefully flex the right-upper corner of the cover away from the product to release one locking pin.

Figure 1-416 Release the right-upper corner



- Slide the cover towards the right side of the product to release it.

Figure 1-417 Slide the cover to the right



5. Remove the cover.

Figure 1-418 Remove the cover



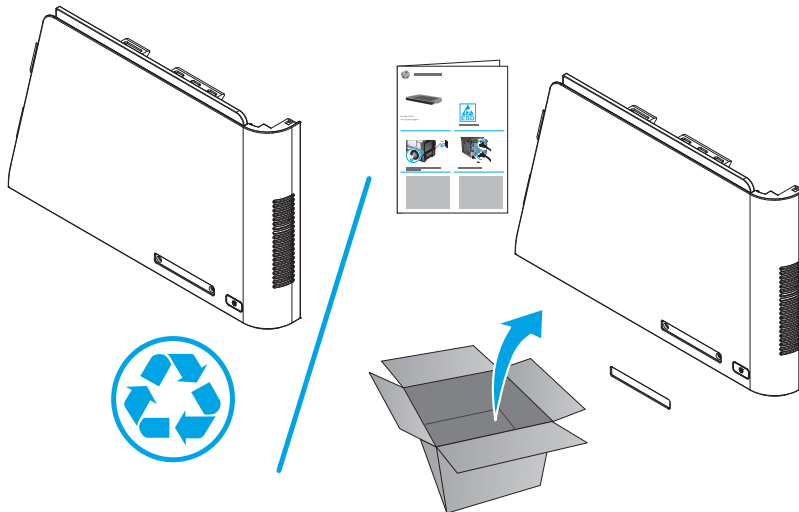
Step 2: Unpack the replacement front cover

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

www.Product return and recycling.

 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.

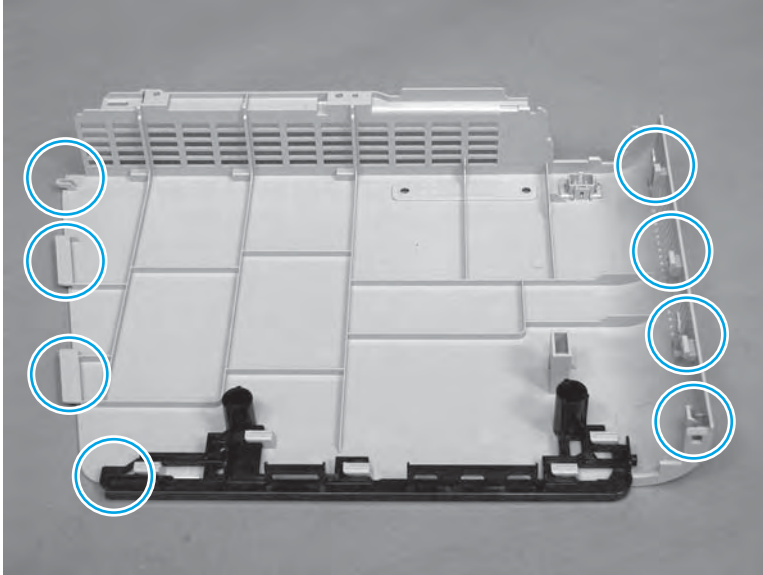
 **TIP:** Do not forget to unpack the product name plate.



Step 3: Install the front cover

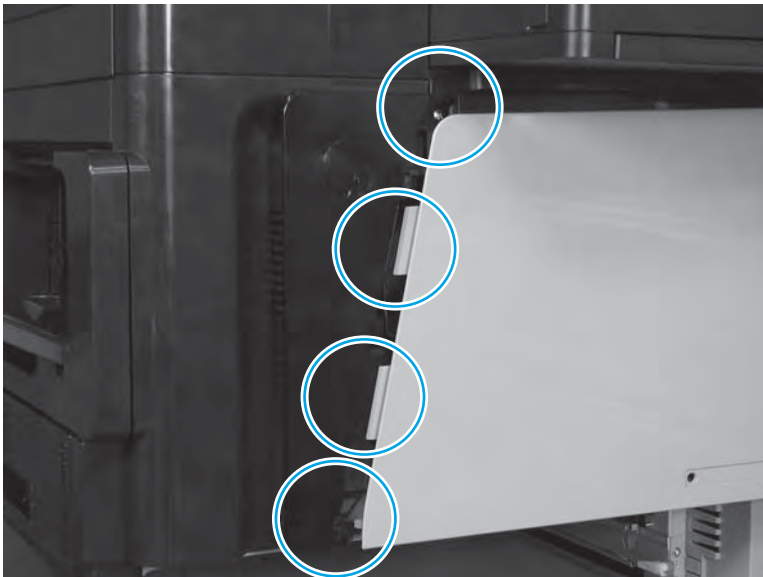
1. Take note of the location of all of the tabs on the back of the cover.

Figure 1-419 Note of the location of the tabs



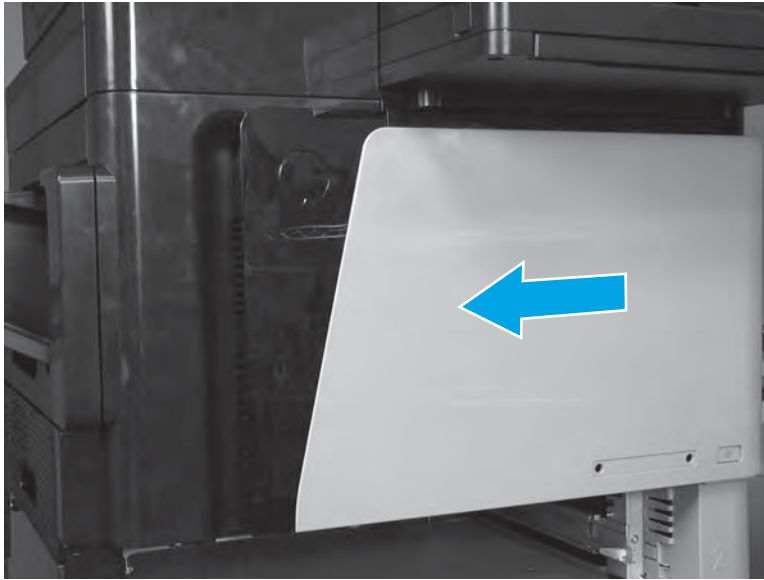
2. Align the four tabs (callout 1) on the cover with the slots (callout 2) on the logo panel.

Figure 1-420 Align four tabs



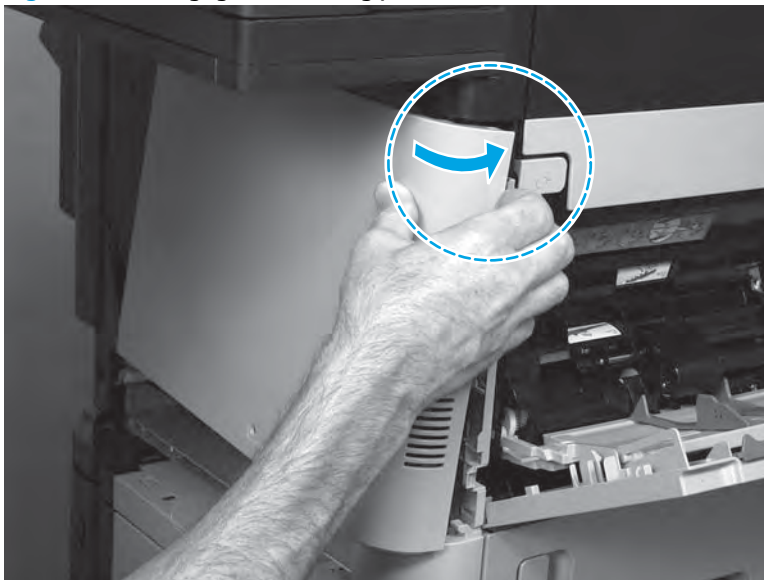
3. Slightly slide the cover toward the left side of the product to engage the tabs in the slots.

Figure 1-421 Slide the cover to the left



4. Carefully flex the right-upper corner of the cover toward from the product to engage one locking pin.

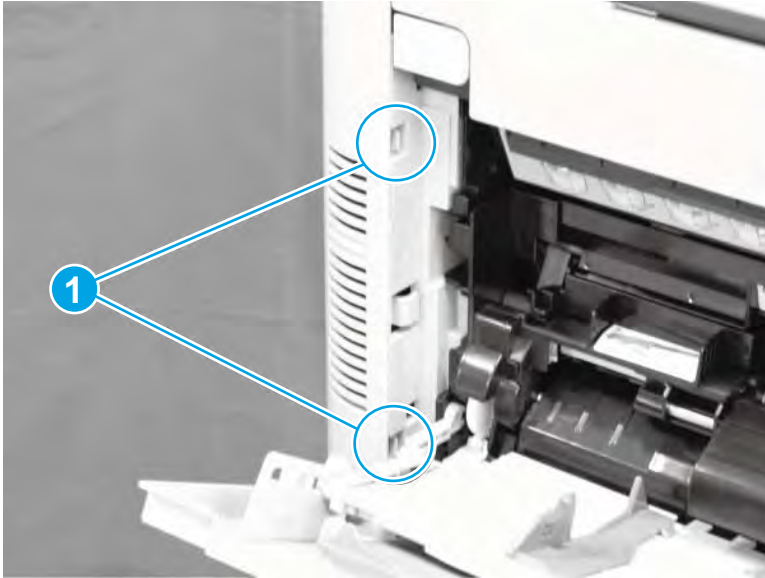
Figure 1-422 Engage one locking pin



- Engage two tabs (callout 1).

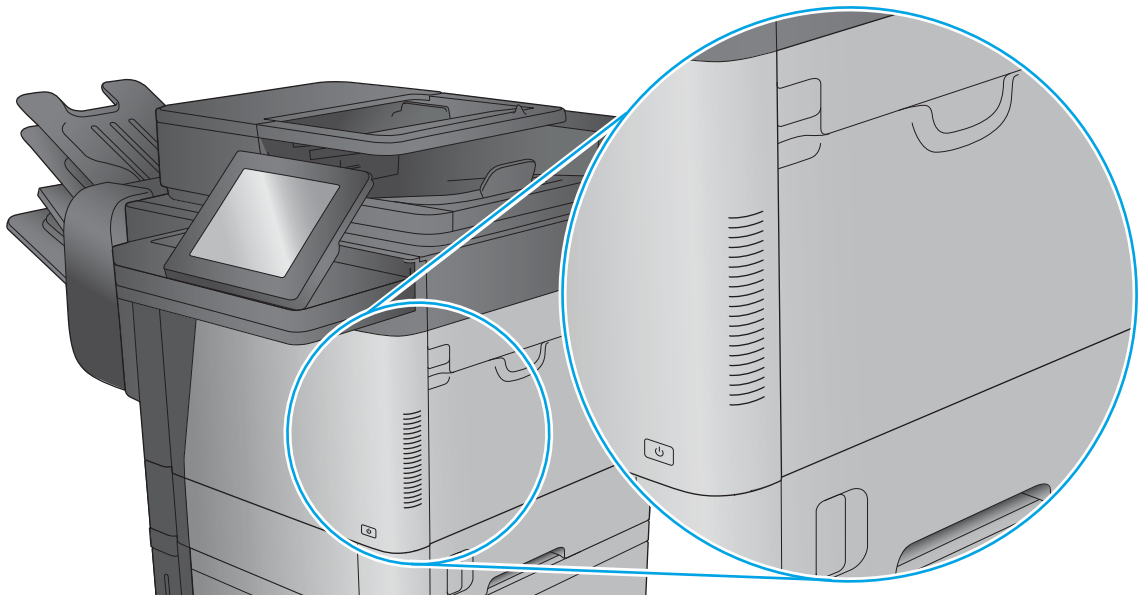
 **TIP:** Engage the upper tab first, and then engage the lower tab.

Figure 1-423 Engage two tabs



- Close Tray 1, and verify that the gap between the edge of the front cover and the tray is even. If it is uneven, the tabs are not correctly engaged.

Figure 1-424 Check cover installation



7. Install two screws (callout 1), and then reinstall Tray 2.


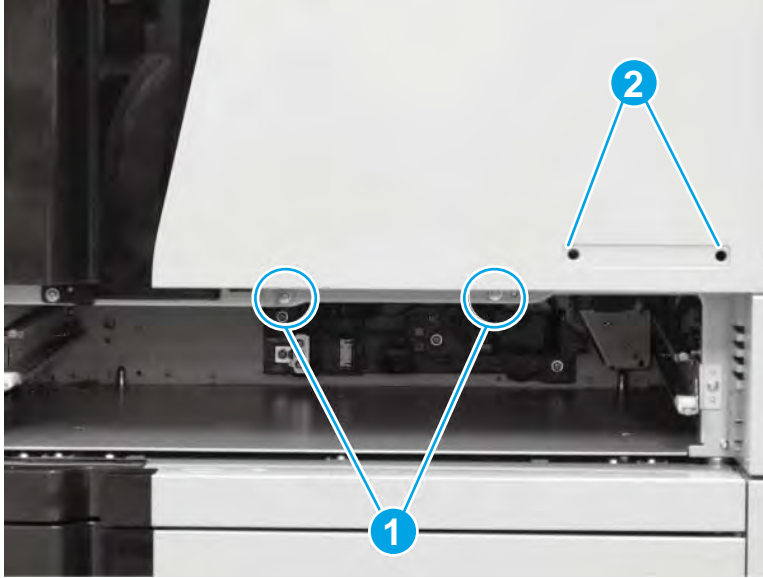
 **Reinstallation tip:** To install the product nameplate on the front cover, align the pins on the back side of the nameplate with the holes in the cover (callout 2), and then push in on the nameplate until it snaps in place.

Figure 1-425 Install two screws



Step 4: Turn the product power on

After servicing

Do the following steps:

Connect the power cable.

Turn on the product.

Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Envelope feeder cover

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

1. Open Tray 1.
2. Pull the envelope feeder cover (callout 1) straight out of the product to remove it.

Figure 1-426 Remove the envelope feeder cover

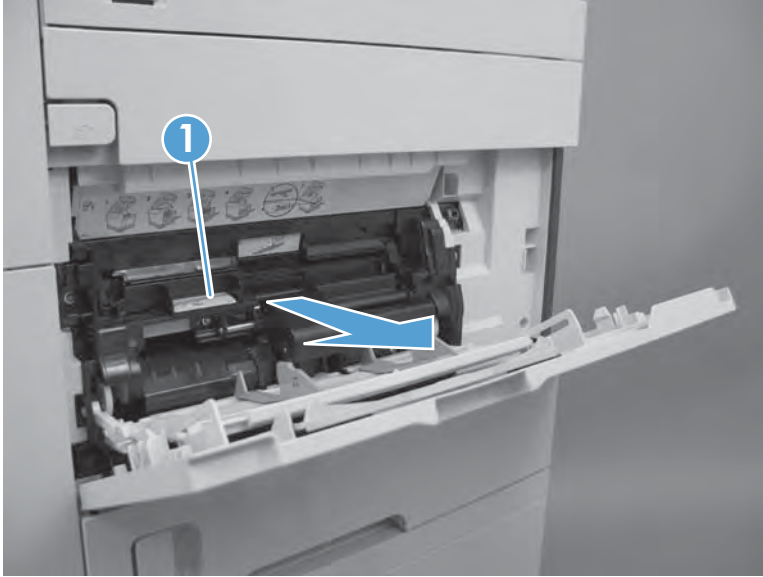


Image scanner cable cover

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the image scanner cable cover](#)
- [Step 2: Unpack the replacement image scanner cable cover](#)
- [Step 3: Install the image scanner cable cover](#)
- [Step 4: Turn the product power on](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the image scanner cable cover.

Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the kit.

Image scanner cable cover part number	
RM2-5816-000CN	Image scanner cable cover

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

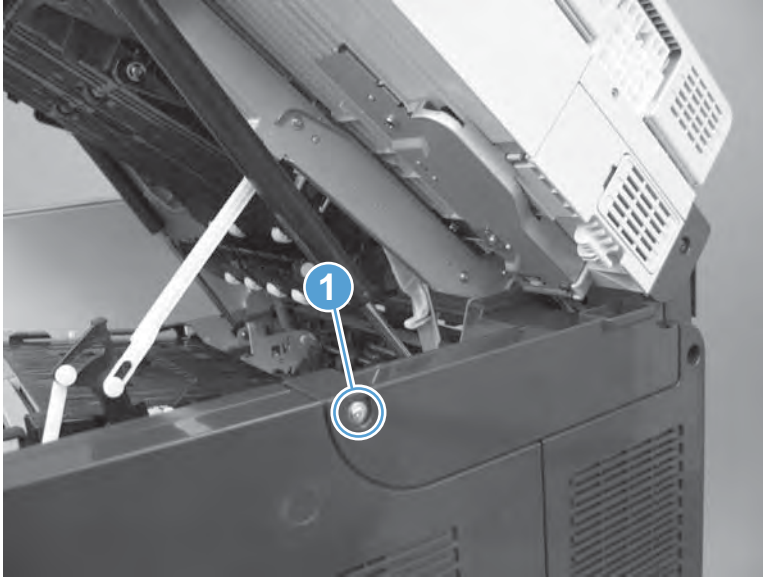
Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

Step 1: Remove the image scanner cable cover

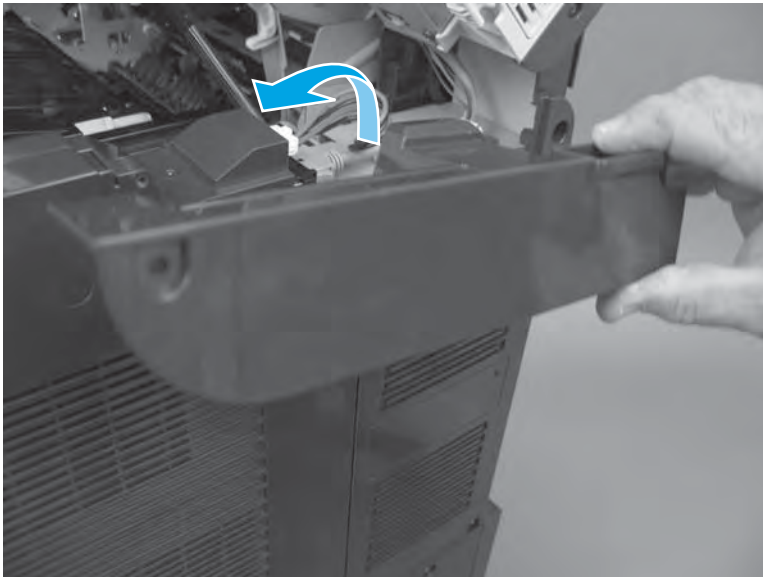
1. Open the top cover, and then remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-427 Remove one screw



2. Remove the cover.


Figure 1-428 Remove the cover

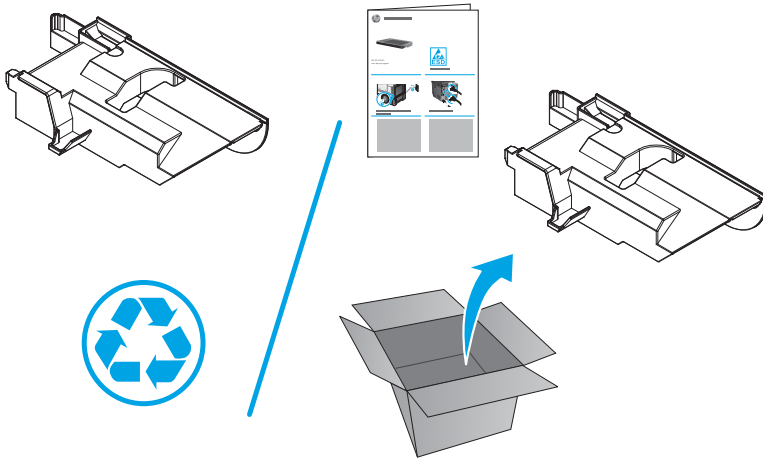


Step 2: Unpack the replacement image scanner cable cover

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

www.Product return and recycling

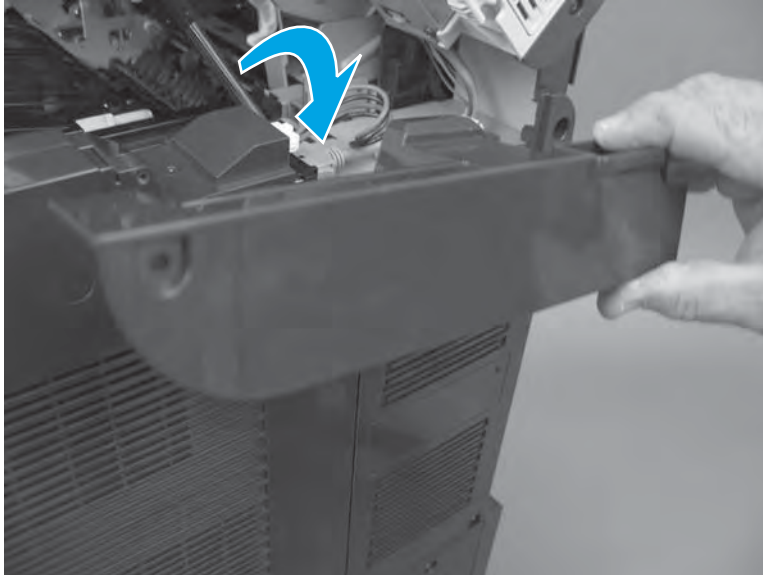
 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.



Step 3: Install the image scanner cable cover

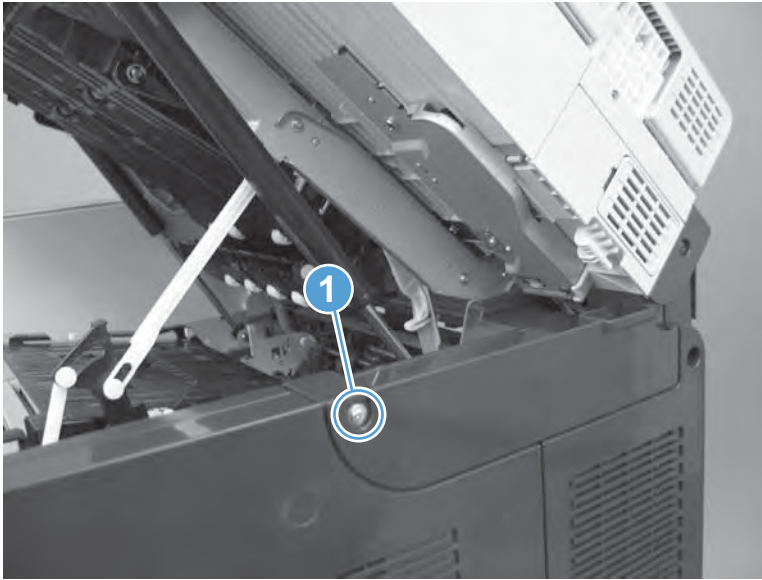
1. Install the cover on the product.

Figure 1-429 Install the cover



2. Install one screw (callout 1), and then close the top cover.

Figure 1-430 Install one screw



Step 4: Turn the product power on

After servicing

Do the following steps:

Connect the power cable.

Turn on the product.

Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Tray 1 cover

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the Tray 1 cover](#)
- [Step 2: Unpack the replacement Tray 1 cover](#)
- [Step 3: Install the Tray 1 cover](#)
- [Step 4: Turn the product power on](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the Tray 1 cover.

Before servicing


Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the kit.

Tray 1 cover part number	
RM2-5816-000CN	Tray 1 cover

Do the following steps:

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

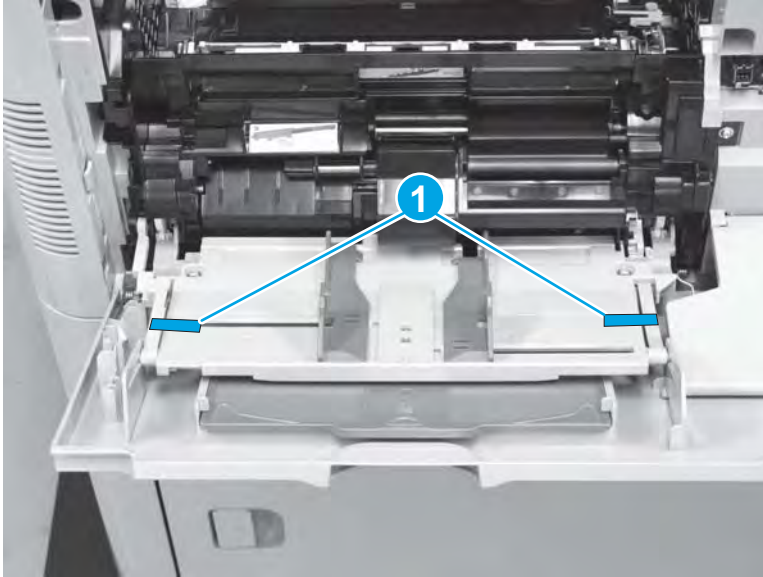
Required tools

No special tools are required to install this kit.

Step 1: Remove the Tray 1 cover

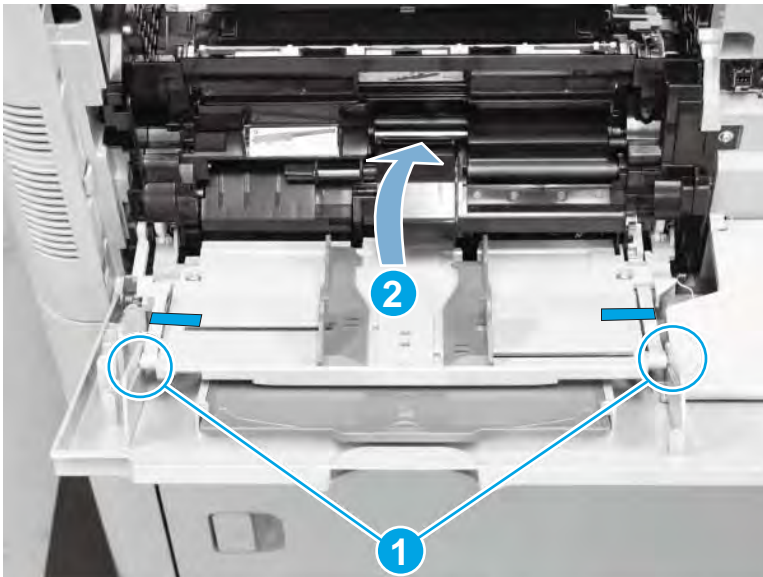
1. Use low adhesive tape to secure the outer retaining pins (callout 1) to the inner tray.

Figure 1-431 Secure the outer retaining pins



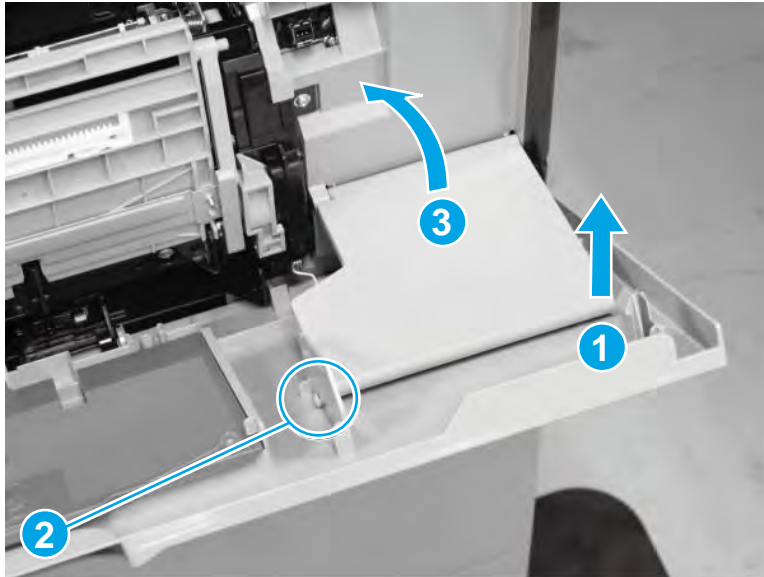
2. Open Tray 1, release the two outer retaining pins (callout 1) on the cover, and then carefully fold the inner tray up (callout 2) and into the product to protect it.

Figure 1-432 Release two outer retaining pins



- Carefully lift on the outer corner of the tray inner cover (callout 1) to release one pin (callout 2) from the guide, and then fold the inner cover up (callout 3) and into the product.

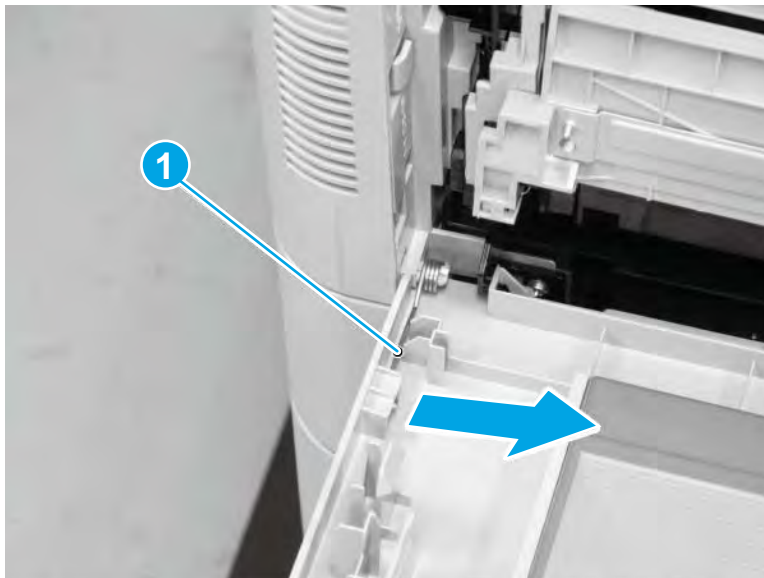
Figure 1-433 Release one pin



- Release the left-side spring arm (callout 1).

⚠ CAUTION: The spring is not captive when the spring arm is released and can be dislodged and lost.

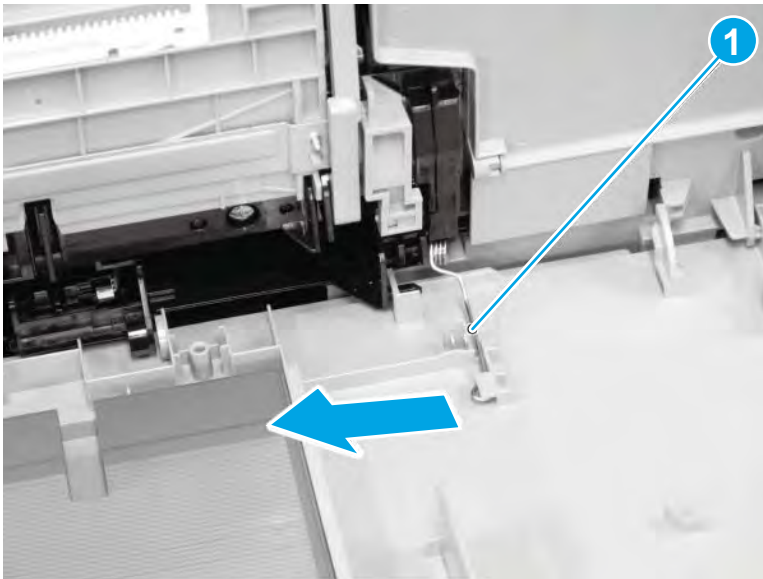
Figure 1-434 Release the left-side spring



5. Release the right-side spring arm (callout 1).

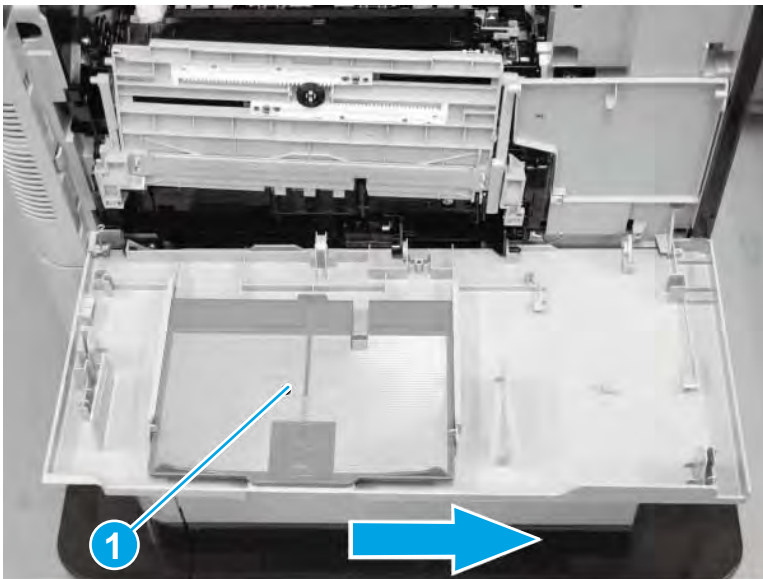
⚠ CAUTION: The spring is not captive when the spring arm is released and can be dislodged and lost.

Figure 1-435 Release the right-side spring



6. Slide the cover (callout 1) toward the back of the product to release it, and then remove the cover.

Figure 1-436 Remove the cover

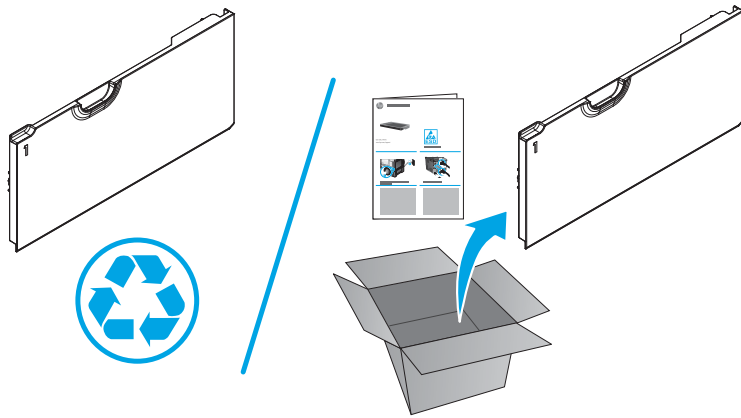


Step 2: Unpack the replacement Tray 1 cover

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

www.Product return and recycling.

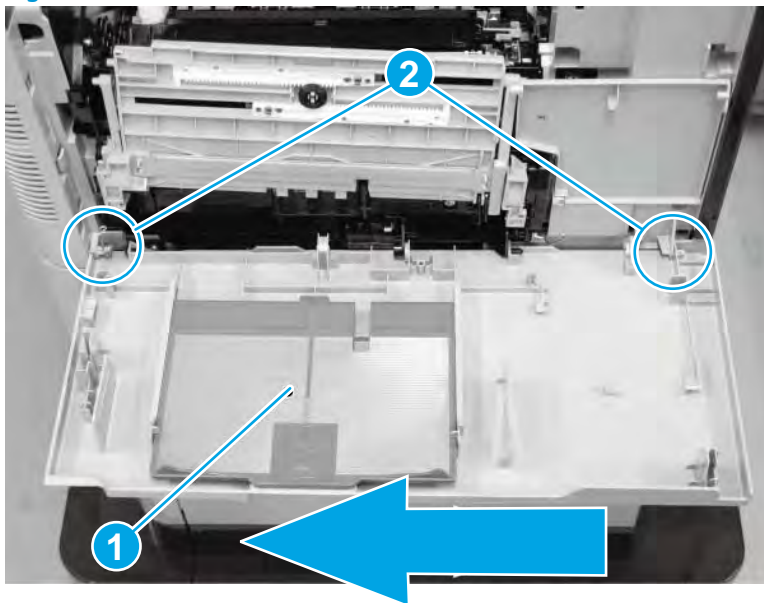
📄 NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.



Step 3: Install the Tray 1 cover

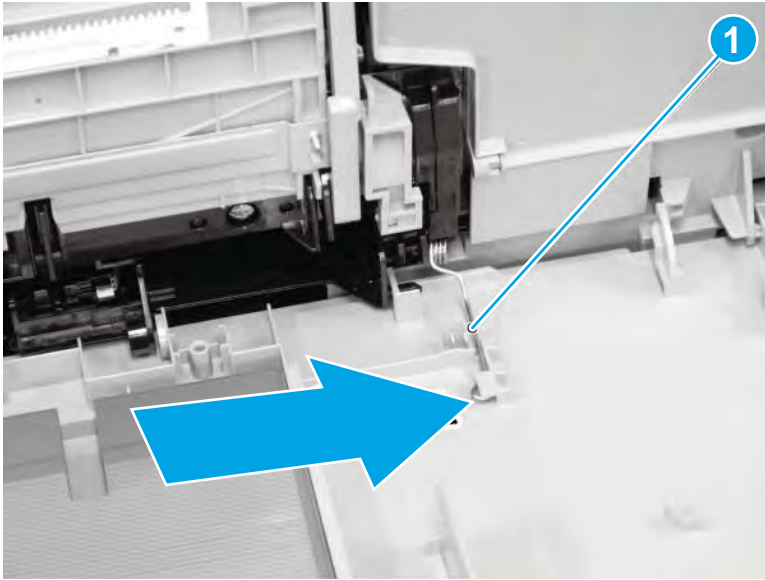
1. Slide the cover (callout 1) toward the front of the product to install it on the hinge pins (callout 2).

Figure 1-437 Install the cover



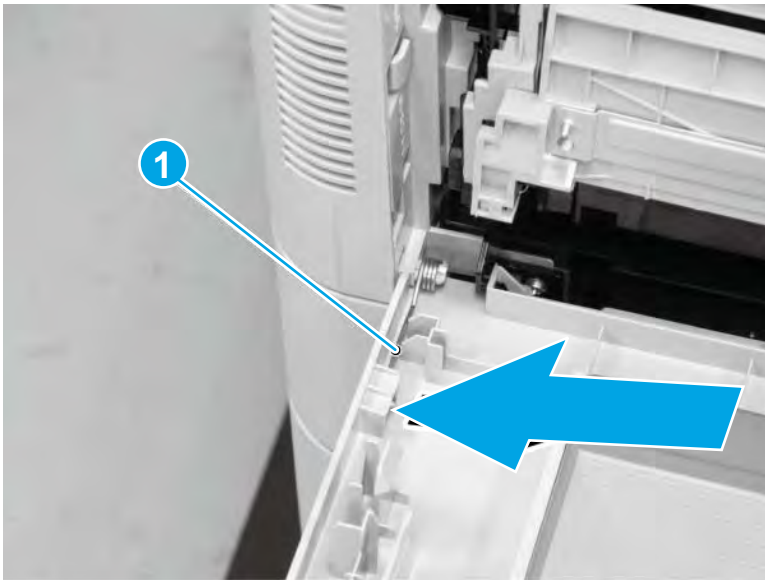
2. Engage the right-side spring arm (callout 1).

Figure 1-438 Engage the right-side spring



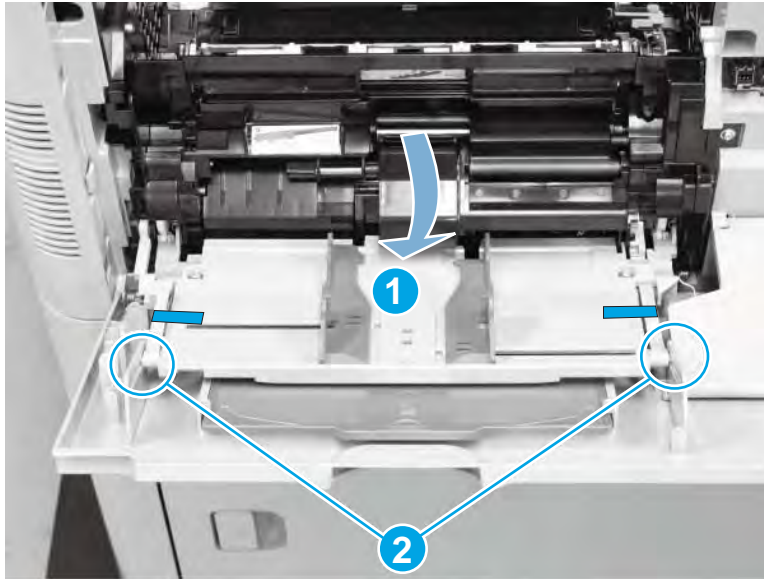
3. Engage the left-side spring arm (callout 1).

Figure 1-439 Engage the left-side spring



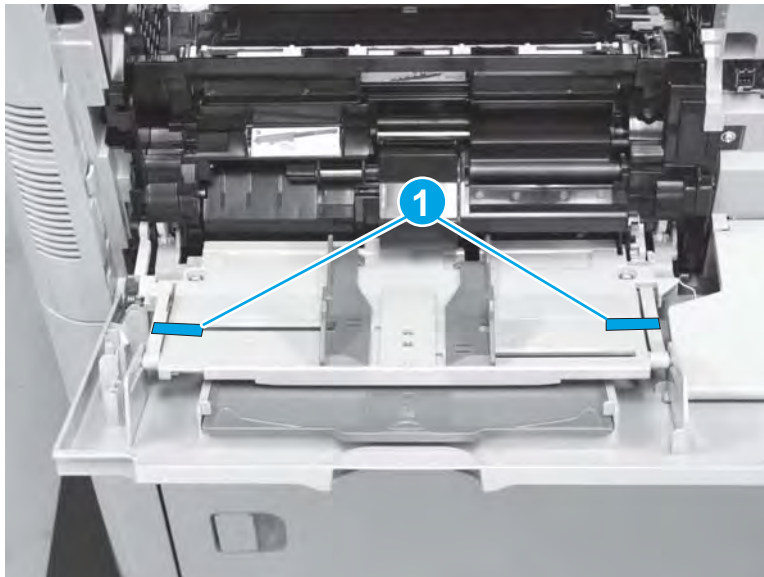
4. Lower the inner tray assembly (callout 1), and then engage the two outer retaining pins (callout 2) on the cover.

Figure 1-440 Engage two outer retaining pins



5. Remove the low adhesive tape (callout 1), and then close the tray.

Figure 1-441 Remove the low adhesive tape



Step 4: Turn the product power on

After servicing

Do the following steps:

Connect the power cable.

Turn on the product.

Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Tray

Use this procedure to remove any of the 1x500-sheet trays.

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

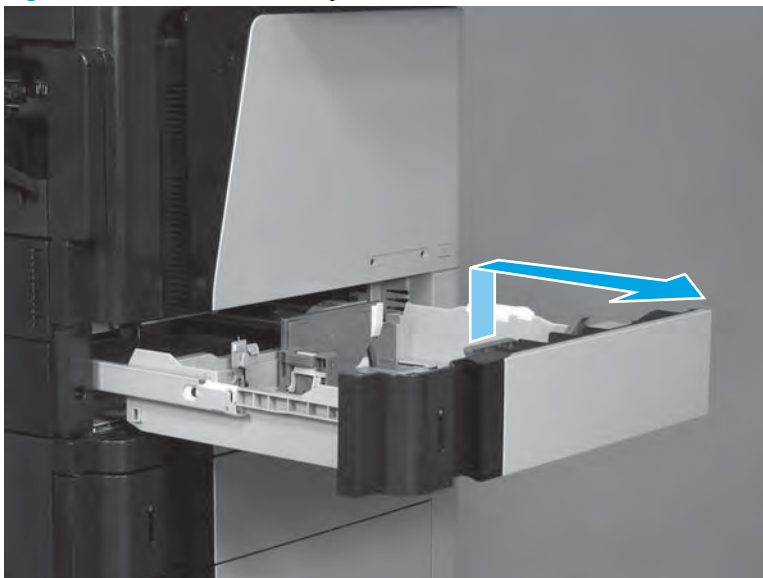
1. Pull the tray straight out of the product until it stops.

Figure 1-442 Open the tray



2. Carefully lift up the tray to release it, and then remove the tray.

Figure 1-443 Remove the tray



Side-rear cover

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the formatter](#)
- [Step 2: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox](#)
- [Step 3: Remove the duplex accessory](#)
- [Step 4: Remove the side-rear cover](#)
- [Step 5: Unpack the replacement side-rear cover](#)
- [Step 6: Install the side-rear cover](#)
- [Step 7: Install the duplex accessory](#)
- [Step 8: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox](#)
- [Step 9: Install the formatter](#)
- [Step 10: Test the installation](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the side-rear cover for the HP LaserJet Enterprise M630.

Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct assembly part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the assembly.

Side-rear cover part number	
RC4-5716-000CN	Side-rear cover


Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

Step 1: Remove the formatter

1. Do the following steps:

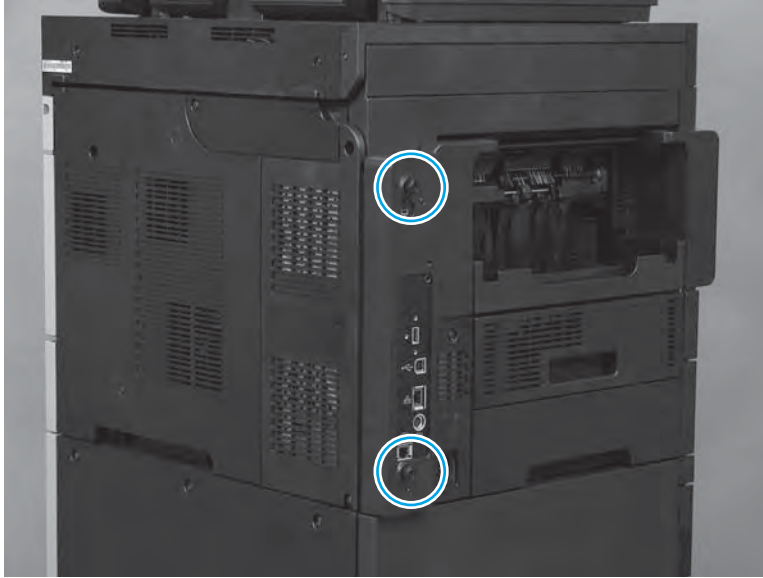
- a. Turn off the product.
- b. Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

- c. Disconnect all cables and accessories attached to the formatter.

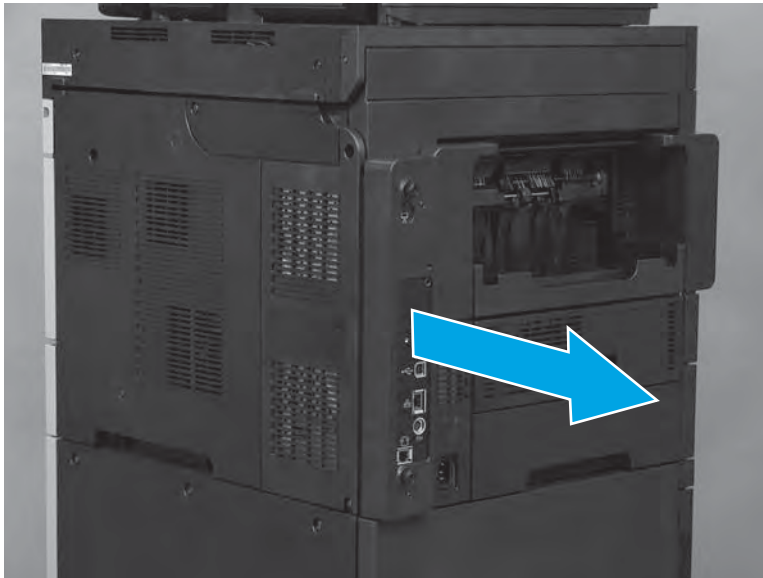
2. Loosen the two thumbscrews on the formatter.

Figure 1-444 Remove the formatter



3. Slide the formatter straight out of the product to remove it.

Figure 1-445 Remove the formatter

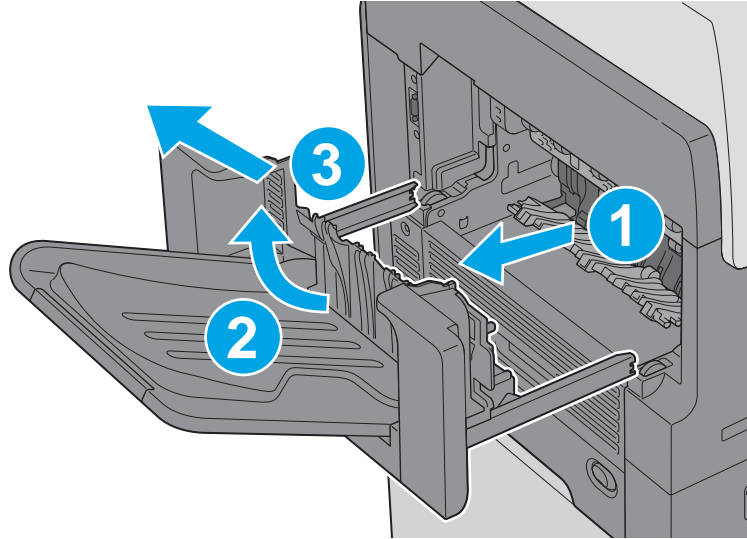


Step 2: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox

- ▲ Do one of the following steps:

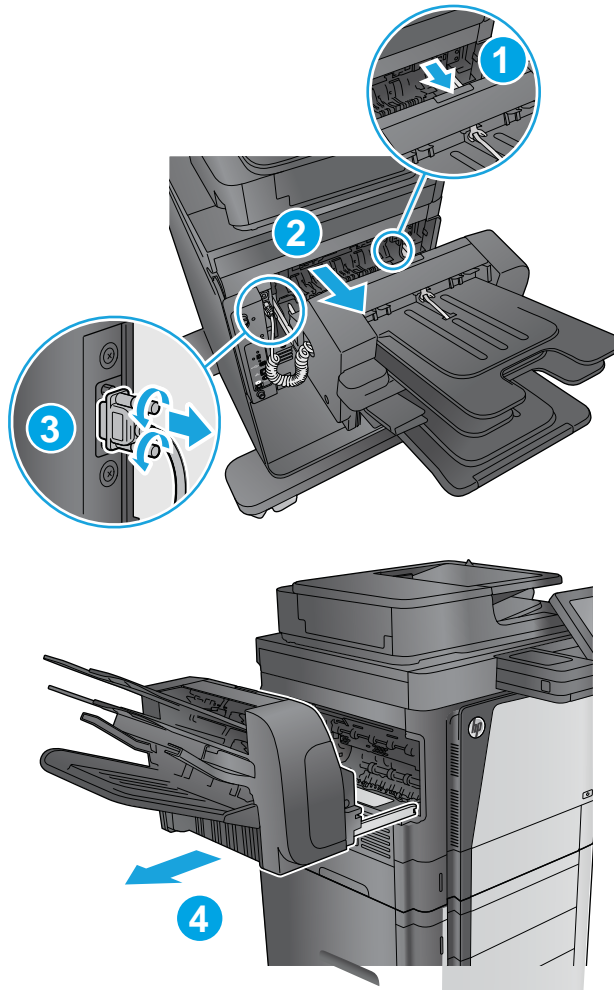
- a. **M630dn and M630f:** Slide the bin base away from the product (callout 1) until it stops, slightly lift up on the assembly to disengage the slide rails (callout 2), and then remove the assembly (callout 3).

Figure 1-446 Remove the output bin



- b. **M630z:** Press the latch (callout 1), pull the stapling mailbox away from the product (callout 2), disconnect the interface cable (callout 3), and then remove the stapling mailbox (callout 4).

Figure 1-447 Remove the stapling mailbox



Step 3: Remove the duplex accessory

- ▲ Slide the duplex assembly away from the product, slightly lift up on the assembly to disengage the slide rails, and then remove it.


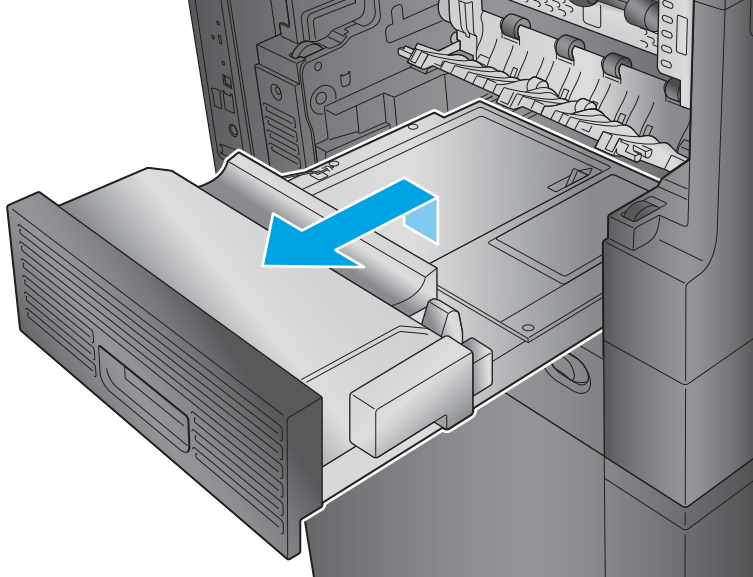
 **NOTE:** Locate the duplexer at the left-hand side of the product.

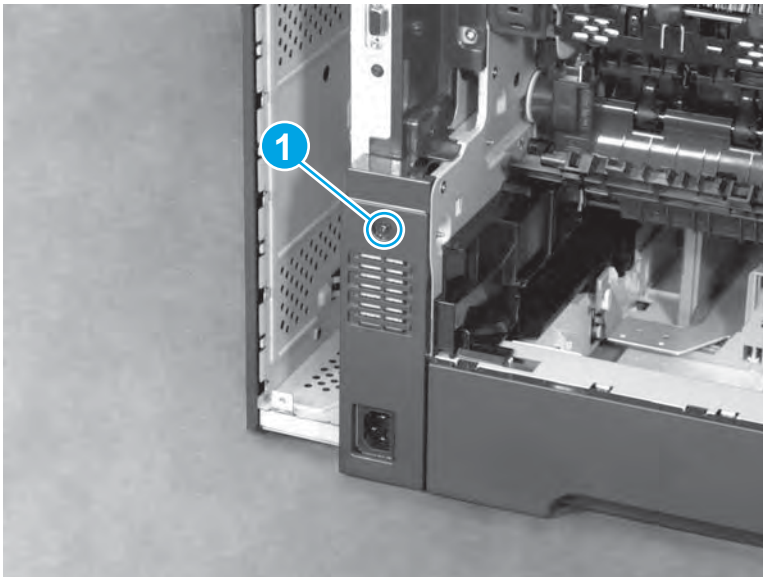
Figure 1-448 Remove the duplex accessory



Step 4: Remove the side-rear cover

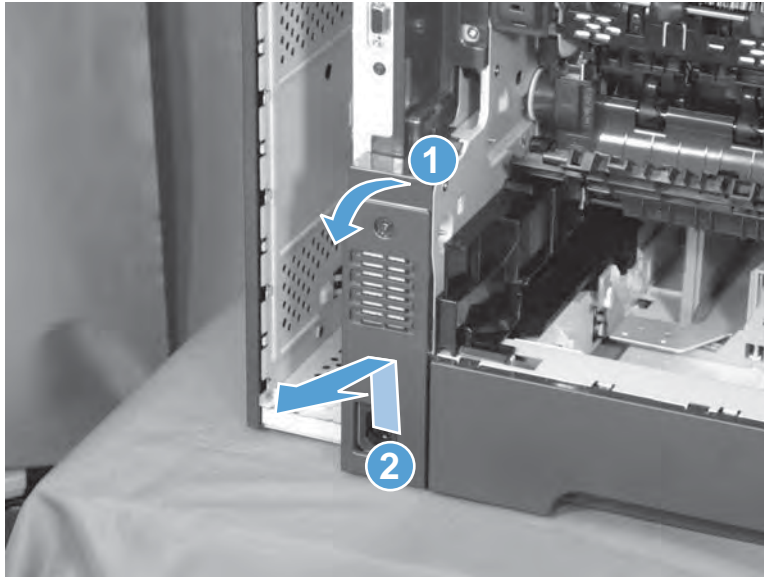
1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-449 Remove one screw



2. Rotate the top of the cover away from the product (callout 1), slightly raise the cover to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

Figure 1-450 Remove the side-rear cover



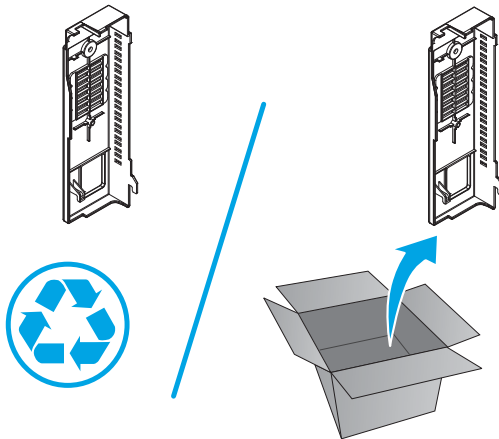
Step 5: Unpack the replacement side-rear cover

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

www.Product return and recycling.

 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the assembly.

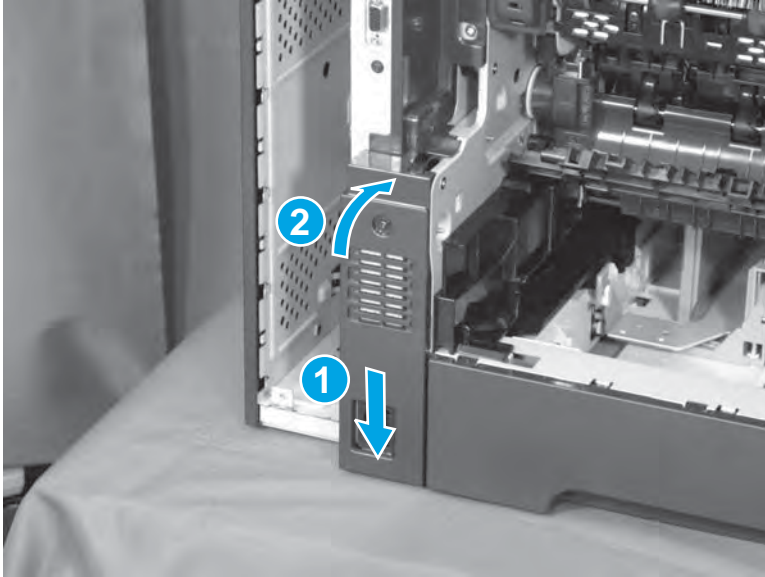
Figure 1-451 Recycle and unpack



Step 6: Install the side-rear cover

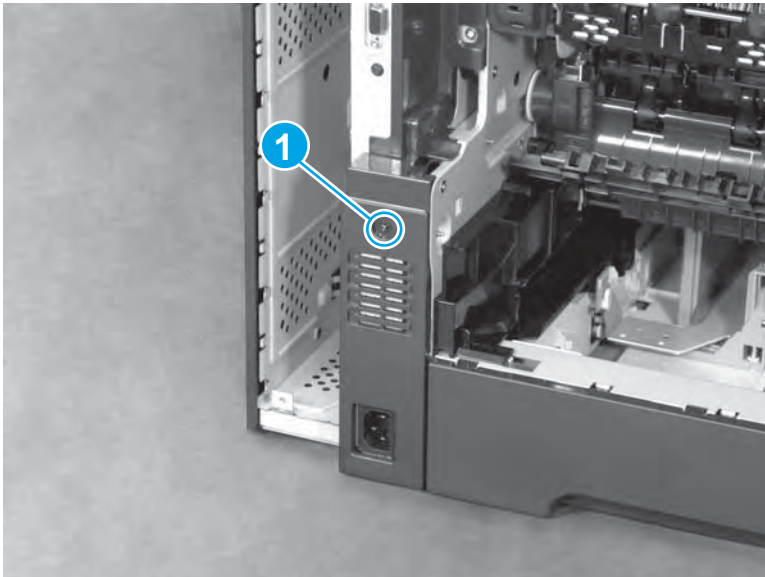
1. Position the bottom of the cover on the product (callout 1), and then rotate the top of the cover toward the product (callout 2) to install it.

Figure 1-452 Install the side-rear cover




2. Install one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-453 Install one screw



Step 7: Install the duplex accessory

- ▲ Position the duplex assembly on the product at a slight angle, engage the slide rails, and then slide the duplex assembly all of the way into the product to install it.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that the duplex accessory is full installed.


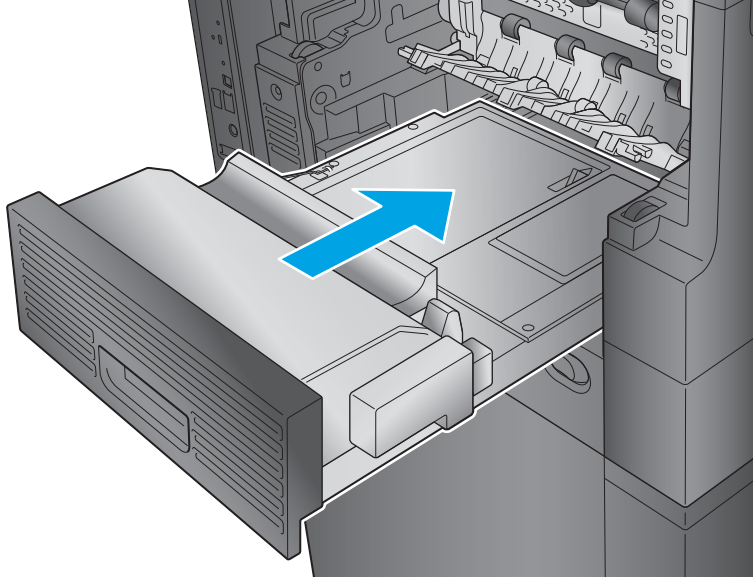
 **NOTE:** After servicing, turn the power off, and then on again so that the product detects the installed duplex accessory.

Figure 1-454 Install the duplex accessory

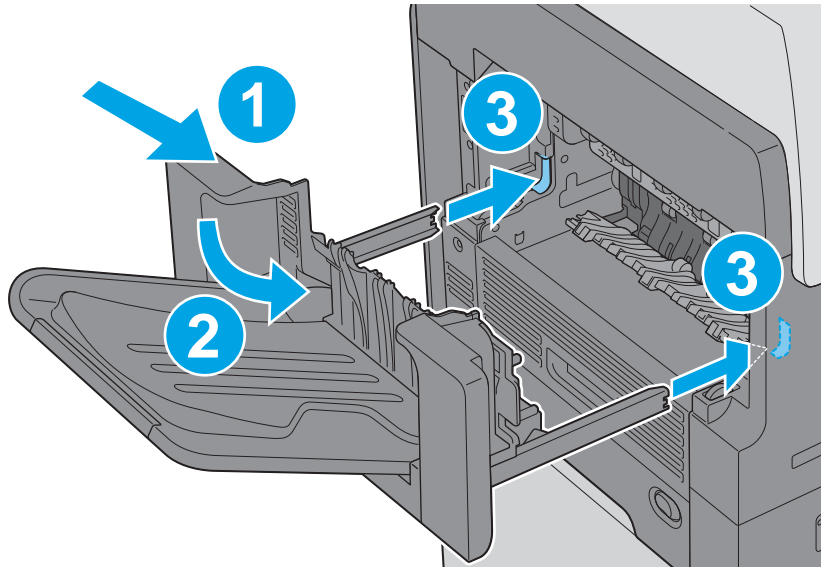


Step 8: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox

▲ Do one of the following:

- a. **M630dn and M630f:** Position the assembly at an angle to the product (callout 1), lower the assembly into place (callout 2) while engaging the slide rails (callout 3), and then slide the bin base into the product.

Figure 1-455 Install the output bin



- b. **M630z:** Position the assembly at an angle to the product (callout 1), lower the assembly into place (callout 2) while engaging the slide rails (callout 3), connect the interface cable (callout 4), and then slide the stapling mailbox (callout 5) into the product.


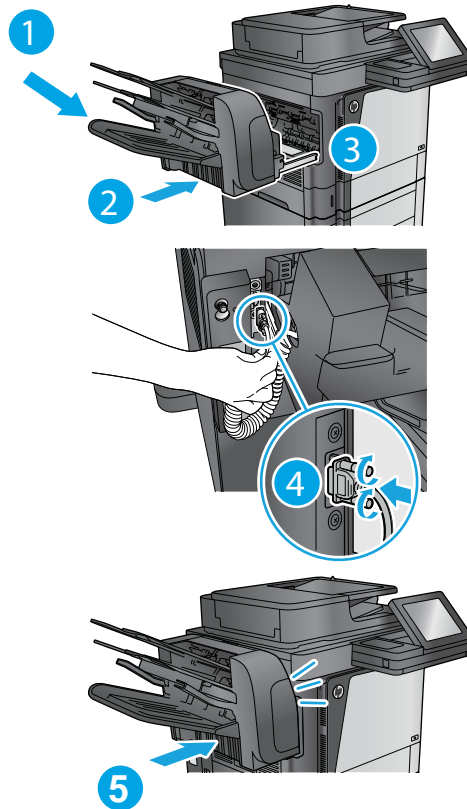
 **TIP:** After servicing, turn the power off, and then on again so that the product detects the installed stapling mailbox.

Figure 1-456 Install the stapling mailbox

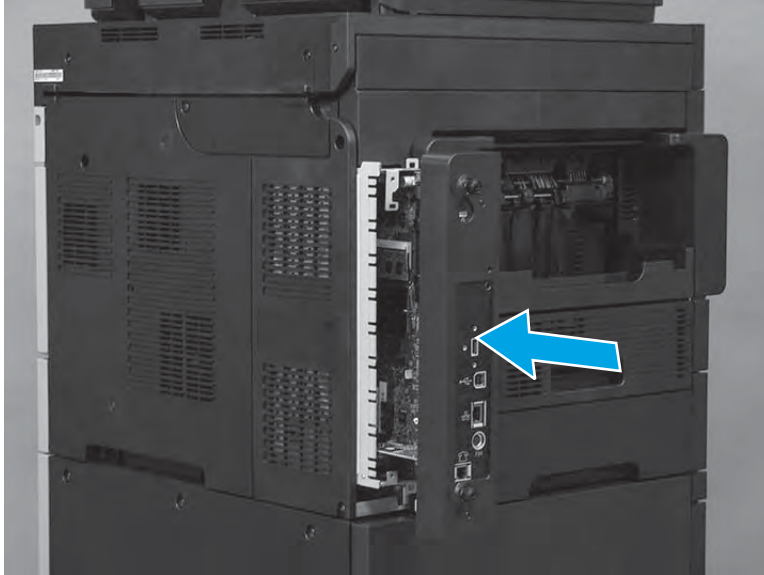


Step 9: Install the formatter

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

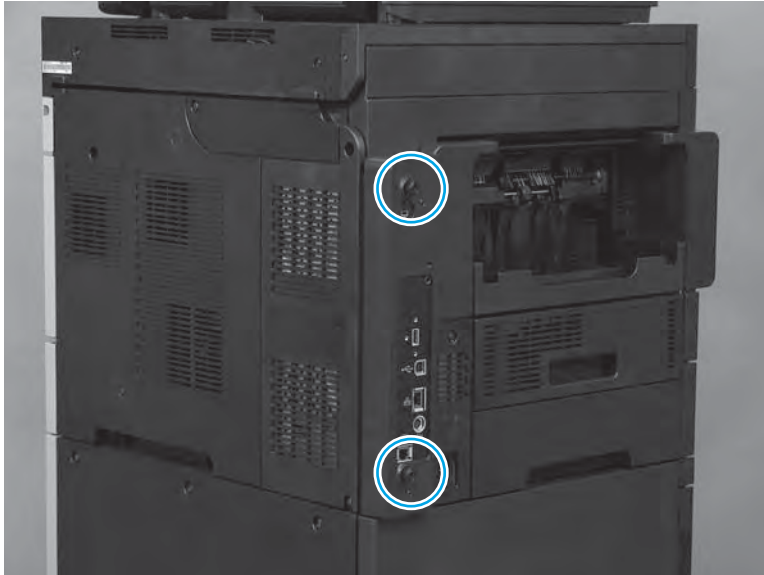
1. Align the formatter with the guides at the top and bottom of the formatter cage and push the formatter into the slot until it is fully seated.

Figure 1-457 Align the formatter with the guides and push the formatter into the slot




2. Finger-tighten the two thumbscrews.

Figure 1-458 Tighten the two thumbscrews



Step 10: Test the installation

1. Do the following steps:
 - a. Reconnect all cables to the formatter.
 - b. Plug in the power cord.
2. Turn on the product.

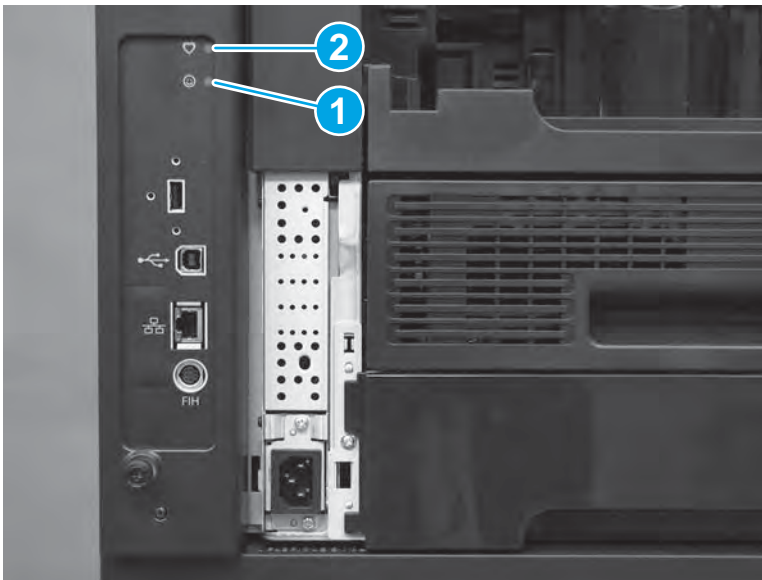
 **TIP:** If the product does not initialize when the power is turned on, make sure that the memory DIMM is correctly installed.

To verify that the formatter is correctly installed, observe the following functions of the LEDs on the formatter:

- The heartbeat LED (callout 1) illuminates if the formatter is functioning correctly.
 - While the product is initializing, the heartbeat LED illuminates solid red for about one second, and then turns solid green for about twenty seconds.
 - After the initialization sequence is complete, the heartbeat LED blinks continuously if the printer is functioning correctly.
- The connectivity LED (callout 2) indicates that the formatter is completely seated. It illuminates green when the product power is turned on and stays green if the formatter is properly seated.

If the LEDs do not correctly function, turn the product power off, remove the formatter, and then reinstall it (make sure that the formatter is fully seated before tightening the thumbscrews).

Figure 1-459 Verify that the formatter is functioning



Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Front-left cover and logo panel assembly

Remove the following assemblies:

- Output bin and bin base assembly. See [Output bin and bin base assembly on page 68](#).
- Front cover. See [Front cover on page 274](#).

 **NOTE:** If Tray 2 was not previously removed, remove it now.

Remove the front-left cover and logo panel assembly

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

1. Remove two screws (callout 1).


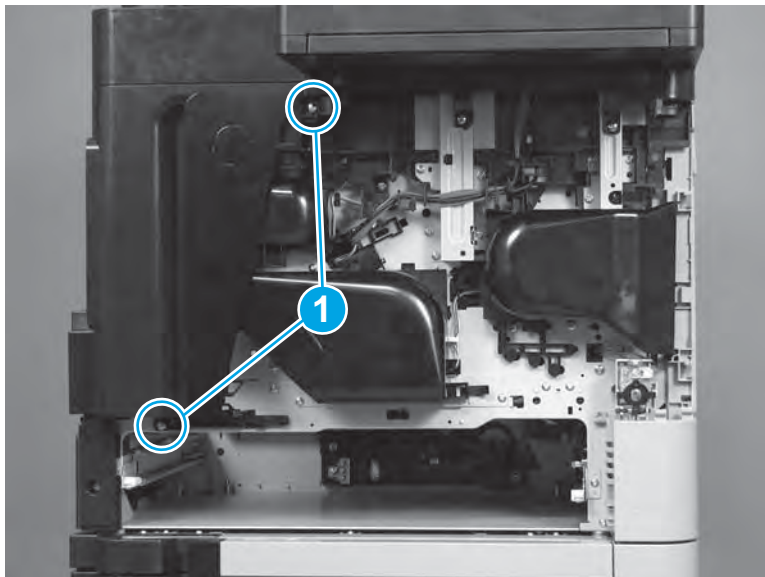
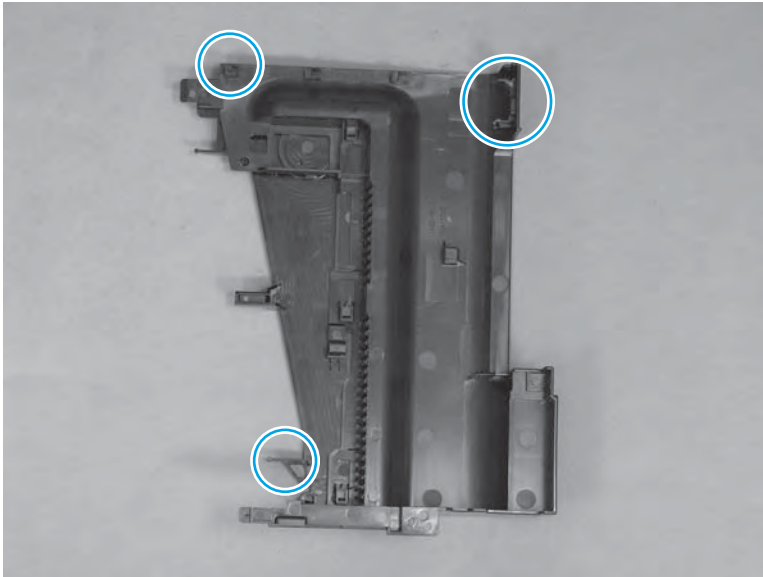
 **NOTE:** The upper screw is a M4 screw. The lower screw is a M3 screw.

Figure 1-460 Remove two screws



2. Before removing the assembly, note the locations of the tabs on the backside of the assembly shown in the figure.

Figure 1-461 Note the locations of the tabs and pins



3. At the left side of the assembly, use a small flat blade screwdriver to release one tab (callout 1), and then flex the bottom of the assembly away from the product (callout 2).


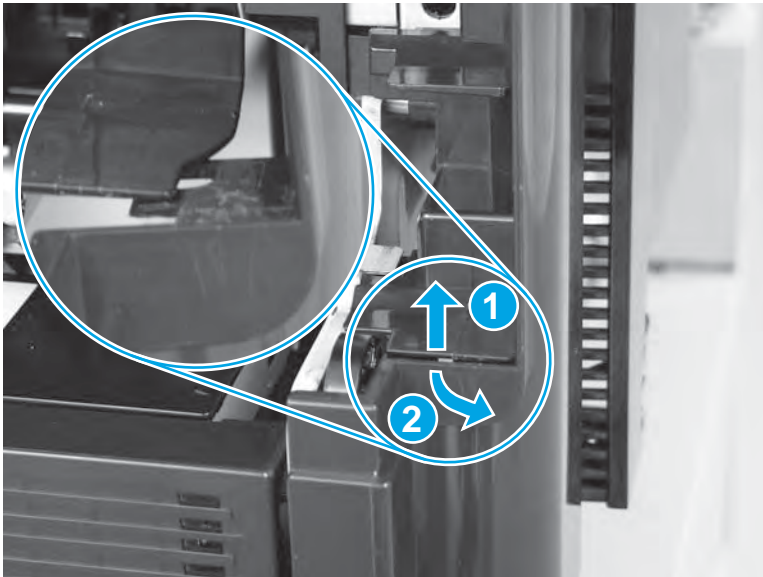
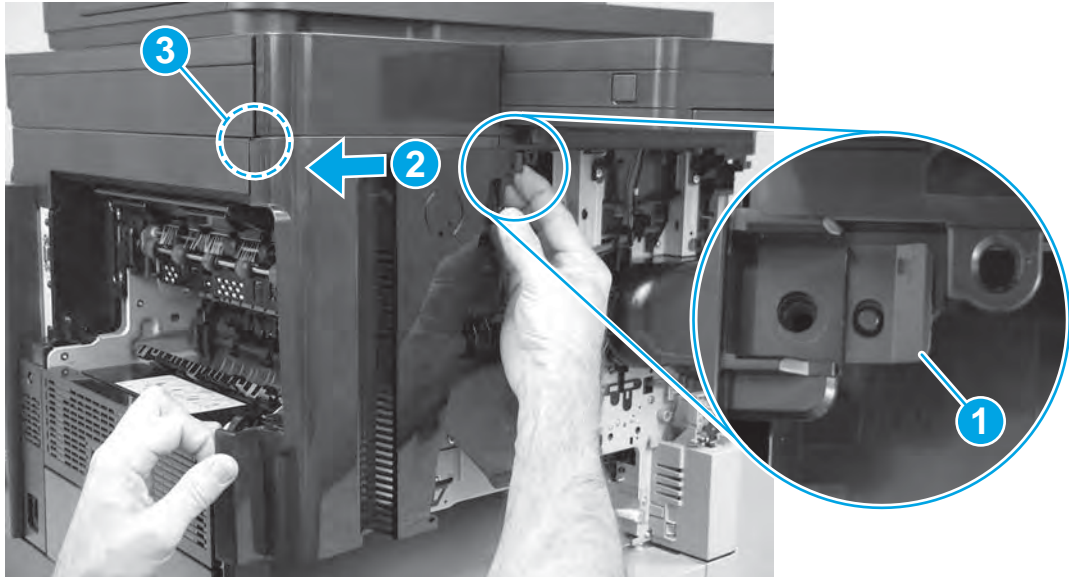
 **NOTE:** The assembly is not embossed to show the location of the tab.

Figure 1-462 Release one tab



4. Keep the lower-left corner of the assembly released, release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the assembly to the left (callout 2) to release a second tab (callout 3).

Figure 1-463 Release two tabs



5. Continue to slide the assembly to the left to release it.


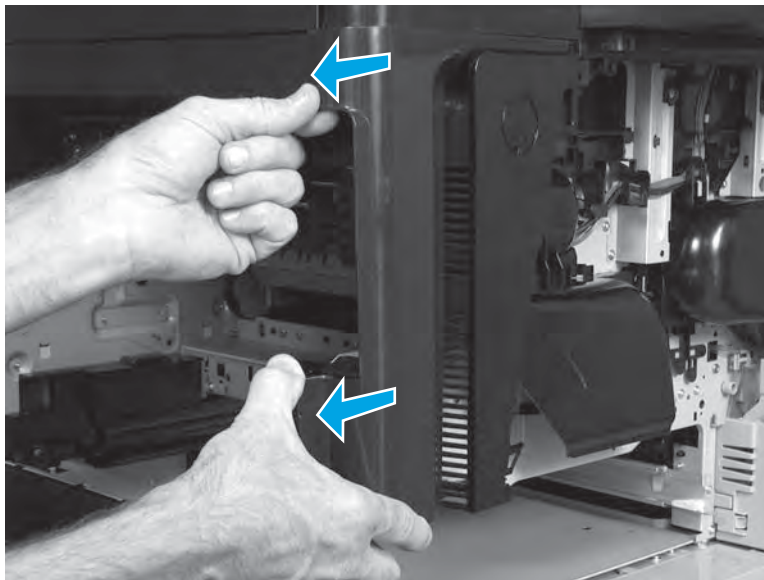
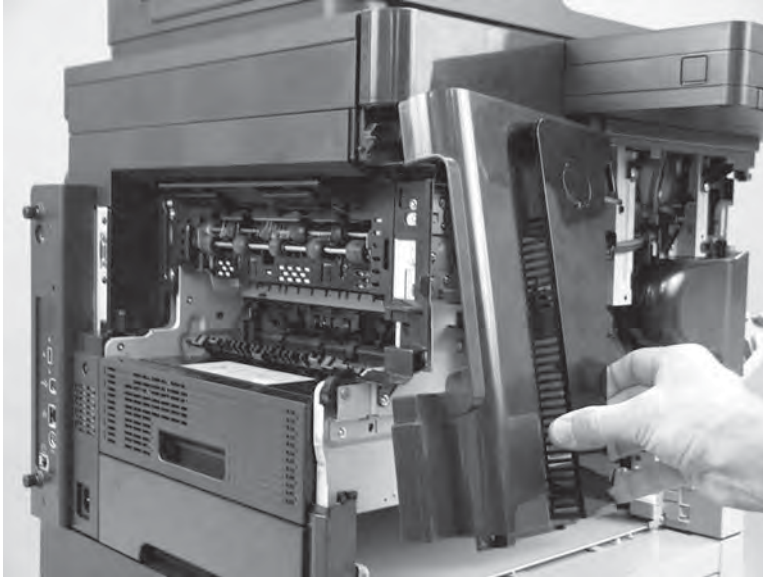
 **TIP:** Slightly flex the bottom of assembly away from the product.

Figure 1-464 Release the assembly



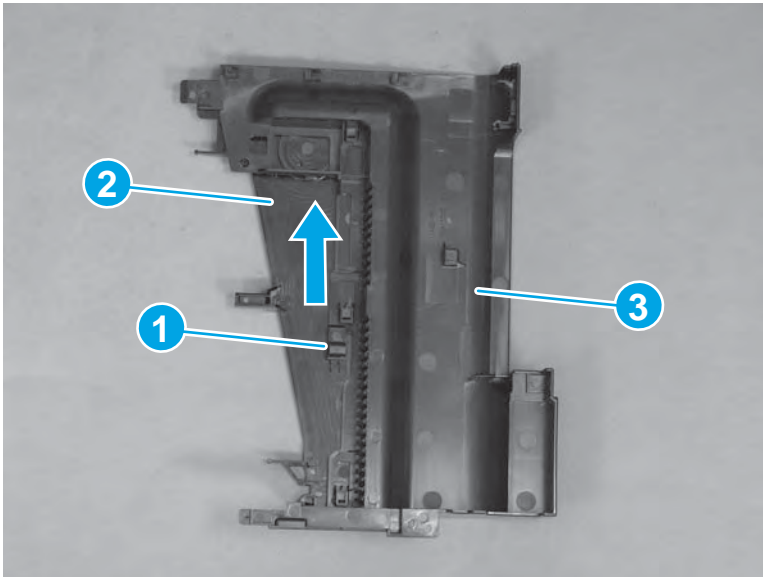
6. Remove the assembly.

Figure 1-465 Remove the assembly



7. **Optional step:** Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the logo panel (callout 2) off of the front-left cover (callout 3).

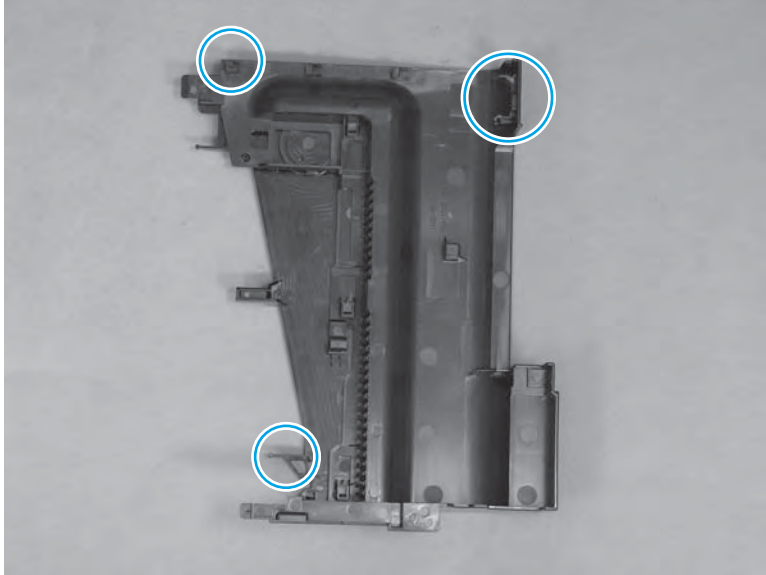
Figure 1-466 Separate the logo panel and front-left cover



Install the front-left cover and logo panel assembly

1. Before proceeding, note the locations of the tabs on the backside of the assembly shown in the figure.

Figure 1-467 Note the locations of the tabs and pins



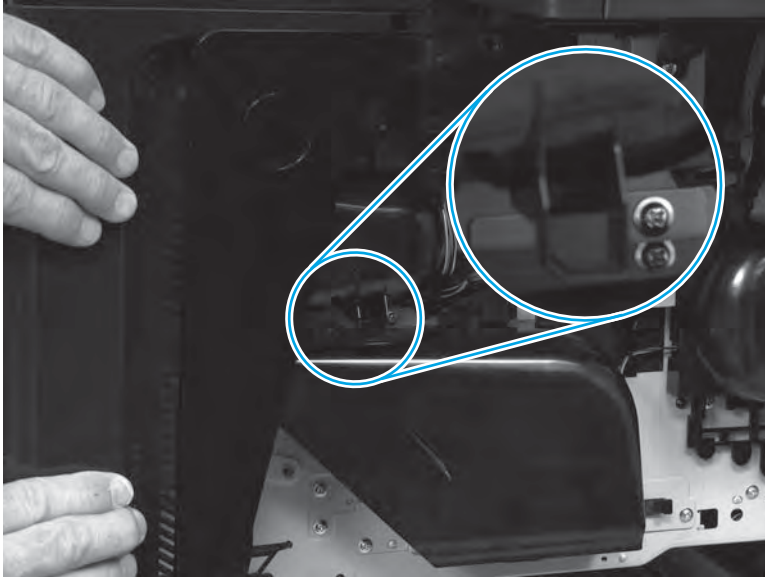
2. Align the hook tabs on the top of the assembly with the slots in the product.

Figure 1-468 Align the hook tabs on the top of the assembly



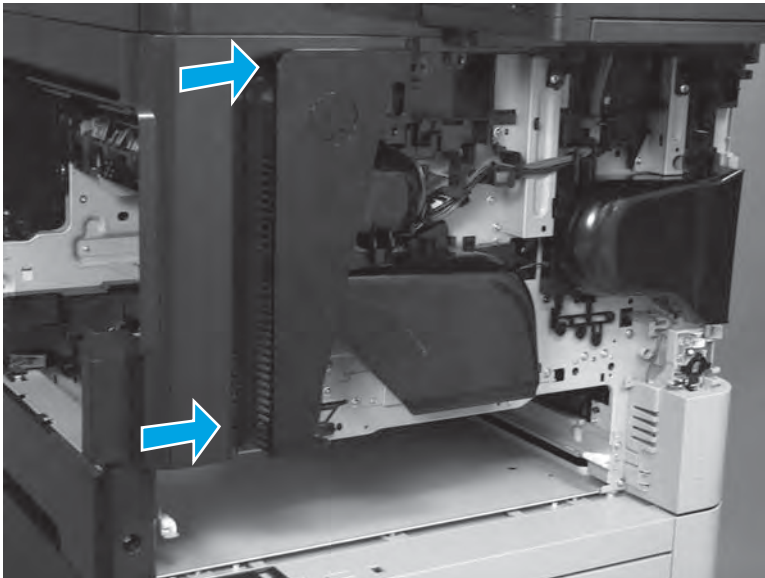
3. Position the tab on the right side of the assembly behind the fan duct.

Figure 1-469 Position the tab on the assembly behind the fan duct



4. Slide the assembly to the right to install it.

Figure 1-470 Install the assembly



5. Verify that the tab on the left side of the assembly is correctly installed.


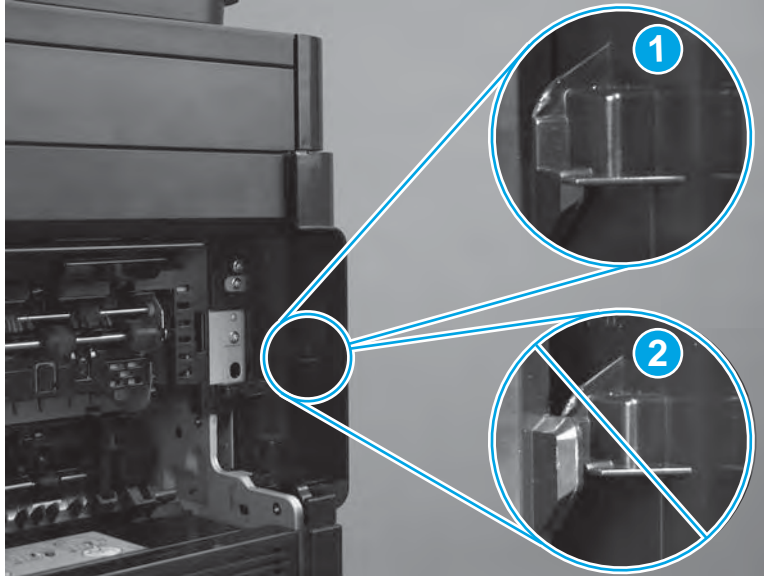
 **NOTE:** When the assembly is correctly installed, the left-side tab is installed over the protrusion on the product (callout 1). When the cover is incorrectly installed, the left-side tab is installed on top of the protrusion on the product (callout 2).

Figure 1-471 Verify that the left-side tab is correctly installed



6. Verify that the reverse assembly fan (callout 1) is correctly installed.


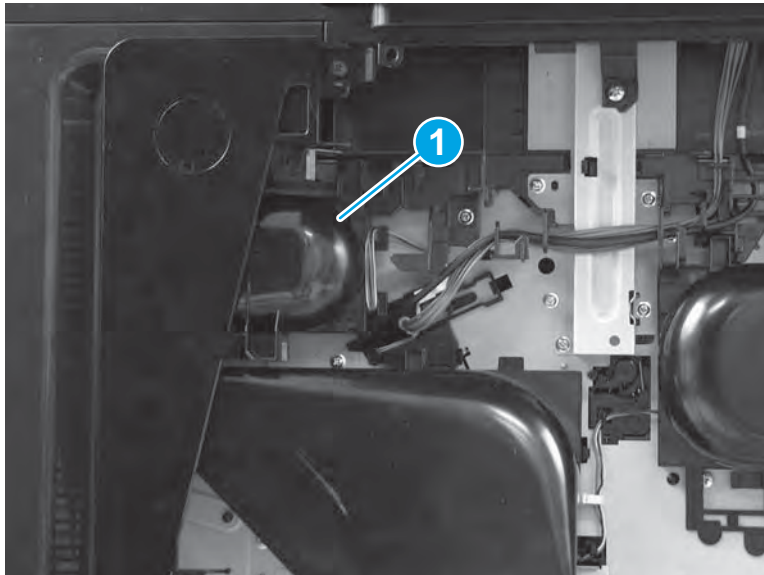
 **NOTE:** The reverse assembly fan (callout 1) is easily dislodged when the front-left cover and logo panel assembly is installed.

Figure 1-472 Verify that the reverse assembly fan is correctly installed



Power-switch assembly

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the front cover](#)
- [Step 2: Remove the power-switch assembly](#)
- [Step 3: Unpack the replacement power-switch assembly](#)
- [Step 4: Install the power-switch assembly](#)
- [Step 5: Install the front cover](#)
- [Step 6: Turn the product power on](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the power-switch assembly.

Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the kit.

Power-switch assembly part number	
RM2-5818-000CN	Power-switch assembly

Do the following steps:

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

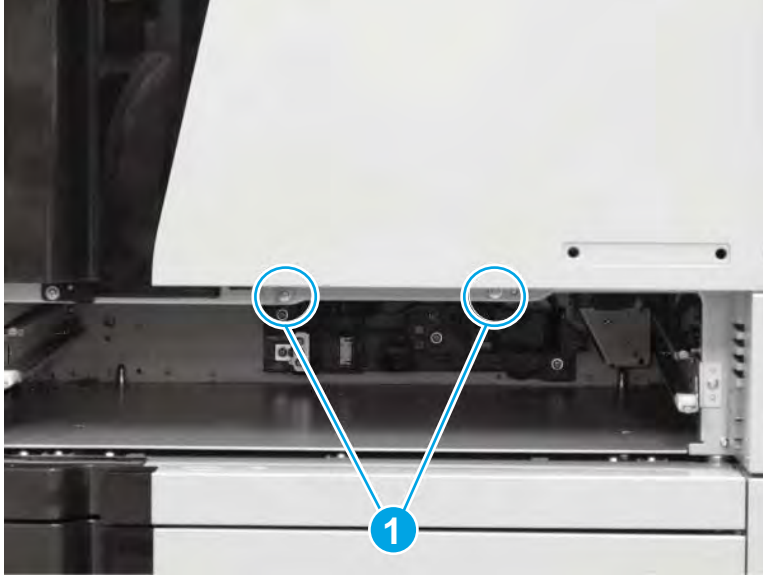
Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

Step 1: Remove the front cover

1. Remove Tray 2, and then remove two screws (callout 1).

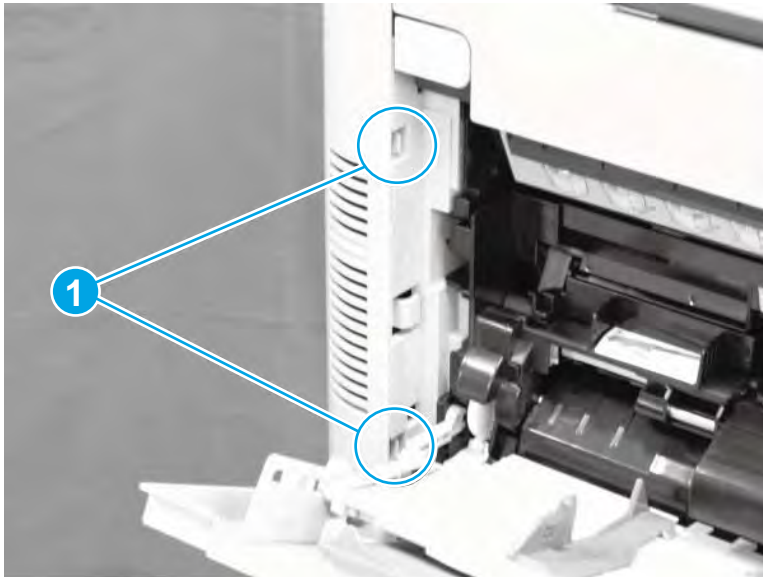
Figure 1-473 Remove two screws



2. Open Tray 1, and then push in on two tabs (callout 1) to release them.

 **TIP:** Release the lower tab first, and then release the upper tab.

Figure 1-474 Release two tabs



- Carefully flex the right-upper corner of the cover away from the product to release one locking pin.

Figure 1-475 Release the right-upper corner



- Slide the cover towards the right side of the product to release it.

Figure 1-476 Slide the cover to the right




5. Remove the cover.

Figure 1-477 Remove the cover

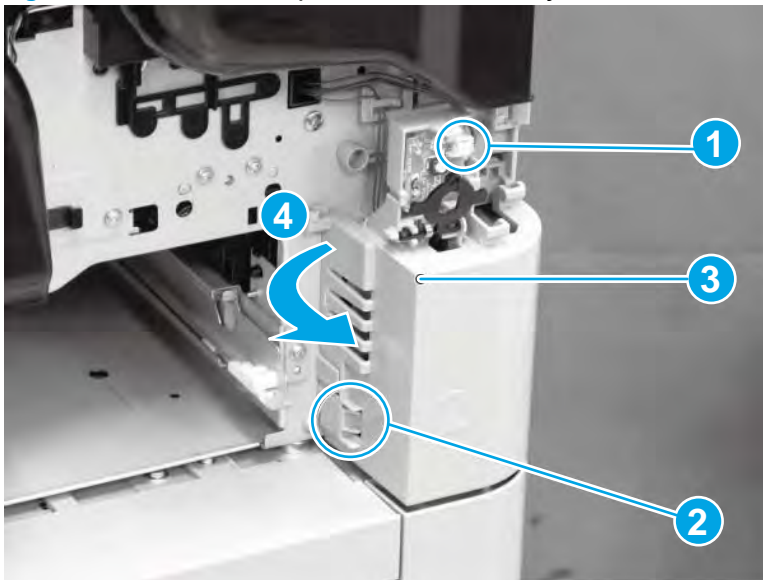


Step 2: Remove the power-switch assembly

 **NOTE:** If Tray 2 is installed, remove it now.

- ▲ Disconnect one connector (callout 1), release one tab, and then rotate the assembly (callout 3) away from the product (callout 4) to remove it.

Figure 1-478 Remove the power-switch assembly

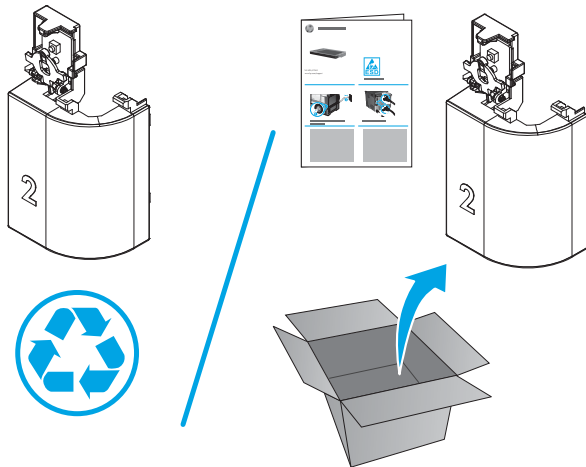


Step 3: Unpack the replacement power-switch assembly

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

www.Product return and recycling.

 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.

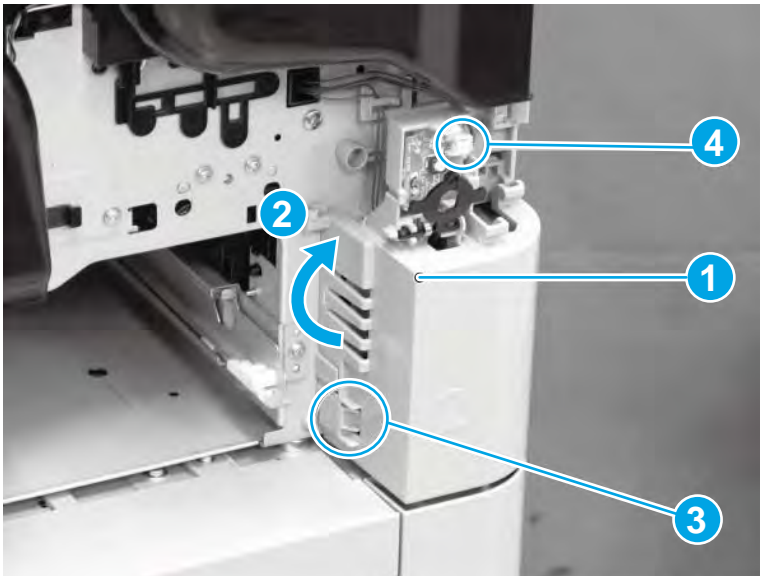


Step 4: Install the power-switch assembly

- ▲ Position the right corner of the assembly (callout 1) on the product, rotate the assembly toward the Tray 2 cavity (callout 2), and then engage one tab (callout 3).

Connect one connector (callout 4).

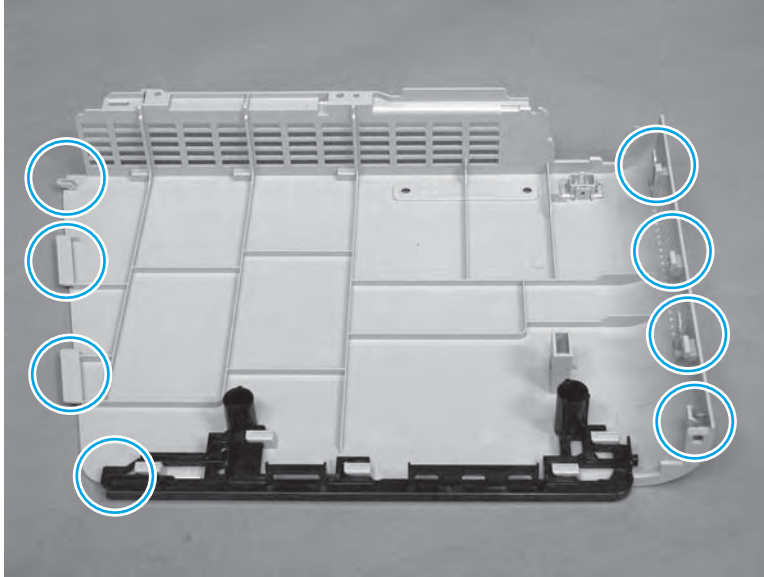
Figure 1-479 Install the power-switch assembly



Step 5: Install the front cover

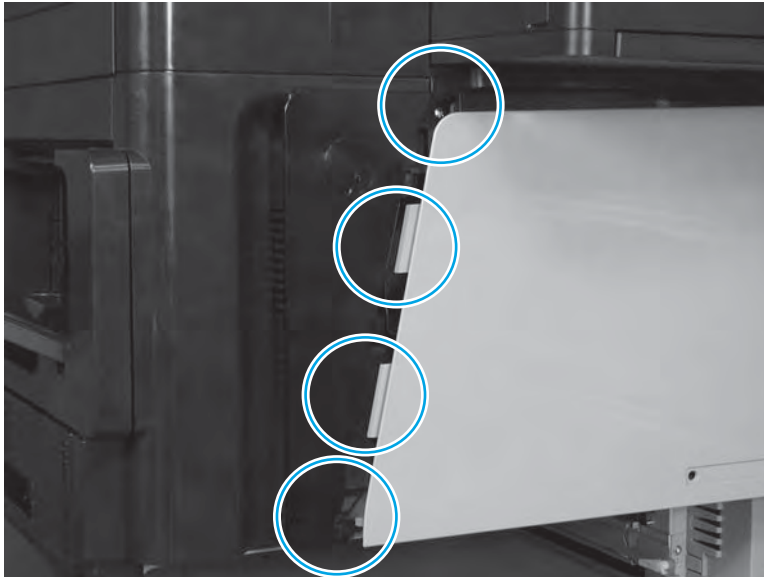
1. Take note of the location of all of the tabs on the back of the cover.

Figure 1-480 Note of the location of the tabs



2. Align the four tabs (callout 1) on the cover with the slots (callout 2) on the logo panel.

Figure 1-481 Align four tabs



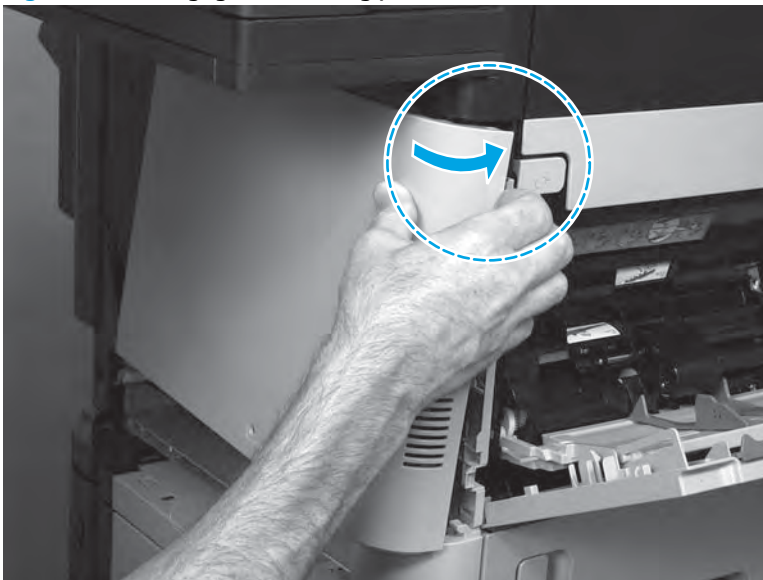
3. Slightly slide the cover toward the left side of the product to engage the tabs in the slots.

Figure 1-482 Slide the cover to the left



4. Carefully flex the right-upper corner of the cover toward from the product to engage one locking pin.

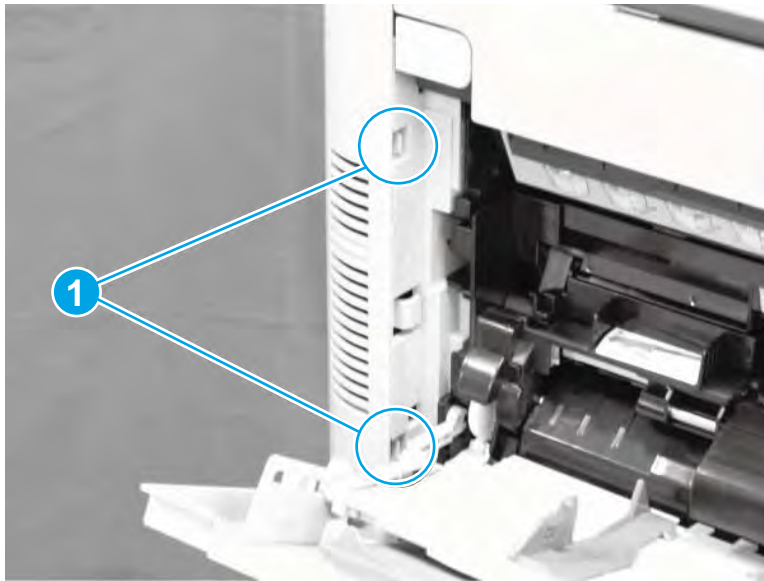
Figure 1-483 Engage one locking pin



- Engage two tabs (callout 1).

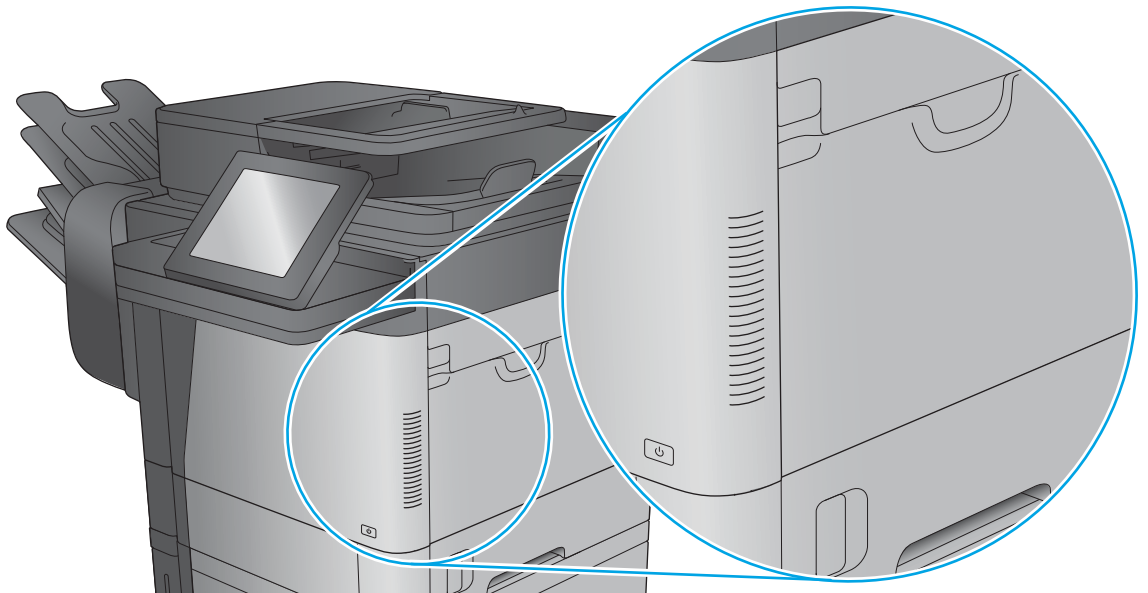
 **TIP:** Engage the upper tab first, and then engage the lower tab.

Figure 1-484 Engage two tabs



- Close Tray 1, and verify that the gap between the edge of the front cover and the tray is even. If it is uneven, the tabs are not correctly engaged.

Figure 1-485 Check cover installation



7. Install two screws (callout 1), and then reinstall Tray 2.


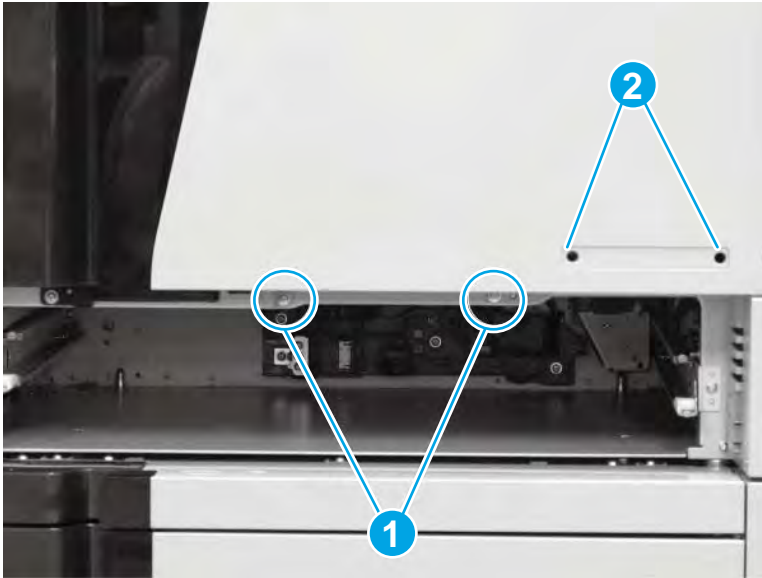
 **Reinstallation tip:** To install the product nameplate on the front cover, align the pins on the back side of the nameplate with the holes in the cover (callout 2), and then push in on the nameplate until it snaps in place.

Figure 1-486 Install two screws



Step 6: Turn the product power on

After servicing

Do the following steps:

Connect the power cable.

Turn on the product.

Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Rear-right cover

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the rear-right cover](#)
- [Step 2: Unpack the replacement rear-right cover](#)
- [Step 3: Install the rear-right cover](#)
- [Step 4: Turn the product power on](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the rear-right cover.

Before servicing


Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the kit.

Rear-right cover part number	
RL2-0999-000CN	Rear-right cover

Do the following steps:

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

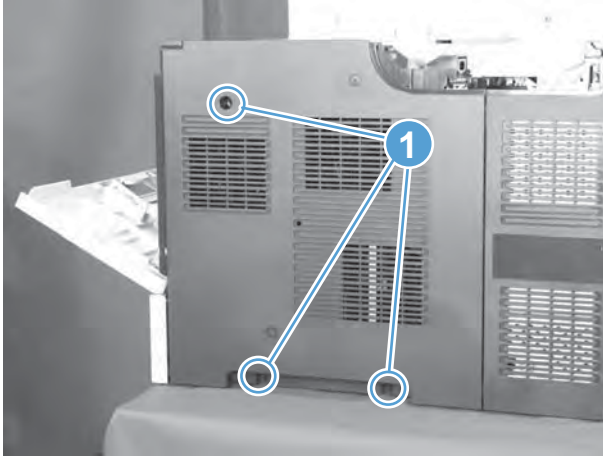
Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

Step 1: Remove the rear-right cover

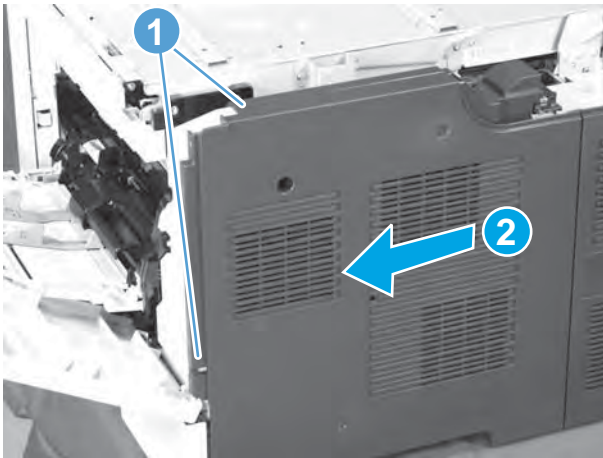
1. Open the top cover and Tray 1, and then remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-487 Remove three screws



2. Release two tabs (callout 1), slightly separate the edge of the cover near Tray 1 from the product, slide the cover towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

Figure 1-488 Remove the cover



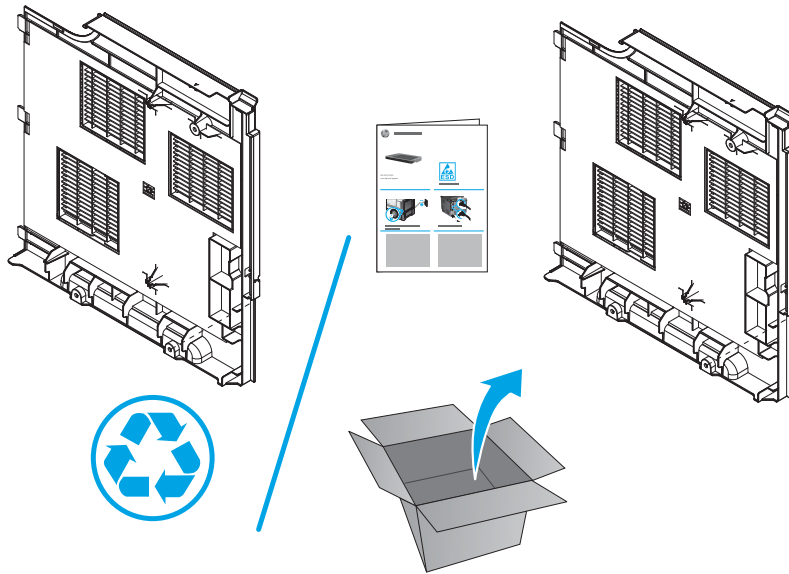
Step 2: Unpack the replacement rear-right cover

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

www.Product return and recycling.



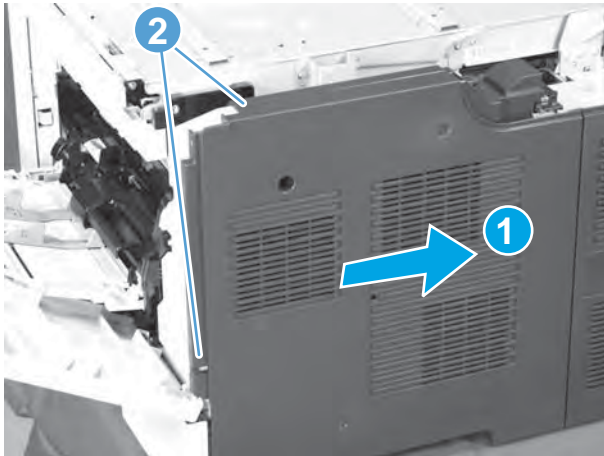
NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.



Step 3: Install the rear-right cover

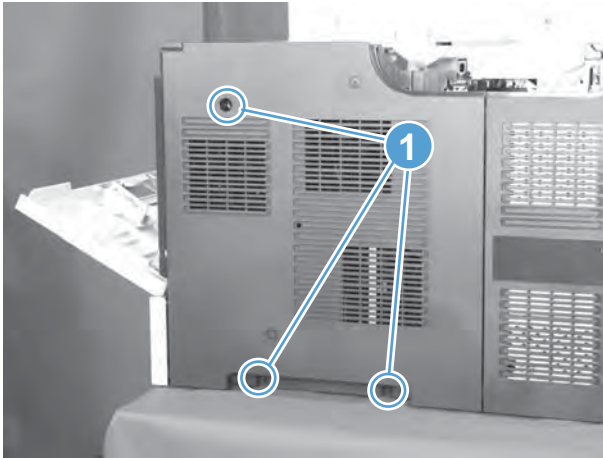
1. Position the cover on the product, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 1) to engage two tabs (callout 2).

Figure 1-489 Install the cover



2. Install three screws (callout 1), and then close the top cover and Tray 1.

Figure 1-490 Install three screws



Step 4: Turn the product power on

After servicing

Do the following steps:

Connect the power cable.

Turn on the product.

Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Rear-left cover

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the image scanner cable cover](#)
- [Step 2: Remove the rear-right cover](#)
- [Step 3: Remove the rear-left cover](#)
- [Step 4: Unpack the replacement rear-left cover](#)
- [Step 5: Install the rear-left cover](#)
- [Step 6: Install the rear-right cover](#)
- [Step 7: Install the image scanner cable cover](#)
- [Step 8: Turn the product power on](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the rear-left cover.

Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the kit.

Rear-left cover part number	
RC4-5692-000CN	Rear-left cover

Do the following steps:

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

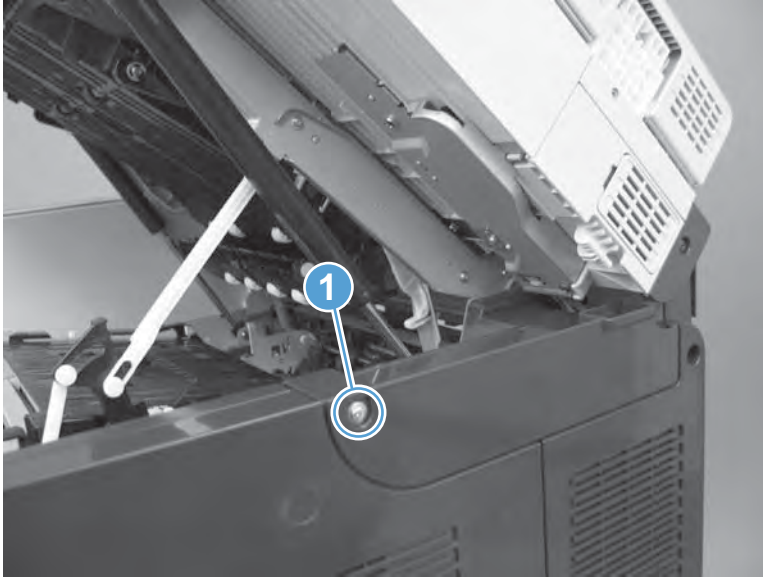
Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

Step 1: Remove the image scanner cable cover

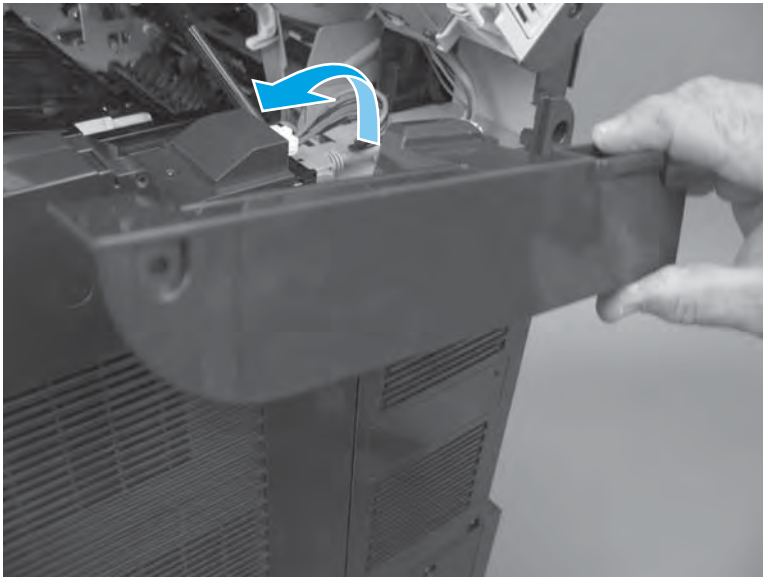
1. Open the top cover, and then remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-491 Remove one screw



2. Remove the cover.

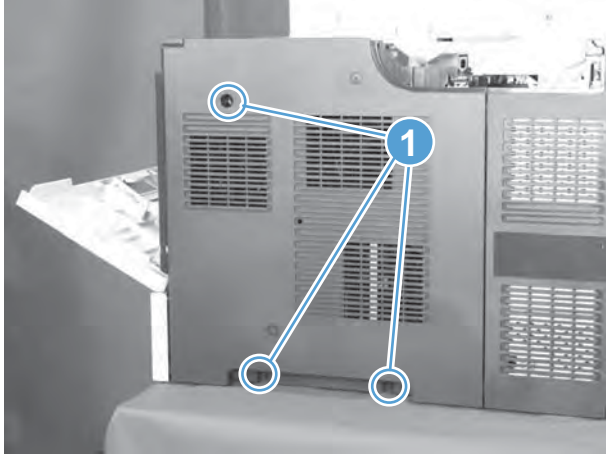
Figure 1-492 Remove the cover



Step 2: Remove the rear-right cover

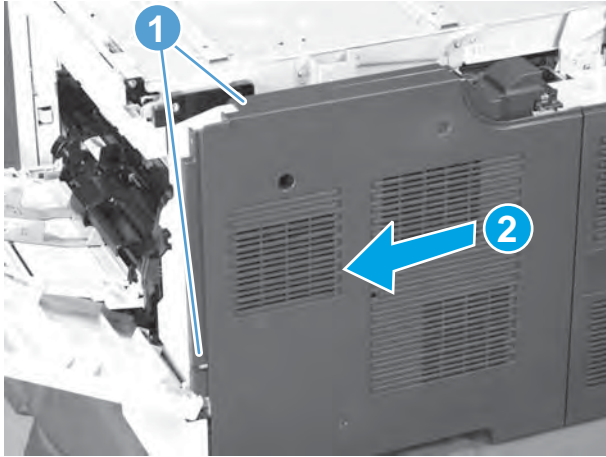
1. Open the top cover and Tray 1, and then remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-493 Remove three screws



2. Release two tabs (callout 1), slightly separate the edge of the cover near Tray 1 from the product, slide the cover towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

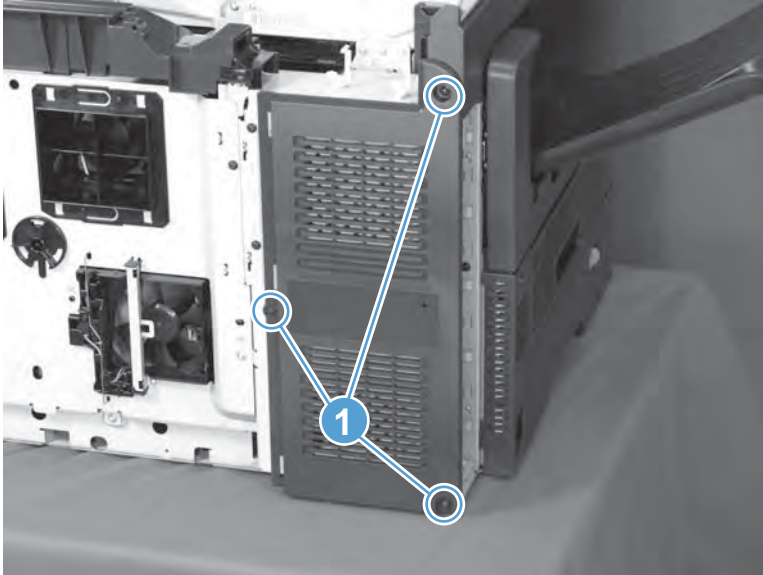
Figure 1-494 Remove the cover



Step 3: Remove the rear-left cover

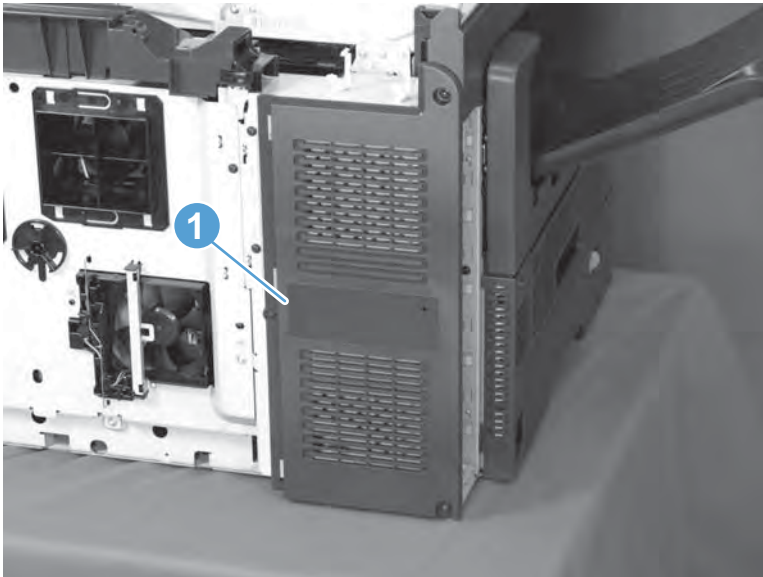
1. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-495 Remove three screws



2. Remove the cover (callout 1).

Figure 1-496 Remove the cover



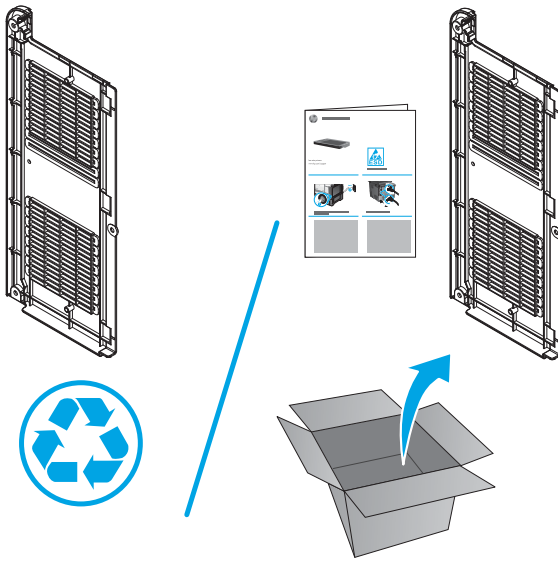
Step 4: Unpack the replacement rear-left cover

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

www.Product return and recycling.



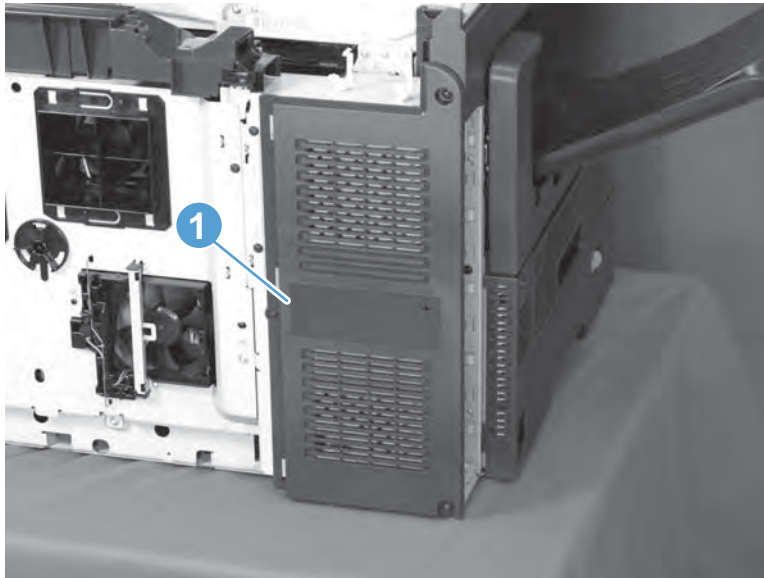
NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.



Step 5: Install the rear-left cover

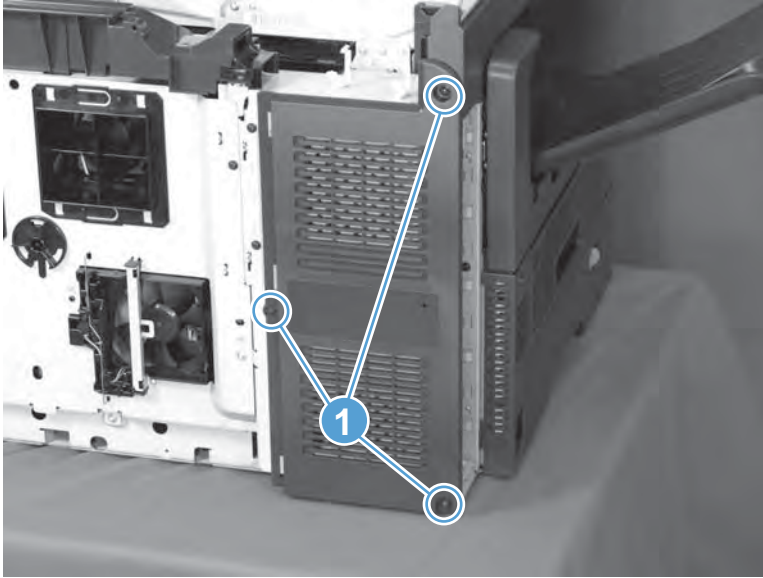
1. Position the cover (callout 1) on the product.

Figure 1-497 Install the cover



2. Install three screws (callout 1).

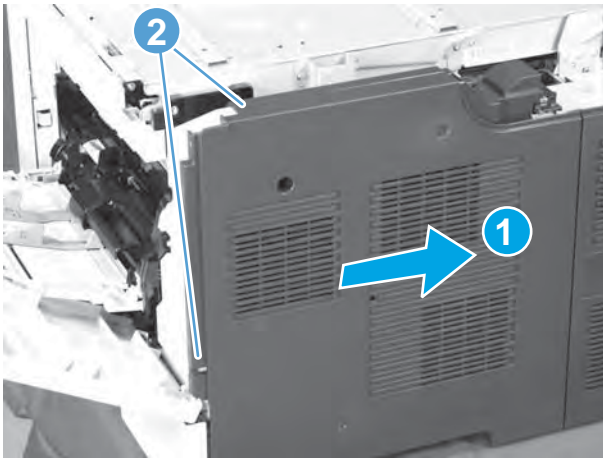
Figure 1-498 Install three screws



Step 6: Install the rear-right cover

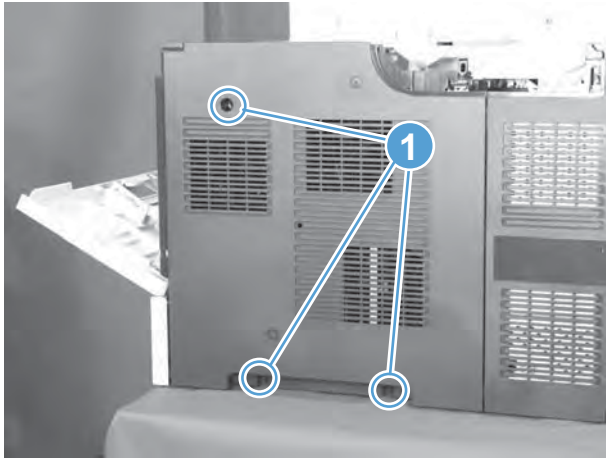
1. Position the cover on the product, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 1) to engage two tabs (callout 2).

Figure 1-499 Install the cover



2. Install three screws (callout 1), and then close the top cover and Tray 1.

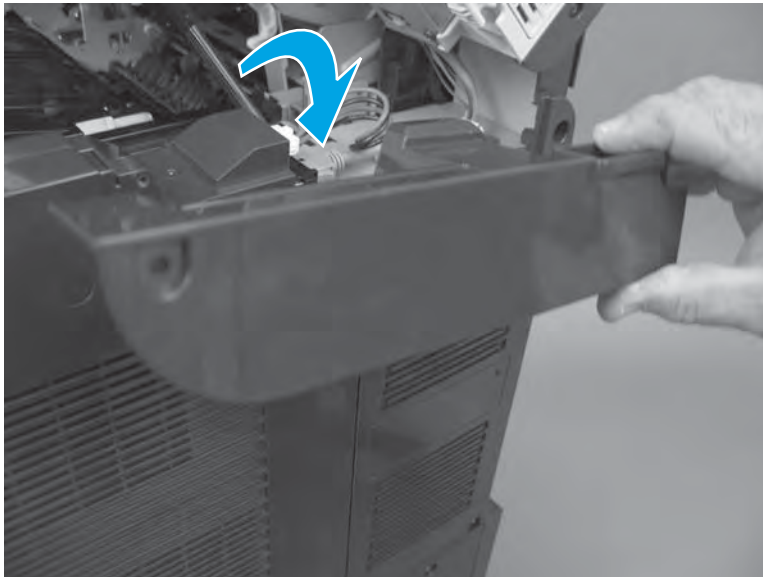
Figure 1-500 Install three screws



Step 7: Install the image scanner cable cover

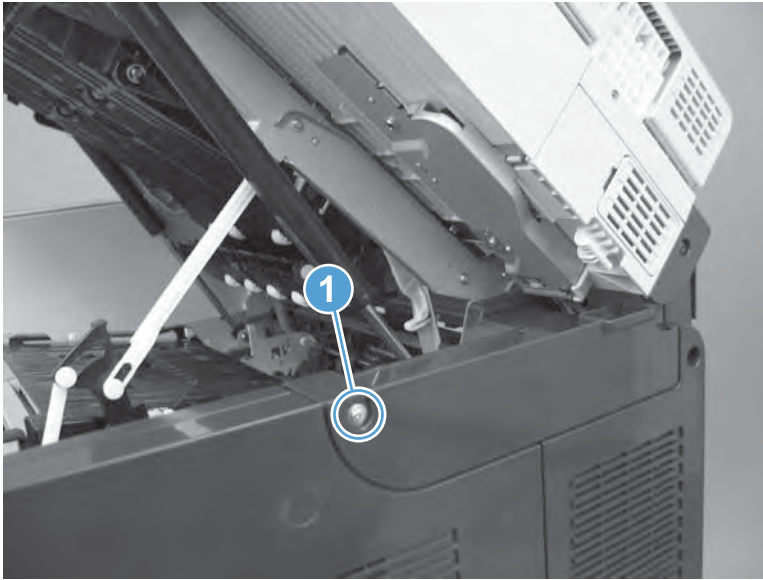
1. Install the cover on the product.

Figure 1-501 Install the cover



2. Install one screw (callout 1), and then close the top cover.

Figure 1-502 Install one screw



Step 8: Turn the product power on

After servicing

Do the following steps:

Connect the power cable.

Turn on the product.

Parts Return

[www.Product return and recycling.](http://www.Product return and recycling)

Rear-top cover

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the image scanner cable cover](#)
- [Step 2: Remove the rear-right cover](#)
- [Step 3: Remove the rear-left cover](#)
- [Step 4: Remove the rear-top cover](#)
- [Step 5: Unpack the replacement rear-top cover](#)
- [Step 6: Install the rear-top cover](#)
- [Step 7: Install the rear-left cover](#)
- [Step 8: Install the rear-right cover](#)
- [Step 9: Install the image scanner cable cover](#)
- [Step 10: Turn the product power on](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the rear-top cover.

Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the kit.

Rear-top cover part number	
RC4-1574-000CN	Rear-top cover

Do the following steps:

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

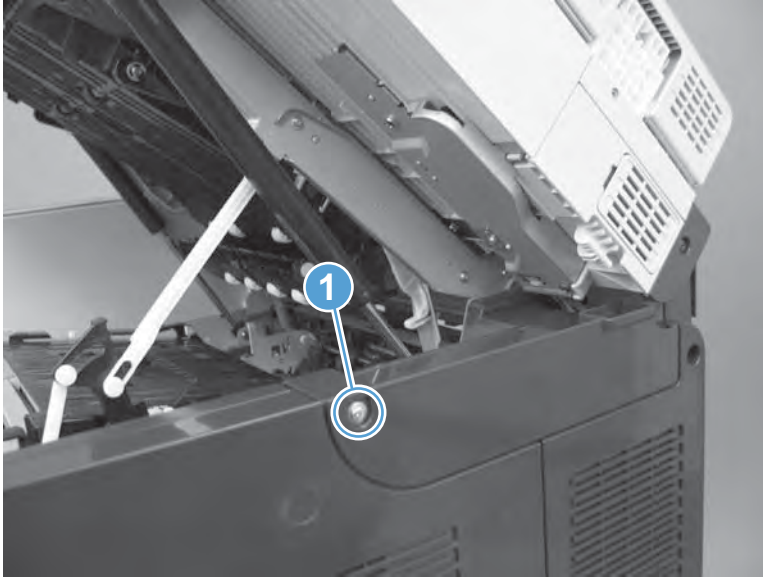
Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

Step 1: Remove the image scanner cable cover

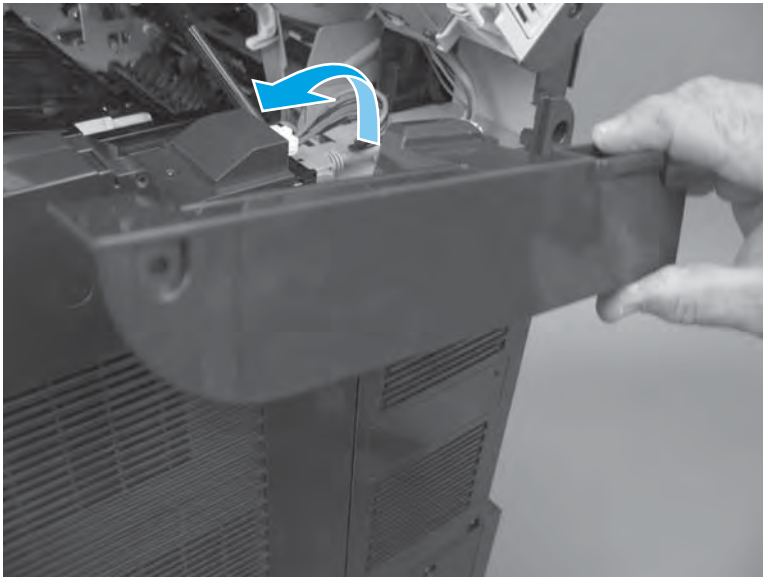
1. Open the top cover, and then remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-503 Remove one screw



2. Remove the cover.

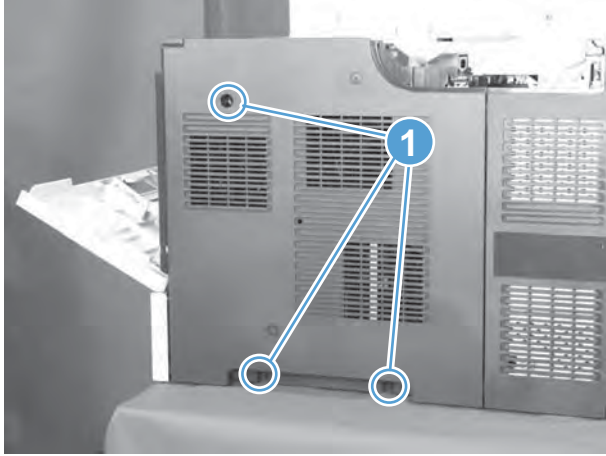
Figure 1-504 Remove the cover



Step 2: Remove the rear-right cover

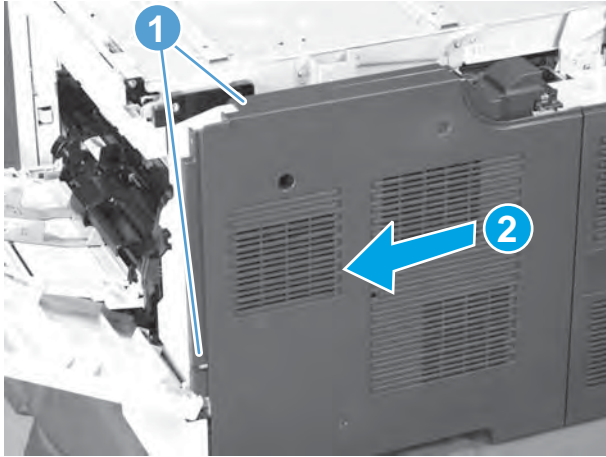
1. Open the top cover and Tray 1, and then remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-505 Remove three screws



2. Release two tabs (callout 1), slightly separate the edge of the cover near Tray 1 from the product, slide the cover towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

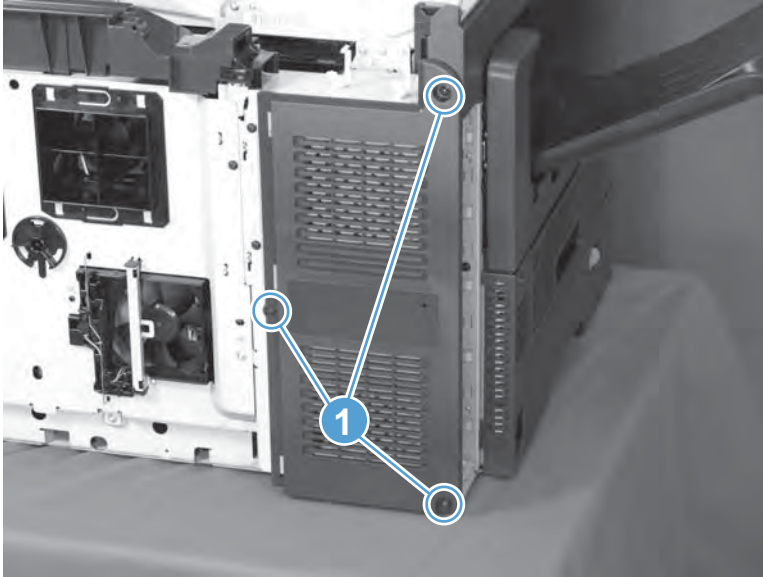
Figure 1-506 Remove the cover



Step 3: Remove the rear-left cover

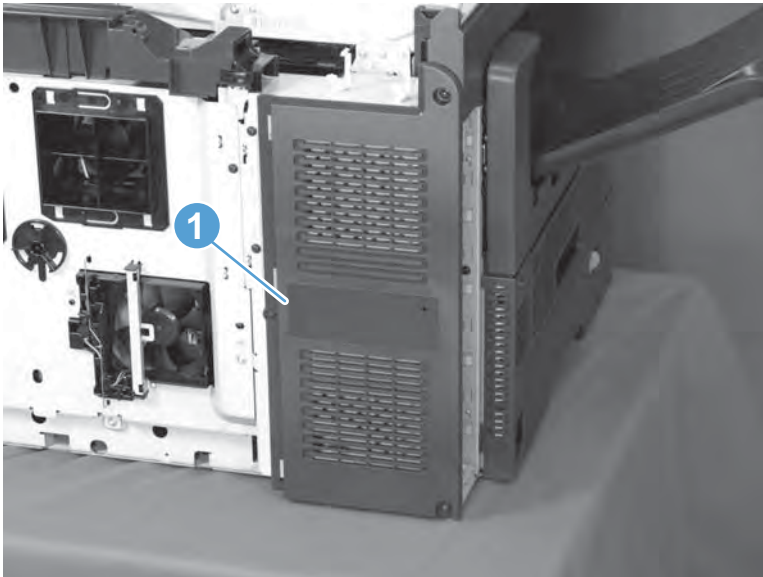
1. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-507 Remove three screws



2. Remove the cover (callout 1).

Figure 1-508 Remove the cover

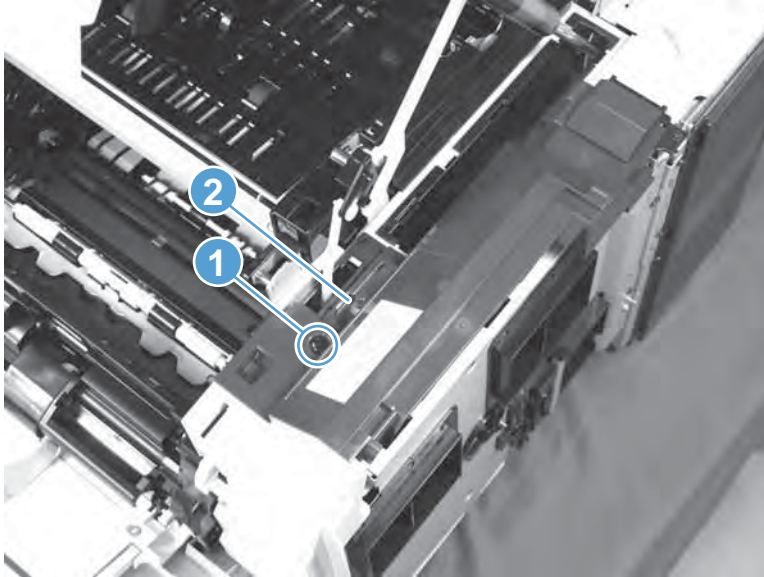


Step 4: Remove the rear-top cover

 **NOTE:** If the top cover is closed, open it now.

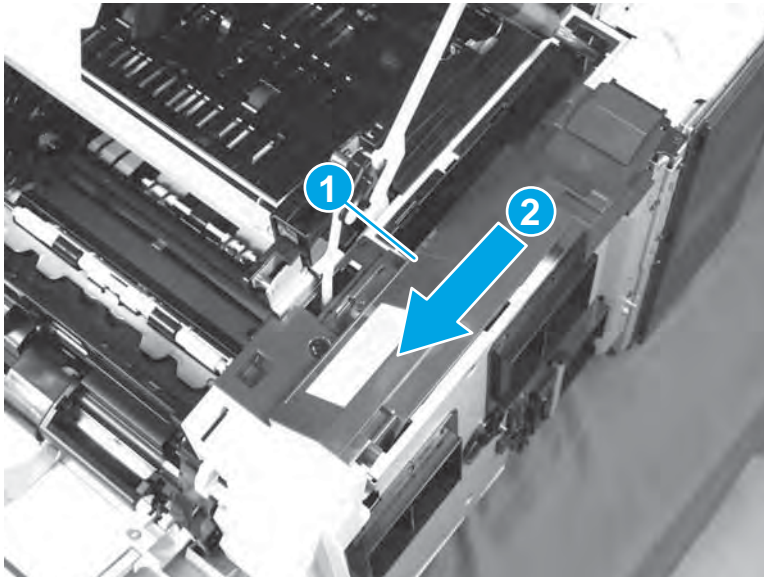
1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release one tab (callout 2).

Figure 1-509 Remove one screw



2. Push the cover (callout 1) towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.


Figure 1-510 Remove the cover

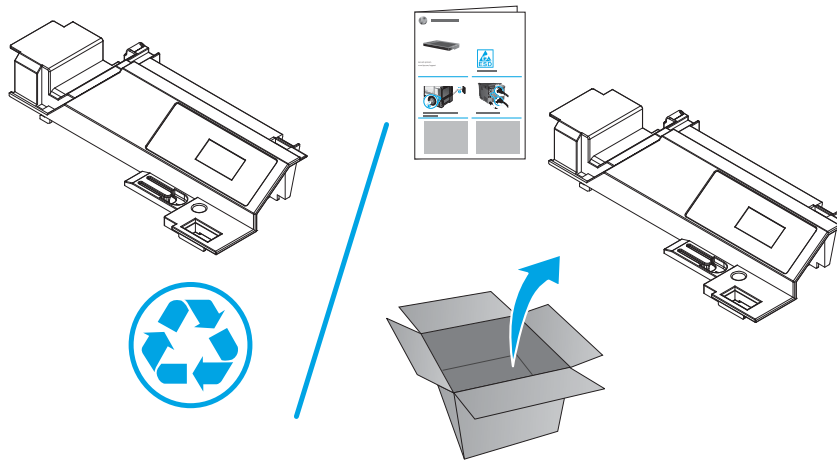


Step 5: Unpack the replacement rear-top cover

Unpack the replacement rear-top assembly from the packaging.

www.Product return and recycling.

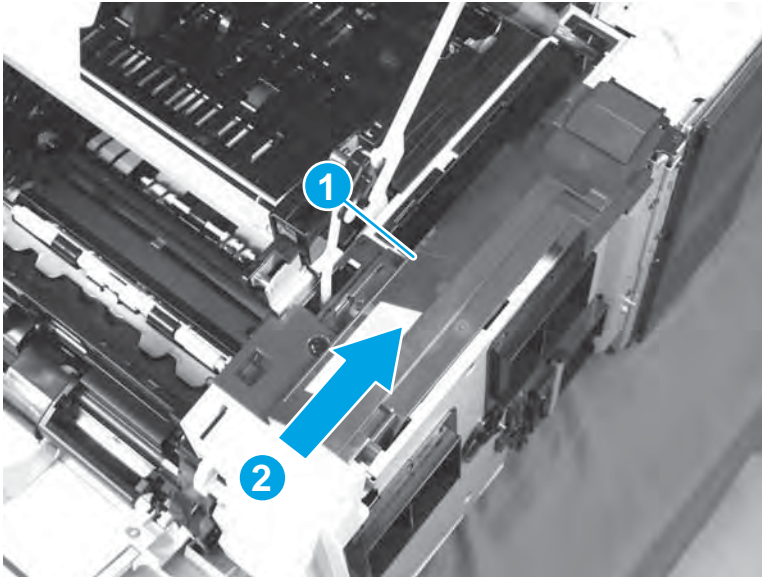
 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.



Step 6: Install the rear-top cover

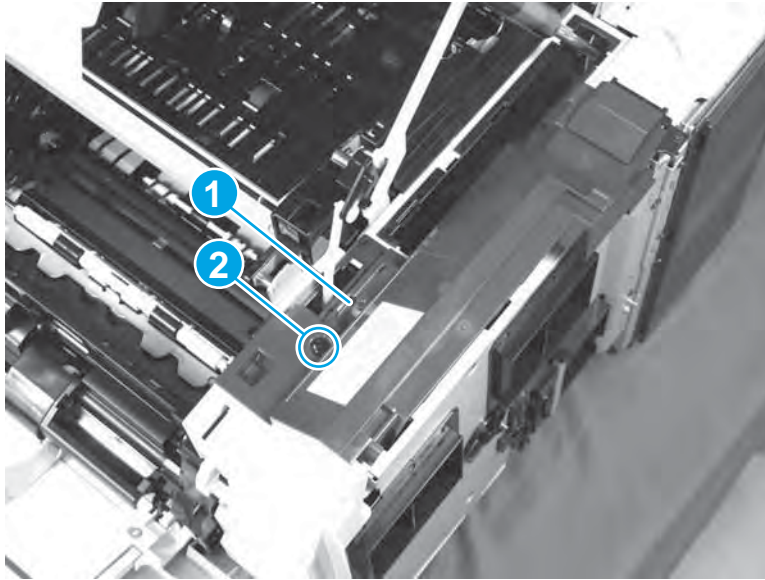
1. Position the cover on the product, Push the cover (callout 1) away Tray 1 to install it (callout 2).

Figure 1-511 Install the cover



2. Make sure that the tab (callout 2) is engaged, and then install one screw (callout 2).

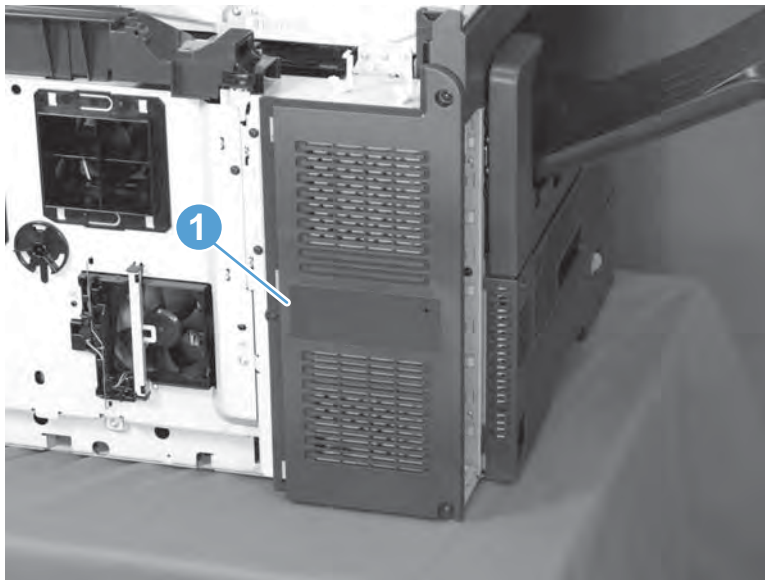
Figure 1-512 Install one screw



Step 7: Install the rear-left cover

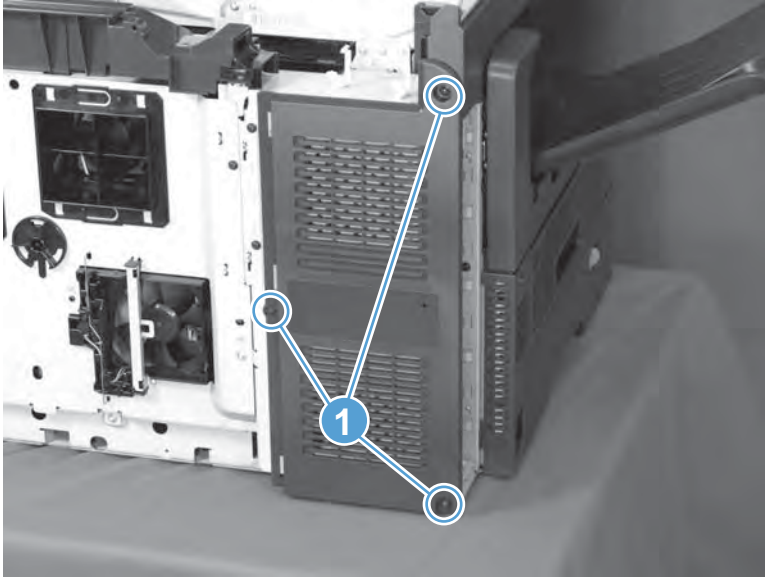
1. Position the cover (callout 1) on the product.

Figure 1-513 Install the cover



2. Install three screws (callout 1).

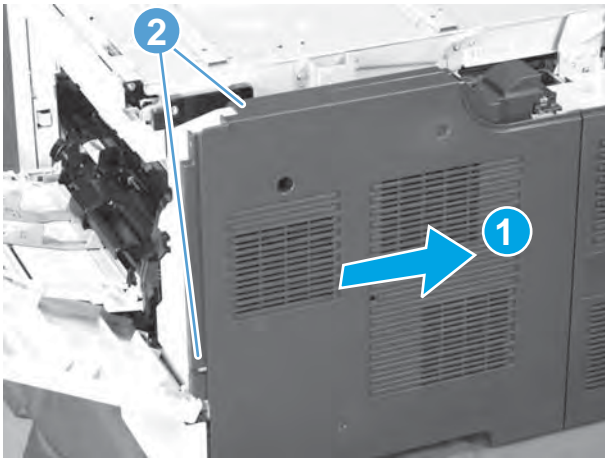
Figure 1-514 Install three screws



Step 8: Install the rear-right cover

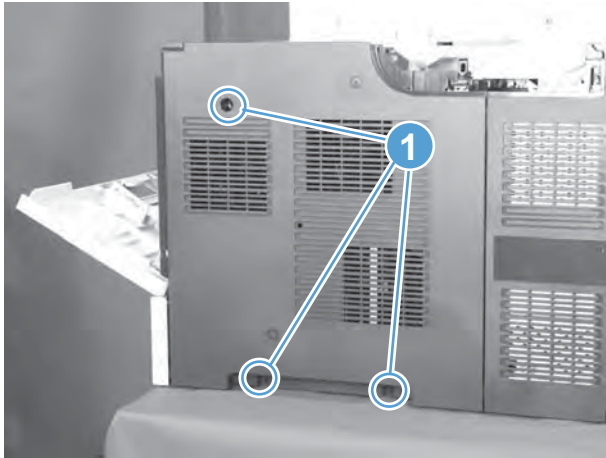
1. Position the cover on the product, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 1) to engage two tabs (callout 2).

Figure 1-515 Install the cover



2. Install three screws (callout 1), and then close the top cover and Tray 1.

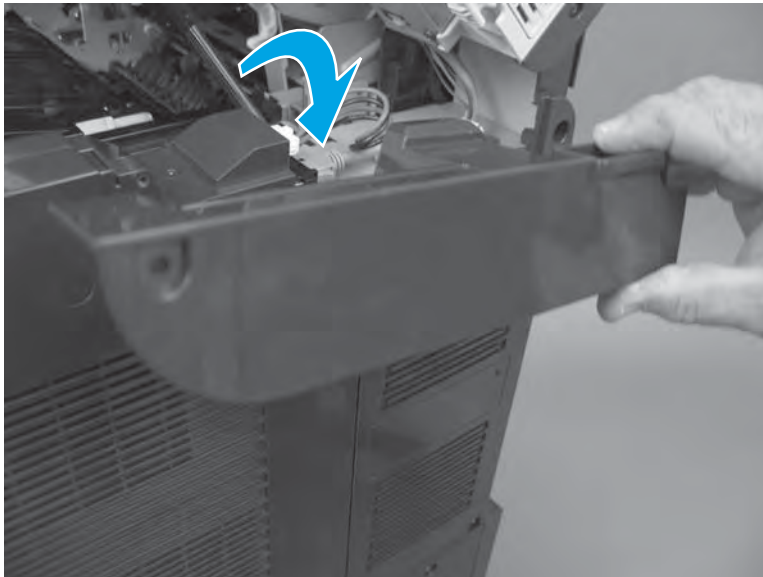
Figure 1-516 Install three screws



Step 9: Install the image scanner cable cover

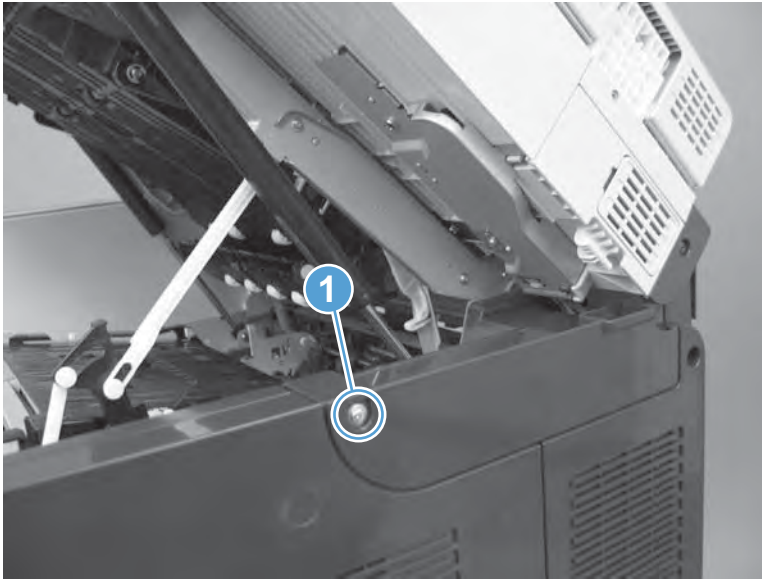
1. Install the cover on the product.

Figure 1-517 Install the cover



2. Install one screw (callout 1), and then close the top cover.

Figure 1-518 Install one screw



Step 10: Turn the product power on

After servicing

Do the following steps:

Connect the power cable.

Turn on the product.

Parts Return

[www.Product return and recycling.](http://www.Product return and recycling)

Right-lower door

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the Tray 1 cover](#)
- [Step 2: Remove the rear-right cover](#)
- [Step 3: Remove the right-lower door](#)
- [Step 4: Unpack the replacement right-lower door](#)
- [Step 5: Install the right-lower door](#)
- [Step 6: Install the rear-right cover](#)
- [Step 7: Install the Tray 1 cover](#)
- [Step 8: Turn the product power on](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the right-lower door.

Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the kit.

Right-lower door part number	
RM2-5820-000CN	Right-lower door

Do the following steps:

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

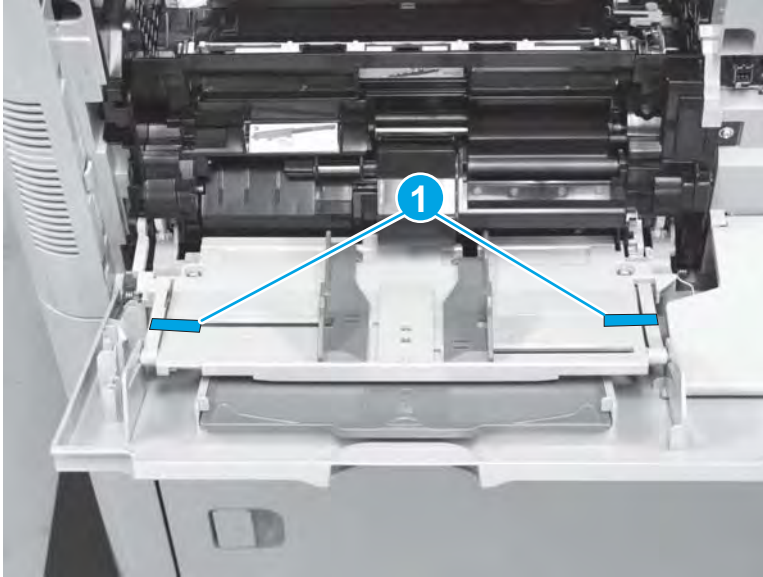
Required tools

- No special tools are required to install this kit.

Step 1: Remove the Tray 1 cover

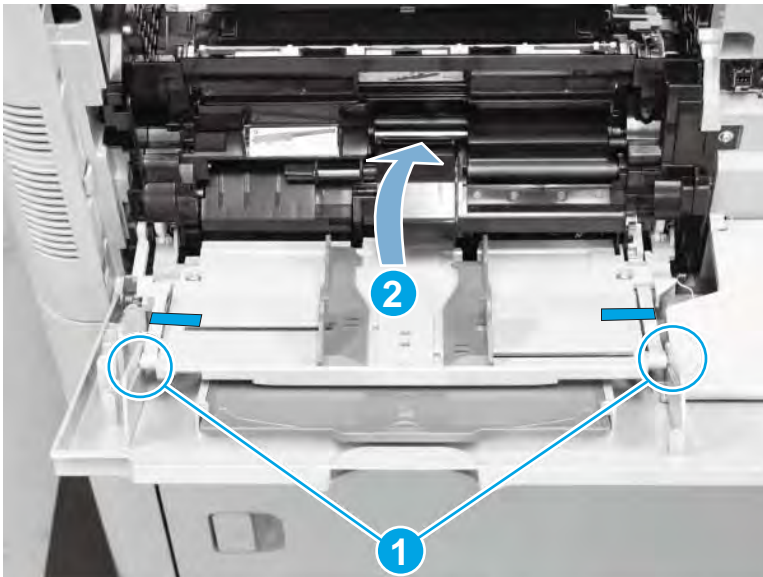
1. Use low adhesive tape to secure the outer retaining pins (callout 1) to the inner tray.

Figure 1-519 Secure the outer retaining pins



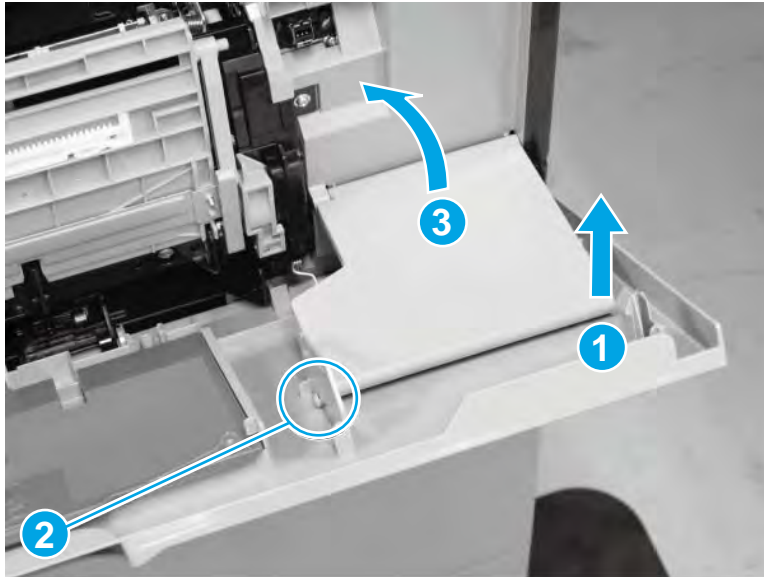
2. Open Tray 1, release the two outer retaining pins (callout 1) on the cover, and then carefully fold the inner tray up (callout 2) and into the product to protect it.

Figure 1-520 Release two outer retaining pins



- Carefully lift on the outer corner of the tray inner cover (callout 1) to release one pin (callout 2) from the guide, and then fold the inner cover up (callout 3) and into the product.

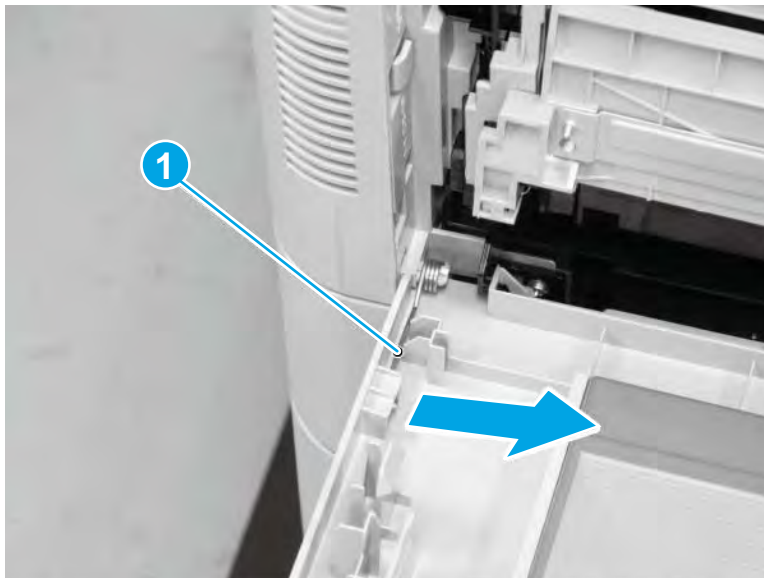
Figure 1-521 Release one pin



- Release the left-side spring arm (callout 1).

⚠ CAUTION: The spring is not captive when the spring arm is released and can be dislodged and lost.

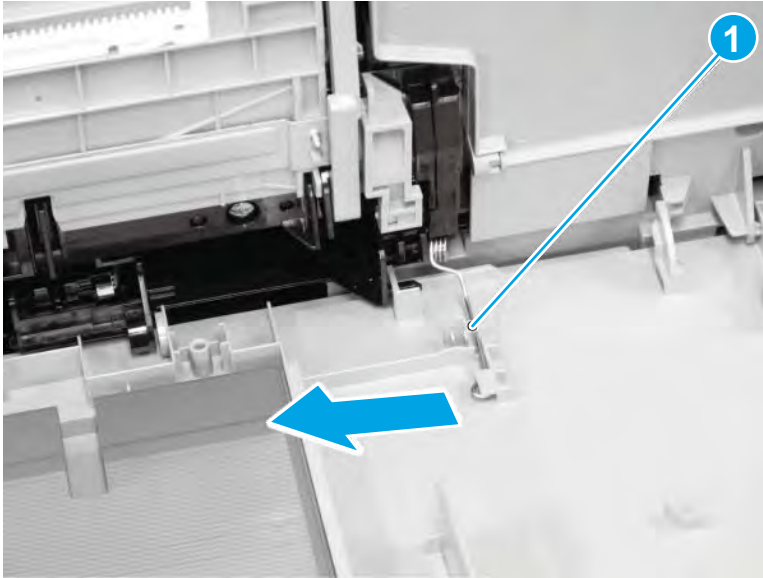
Figure 1-522 Release the left-side spring



5. Release the right-side spring arm (callout 1).

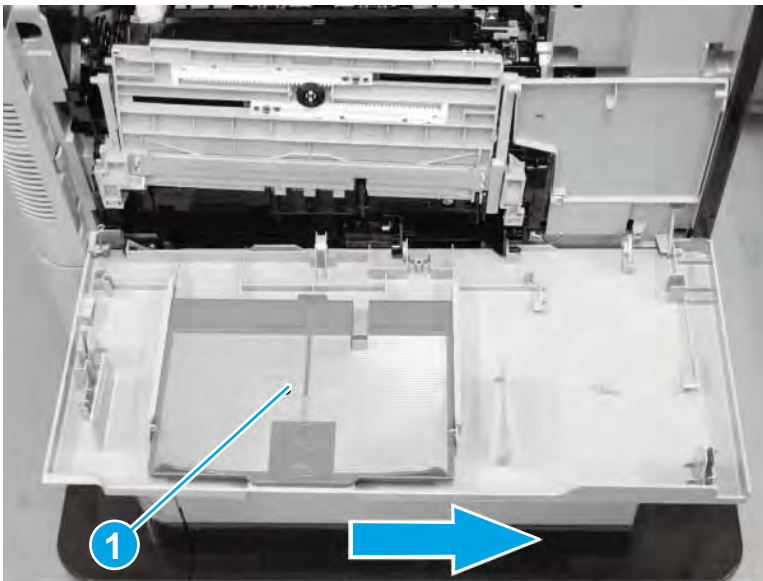
⚠ CAUTION: The spring is not captive when the spring arm is released and can be dislodged and lost.

Figure 1-523 Release the right-side spring



6. Slide the cover (callout 1) toward the back of the product to release it, and then remove the cover.

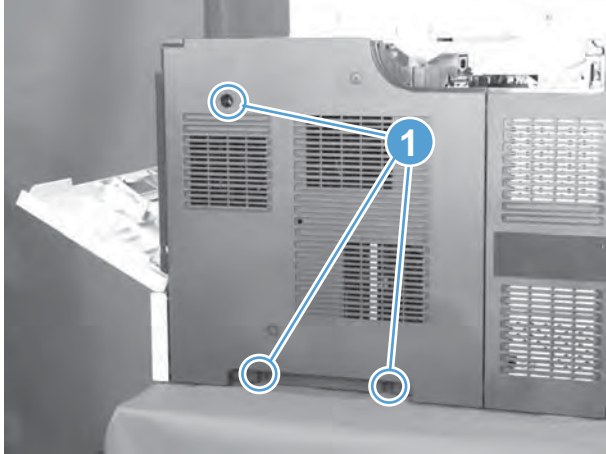
Figure 1-524 Remove the cover



Step 2: Remove the rear-right cover

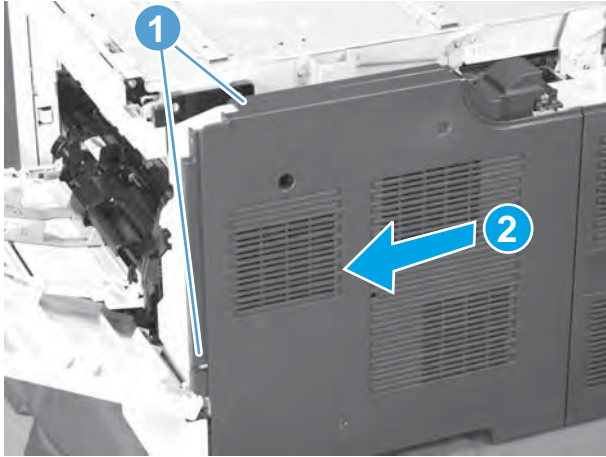
1. Open the top cover and Tray 1, and then remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-525 Remove three screws



2. Release two tabs (callout 1), slightly separate the edge of the cover near Tray 1 from the product, slide the cover towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

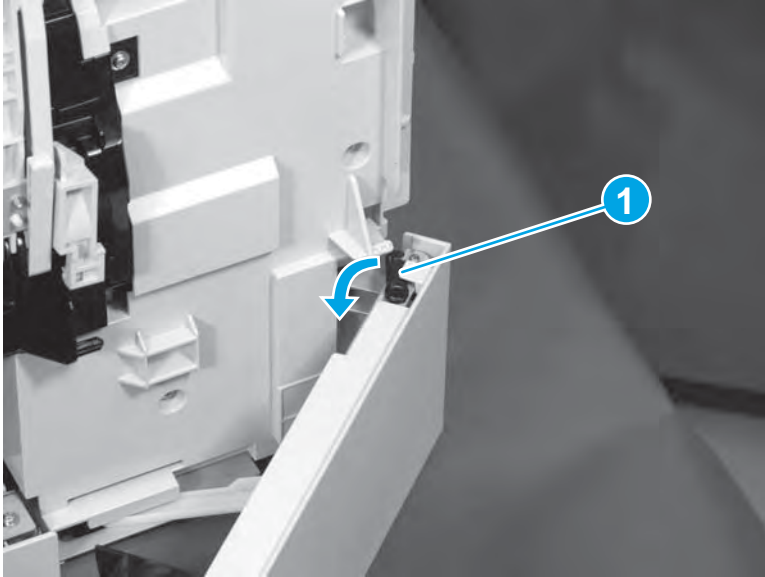
Figure 1-526 Remove the cover



Step 3: Remove the right-lower door

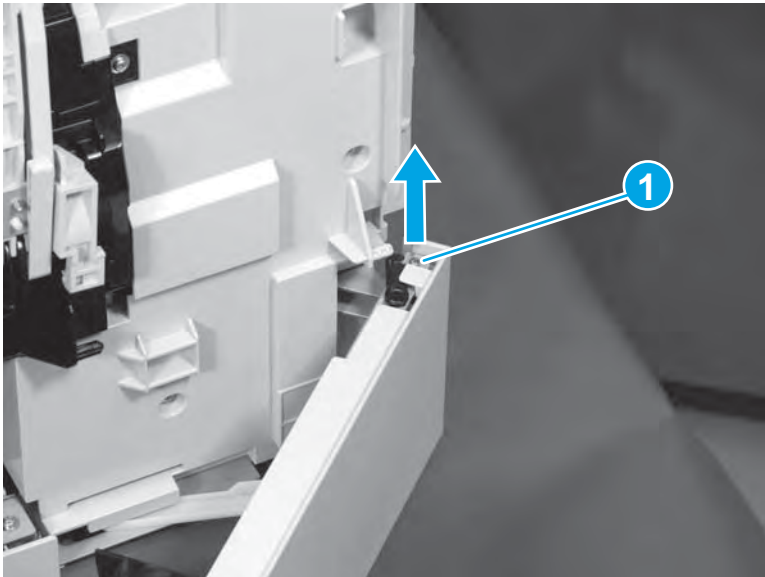
1. Open the right-lower door, and then rotate the stopper (callout 1) to release it.

Figure 1-527 Rotate the stopper



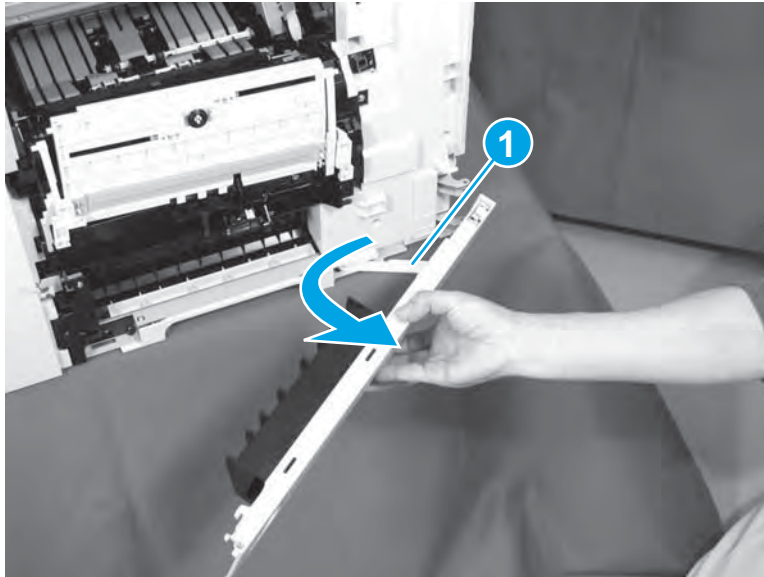
2. Support the door, and then remove the shaft (callout 1).

Figure 1-528 Remove the shaft



3. Release the door-retainer arm (callout 1) by sliding it toward the front of the product, and then remove the door.

Figure 1-529 Remove the door

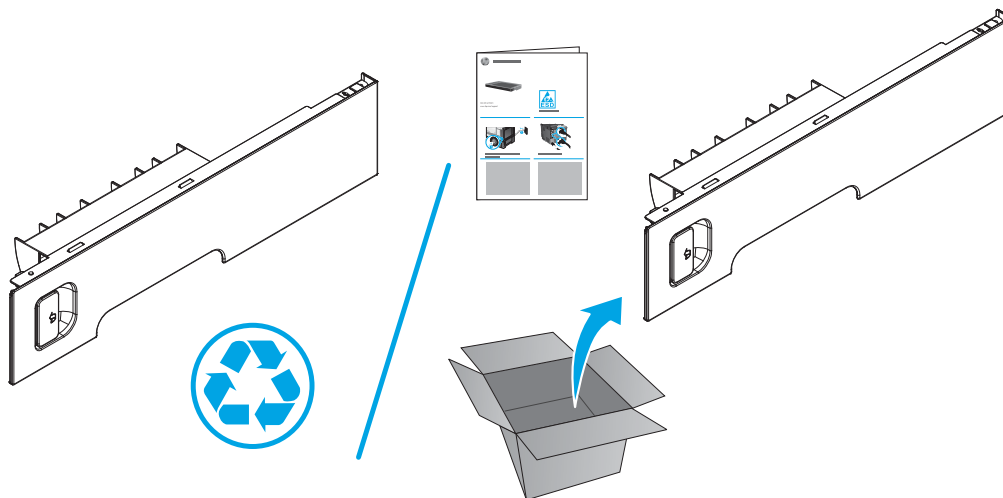


Step 4: Unpack the replacement right-lower door

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

www.Product return and recycling.

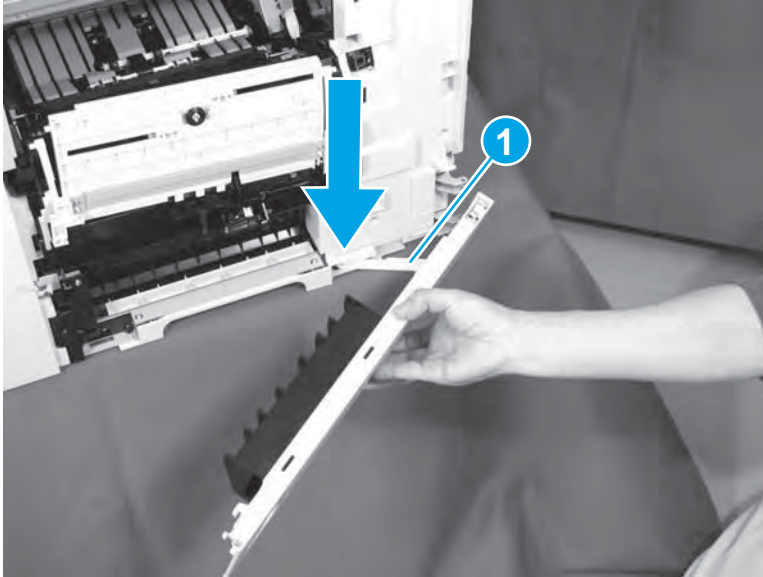
 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.



Step 5: Install the right-lower door

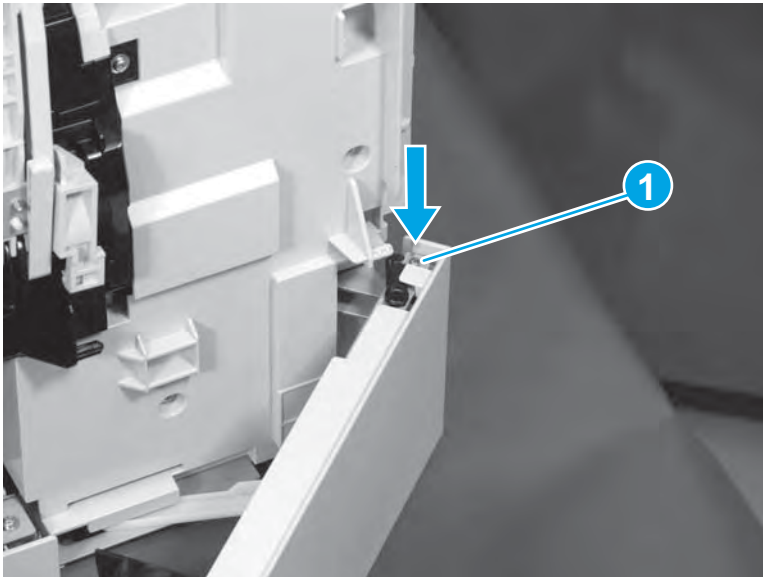
1. Install the door-retainer arm (callout 1) in the slot, and then position the right edge of the door on the product.

Figure 1-530 Install the door



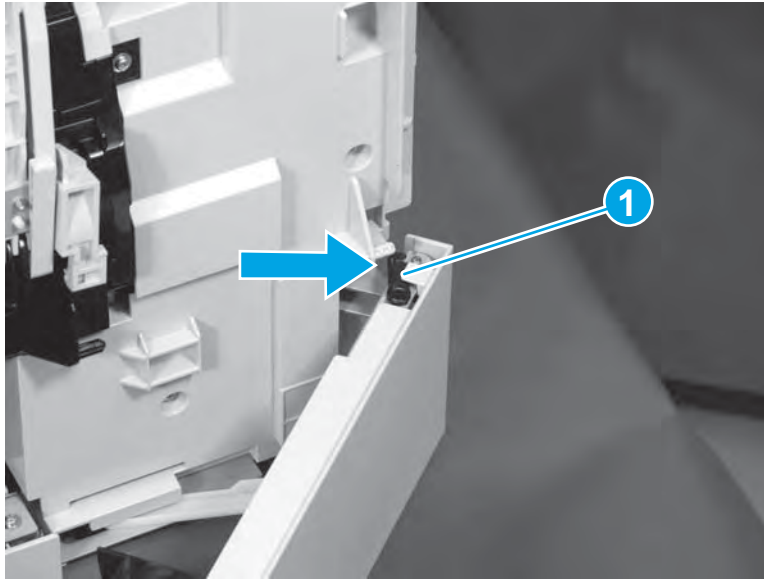
2. Install the shaft (callout 1).

Figure 1-531 Install the shaft



3. Rotate the stopper (callout 1) to until it locks in place.

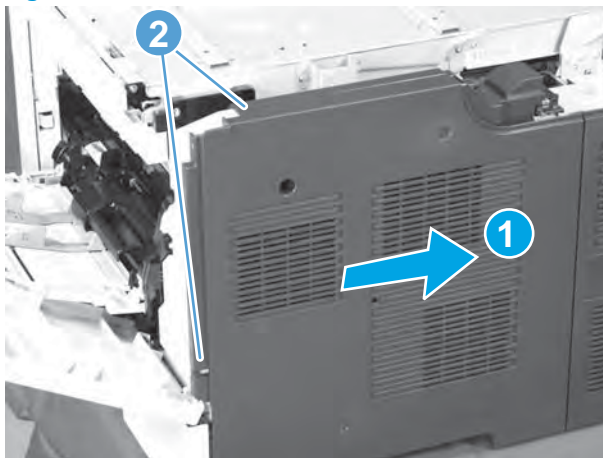
Figure 1-532 Rotate the stopper



Step 6: Install the rear-right cover

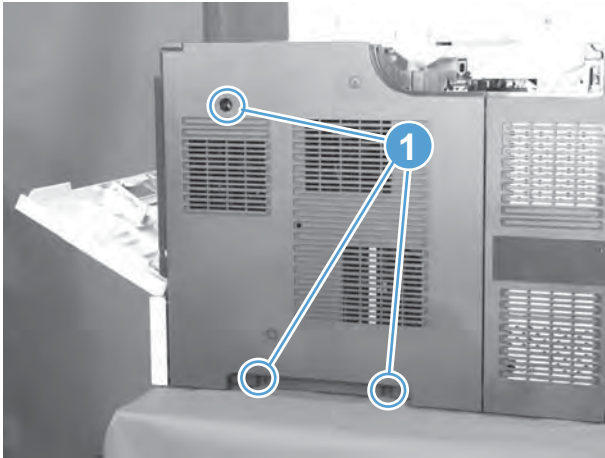
1. Position the cover on the product, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 1) to engage two tabs (callout 2).

Figure 1-533 Install the cover



2. Install three screws (callout 1), and then close the top cover and Tray 1.

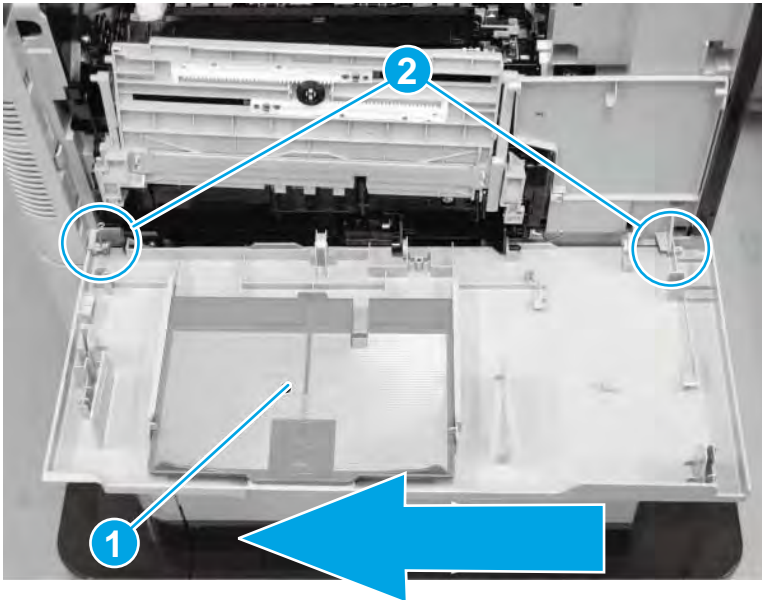
Figure 1-534 Install three screws



Step 7: Install the Tray 1 cover

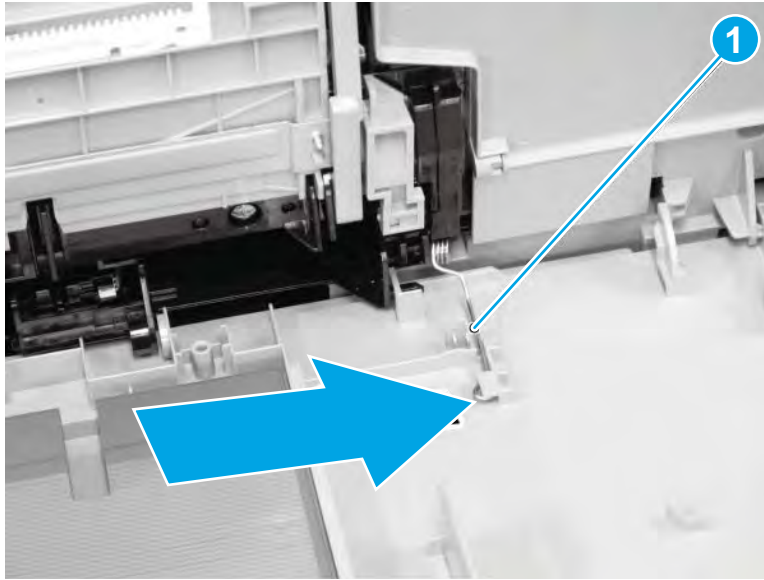
1. Slide the cover (callout 1) toward the front of the product to install it on the hinge pins (callout 2).

Figure 1-535 Install the cover



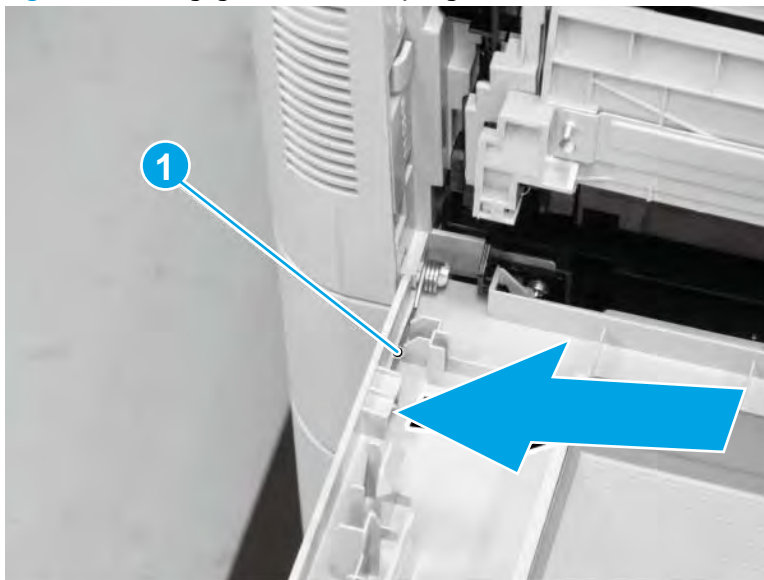
2. Engage the right-side spring arm (callout 1).

Figure 1-536 Engage the right-side spring



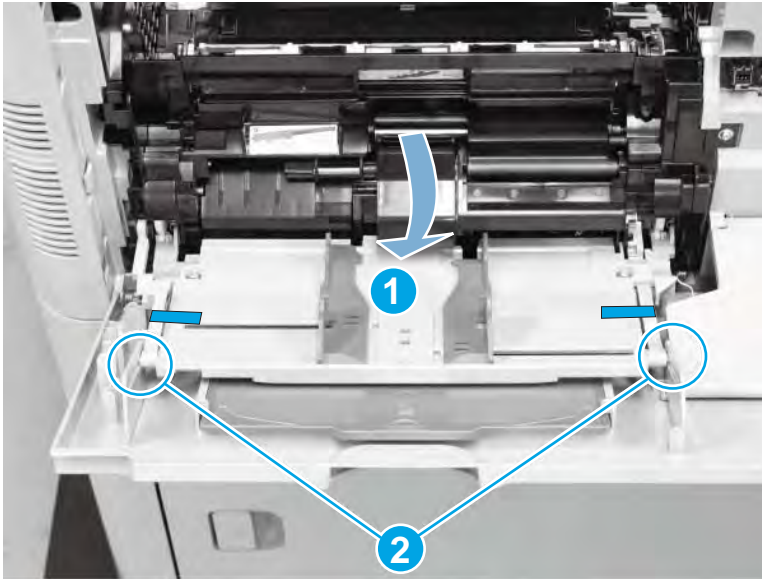
3. Engage the left-side spring arm (callout 1).

Figure 1-537 Engage the left-side spring



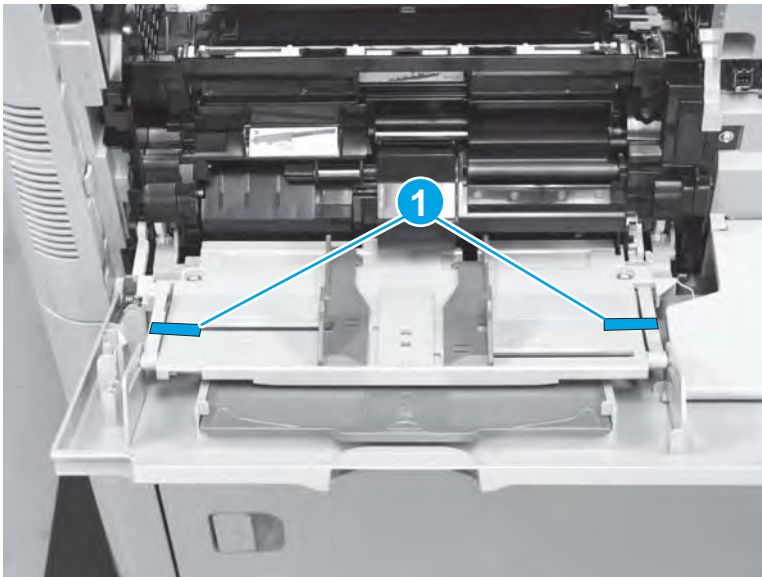
4. Lower the inner tray assembly (callout 1), and then engage the two outer retaining pins (callout 2) on the cover.

Figure 1-538 Engage two outer retaining pins



5. Remove the low adhesive tape (callout 1), and then close the tray.

Figure 1-539 Remove the low adhesive tape



Step 8: Turn the product power on

After servicing

Do the following steps:

Connect the power cable.

Turn on the product.

Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Document-feeder hinge cover

Remove the following assemblies:

- Image scanner cable cover. See [Image scanner cable cover on page 283](#).
- Rear-right cover. See [Rear-right cover on page 323](#).
- Rear-left cover. See [Rear-left cover on page 327](#).

Remove the document-feeder hinge cover

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

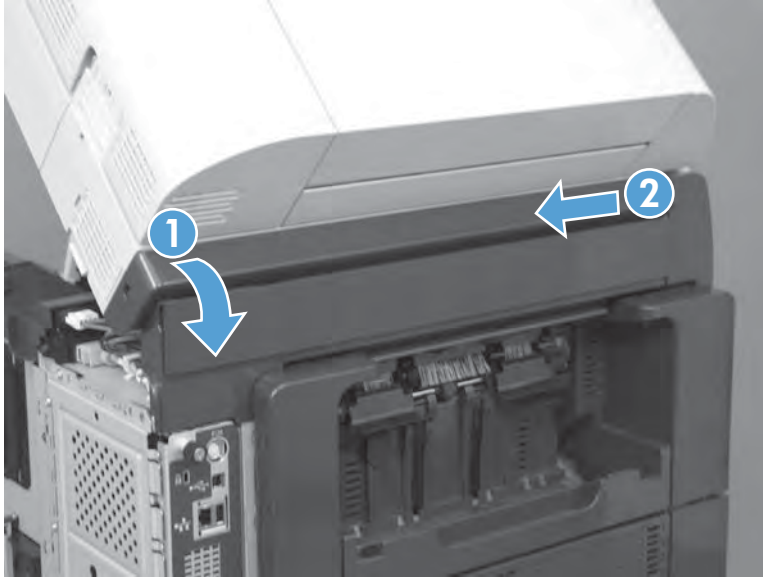
1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-540 Remove one screw



2. Release the corner of the cover (callout 1), and then slide the cover (callout 2) toward the rear of the product.

Figure 1-541 Release the corner of the cover



3. Remove the cover.


 **NOTE:** The document-feeder hinge cover consists of two separate covers. It will likely come apart when removed.

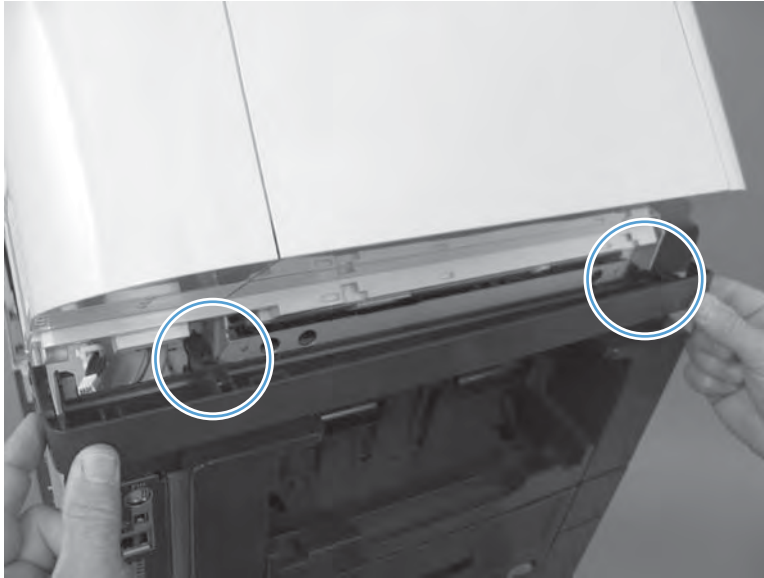
Figure 1-542 Remove the document feeder hinge cover



Install the document-feeder hinge cover

When the cover is reinstalled, make sure that the flanges on the cover are correctly positioned behind the Image scanner left cover.

Figure 1-543 Install the document-feeder hinge cover



Main assemblies

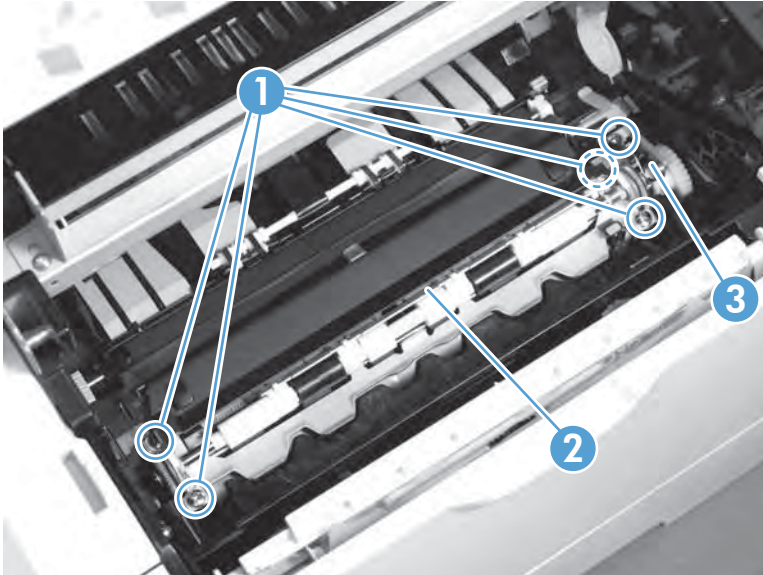
- [Registration assembly](#)
- [Cassette-door-open detection switch \(SW105\)](#)
- [Reverse assembly upper guide assembly](#)
- [Reverse assembly](#)
- [Laser/scanner assembly](#)
- [Cartridge sensor assembly](#)
- [Temperature sensor](#)
- [DC controller shield-plate assembly](#)
- [DC controller](#)
- [Tray 1 pickup assembly](#)
- [Interconnect board \(ICB\)](#)
- [Feed motor \(M101\)](#)
- [Drum motor \(M102\)](#)
- [Fuser motor \(M299\)](#)
- [Main fan \(FN101\)](#)
- [Laser/scanner fan \(FN102\)](#)
- [Cartridge front-side fan \(FN103\)](#)
- [Low-voltage power supply fan \(FN104\)](#)
- [Reverse assembly fan \(FN105\)](#)
- [Cartridge fan \(FN301\)](#)
- [Interlock switch assembly \(SW101 and SW106\)](#)
- [Output accessory detection switch \(SW104\)](#)
- [Low-voltage power supply \(LVPS\)](#)
- [Lifter base assembly](#)
- [Lifter assembly](#)
- [High-voltage power supply \(HVPS\)](#)
- [Feed roller assembly](#)
- [Pickup drive assembly](#)
- [Cassette pickup assembly](#)

Registration assembly

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

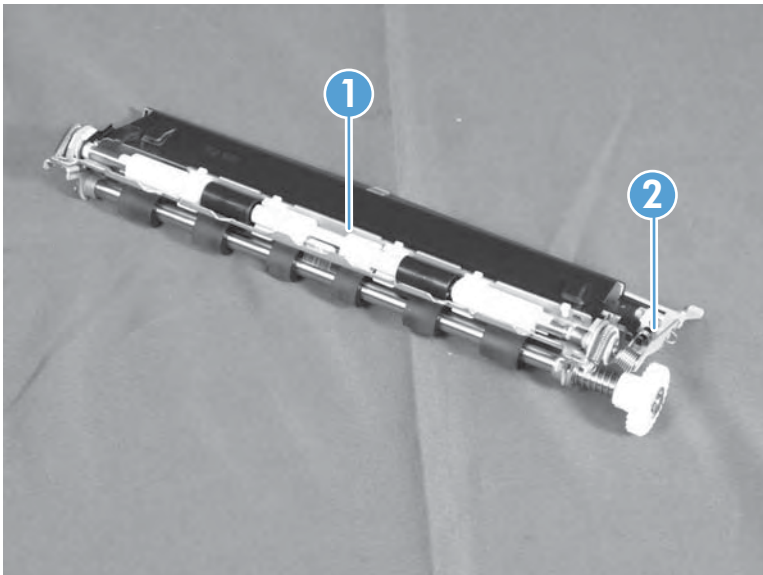
1. Pull the top cover release lever to open the top cover.
2. Open the jam access flap, remove five screws (callout 1), and then remove the registration assembly (callout 2) and grounding plate (callout 3) together.

Figure 1-544 Remove the registration assembly and grounding plate



3. If necessary, separate the registration assembly (callout 1) from the grounding plate (callout 2).

Figure 1-545 Remove the registration assembly



Cassette-door-open detection switch (SW105)

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the cassette-door-open detection switch](#)
- [Step 2: Unpack the replacement switch assembly](#)
- [Step 3: Install the cassette-door-open detection switch](#)
- [Step 4: Turn the product power on](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the cassette-door-open detection switch.

Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the kit.

Cassette-door-open detection switch part number

RM1-1045-000CN


Cassette-door-open detection switch

NOTE: This switch is also called the right-door sensor assembly.

Do the following steps:

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

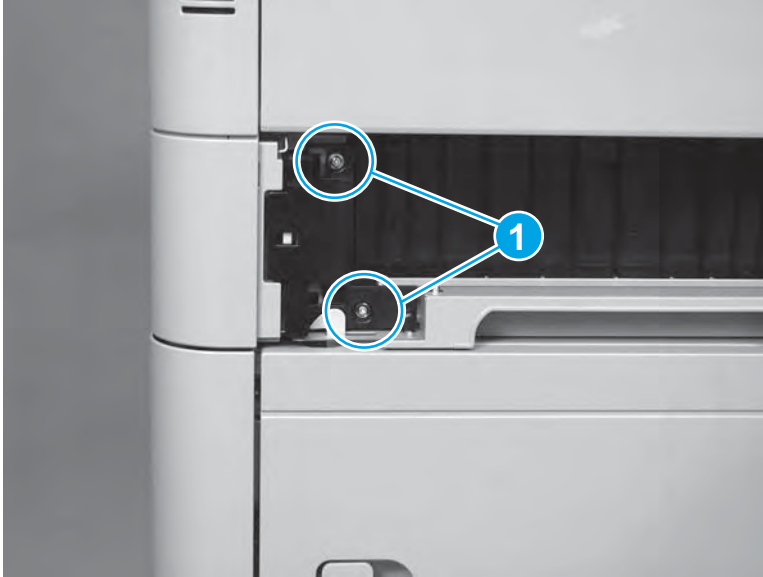
Required tools

#2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152-mm (6-in) shaft length

Step 1: Remove the cassette-door-open detection switch

1. Open the right-lower door, and then remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-546 Remove two screws



2. Remove the switch cover (callout 1).


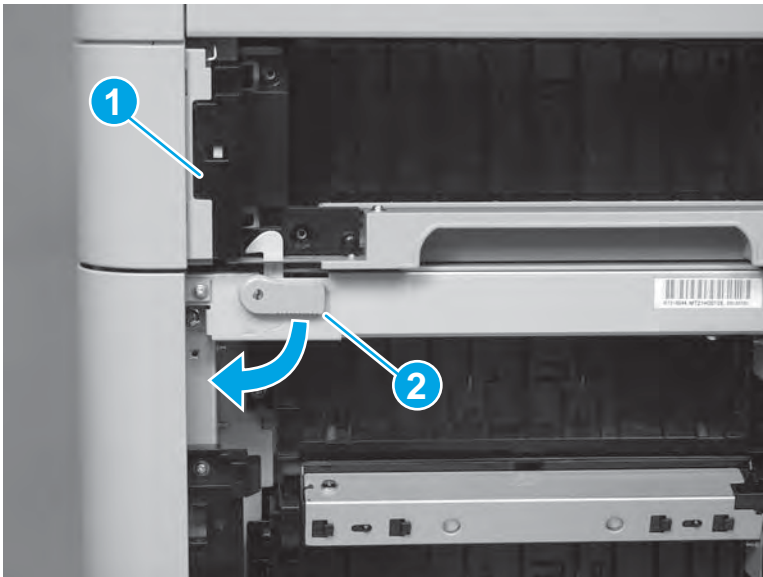
 **TIP:** If the product is installed on an optional input accessory, open the accessory right door, and then release the blue lever (callout 2) to lower the locking latch to make removing the cover easier.

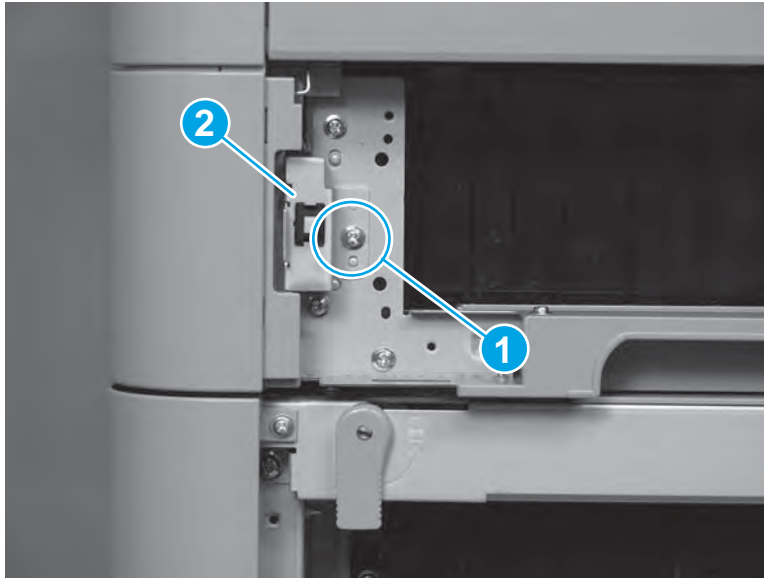
Figure 1-547 Remove the cover



3. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then separate the switch assembly (callout 2) from the product.

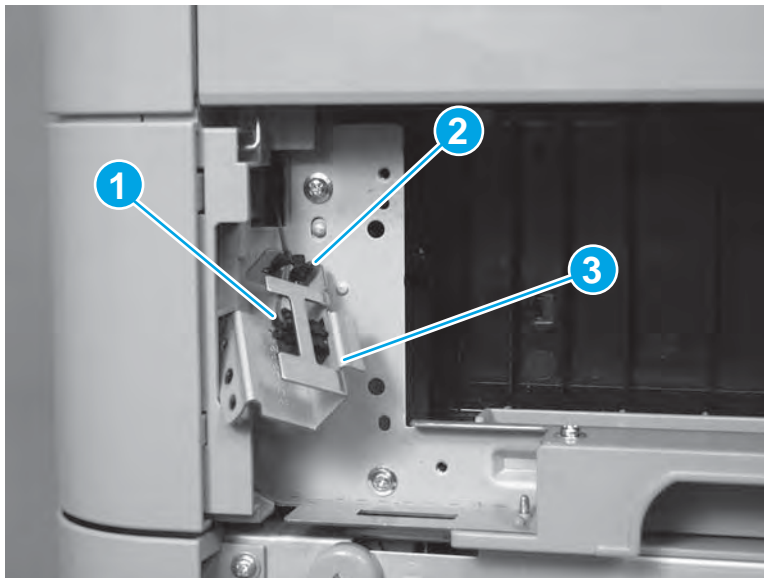
CAUTION: A wire harness connects the switch assembly to the product. Do not attempt to completely remove the switch assembly.

Figure 1-548 Remove one screw



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), release the wire harness from the retainer (callout 2), and then remove the switch assembly (callout 3).

Figure 1-549 Remove the switch

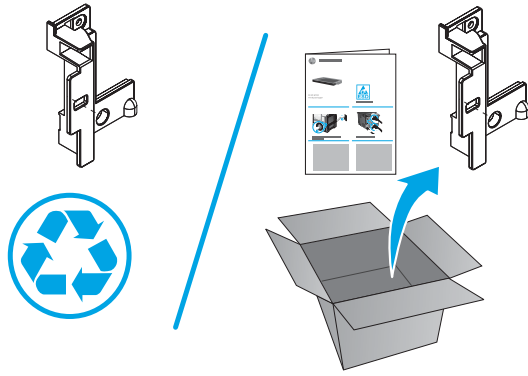


Step 2: Unpack the replacement switch assembly

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

www.Product return and recycling.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.



Step 3: Install the cassette-door-open detection switch

1. Connect one connector, and then install the wire harness in the retainer (callout 1).


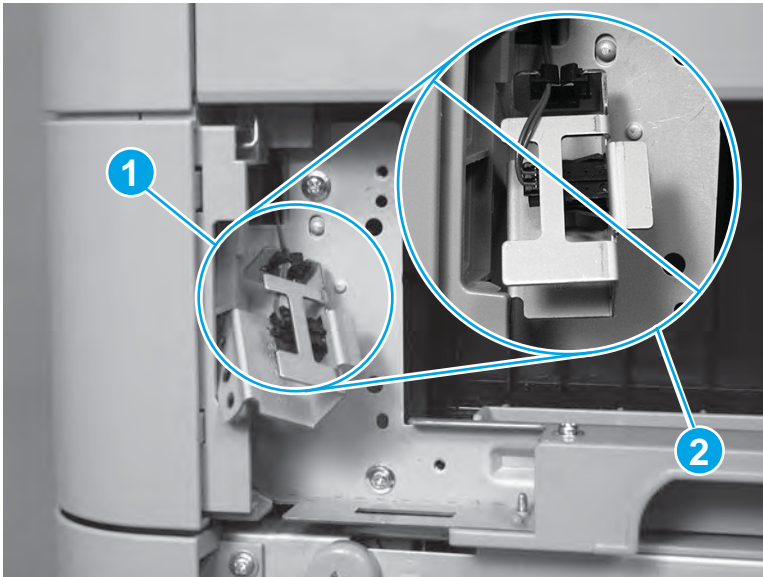
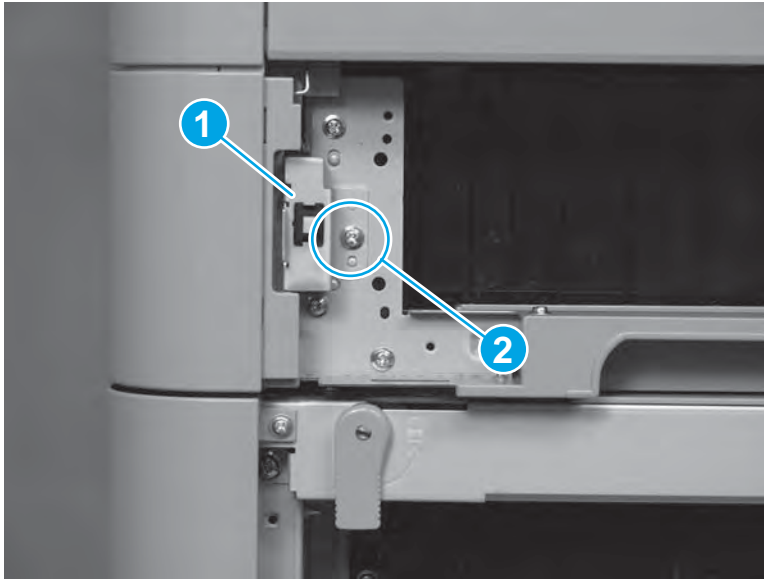
 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that the wire harness is routed *inside* the bracket. It must not be routed outside of the bracket (callout 2).

Figure 1-550 Connect one connector



2. Position the switch assembly (callout 1) on the product, and then install one screw (callout 2).

Figure 1-551 Install one screw



3. Install the switch cover (callout 1).


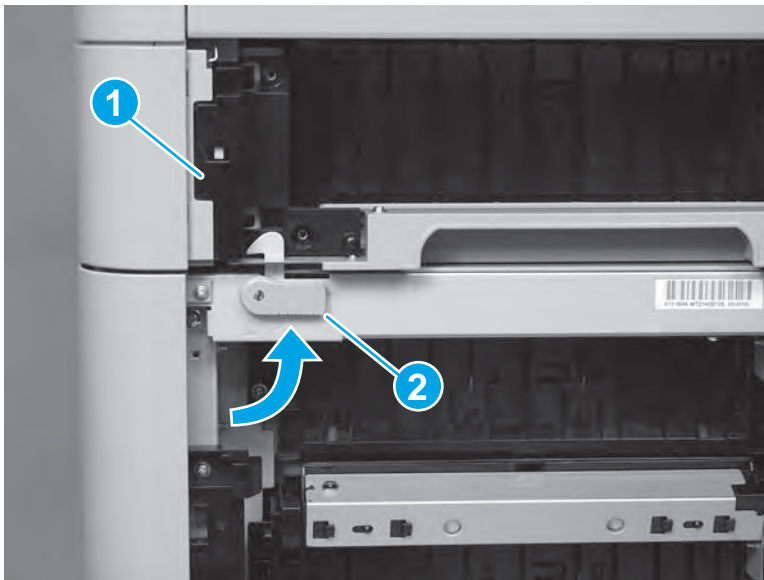
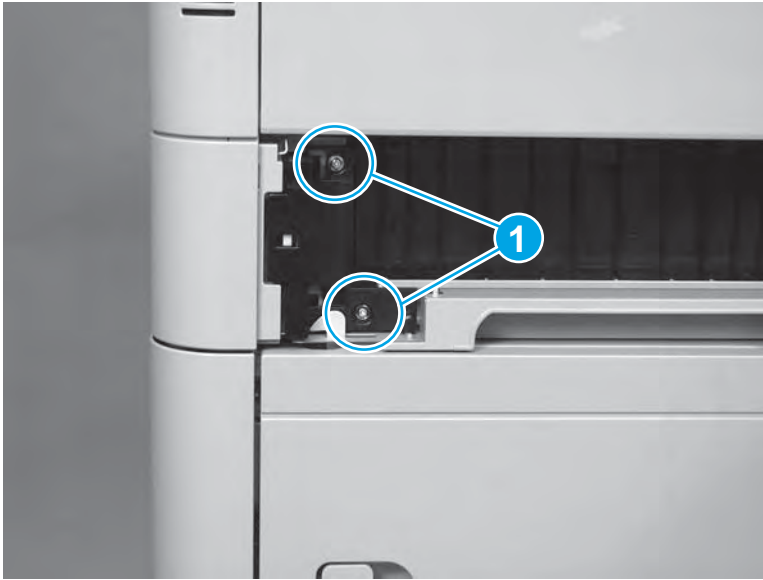
 **NOTE:** If the product is installed on an optional input accessory, make sure to rotate the blue lever (callout 2) to lock the latch.

Figure 1-552 Install the cover



4. Install two screws (callout 1), and then close all of the doors.

Figure 1-553 Install two screws



Step 4: Turn the product power on

After servicing

Do the following steps:

Connect the power cable.

Turn on the product.

Parts Return

[www.Product return and recycling.](http://www.Product return and recycling)

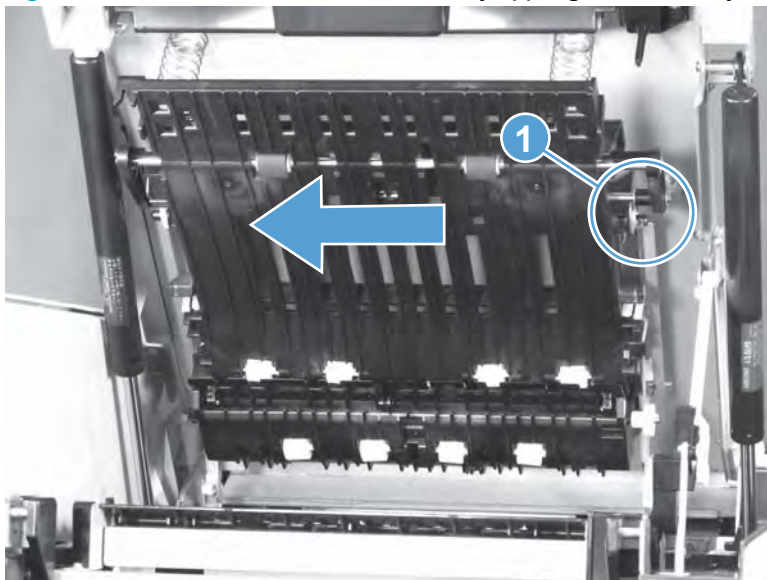
Reverse assembly upper guide assembly

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

1. Pull the top cover release lever to open the top cover.
2. Carefully flex the bushing (callout 1) and then slide the assembly toward the front of the product to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Be careful when handling the assembly after removal. There are springs attached to the assembly that can be easily dislodged and lost.

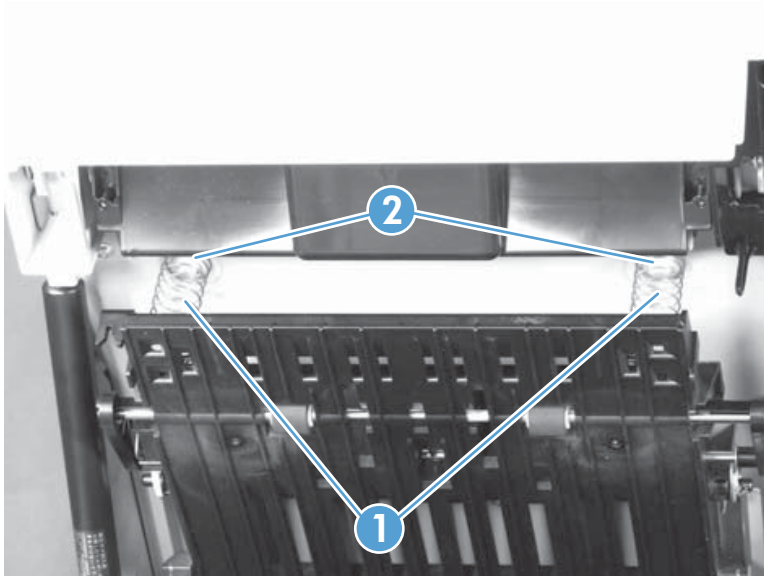
Figure 1-554 Remove the reverse assembly upper guide assembly



Install the reverse assembly upper guide assembly

When the assembly is reinstalled, make sure that two springs (callout 1) are correctly positioned on the sheet-metal bosses (callout 2).

Figure 1-555 Install the reverse assembly upper guide assembly

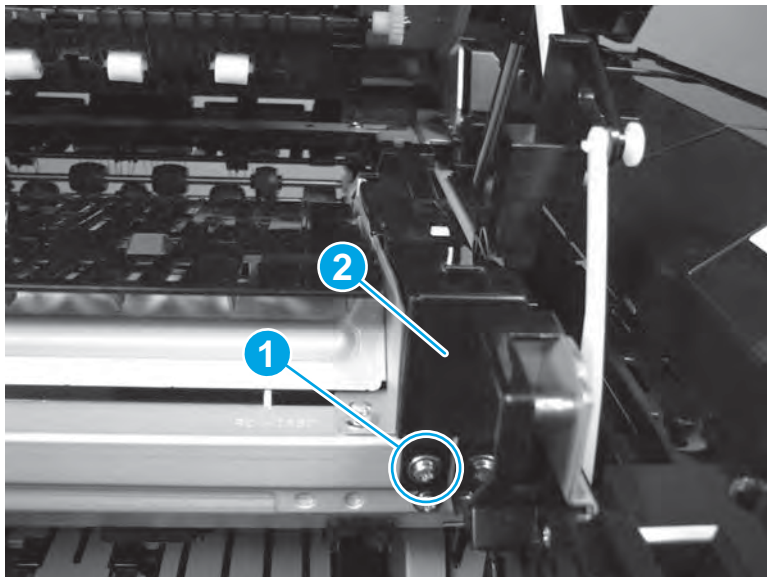


Reverse assembly

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

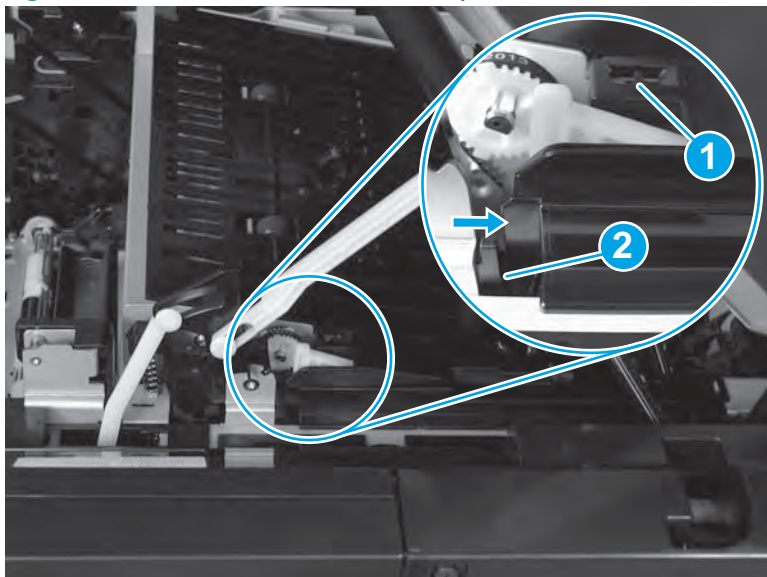
1. Open the top cover, remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the cover (callout 2).

Figure 1-556 Remove one screw and the cover



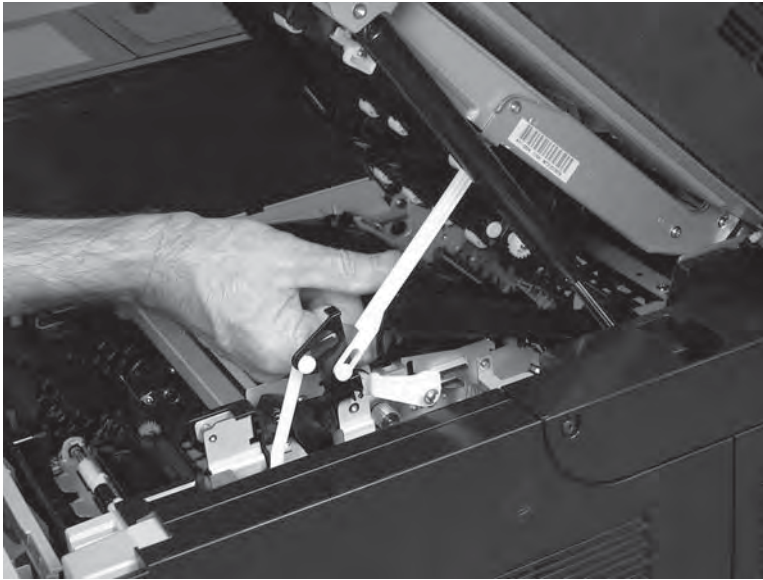
2. Release one tab (callout 1) and then push in on one clip (callout 2) to release it.

Figure 1-557 Release one tab and one clip



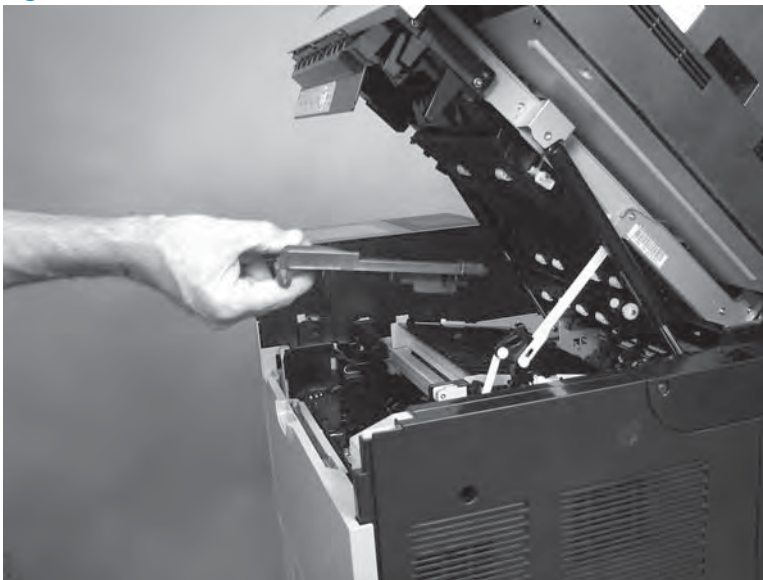
3. Rotate the front of the cover up.

Figure 1-558 Rotate the cover



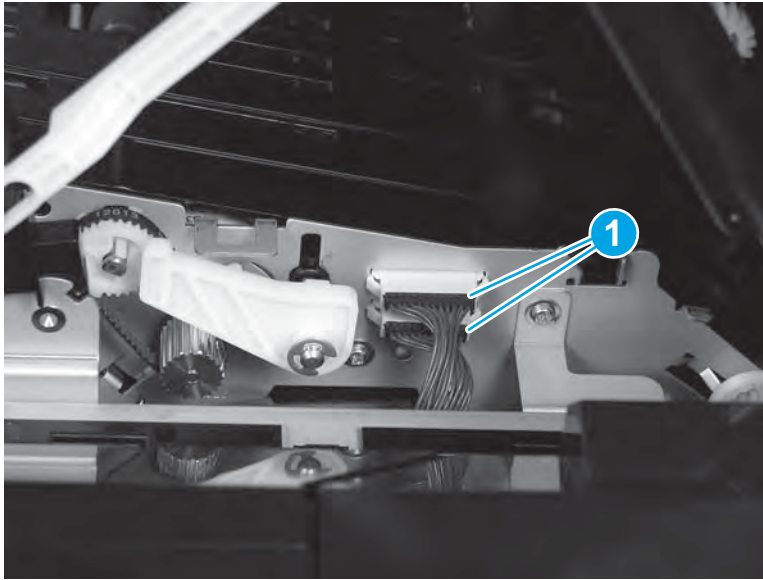
4. Remove the cover.

Figure 1-559 Remove the cover



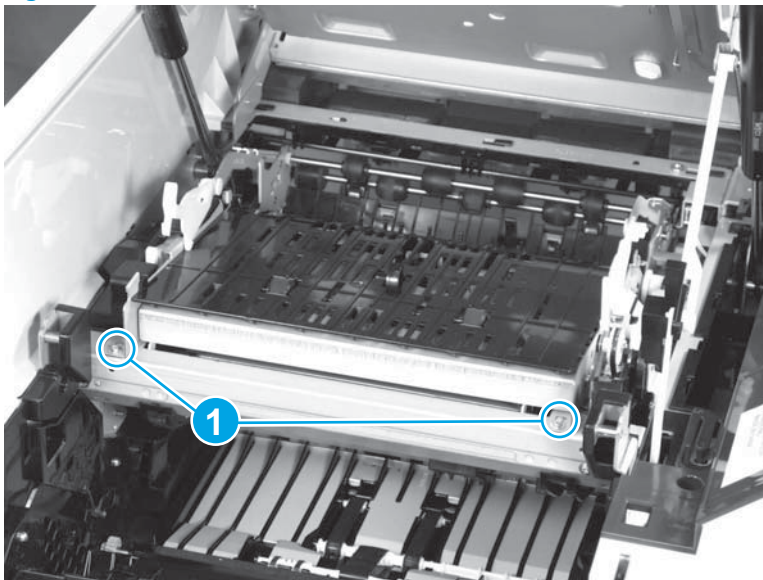
5. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1).

Figure 1-560 Disconnect two connectors



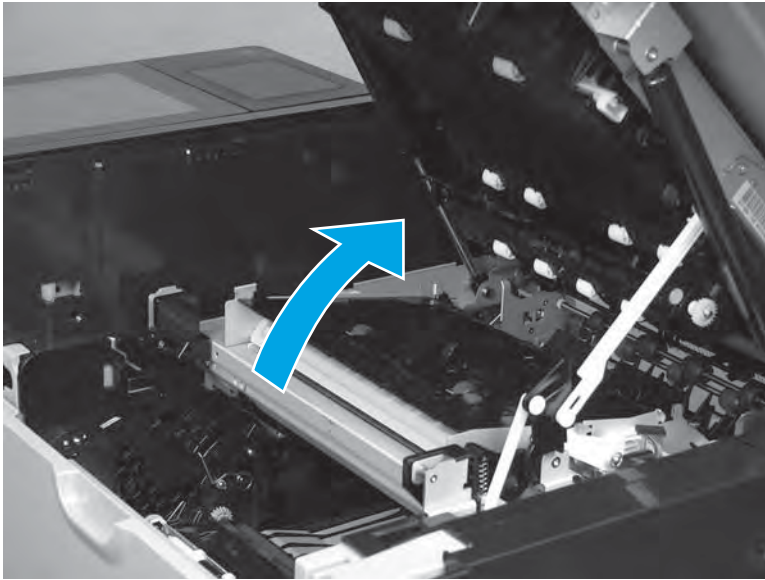
6. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-561 Remove two screws



7. Lift up the front of the reverse assembly to release it.

Figure 1-562 Lift up the front of the assembly



8. Remove the reverse assembly.

Figure 1-563 Remove the reverse assembly



Laser/scanner assembly

Remove the following assemblies:

- Reverse assembly. See [Reverse assembly on page 371](#).

Remove the laser/scanner assembly

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

1. At the right side of the laser/scanner assembly, remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the cover (callout 2).


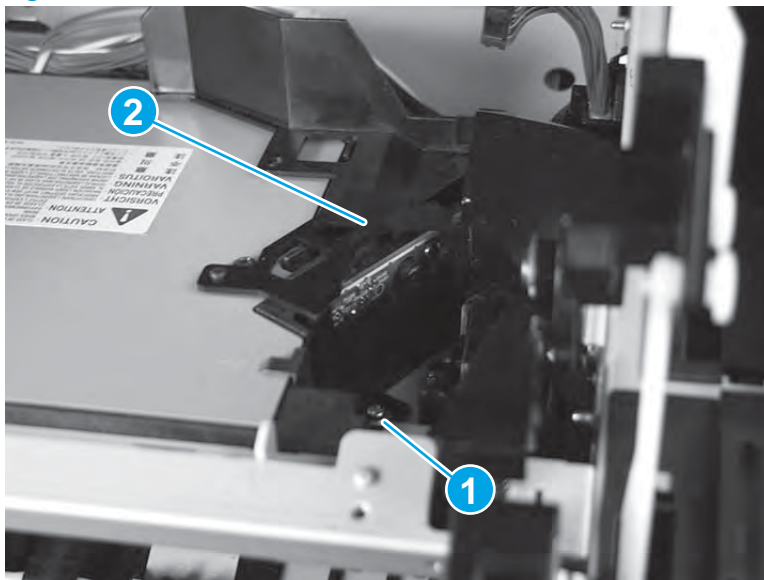
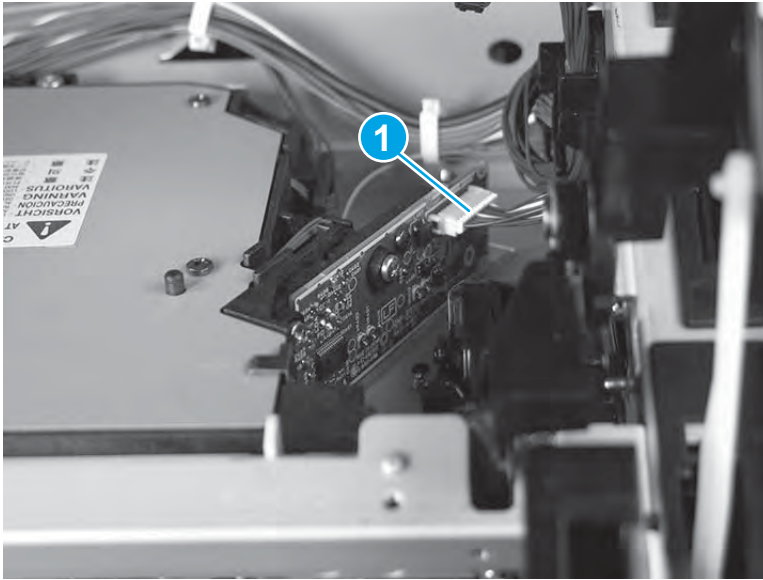
 **TIP:** Use a short-barrel screw driver to remove this screw.

Figure 1-564 Remove the cover



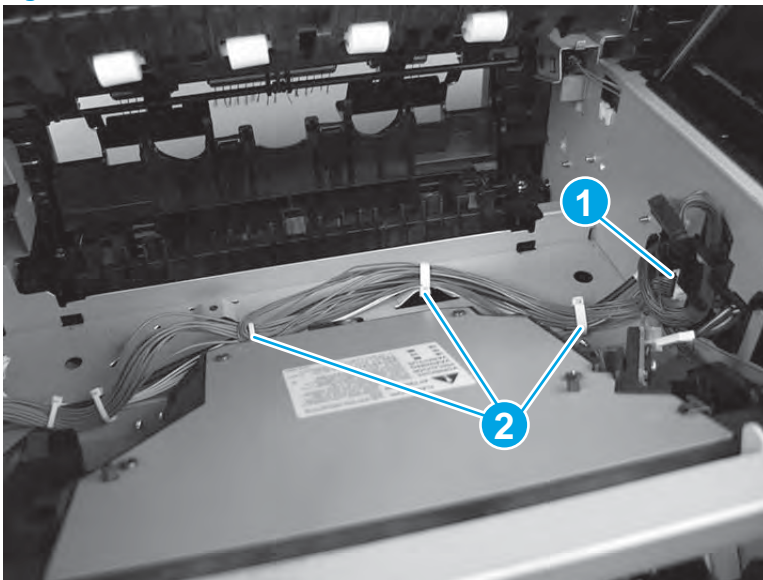
2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 1-565 Disconnect one connector




3. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release the wire harness from three retainers (callout 2).

Figure 1-566 Disconnect one connector

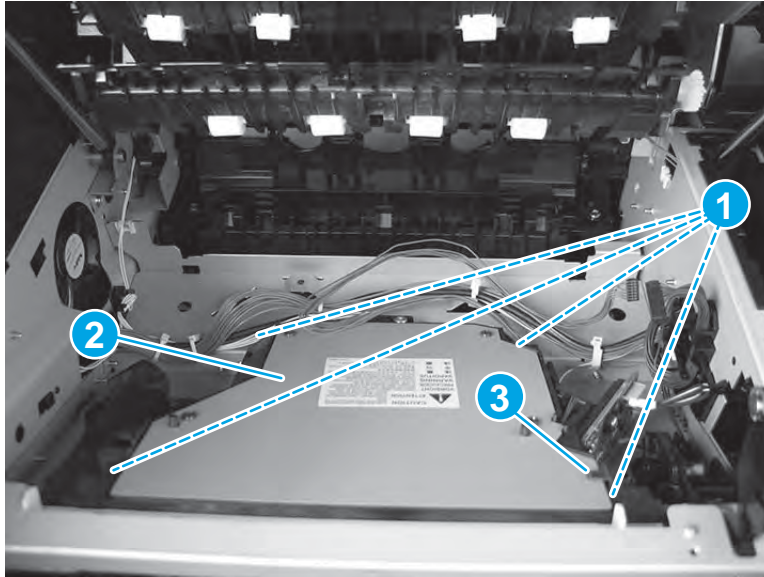


4. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the laser/scanner assembly (callout 2).

 **NOTE:** The grounding clip (callout 3) is not captive. Do not lose the clip.

 **TIP:** Use a short-barrel screw driver to remove the screws.

Figure 1-567 Remove the laser/scanner assembly



Cartridge sensor assembly

Remove the following assemblies:

- Reverse assembly. See [Reverse assembly on page 371](#).

Remove the cartridge sensor assembly

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

1. At the right side of the laser/scanner assembly, remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the cover (callout 2).


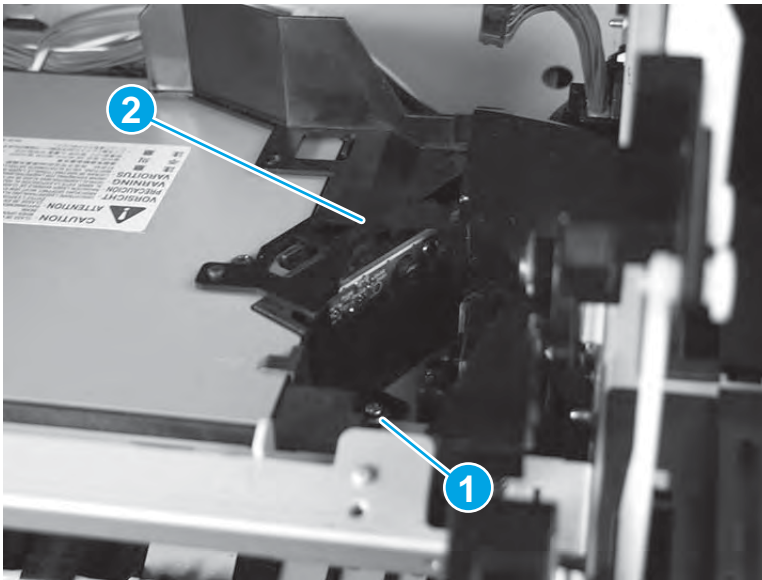
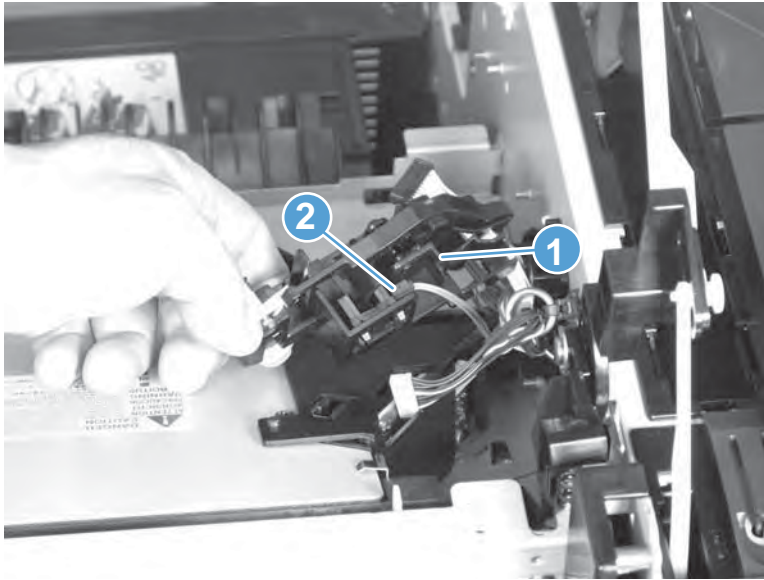
 **TIP:** Use a short-barrel screw driver to remove this screw.

Figure 1-568 Remove the cover



2. Remove the sensor assembly (callout 1), and then disconnect one connector (callout 2).

Figure 1-569 Remove the cartridge sensor assembly



Temperature sensor

Remove the following assemblies:

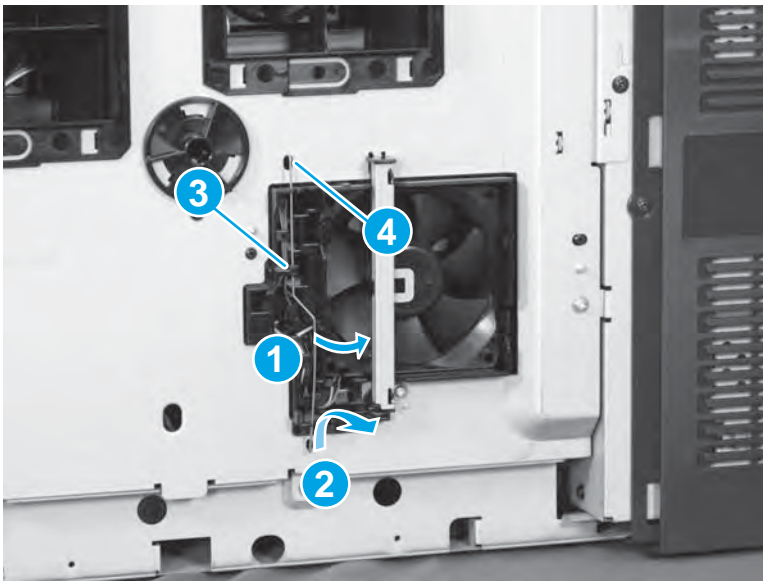
- Image scanner cable cover. See [Image scanner cable cover on page 283](#).
- Rear-right cover. See [Rear-right cover on page 323](#).

Remove the temperature sensor

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

1. Carefully flex the middle of the spring away from the fan (callout 1), push up on the bottom of the spring (callout 2) to release it, release the spring from one tab (callout 3), and then release the top of the spring (callout 3) to remove it.

Figure 1-570 Remove the antistatic spring



2. Disconnect one inline connector (callout 1).


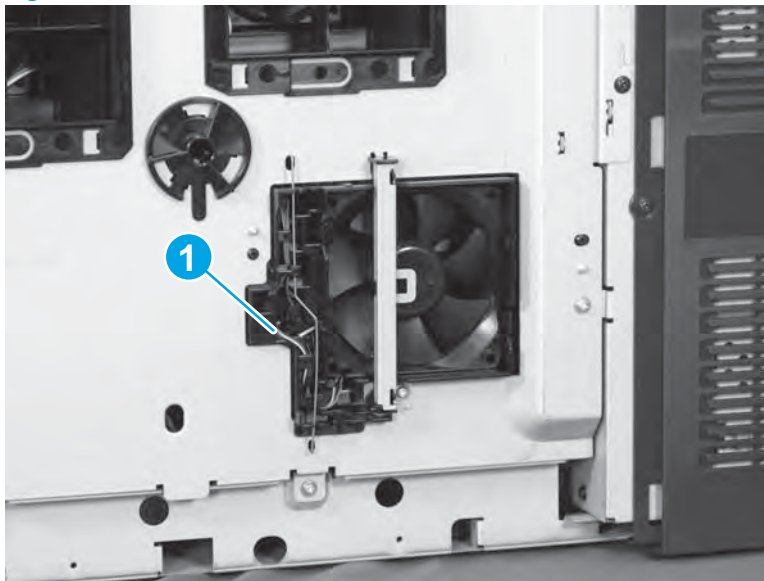
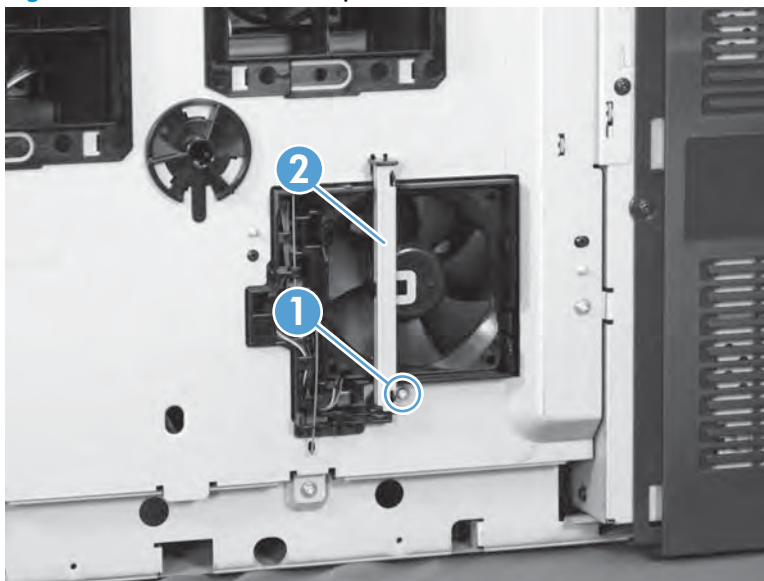
 **TIP:** The correct connector to disconnect is the one attached to the black two-wire harness.

Figure 1-571 Disconnect one connector



3. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the sensor (callout 2).

Figure 1-572 Remove the temperature sensor



DC controller shield-plate assembly

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the image scanner cable cover](#)
- [Step 2: Remove the rear-right cover](#)
- [Step 3: Remove the rear-top cover](#)
- [Step 4: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly](#)
- [Step 5: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly](#)
- [Step 6: Install the rear-top cover](#)
- [Step 7: Install the rear-right cover](#)
- [Step 8: Install the image scanner cable cover](#)
- [Step 9: Turn the product power on](#)

Introduction


This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the DC controller shield-plate assembly.

Before servicing

Do the following steps:

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

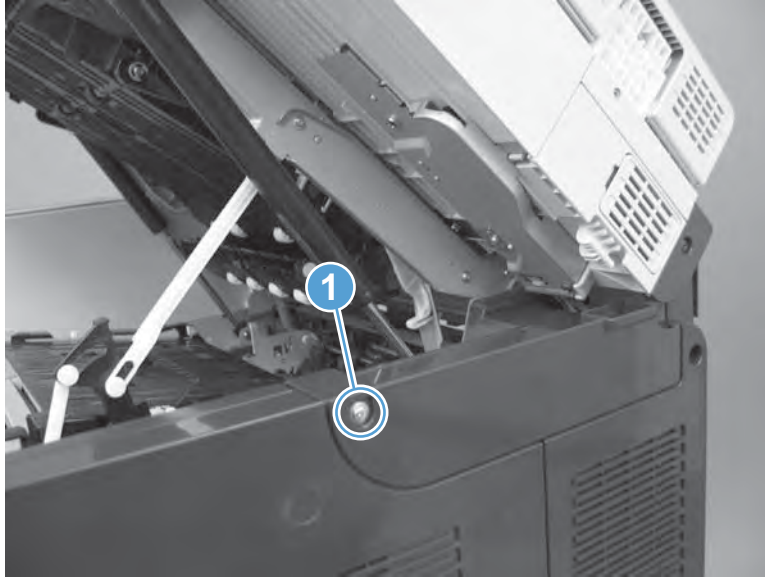
Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

Step 1: Remove the image scanner cable cover

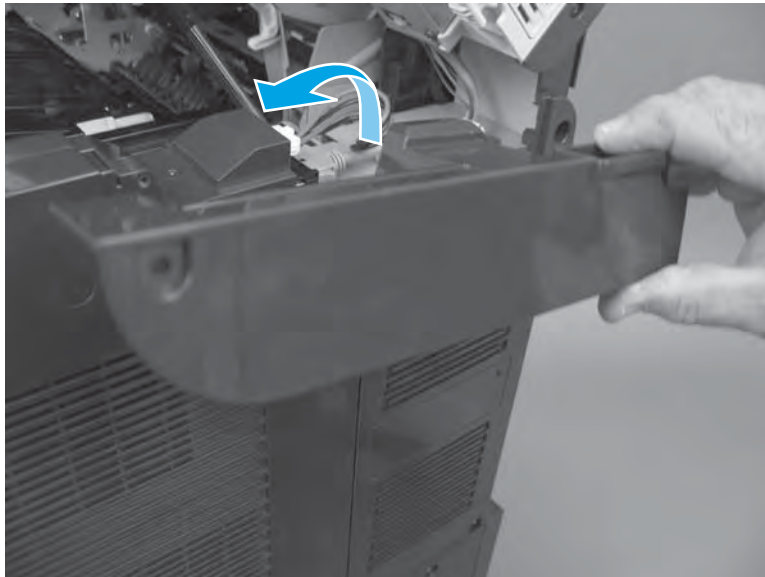
1. Open the top cover, and then remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-573 Remove one screw



2. Remove the cover.

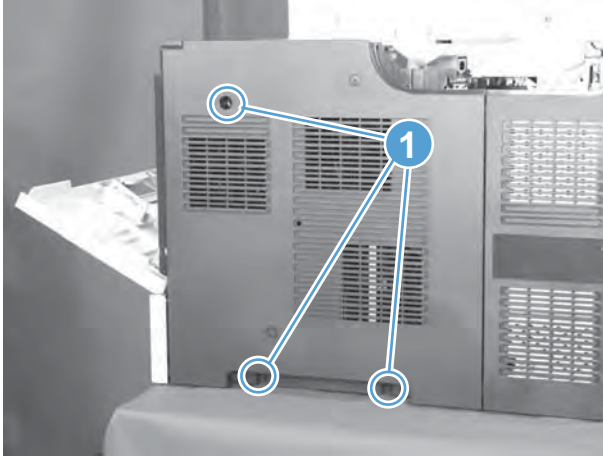
Figure 1-574 Remove the cover



Step 2: Remove the rear-right cover

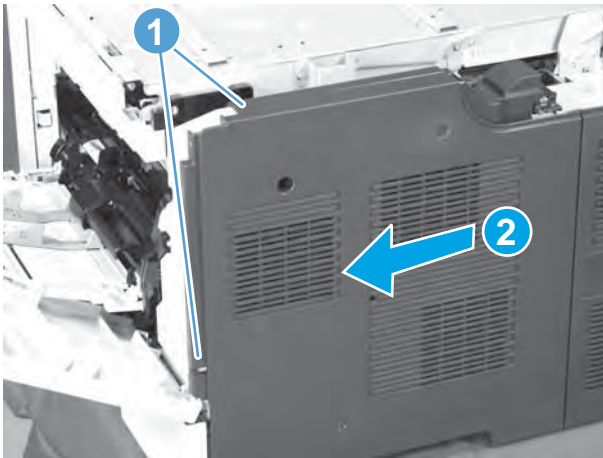
1. Open the top cover and Tray 1, and then remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-575 Remove three screws



2. Release two tabs (callout 1), slightly separate the edge of the cover near Tray 1 from the product, slide the cover towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

Figure 1-576 Remove the cover

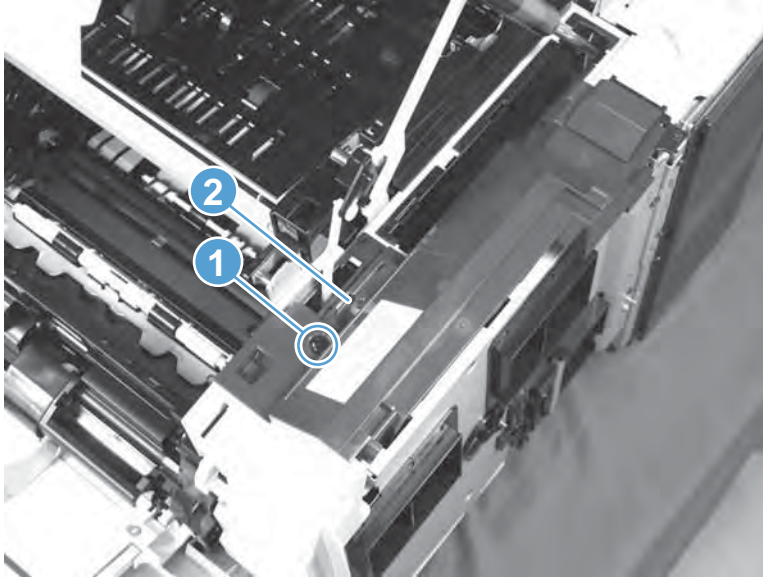


Step 3: Remove the rear-top cover

 **NOTE:** If the top cover is closed, open it now.

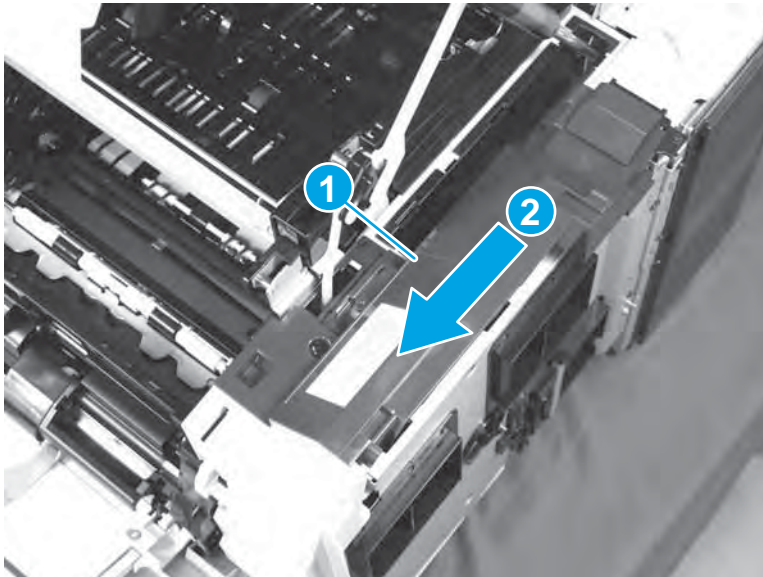
1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release one tab (callout 2).

Figure 1-577 Remove one screw



2. Push the cover (callout 1) towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

Figure 1-578 Remove the cover

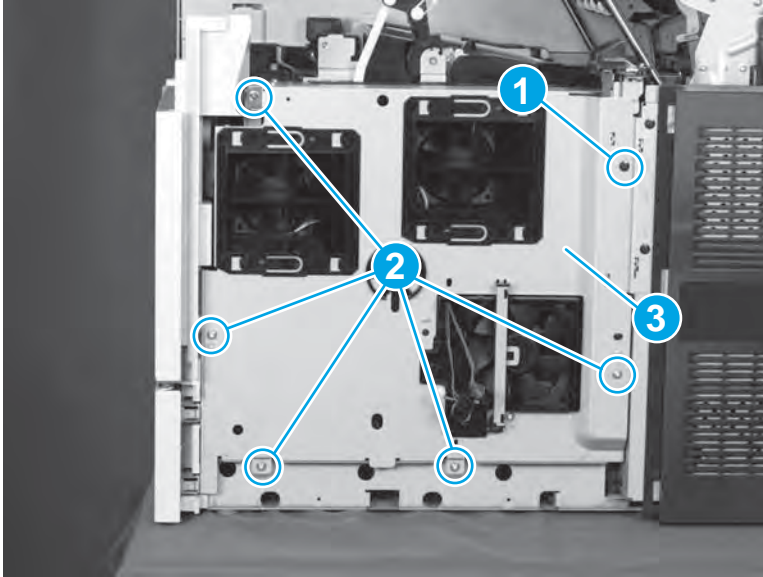


Step 4: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly

1. Remove one black screw (callout 1), remove five silver screws (callout 2), and then slightly rotate the top of the shield (callout 3) away from the product.

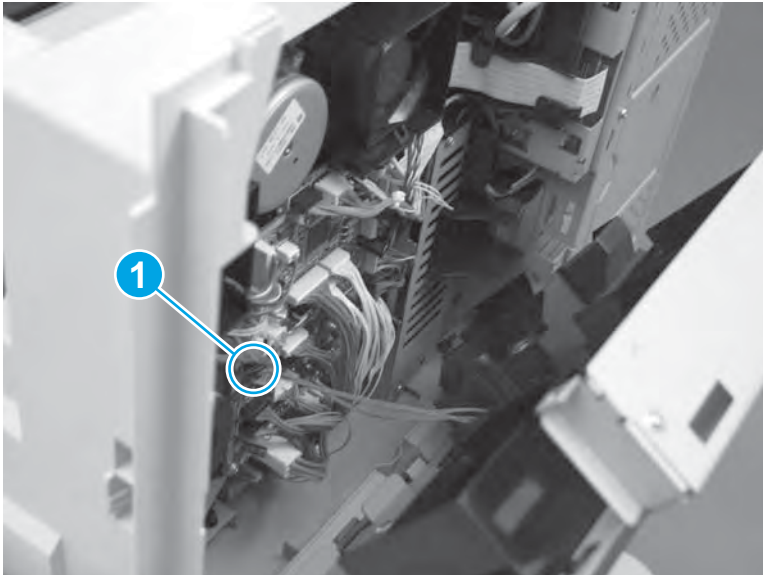
CAUTION: The shield is still connected to the product by a wire harness. Do not completely remove the shield after removing the screws.

Figure 1-579 Remove six screws



2. Disconnect one connector (J42; callout 1) from the DC controller, and then remove the DC controller shield.

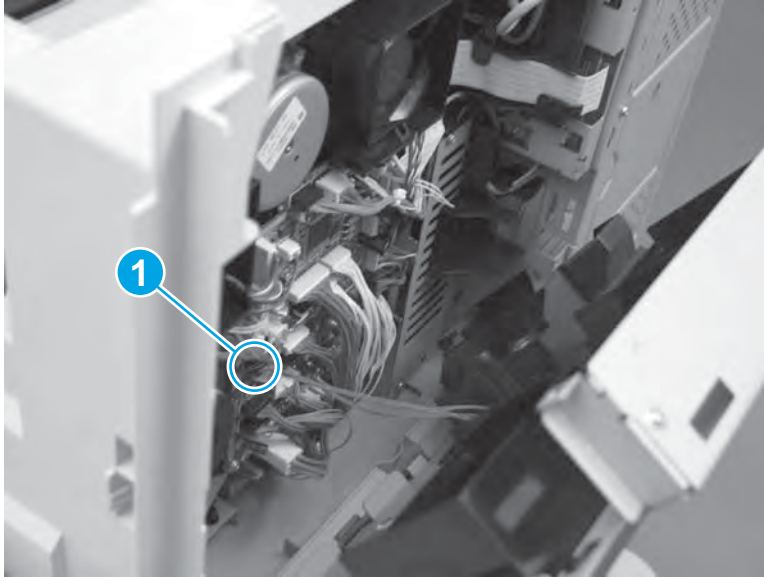
Figure 1-580 Disconnect one connector and remove the shield



Step 5: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly

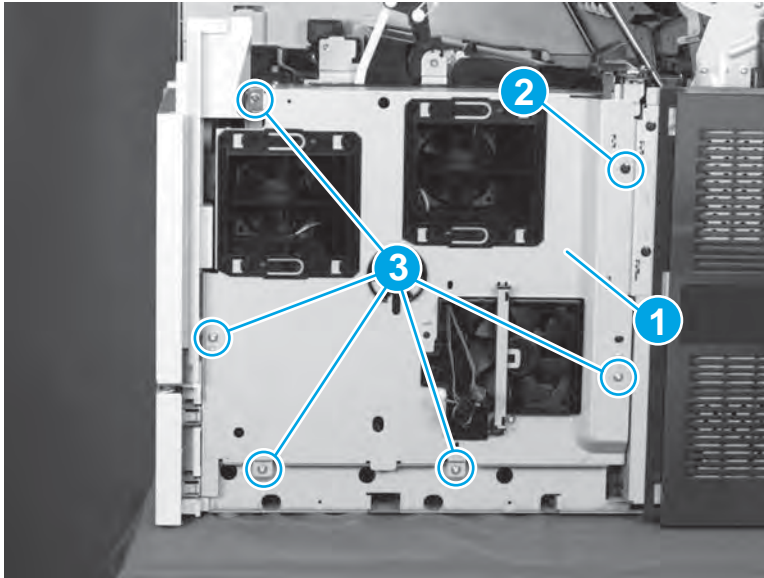
1. Position the shield near the product, and then connect one connector (J42; callout 1).

Figure 1-581 Install the shield and connect one connector



2. Rotate the top of the shield (callout 1) toward the product, install one black screw (callout 2), and then install five silver screws (callout 3).

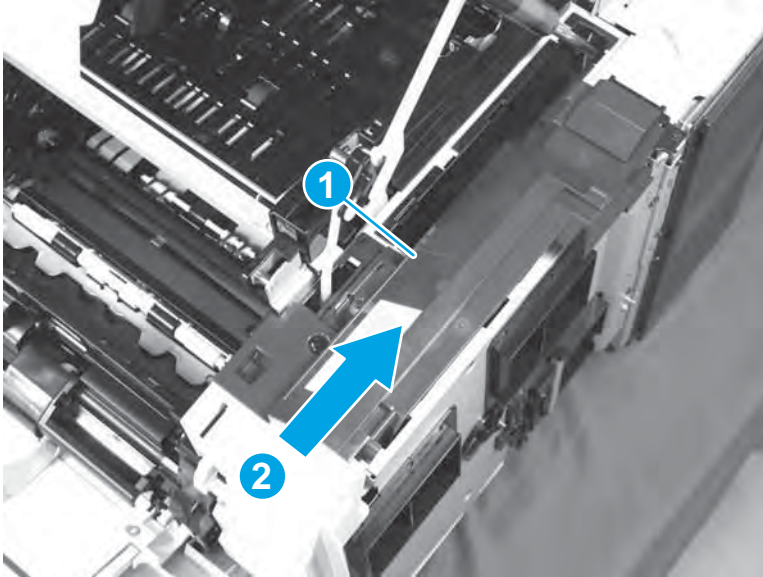
Figure 1-582 Remove six screws



Step 6: Install the rear-top cover

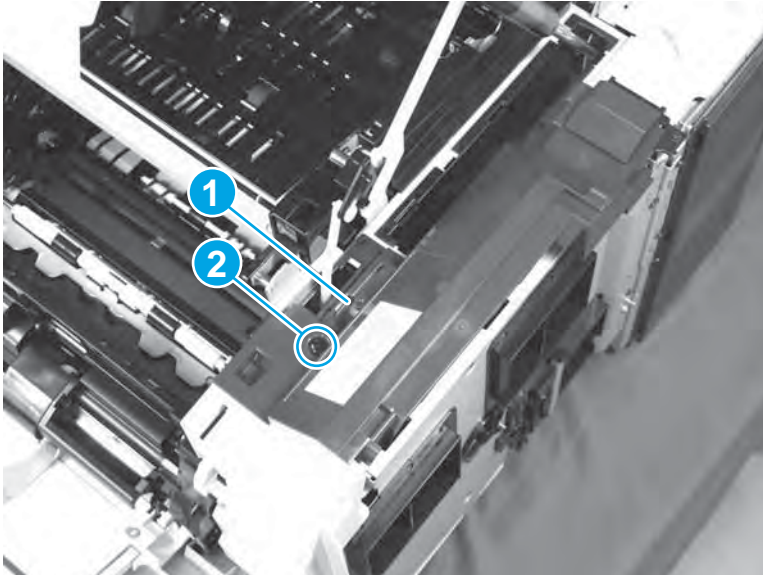
1. Position the cover on the product, Push the cover (callout 1) away Tray 1 to install it (callout 2).

Figure 1-583 Install the cover



2. Make sure that the tab (callout 2) is engaged, and then install one screw (callout 2).

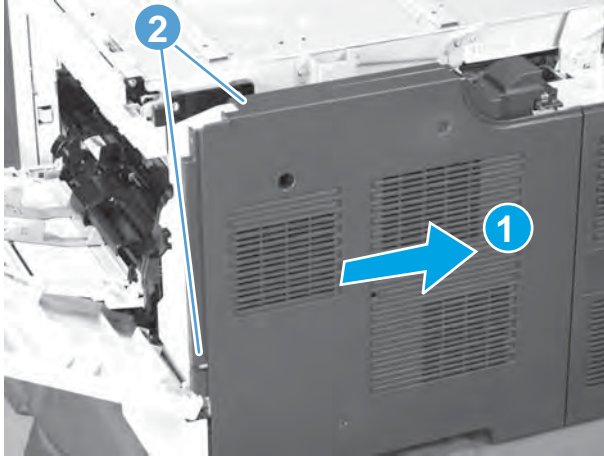
Figure 1-584 Install one screw



Step 7: Install the rear-right cover

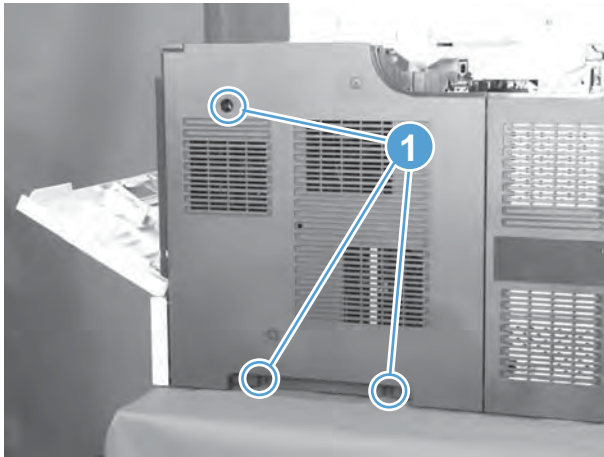
1. Position the cover on the product, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 1) to engage two tabs (callout 2).

Figure 1-585 Install the cover



2. Install three screws (callout 1), and then close the top cover and Tray 1.

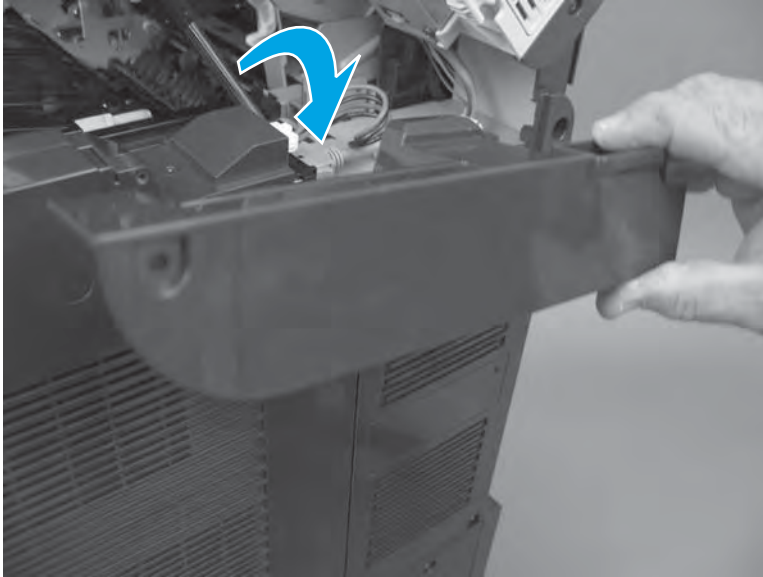
Figure 1-586 Install three screws



Step 8: Install the image scanner cable cover

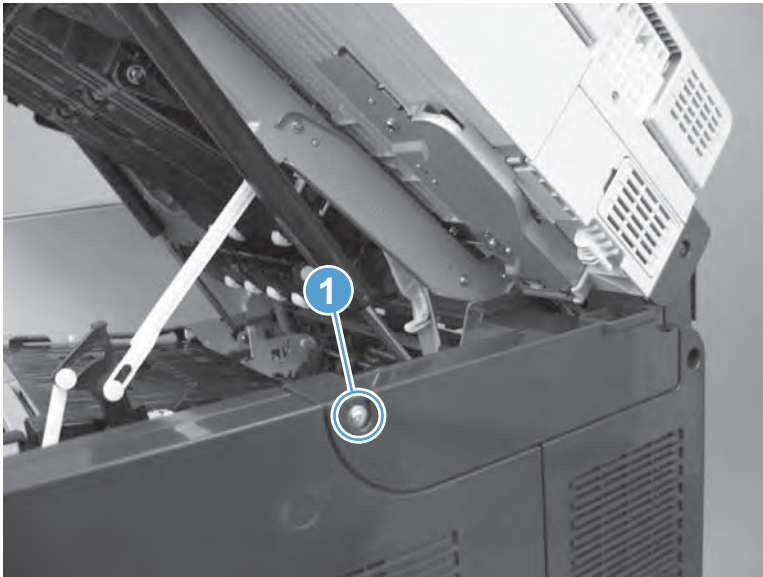
1. Install the cover on the product.

Figure 1-587 Install the cover



2. Install one screw (callout 1), and then close the top cover.

Figure 1-588 Install one screw



Step 9: Turn the product power on

After servicing

Do the following steps:

Connect the power cable.

Turn on the product.

DC controller

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the image scanner cable cover](#)
- [Step 2: Remove the rear-right cover](#)
- [Step 3: Remove the rear-top cover](#)
- [Step 4: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly](#)
- [Step 5: Remove the DC controller](#)
- [Step 6: Unpack the replacement DC controller](#)
- [Step 7: Install the DC controller](#)
- [Step 8: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly](#)
- [Step 9: Install the rear-top cover](#)
- [Step 10: Install the rear-right cover](#)
- [Step 11: Install the image scanner cable cover](#)
- [Step 12: Turn the product power on](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the DC controller.

Before servicing


Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the kit.

DC controller part number	
RM2-7458-000CN	DC controller


Do the following steps:

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

 **IMPORTANT:** Do not replace the formatter, DC controller, and hard-disk drive/solid-state memory simultaneously during a single product servicing. Doing so might cause the product to become unstable or inoperable.

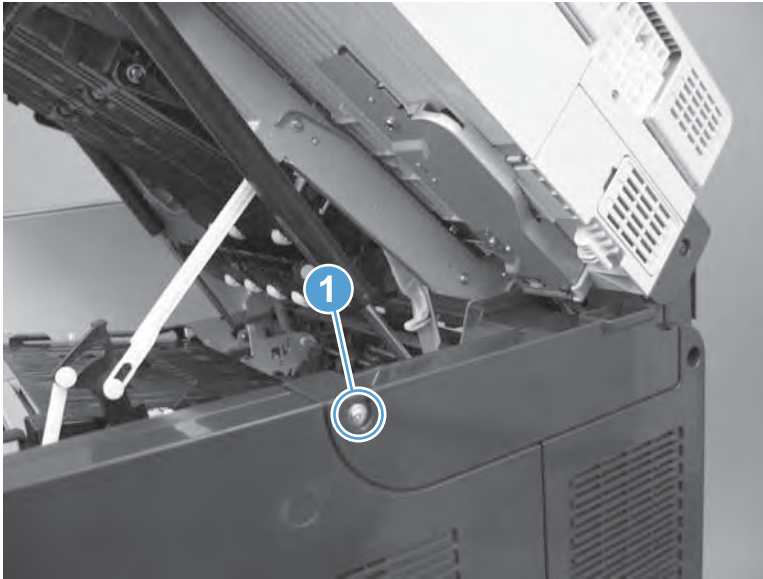
Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

Step 1: Remove the image scanner cable cover

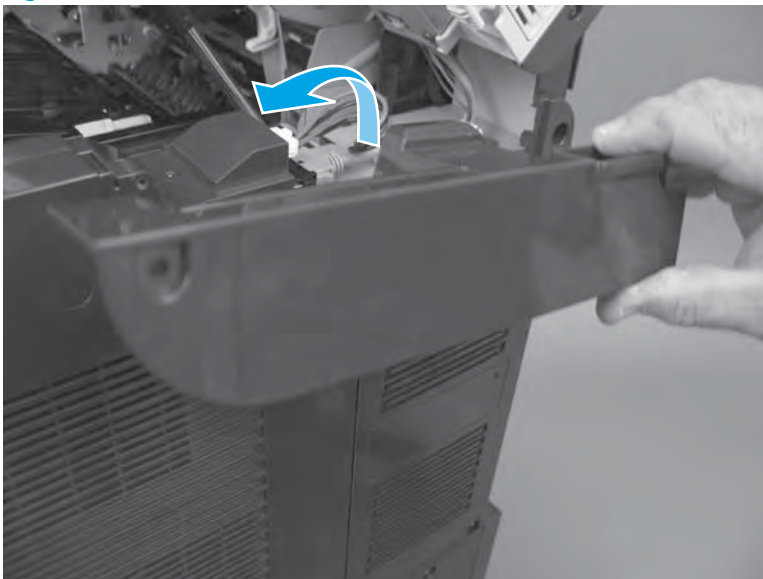
1. Open the top cover, and then remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-589 Remove one screw



2. Remove the cover.

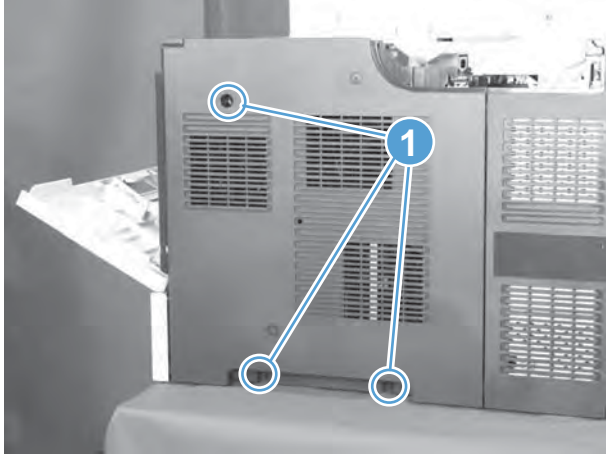
Figure 1-590 Remove the cover



Step 2: Remove the rear-right cover

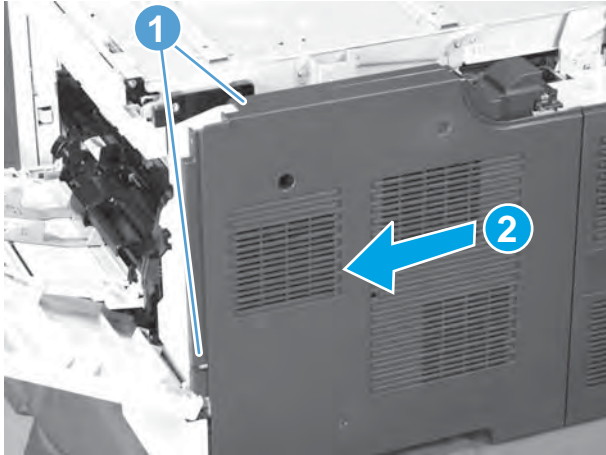
1. Open the top cover and Tray 1, and then remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-591 Remove three screws



2. Release two tabs (callout 1), slightly separate the edge of the cover near Tray 1 from the product, slide the cover towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

Figure 1-592 Remove the cover

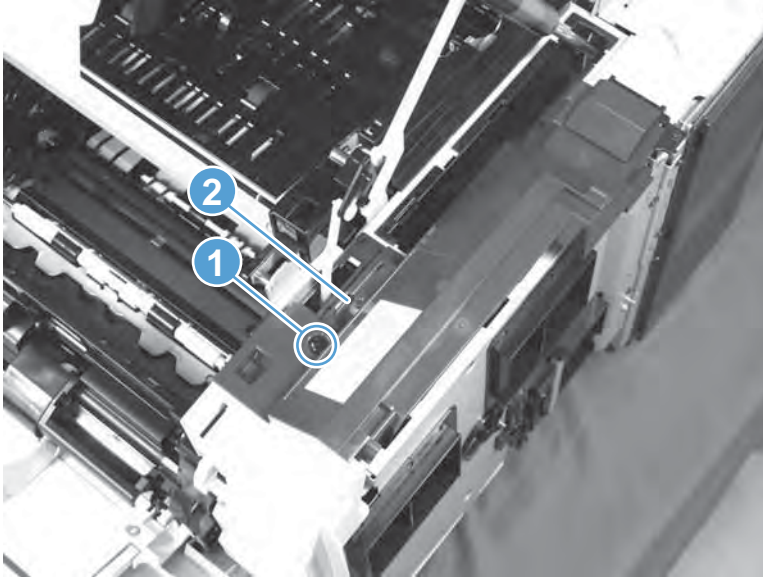


Step 3: Remove the rear-top cover

 **NOTE:** If the top cover is closed, open it now.

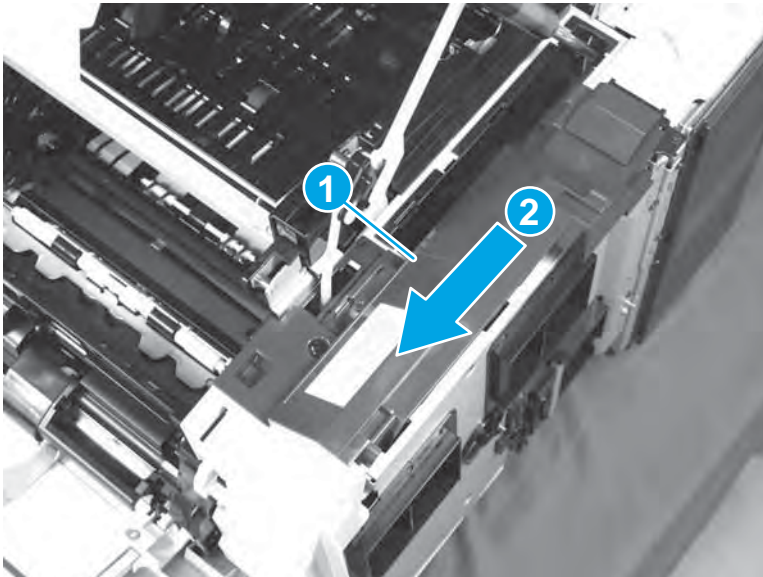
1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release one tab (callout 2).

Figure 1-593 Remove one screw



2. Push the cover (callout 1) towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

Figure 1-594 Remove the cover

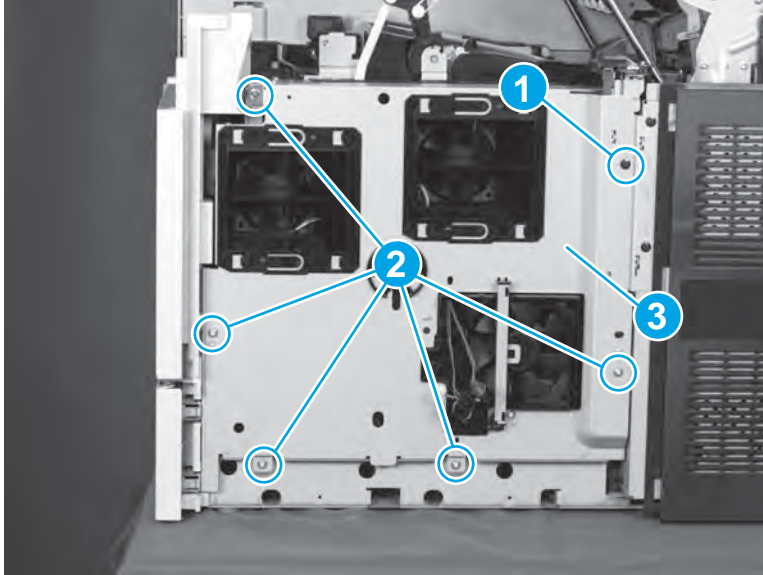


Step 4: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly

1. Remove one black screw (callout 1), remove five silver screws (callout 2), and then slightly rotate the top of the shield (callout 3) away from the product.

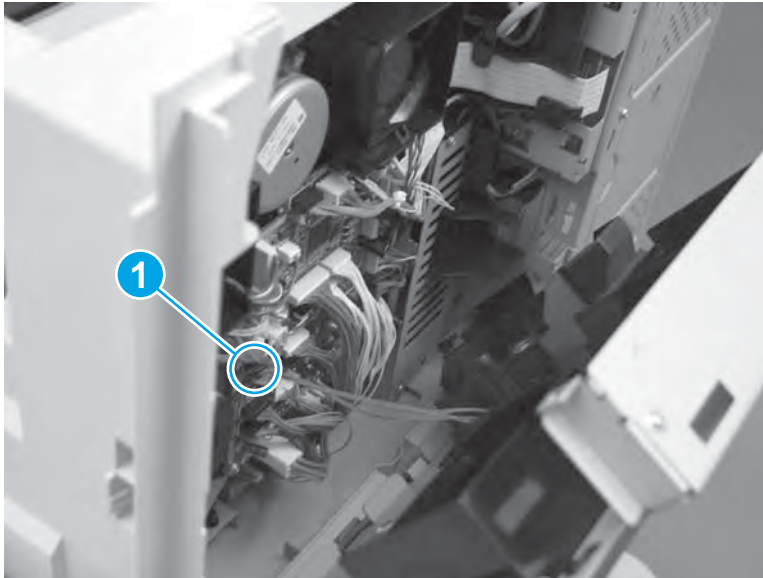
CAUTION: The shield is still connected to the product by a wire harness. Do not completely remove the shield after removing the screws.

Figure 1-595 Remove six screws



2. Disconnect one connector (J42; callout 1) from the DC controller, and then remove the DC controller shield.

Figure 1-596 Disconnect one connector and remove the shield

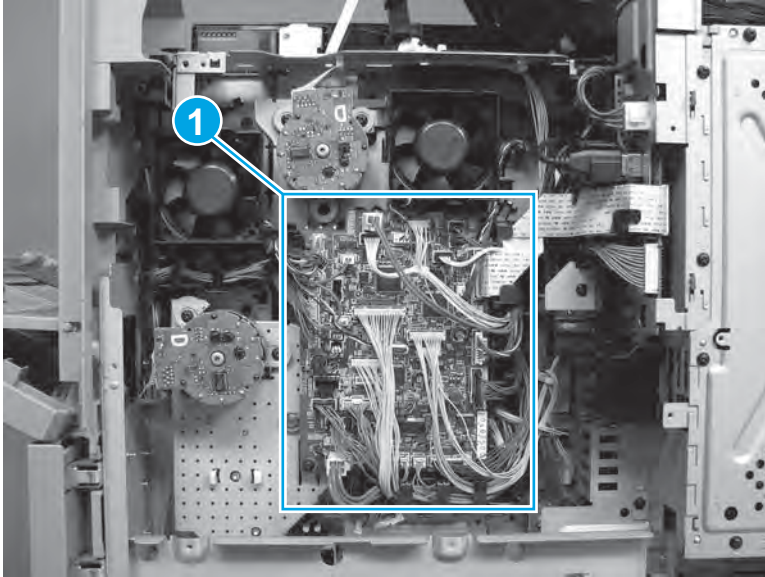


Step 5: Remove the DC controller

1. Disconnect all of the connectors (callout 1) on the DC controller.
 - 34 wire-harness connectors
 - 1 flat-flexible cable (FFC)

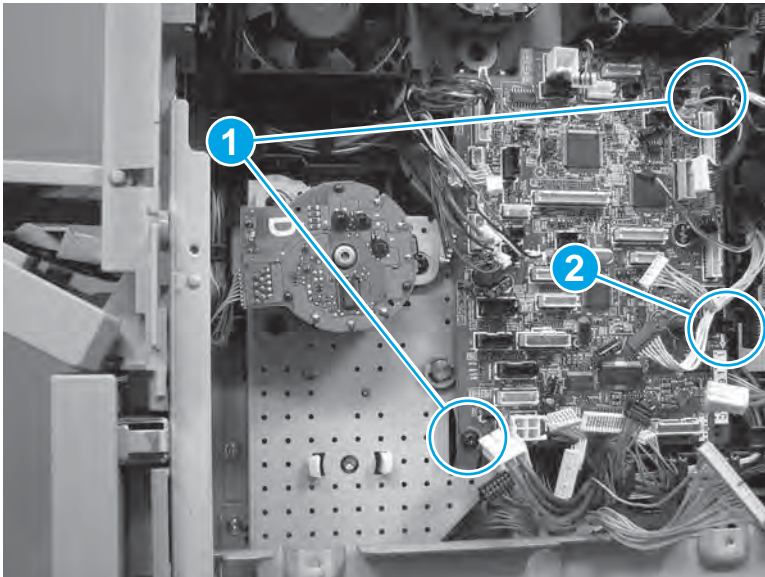
 **Reinstallation tip:** When the DC controller is reinstalled, connectors J42, J59, and J80 are empty.

Figure 1-597 Disconnect all of the connectors



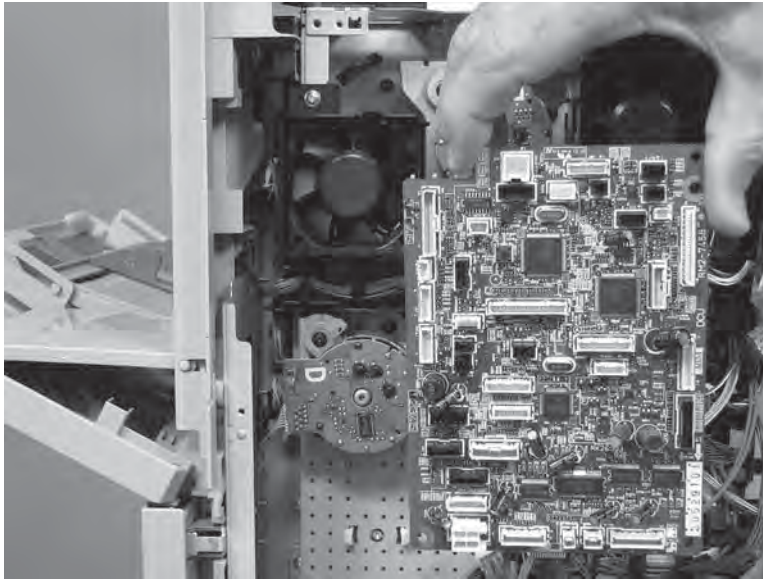
2. Remove two screws (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2).

Figure 1-598 Remove two screws and release one tab



3. Remove the DC controller.

Figure 1-599 Remove the DC controller



Step 6: Unpack the replacement DC controller


Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

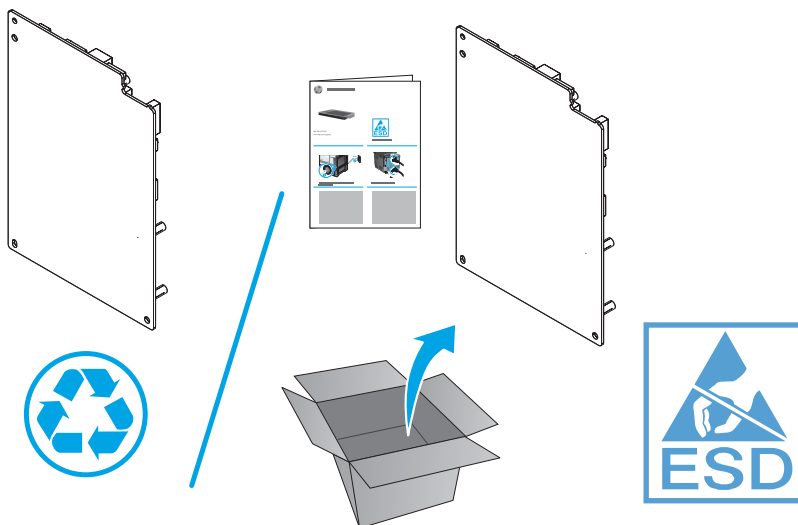
www.Product return and recycling.

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

Discharge body static before handling the replacement assembly.

Handle the replacement assembly by the edges. Avoid direct contact with the circuit portion of the assembly.

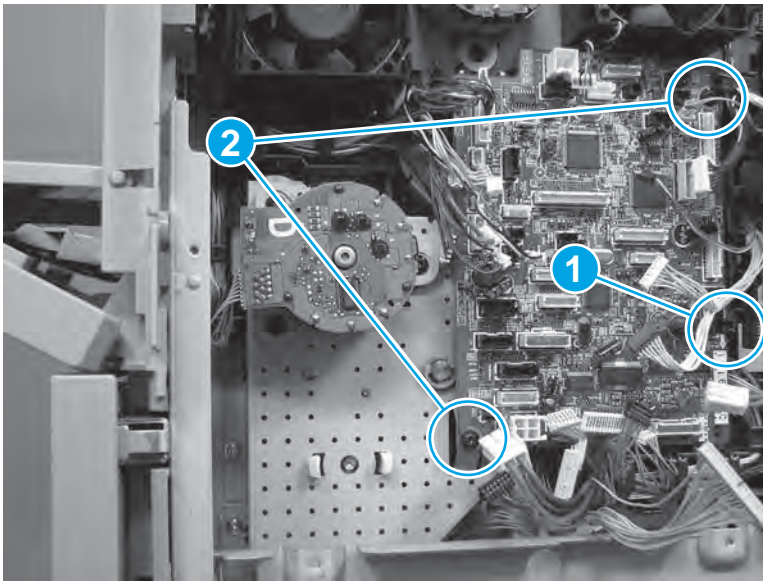
 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.



Step 7: Install the DC controller

1. Position the DC controller on the product, engage one tab (callout 1), and then install two screws (callout 2).

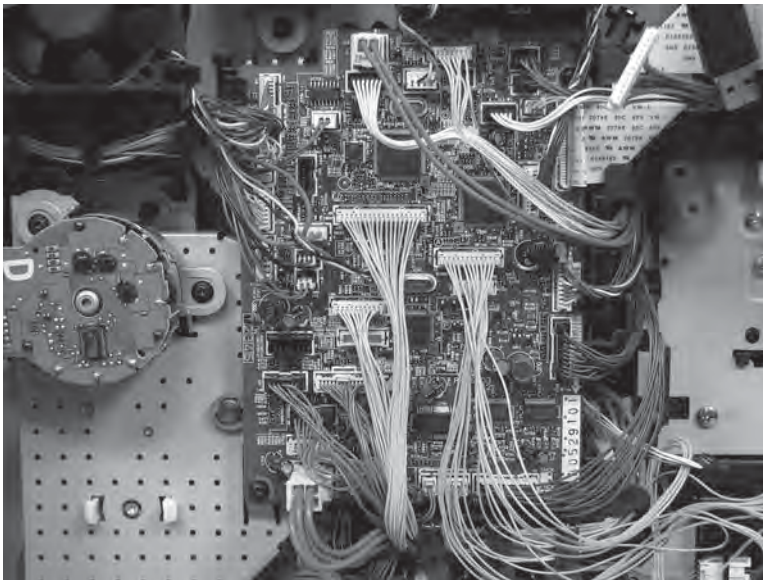
Figure 1-600 Install the DC controller



2. Connect all of the connectors on the DC controller.
 - 34 wire-harness connectors
 - 1 flat-flexible cable (FFC)

 **Reinstallation tip:** Connectors J42, J59, and J80 are empty.

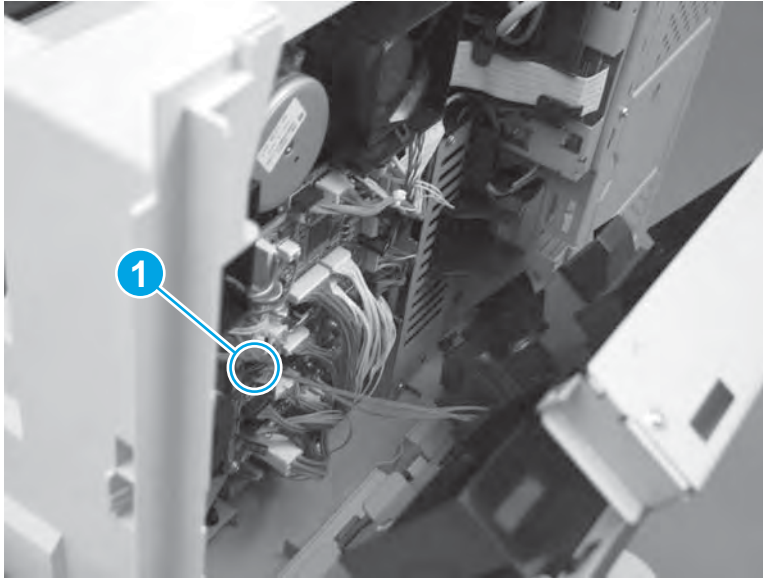
Figure 1-601 Connect all of the connectors



Step 8: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly

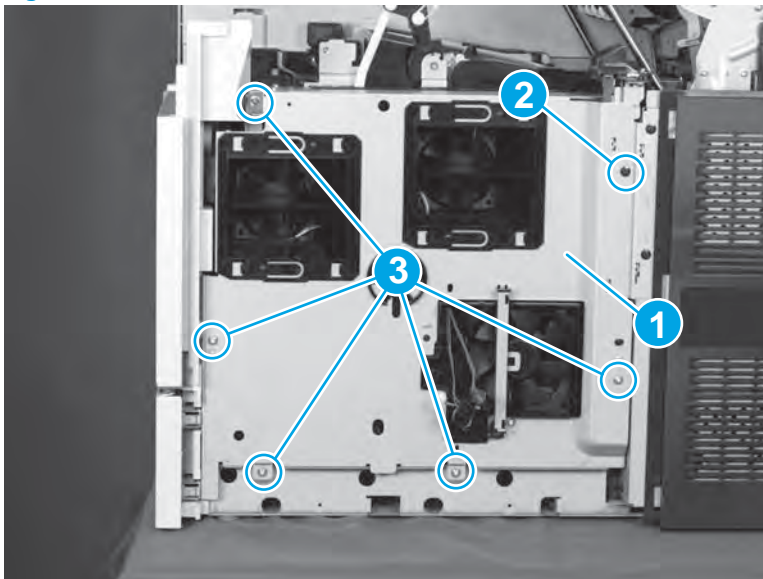
1. Position the shield near the product, and then connect one connector (J42; callout 1).

Figure 1-602 Install the shield and connect one connector



2. Rotate the top of the shield (callout 1) toward the product, install one black screw (callout 2), and then install five silver screws (callout 3).

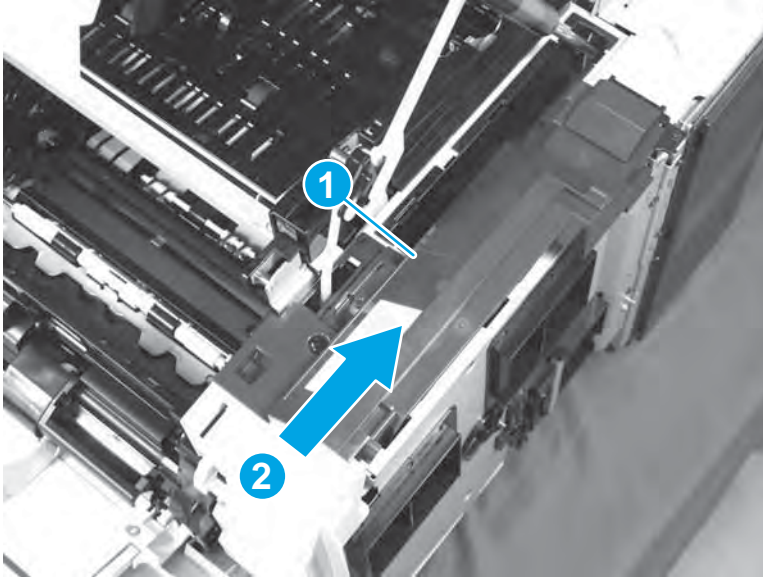
Figure 1-603 Remove six screws



Step 9: Install the rear-top cover

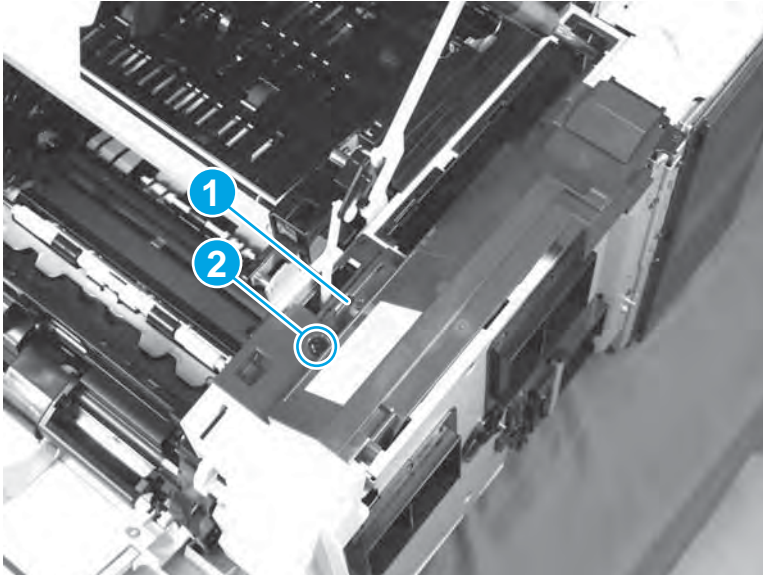
1. Position the cover on the product, Push the cover (callout 1) away Tray 1 to install it (callout 2).

Figure 1-604 Install the cover



2. Make sure that the tab (callout 2) is engaged, and then install one screw (callout 2).

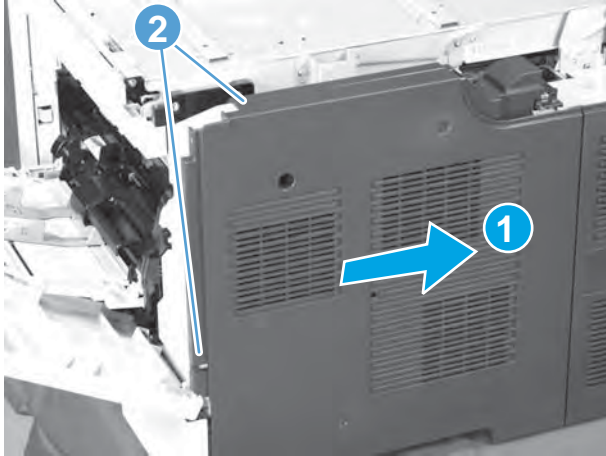
Figure 1-605 Install one screw



Step 10: Install the rear-right cover

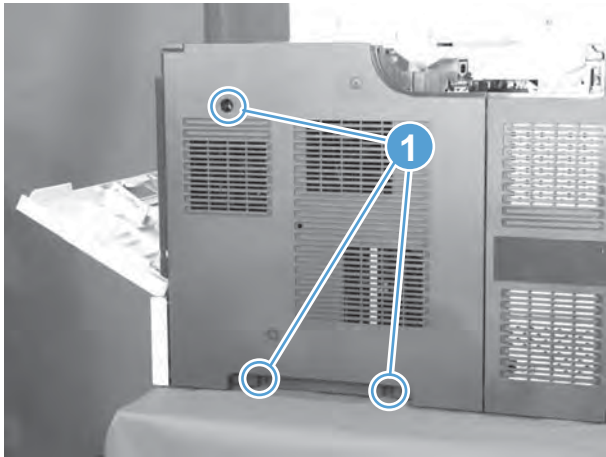
1. Position the cover on the product, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 1) to engage two tabs (callout 2).

Figure 1-606 Install the cover



2. Install three screws (callout 1), and then close the top cover and Tray 1.

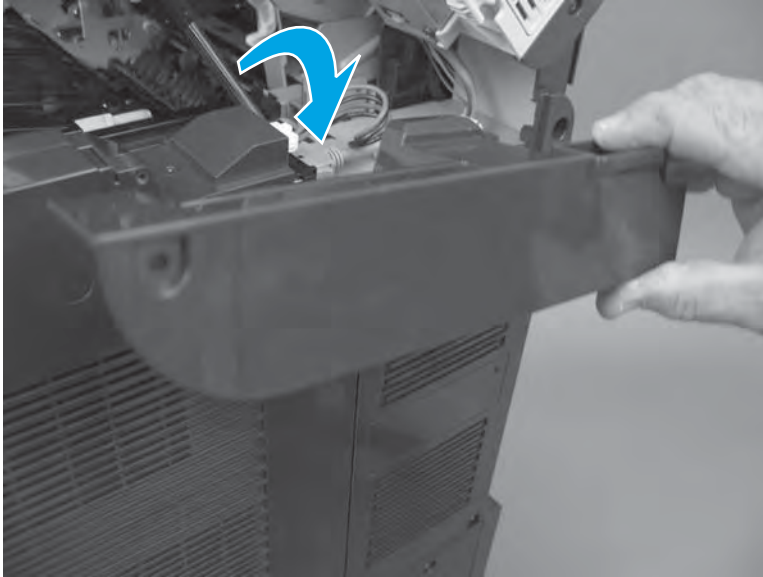
Figure 1-607 Install three screws



Step 11: Install the image scanner cable cover

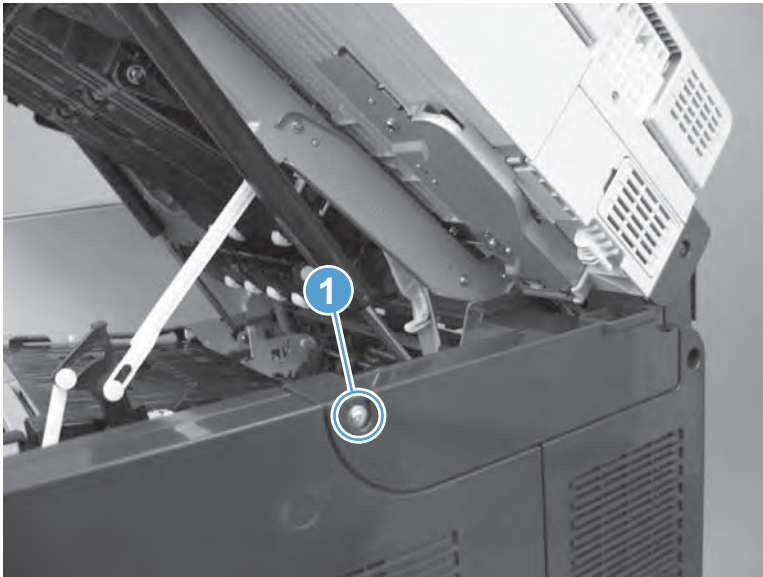
1. Install the cover on the product.

Figure 1-608 Install the cover



2. Install one screw (callout 1), and then close the top cover.

Figure 1-609 Install one screw



Step 12: Turn the product power on

After servicing

Do the following steps:

Connect the power cable.

Turn on the product.

Parts Return

[www.Product return and recycling.](http://www.Product return and recycling)

Tray 1 pickup assembly

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the image scanner cable cover](#)
- [Step 2: Remove the rear-top cover](#)
- [Step 3: Remove the Tray 1 cover](#)
- [Step 4: Remove the rear-right cover](#)
- [Step 5: Remove the right-lower door](#)
- [Step 6: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly](#)
- [Step 7: Remove the Tray 1 pickup assembly](#)
- [Step 8: Unpack the replacement Tray 1 pickup assembly](#)
- [Step 9: Install the Tray 1 pickup assembly](#)
- [Step 10: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly](#)
- [Step 11: Install the right-lower door](#)
- [Step 12: Install the rear-right cover](#)
- [Step 13: Install the Tray 1 cover](#)
- [Step 14: Install the rear-top cover](#)
- [Step 15: Install the image scanner cable cover](#)
- [Step 16: Turn the product power on](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the Tray 1 pickup assembly.

Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the kit.

Tray 1 pickup assembly part number	
RM2-5822-000CN	Tray 1 pickup assembly

Do the following steps:

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

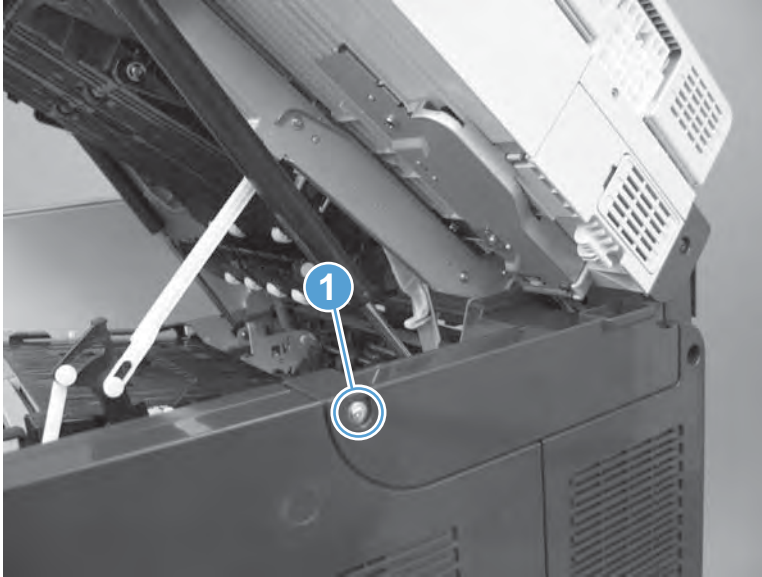
Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

Step 1: Remove the image scanner cable cover

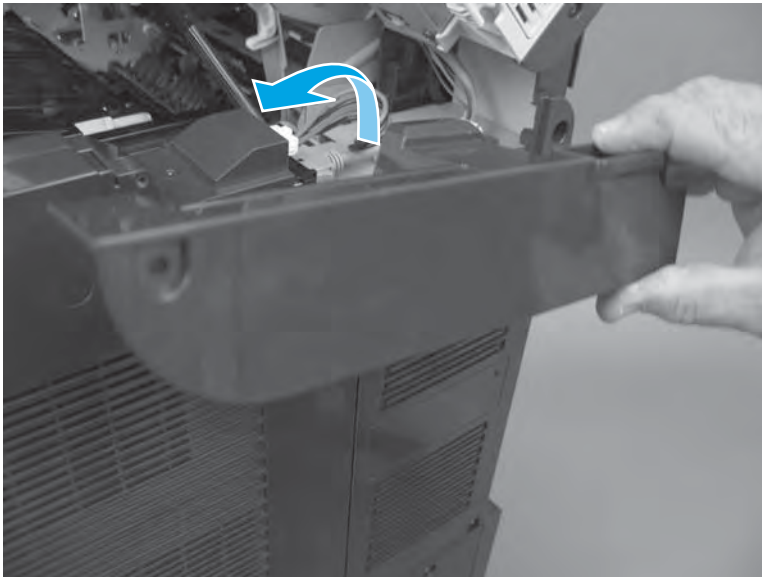
1. Open the top cover, and then remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-610 Remove one screw



2. Remove the cover.

Figure 1-611 Remove the cover

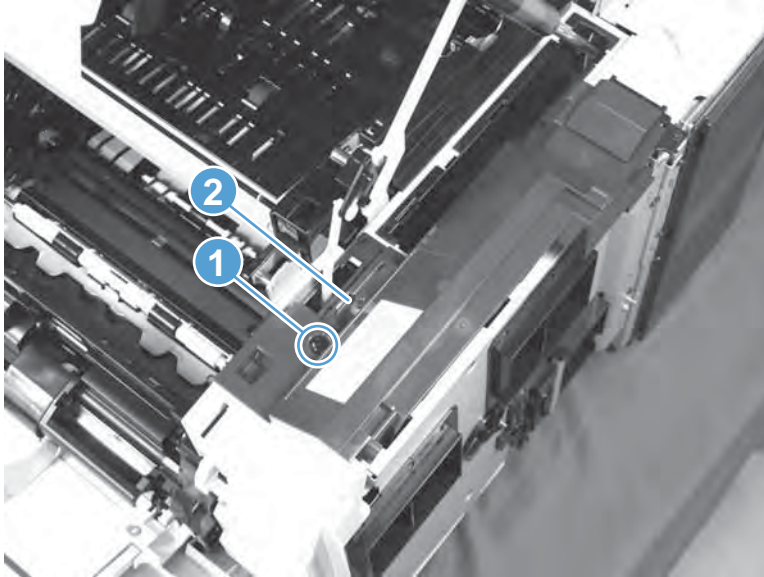


Step 2: Remove the rear-top cover

 **NOTE:** If the top cover is closed, open it now.

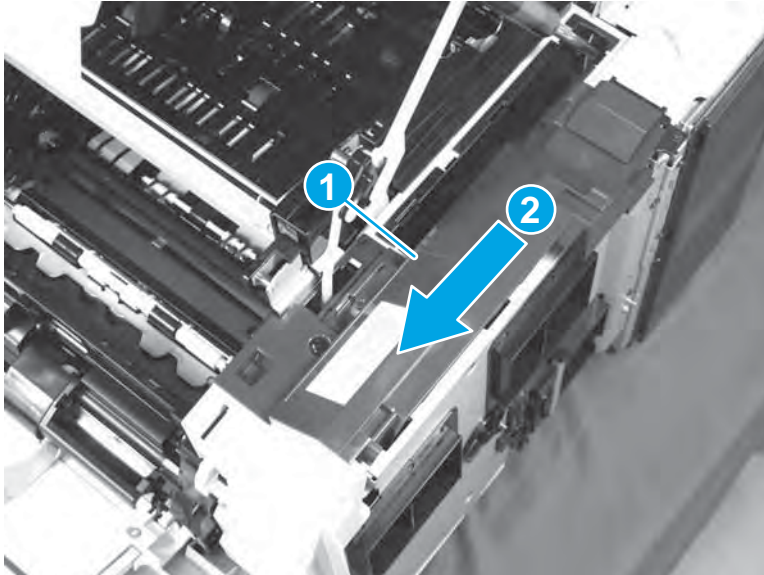
1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release one tab (callout 2).

Figure 1-612 Remove one screw



2. Push the cover (callout 1) towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

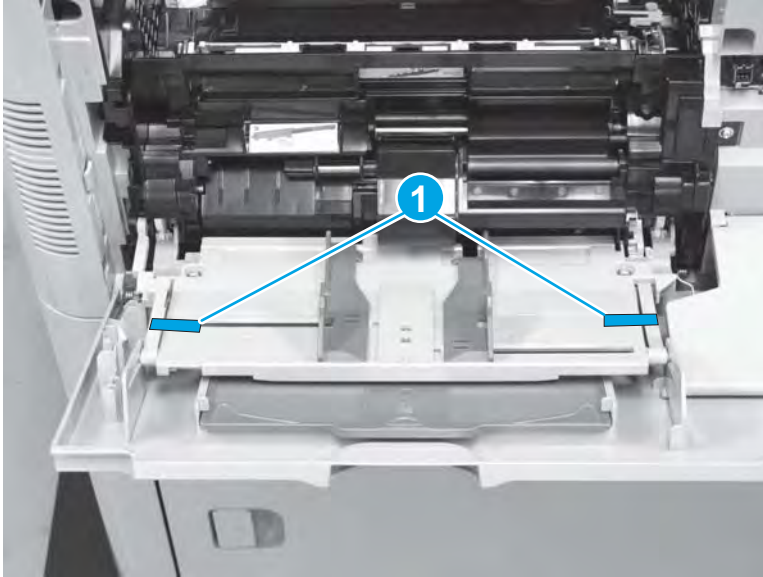
Figure 1-613 Remove the cover



Step 3: Remove the Tray 1 cover

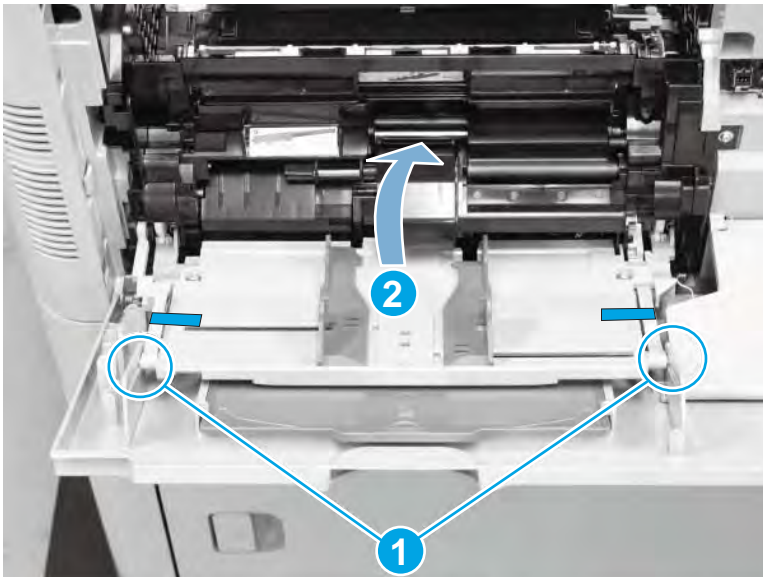
1. Use low adhesive tape to secure the outer retaining pins (callout 1) to the inner tray.

Figure 1-614 Secure the outer retaining pins



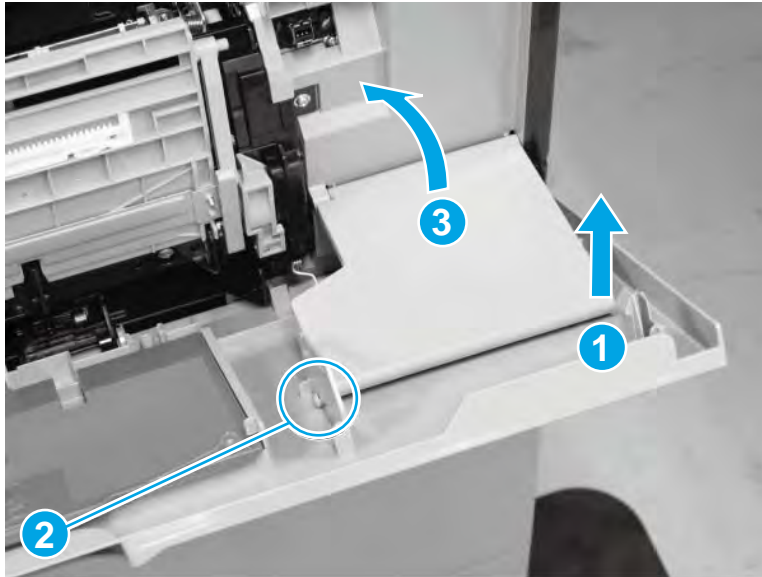
2. Open Tray 1, release the two outer retaining pins (callout 1) on the cover, and then carefully fold the inner tray up (callout 2) and into the product to protect it.

Figure 1-615 Release two outer retaining pins



- Carefully lift on the outer corner of the tray inner cover (callout 1) to release one pin (callout 2) from the guide, and then fold the inner cover up (callout 3) and into the product.

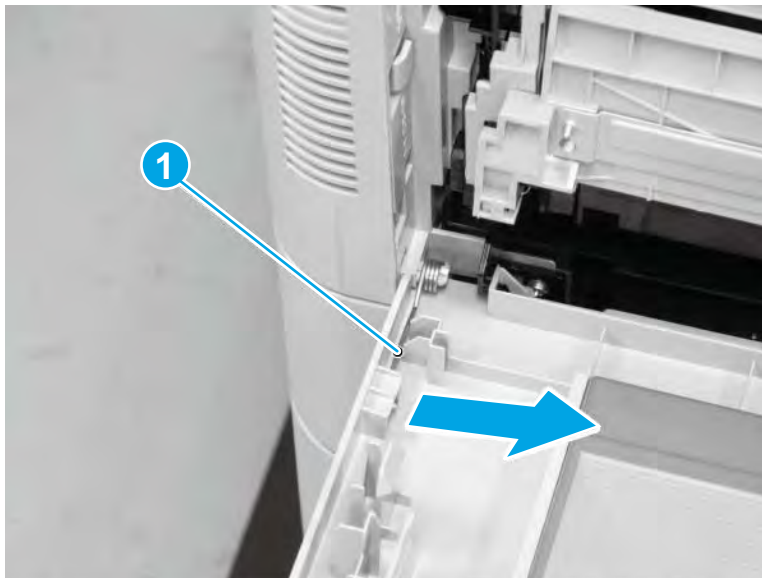
Figure 1-616 Release one pin



- Release the left-side spring arm (callout 1).

CAUTION: The spring is not captive when the spring arm is released and can be dislodged and lost.

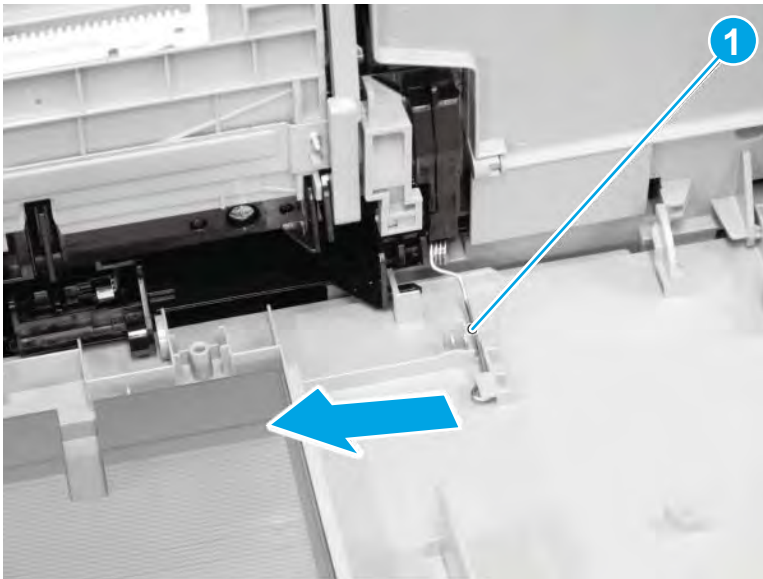
Figure 1-617 Release the left-side spring



5. Release the right-side spring arm (callout 1).

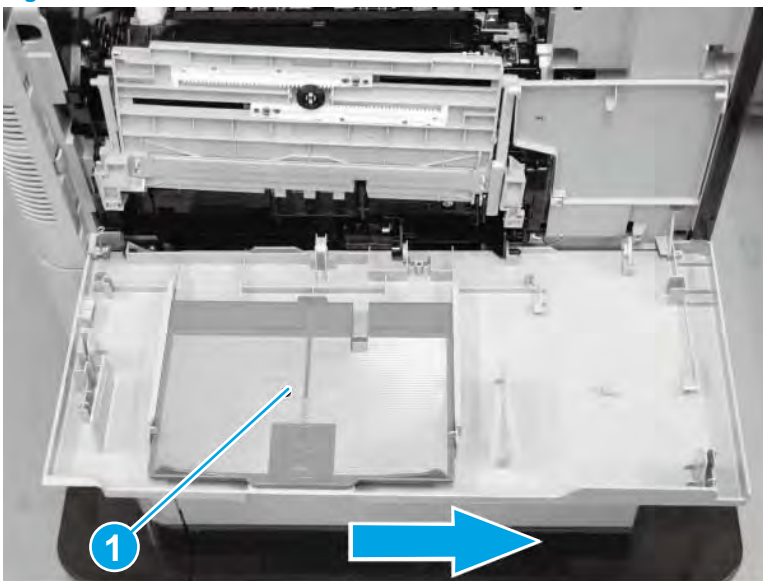
⚠ CAUTION: The spring is not captive when the spring arm is released and can be dislodged and lost.

Figure 1-618 Release the right-side spring



6. Slide the cover (callout 1) toward the back of the product to release it, and then remove the cover.

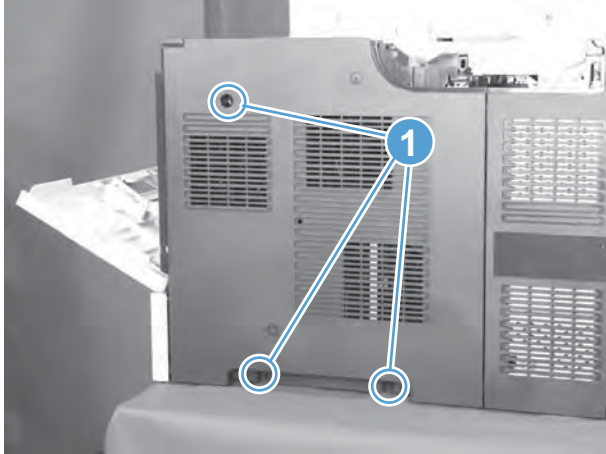
Figure 1-619 Remove the cover



Step 4: Remove the rear-right cover

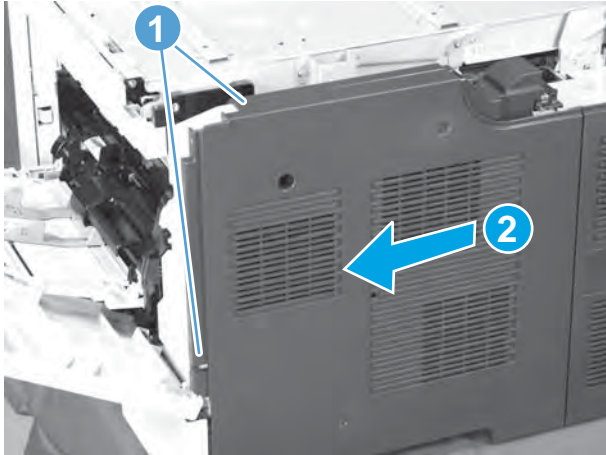
1. Open the top cover and Tray 1, and then remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-620 Remove three screws



2. Release two tabs (callout 1), slightly separate the edge of the cover near Tray 1 from the product, slide the cover towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

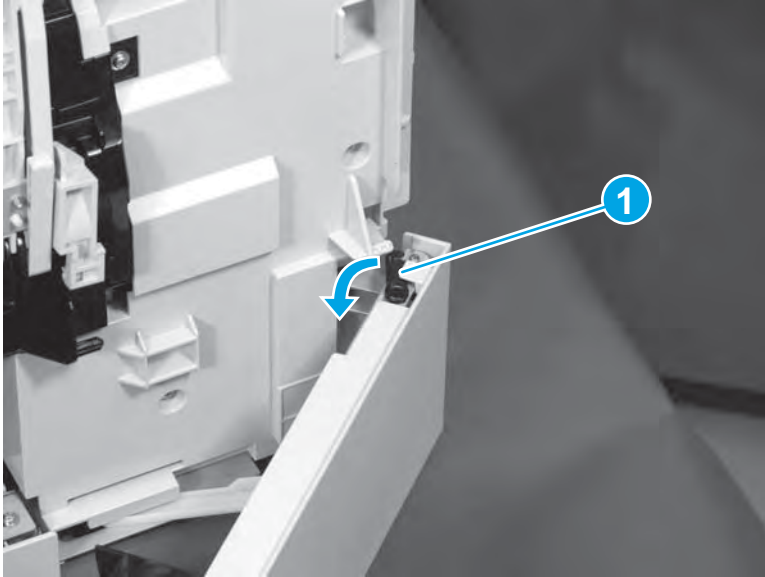
Figure 1-621 Remove the cover



Step 5: Remove the right-lower door

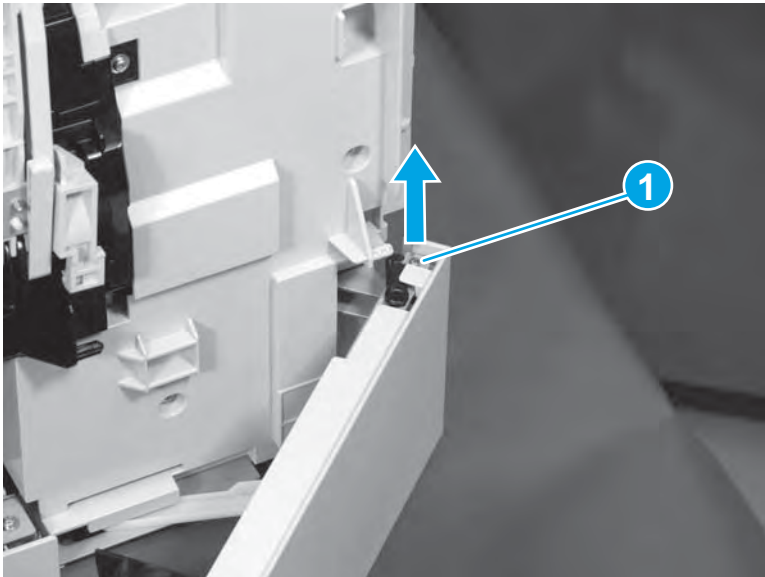
1. Open the right-lower door, and then rotate the stopper (callout 1) to release it.

Figure 1-622 Rotate the stopper



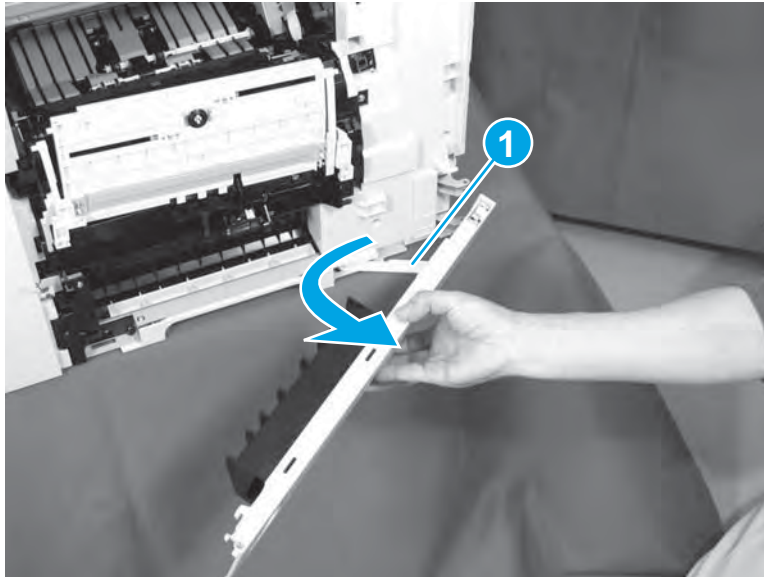
2. Support the door, and then remove the shaft (callout 1).

Figure 1-623 Remove the shaft



3. Release the door-retainer arm (callout 1) by sliding it toward the front of the product, and then remove the door.

Figure 1-624 Remove the door

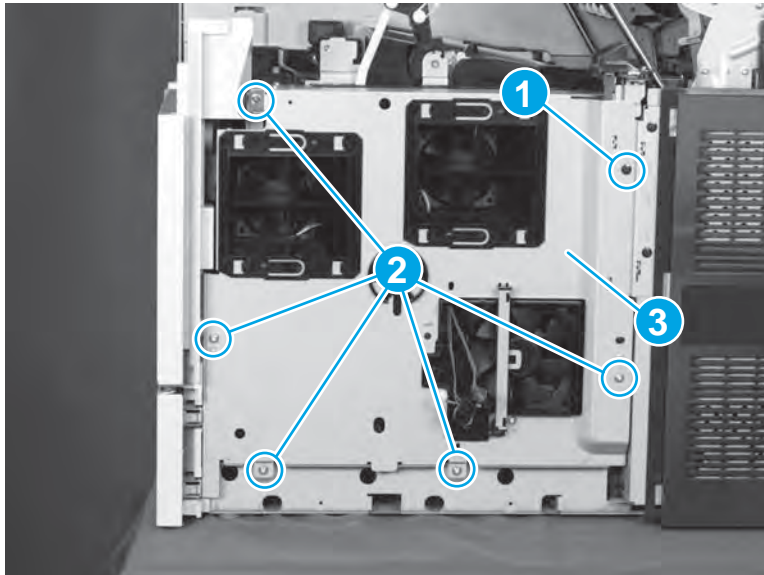


Step 6: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly

1. Remove one black screw (callout 1), remove five silver screws (callout 2), and then slightly rotate the top of the shield (callout 3) away from the product.

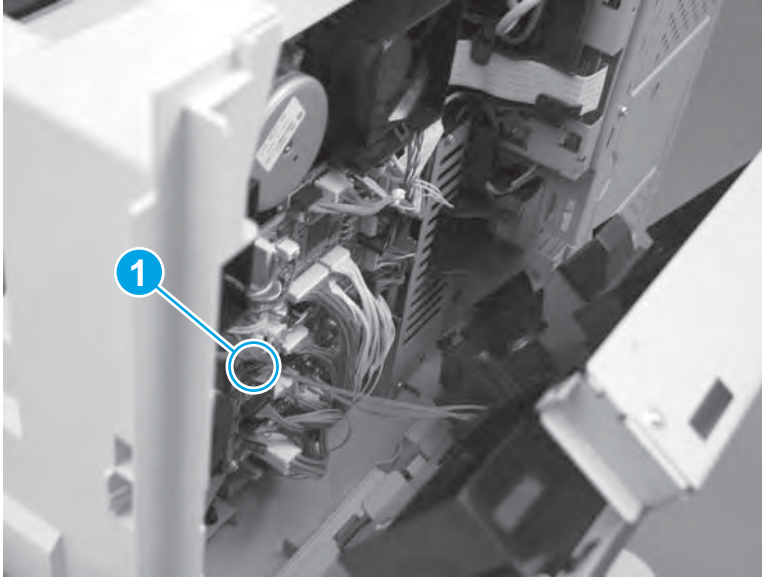
CAUTION: The shield is still connected to the product by a wire harness. Do not completely remove the shield after removing the screws.

Figure 1-625 Remove six screws



2. Disconnect one connector (J42; callout 1) from the DC controller, and then remove the DC controller shield.

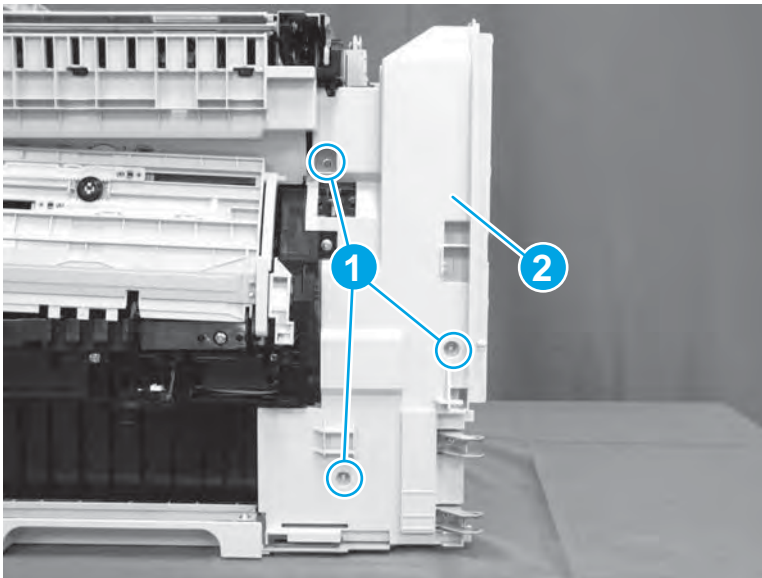
Figure 1-626 Disconnect one connector and remove the shield



Step 7: Remove the Tray 1 pickup assembly

1. Remove three screws (callout 1), and then remove the Tray 1 gear cover (callout 2).

Figure 1-627 Remove three screws and the Tray 1 gear cover



2. Disconnect two connectors (J71 and J81; callout 1).


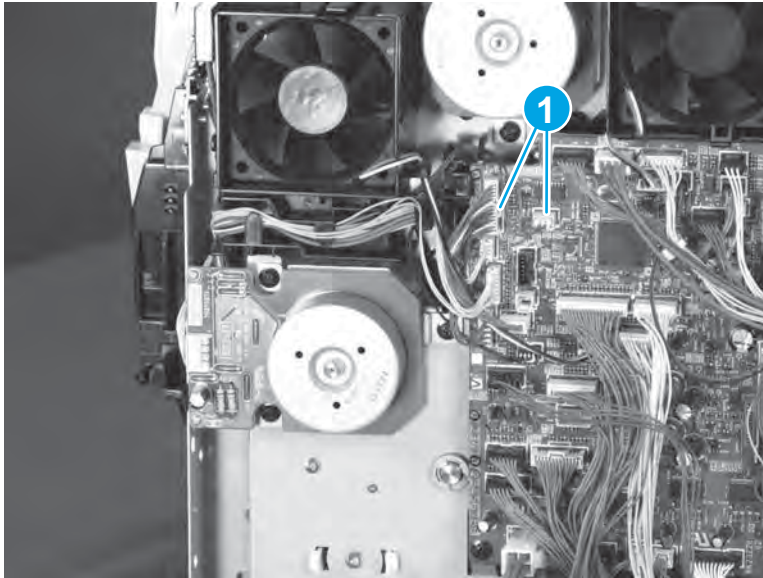
 **NOTE:** The feed motor is shown installed in the figure below, but it has been removed earlier in this procedure.

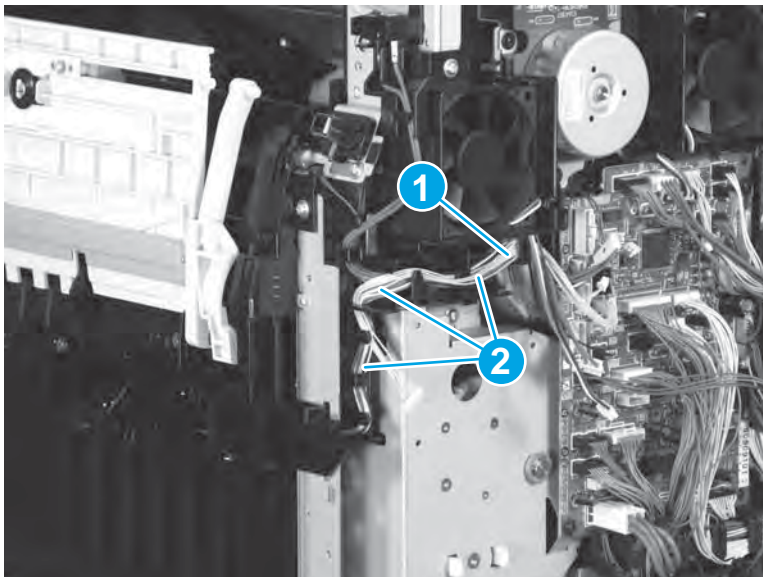
Figure 1-628 Disconnect two connectors



3. Release the wire harnesses (callout 1) from the guide (callout 2).

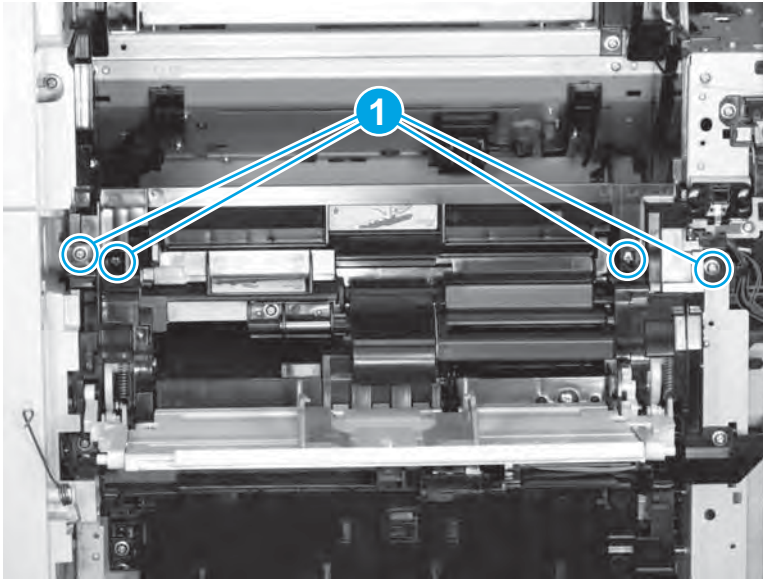
 **NOTE:** The feed motor is shown removed in the figure below, but it does not need to be removed.

Figure 1-629 Release the wire harnesses



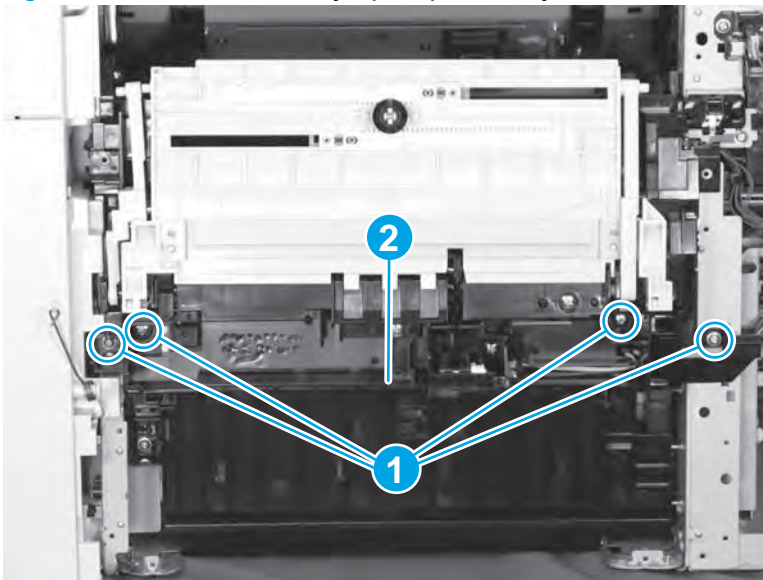
4. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-630 Remove four screws



5. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the Tray 1 pickup assembly (callout 2).

Figure 1-631 Remove the Tray 1 pickup assembly



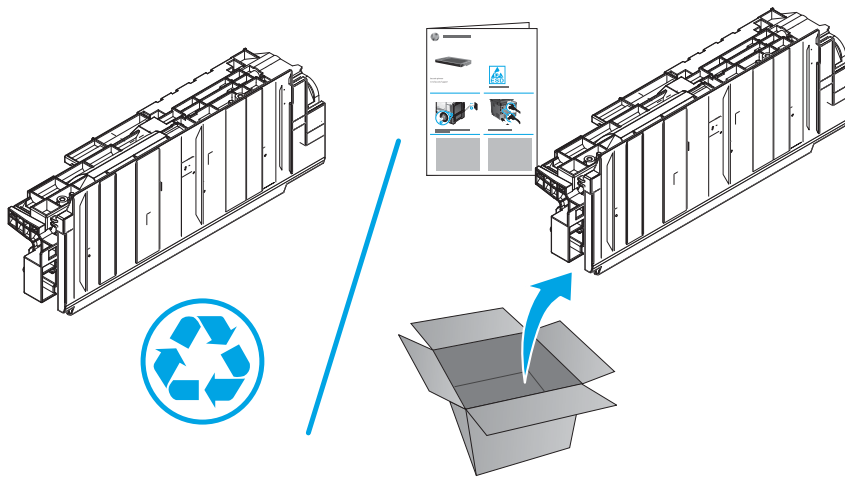
Step 8: Unpack the replacement Tray 1 pickup assembly

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

www.Product return and recycling.



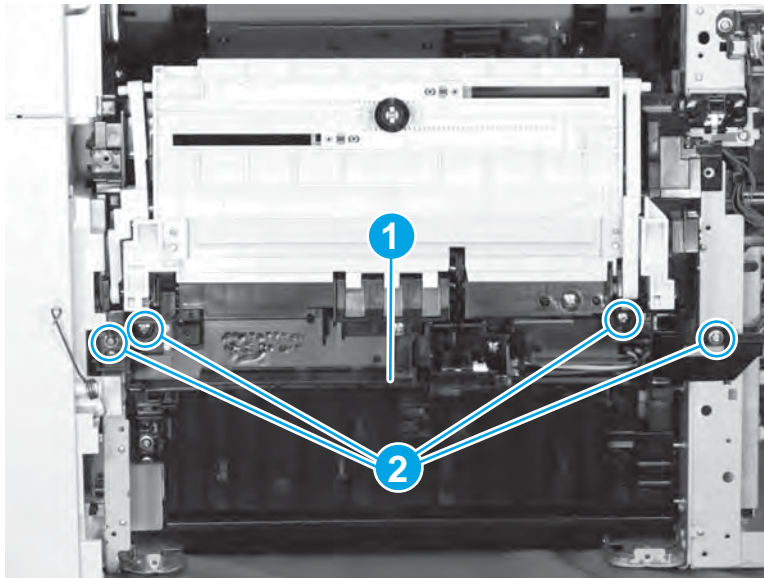
NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.



Step 9: Install the Tray 1 pickup assembly

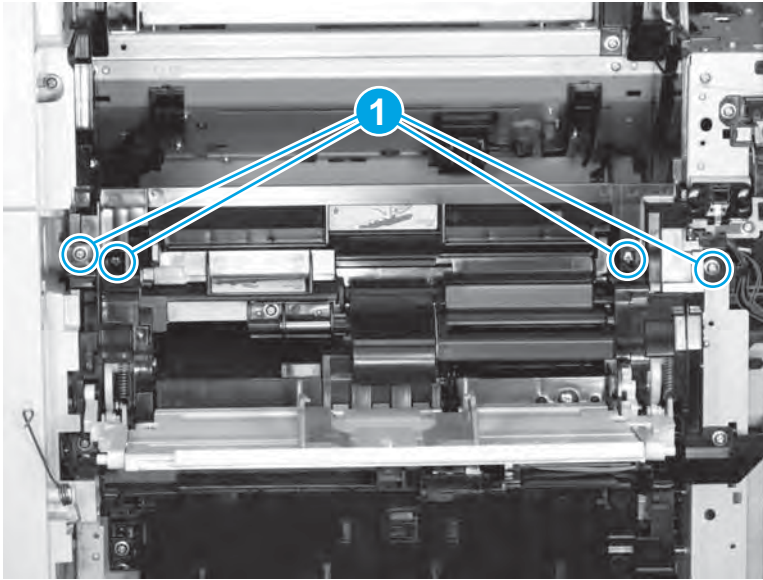
1. Position the Tray 1 pickup assembly (callout 1) on the product, and then install four screws (callout 2).

Figure 1-632 Install the Tray 1 pickup assembly



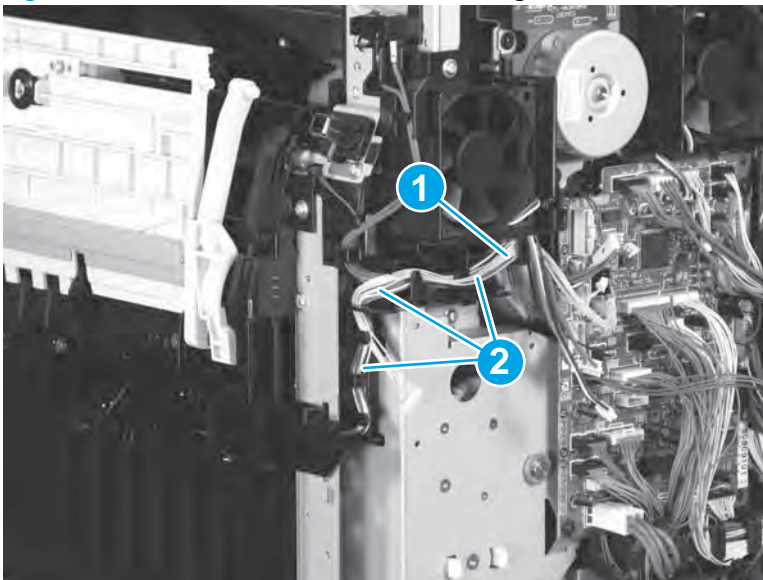
2. Install four screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-633 Install four screws



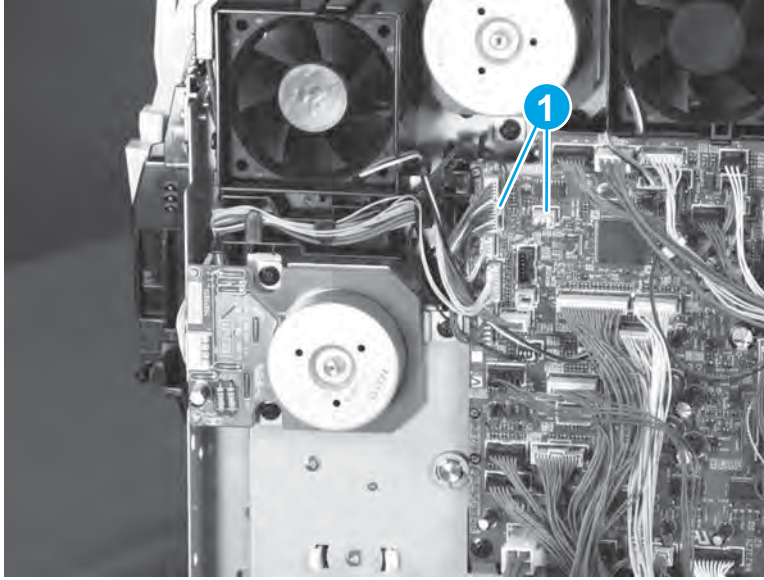
3. Install the wire harnesses (callout 1) in the guide (callout 2).

Figure 1-634 Install the wire harnesses in the guide



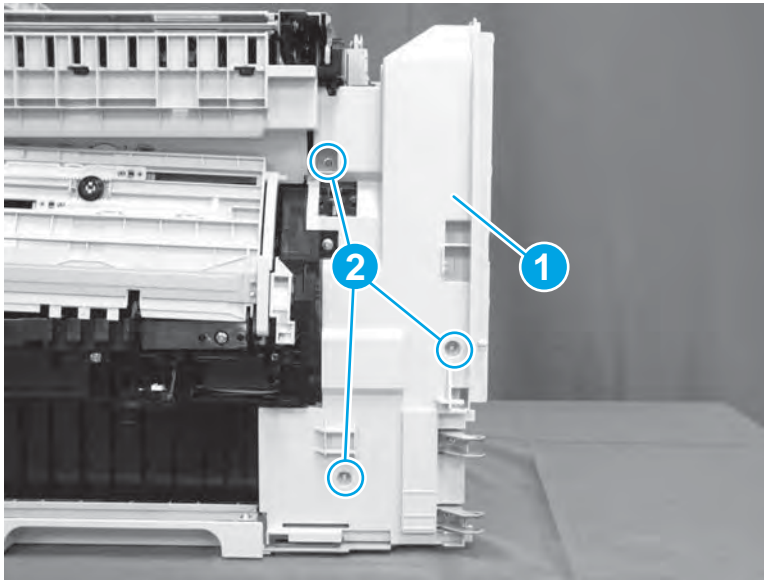
4. Connect two connectors (J71 and J81; callout 1).

Figure 1-635 Connect two connectors



5. Position the Tray 1 gear cover (callout 1) on the product, and then install three screws (callout 2).

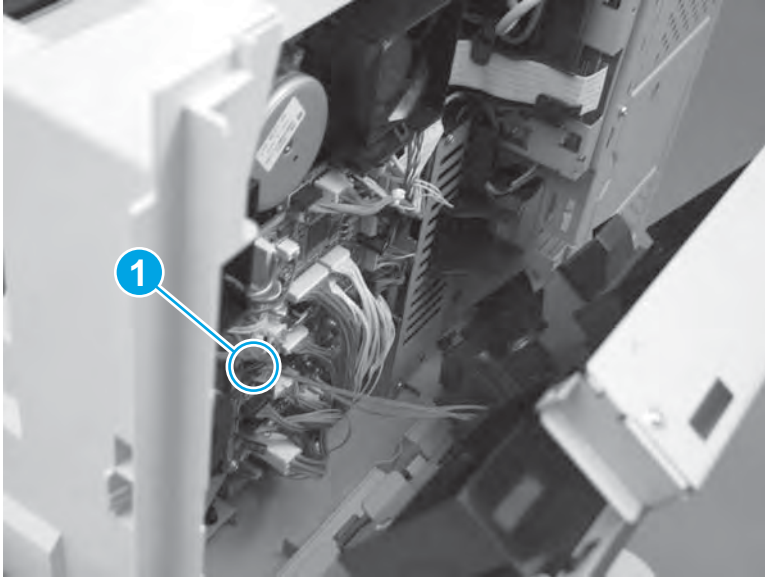
Figure 1-636 Install the Tray 1 gear cover



Step 10: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly

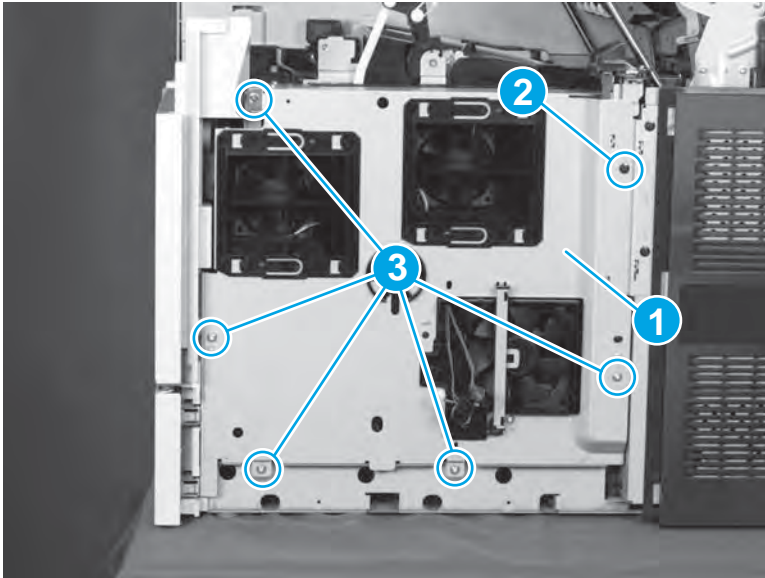
1. Position the shield near the product, and then connect one connector (J42; callout 1).

Figure 1-637 Install the shield and connect one connector



2. Rotate the top of the shield (callout 1) toward the product, install one black screw (callout 2), and then install five silver screws (callout 3).

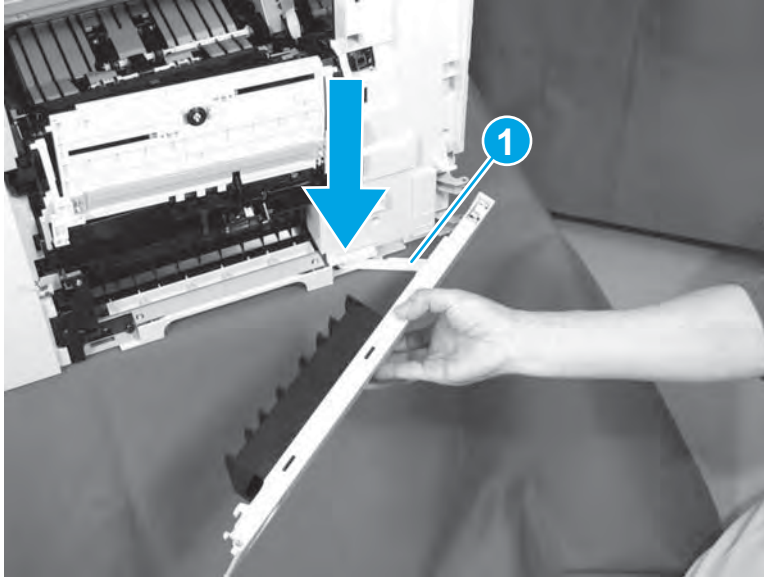
Figure 1-638 Remove six screws



Step 11: Install the right-lower door

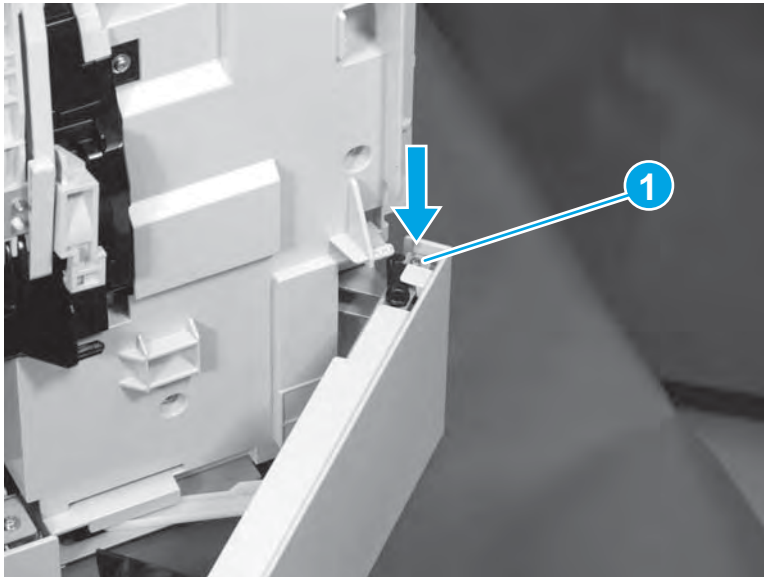
1. Install the door-retainer arm (callout 1) in the slot, and then position the right edge of the door on the product.

Figure 1-639 Install the door



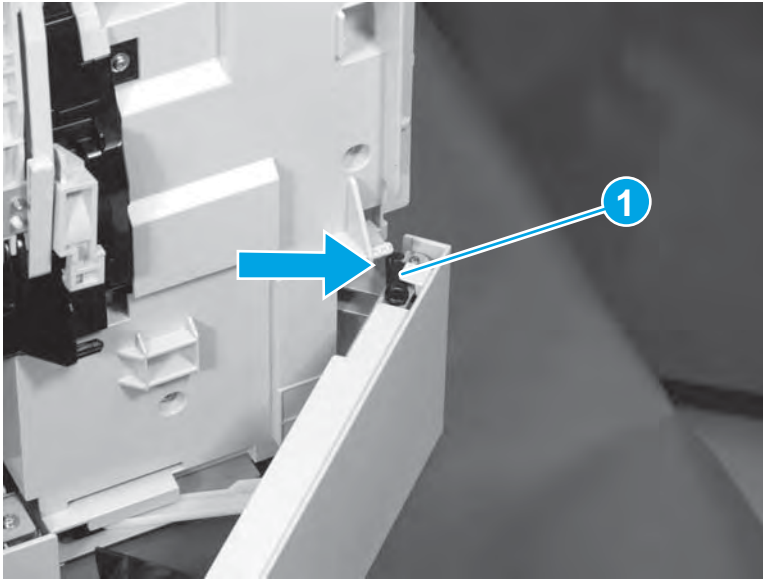
2. Install the shaft (callout 1).

Figure 1-640 Install the shaft



3. Rotate the stopper (callout 1) to until it locks in place.

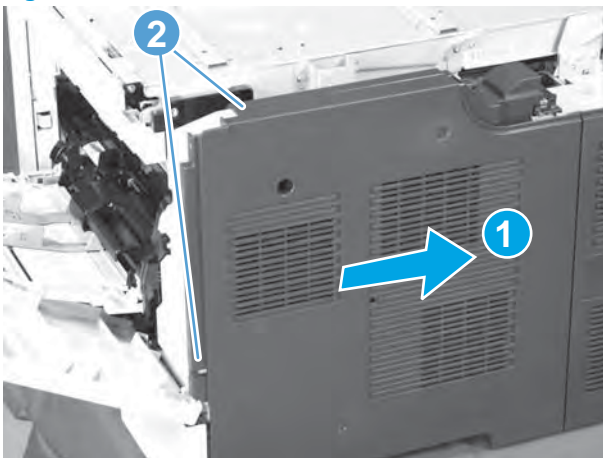
Figure 1-641 Rotate the stopper



Step 12: Install the rear-right cover

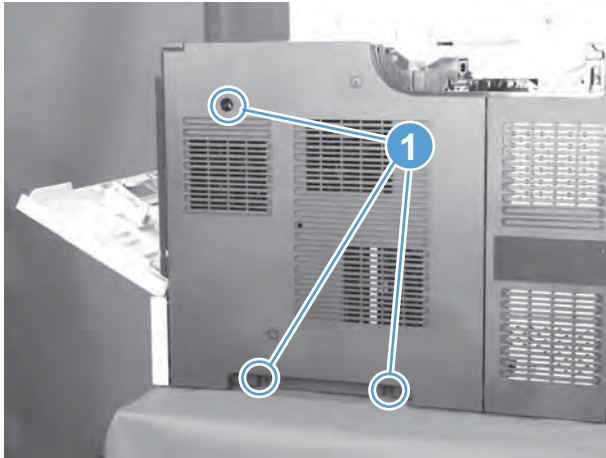
1. Position the cover on the product, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 1) to engage two tabs (callout 2).

Figure 1-642 Install the cover



2. Install three screws (callout 1), and then close the top cover and Tray 1.

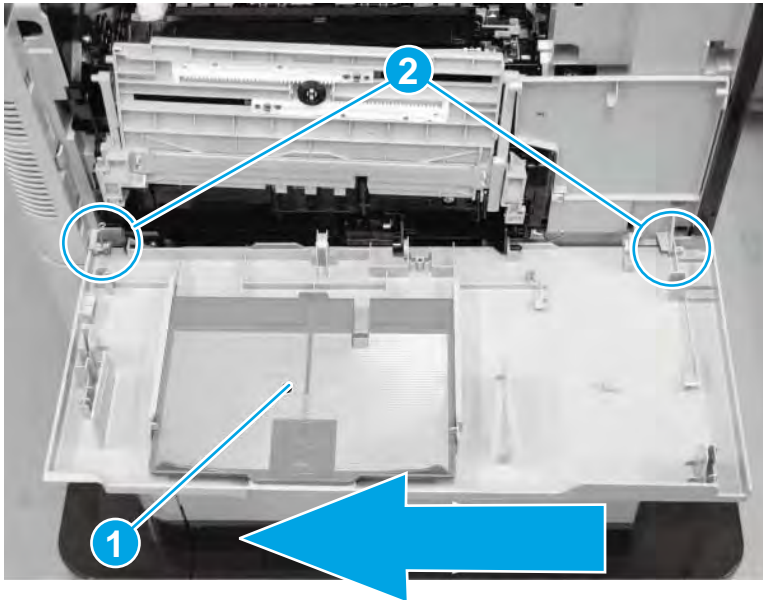
Figure 1-643 Install three screws



Step 13: Install the Tray 1 cover

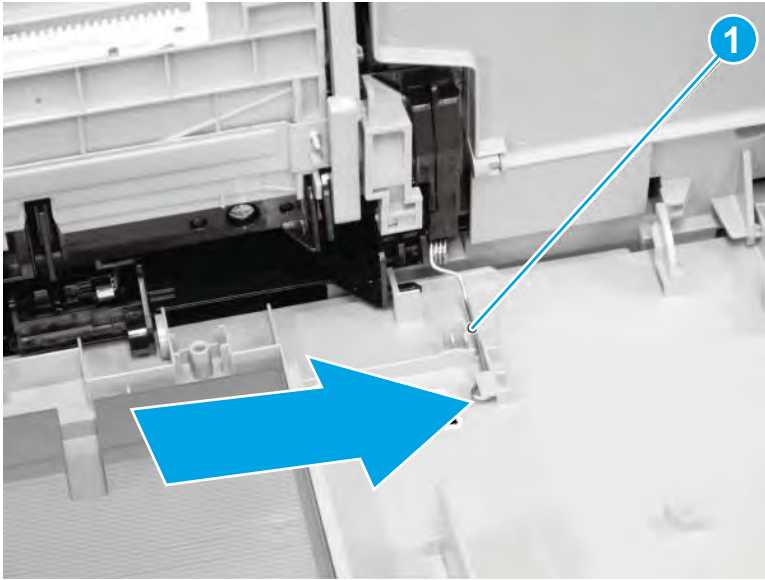
1. Slide the cover (callout 1) toward the front of the product to install it on the hinge pins (callout 2).

Figure 1-644 Install the cover



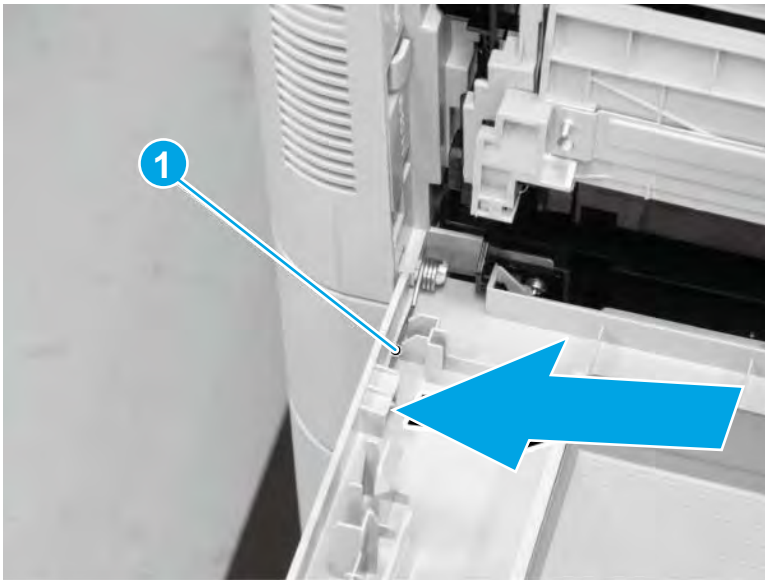
- Engage the right-side spring arm (callout 1).

Figure 1-645 Engage the right-side spring



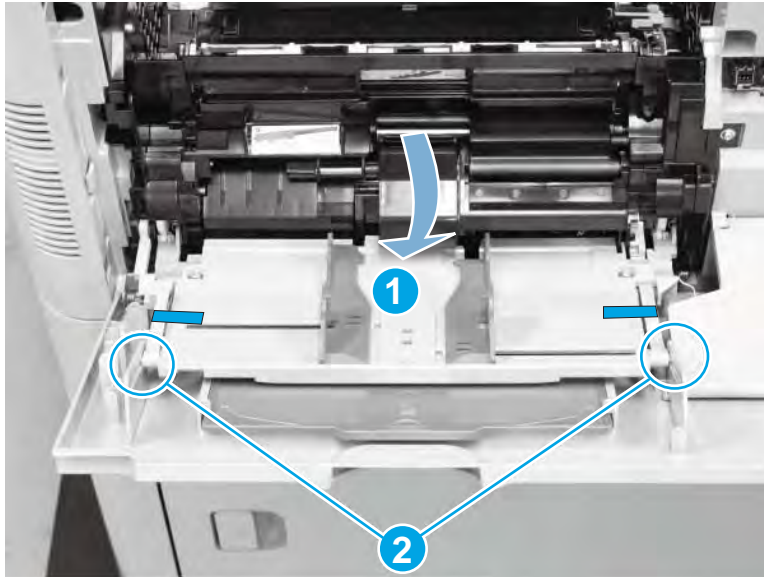
- Engage the left-side spring arm (callout 1).

Figure 1-646 Engage the left-side spring



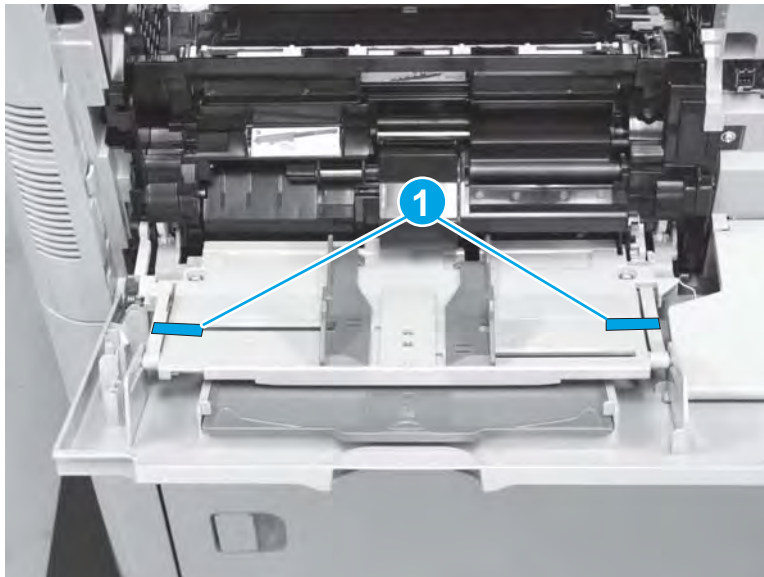
4. Lower the inner tray assembly (callout 1), and then engage the two outer retaining pins (callout 2) on the cover.

Figure 1-647 Engage two outer retaining pins



5. Remove the low adhesive tape (callout 1), and then close the tray.

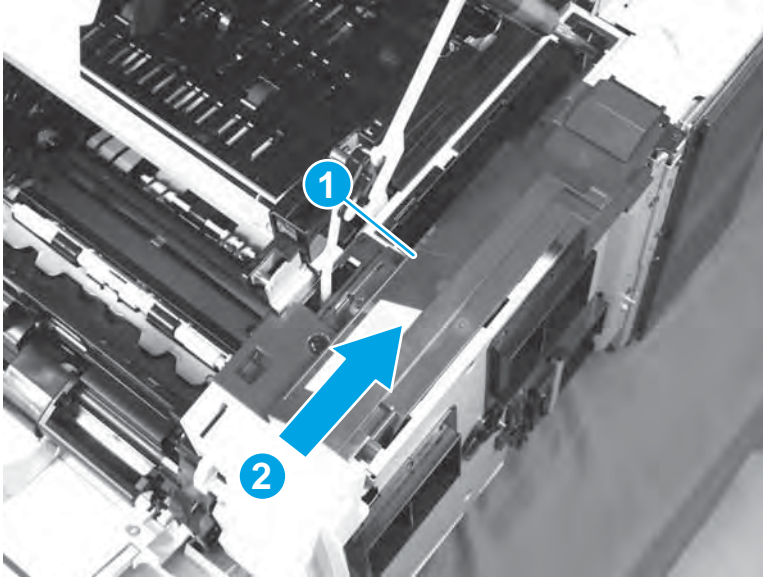
Figure 1-648 Remove the low adhesive tape



Step 14: Install the rear-top cover

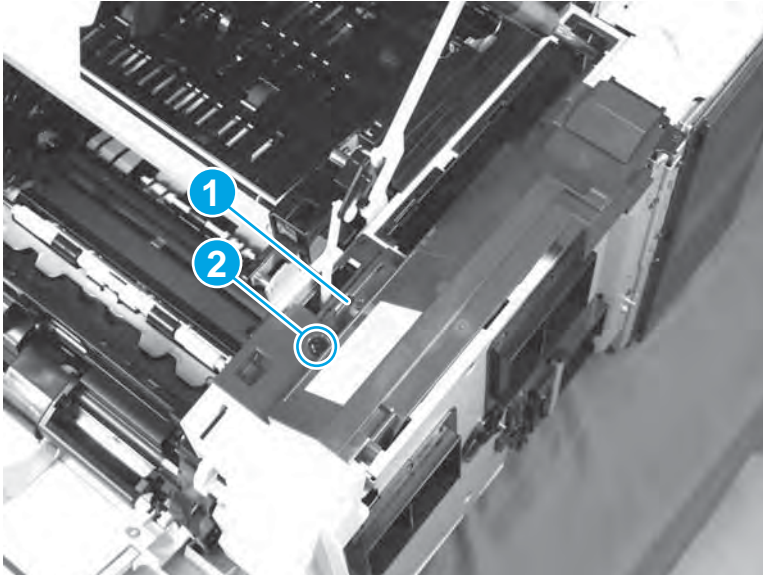
1. Position the cover on the product, Push the cover (callout 1) away Tray 1 to install it (callout 2).

Figure 1-649 Install the cover



2. Make sure that the tab (callout 2) is engaged, and then install one screw (callout 2).

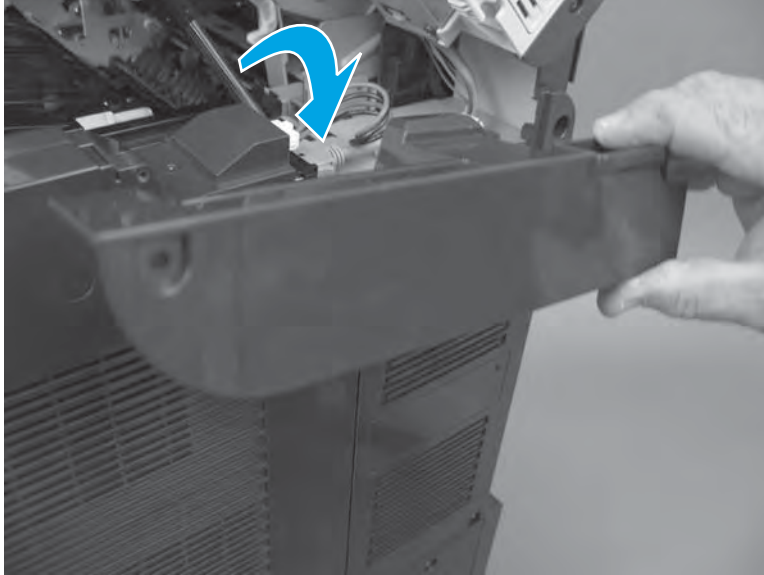
Figure 1-650 Install one screw



Step 15: Install the image scanner cable cover

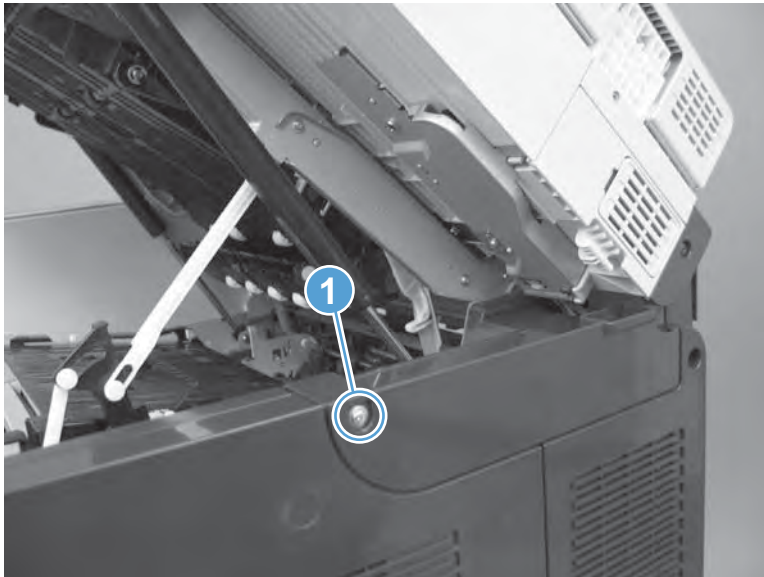
1. Install the cover on the product.

Figure 1-651 Install the cover



2. Install one screw (callout 1), and then close the top cover.

Figure 1-652 Install one screw



Step 16: Turn the product power on

After servicing

Do the following steps:

Connect the power cable.

Turn on the product.

Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Interconnect board (ICB)

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the formatter](#)
- [Step 2: Remove the image scanner cable cover](#)
- [Step 3: Remove the rear-right cover](#)
- [Step 4: Remove the rear-top cover](#)
- [Step 5: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly](#)
- [Step 6: Remove the ICB](#)
- [Step 7: Unpack the replacement interconnect board](#)
- [Step 8: Install the ICB](#)
- [Step 9: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly](#)
- [Step 10: Install the rear-top cover](#)
- [Step 11: Install the rear-right cover](#)
- [Step 12: Install the image scanner cable cover](#)
- [Step 13: Install the formatter](#)
- [Step 14: Test the installation](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the interconnect board for the HP LaserJet Enterprise M630.

Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct assembly part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the assembly.

Interconnect board part number	
B3G86-67904	Interconnect board



CAUTION:



This product contains components that can be damaged by electrostatic discharge (ESD). To reduce the chance of ESD damage, place the product on an ESD mat (if available), and wear an ESD wrist strap connected to a grounded surface. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, ground yourself by touching the sheet-metal chassis before touching an ESD-sensitive part.

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

Step 1: Remove the formatter

1. Do the following steps:

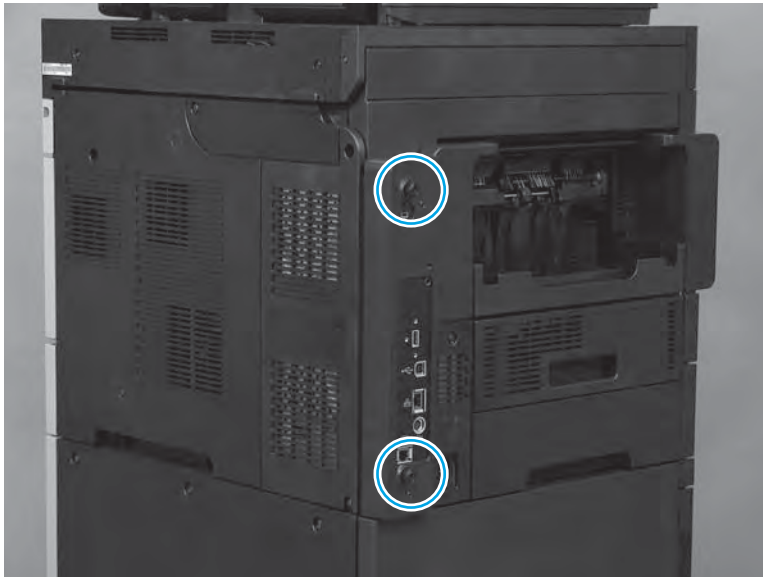
- a. Turn off the product.
- b. Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

c. Disconnect all cables and accessories attached to the formatter.

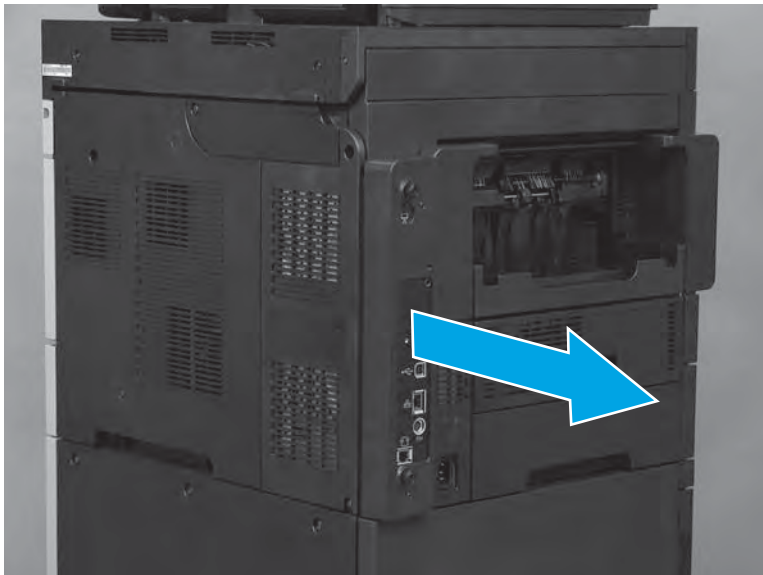
2. Loosen the two thumbscrews on the formatter.

Figure 1-653 Remove the formatter



3. Slide the formatter straight out of the product to remove it.

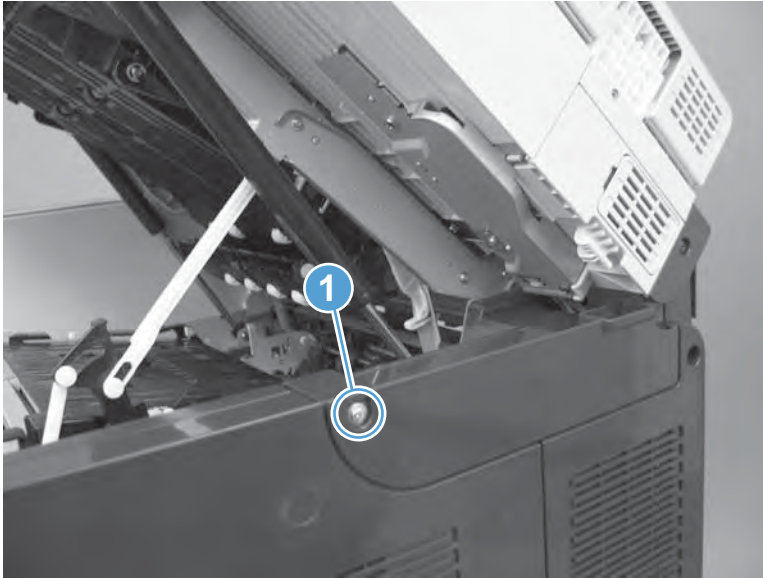
Figure 1-654 Remove the formatter



Step 2: Remove the image scanner cable cover

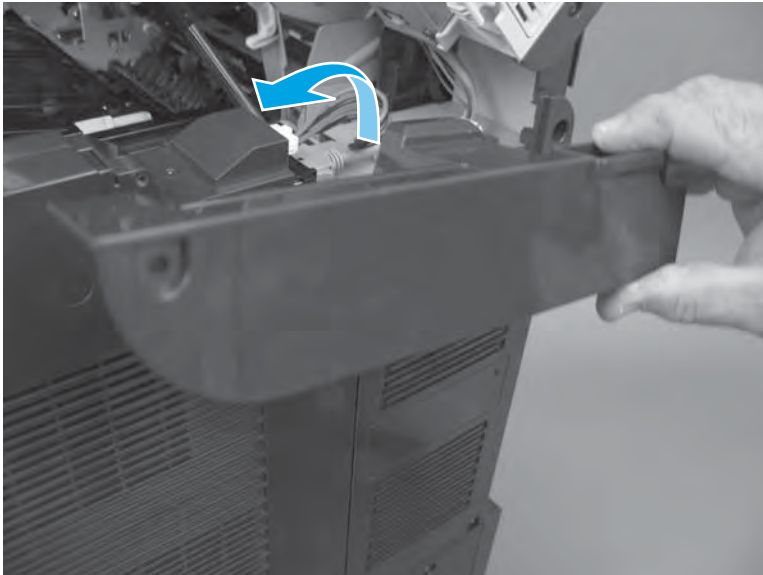
1. Open the top cover, and then remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-655 Remove one screw



2. Remove the cover.

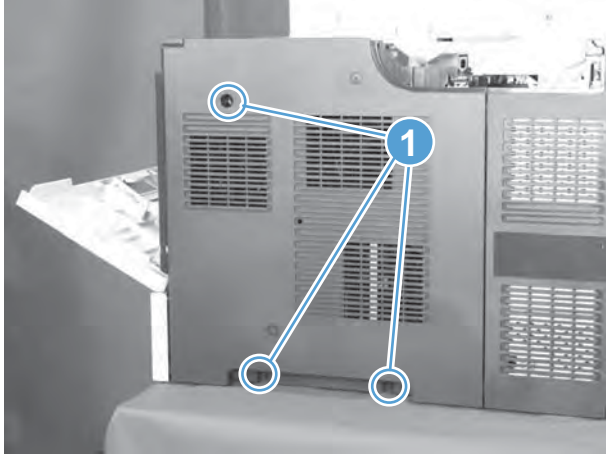
Figure 1-656 Remove the cover



Step 3: Remove the rear-right cover

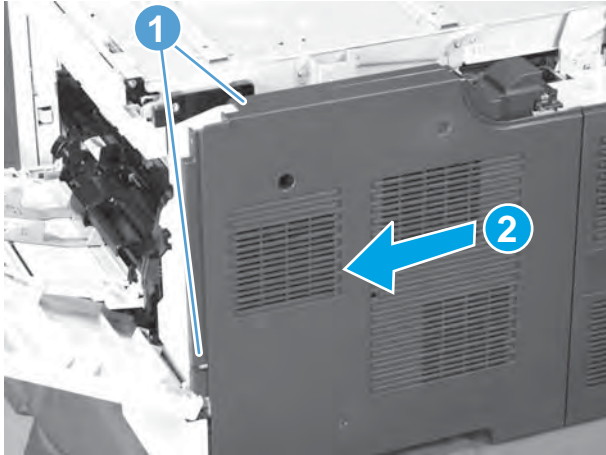
1. Open the top cover and Tray 1, and then remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-657 Remove three screws



2. Release two tabs (callout 1), slightly separate the edge of the cover near Tray 1 from the product, slide the cover towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

Figure 1-658 Remove the cover

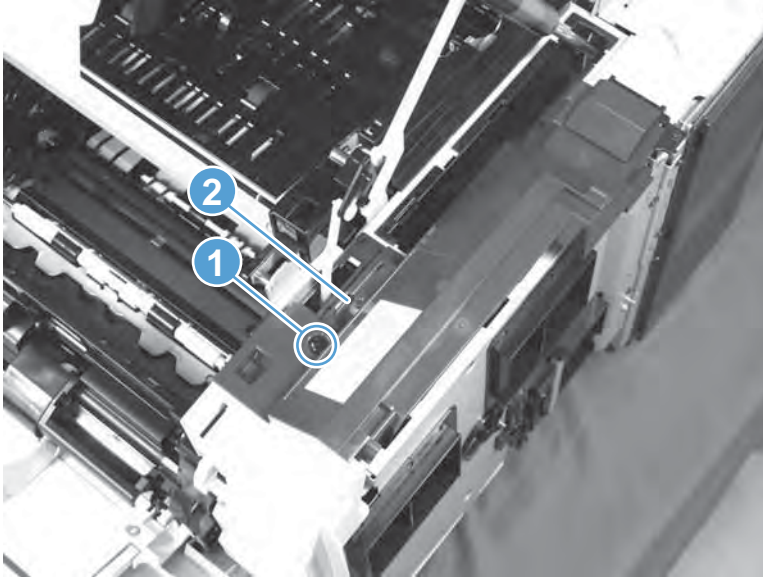


Step 4: Remove the rear-top cover

 **NOTE:** If the top cover is closed, open it now.

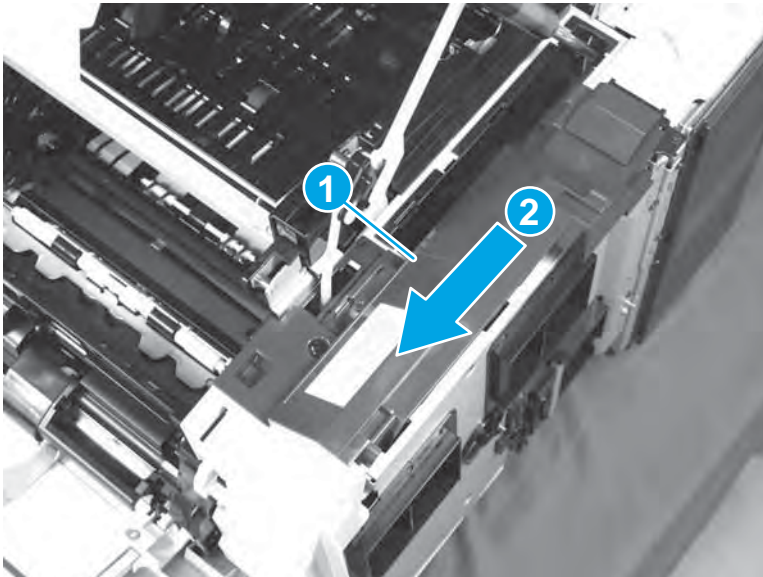
1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release one tab (callout 2).

Figure 1-659 Remove one screw



2. Push the cover (callout 1) towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

Figure 1-660 Remove the cover

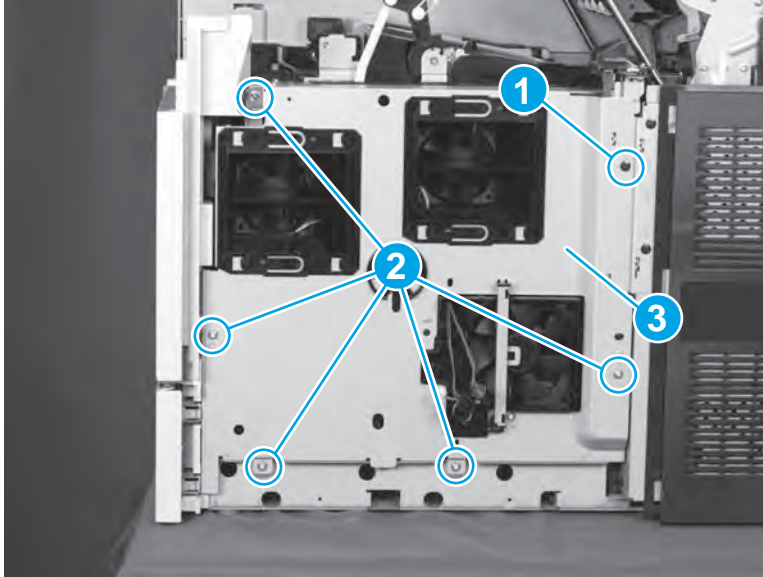


Step 5: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly

1. Remove one black screw (callout 1), remove five silver screws (callout 2), and then slightly rotate the top of the shield (callout 3) away from the product.

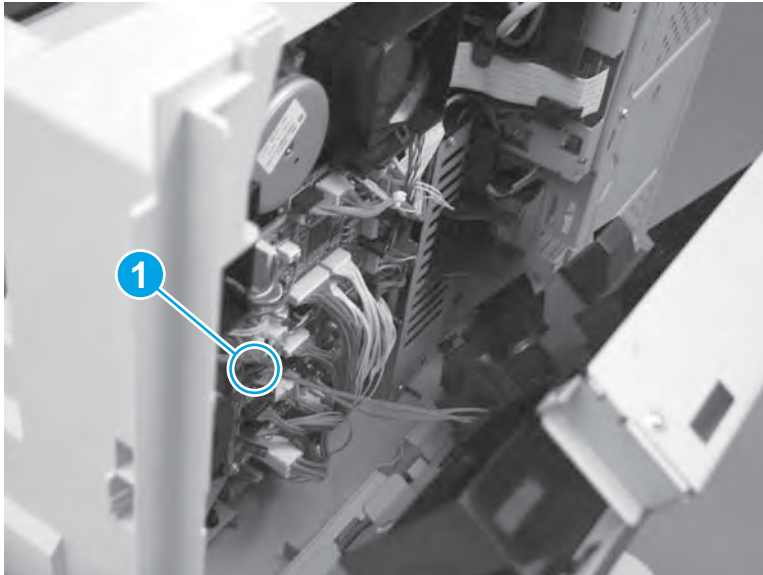
CAUTION: The shield is still connected to the product by a wire harness. Do not completely remove the shield after removing the screws.

Figure 1-661 Remove six screws



2. Disconnect one connector (J42; callout 1) from the DC controller, and then remove the DC controller shield.

Figure 1-662 Disconnect one connector and remove the shield

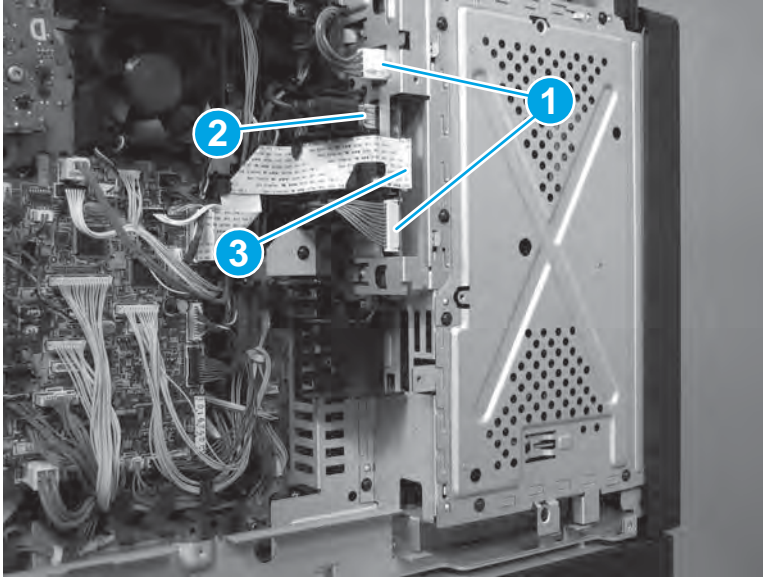


Step 6: Remove the ICB


 ESD sensitive assembly.

1. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), one USB connector (callout 2), and then disconnect one FFC (callout 3).

Figure 1-663 Disconnect four connectors

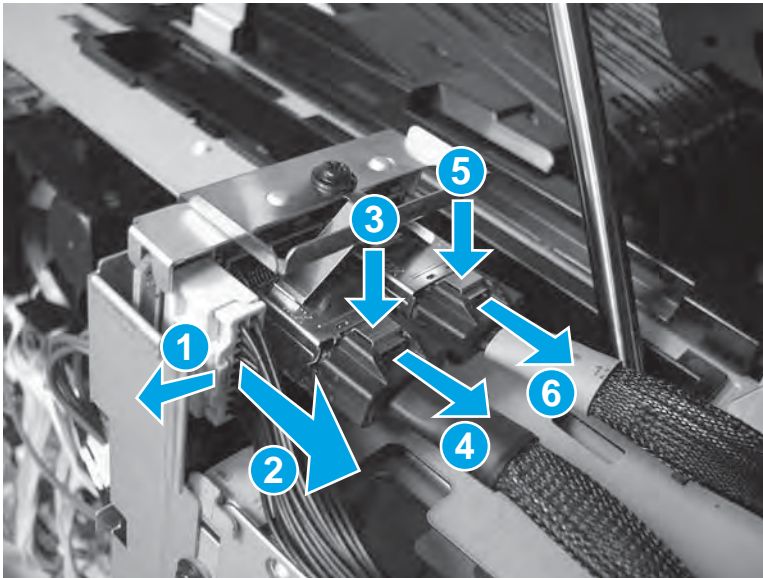


2. Use a small flat-blade screw driver to release three connectors.

 **TIP:** When the two connectors with the metal retainer clips (callouts 3/4/5/6) are reinstalled, make sure that the clips snap in place to securely lock the connectors in place.

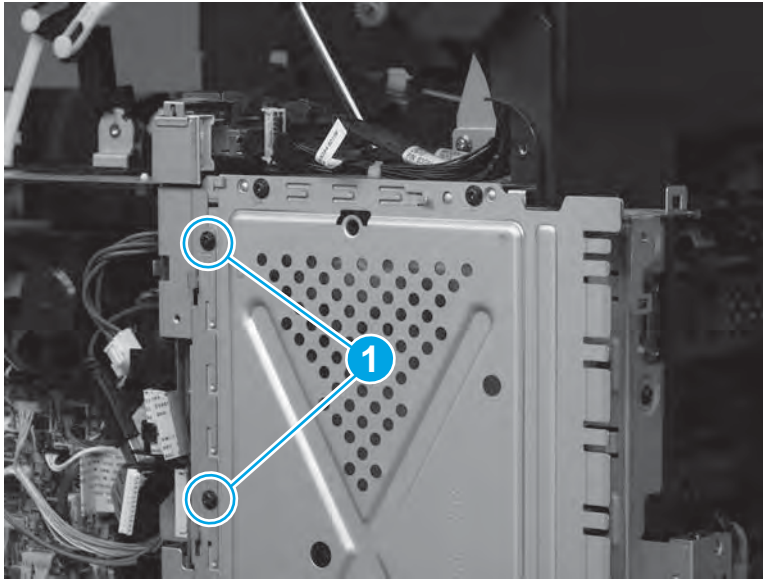
The wire harness with the blue band (callouts 5/6) connects to the inner connector on the ICB when reinstalled.

Figure 1-664 Disconnect three connectors



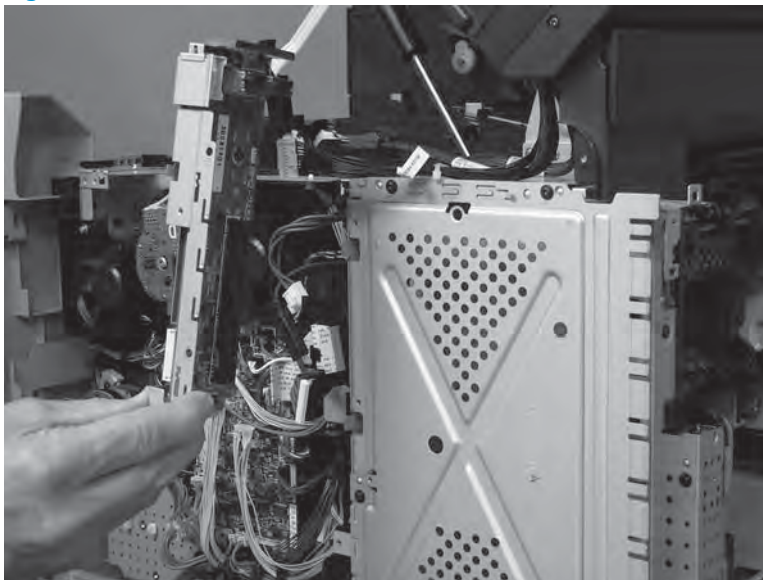
3. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-665 Remove two screws



4. Remove the ICB.

Figure 1-666 Remove the ICB



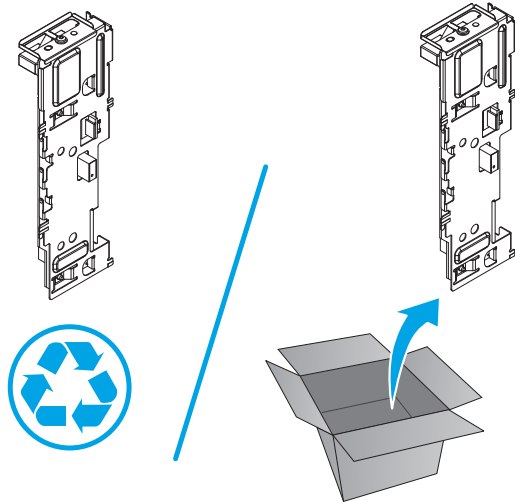
Step 7: Unpack the replacement interconnect board

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

www.Product return and recycling.

 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the assembly.

Figure 1-667 Recycle and unpack

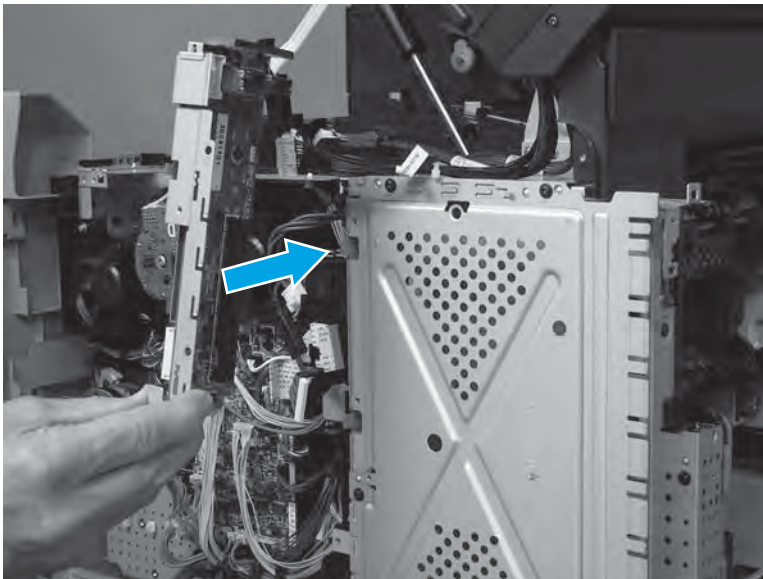


Step 8: Install the ICB

 ESD sensitive assembly.

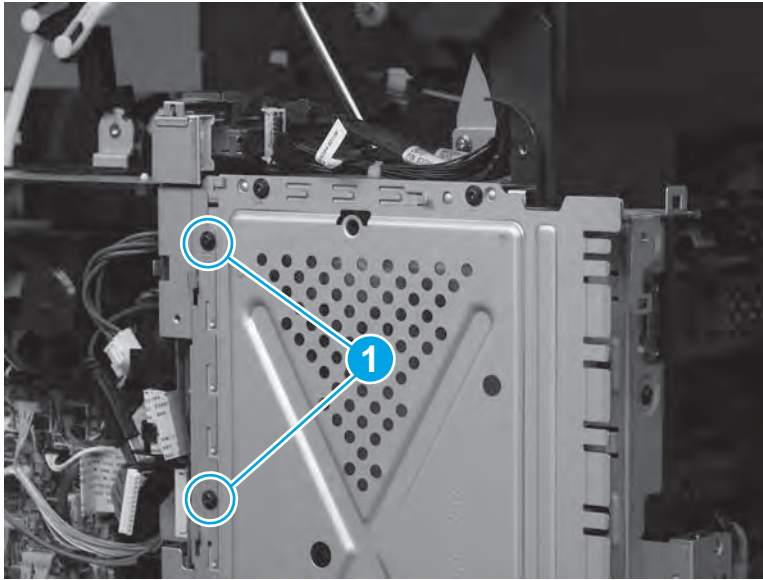
1. Install the ICB on the product.

Figure 1-668 Install the ICB



2. Install two screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-669 Install two screws

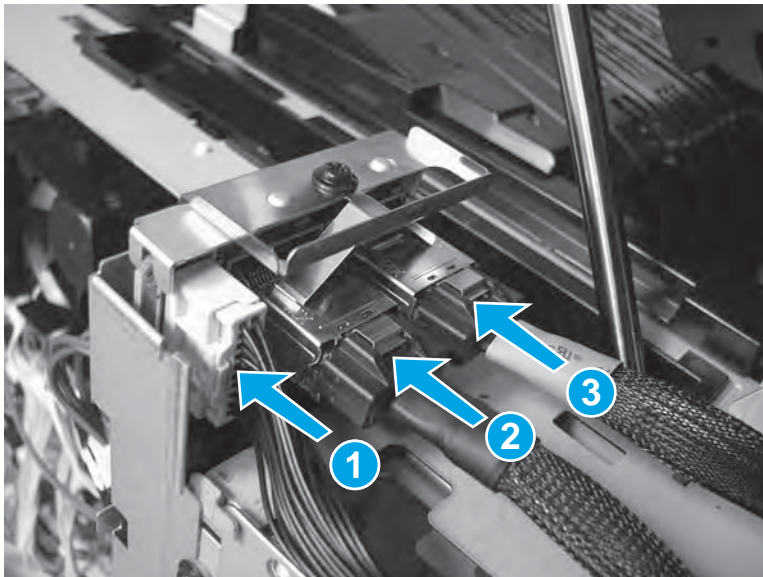


3. At the top of the ICB, connect three connectors.

TIP: When the two connectors with the metal retainer clips (callouts 2/3) are reinstalled, make sure that the clips snap in place to securely lock the connectors in place.

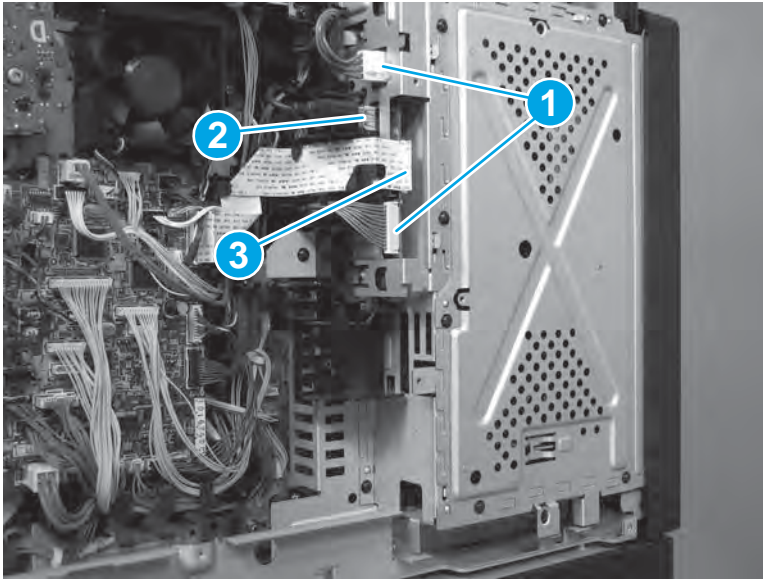
The wire harness with the blue band (callouts 3) connects to the inner connector on the ICB when reinstalled.

Figure 1-670 Connect three connectors



4. Connect two connectors (callout 1), one USB connector (callout 2), and then connect one FFC (callout 3).

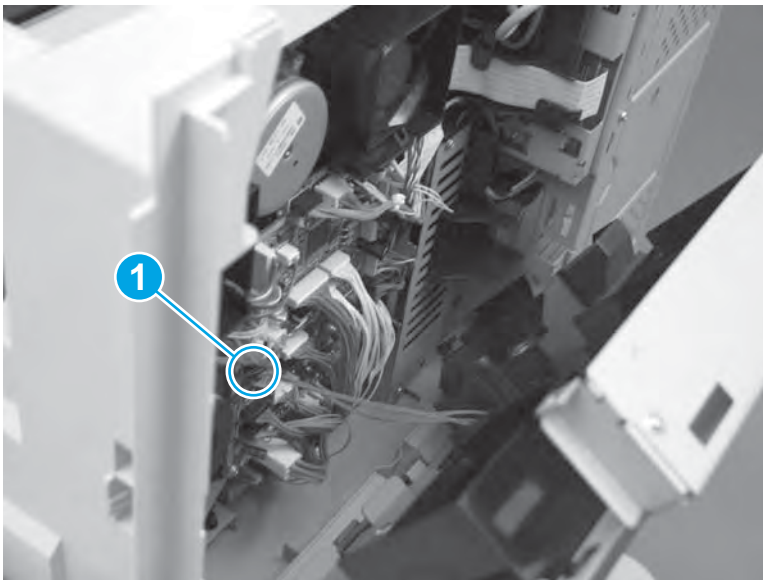
Figure 1-671 Connect four connectors



Step 9: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly

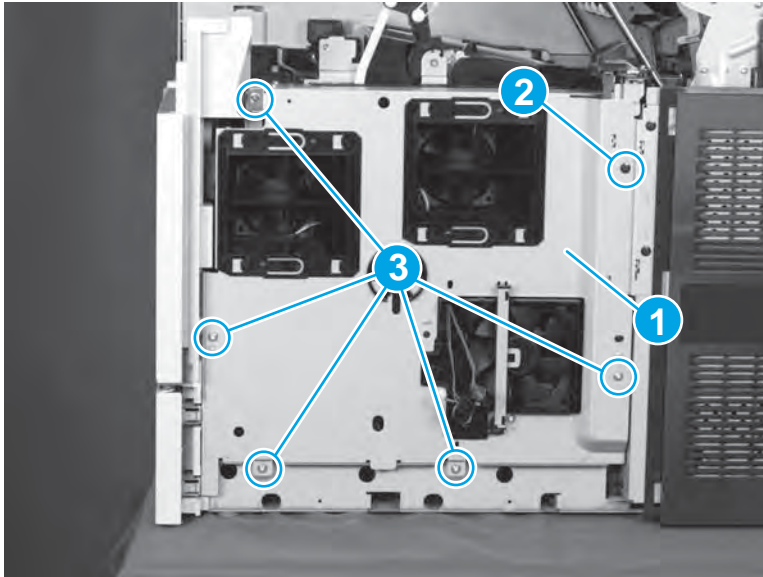
1. Position the shield near the product, and then connect one connector (J42; callout 1).

Figure 1-672 Install the shield and connect one connector



2. Rotate the top of the shield (callout 1) toward the product, install one black screw (callout 2), and then install five silver screws (callout 3).

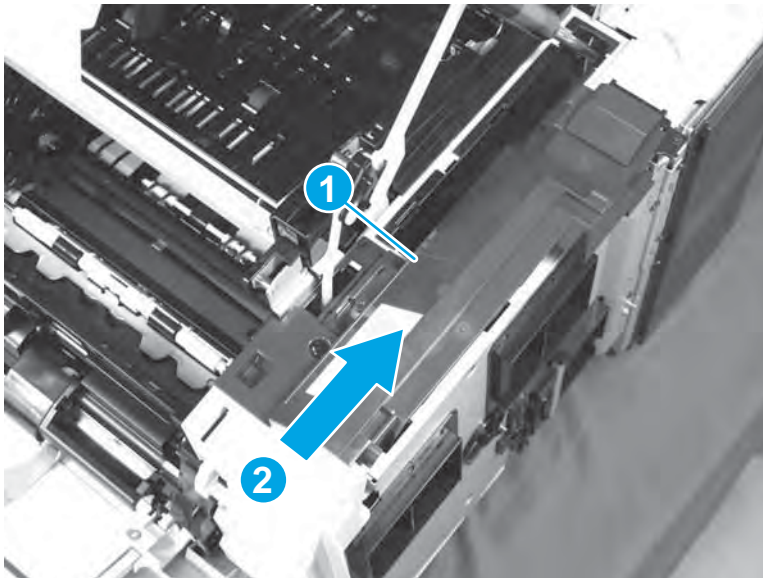
Figure 1-673 Remove six screws



Step 10: Install the rear-top cover

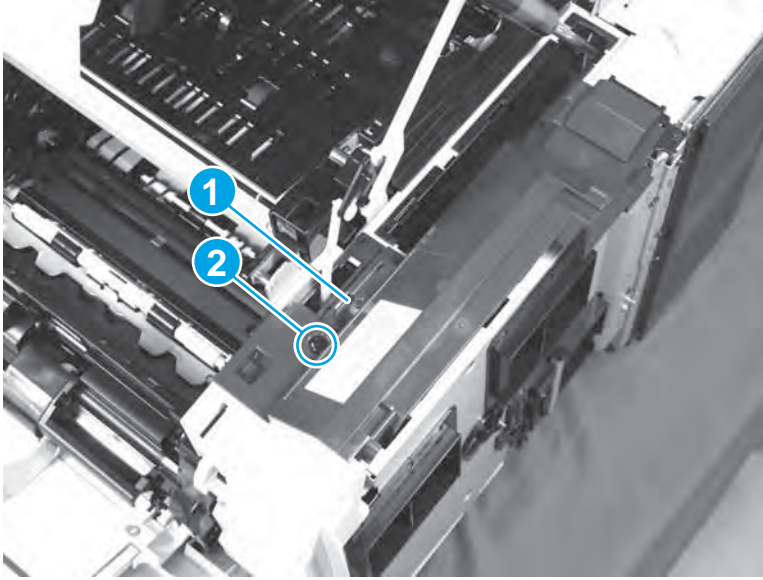
1. Position the cover on the product, Push the cover (callout 1) away Tray 1 to install it (callout 2).

Figure 1-674 Install the cover



2. Make sure that the tab (callout 2) is engaged, and then install one screw (callout 2).

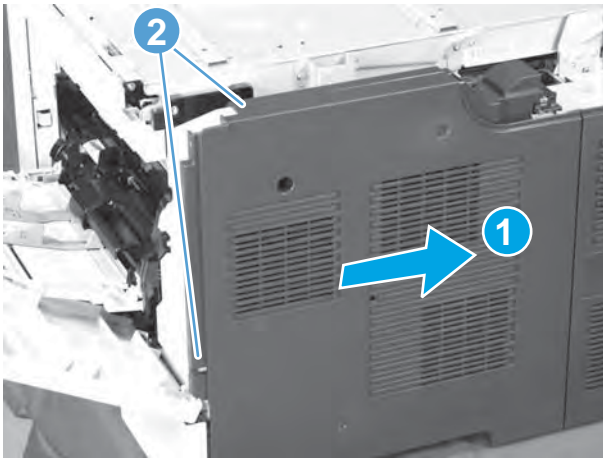
Figure 1-675 Install one screw



Step 11: Install the rear-right cover

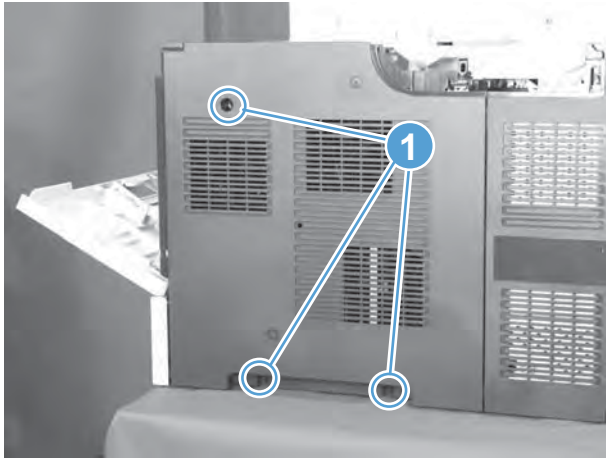
1. Position the cover on the product, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 1) to engage two tabs (callout 2).

Figure 1-676 Install the cover



2. Install three screws (callout 1), and then close the top cover and Tray 1.

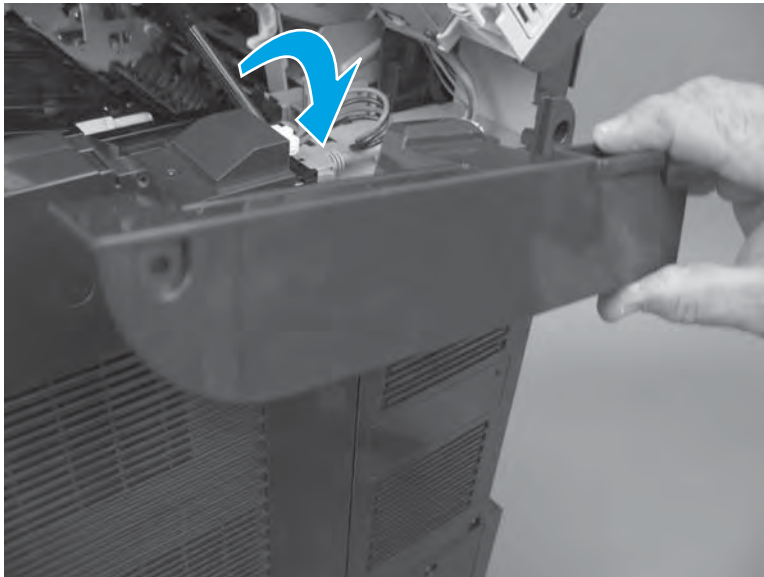
Figure 1-677 Install three screws



Step 12: Install the image scanner cable cover

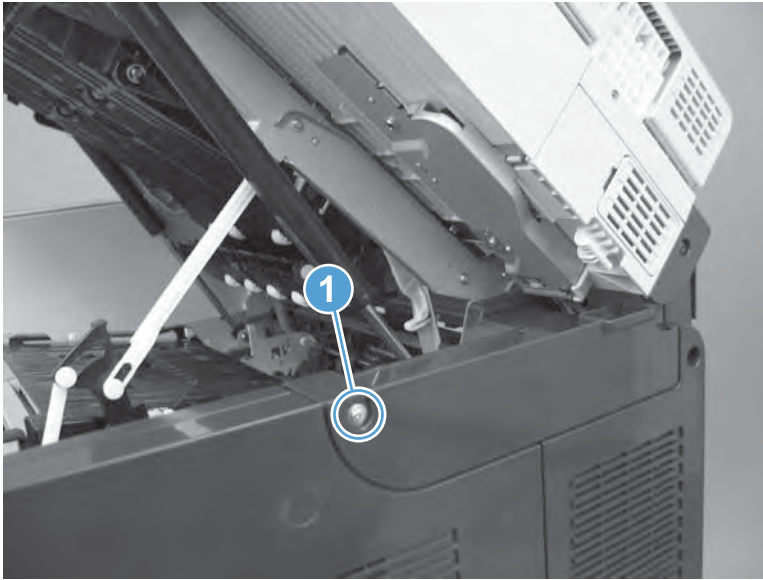
1. Install the cover on the product.

Figure 1-678 Install the cover



2. Install one screw (callout 1), and then close the top cover.

Figure 1-679 Install one screw

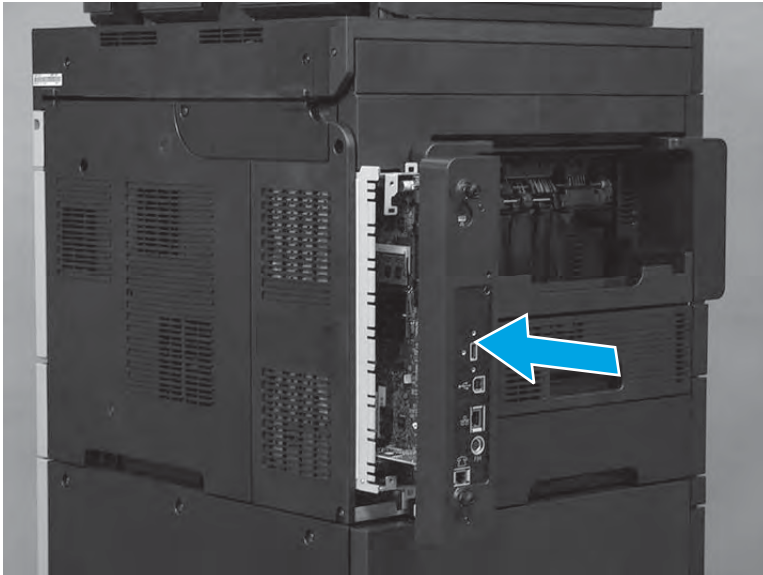


Step 13: Install the formatter

CAUTION:  ESD sensitive assembly.

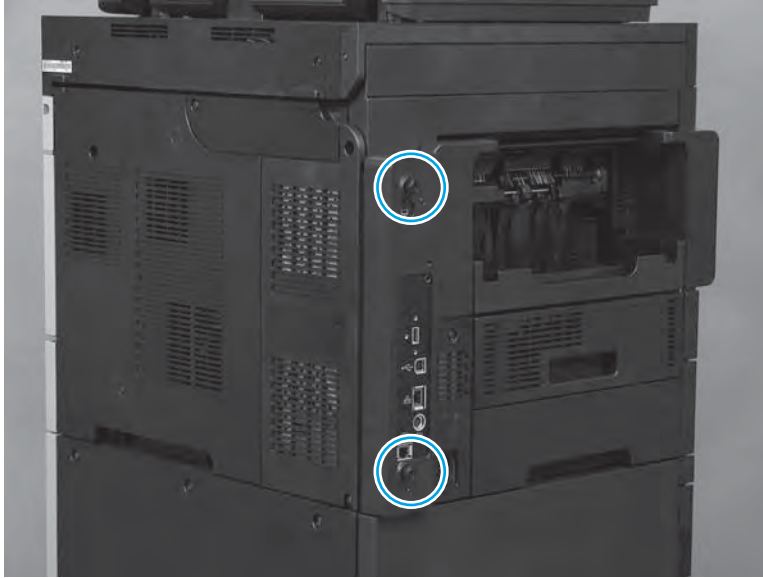
1. Align the formatter with the guides at the top and bottom of the formatter cage and push the formatter into the slot until it is fully seated.

Figure 1-680 Align the formatter with the guides and push the formatter into the slot




2. Finger-tighten the two thumbscrews.

Figure 1-681 Tighten the two thumbscrews



Step 14: Test the installation

1. Do the following steps:
 - a. Reconnect all cables to the formatter.
 - b. Plug in the power cord.
2. Turn on the product.

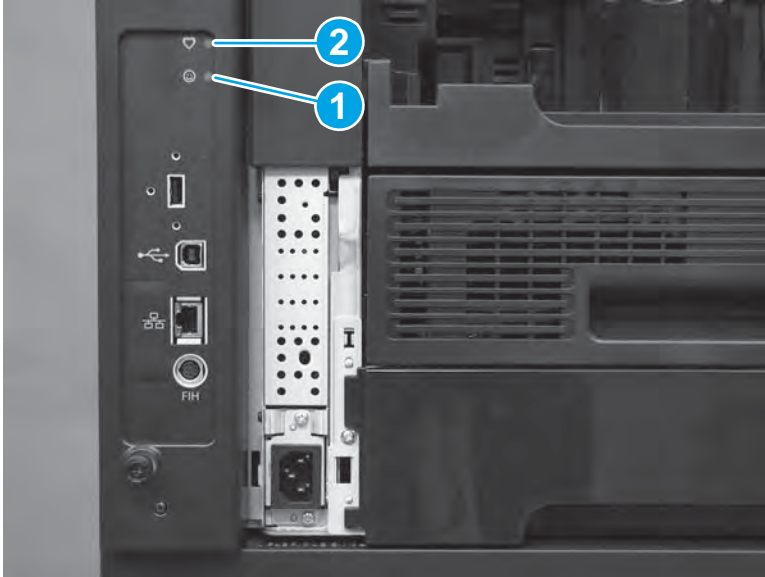
 **TIP:** If the product does not initialize when the power is turned on, make sure that the memory DIMM is correctly installed.

To verify that the formatter is correctly installed, observe the following functions of the LEDs on the formatter:

- The heartbeat LED (callout 1) illuminates if the formatter is functioning correctly.
 - While the product is initializing, the heartbeat LED illuminates solid red for about one second, and then turns solid green for about twenty seconds.
 - After the initialization sequence is complete, the heartbeat LED blinks continuously if the printer is functioning correctly.
- The connectivity LED (callout 2) indicates that the formatter is completely seated. It illuminates green when the product power is turned on and stays green if the formatter is properly seated.

If the LEDs do not correctly function, turn the product power off, remove the formatter, and then reinstall it (make sure that the formatter is fully seated before tightening the thumbscrews).

Figure 1-682 Verify that the formatter is functioning



Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Feed motor (M101)

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the image scanner cable cover](#)
- [Step 2: Remove the rear-right cover](#)
- [Step 3: Remove the rear-top cover](#)
- [Step 4: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly](#)
- [Step 5: Remove the feed motor](#)
- [Step 6: Unpack the replacement feed motor](#)
- [Step 7: Install the feed motor](#)
- [Step 8: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly](#)
- [Step 9: Install the rear-top cover](#)
- [Step 10: Install the rear-right cover](#)
- [Step 11: Install the image scanner cable cover](#)
- [Step 12: Turn the product power on](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the feed motor.

Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the kit.

Feed motor part number	
RM1-8358-000CN	Feed motor

Do the following steps:

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

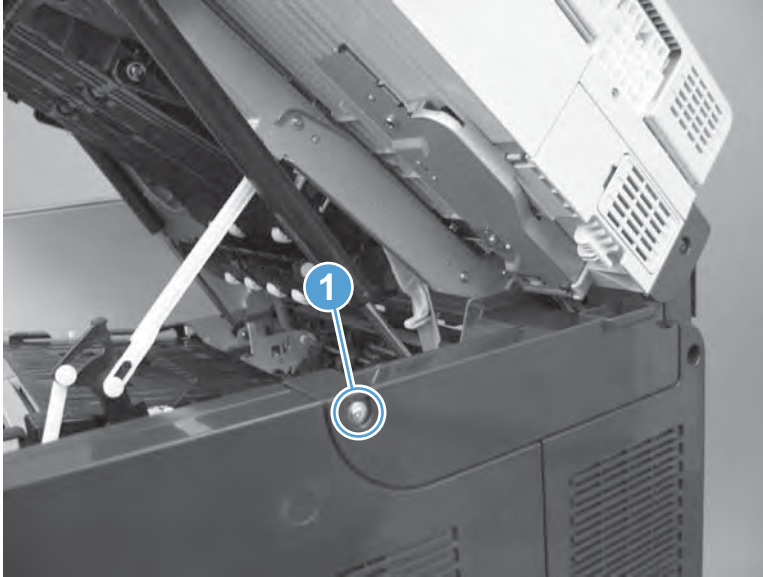
Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

Step 1: Remove the image scanner cable cover

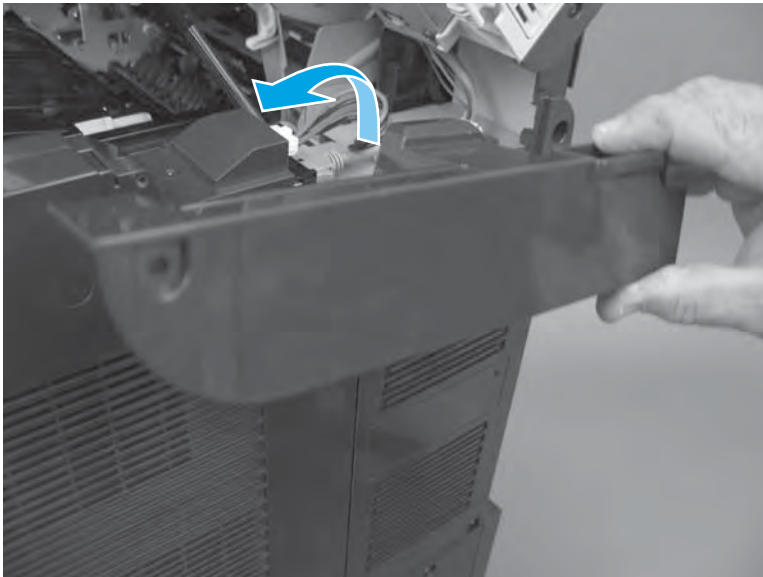
1. Open the top cover, and then remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-683 Remove one screw



2. Remove the cover.

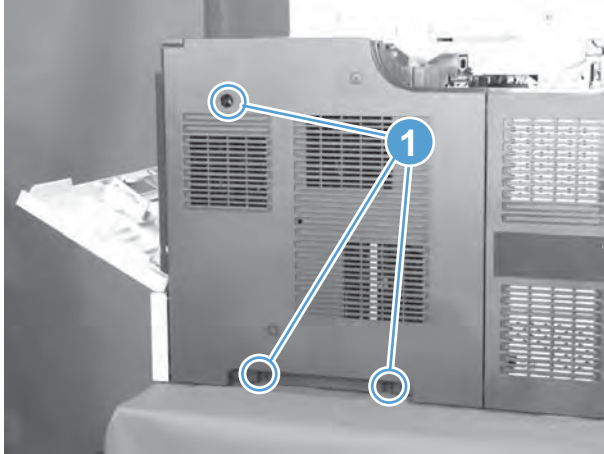
Figure 1-684 Remove the cover



Step 2: Remove the rear-right cover

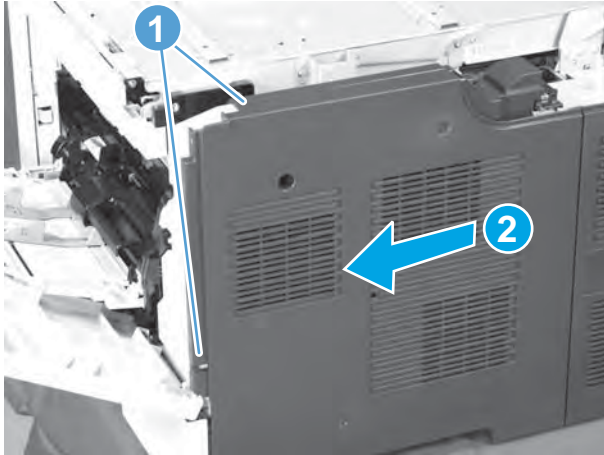
1. Open the top cover and Tray 1, and then remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-685 Remove three screws



2. Release two tabs (callout 1), slightly separate the edge of the cover near Tray 1 from the product, slide the cover towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

Figure 1-686 Remove the cover

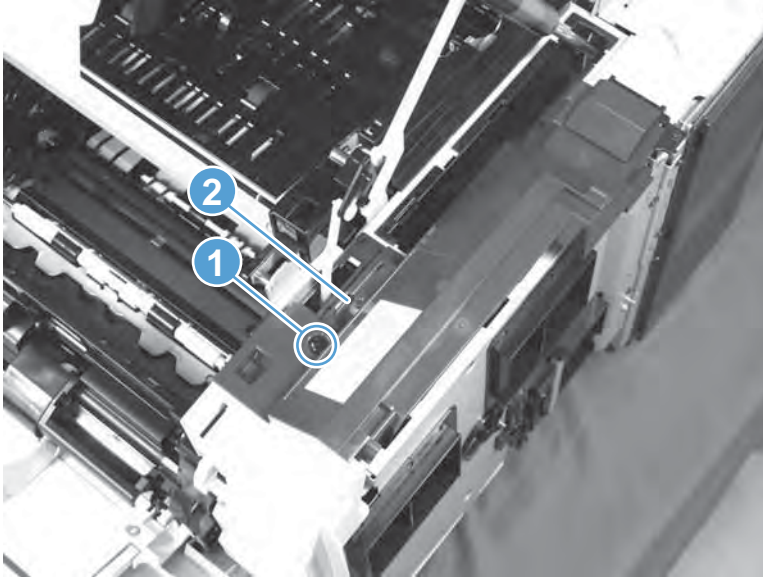


Step 3: Remove the rear-top cover

 **NOTE:** If the top cover is closed, open it now.

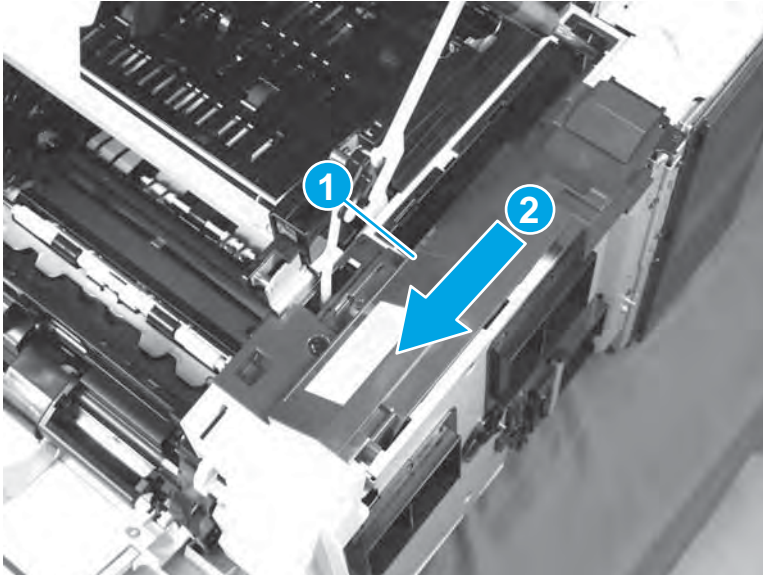
1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release one tab (callout 2).

Figure 1-687 Remove one screw



2. Push the cover (callout 1) towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

Figure 1-688 Remove the cover

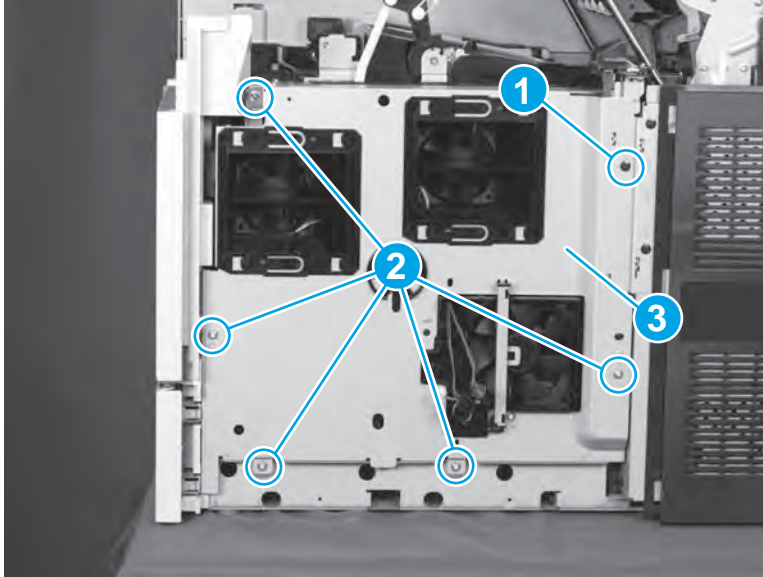


Step 4: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly

1. Remove one black screw (callout 1), remove five silver screws (callout 2), and then slightly rotate the top of the shield (callout 3) away from the product.

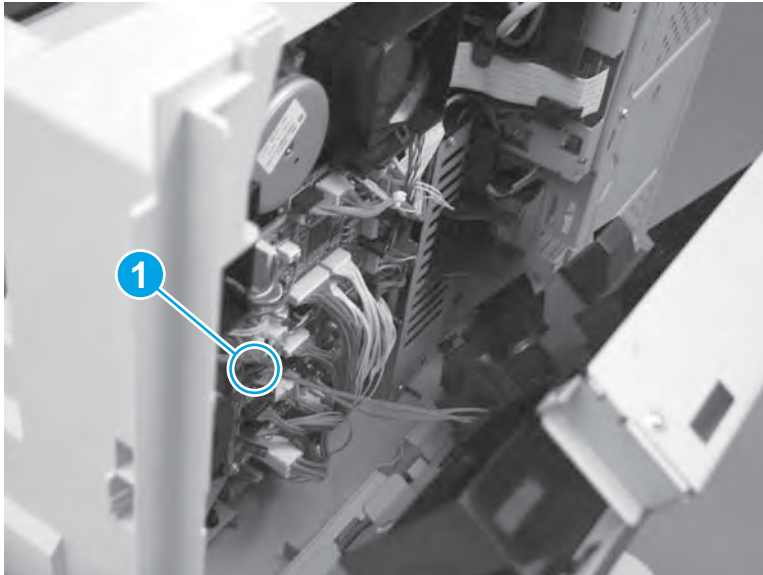
⚠ CAUTION: The shield is still connected to the product by a wire harness. Do not completely remove the shield after removing the screws.

Figure 1-689 Remove six screws




2. Disconnect one connector (J42; callout 1) from the DC controller, and then remove the DC controller shield.

Figure 1-690 Disconnect one connector and remove the shield



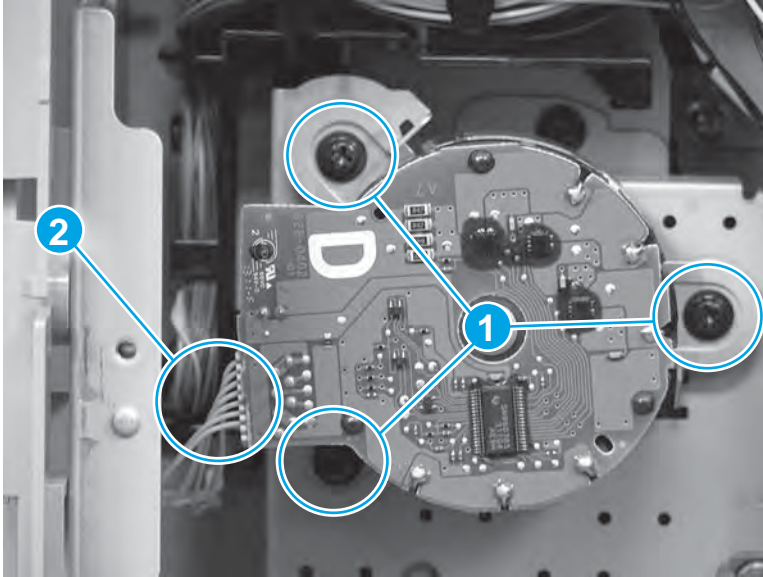
Step 5: Remove the feed motor

- ▲ At the DC controller side of the product, remove three screws (callout 1), remove the feed motor, and then disconnect one connector (callout 2).

 **NOTE:** The feed motor is located at the left-hand side of the DC controller.

 **TIP:** Slightly turn the motor counter clockwise to disengage it from the mounting bracket.

Figure 1-691 Remove the feed motor

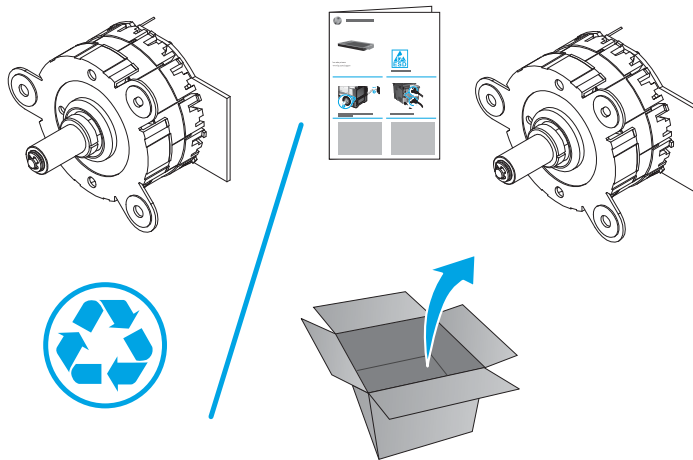


Step 6: Unpack the replacement feed motor

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

www.Product return and recycling.

 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.



Step 7: Install the feed motor

▲ Connect one connector (callout 1), and then install three screws (callout 2).


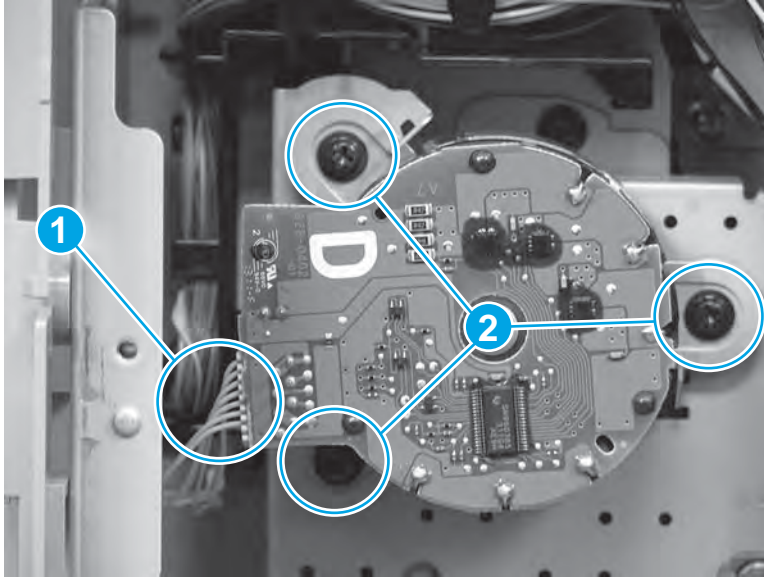
 **TIP:** It is easier to connect the connector before mounting the motor to the chassis.

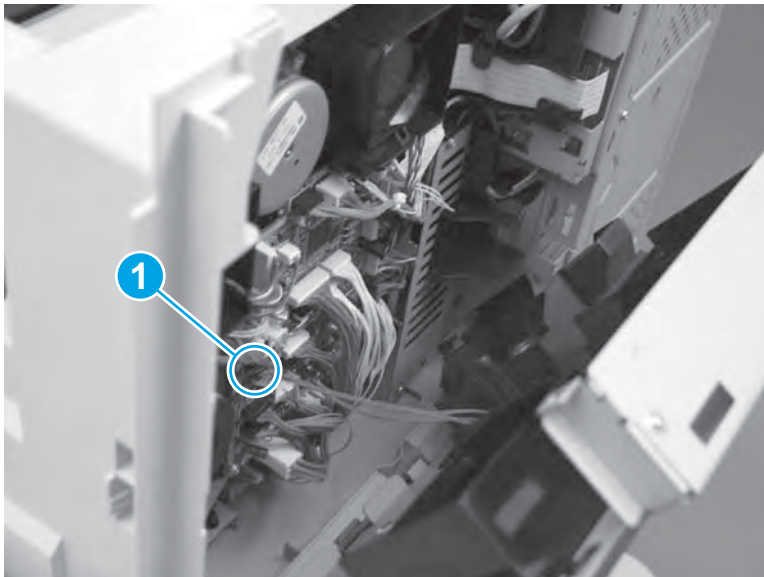
Figure 1-692 Install the feed motor



Step 8: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly

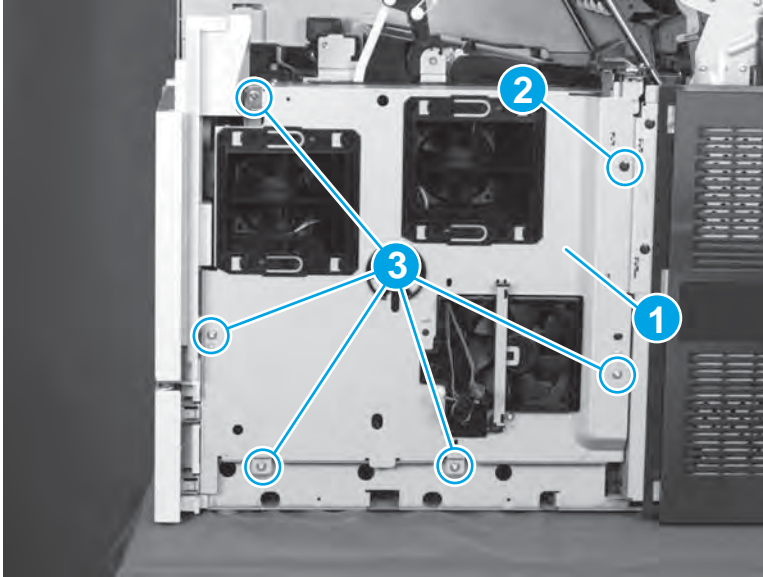
1. Position the shield near the product, and then connect one connector (J42; callout 1).

Figure 1-693 Install the shield and connect one connector



2. Rotate the top of the shield (callout 1) toward the product, install one black screw (callout 2), and then install five silver screws (callout 3).

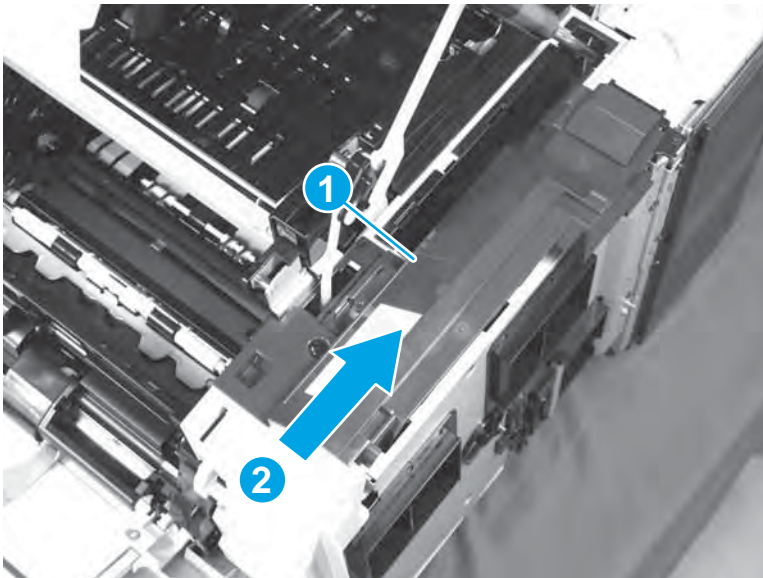
Figure 1-694 Remove six screws



Step 9: Install the rear-top cover

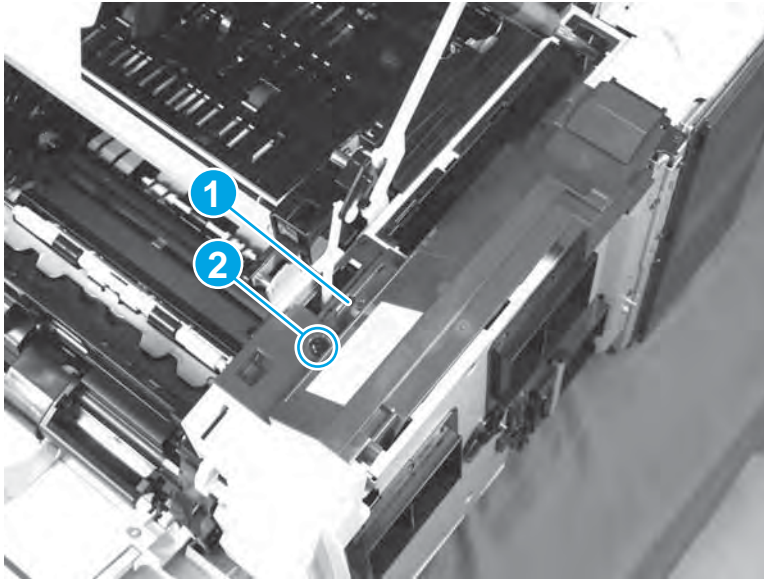
1. Position the cover on the product, Push the cover (callout 1) away Tray 1 to install it (callout 2).

Figure 1-695 Install the cover



2. Make sure that the tab (callout 2) is engaged, and then install one screw (callout 2).

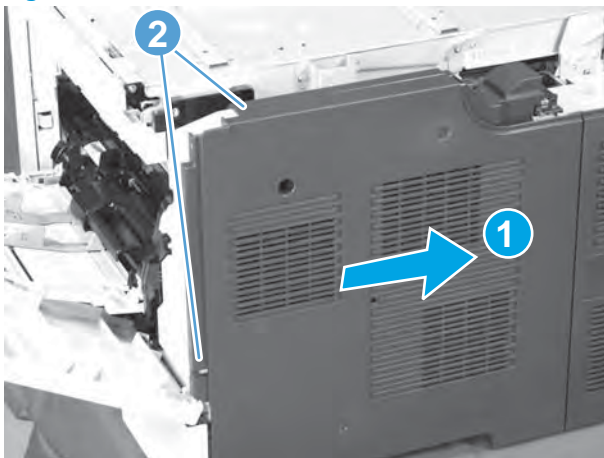
Figure 1-696 Install one screw



Step 10: Install the rear-right cover

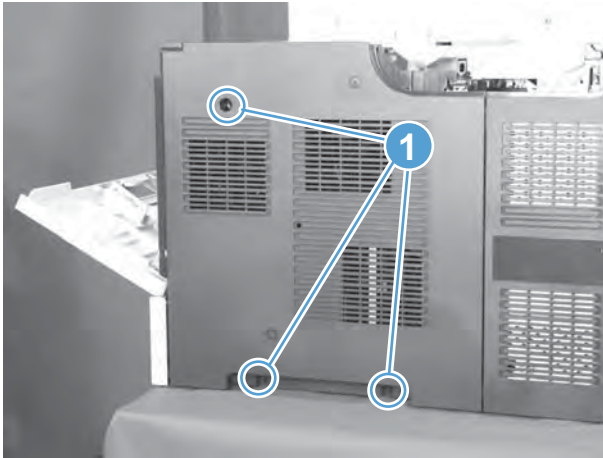
1. Position the cover on the product, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 1) to engage two tabs (callout 2).

Figure 1-697 Install the cover



2. Install three screws (callout 1), and then close the top cover and Tray 1.

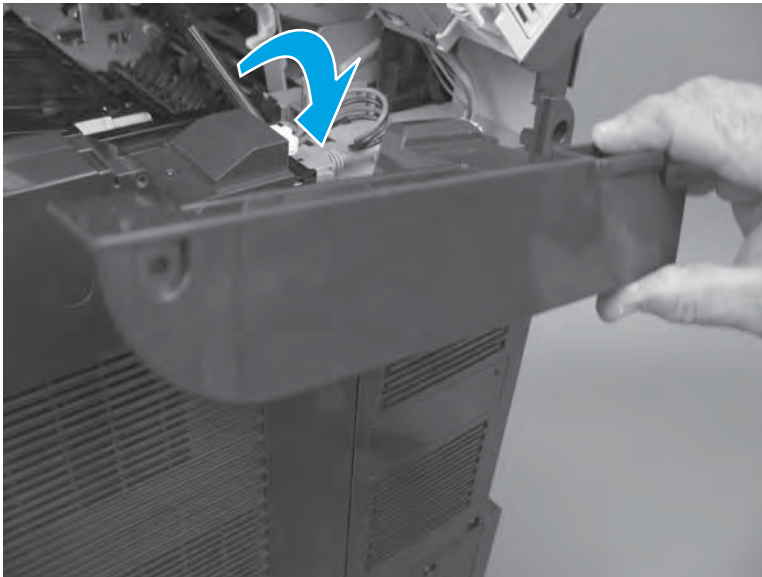
Figure 1-698 Install three screws



Step 11: Install the image scanner cable cover

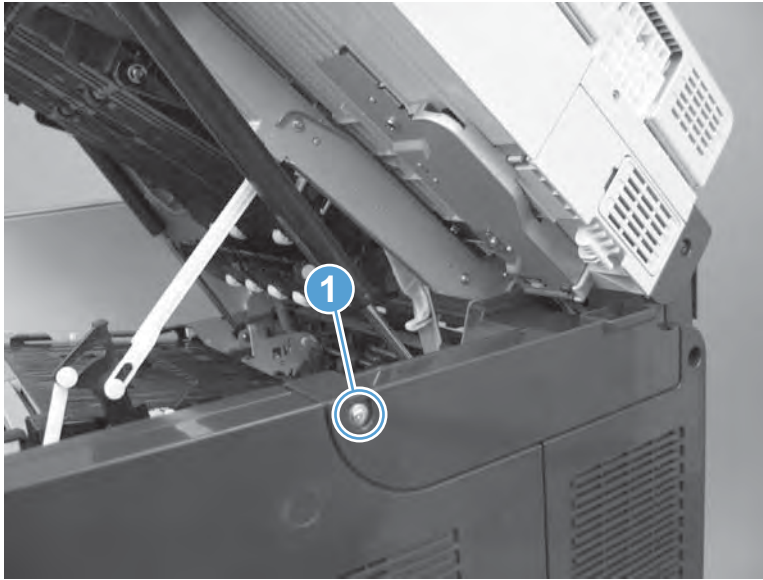
1. Install the cover on the product.

Figure 1-699 Install the cover



2. Install one screw (callout 1), and then close the top cover.

Figure 1-700 Install one screw



Step 12: Turn the product power on

After servicing

Do the following steps:

Connect the power cable.

Turn on the product.

Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Drum motor (M102)

Remove the following assemblies:

- Image scanner cable cover. See [Image scanner cable cover on page 283](#).
- Rear-right cover. See [Rear-right cover on page 323](#).
- Rear-top cover. See [Rear-top cover on page 335](#).
- DC controller shield-plate assembly. See [DC controller shield-plate assembly on page 382](#).

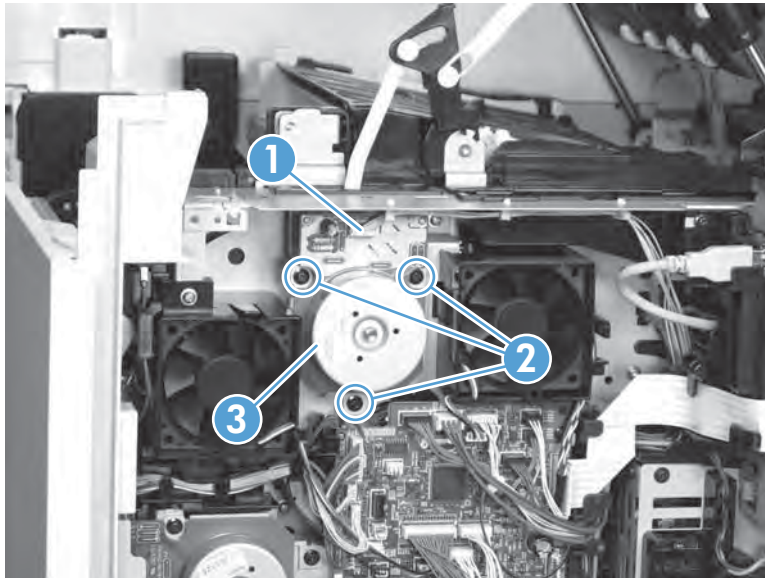
Remove the drum motor

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove three screws (callout 2), and then remove the drum motor (callout 3).

 **TIP:** Slightly turn the motor counter clockwise to disengage it from the mounting bracket.

Figure 1-701 Remove the drum motor



Fuser motor (M299)

Remove the following assemblies:

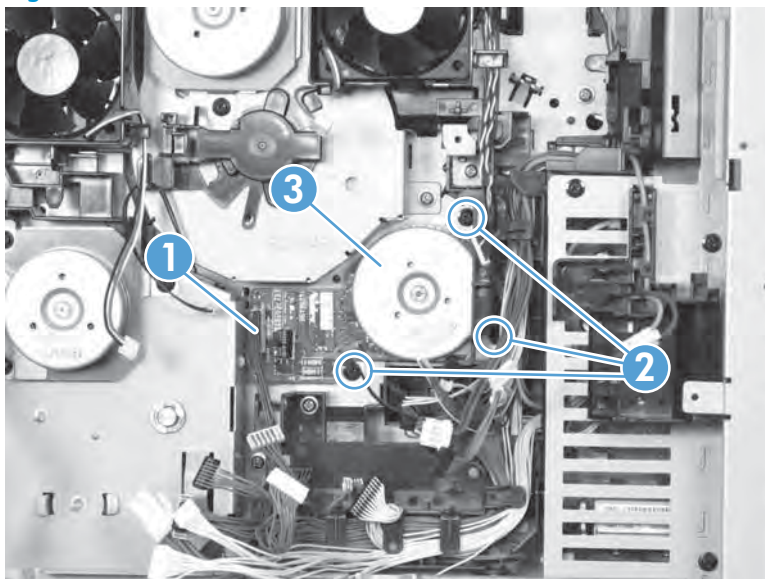
- Image scanner cable cover. See [Image scanner cable cover on page 283](#).
- Rear-right cover. See [Rear-right cover on page 323](#).
- Rear-top cover. See [Rear-top cover on page 335](#).
- DC controller shield-plate assembly. See [DC controller shield-plate assembly on page 382](#).
- DC controller. See [DC controller on page 391](#).

Remove the fuser motor

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove three screws (callout 2), and then remove the fuser motor (callout 3).

Figure 1-702 Remove the fuser motor



Main fan (FN101)

Remove the following assemblies:

- Front cover. See [Front cover on page 274](#).

Remove the main fan

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

1. Release two tabs (callout 1).


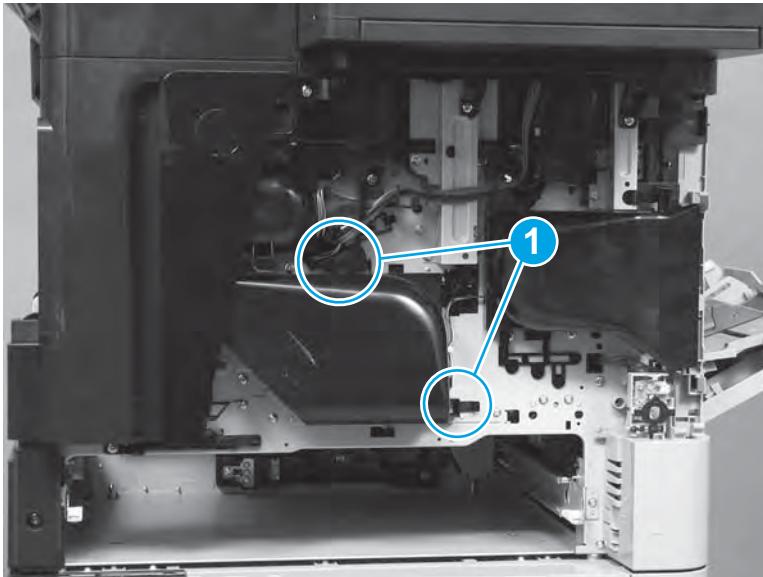
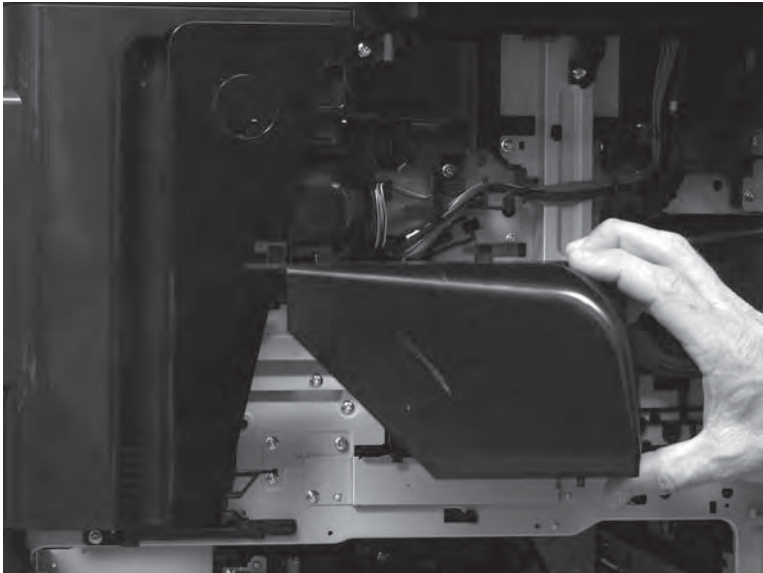
 **TIP:** Pull the bottom most tab away from the chassis to release it.

Figure 1-703 Release two tabs



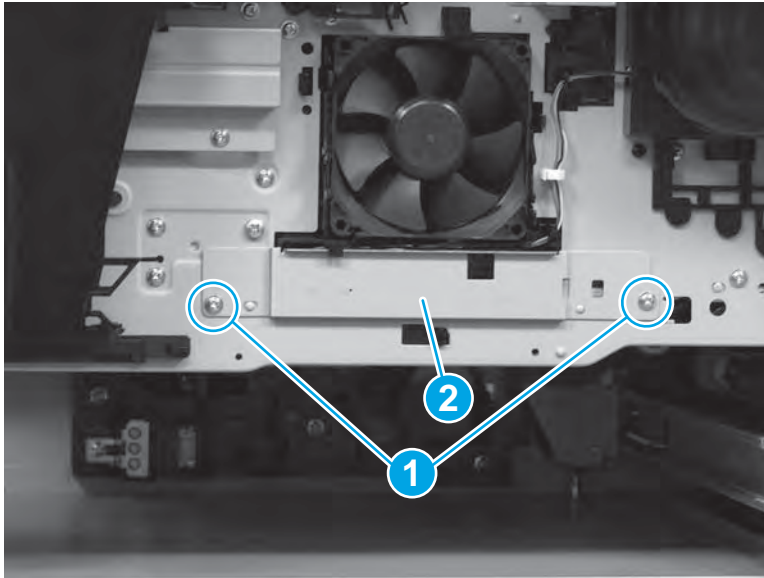
2. Remove the fan duct.

Figure 1-704 Remove the fan duct



3. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the cover (callout 2).

Figure 1-705 Remove two screws and the cover



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), release two tabs (callout 2), and then remove the main fan.


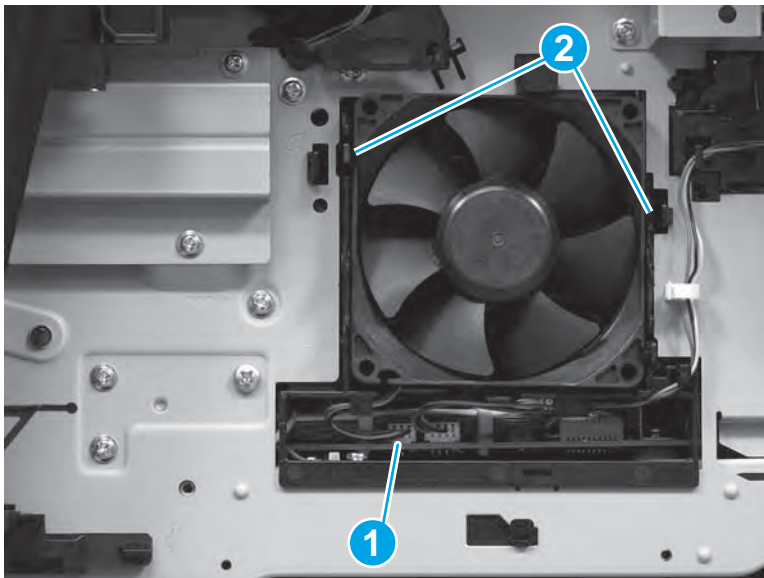
 **Reinstallation tip:** To effectively circulate air, the fan must be reinstalled correctly. The arrows embossed on the fan housing must point into the product, and the label on the fan must face inside the product.

Figure 1-706 Remove the main fan



Laser/scanner fan (FN102)

Remove the following assemblies:

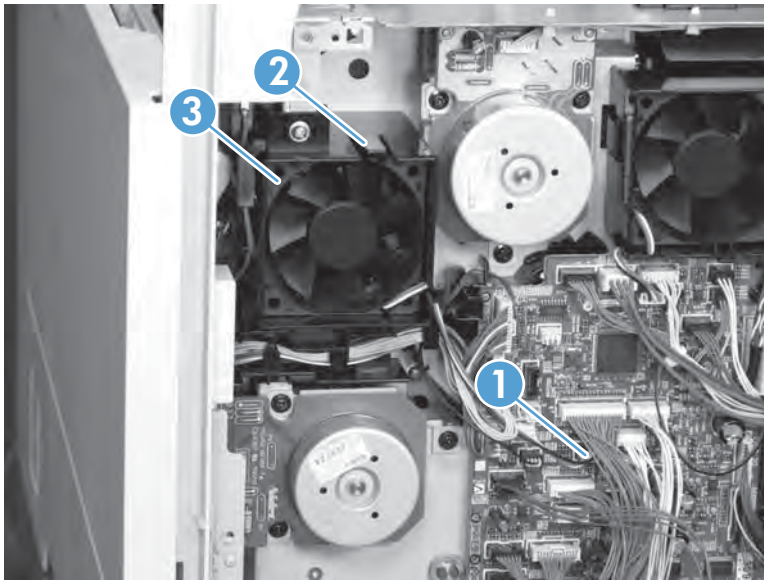
- Front cover. See [Front cover on page 274](#).
- Image scanner cable cover. See [Image scanner cable cover on page 283](#).
- Front-left cover and logo panel assembly. See [Front-left cover and logo panel assembly on page 307](#).
- Rear-right cover. See [Rear-right cover on page 323](#).
- Rear-top cover. See [Rear-top cover on page 335](#).
- DC controller shield-plate assembly. See [DC controller shield-plate assembly on page 382](#).

Remove the laser/scanner fan

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

Disconnect one connector (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then remove the laser/scanner fan (callout 3).

Figure 1-707 Remove the laser/scanner fan

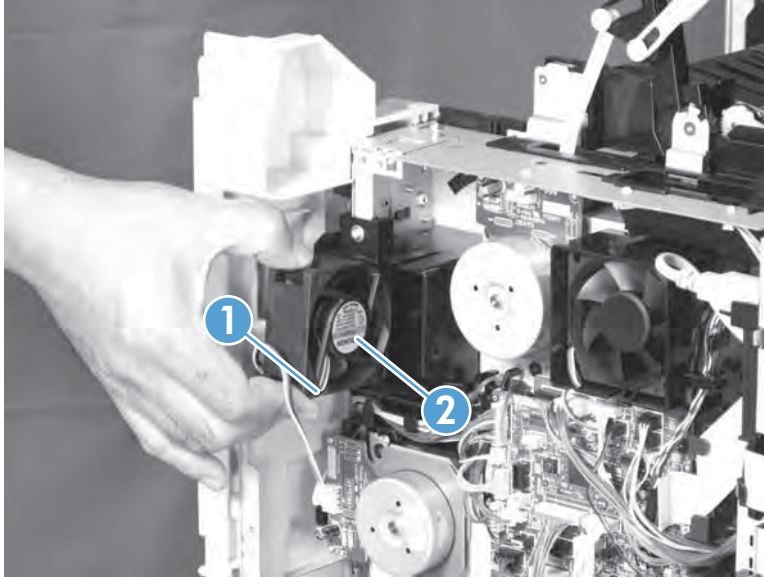


Install the laser/scanner fan

When the laser/scanner fan is installed, make sure of the following:

- The fan wire harness (callout 1) is positioned as shown in the following figure.
- The label (callout 2) on the fan faces inside the product.

Figure 1-708 Install the laser/scanner fan



Cartridge front-side fan (FN103)

Remove the following assemblies:

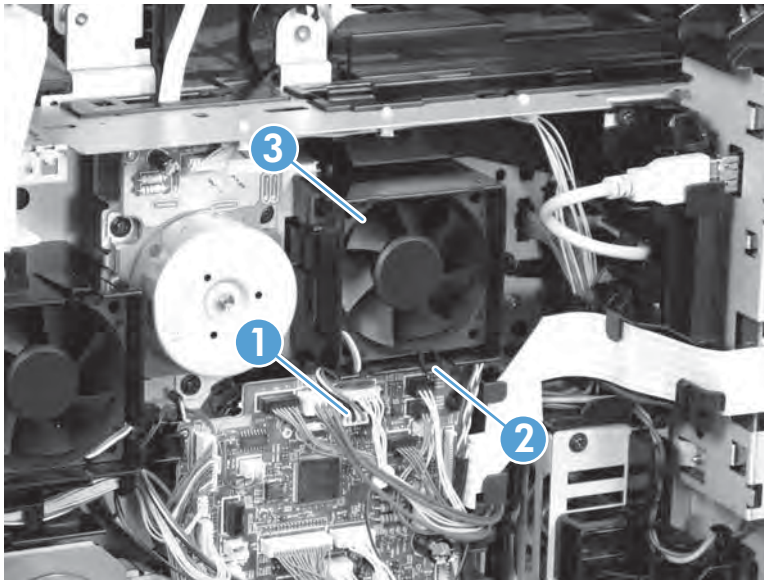
- Image scanner cable cover. See [Image scanner cable cover on page 283](#).
- Rear-right cover. See [Rear-right cover on page 323](#).
- Rear-top cover. See [Rear-top cover on page 335](#).
- DC controller shield-plate assembly. See [DC controller shield-plate assembly on page 382](#).

Remove the cartridge front-side fan

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

Disconnect one connector (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then remove the cartridge front-side fan (callout 3).

Figure 1-709 Remove the cartridge front-side fan

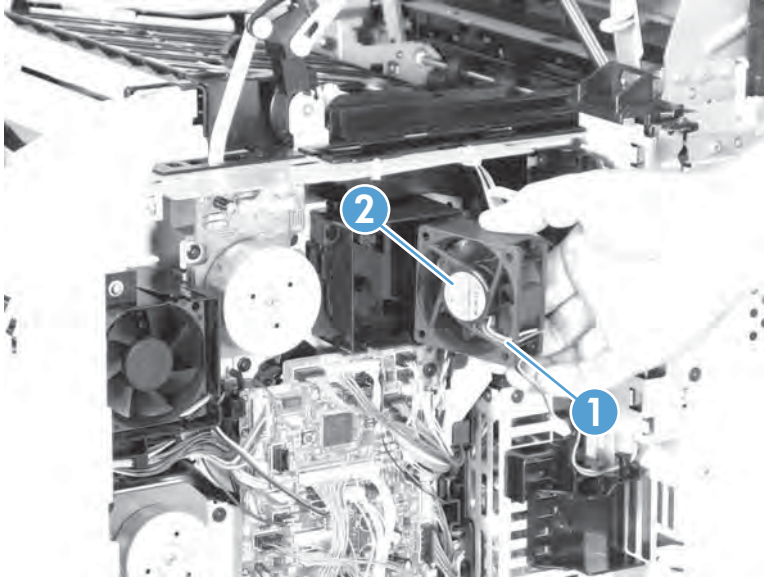


Install the cartridge front-side fan

When the cartridge front-side fan is installed, make sure of the following:

- The fan wire harness (callout 1) is positioned as shown in the following figure.
- The label (callout 2) on the fan faces inside the product.

Figure 1-710 Install the cartridge front-side fan



Low-voltage power supply fan (FN104)

Remove the following assemblies:

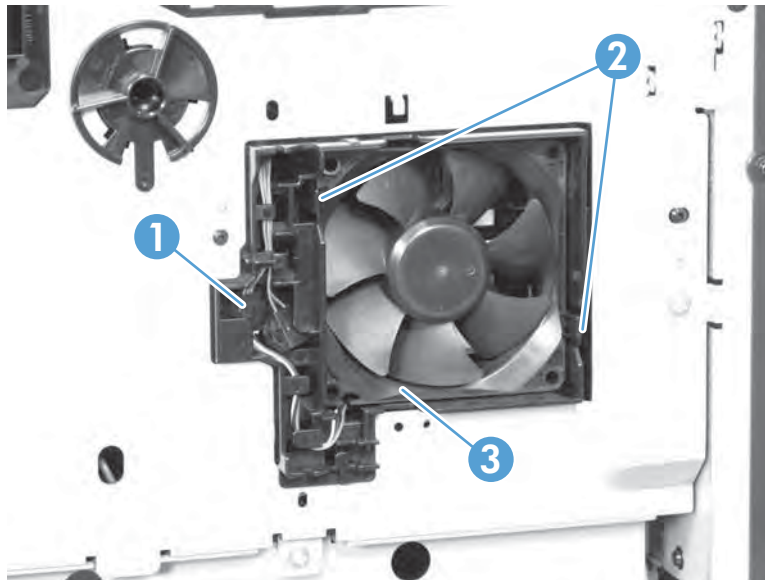
- Image scanner cable cover. See [Image scanner cable cover on page 283](#).
- Rear-right cover. See [Rear-right cover on page 323](#).
- Temperature sensor. See [Temperature sensor on page 380](#).

Remove the low-voltage power supply fan

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

Disconnect one connector (callout 1), release two tabs (callout 2), and then remove the low-voltage power supply fan (callout 3).

Figure 1-711 Remove the low-voltage power supply fan

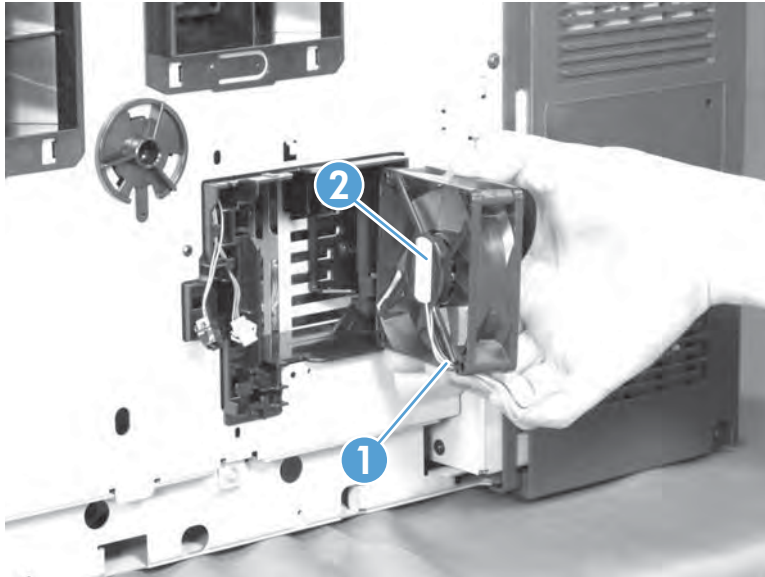


Install the low-voltage power supply fan

When the low-voltage power supply fan is installed, make sure of the following:

- The fan wire harness (callout 1) is positioned as shown in the following figure.
- The label (callout 2) on the fan faces inside the product.

Figure 1-712 Install the low-voltage power supply fan



Reverse assembly fan (FN105)

Remove the following assemblies:

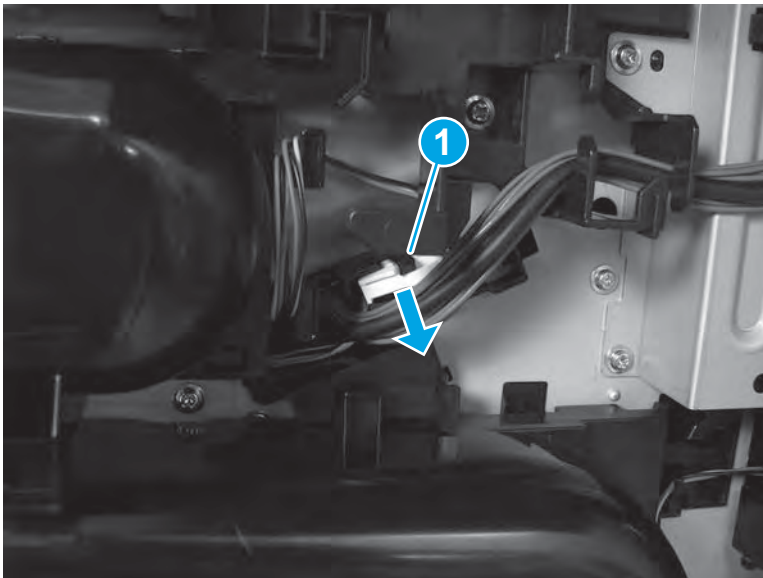
- Front cover. See [Front cover on page 274](#).
- Front-left cover and logo panel assembly. See [Front-left cover and logo panel assembly on page 307](#).

Remove the reverse assembly fan

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

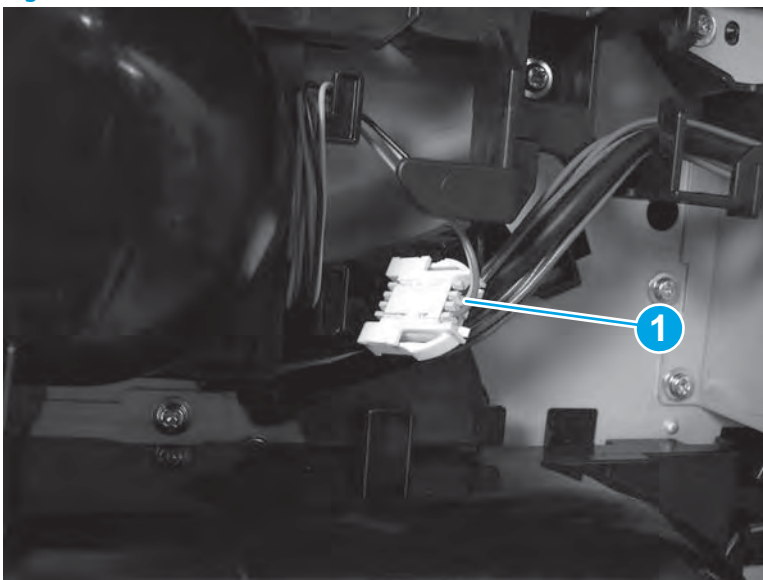
1. Remove one in-line connector (callout 1) from the wire harness.

Figure 1-713 Remove one in-line connector



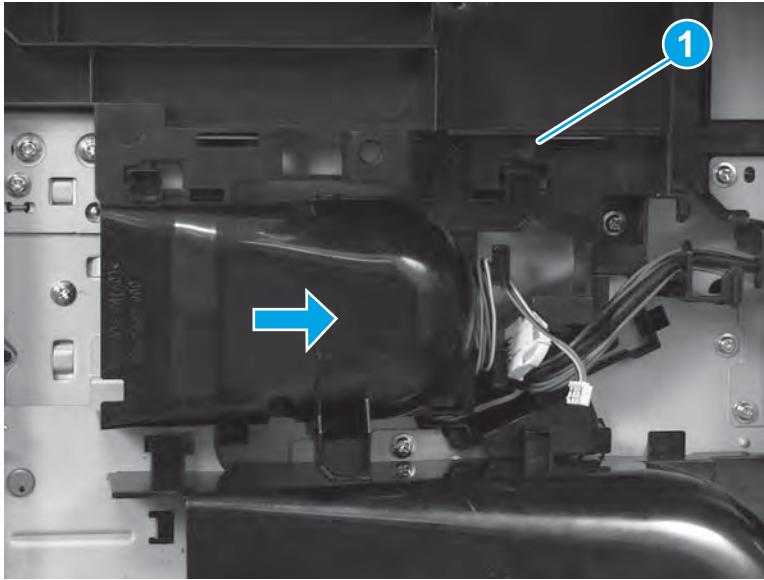
2. Disconnect one in-line connector (callout 1).

Figure 1-714 Disconnect one in-line connector



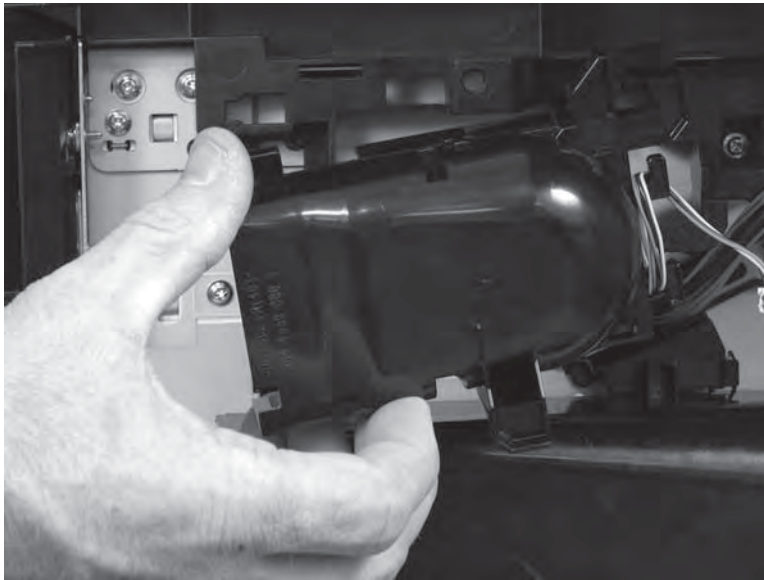
3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the fan and duct to the right to release it.

Figure 1-715 Release the fan and duct



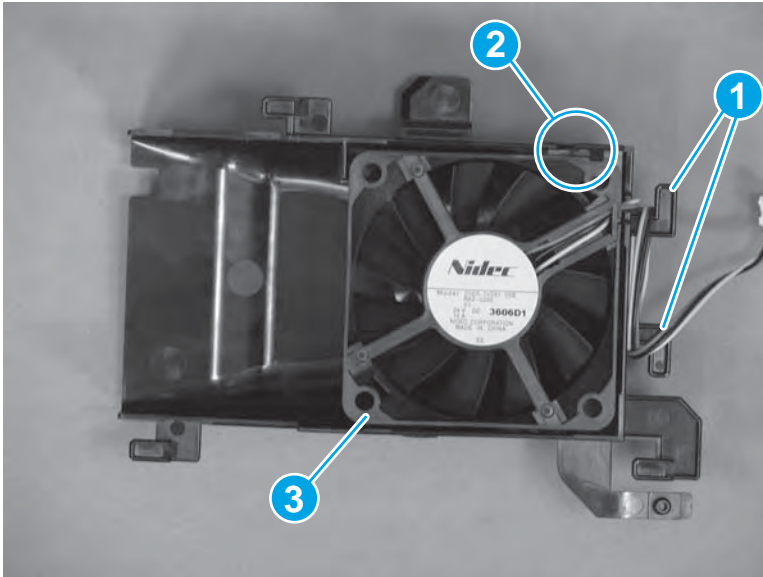
4. Remove the fan and duct.

Figure 1-716 Remove the fan and duct



5. If necessary, release the wire harness from the retainers (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then separate the fan (callout 3) from the duct.

Figure 1-717 Separate the fan from the duct



Cartridge fan (FN301)

Remove the following assemblies:

- Front cover. See [Front cover on page 274](#).

Remove the cartridge fan

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

1. Release two tabs (callout 1).


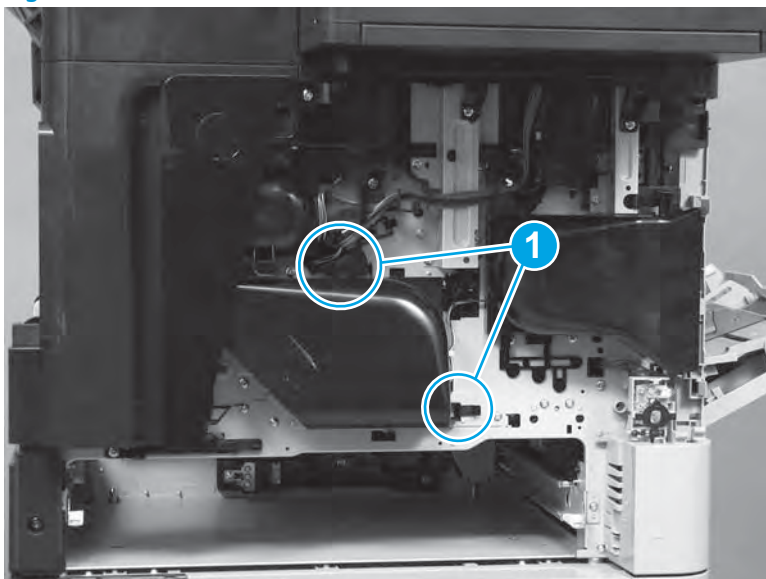
 **TIP:** Pull the bottom most tab away from the chassis to release it.

Figure 1-718 Release two tabs



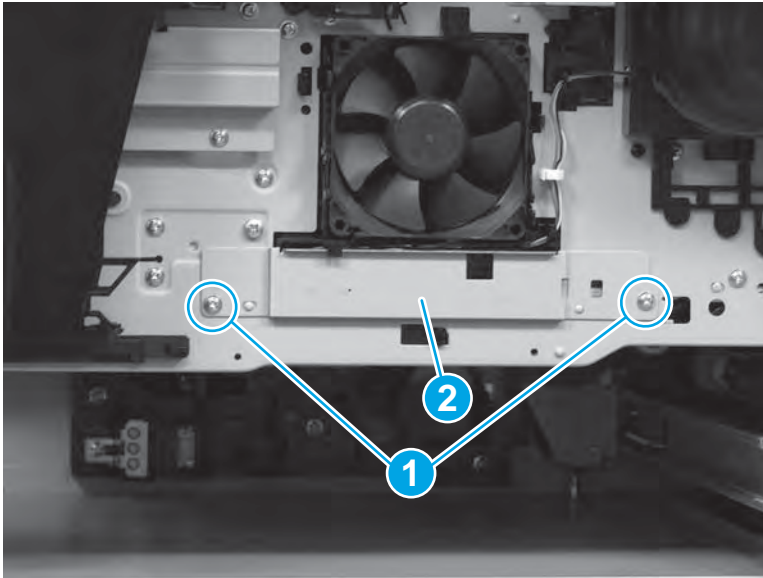
2. Remove the main fan duct.

Figure 1-719 Remove the fan duct



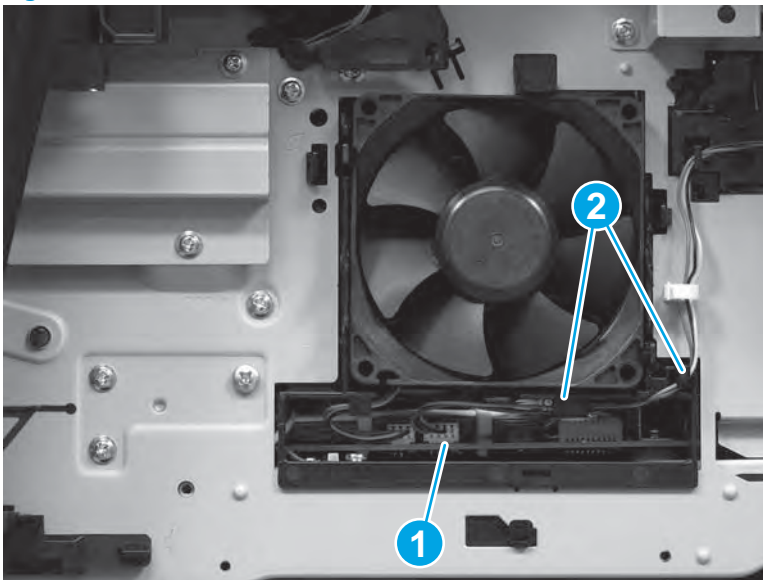
3. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the cover (callout 2).

Figure 1-720 Remove two screws and the cover



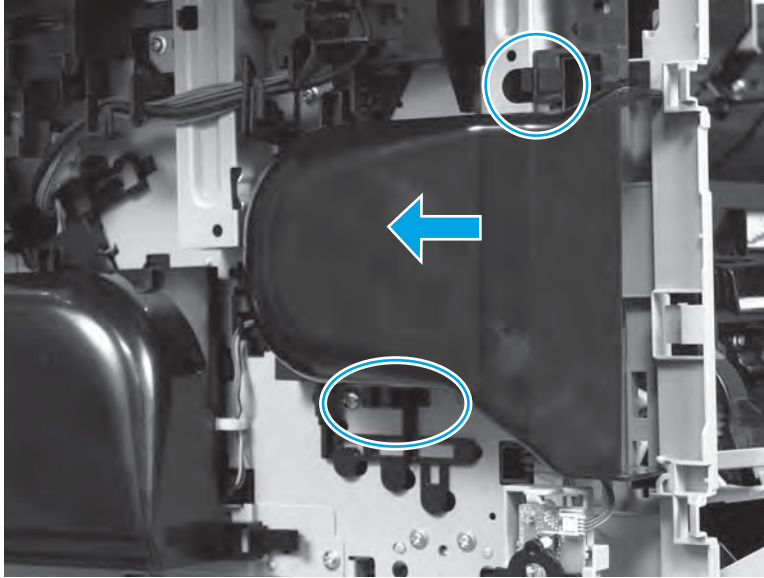
4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release the wire harness from the retainers (callout 2).

Figure 1-721 Disconnect one connector



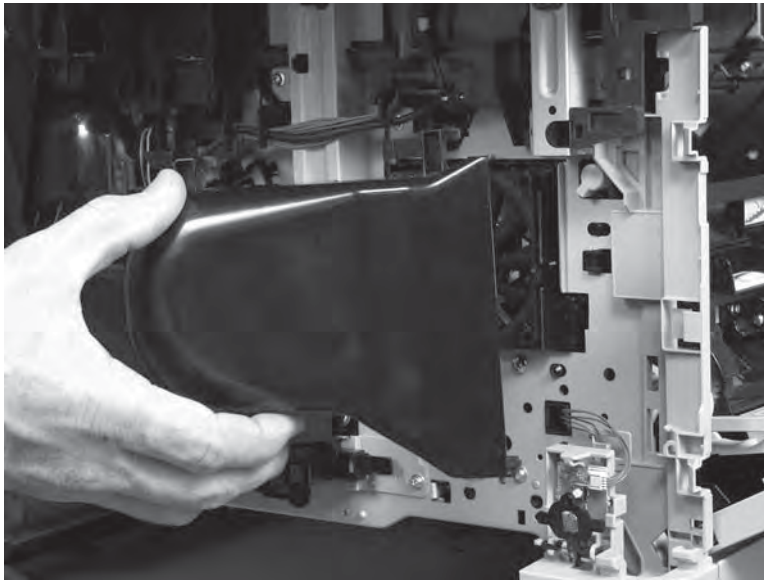
5. Release two tabs, and then slightly slide the cartridge fan duct to the left to release it.

Figure 1-722 Release the fan duct



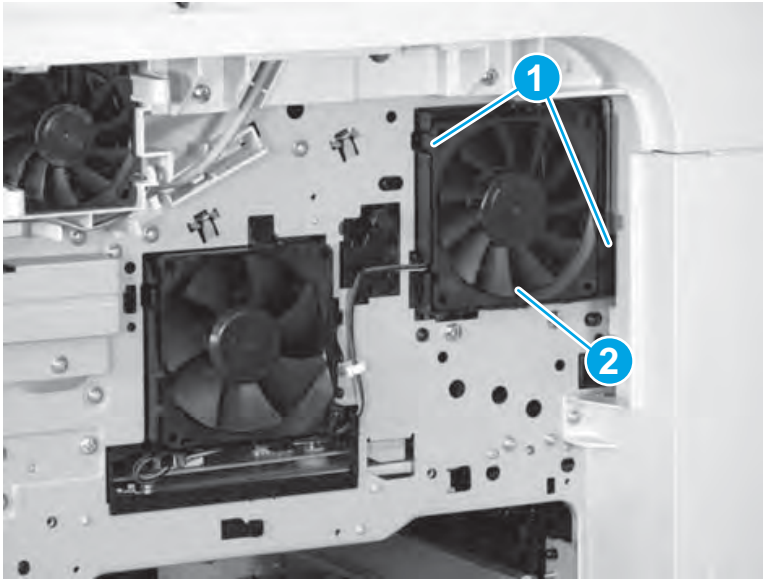
6. Remove the fan duct.

Figure 1-723 Remove the fan duct



7. Release two tabs (callout 1), and then remove the cartridge fan (callout 2).

Figure 1-724 Remove the cartridge fan

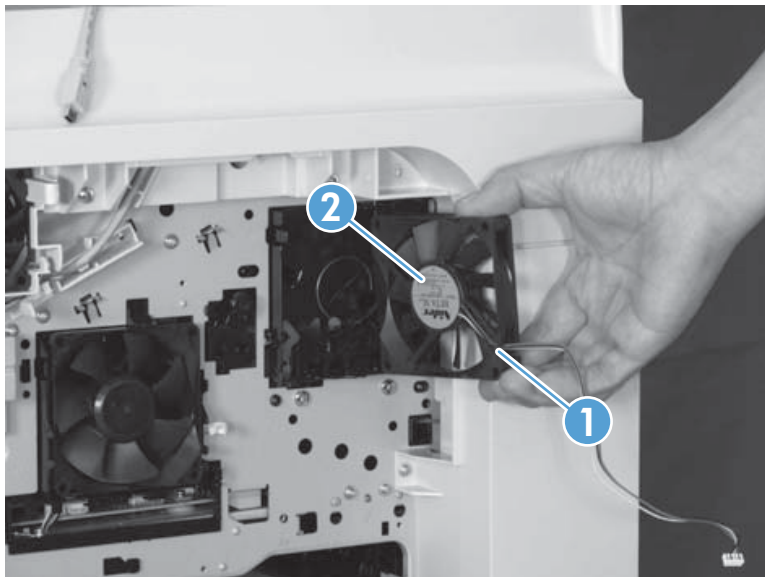


Install the cartridge fan


When you install the main fan, make sure of the following:

- The fan wire harness (callout 1) is positioned as shown in the following figure.
- The label (callout 2) on the fan faces inside the product.

Figure 1-725 Install the cartridge fan



Interlock switch assembly (SW101 and SW106)

 **NOTE:** The interlock switch assembly includes the door switch and switch cable (SW101), and the door sensor and sensor cable (SW106).

Remove the following assemblies:

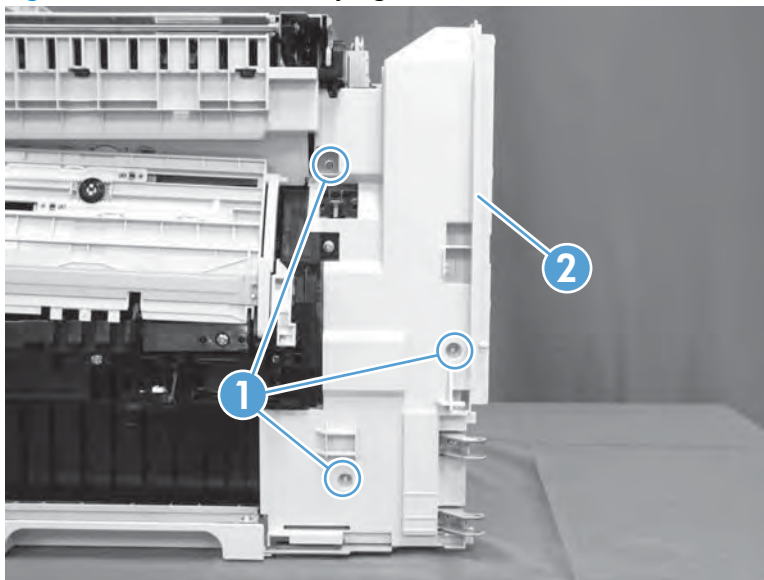
- Image scanner cable cover. See [Image scanner cable cover on page 283](#).
- Tray 1 cover. See [Tray 1 cover on page 287](#).
- Rear-right cover. See [Rear-right cover on page 323](#).
- Rear-top cover. See [Rear-top cover on page 335](#).
- Right-lower door. See [Right-lower door on page 345](#).
- DC controller shield-plate assembly. See [DC controller shield-plate assembly on page 382](#).

Remove the interlock switch assembly

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

1. Remove three screws (callout 1), and then remove the Tray 1 gear cover (callout 2).

Figure 1-726 Remove the Tray 1 gear cover



2. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1; J13 and J78) on the DC controller, and then release the wire harnesses from the guides (callout 2).


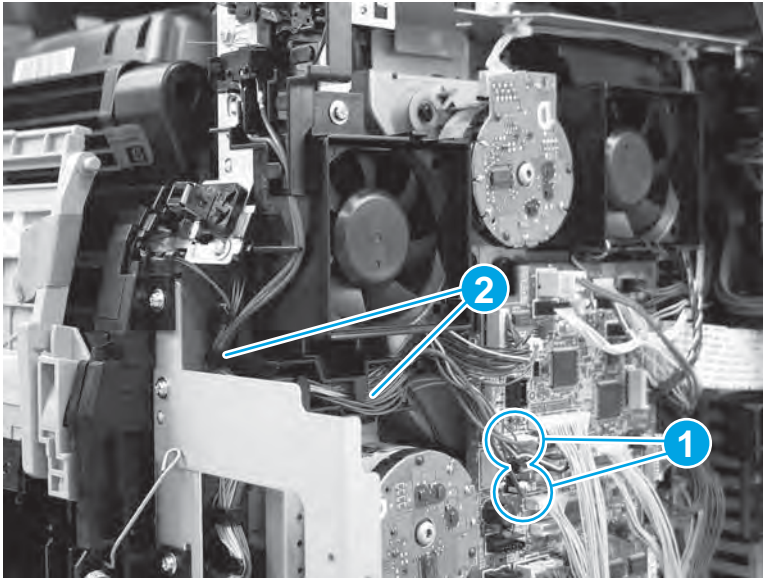
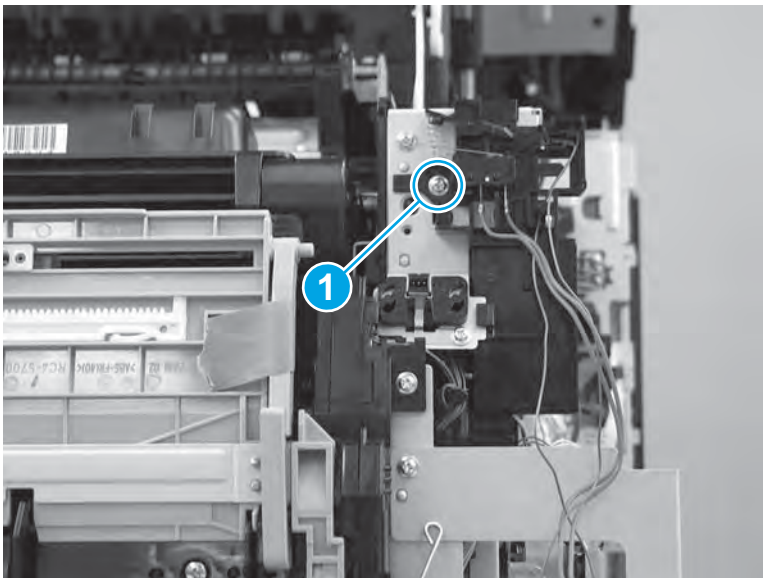
 **TIP:** It might be easier to release the wire harnesses from the guide by first disconnecting additional connectors and releasing additional wire harnesses from the guide.

Figure 1-727 Disconnect two connectors



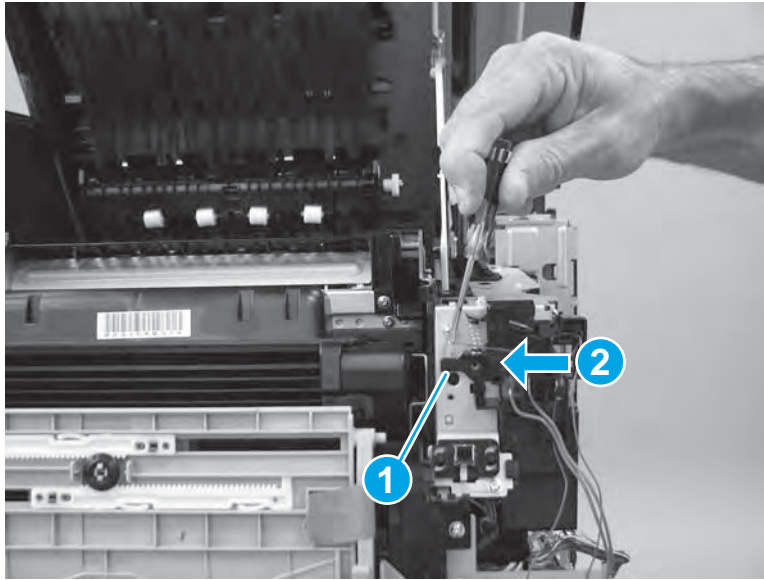
3. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-728 Remove one screw



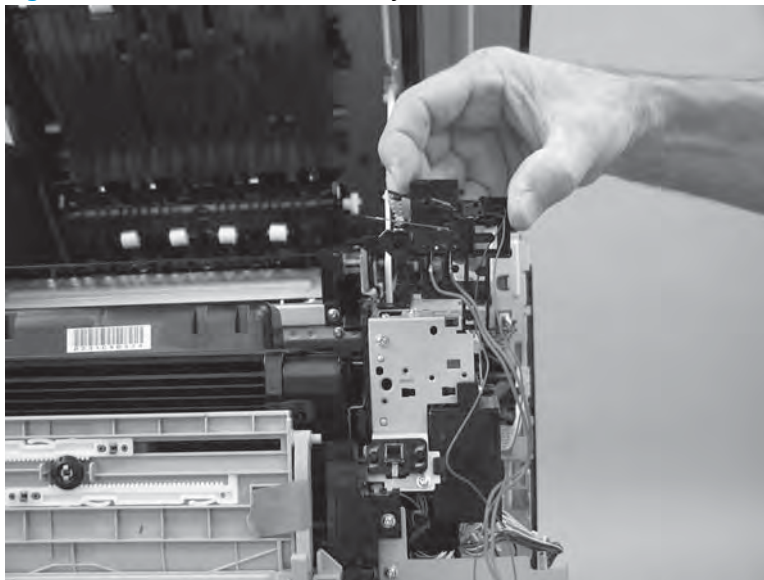
4. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the assembly toward Tray 1 to release it (callout 2).

Figure 1-729 Release one tab



5. Remove the interlock switch assembly.

Figure 1-730 Remove the assembly



Output accessory detection switch (SW104)

Remove the following assemblies:

- Formatter. See [Step 1: Remove the formatter on page 24](#).
- Output bin and bin base assembly. See [Output bin and bin base assembly on page 68](#).



NOTE: If the optional HP Stapling Mailbox is installed, remove it.

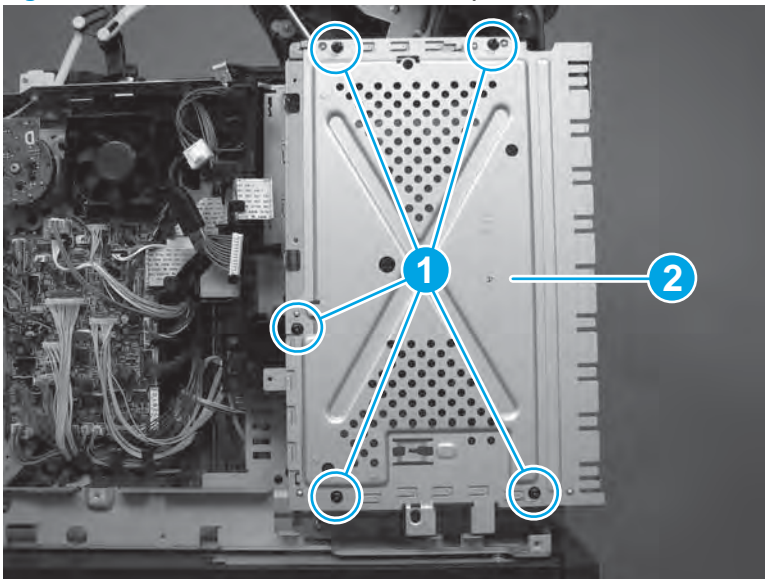
- Duplex accessory. See [Duplex accessory on page 70](#).
- Image scanner cable cover. See [Image scanner cable cover on page 283](#).
- Side-rear cover. See [Side-rear cover on page 296](#).
- Rear-right cover. See [Rear-right cover on page 323](#).
- Rear-left cover. See [Rear-left cover on page 327](#).
- Rear-top cover. See [Rear-top cover on page 335](#).
- DC controller shield-plate assembly. See [DC controller shield-plate assembly on page 382](#).
- Interconnect board (ICB). See [Interconnect board \(ICB\) on page 426](#).

Remove the output accessory detection switch

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

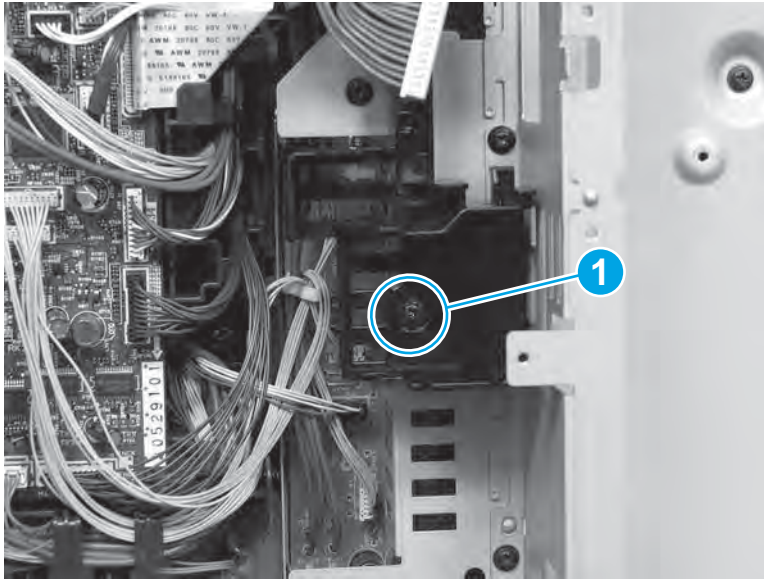
1. Remove five screws (callout 1), and the sheet-metal plate (callout 2).

Figure 1-731 Remove five screws and the plate



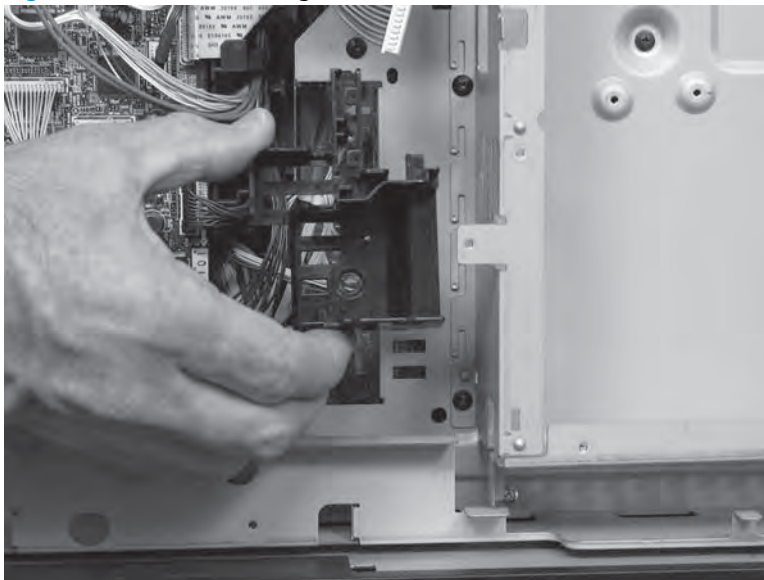
2. Remove one screw (callout 1) near the DC controller.

Figure 1-732 Remove one screw



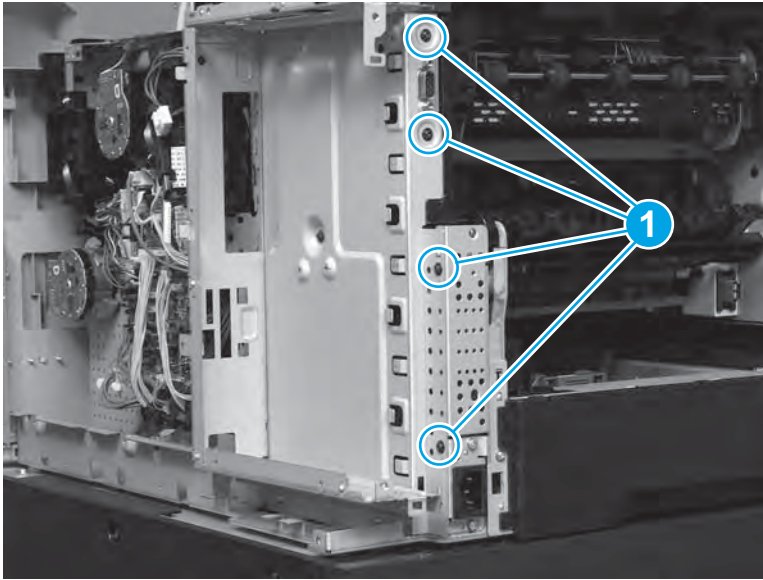
3. Remove the guide (callout 1).

Figure 1-733 Remove the guide



4. Remove four black screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-734 Remove four screws



5. Remove five screws (callout 1).


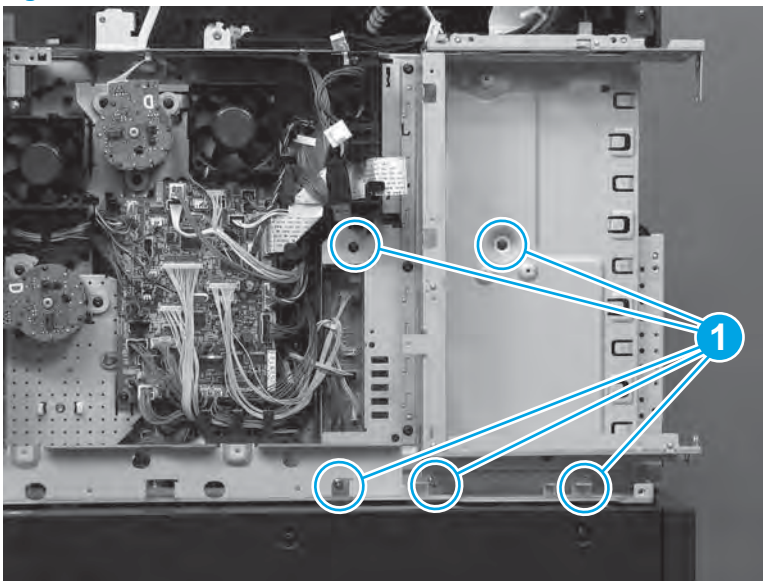
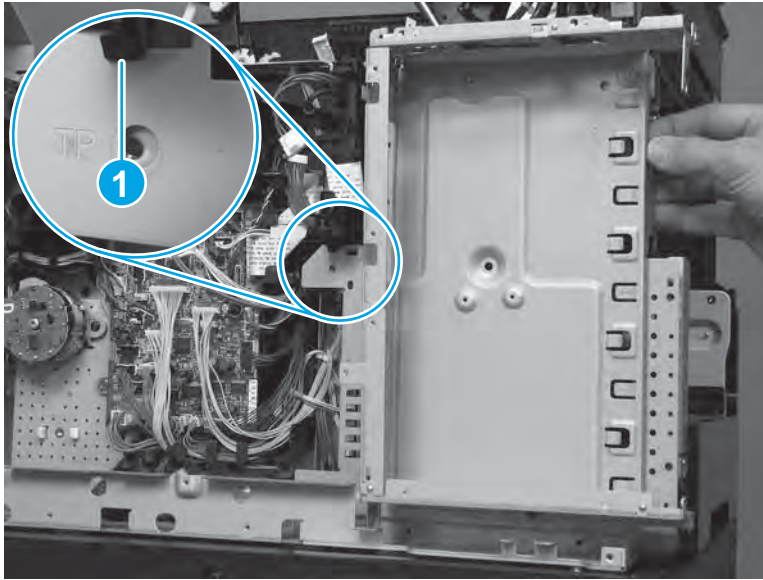
 **NOTE:** The two upper screws are black, and the three screws across the bottom are silver.

Figure 1-735 Remove five screws



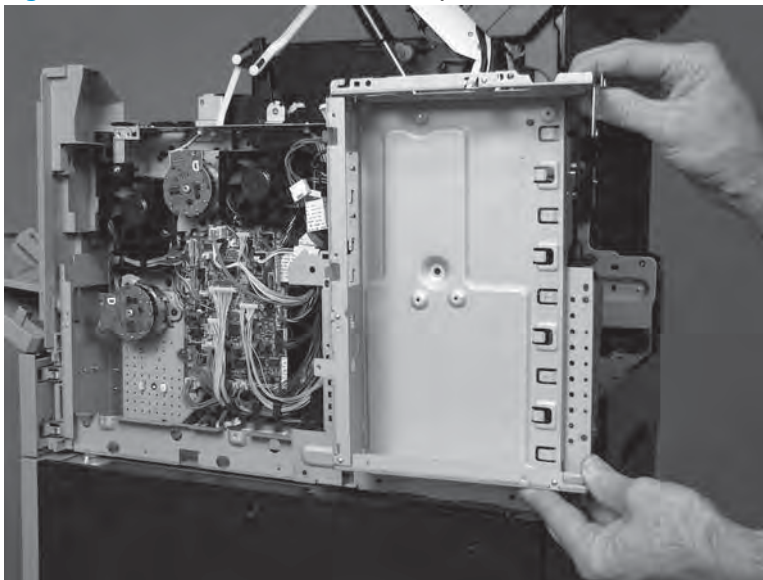
6. Slightly separate the sheet-metal plate from the product, and then release one tab (callout 1).

Figure 1-736 Release one tab



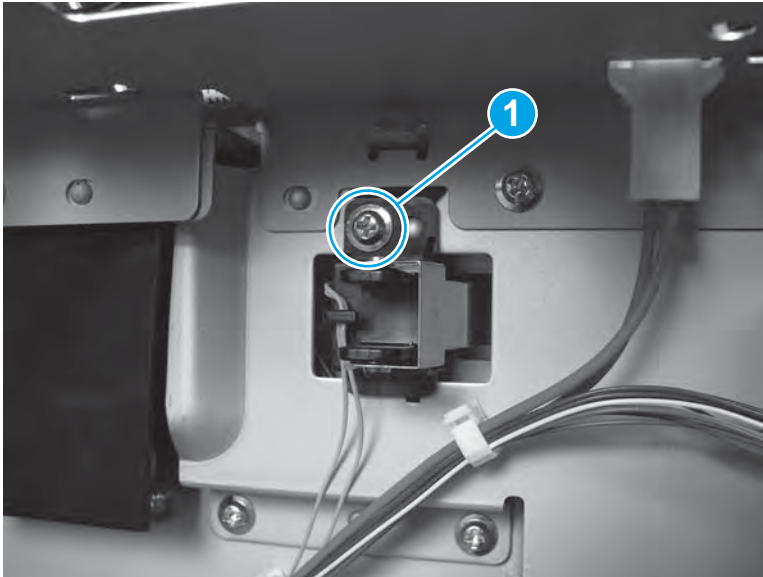
7. Remove the sheet-metal plate from the product.

Figure 1-737 Remove the sheet-metal plate



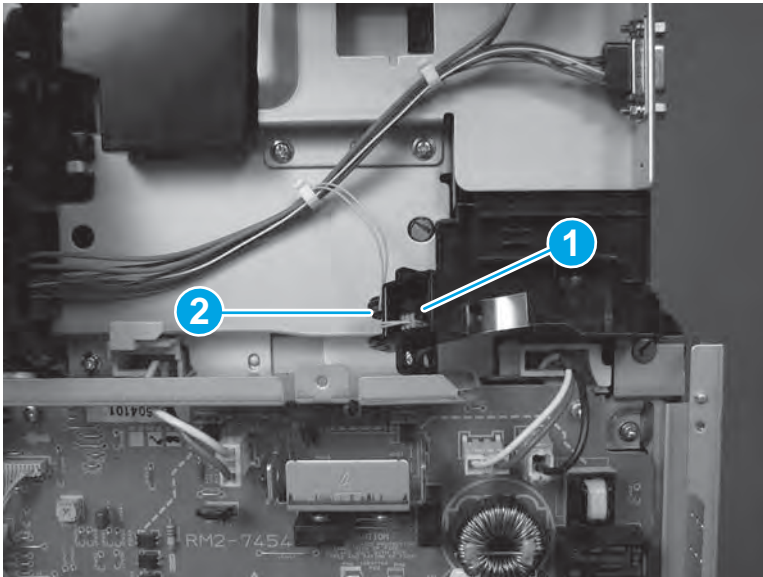
8. Locate the output detection switch (behind the plate removed in the previous step), and then remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-738 Remove one screw



9. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the switch (callout 2).

Figure 1-739 Remove the output accessory detection switch



Low-voltage power supply (LVPS)

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the formatter](#)
- [Step 2: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox](#)
- [Step 3: Remove the duplex accessory](#)
- [Step 4: Remove the side-rear cover](#)
- [Step 5: Remove the image scanner cable cover](#)
- [Step 6: Remove the rear-right cover](#)
- [Step 7: Remove the rear-left cover](#)
- [Step 8: Remove the rear-top cover](#)
- [Step 9: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly](#)
- [Step10: Remove the ICB](#)
- [Step 11: Remove the LVPS](#)
- [Step 12: Unpack the replacement LVPS](#)
- [Step 13: Install the LVPS](#)
- [Step 14: Install the ICB](#)
- [Step 15: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly](#)
- [Step 16: Install the rear-top cover](#)
- [Step 17: Install the rear-left cover](#)
- [Step 18: Install the rear-right cover](#)
- [Step 19: Install the image scanner cable cover](#)
- [Step 20: Install the side-rear cover](#)
- [Step 21: Install the duplex accessory](#)
- [Step 22: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox](#)
- [Step 23: Install the formatter](#)
- [Step 24: Test the installation](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the low-voltage power supply (LVPS) for the HP LaserJet Enterprise M630.


Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct assembly part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the assembly.

LVPS part number	
RM2-5792-000CN	LVPS (110V)
RM2-5793-000CN	LVPS (220)

Required tools


- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

CAUTION:  This product contains components that can be damaged by electrostatic discharge (ESD). To reduce the chance of ESD damage, place the product on an ESD mat (if available), and wear an ESD wrist strap connected to a grounded surface. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, ground yourself by touching the sheet-metal chassis before touching an ESD-sensitive part.

Step 1: Remove the formatter

1. Do the following steps:

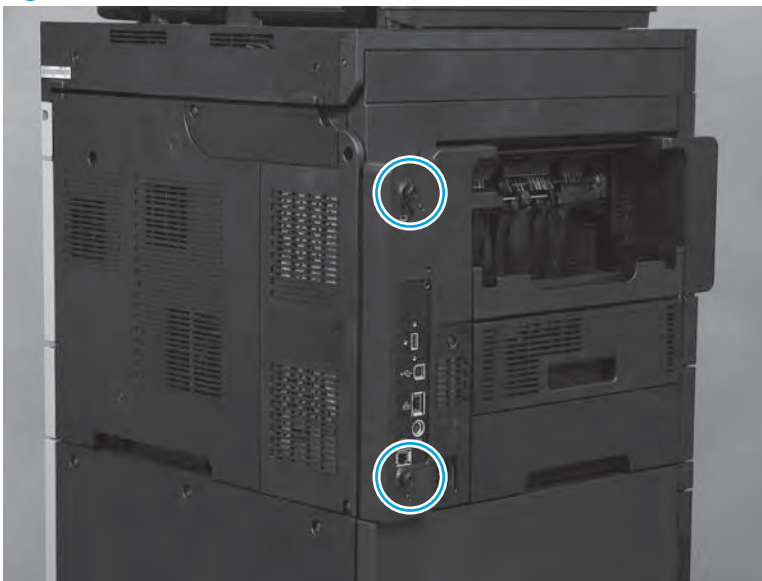
- a. Turn off the product.
- b. Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING!  To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

- c. Disconnect all cables and accessories attached to the formatter.

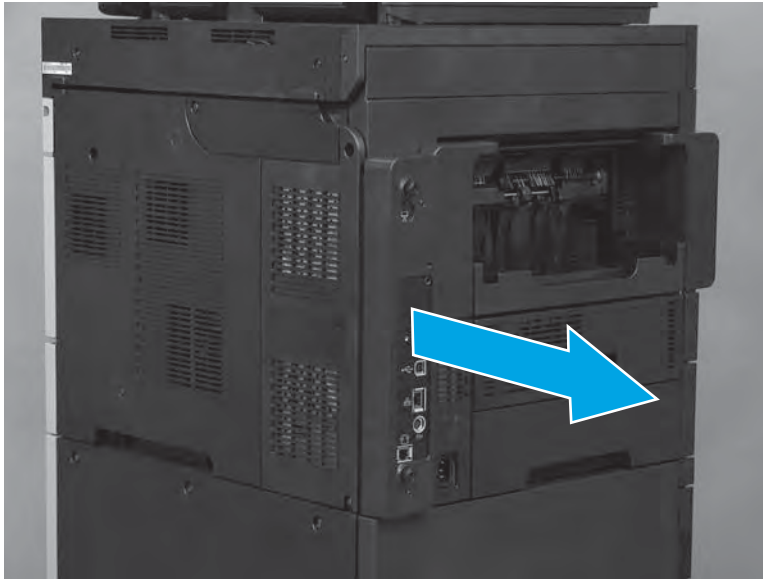
2. Loosen the two thumbscrews on the formatter.

Figure 1-740 Remove the formatter



3. Slide the formatter straight out of the product to remove it.

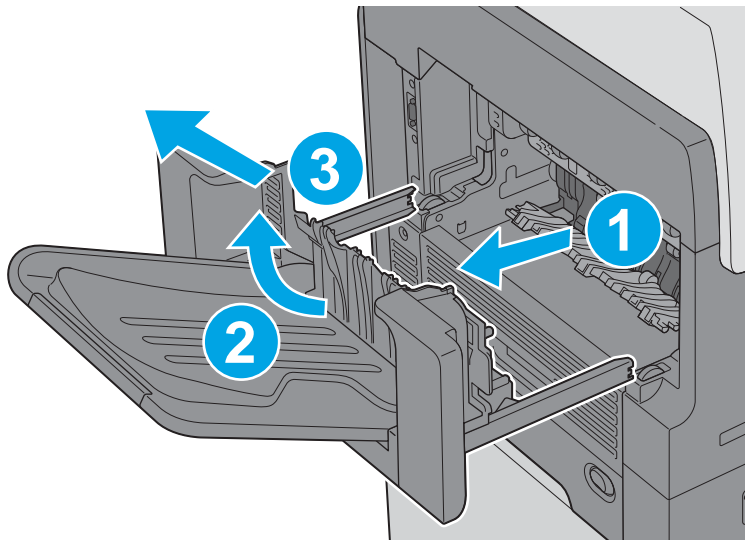
Figure 1-741 Remove the formatter



Step 2: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox

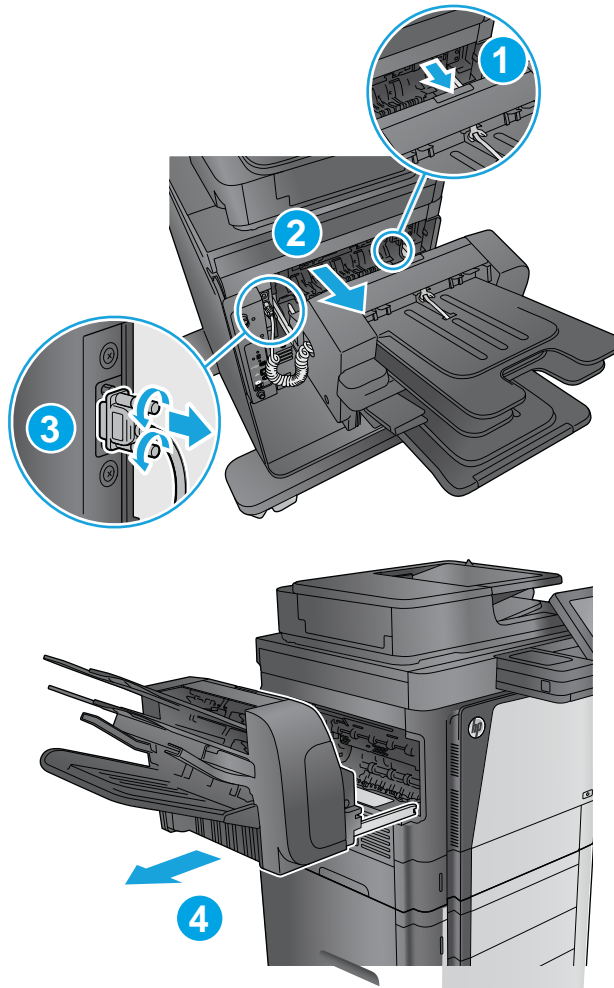
- ▲ Do one of the following steps:
 - a. **M630dn and M630f:** Slide the bin base away from the product (callout 1) until it stops, slightly lift up on the assembly to disengage the slide rails (callout 2), and then remove the assembly (callout 3).

Figure 1-742 Remove the output bin



- b. **M630z:** Press the latch (callout 1), pull the stapling mailbox away from the product (callout 2), disconnect the interface cable (callout 3), and then remove the stapling mailbox (callout 4).

Figure 1-743 Remove the stapling mailbox



Step 3: Remove the duplex accessory

- ▲ Slide the duplex assembly away from the product, slightly lift up on the assembly to disengage the slide rails, and then remove it.


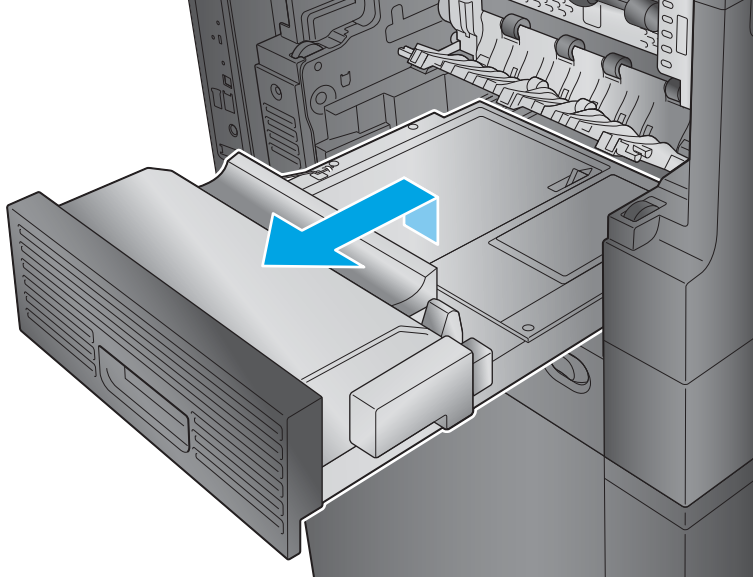
 **NOTE:** Locate the duplexer at the left-hand side of the product.

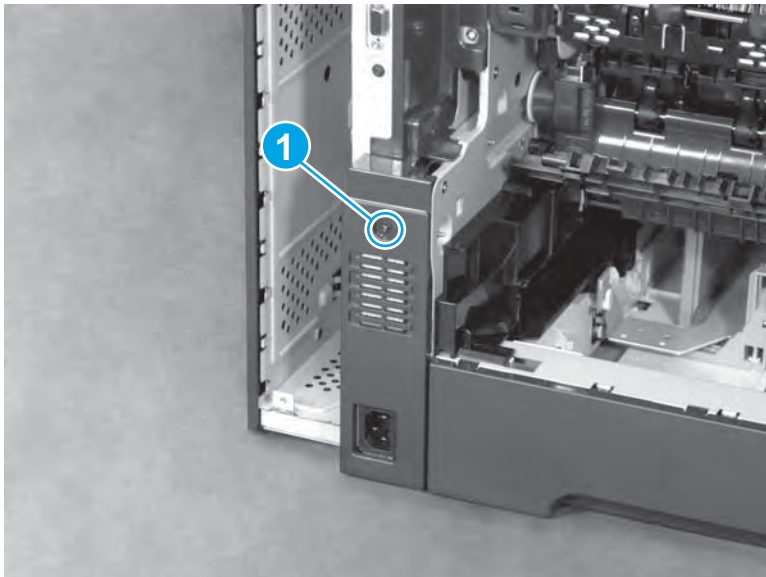
Figure 1-744 Remove the duplex accessory



Step 4: Remove the side-rear cover

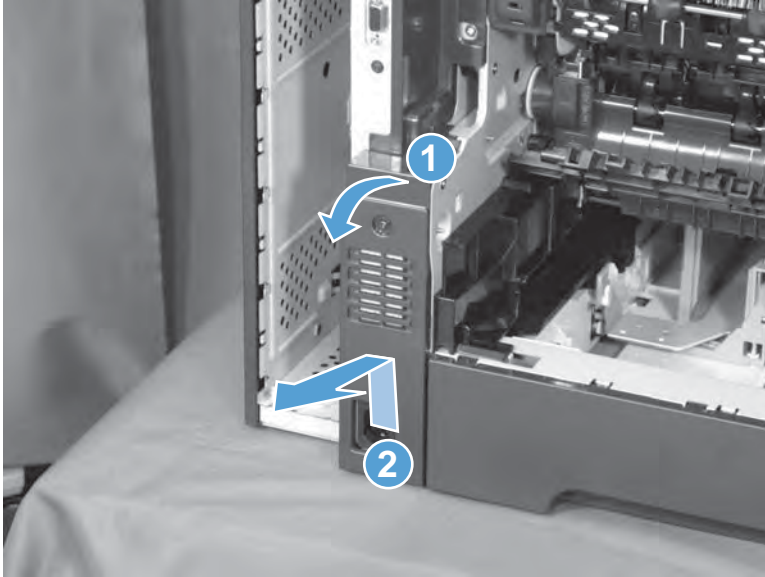
1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-745 Remove one screw



2. Rotate the top of the cover away from the product (callout 1), slightly raise the cover to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

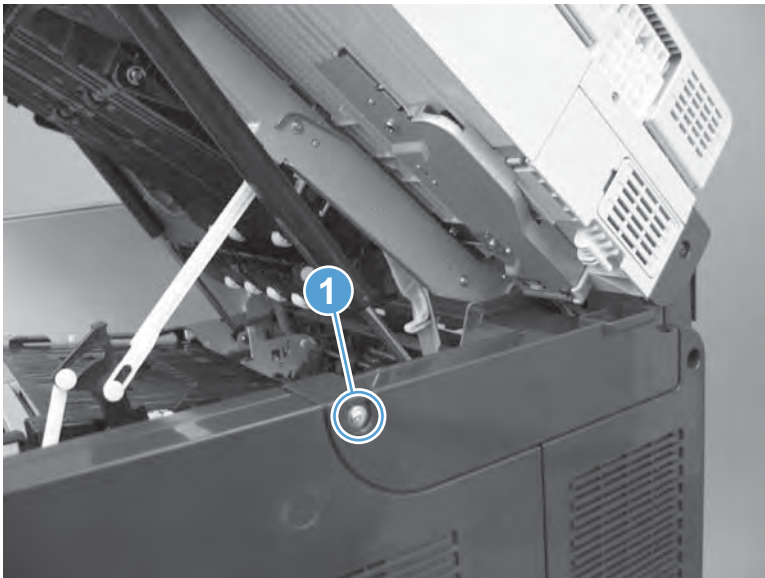
Figure 1-746 Remove the side-rear cover



Step 5: Remove the image scanner cable cover

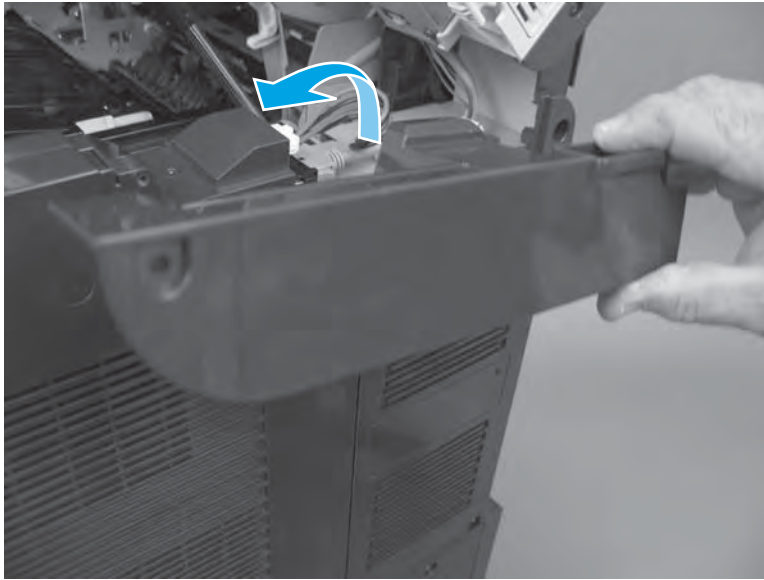
1. Open the top cover, and then remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-747 Remove one screw



2. Remove the cover.

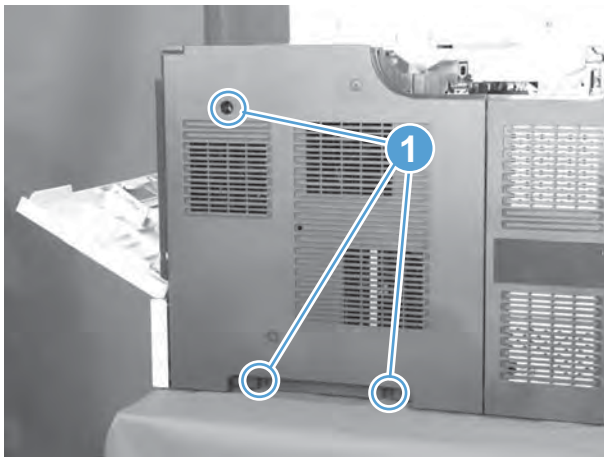
Figure 1-748 Remove the cover



Step 6: Remove the rear-right cover

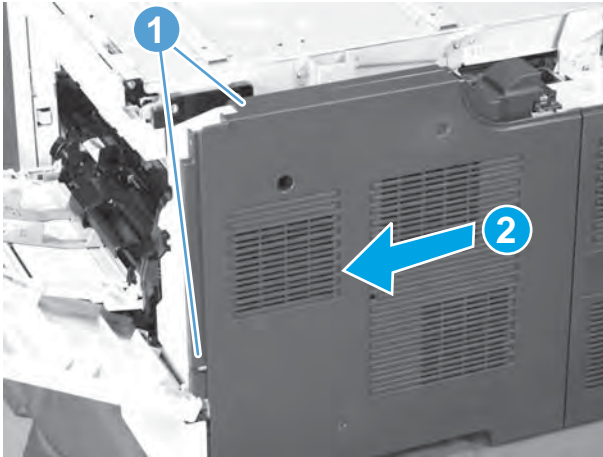
1. Open the top cover and Tray 1, and then remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-749 Remove three screws



2. Release two tabs (callout 1), slightly separate the edge of the cover near Tray 1 from the product, slide the cover towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

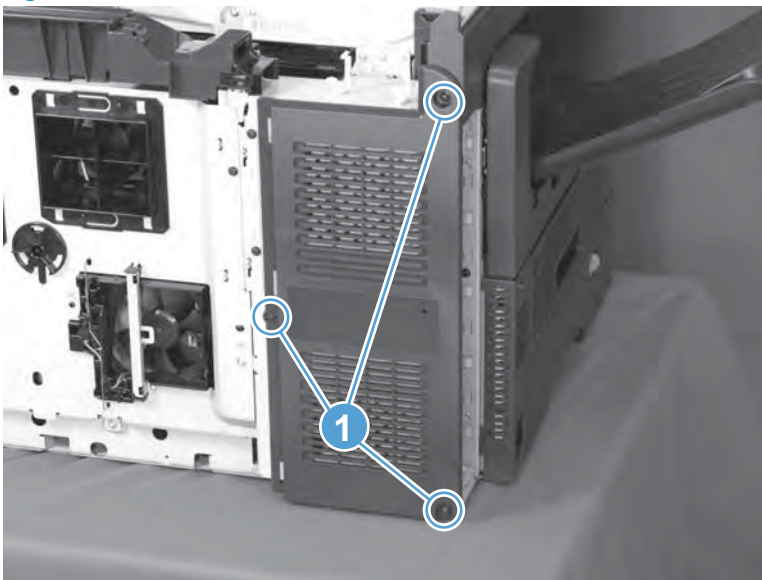
Figure 1-750 Remove the cover



Step 7: Remove the rear-left cover

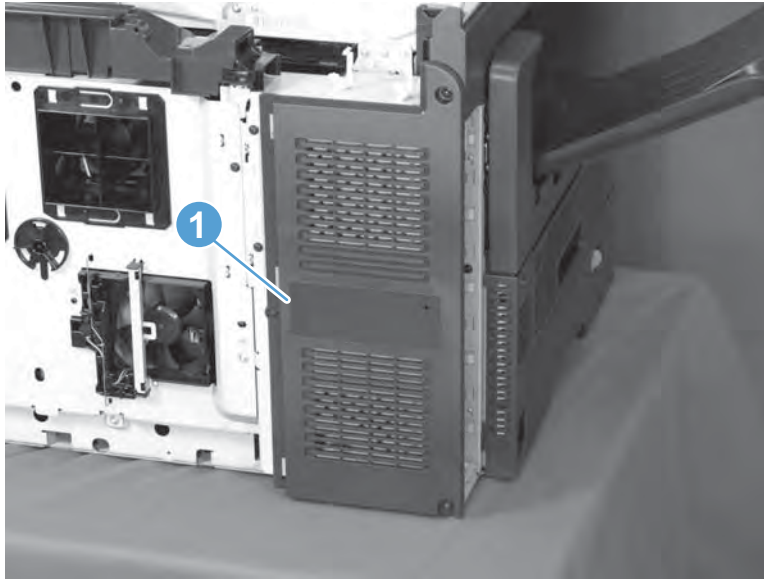
1. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-751 Remove three screws



2. Remove the cover (callout 1).

Figure 1-752 Remove the cover

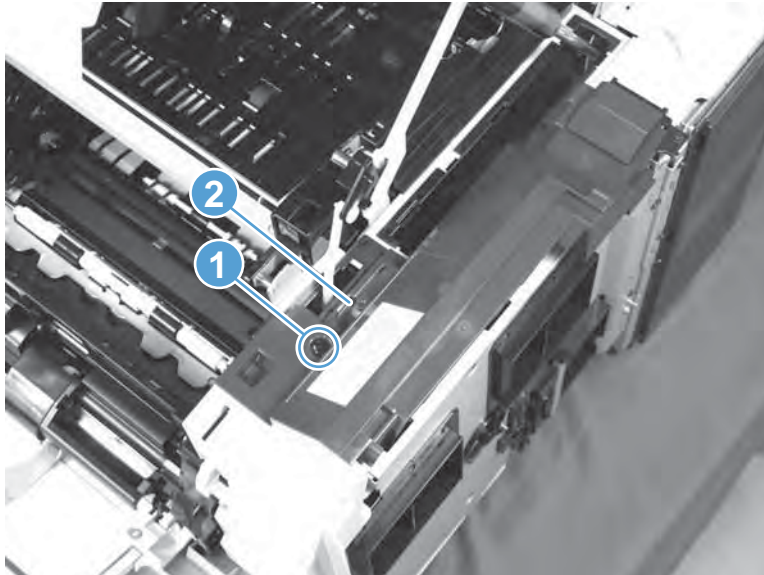


Step 8: Remove the rear-top cover

 **NOTE:** If the top cover is closed, open it now.

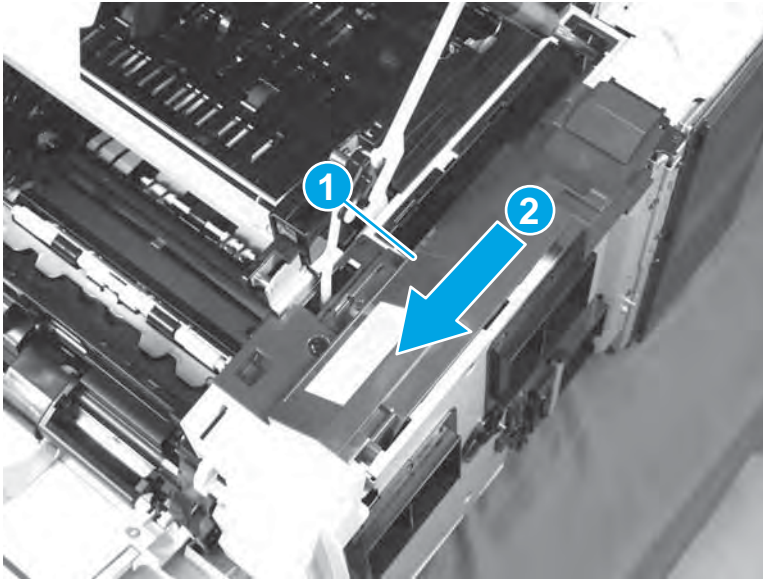
1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release one tab (callout 2).

Figure 1-753 Remove one screw



2. Push the cover (callout 1) towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

Figure 1-754 Remove the cover

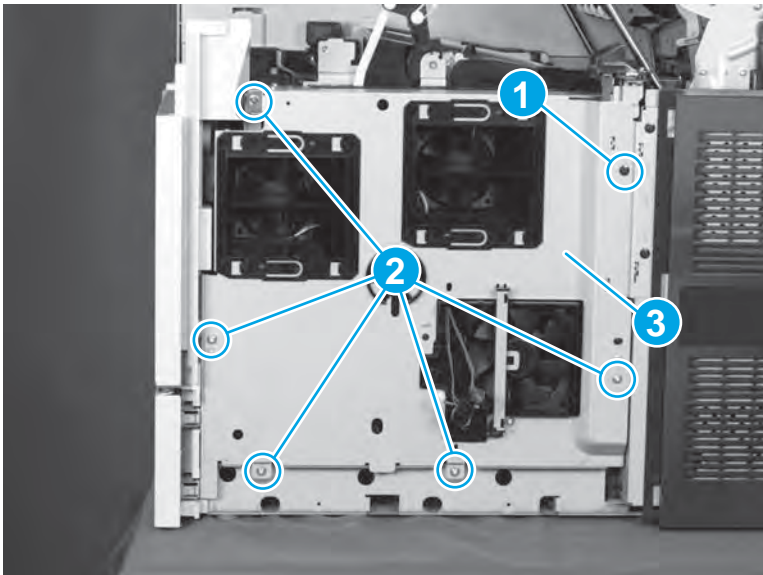


Step 9: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly

1. Remove one black screw (callout 1), remove five silver screws (callout 2), and then slightly rotate the top of the shield (callout 3) away from the product.

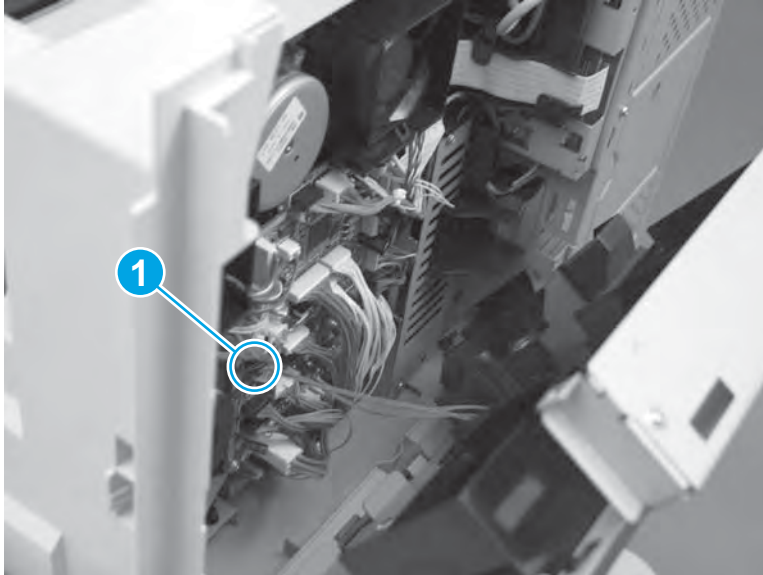
CAUTION: The shield is still connected to the product by a wire harness. Do not completely remove the shield after removing the screws.

Figure 1-755 Remove six screws



2. Disconnect one connector (J42; callout 1) from the DC controller, and then remove the DC controller shield.

Figure 1-756 Disconnect one connector and remove the shield

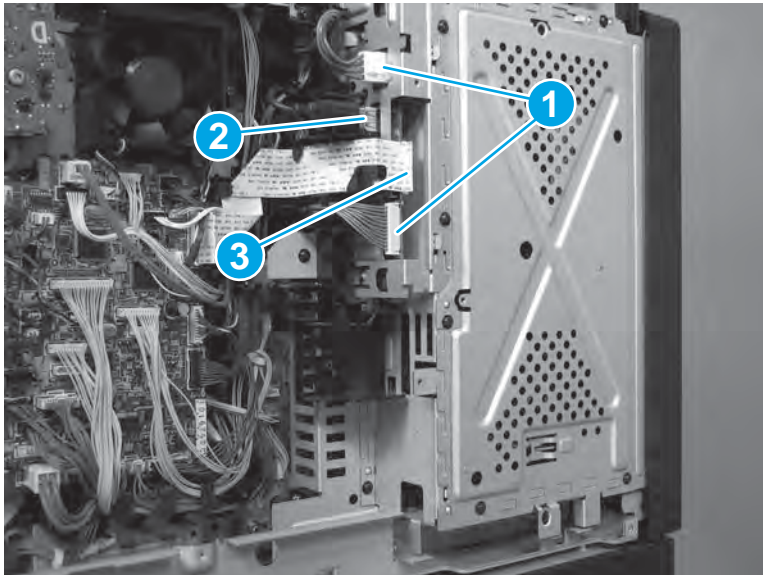


Step10: Remove the ICB


 ESD sensitive assembly.

1. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), one USB connector (callout 2), and then disconnect one FFC (callout 3).

Figure 1-757 Disconnect four connectors

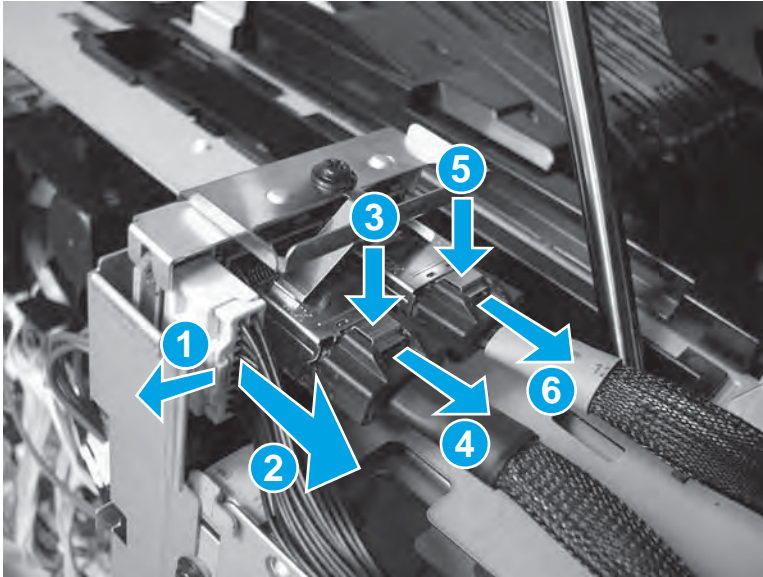


2. Use a small flat-blade screw driver to release three connectors.

 **TIP:** When the two connectors with the metal retainer clips (callouts 3/4/5/6) are reinstalled, make sure that the clips snap in place to securely lock the connectors in place.

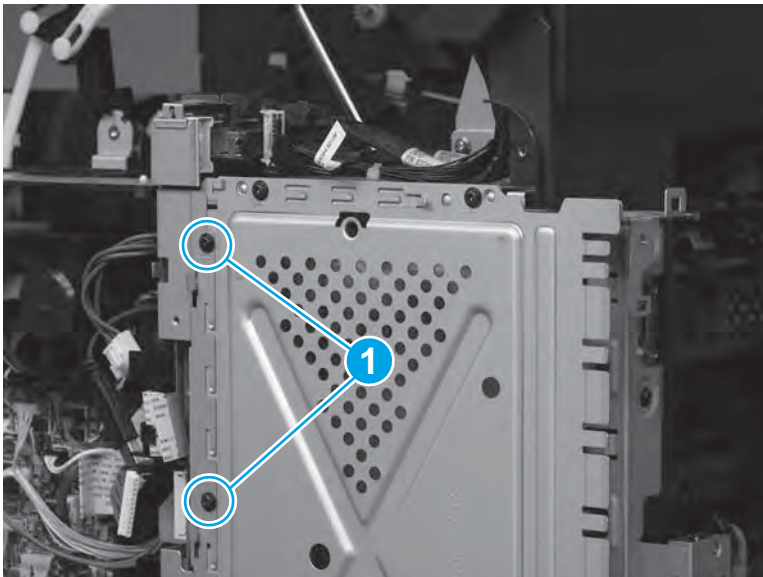
The wire harness with the blue band (callouts 5/6) connects to the inner connector on the ICB when reinstalled.

Figure 1-758 Disconnect three connectors



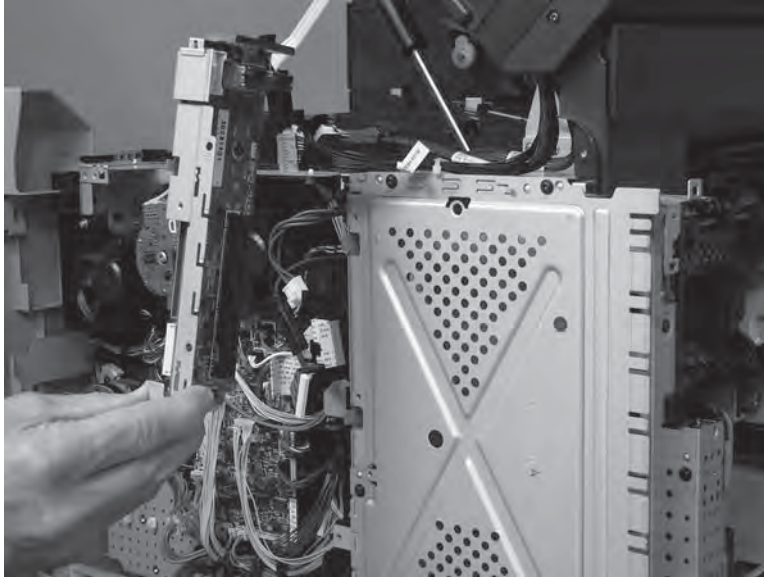
3. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-759 Remove two screws




4. Remove the ICB.

Figure 1-760 Remove the ICB

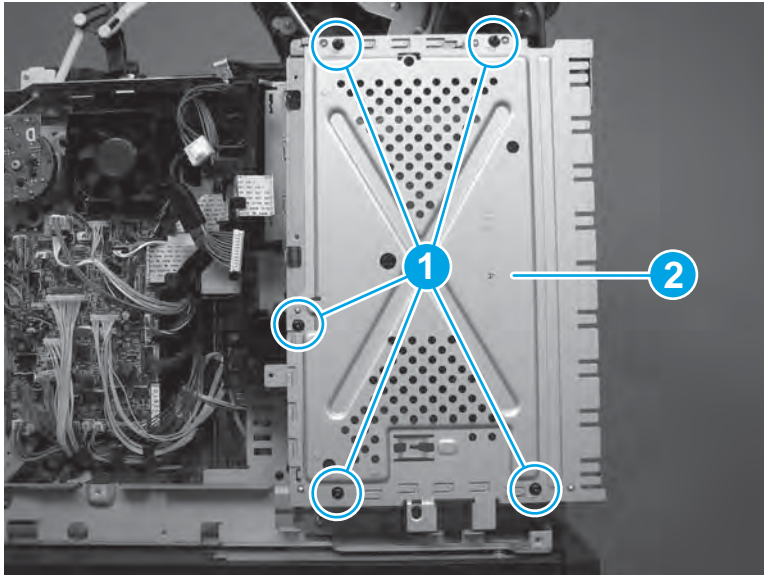


Step 11: Remove the LVPS

 ESD sensitive assembly.

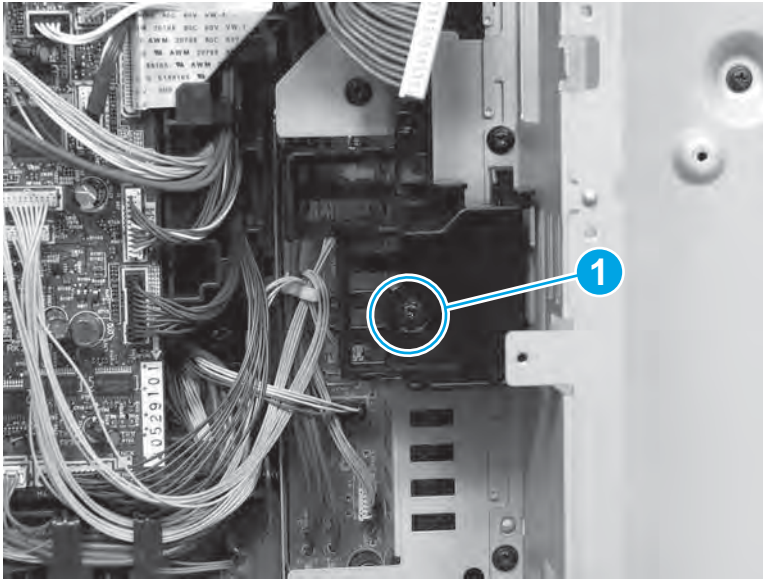
1. Remove five screws (callout 1), and the sheet-metal plate (callout 2).

Figure 1-761 Remove the sheet-metal plate



2. Remove one screw (callout 1) near the DC controller.

Figure 1-762 Remove one screw



3. Remove the guide (callout 1).


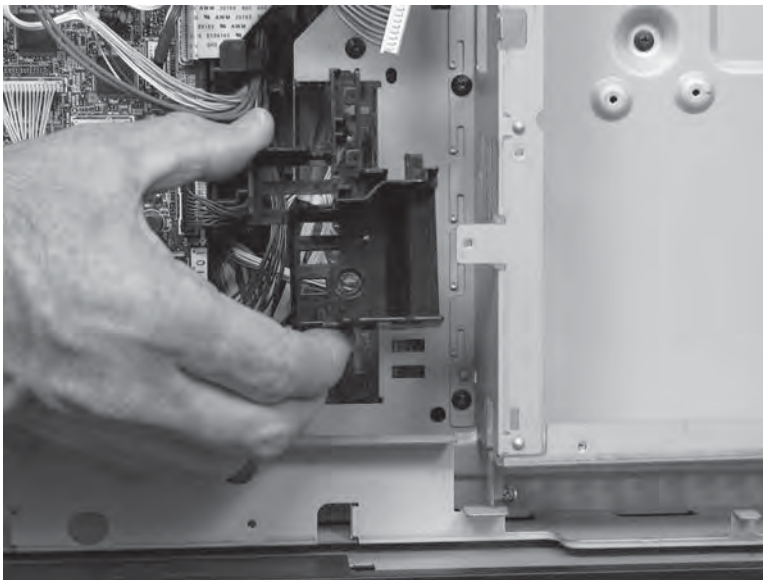
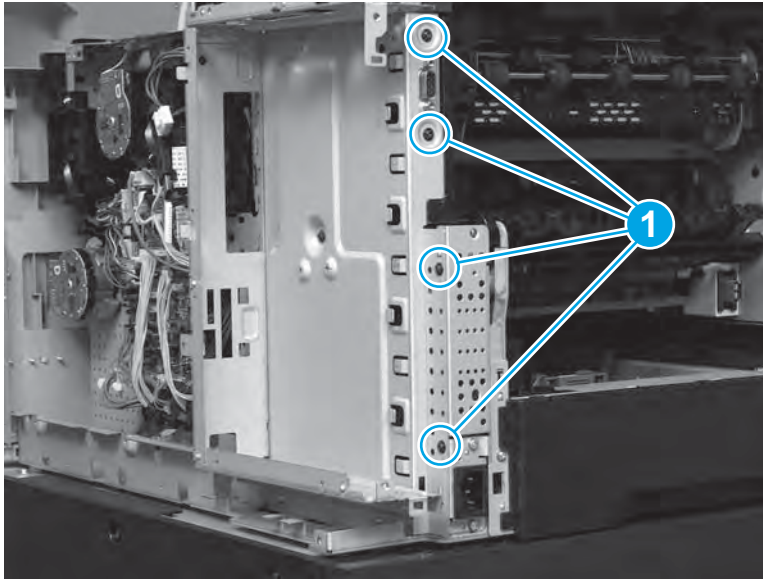
 **Reinstallation tip:** Insert the hook at the top of the guide into the slot in the chassis, and then rotate the bottom of the guide into place.

Figure 1-763 Remove the guide



4. Remove four black screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-764 Remove four screws

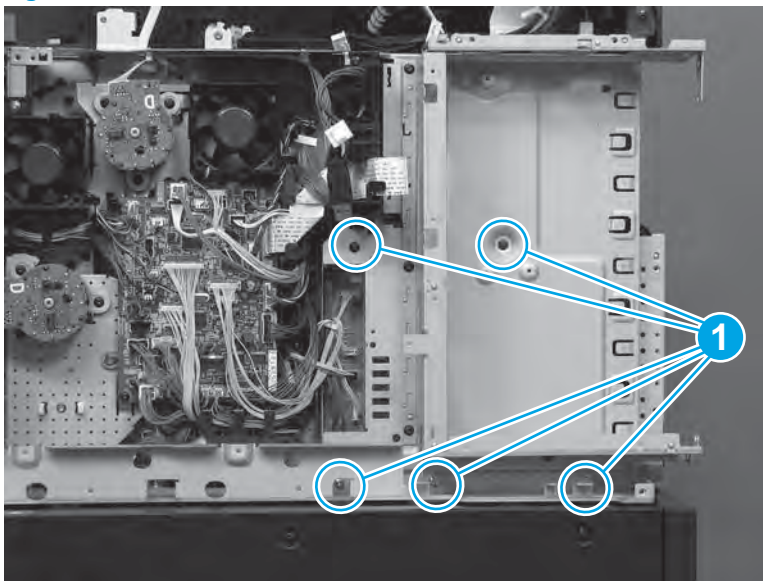


5. Remove five screws (callout 1).



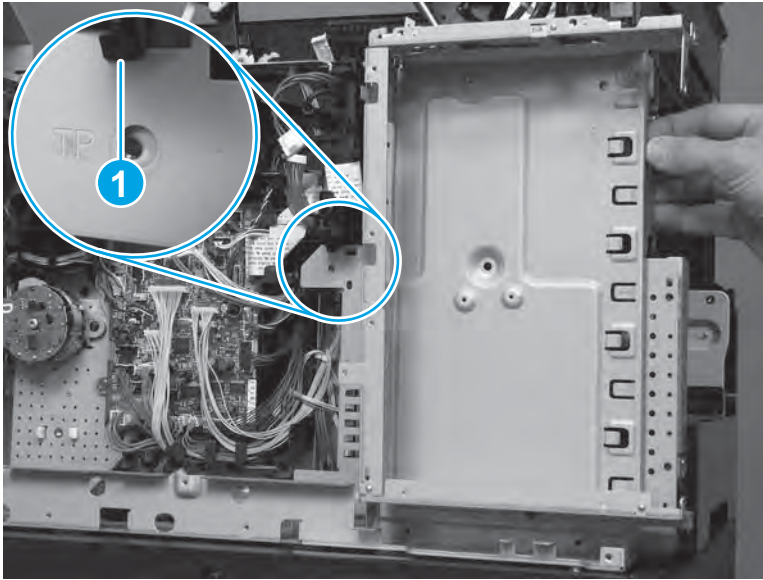
NOTE: The two upper screws are black, and the three screws across the bottom are silver.

Figure 1-765 Remove two screws



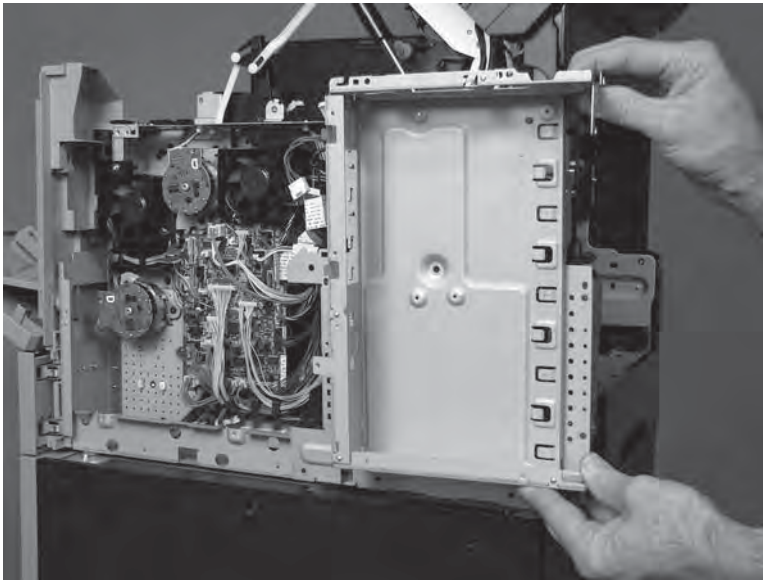
6. Slightly separate the sheet-metal plate from the product, and then release one tab (callout 1).

Figure 1-766 Release one tab




7. Remove the sheet-metal plate from the product.

Figure 1-767 Remove the sheet-metal plate



8. Disconnect seven connectors (callout 1), and then release the wire harness from the retainer (callout 2).

 **NOTE:** These wire-harnesses are stiff and can make the connectors difficult to disconnect.


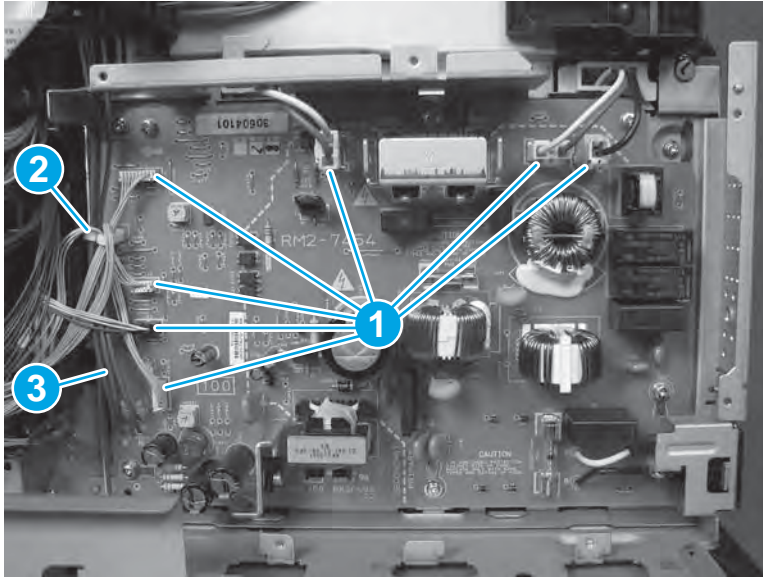
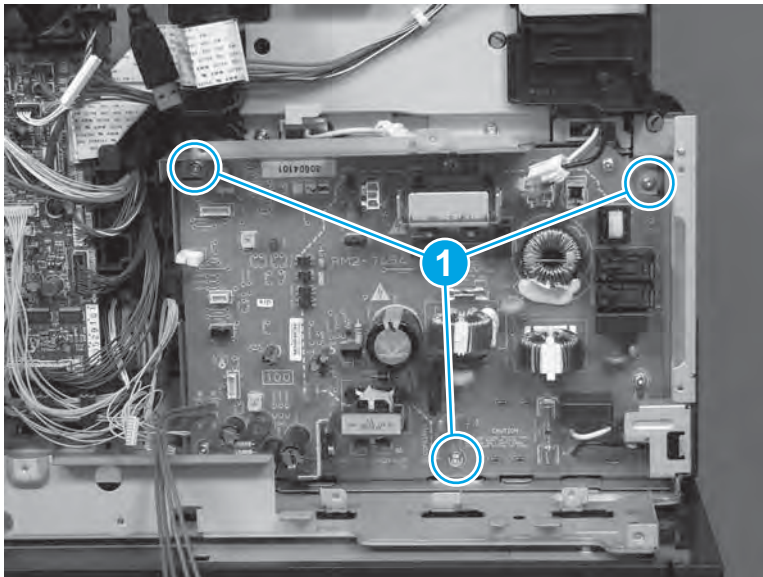
 **TIP:** The 4-wire wire harness (callout 3; two brown and 2 blue wires) cannot be disconnected from the LVPS, and does not need to be released from the retainer.

Figure 1-768 Disconnect seven connectors



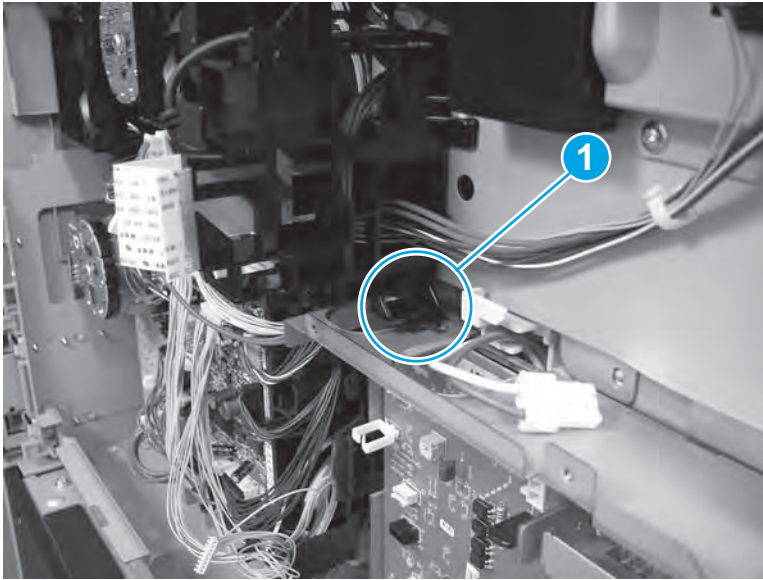
9. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-769 Remove three screws



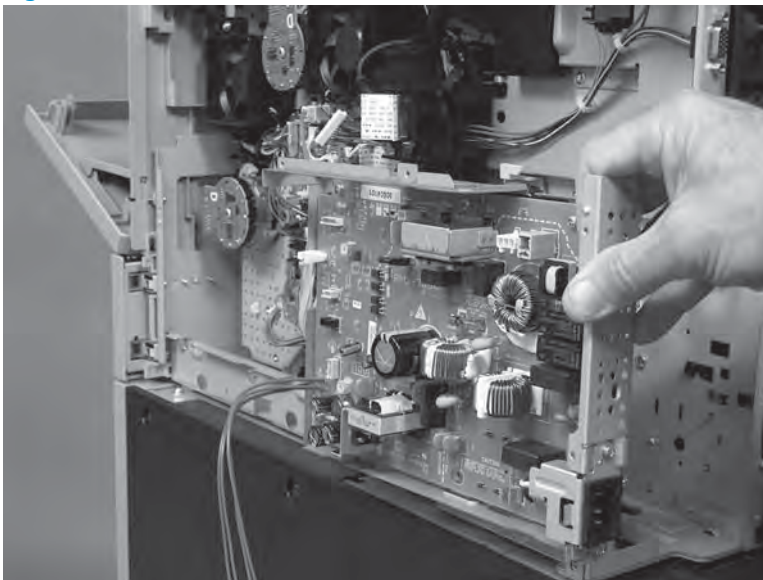
10. Release one tab (callout 1).

Figure 1-770 Release one tab



11. Remove the LVPS.

Figure 1-771 Remove the LVPS



Step 12: Unpack the replacement LVPS

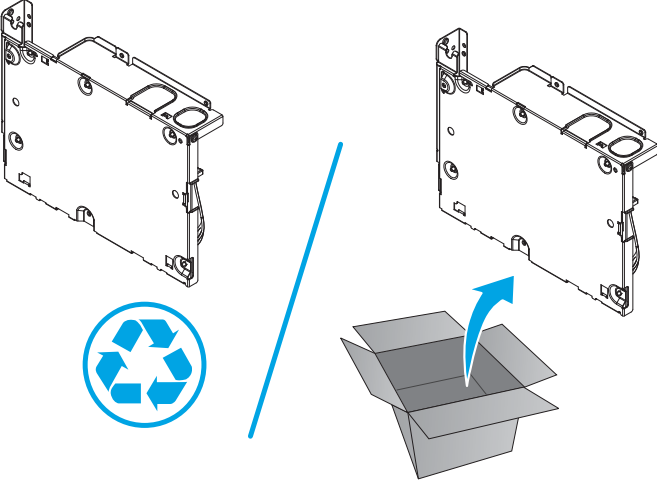
Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

www.Product return and recycling.



NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.


Figure 1-772 Recycle and unpack



Step 13: Install the LVPS

 ESD sensitive assembly.

1. Install the LVPS on the product.

 **IMPORTANT:** When installing the LVPS, make sure that the inline connector (callout 1; behind the LVPS) from the DC controller to the cassette media size switch (SW102) is fully seated. This connector is easily dislodged.


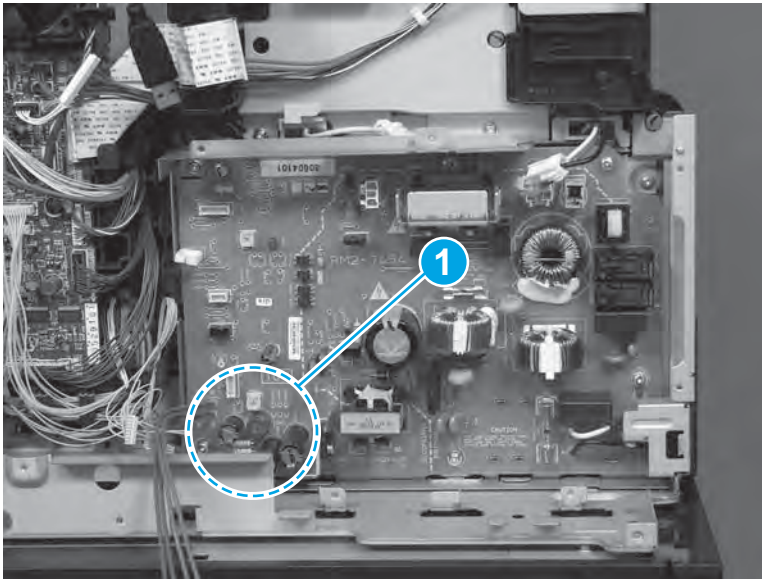
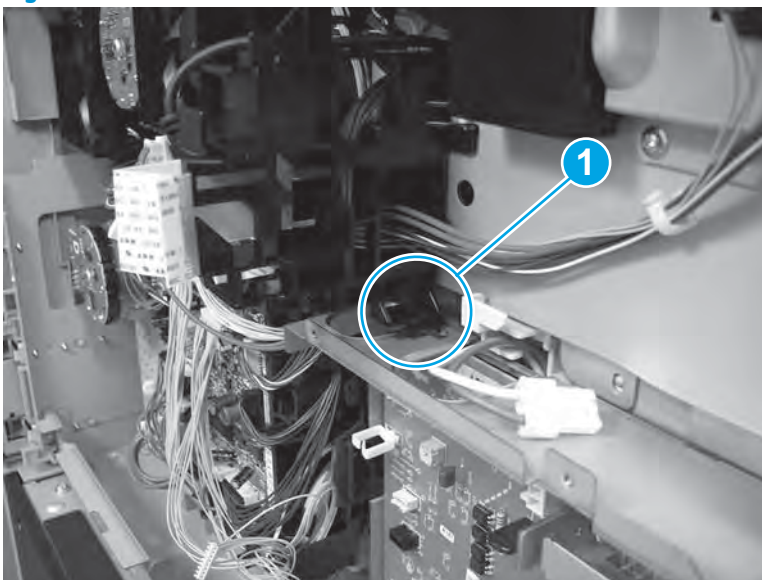
 **TIP:** If a Tray 2 removed error message appears on the control-panel display after servicing the product, check this connector.

Figure 1-773 Install the LVPS



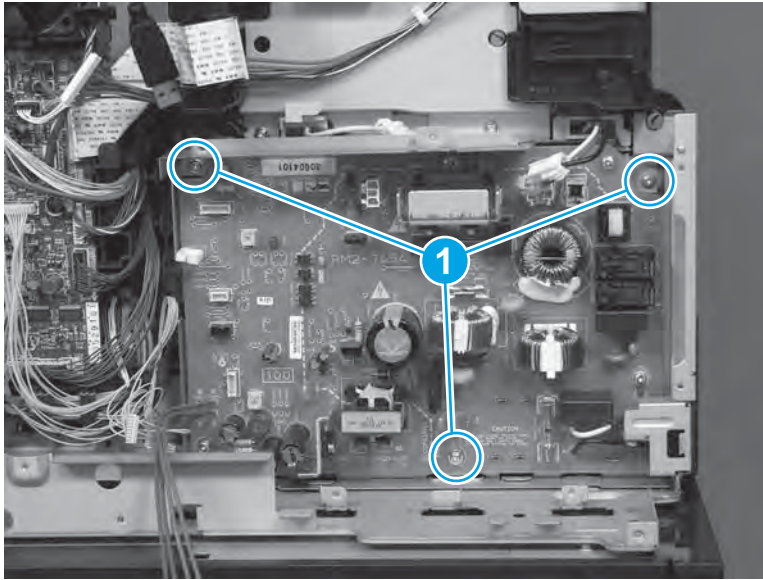
2. Make sure that the LVPS is installed behind one tab (callout 1).

Figure 1-774 Check one tab



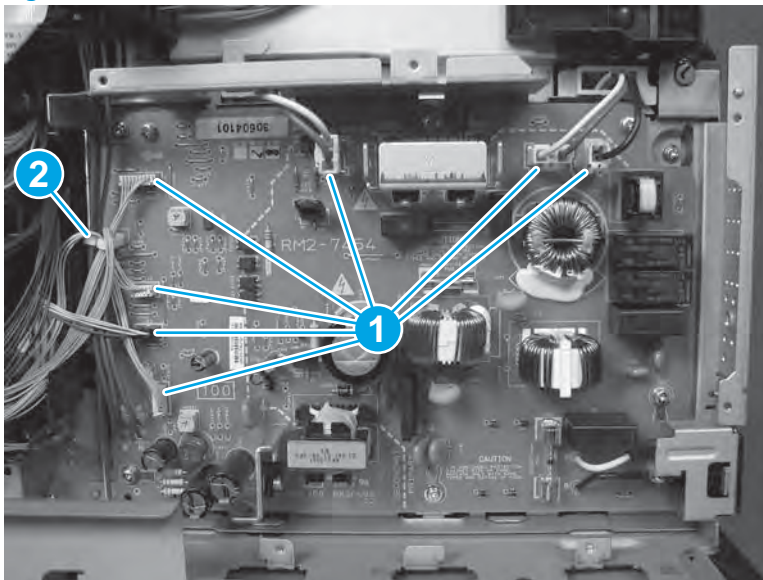
3. Install three screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-775 Install three screws



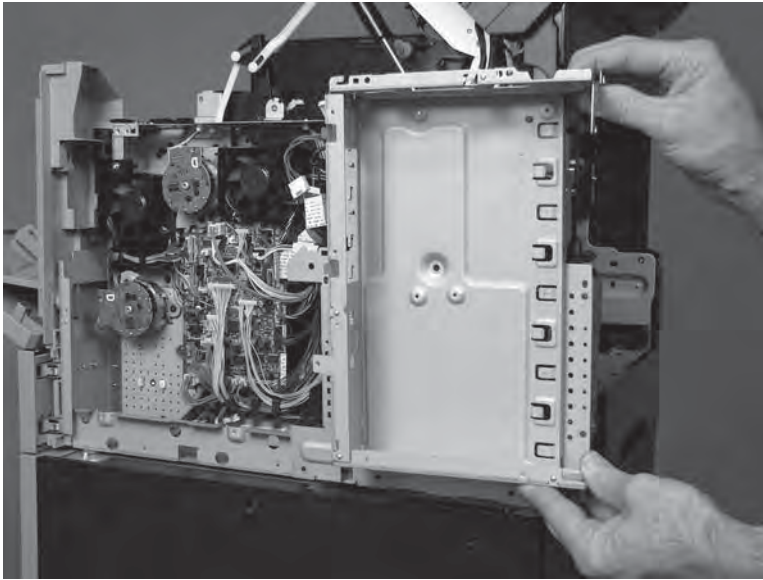
4. Connect seven connectors (callout 1), and then install the wire harness in the retainer (callout 2).

Figure 1-776 Connect seven connectors



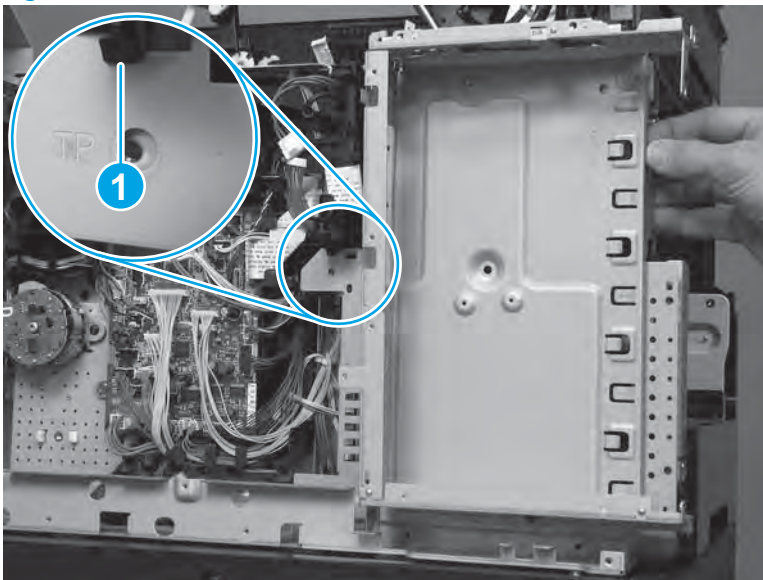
5. Install the sheet-metal plate on the product.

Figure 1-777 Install the sheet-metal plate



6. Make sure that the sheet-metal plate is installed behind one tab (callout 1).

Figure 1-778 Check one tab



7. Install five screws (callout 1).


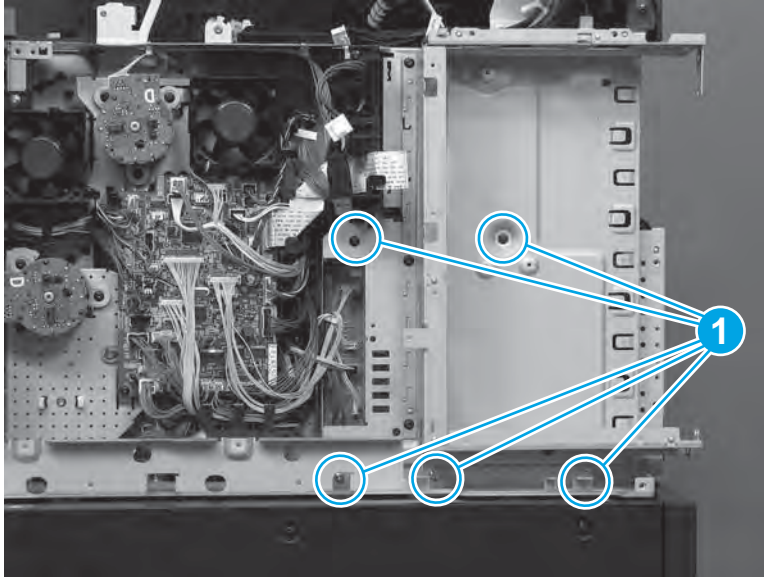
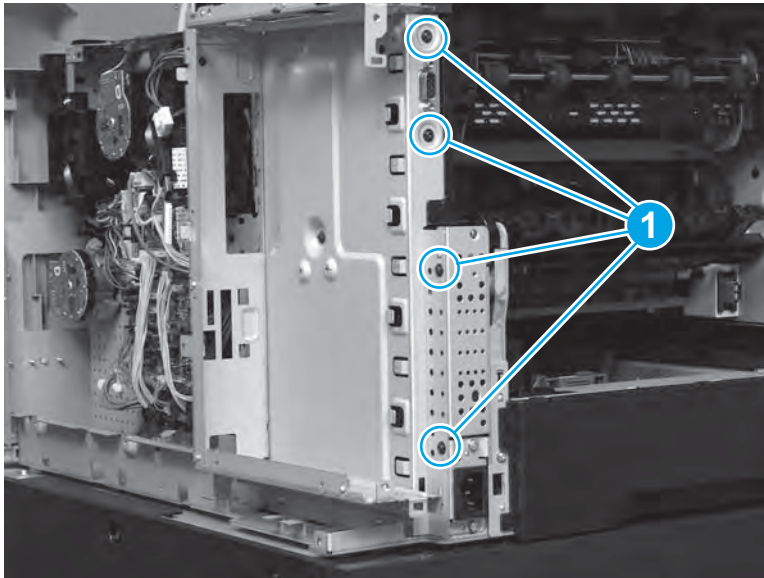
 **NOTE:** The two upper screws are black, and the three screws across the bottom are silver.

Figure 1-779 Install five screws



8. Install four black screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-780 Install four screws



9. Install the guide.


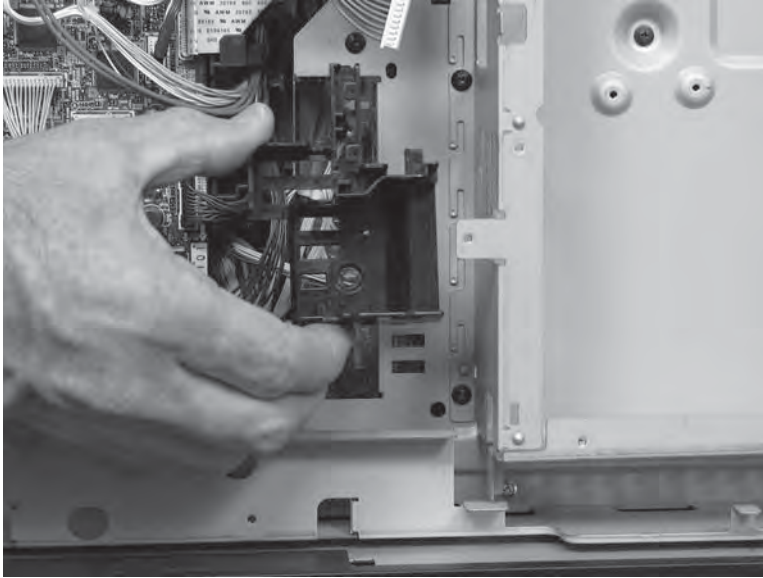
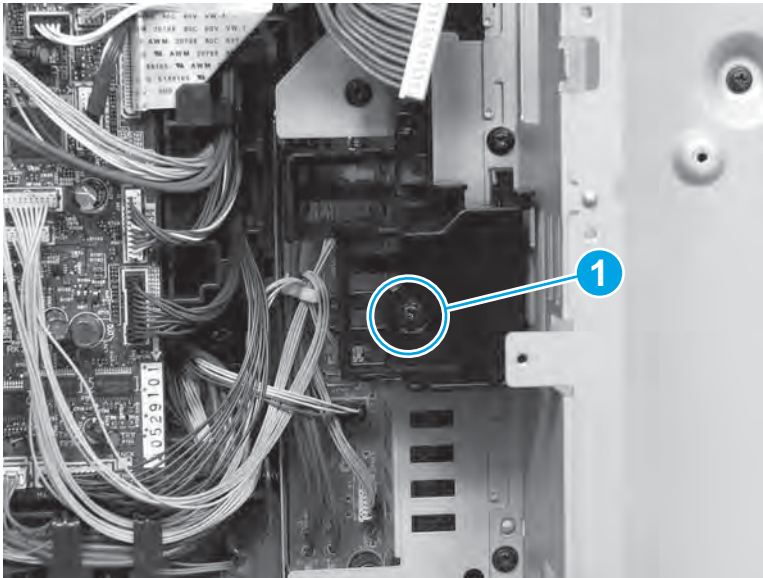
 **TIP:** Insert the hook at the top of the guide into the slot in the chassis, and then rotate the bottom of the guide into place.

Figure 1-781 Install the guide



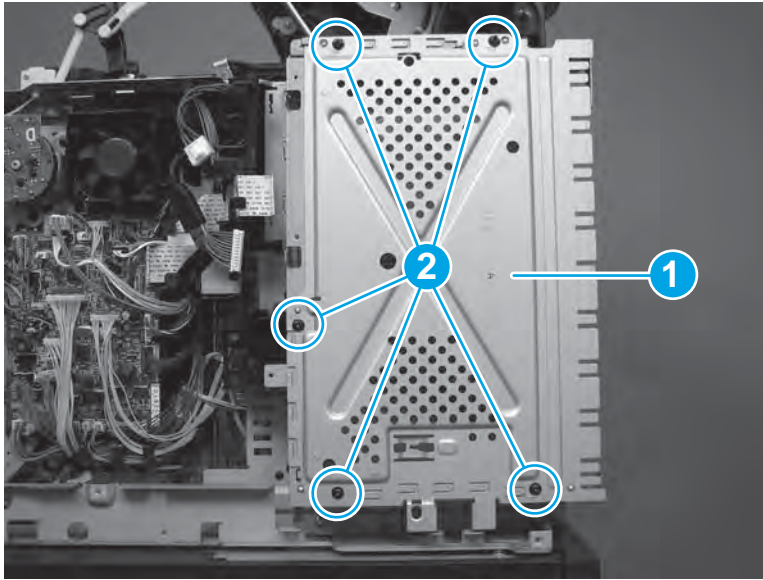
10. Install one screw (callout 1) near the DC controller.

Figure 1-782 Install one screw



11. Install the sheet-metal plate (callout 1), and then install five screws (callout 2).

Figure 1-783 Install the sheet-metal plate

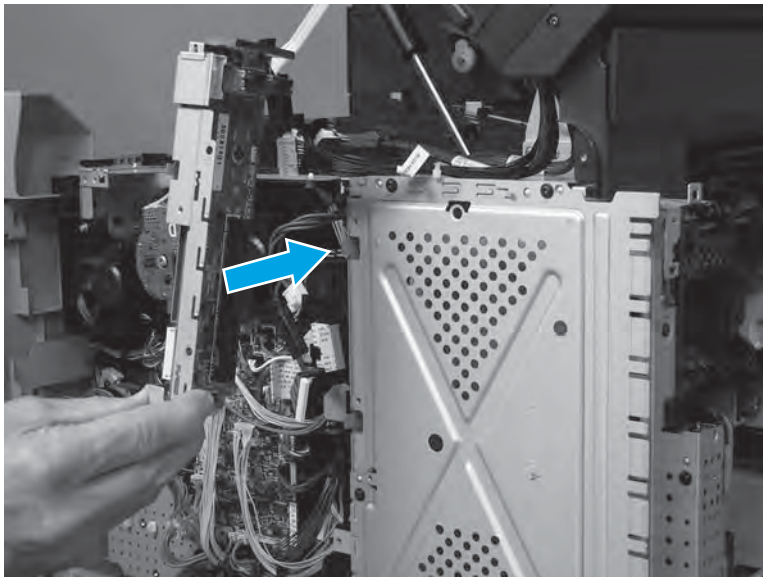


Step 14: Install the ICB

 ESD sensitive assembly.

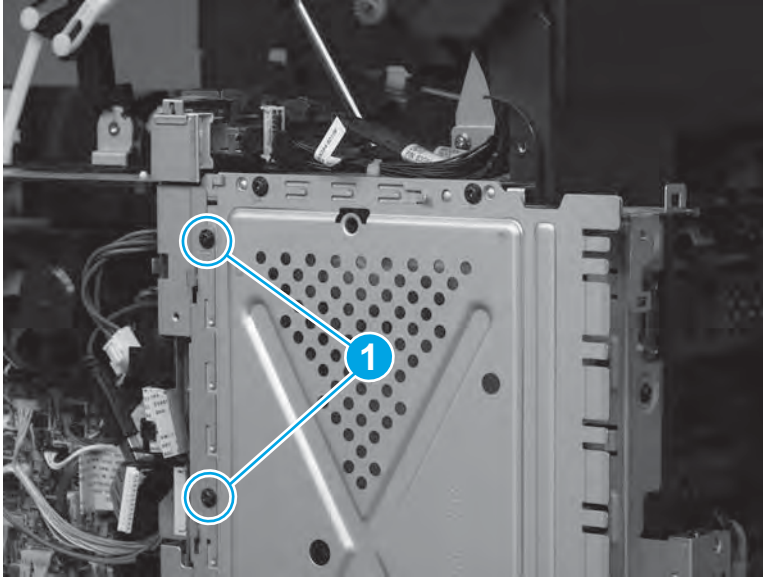
1. Install the ICB on the product.

Figure 1-784 Install the ICB



2. Install two screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-785 Install two screws

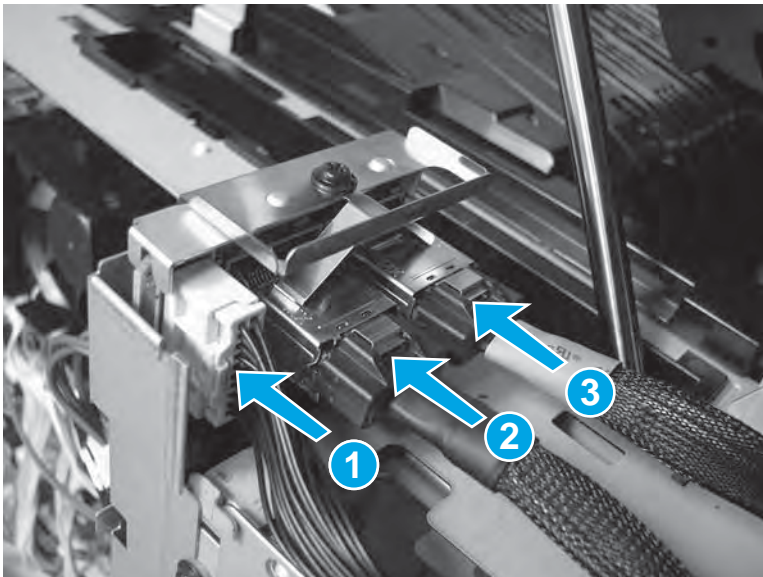


3. At the top of the ICB, connect three connectors.

TIP: When the two connectors with the metal retainer clips (callouts 2/3) are reinstalled, make sure that the clips snap in place to securely lock the connectors in place.

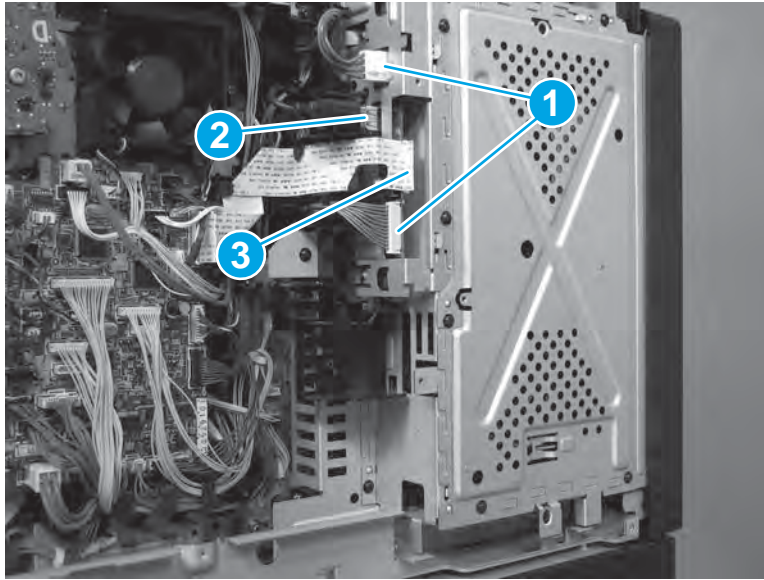
The wire harness with the blue band (callouts 3) connects to the inner connector on the ICB when reinstalled.

Figure 1-786 Connect three connectors



4. Connect two connectors (callout 1), one USB connector (callout 2), and then connect one FFC (callout 3).

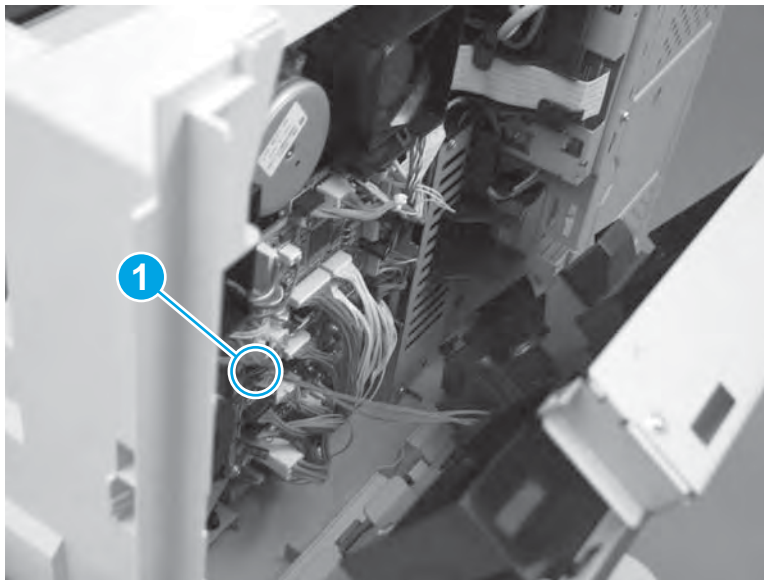
Figure 1-787 Connect four connectors



Step 15: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly

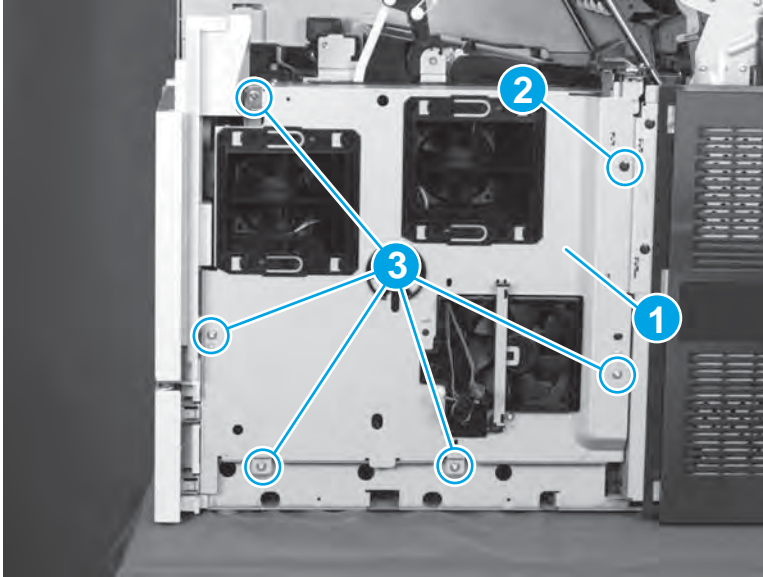
1. Position the shield near the product, and then connect one connector (J42; callout 1).

Figure 1-788 Install the shield and connect one connector



2. Rotate the top of the shield (callout 1) toward the product, install one black screw (callout 2), and then install five silver screws (callout 3).

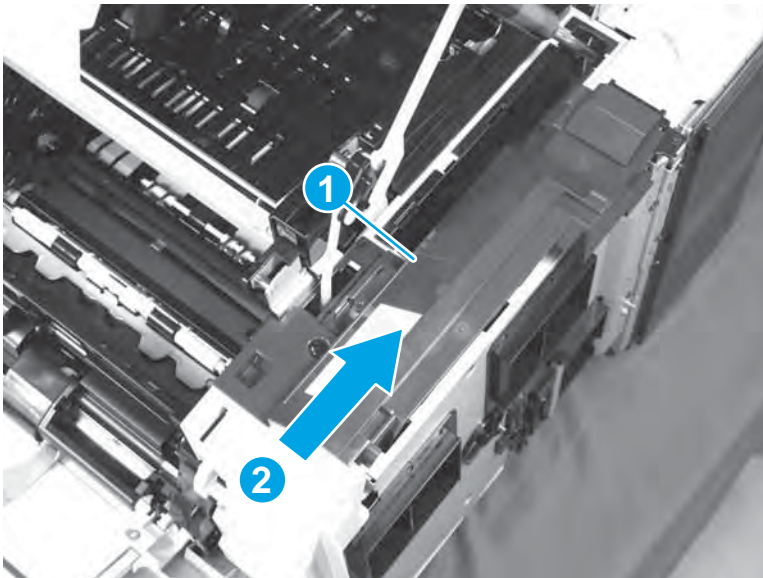
Figure 1-789 Remove six screws



Step 16: Install the rear-top cover

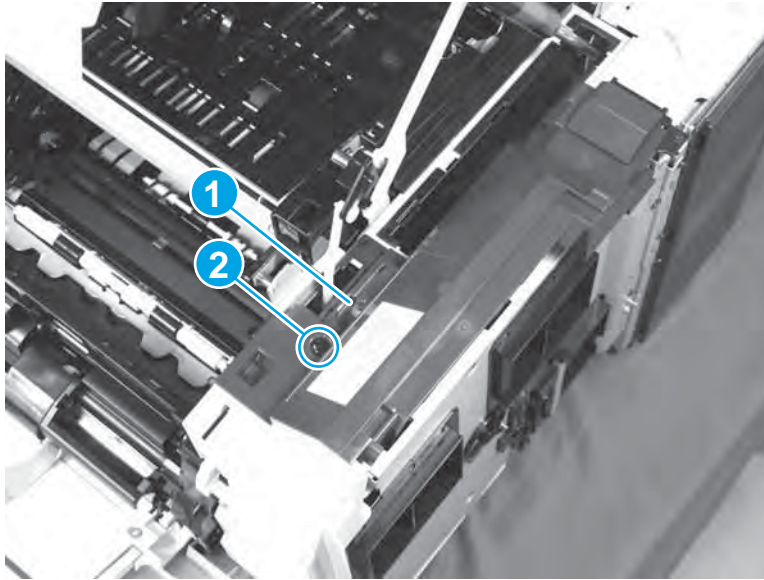
1. Position the cover on the product, Push the cover (callout 1) away Tray 1 to install it (callout 2).

Figure 1-790 Install the cover



2. Make sure that the tab (callout 2) is engaged, and then install one screw (callout 2).

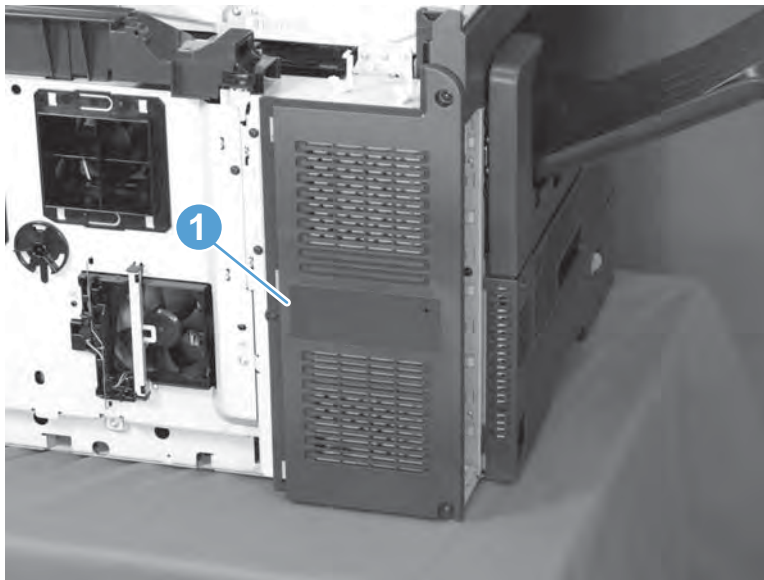
Figure 1-791 Install one screw



Step 17: Install the rear-left cover

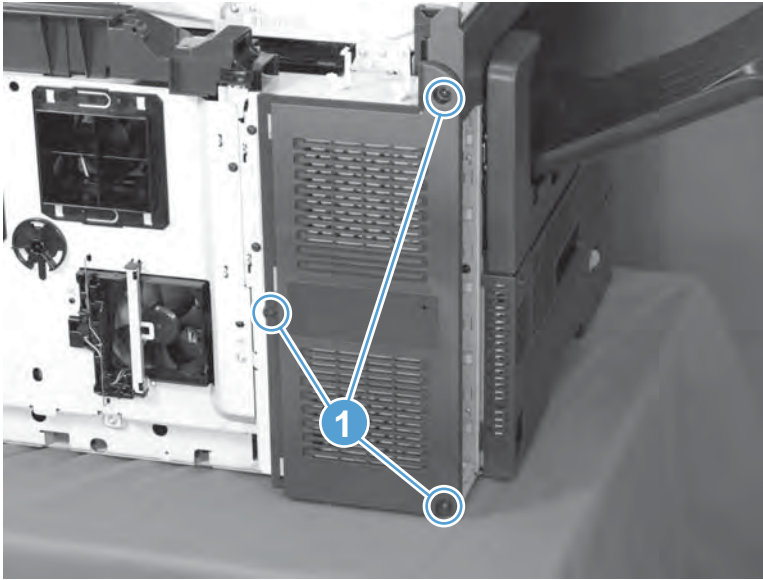
1. Position the cover (callout 1) on the product.

Figure 1-792 Install the cover



2. Install three screws (callout 1).

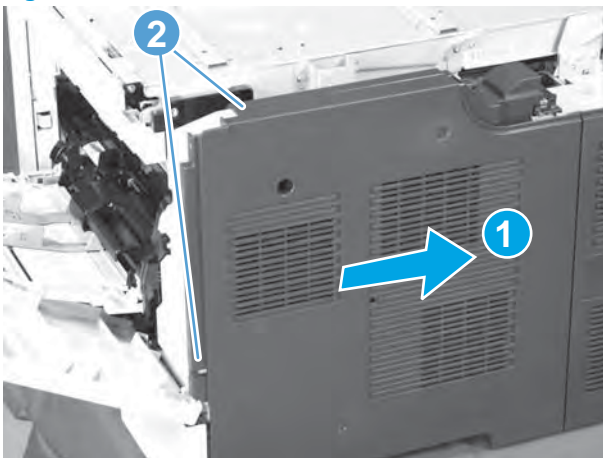
Figure 1-793 Install three screws



Step 18: Install the rear-right cover

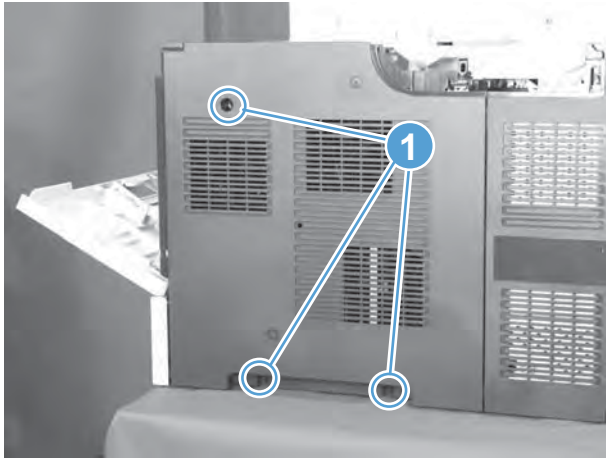
1. Position the cover on the product, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 1) to engage two tabs (callout 2).

Figure 1-794 Install the cover



2. Install three screws (callout 1), and then close the top cover and Tray 1.

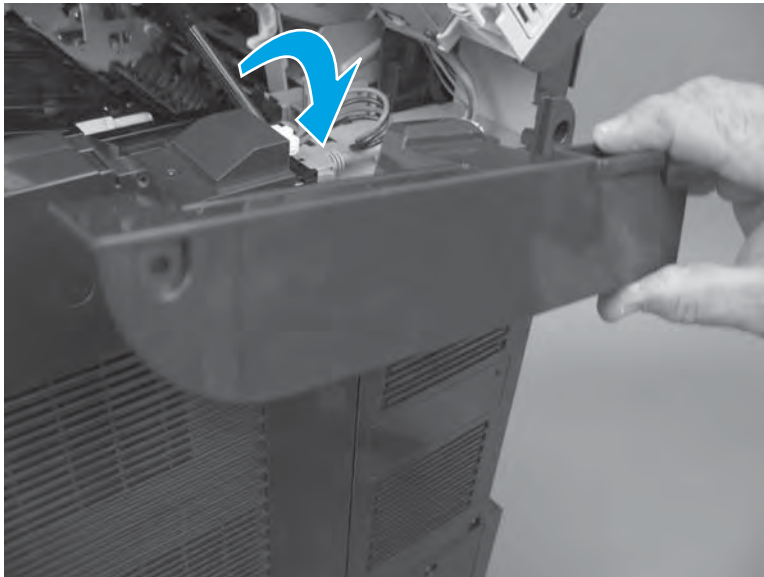
Figure 1-795 Install three screws



Step 19: Install the image scanner cable cover

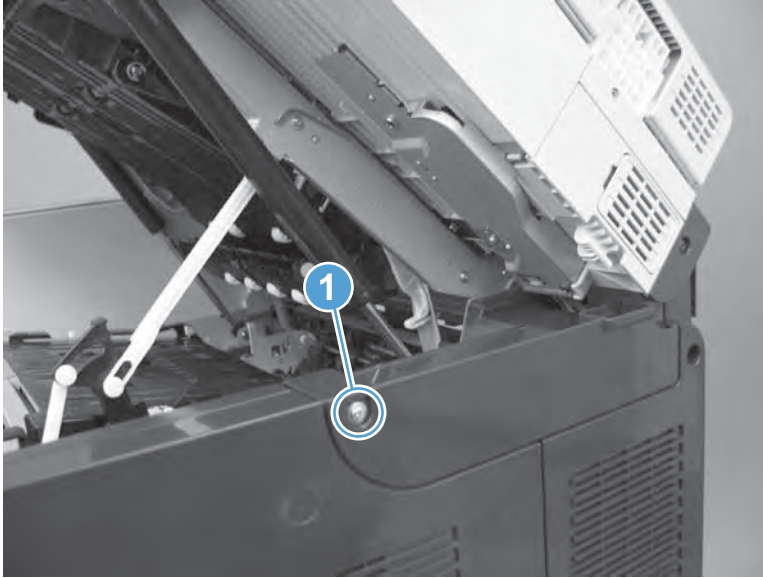
1. Install the cover on the product.

Figure 1-796 Install the cover



2. Install one screw (callout 1), and then close the top cover.

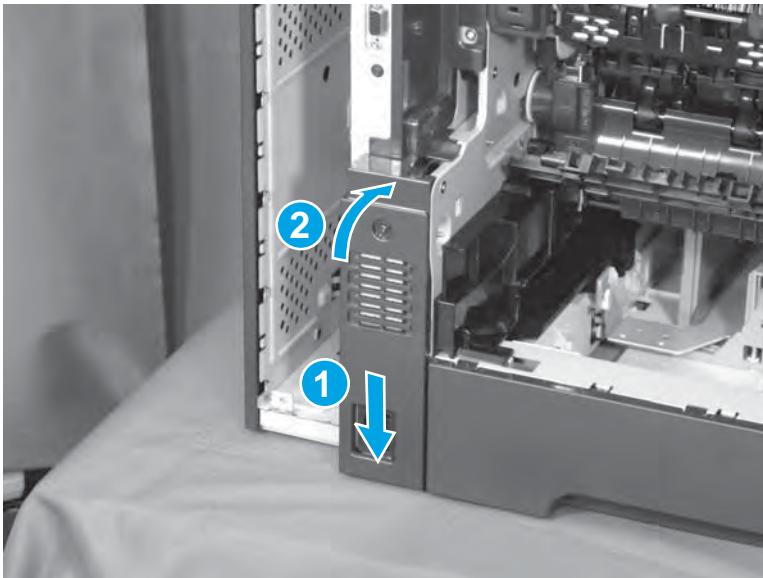
Figure 1-797 Install one screw



Step 20: Install the side-rear cover

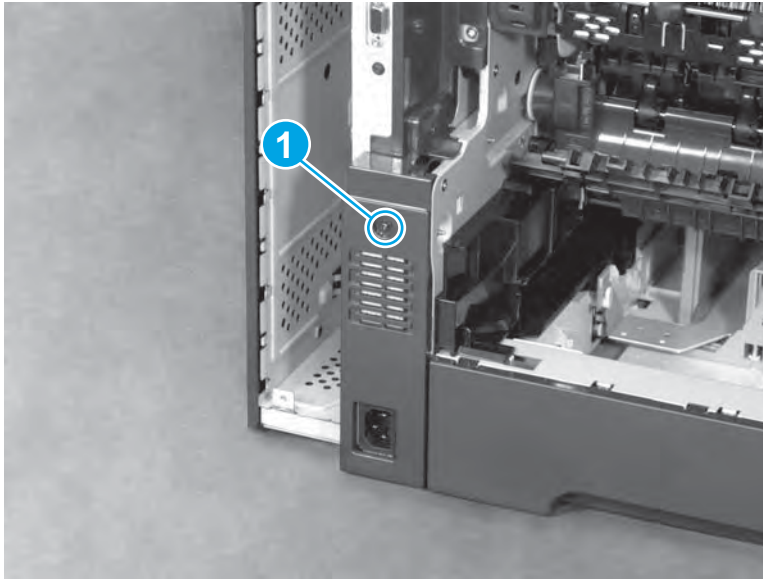
1. Position the bottom of the cover on the product (callout 1), and then rotate the top of the cover toward the product (callout 2) to install it.

Figure 1-798 Install the side-rear cover




2. Install one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-799 Install one screw



Step 21: Install the duplex accessory

- ▲ Position the duplex assembly on the product at a slight angle, engage the slide rails, and then slide the duplex assembly all of the way into the product to install it.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that the duplex accessory is full installed.


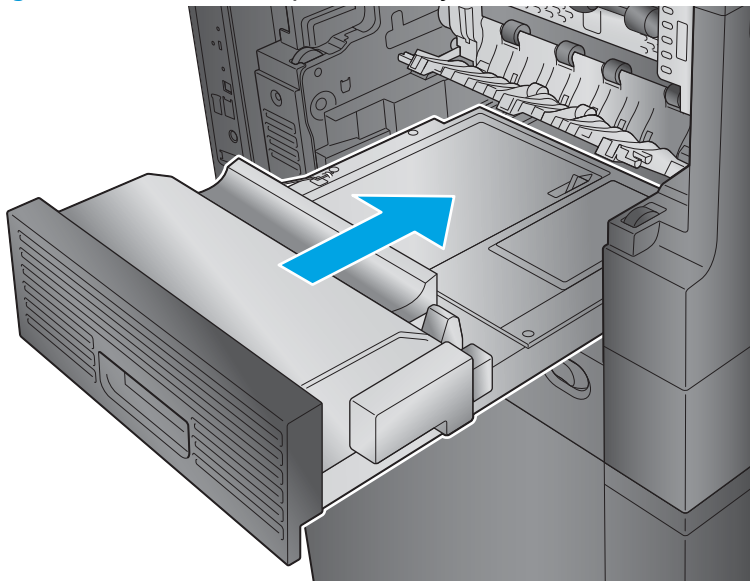
 **NOTE:** After servicing, turn the power off, and then on again so that the product detects the installed duplex accessory.

Figure 1-800 Install the duplex accessory

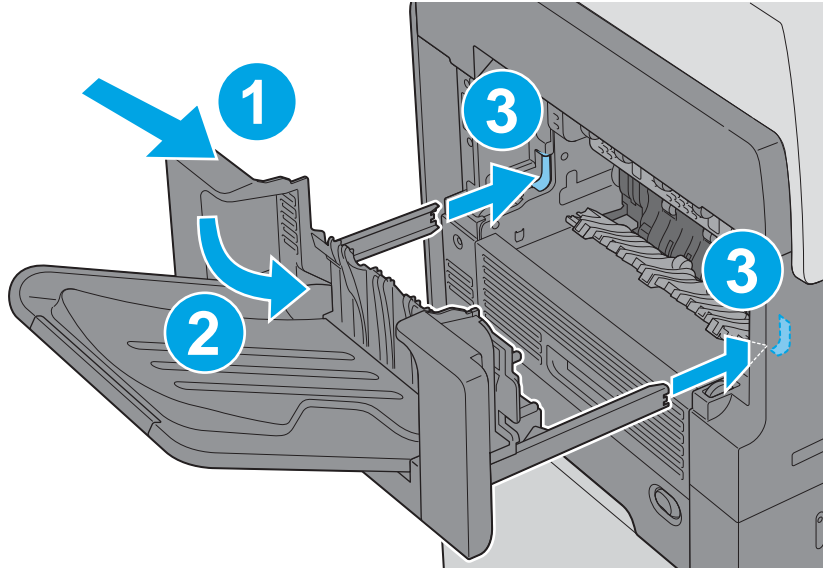


Step 22: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox

- ▲ Do one of the following:

- a. **M630dn and M630f:** Position the assembly at an angle to the product (callout 1), lower the assembly into place (callout 2) while engaging the slide rails (callout 3), and then slide the bin base into the product.

Figure 1-801 Install the output bin



- b. **M630z:** Position the assembly at an angle to the product (callout 1), lower the assembly into place (callout 2) while engaging the slide rails (callout 3), connect the interface cable (callout 4), and then slide the stapling mailbox (callout 5) into the product.


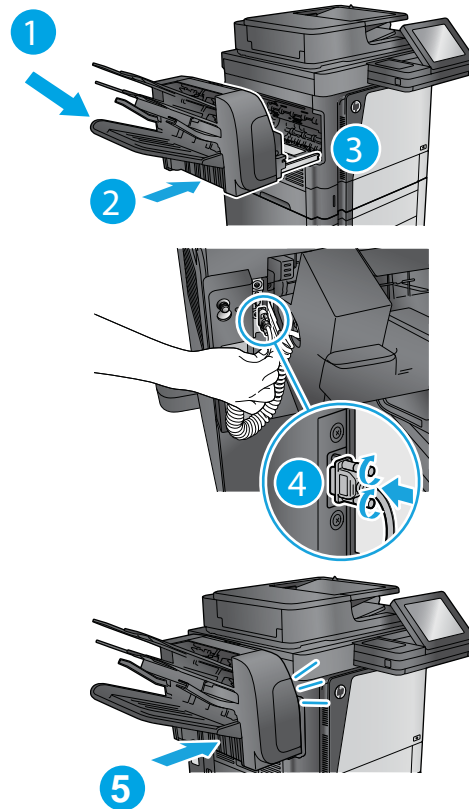
 **TIP:** After servicing, turn the power off, and then on again so that the product detects the installed stapling mailbox.

Figure 1-802 Install the stapling mailbox

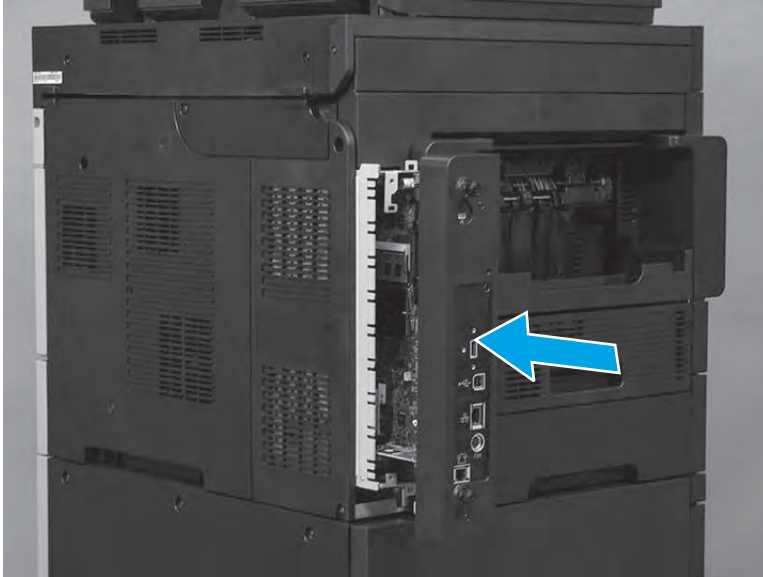


Step 23: Install the formatter

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

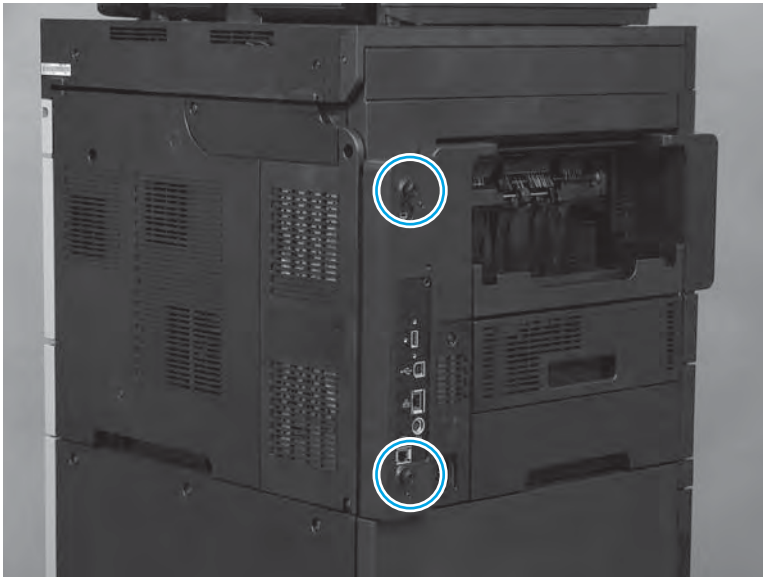
1. Align the formatter with the guides at the top and bottom of the formatter cage and push the formatter into the slot until it is fully seated.

Figure 1-803 Align the formatter with the guides and push the formatter into the slot




2. Finger-tighten the two thumbscrews.

Figure 1-804 Tighten the two thumbscrews



Step 24: Test the installation

1. Do the following steps:
 - a. Reconnect all cables to the formatter.
 - b. Plug in the power cord.
2. Turn on the product.

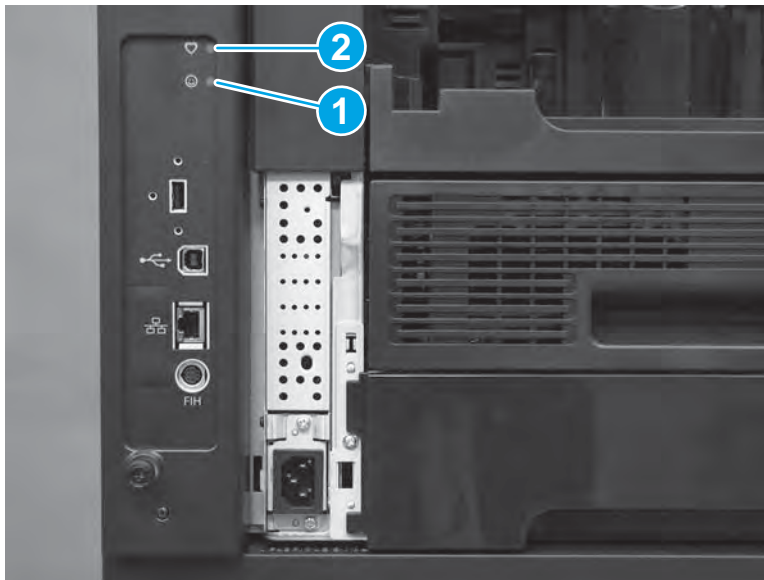
 **TIP:** If the product does not initialize when the power is turned on, make sure that the memory DIMM is correctly installed.

To verify that the formatter is correctly installed, observe the following functions of the LEDs on the formatter:

- The heartbeat LED (callout 1) illuminates if the formatter is functioning correctly.
 - While the product is initializing, the heartbeat LED illuminates solid red for about one second, and then turns solid green for about twenty seconds.
 - After the initialization sequence is complete, the heartbeat LED blinks continuously if the printer is functioning correctly.
- The connectivity LED (callout 2) indicates that the formatter is completely seated. It illuminates green when the product power is turned on and stays green if the formatter is properly seated.

If the LEDs do not correctly function, turn the product power off, remove the formatter, and then reinstall it (make sure that the formatter is fully seated before tightening the thumbscrews).

Figure 1-805 Verify that the formatter is functioning



Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Lifter base assembly

Remove the following assemblies:

- Formatter. See [Step 1: Remove the formatter on page 24](#).
- Output bin and bin base assembly. See [Output bin and bin base assembly on page 68](#).

 **NOTE:** If the optional HP Stapling Mailbox is installed, remove it.

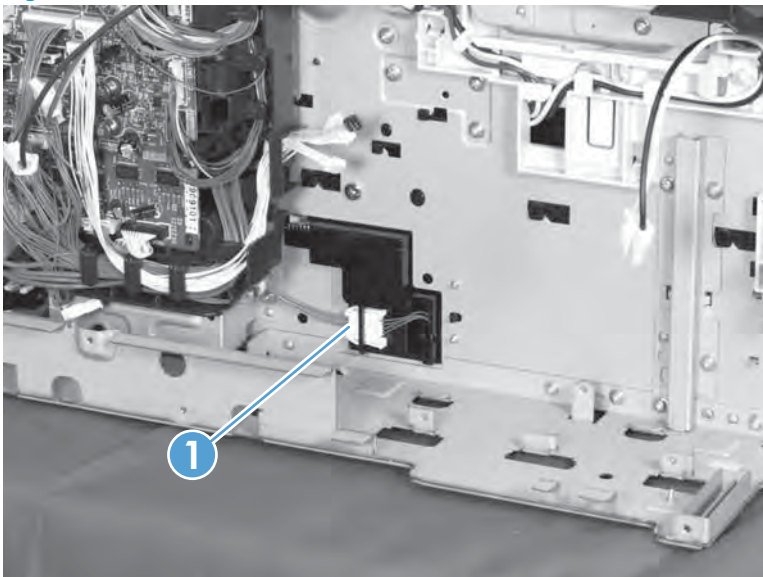
- Duplex accessory. See [Duplex accessory on page 70](#).
- Image scanner cable cover. See [Image scanner cable cover on page 283](#).
- Side-rear cover. See [Side-rear cover on page 296](#).
- Rear-right cover. See [Rear-right cover on page 323](#).
- Rear-left cover. See [Rear-left cover on page 327](#).
- Rear-top cover. See [Rear-top cover on page 335](#).
- DC controller shield-plate assembly. See [DC controller shield-plate assembly on page 382](#).
- DC controller. See [DC controller on page 391](#).
- Interconnect board (ICB). See [Interconnect board \(ICB\) on page 426](#).
- Low-voltage power supply. See [Low-voltage power supply \(LVPS\) on page 479](#).

Remove the lifter base assembly

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

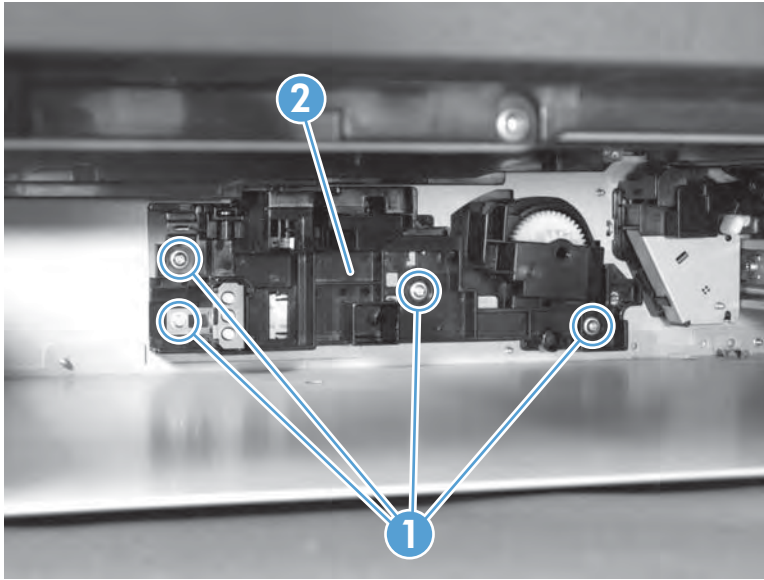
1. Disconnect the left side of one inline connector (callout 1).

Figure 1-806 Disconnect one connector



2. Remove the cassette, remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the lifter assembly.

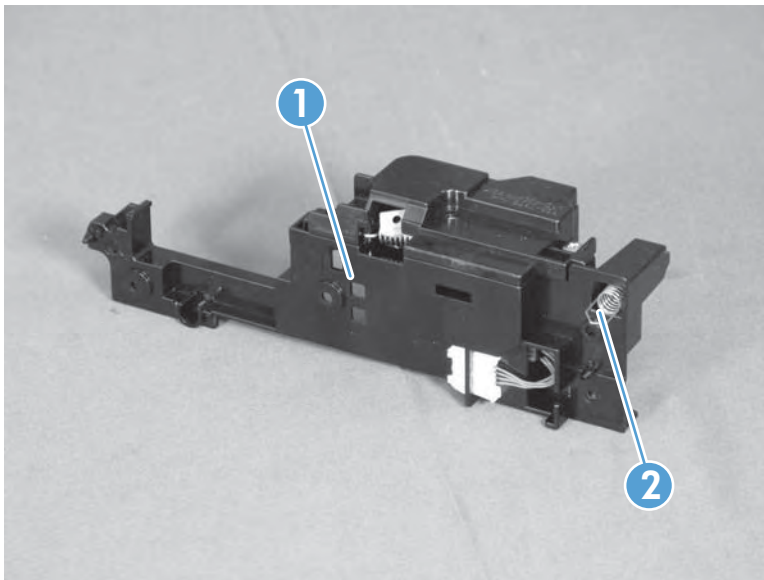
Figure 1-807 Remove the lifter assembly



3. If necessary, remove one spring (callout 1) from the lifter assembly.

⚠ CAUTION: Be careful when handling the assembly. The spring is not captive and can be easily dislodged and lost.

Figure 1-808 Remove one spring



Lifter assembly

Remove the following assemblies:

- Formatter. See [Step 1: Remove the formatter on page 24](#).
- Output bin and bin base assembly. See [Output bin and bin base assembly on page 68](#).



NOTE: If the optional HP Stapling Mailbox is installed, remove it.

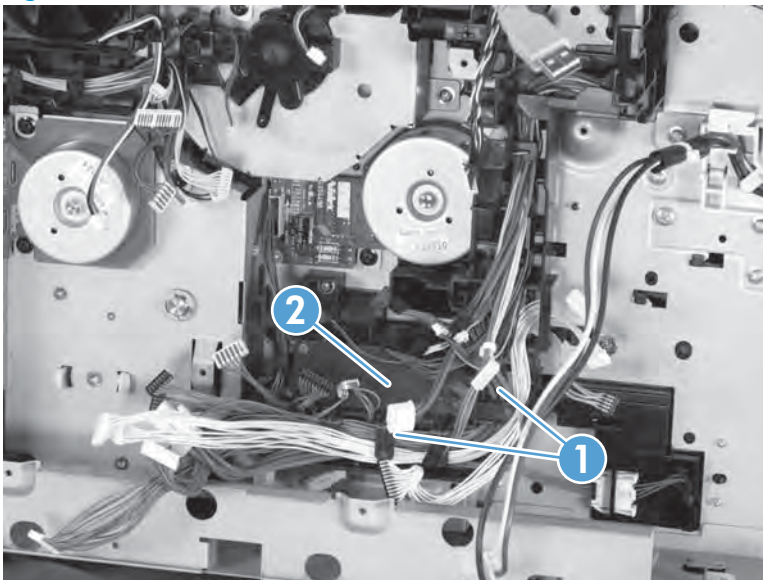
- Duplex accessory. See [Duplex accessory on page 70](#).
- Image scanner cable cover. See [Image scanner cable cover on page 283](#).
- Side-rear cover. See [Side-rear cover on page 296](#).
- Rear-right cover. See [Rear-right cover on page 323](#).
- Rear-left cover. See [Rear-left cover on page 327](#).
- Rear-top cover. See [Rear-top cover on page 335](#).
- DC controller shield-plate assembly. See [DC controller shield-plate assembly on page 382](#).
- DC controller. See [DC controller on page 391](#).
- Interconnect board (ICB). See [Interconnect board \(ICB\) on page 426](#).

Remove the lifter assembly

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

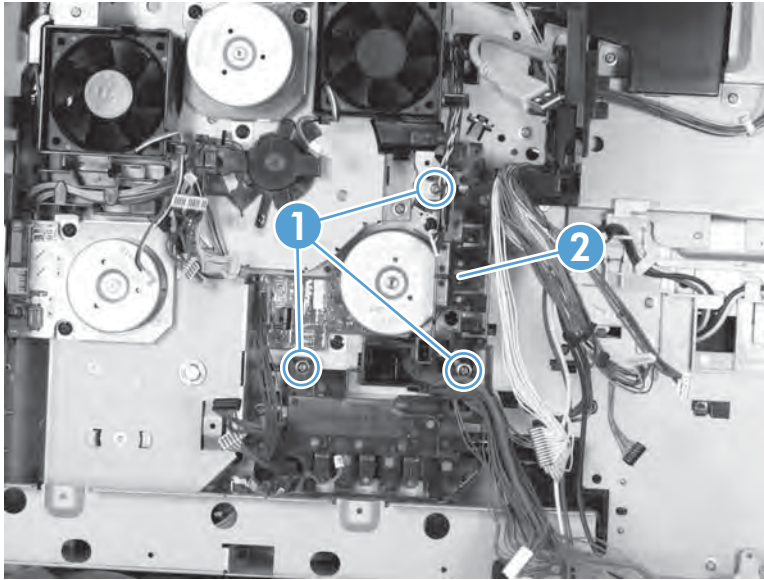
1. Release the wire harnesses (callout 1) from the guides (callout 2).

Figure 1-809 Release the wire harnesses



2. Remove three screws (callout 1), and then remove the guide (callout 2).

Figure 1-810 Remove the the guide

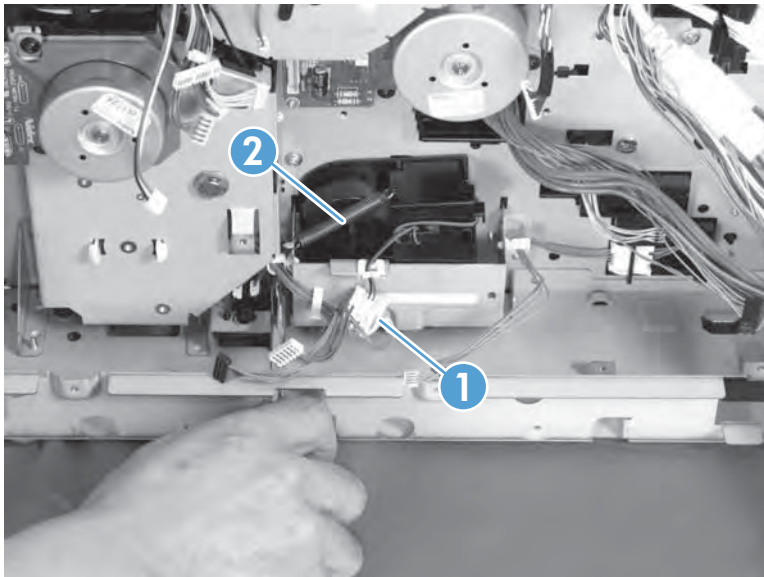


3. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove one spring (callout 2).

⚠ CAUTION: Be careful when handling the assembly. The spring is not captive and can be easily dislodged and lost.

HP recommends disconnecting the spring from the product chassis, and then leaving it connected to the assembly.

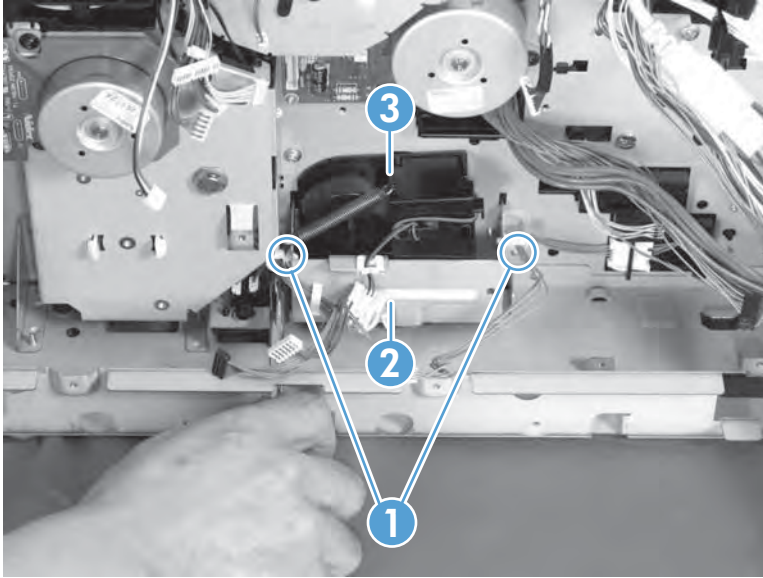
Figure 1-811 Disconnect one connector and remove one spring



4. Remove two screws (callout 1), remove the holder (callout 2), and then remove the lifter assembly (callout 3).

⚠ CAUTION: To remove the assembly, two wire harness must be released from the retainers. One of these wire harnesses is not captive and can easily be lost.

Figure 1-812 Remove the lifter assembly



High-voltage power supply (HVPS)

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the formatter](#)
- [Step 2: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox](#)
- [Step 3: Remove the duplex accessory](#)
- [Step 4: Remove the fuser-entrance guide](#)
- [Step 5: Remove the fuser](#)
- [Step 6: Remove the front cover](#)
- [Step 7: Remove the side-rear cover](#)
- [Step 8: Remove the image scanner cable cover](#)
- [Step 9: Remove the rear-right cover](#)
- [Step 10: Remove the rear-left cover](#)
- [Step 11: Remove the rear-top cover](#)
- [Step 12: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly](#)
- [Step 13: Remove the DC controller](#)
- [Step 14: Remove the ICB](#)
- [Step 15: Remove the LVPS](#)
- [Step 16: Remove the HVPS](#)
- [Step 17: Unpack the replacement HVPS](#)
- [Step 18: Install the HVPS](#)
- [Step 19: Install the LVPS](#)
- [Step 20: Install the ICB](#)
- [Step 21: Install the DC controller](#)
- [Step 22: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly](#)
- [Step 23: Install the rear-top cover](#)
- [Step 24: Install the rear-left cover](#)
- [Step 25: Install the rear-right cover](#)
- [Step 26: Install the side-rear cover](#)
- [Step 27: Install the image scanner cable cover](#)
- [Step 28: Install the front cover](#)
- [Step 29: Install the fuser](#)

- [Step 30: Install the fuser-entrance guide](#)
- [Step 31: Install the duplex accessory](#)
- [Step 32: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox](#)
- [Step 33: Install the formatter](#)
- [Step 34: Test the installation](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the high-voltage power supply (HVPS) for the HP LaserJet Enterprise M630.

Before servicing


Use the table below to identify the correct assembly part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the assembly.

HVPS part number	
RM2-5826-000CN	HVPS (110V)
RM2-5827-000CN	HVPS (220)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip



CAUTION:  This product contains components that can be damaged by electrostatic discharge (ESD). To reduce the chance of ESD damage, place the product on an ESD mat (if available), and wear an ESD wrist strap connected to a grounded surface. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, ground yourself by touching the sheet-metal chassis before touching an ESD-sensitive part.

Step 1: Remove the formatter

1. Do the following steps:

- a. Turn off the product.
- b. Disconnect the power cable.

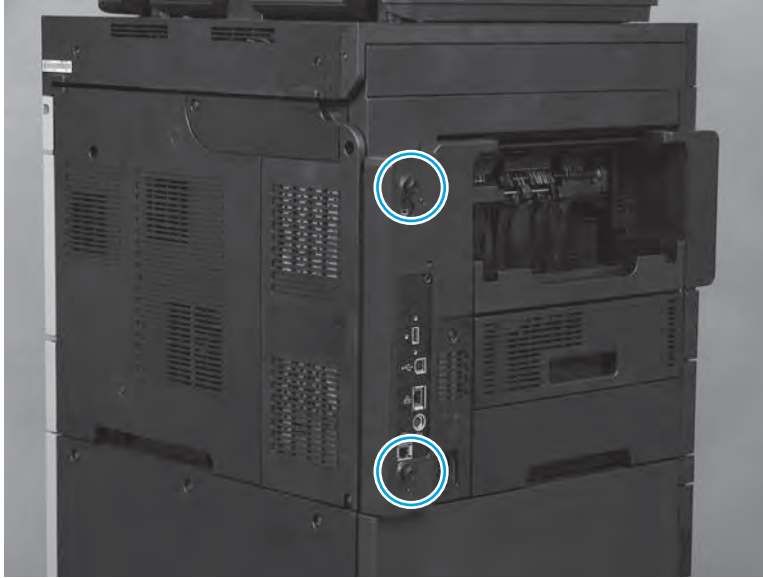


WARNING! To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

- c. Disconnect all cables and accessories attached to the formatter.

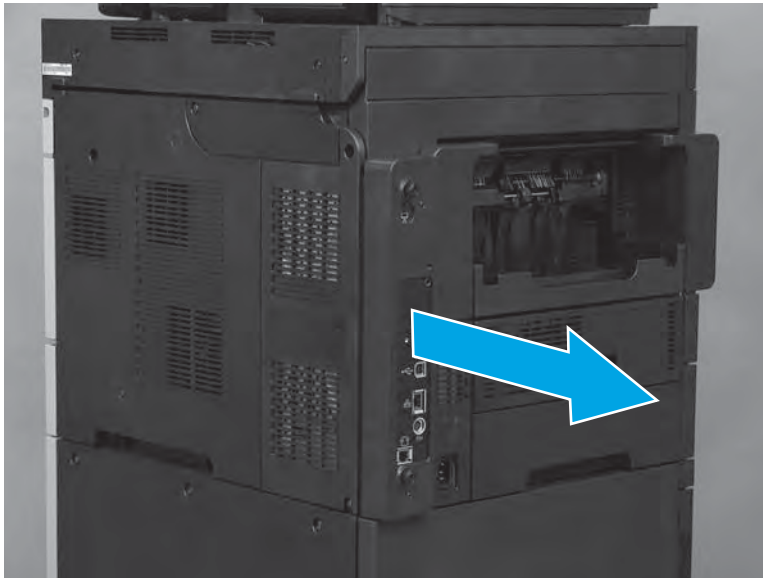
2. Loosen the two thumbscrews on the formatter.

Figure 1-813 Remove the formatter



3. Slide the formatter straight out of the product to remove it.

Figure 1-814 Remove the formatter

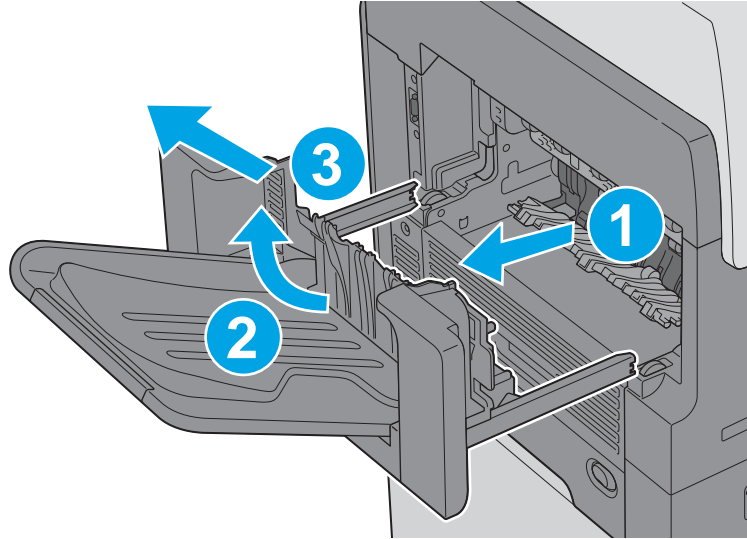


Step 2: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox

- ▲ Do one of the following steps:

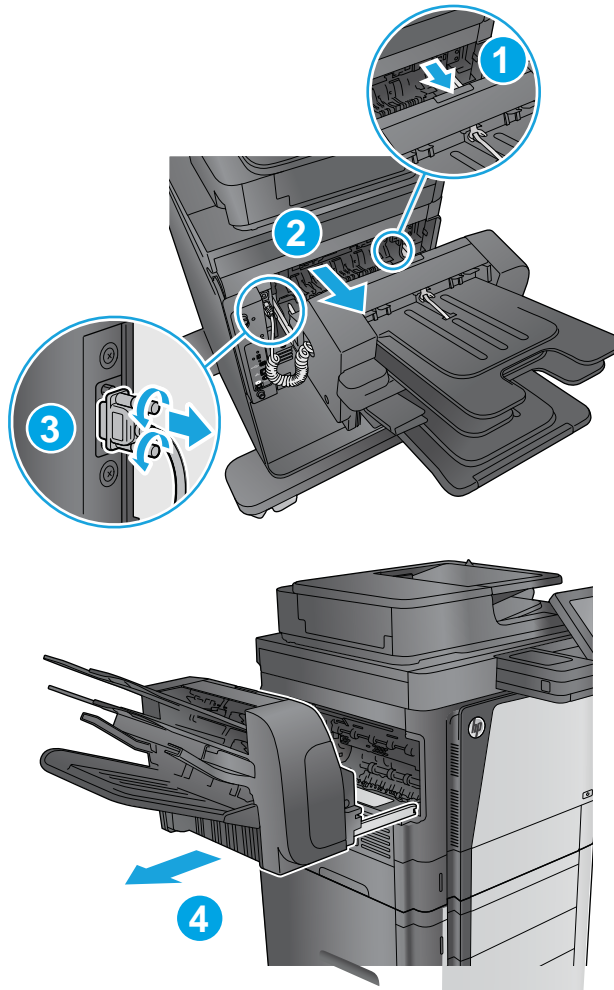
- a. **M630dn and M630f:** Slide the bin base away from the product (callout 1) until it stops, slightly lift up on the assembly to disengage the slide rails (callout 2), and then remove the assembly (callout 3).

Figure 1-815 Remove the output bin



- b. **M630z:** Press the latch (callout 1), pull the stapling mailbox away from the product (callout 2), disconnect the interface cable (callout 3), and then remove the stapling mailbox (callout 4).

Figure 1-816 Remove the stapling mailbox



Step 3: Remove the duplex accessory

- ▲ Slide the duplex assembly away from the product, slightly lift up on the assembly to disengage the slide rails, and then remove it.


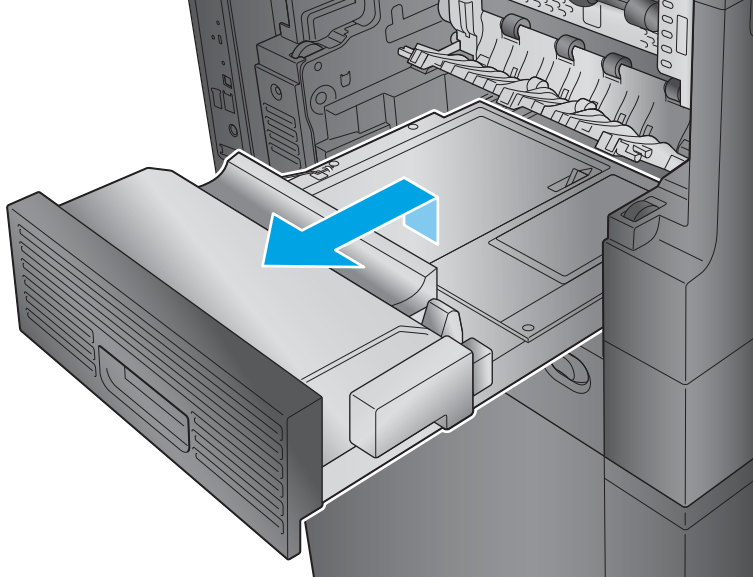
 **NOTE:** Locate the duplexer at the left-hand side of the product.

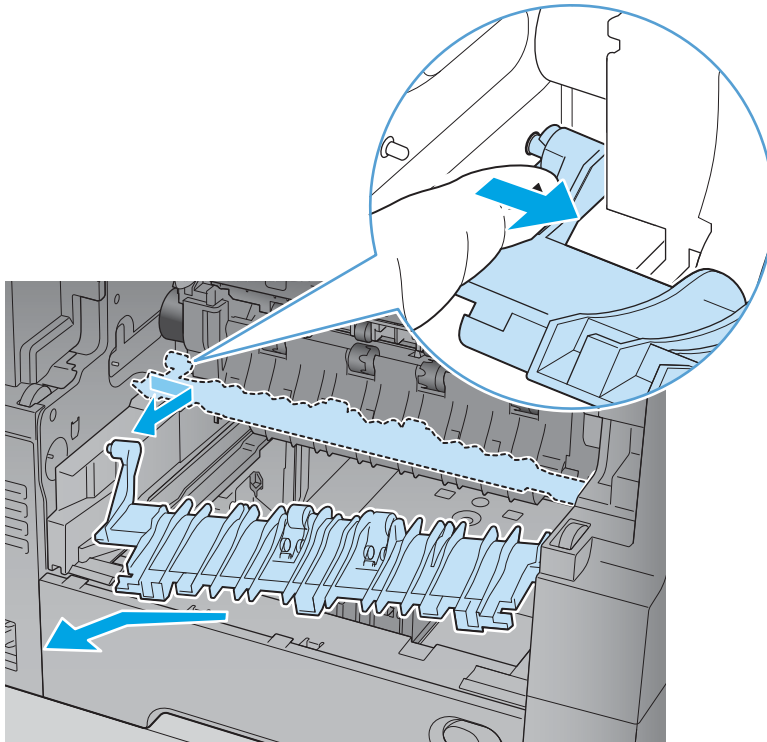
Figure 1-817 Remove the duplex accessory



Step 4: Remove the fuser-entrance guide

1. Flex the rear hinge-pin of the fuser-entrance guide until it clears the mounting hole in the product chassis.
2. Rotate the rear of the guide away of the product and slide the guide to the left to release the front hinge-pin. Remove the fuser-entrance guide.

Figure 1-818 Remove the fuser-entrance guide

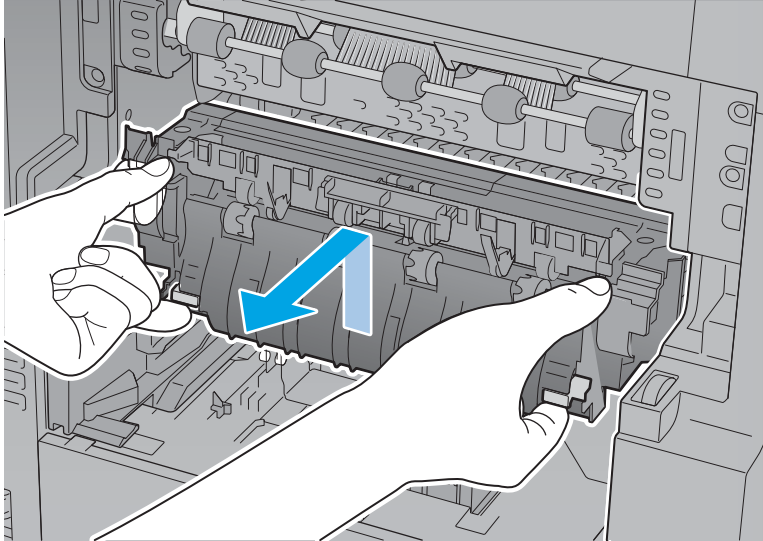


Step 5: Remove the fuser

- ▲ Squeeze the two blue tabs on the fuser to release it, and then slide it out of the product.

⚠ CAUTION: The fuser is very hot. After turning the product power off, allow the fuser to cool for at least 30 minutes before removing it.

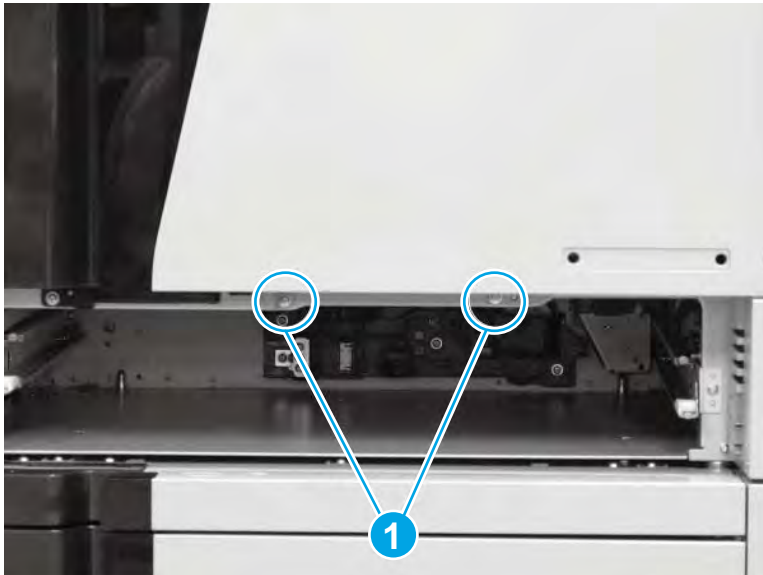
Figure 1-819 Remove the fuser



Step 6: Remove the front cover

1. Remove Tray 2, and then remove two screws (callout 1).

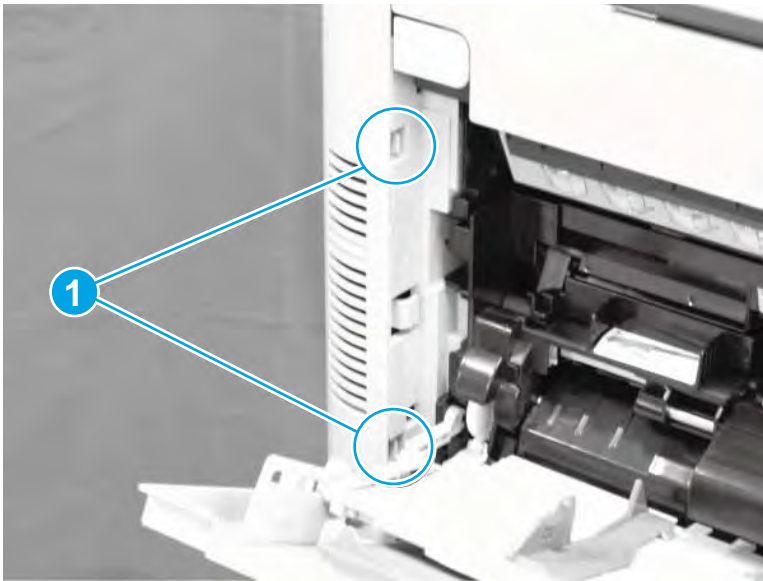
Figure 1-820 Remove two screws



2. Open Tray 1, and then push in on two tabs (callout 1) to release them.

 **TIP:** Release the lower tab first, and then release the upper tab.

Figure 1-821 Release two tabs



3. Carefully flex the right-upper corner of the cover away from the product to release one locking pin.

Figure 1-822 Release the right-upper corner



4. Slide the cover towards the right side of the product to release it.

Figure 1-823 Slide the cover to the right



5. Remove the cover.

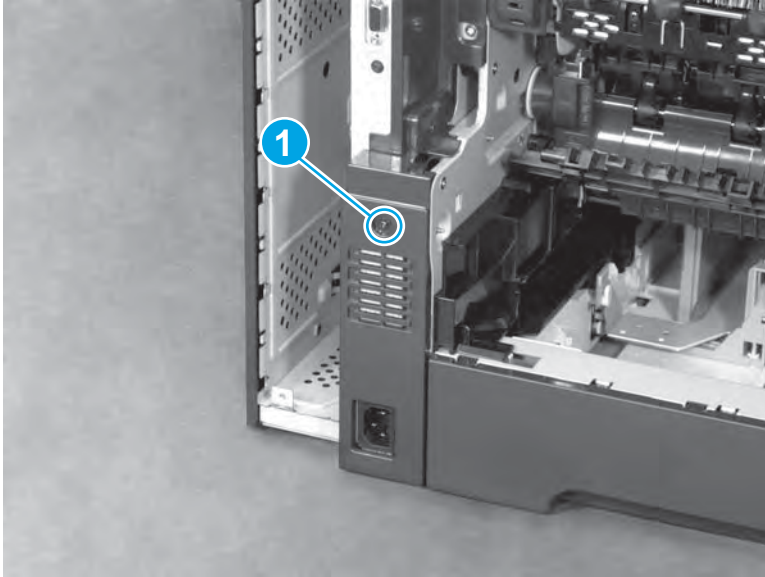
Figure 1-824 Remove the cover



Step 7: Remove the side-rear cover

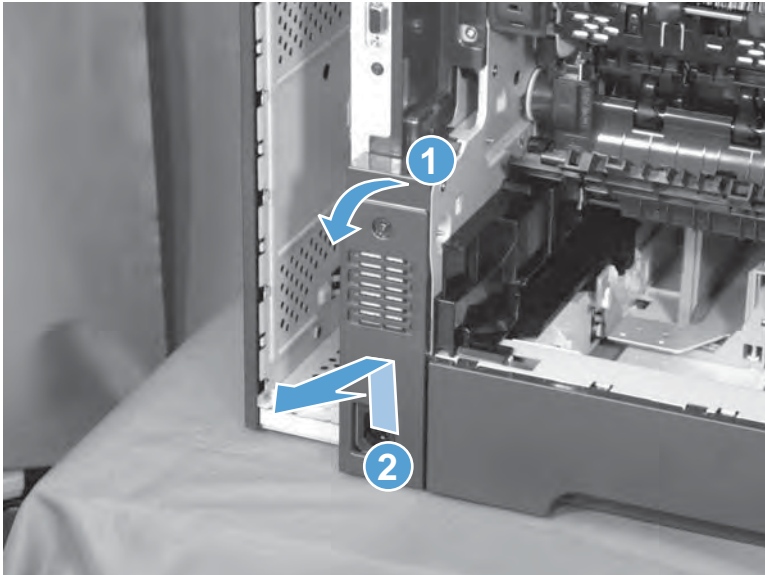
1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-825 Remove one screw



2. Rotate the top of the cover away from the product (callout 1), slightly raise the cover to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

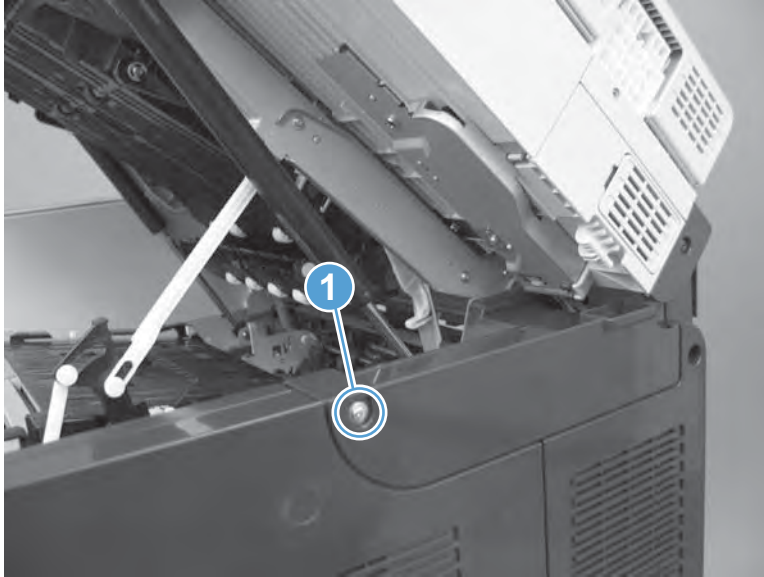
Figure 1-826 Remove the side-rear cover



Step 8: Remove the image scanner cable cover

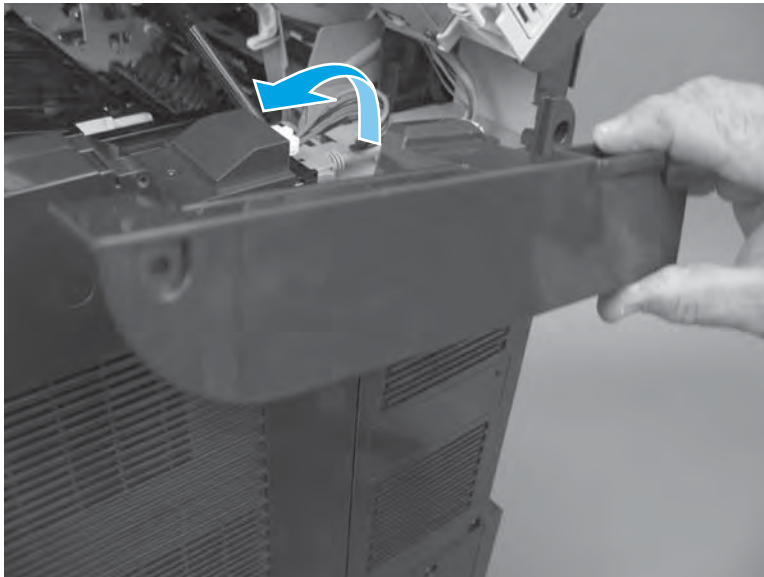
1. Open the top cover, and then remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-827 Remove one screw



2. Remove the cover.

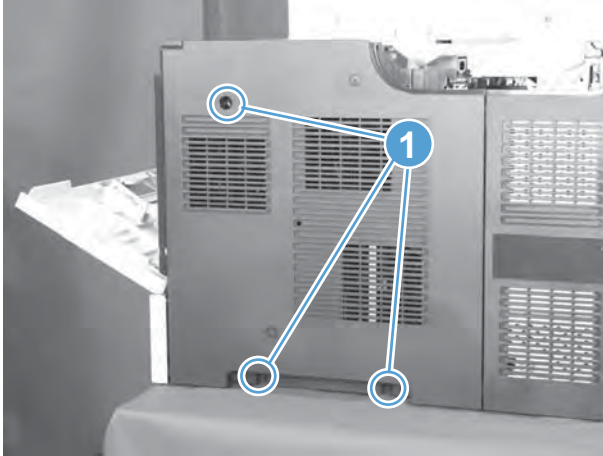
Figure 1-828 Remove the cover



Step 9: Remove the rear-right cover

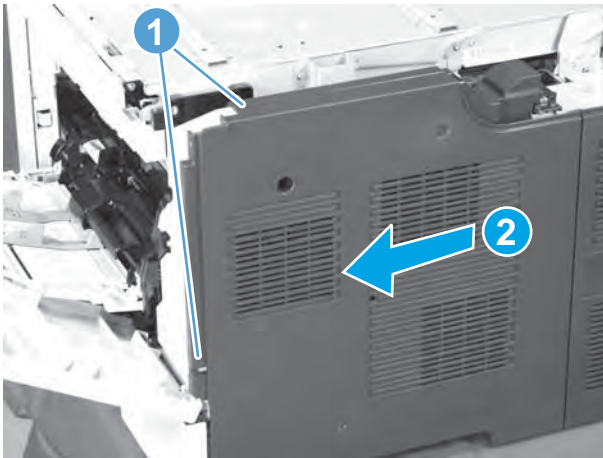
1. Open the top cover and Tray 1, and then remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-829 Remove three screws



2. Release two tabs (callout 1), slightly separate the edge of the cover near Tray 1 from the product, slide the cover towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

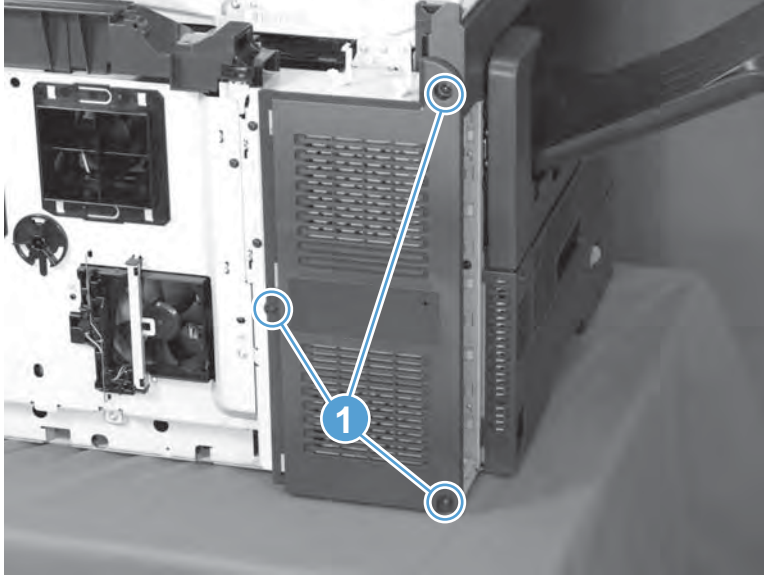
Figure 1-830 Remove the cover



Step 10: Remove the rear-left cover

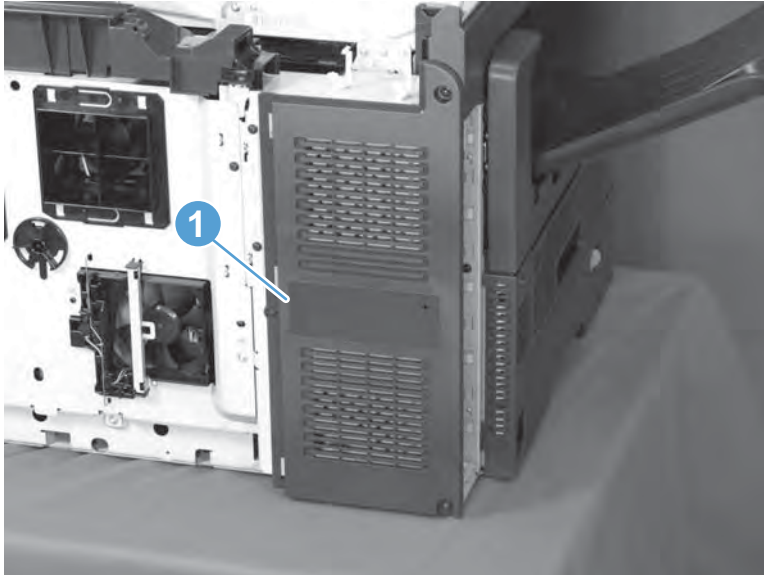
1. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-831 Remove three screws



2. Remove the cover (callout 1).

Figure 1-832 Remove the cover

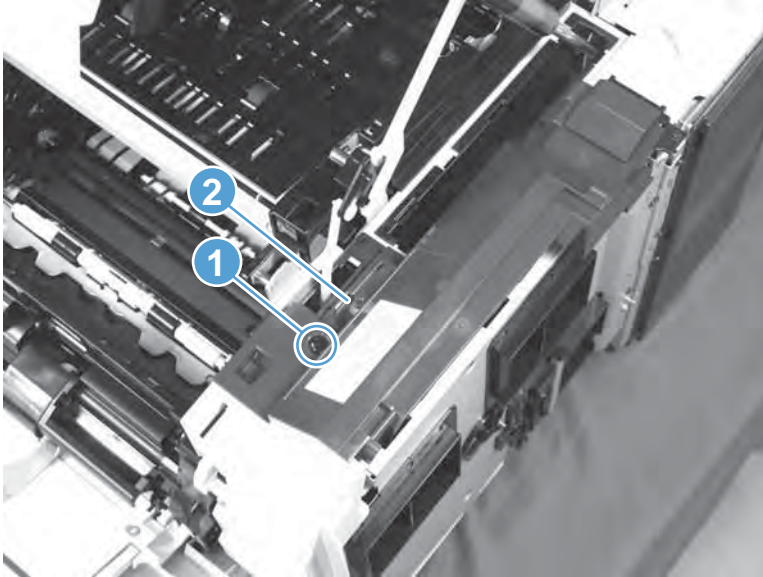


Step 11: Remove the rear-top cover

 **NOTE:** If the top cover is closed, open it now.

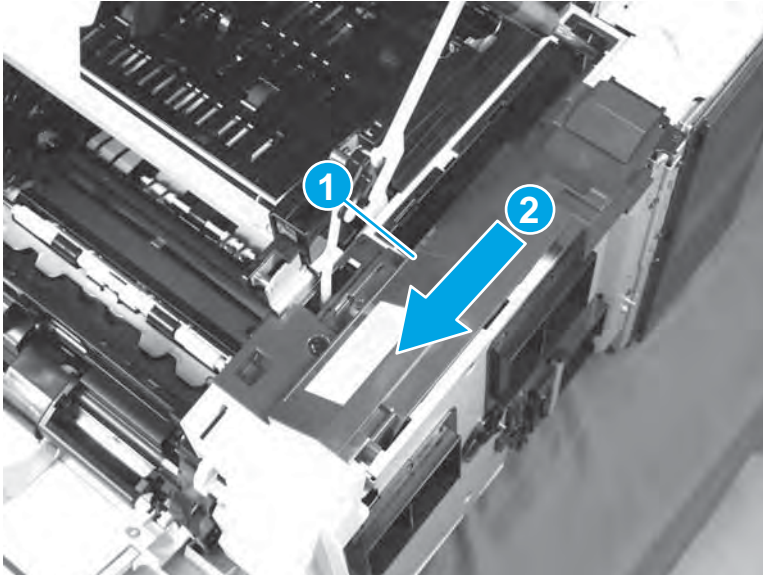
1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release one tab (callout 2).

Figure 1-833 Remove one screw



2. Push the cover (callout 1) towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

Figure 1-834 Remove the cover

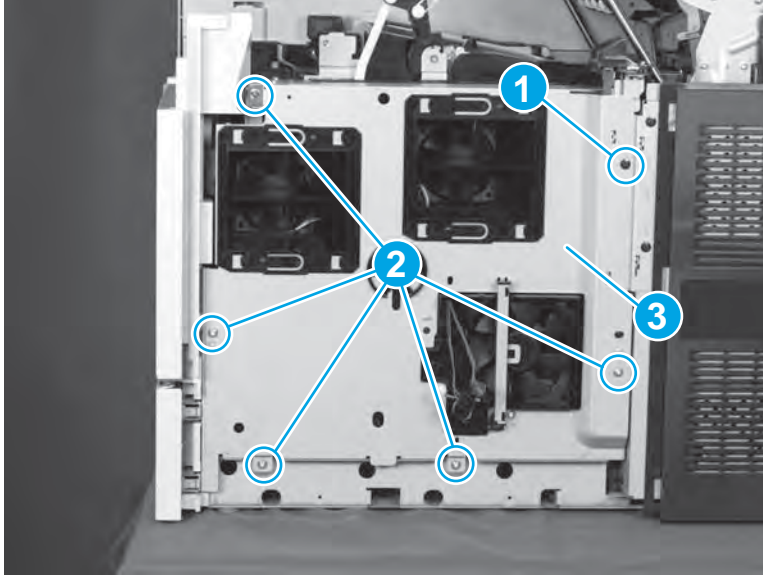


Step 12: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly

1. Remove one black screw (callout 1), remove five silver screws (callout 2), and then slightly rotate the top of the shield (callout 3) away from the product.

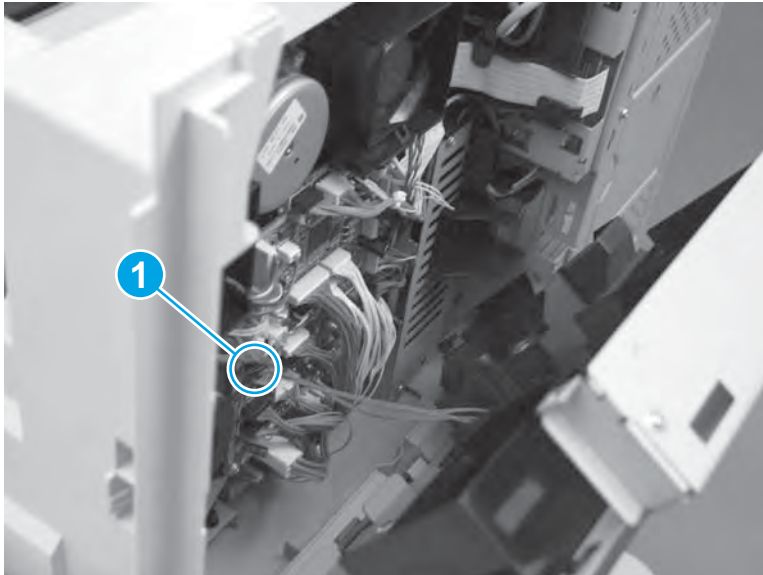
CAUTION: The shield is still connected to the product by a wire harness. Do not completely remove the shield after removing the screws.

Figure 1-835 Remove six screws



2. Disconnect one connector (J42; callout 1) from the DC controller, and then remove the DC controller shield.

Figure 1-836 Disconnect one connector and remove the shield

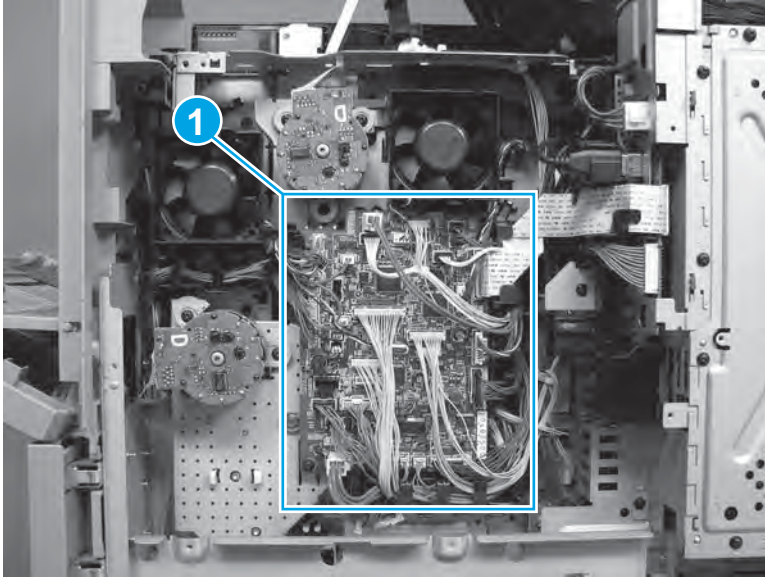


Step 13: Remove the DC controller

1. Disconnect all of the connectors (callout 1) on the DC controller.
 - 34 wire-harness connectors
 - 1 flat-flexible cable (FFC)

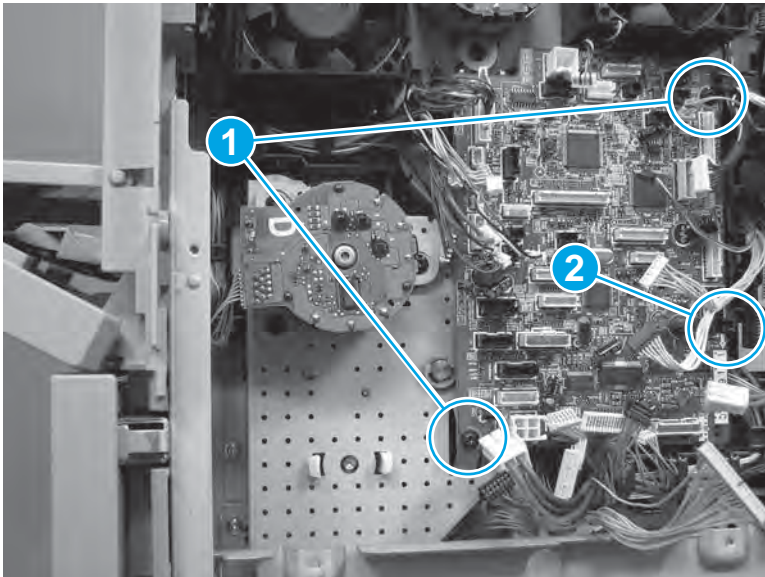
 **Reinstallation tip:** When the DC controller is reinstalled, connectors J42, J59, and J80 are empty.

Figure 1-837 Disconnect all of the connectors



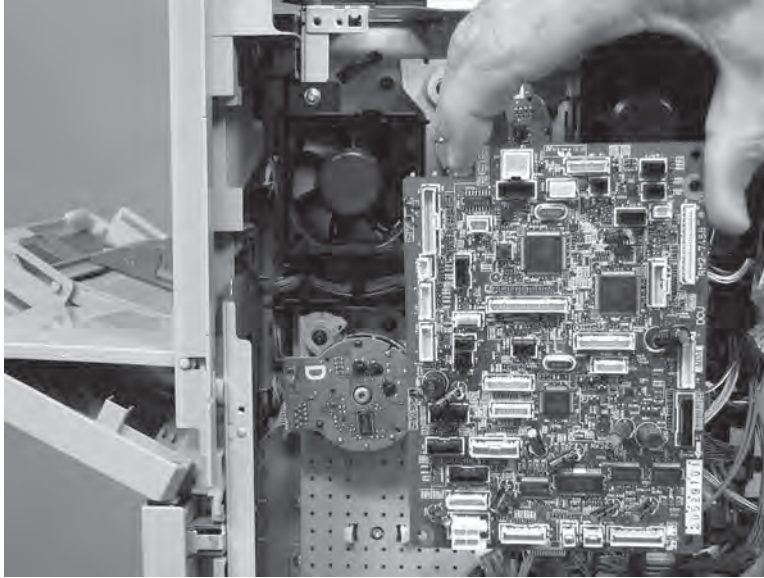
2. Remove two screws (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2).

Figure 1-838 Remove two screws and release one tab




3. Remove the DC controller.

Figure 1-839 Remove the DC controller

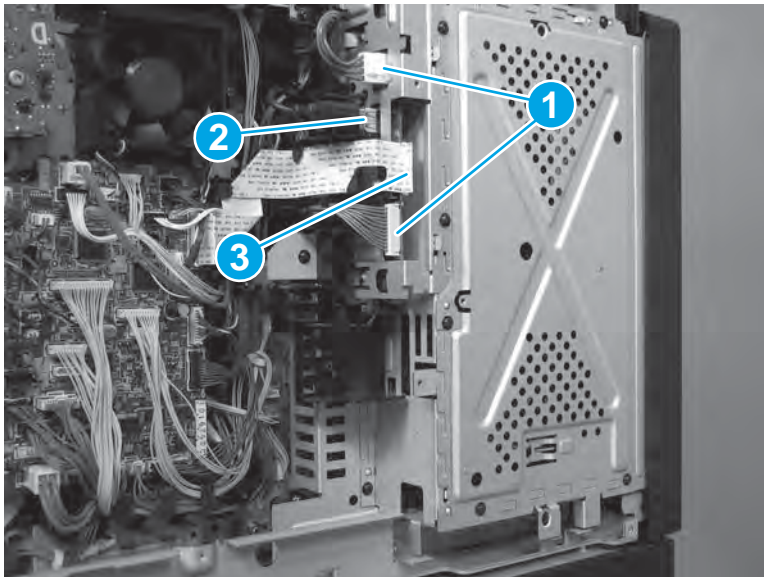


Step 14: Remove the ICB


 ESD sensitive assembly.

1. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), one USB connector (callout 2), and then disconnect one FFC (callout 3).

Figure 1-840 Disconnect four connectors

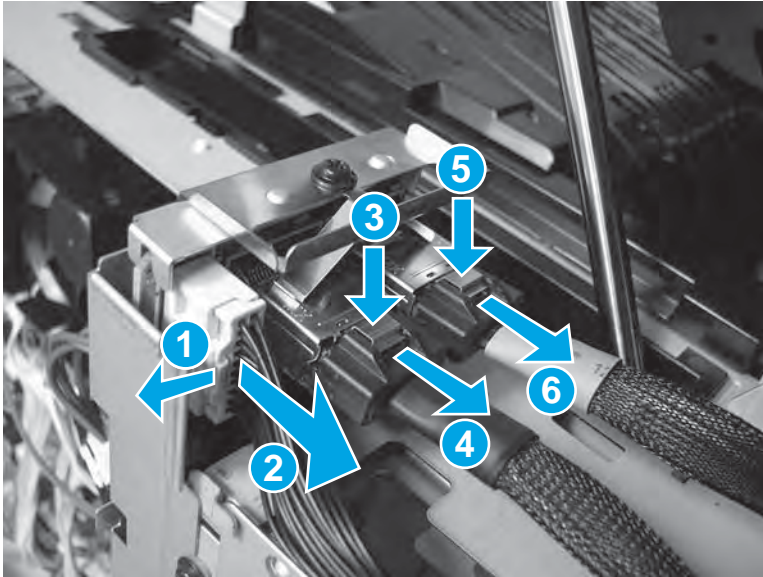


2. Use a small flat-blade screw driver to release three connectors.

 **TIP:** When the two connectors with the metal retainer clips (callouts 3/4/5/6) are reinstalled, make sure that the clips snap in place to securely lock the connectors in place.

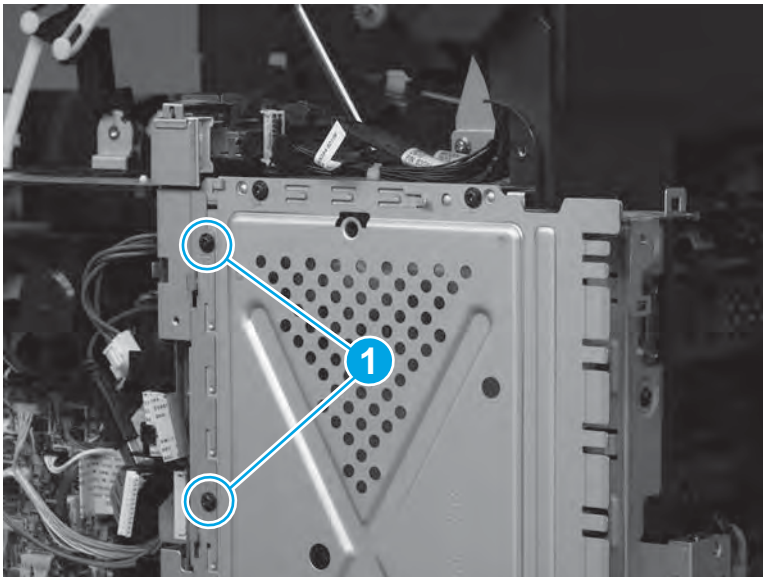
The wire harness with the blue band (callouts 5/6) connects to the inner connector on the ICB when reinstalled.

Figure 1-841 Disconnect three connectors



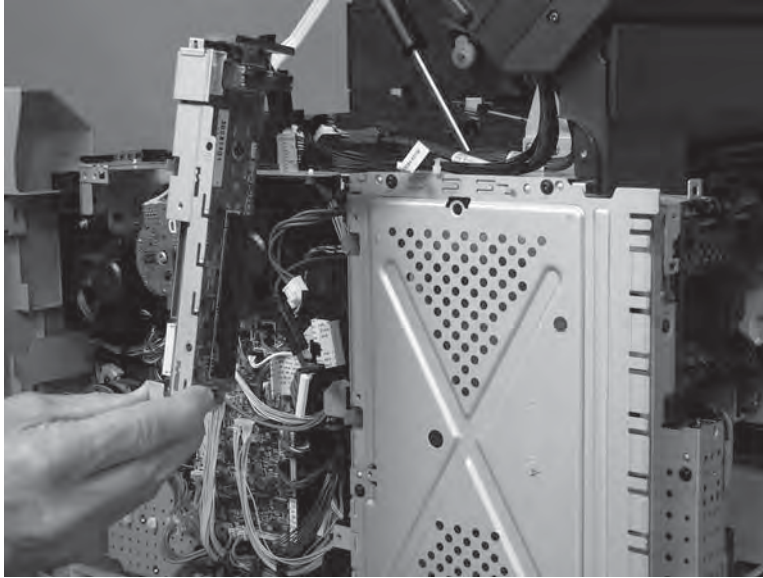
3. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-842 Remove two screws




4. Remove the ICB.

Figure 1-843 Remove the ICB

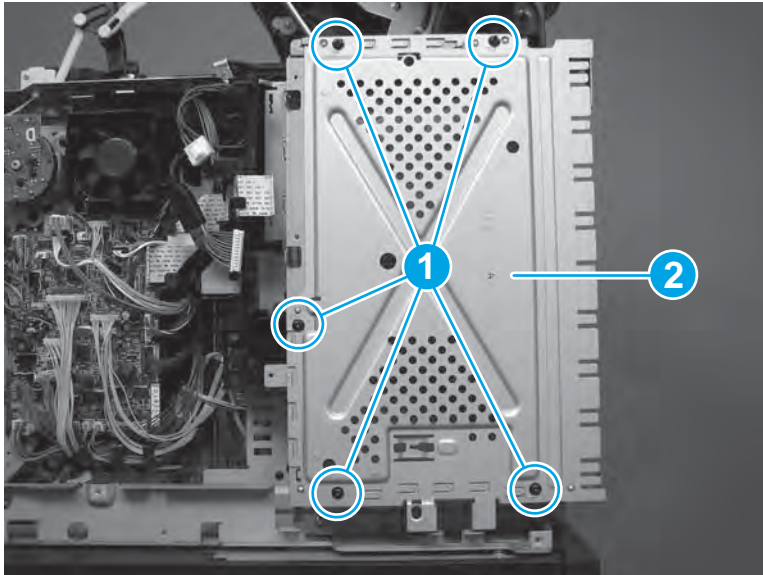


Step 15: Remove the LVPS

 ESD sensitive assembly.

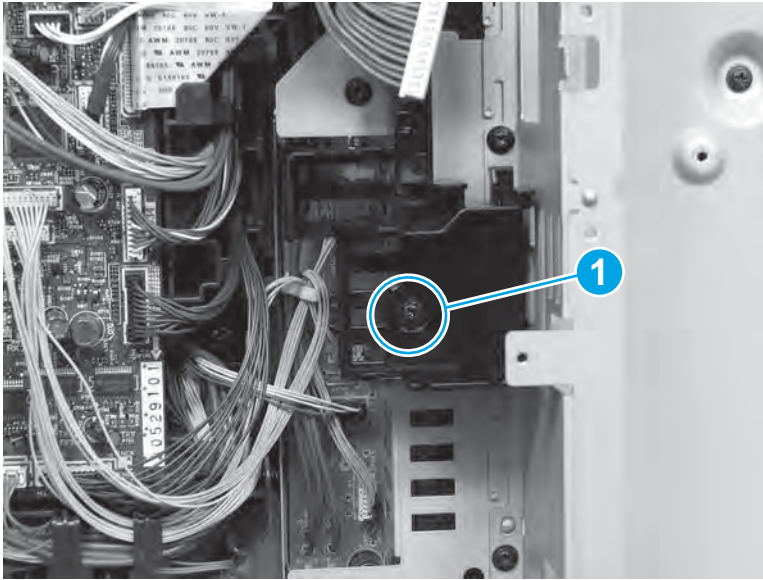
1. Remove five screws (callout 1), and the sheet-metal plate (callout 2).

Figure 1-844 Remove the sheet-metal plate



2. Remove one screw (callout 1) near the DC controller.

Figure 1-845 Remove one screw



3. Remove the guide (callout 1).


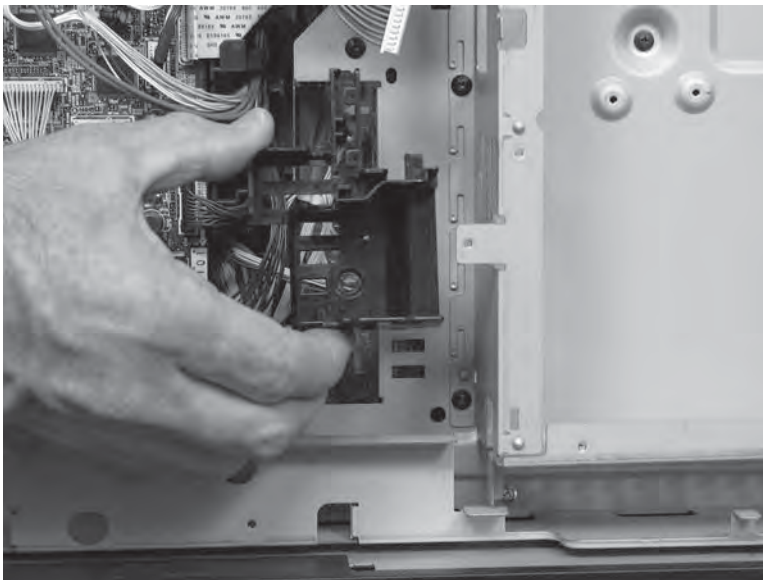
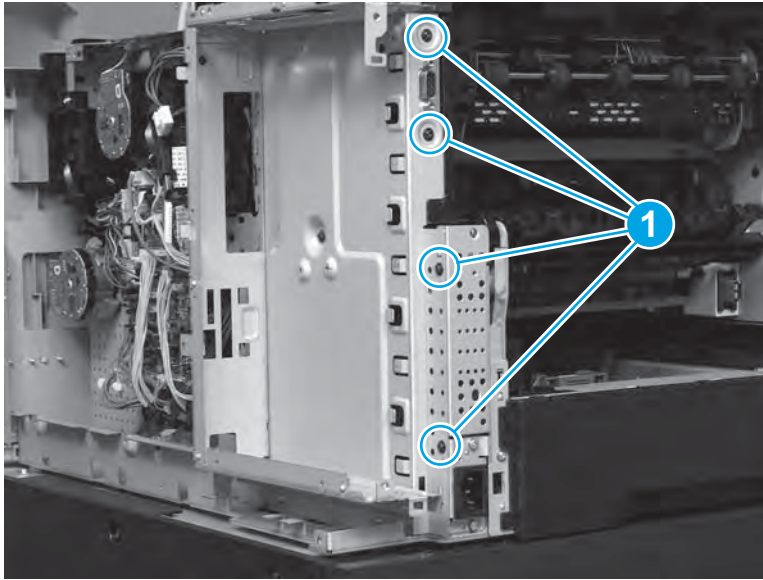
 **Reinstallation tip:** Insert the hook at the top of the guide into the slot in the chassis, and then rotate the bottom of the guide into place.

Figure 1-846 Remove the guide



4. Remove four black screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-847 Remove four screws



5. Remove five screws (callout 1).


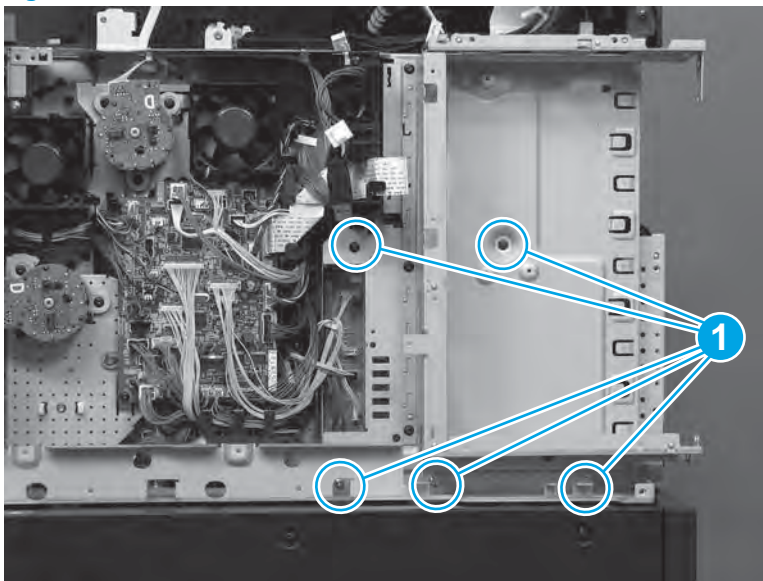
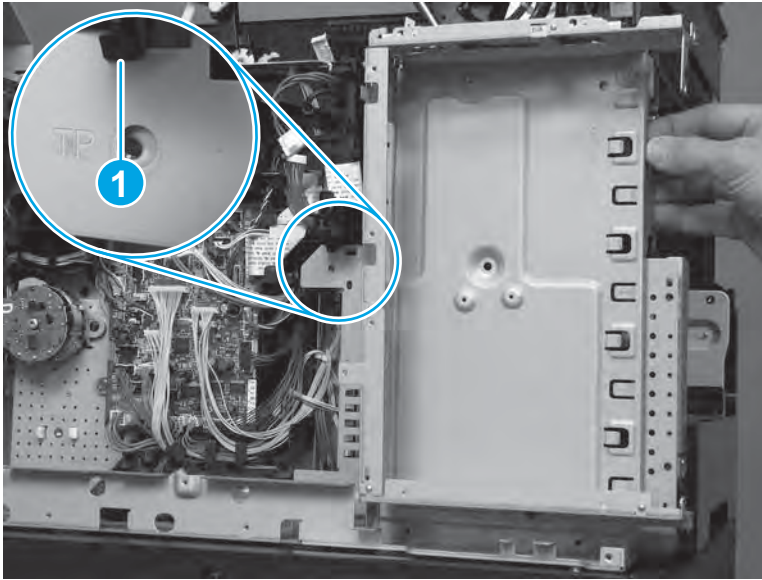
 **NOTE:** The two upper screws are black, and the three screws across the bottom are silver.

Figure 1-848 Remove two screws



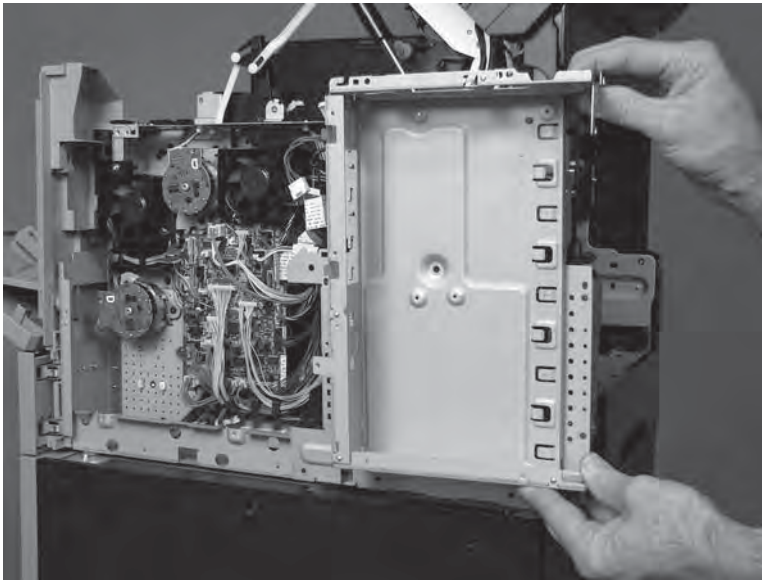
6. Slightly separate the sheet-metal plate from the product, and then release one tab (callout 1).

Figure 1-849 Release one tab




7. Remove the sheet-metal plate from the product.

Figure 1-850 Remove the sheet-metal plate



8. Disconnect seven connectors (callout 1), and then release the wire harness from the retainer (callout 2).

 **NOTE:** These wire-harnesses are stiff and can make the connectors difficult to disconnect.


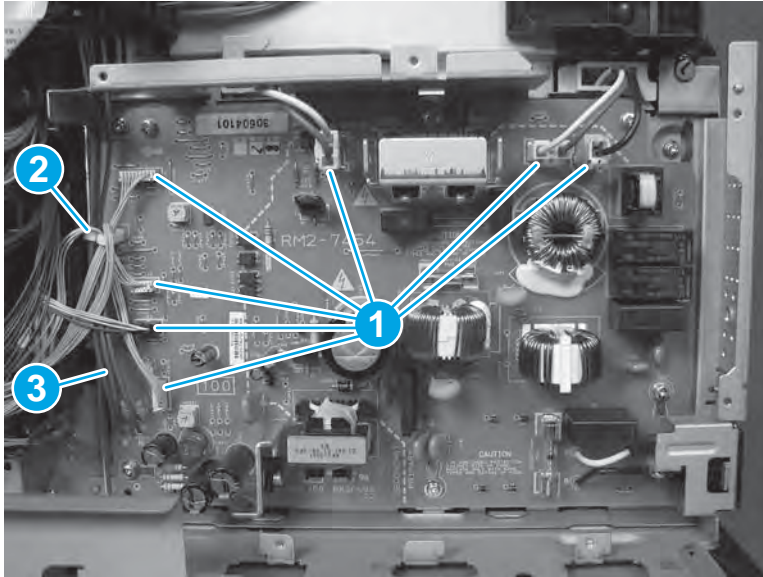
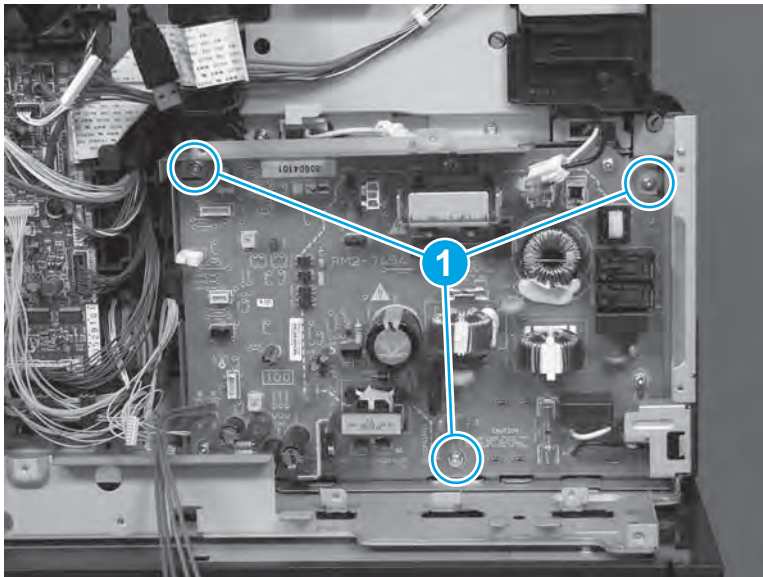
 **TIP:** The 4-wire wire harness (callout 3; two brown and 2 blue wires) cannot be disconnected from the LVPS, and does not need to be released from the retainer.

Figure 1-851 Disconnect seven connectors



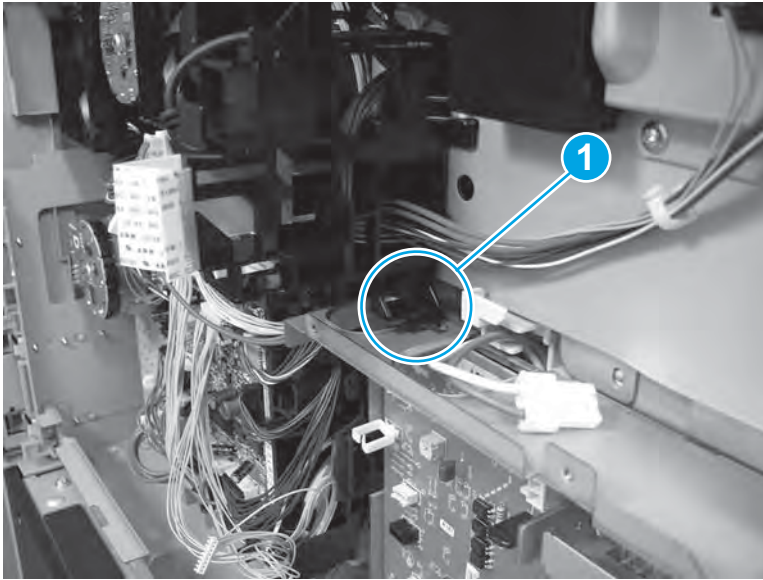
9. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-852 Remove three screws



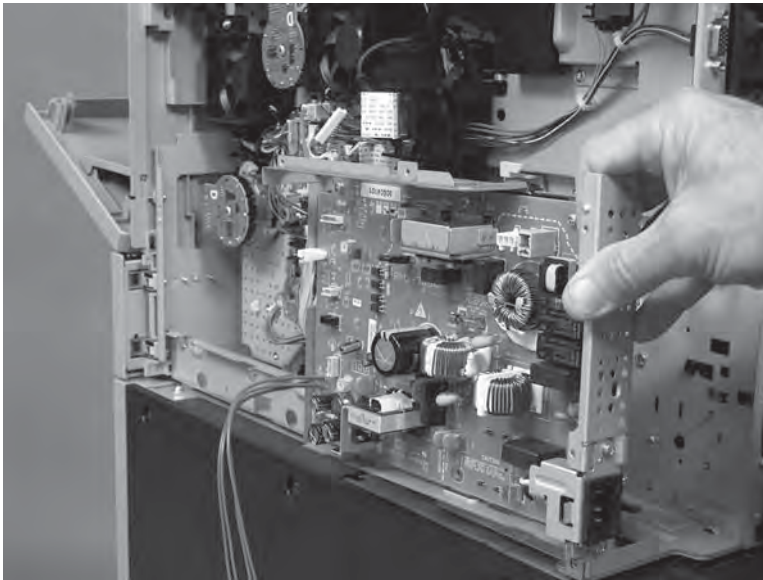
10. Release one tab (callout 1).

Figure 1-853 Release one tab



11. Remove the LVPS.

Figure 1-854 Remove the LVPS

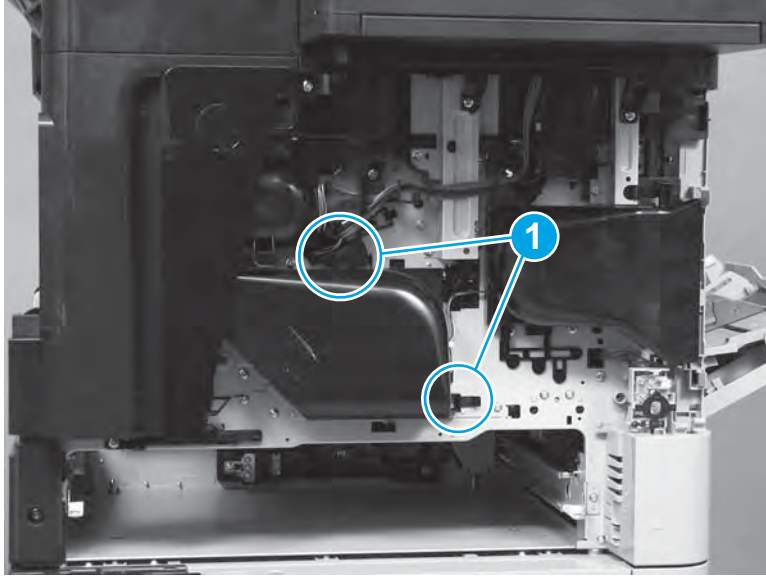


Step 16: Remove the HVPS

 ESD sensitive assembly.

1. Release two tabs (callout 1).

Figure 1-855 Release two tabs



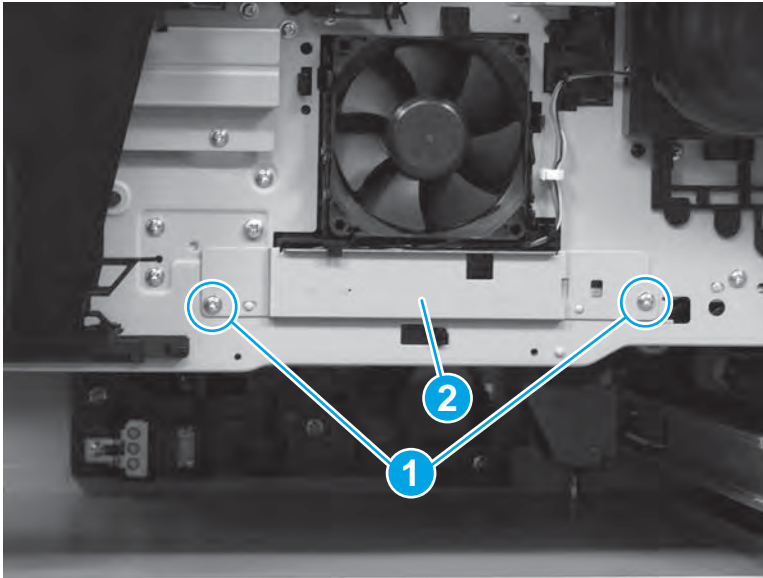
2. Remove the fan duct.

Figure 1-856 Remove the fan duct



3. At the front of the product, remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the cover (callout 2).

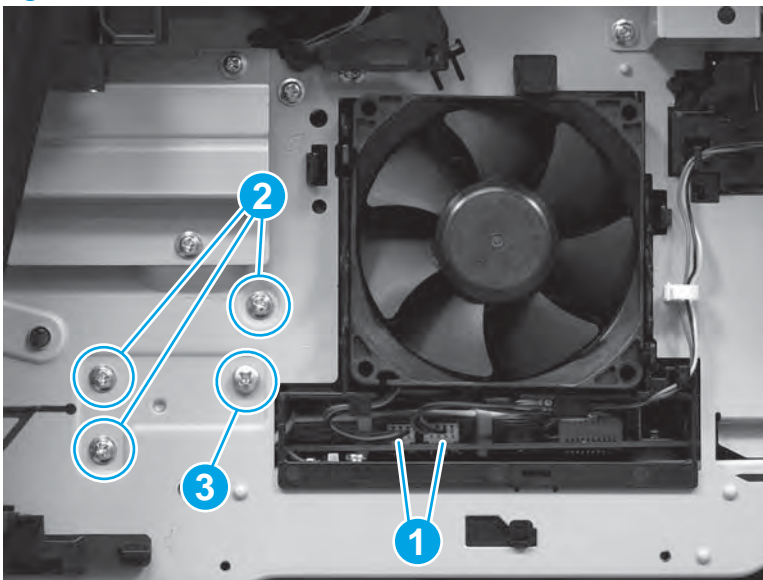
Figure 1-857 Remove the cover



4. At the front side of the product, disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove four screws (callout 2/3).

 **NOTE:** One screw (callout 3) is larger than the others.

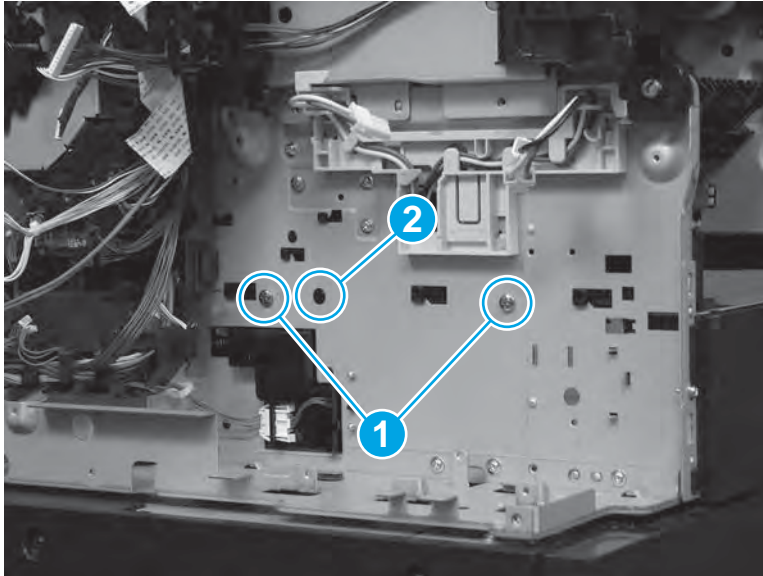
Figure 1-858 Disconnect two connectors and remove four screws



5. At the back of the product, remove two screws (callout 1), and then release one locking button (callout 2).

 **NOTE:** Keep the tab (callout 2) depressed.

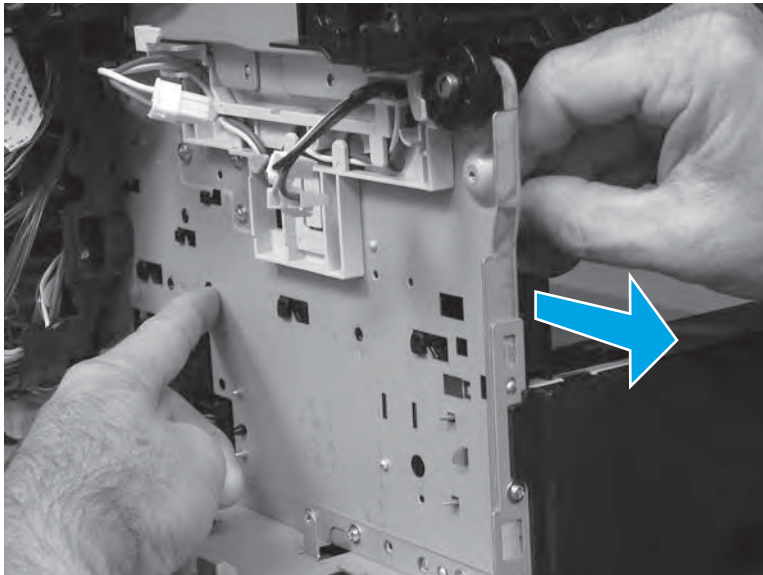
Figure 1-859 Remove two screws and release one tab



6. Slide the guide to the right to release it.

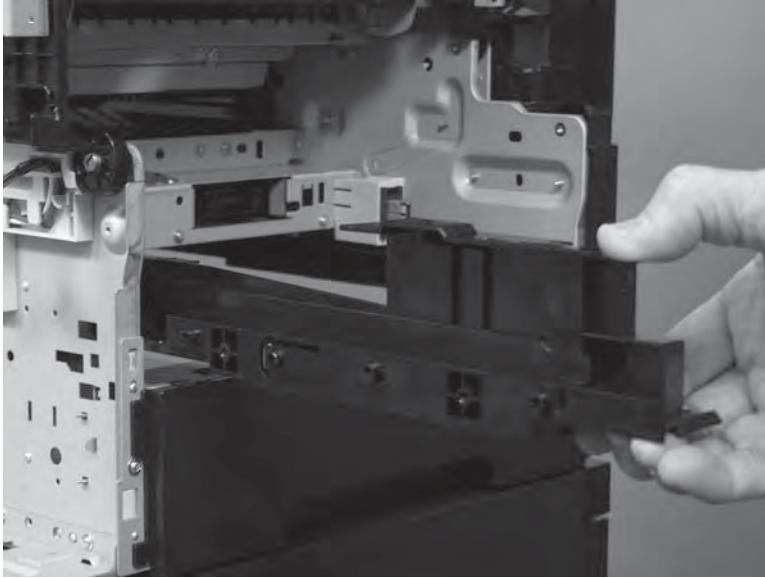
 **NOTE:** The guide is located inside the product chassis (where the removed duplexer would be installed).

Figure 1-860 Release the guide



7. Remove the guide.

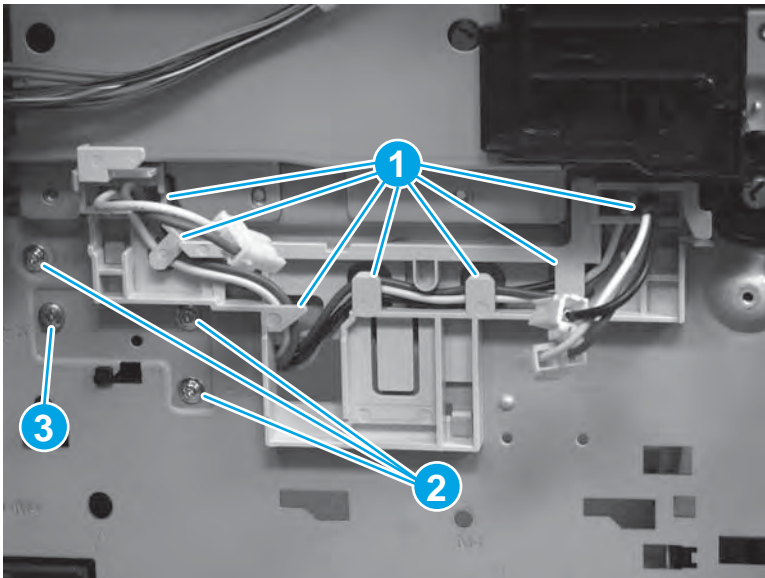
Figure 1-861 Remove the guide



8. At the back of the product, release the LVPS wire harnesses from the guide (callout 1), and then remove four screws (callout 2/3).

 **NOTE:** One screw (callout 3) is larger than the others.

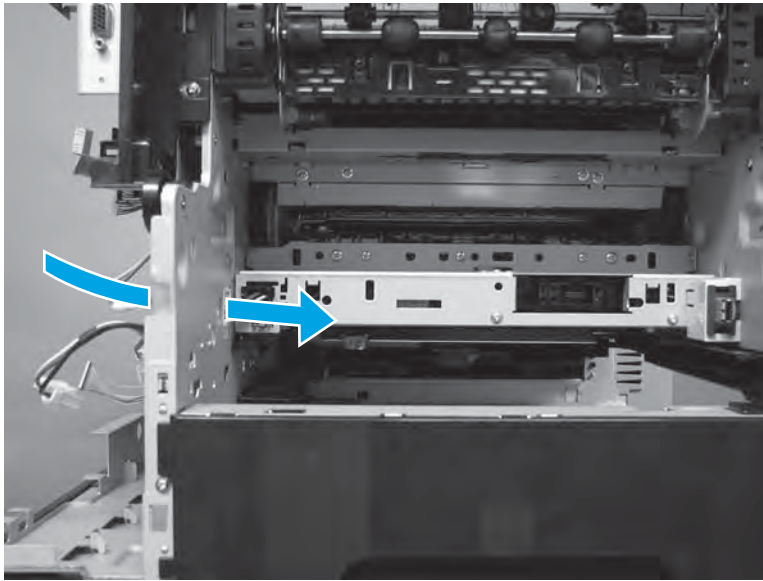
Figure 1-862 Release the wire harnesses and remove four screws



- Support the HVPS and feed the LVPS wire harnesses through the hole in the chassis.

CAUTION: Be careful. Do not damage the wire harnesses.

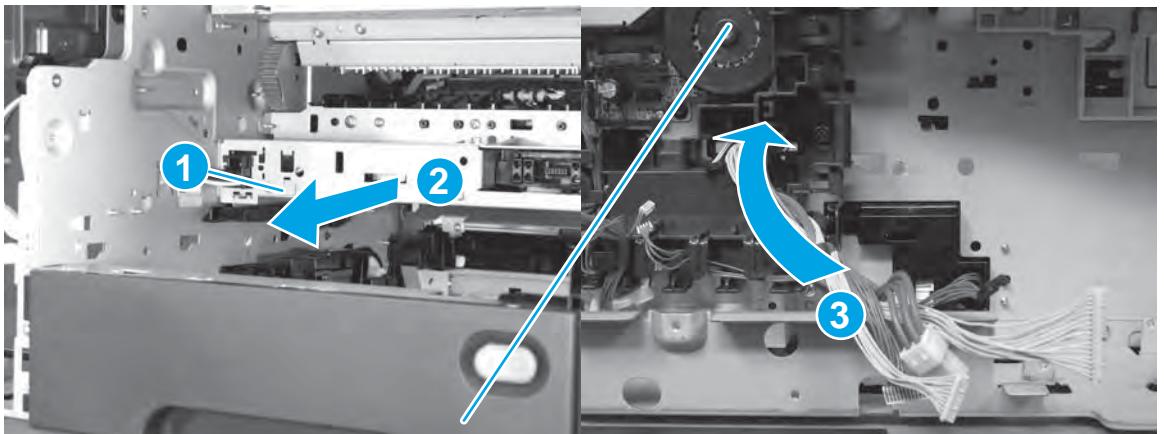
Figure 1-863 Feed the wire harnesses through the hole



- Slightly slide the HVPS (callout 1) out of the product (callout 2), while at the back of the product feeding the wire harness through the hole in the chassis (callout 3).

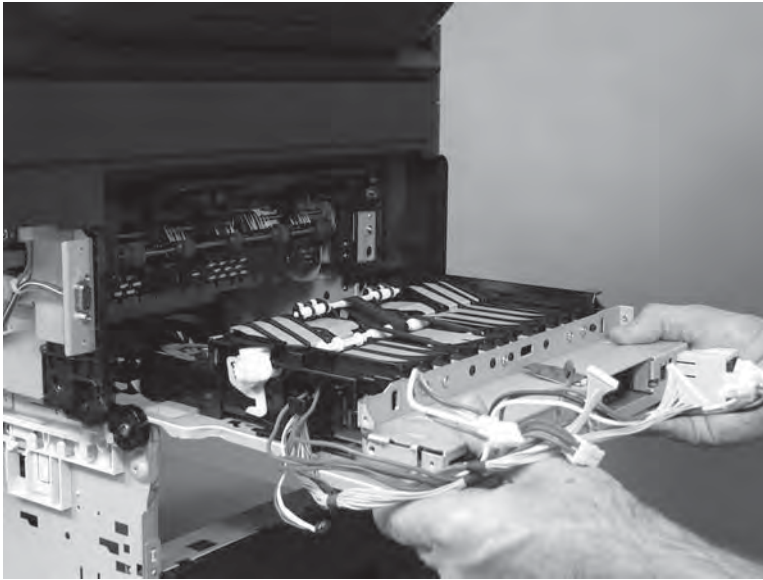
CAUTION: Be careful. Do not damage the wire harnesses.

Figure 1-864 Feed the wire harnesses through the hole



11. Remove the HVPS from the product.

Figure 1-865 Remove the HVPS



12. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release the wire harness (callout 2).


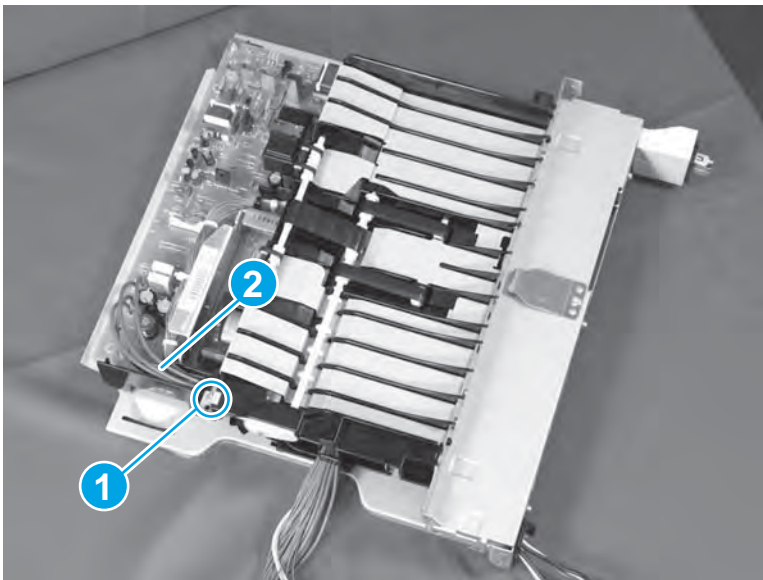
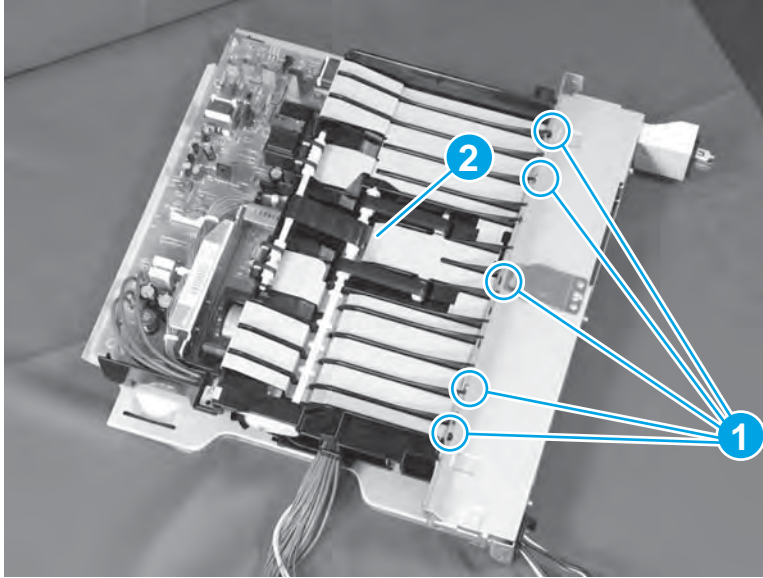
 **NOTE:** If the HVPS is removed to gain access to another assembly, do not remove the feed assembly. If a replacement HVPS is being installed, remove the feed assembly.

Figure 1-866 Remove one screw and release the wire harness



13. Remove five screws (callout 1), and then remove the feed assembly (callout 2).

Figure 1-867 Remove the feed assembly



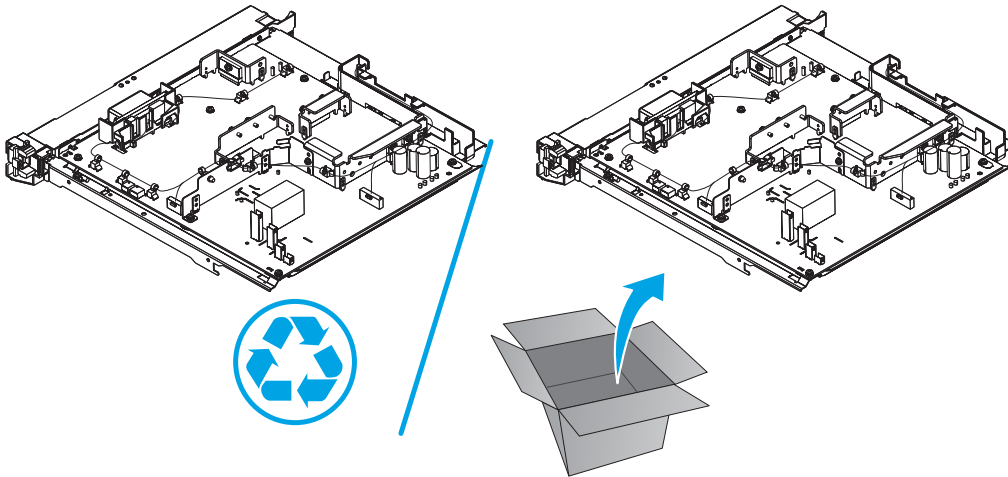
Step 17: Unpack the replacement HVPS

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

www.Product return and recycling.

 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.

Figure 1-868 Recycle and unpack



Step 18: Install the HVPS

 **NOTE:** If a replacement HVPS is being installed, go to step [1](#).

If the HVPS was removed to gain access to another assembly, go to step [7](#).

 ESD sensitive assembly.

1. Be careful when handling the feed assembly. Make sure that the drive belts and belt shafts do not become dislodged. Callout 1 shows the belts and shafts correctly installed. Callout 2 shows the belts and shafts dislodged.


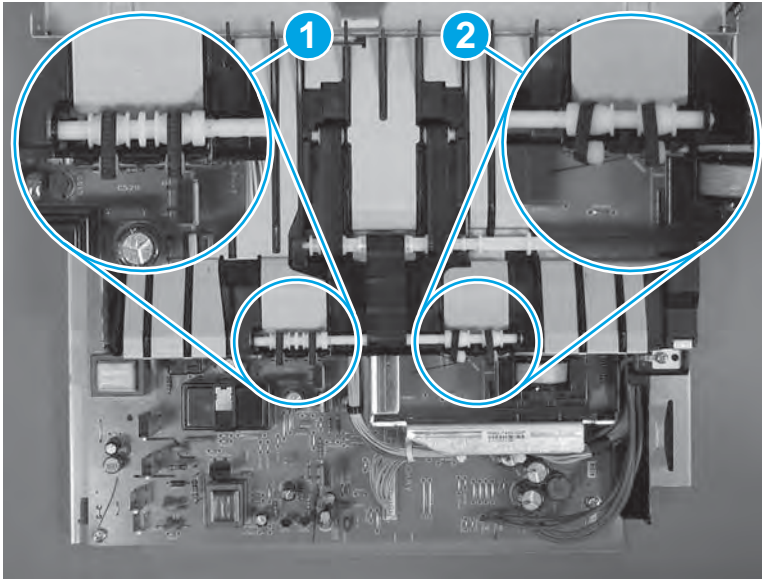
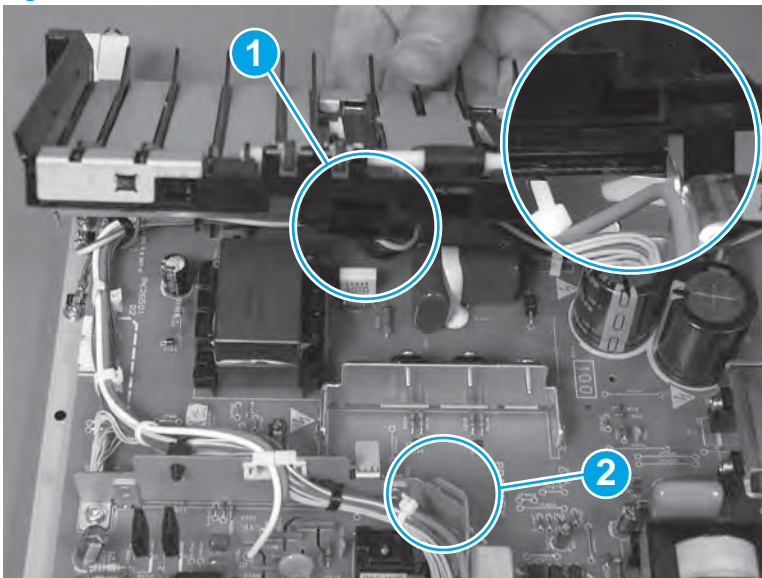
 **CAUTION:** The feed assembly belt shafts are only held captive by the belts. If the belts become dislodged, the shafts can easily be lost.

Figure 1-869 Check the drive belts and belt shafts



2. The foot (callout 1) on the underside of the feed assembly, must fit into the sheet-metal slot (callout 2) on the HVPS.

Figure 1-870 Check the foot and slot



3. Install the feed assembly on the replacement HVPS at a slight angle so that the foot on the underside of the feed assembly fits into the sheet-metal slot on the HVPS. See [Figure 1-870 Check the foot and slot on page 552](#).


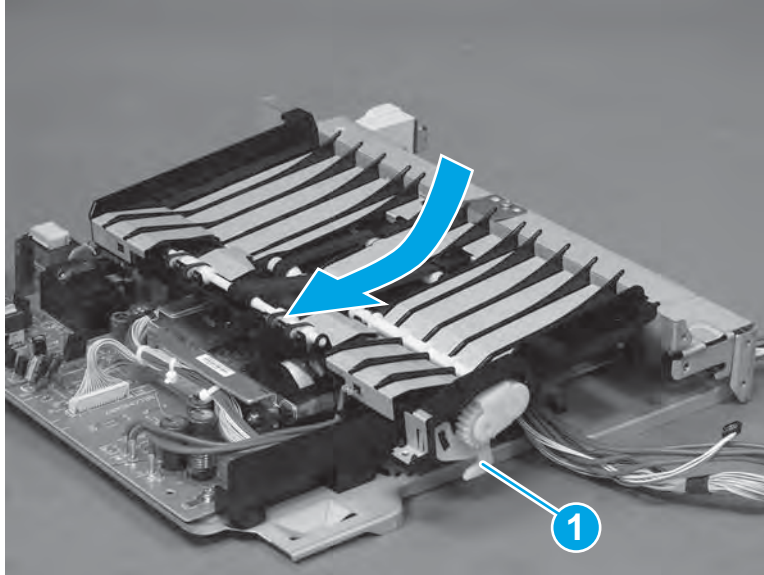
 **NOTE:** Make sure that the white lever (callout 1) on the assembly is correctly positioned.

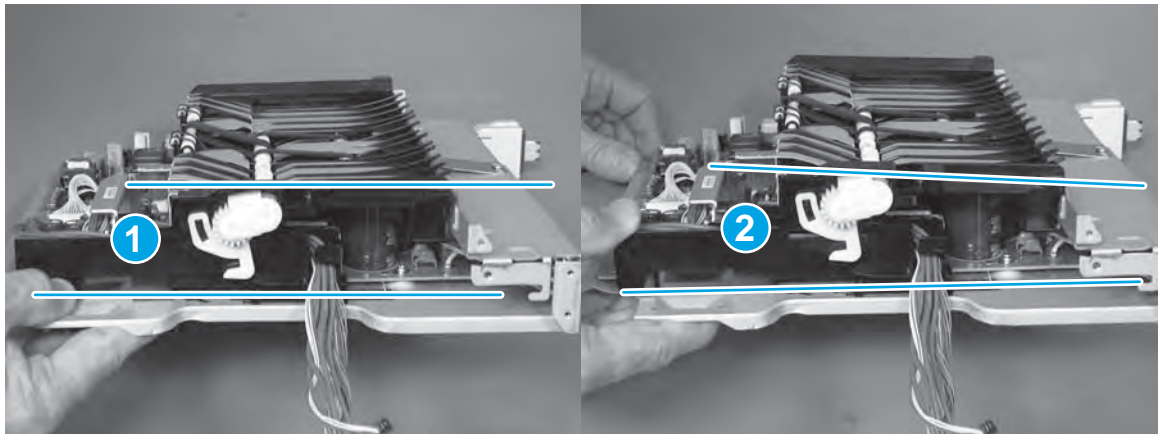
Figure 1-871 Install the feed assembly



4. When correctly installed the feed assembly mounts flat (callout 1) on the HVPS. The assembly should not be angled (callout 2)—if the assembly is angled, make sure that the foot on the underside of the assembly is correctly positioned in the sheet-metal slot on the HVPS.

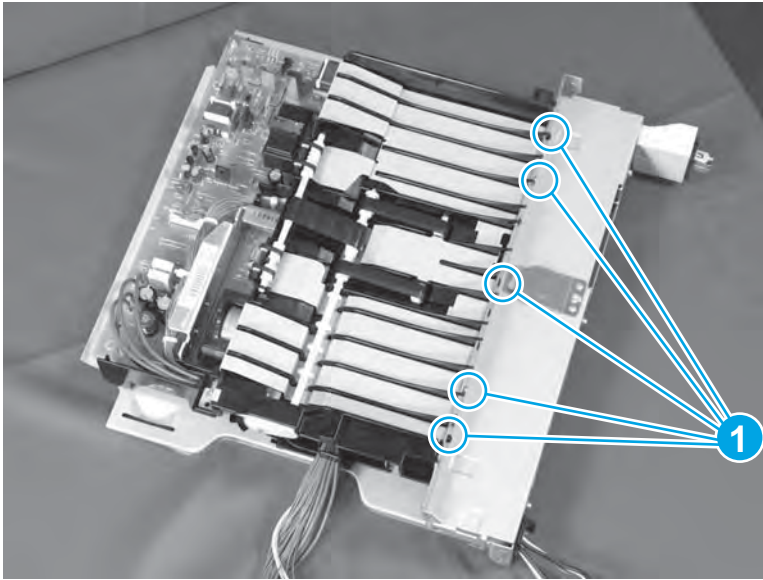
 **IMPORTANT:** Be careful when handling the feed assembly. Make sure that the drive belts and belt shafts do not become dislodged. See [Figure 1-869 Check the drive belts and belt shafts on page 552](#).

Figure 1-872 Verify the feed assembly installation



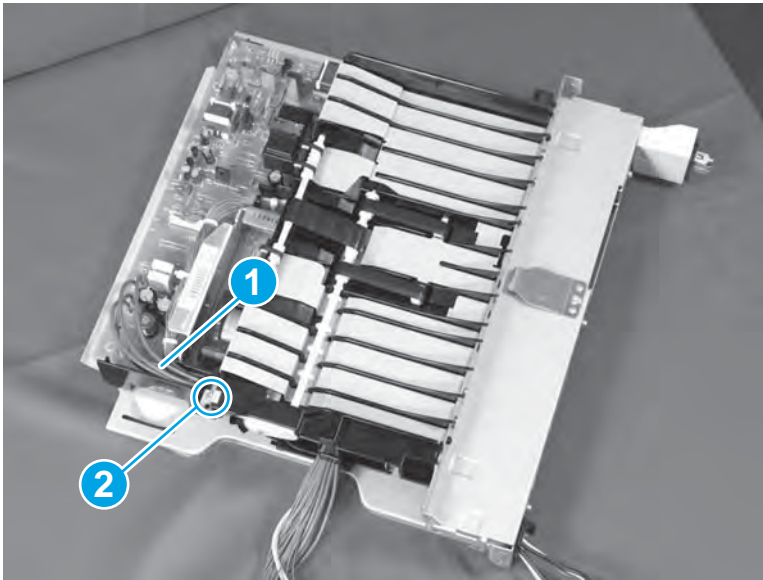
5. Install five screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-873 Install five screws



6. Connect one wire harness (callout 1), and then install one screw (callout 2).

Figure 1-874 Connect one wire harness and install one screw and release



7. Partially slide the HVPS into the product.


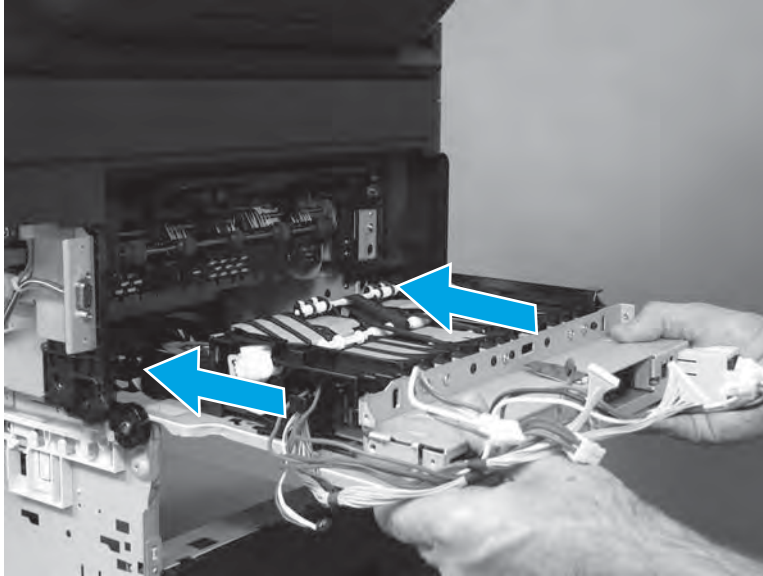

 **Reinstallation tip:** The feed assembly must be correctly positioned or the HVPS will not completely slide into the product. If there are problems reinstalling the HVPS, make sure that the feed assembly is correctly mounted. See [Figure 1-872 Verify the feed assembly installation on page 553](#).

Figure 1-875 Partially install the HVPS



8. Continue to slide the HVPS (callout 1) into the product (callout 2), while at the back of the product feeding the wire harness through the hole in the chassis (callout 3).

 **CAUTION:** Be careful. Do not damage the wire harnesses.


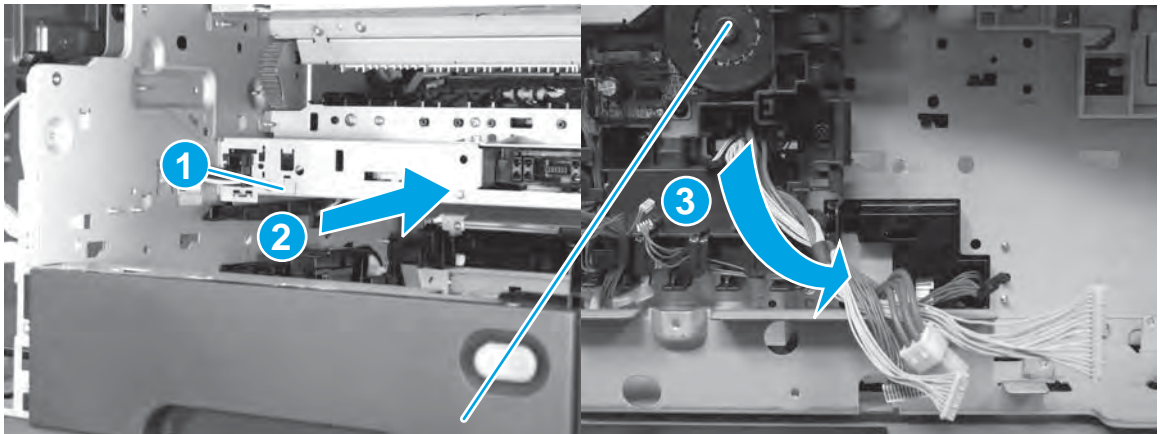
 **TIP:** Keep the HVPS as level as possible when reinstalling it. Make sure that the assembly is correctly positioned on the two side support rails.

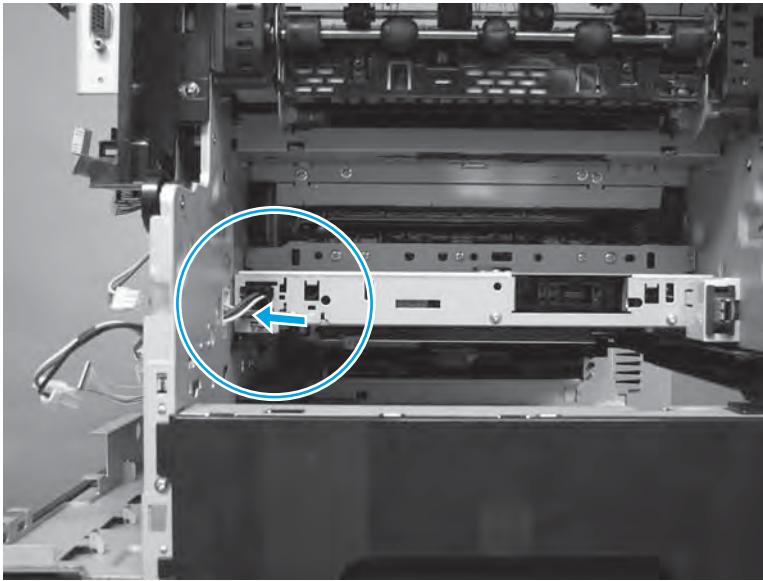
Figure 1-876 Feed the wire harnesses through the hole



- Support the HVPS and feed the LVPS wire harnesses through the hole in the chassis.

⚠ CAUTION: Be careful. Do not damage the wire harnesses.

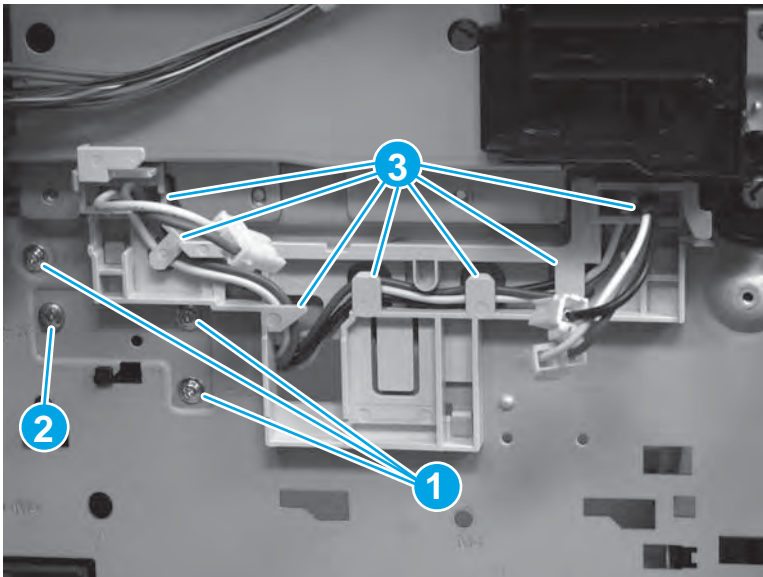
Figure 1-877 Feed the wire harnesses through the hole



- At the back of the product, install four screws (callout 1/2), and then install the LVPS wire harnesses in the guide (callout 3), and then.

📝 NOTE: One screw (callout 2) is larger than the others.

Figure 1-878 Install four screws and install the wire harnesses



11. Install the guide.


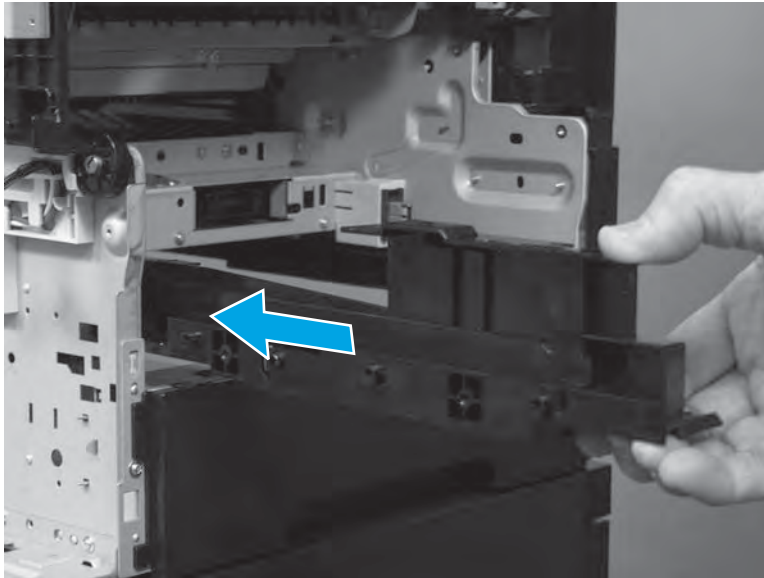
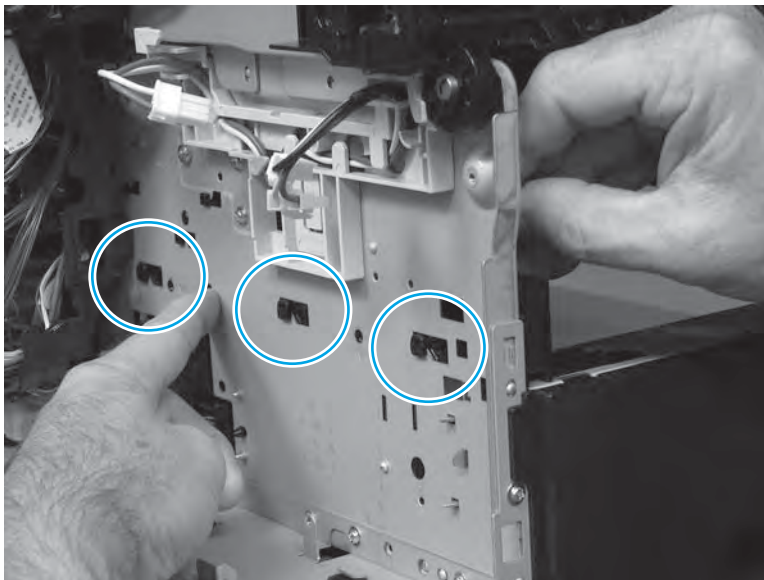
 **NOTE:** The guide is installed inside the product chassis (where the removed duplexer would be installed).

Figure 1-879 Install the guide



12. Make sure that the tabs on the guide are engaged in the slots on the chassis.

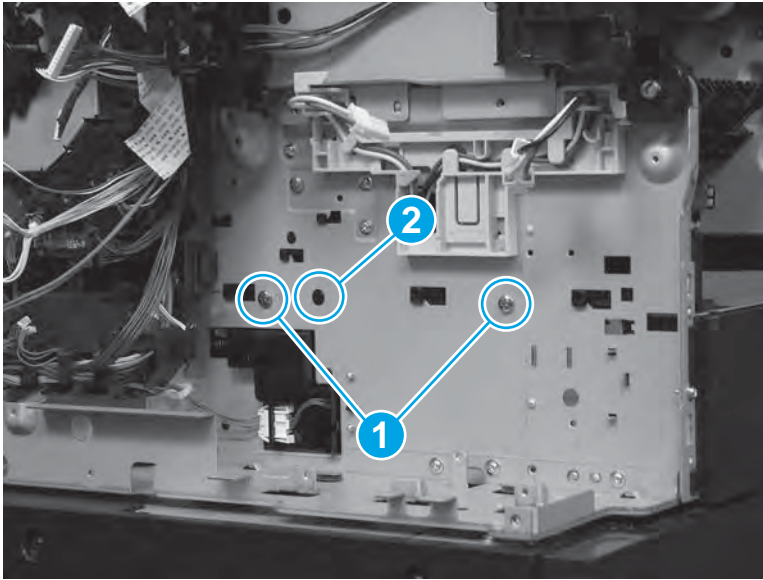
Figure 1-880 Check the guide



13. At the back of the product, install two screws (callout 1).

 **NOTE:** Make sure that the tab (callout 2) is engaged in the hole in the chassis.

Figure 1-881 Install two screws



14. At the front side of the product, install four screws (callout 1/2), and then connect two connectors (callout 3).


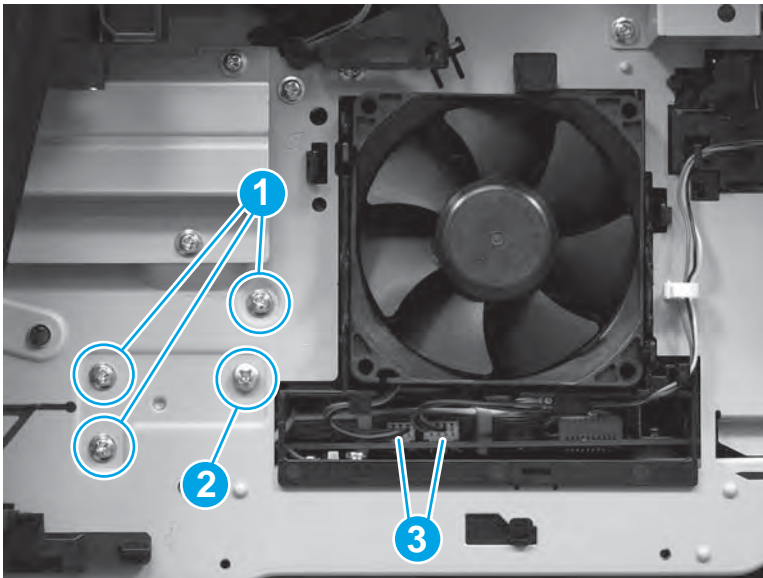
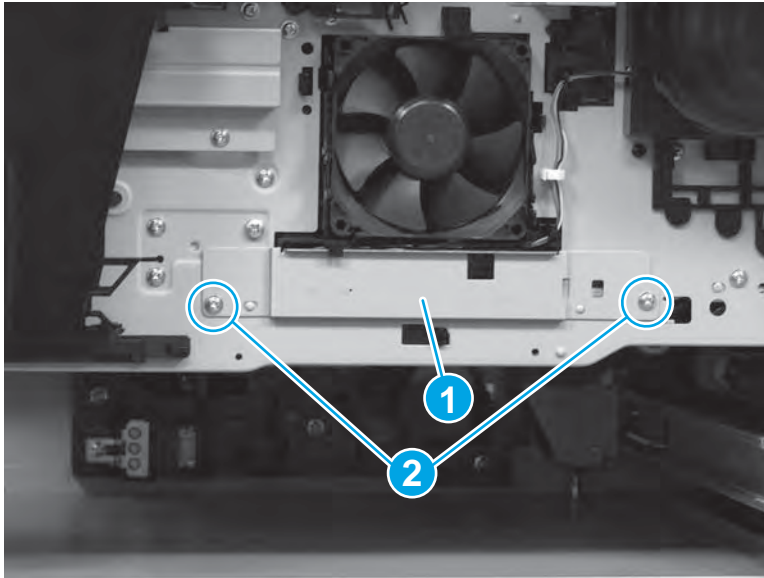
 **NOTE:** One screw (callout 2) is larger than the others.

Figure 1-882 Install four screws and connect two connectors



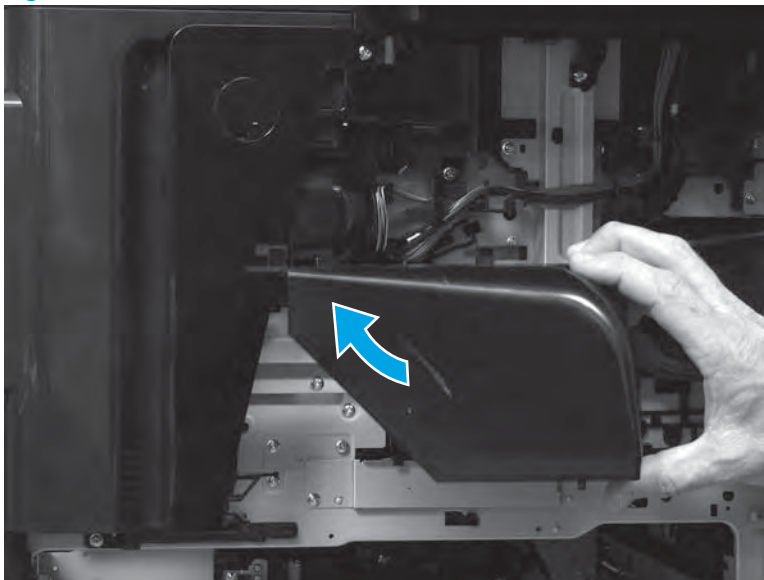
15. At the front of the product, install the cover (callout 1), and then install two screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-883 Install the cover



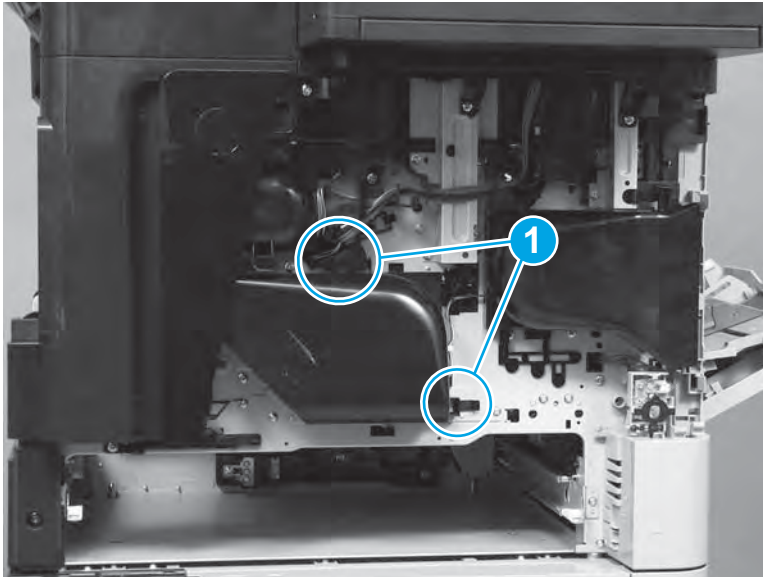
16. Install the fan duct.

Figure 1-884 Install the fan duct



17. Make sure that the two tabs (callout 1) are correctly engaged on the product, and that the fan duct is securely held in place.


Figure 1-885 Check two tabs



Step 19: Install the LVPS

 ESD sensitive assembly.

1. Install the LVPS on the product.

 **IMPORTANT:** When installing the LVPS, make sure that the inline connector (callout 1; behind the LVPS) from the DC controller to the cassette media size switch (SW102) is fully seated. This connector is easily dislodged.


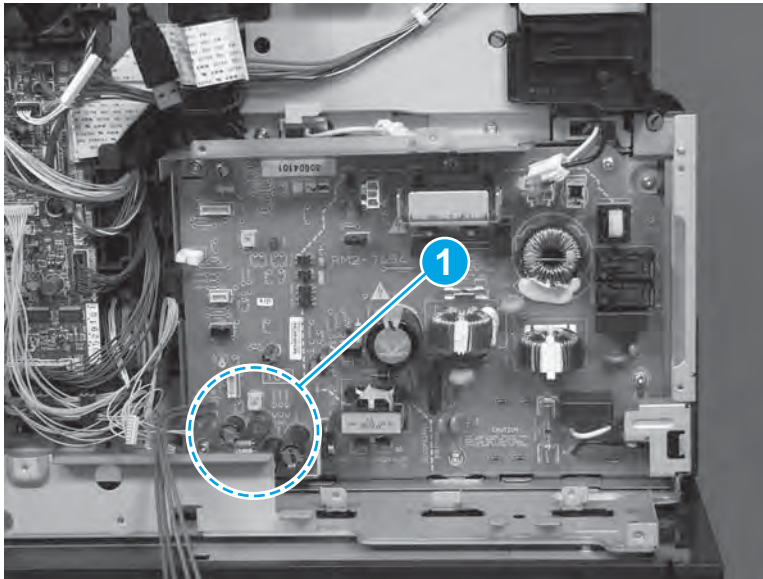
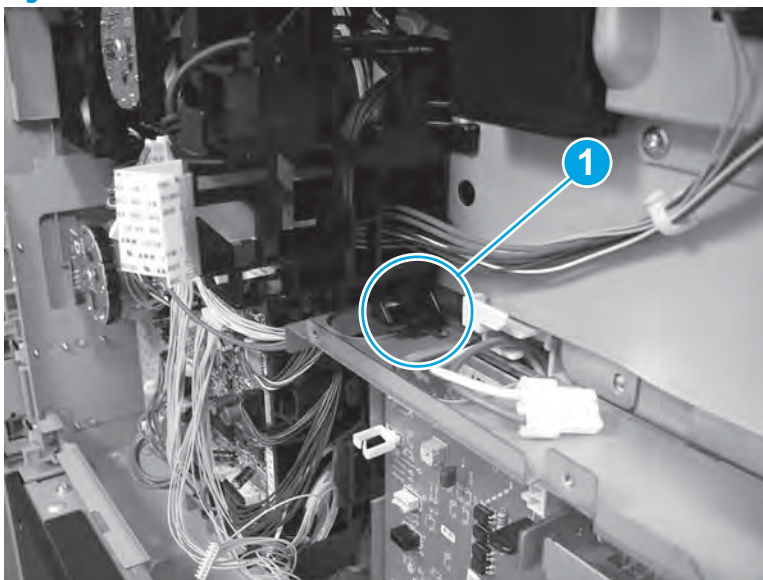
 **TIP:** If a Tray 2 removed error message appears on the control-panel display after servicing the product, check this connector.

Figure 1-886 Install the LVPS



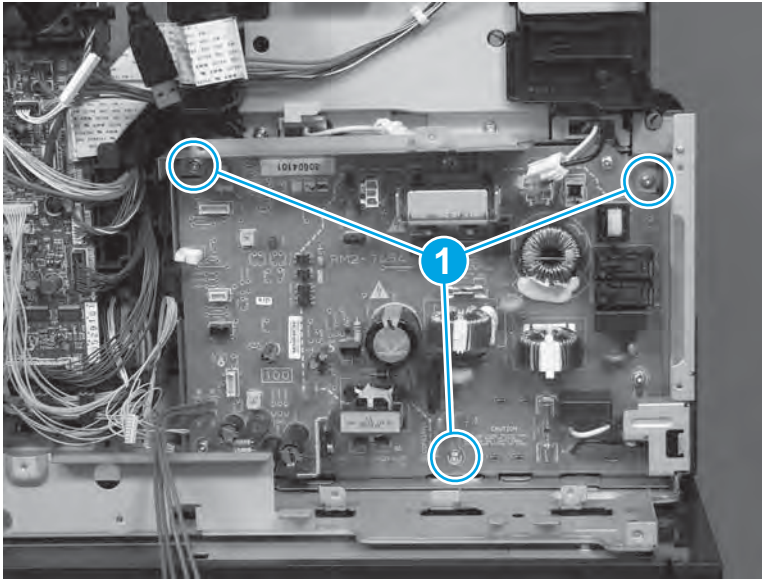
2. Make sure that the LVPS is installed behind one tab (callout 1).

Figure 1-887 Check one tab



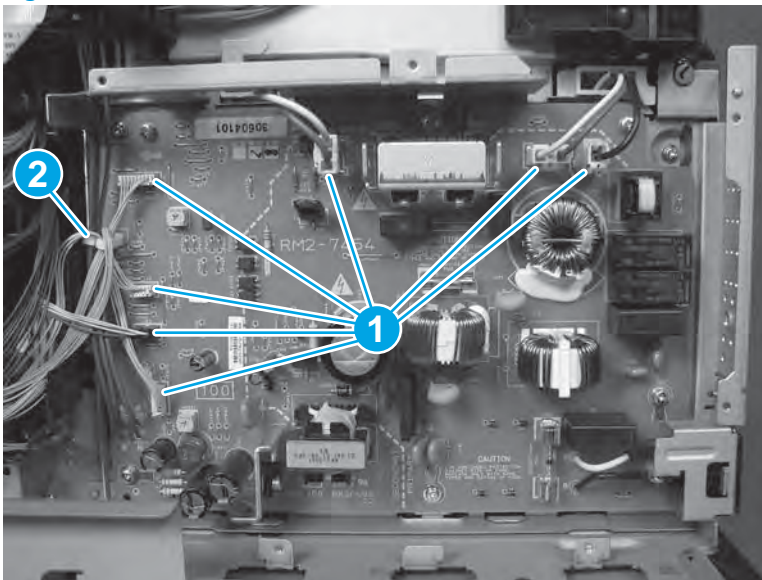
3. Install three screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-888 Install three screws



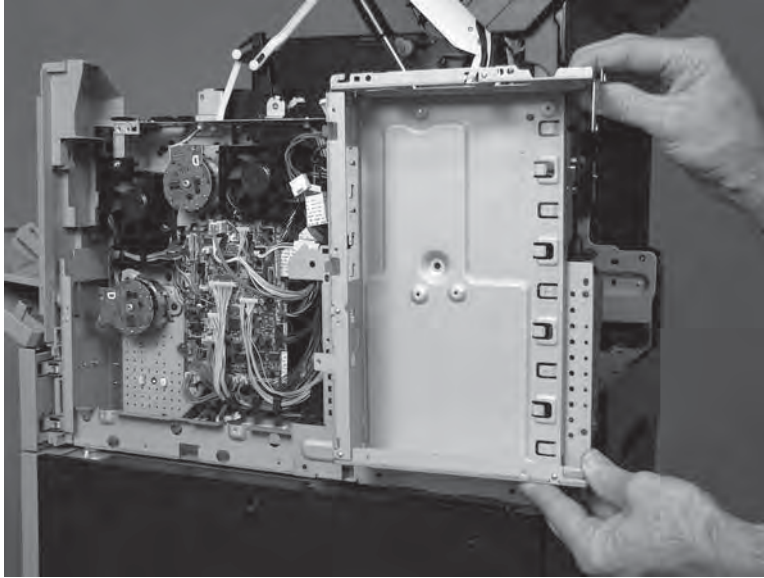
4. Connect seven connectors (callout 1), and then install the wire harness in the retainer (callout 2).

Figure 1-889 Connect seven connectors



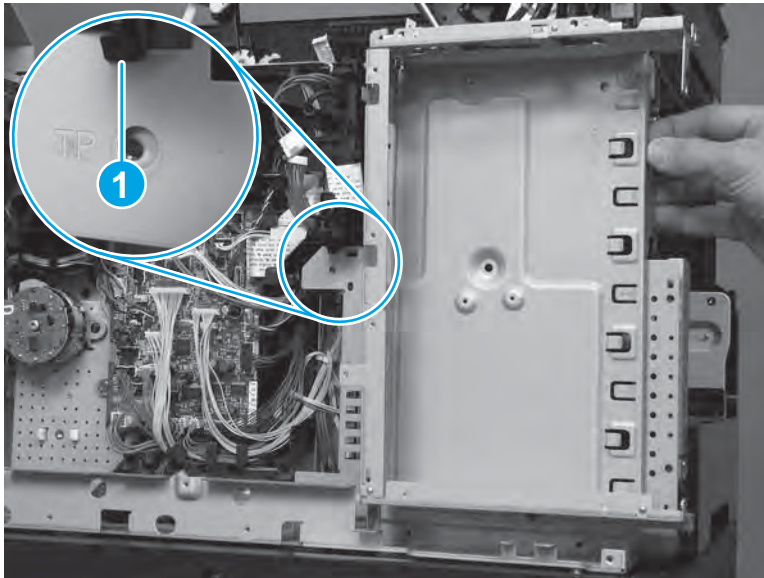
5. Install the sheet-metal plate on the product.

Figure 1-890 Install the sheet-metal plate



6. Make sure that the sheet-metal plate is installed behind one tab (callout 1).

Figure 1-891 Check one tab



7. Install five screws (callout 1).


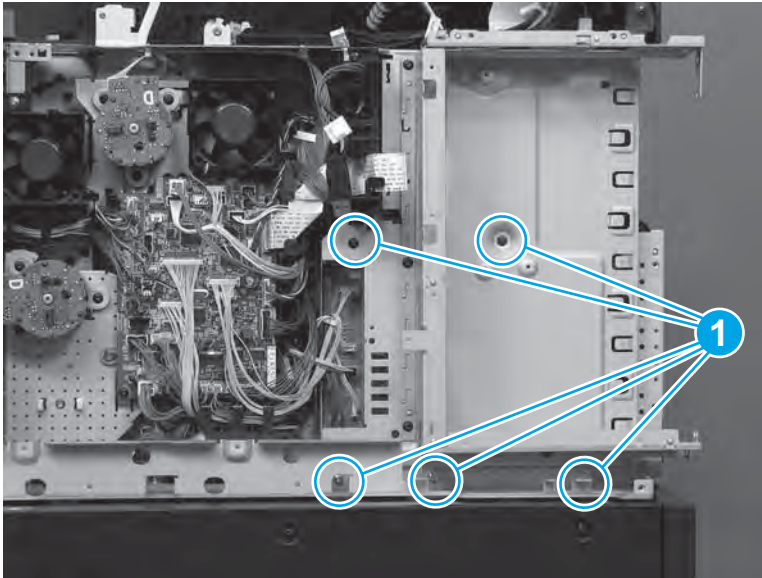
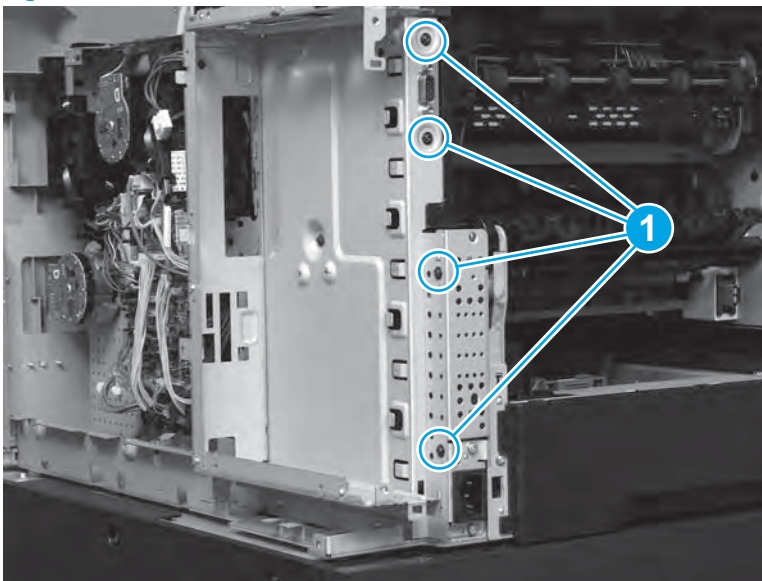
 **NOTE:** The two upper screws are black, and the three screws across the bottom are silver.

Figure 1-892 Install five screws



8. Install four black screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-893 Install four screws



9. Install the guide.


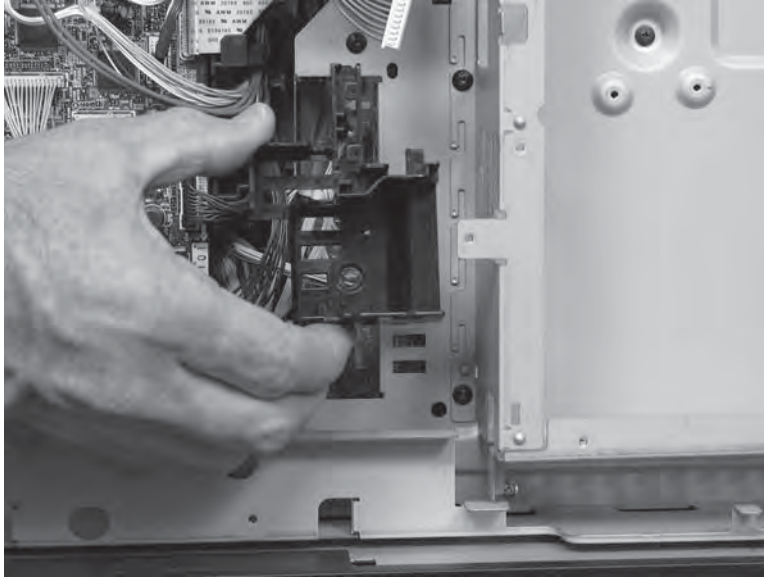
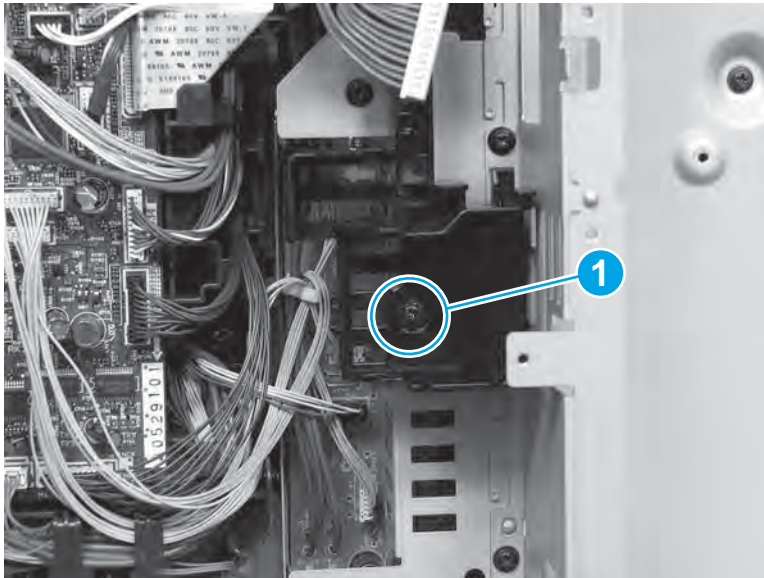
 **TIP:** Insert the hook at the top of the guide into the slot in the chassis, and then rotate the bottom of the guide into place.

Figure 1-894 Install the guide



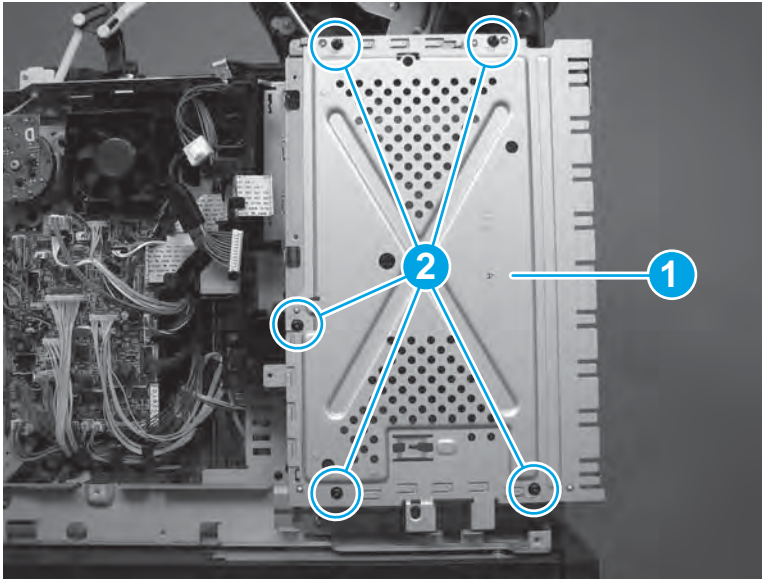
10. Install one screw (callout 1) near the DC controller.

Figure 1-895 Install one screw



11. Install the sheet-metal plate (callout 1), and then install five screws (callout 2).

Figure 1-896 Install the sheet-metal plate

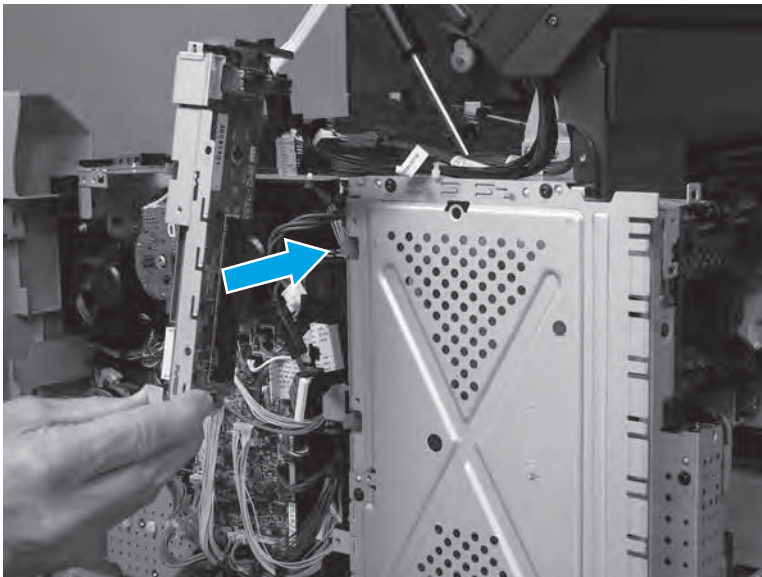


Step 20: Install the ICB

 ESD sensitive assembly.

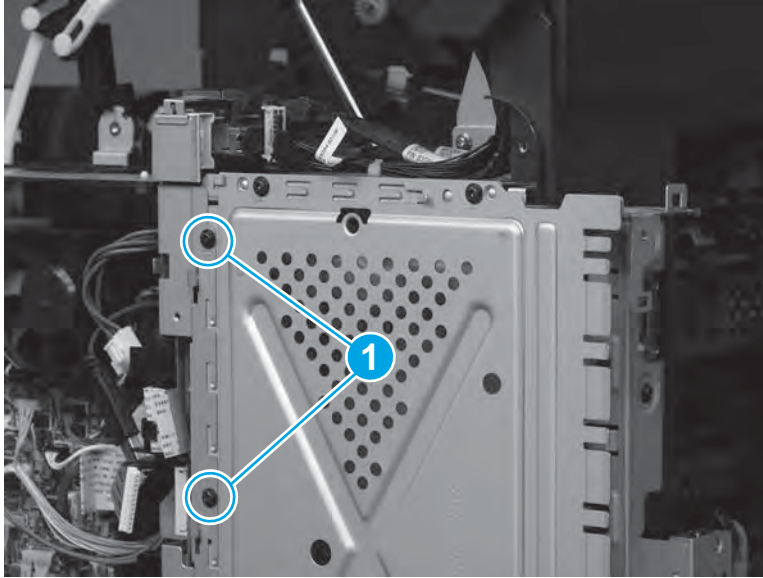
1. Install the ICB on the product.

Figure 1-897 Install the ICB



2. Install two screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-898 Install two screws

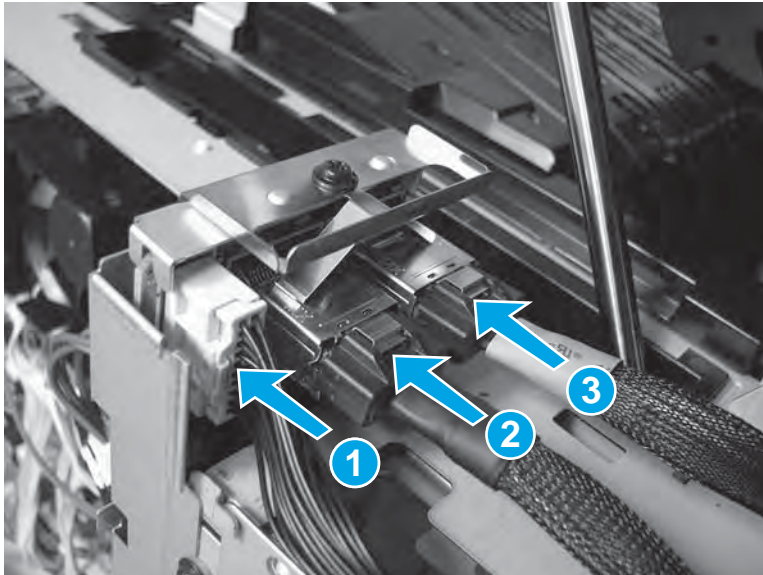


3. At the top of the ICB, connect three connectors.

TIP: When the two connectors with the metal retainer clips (callouts 2/3) are reinstalled, make sure that the clips snap in place to securely lock the connectors in place.

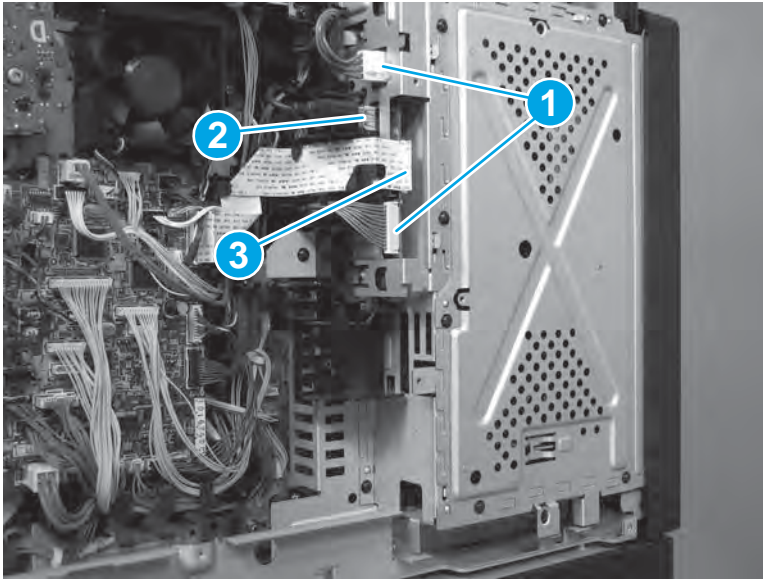
The wire harness with the blue band (callouts 3) connects to the inner connector on the ICB when reinstalled.

Figure 1-899 Connect three connectors



4. Connect two connectors (callout 1), one USB connector (callout 2), and then connect one FFC (callout 3).

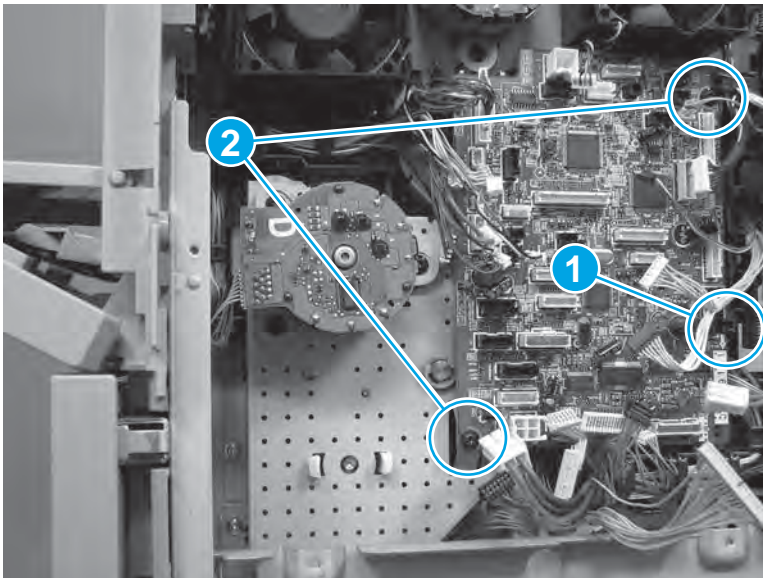
Figure 1-900 Connect four connectors



Step 21: Install the DC controller

1. Position the DC controller on the product, engage one tab (callout 1), and then install two screws (callout 2).

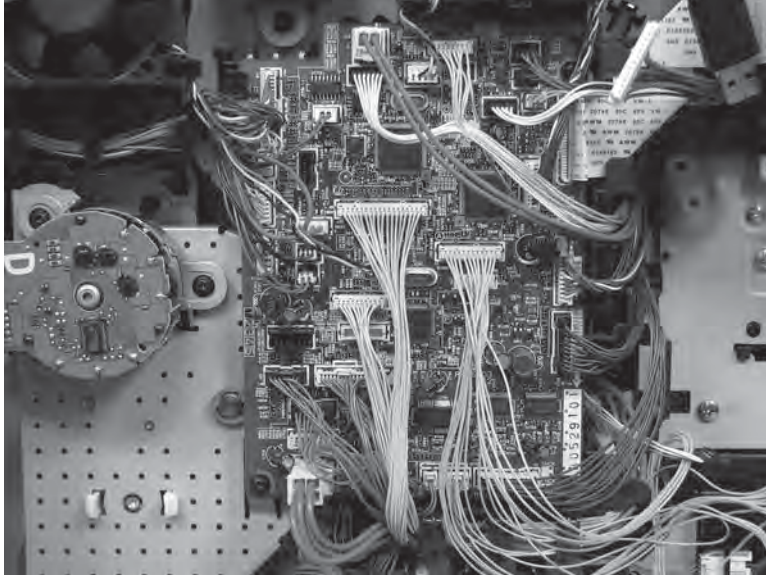
Figure 1-901 Install the DC controller



2. Connect all of the connectors on the DC controller.
 - 34 wire-harness connectors
 - 1 flat-flexible cable (FFC)

 **Reinstallation tip:** Connectors J42, J59, and J80 are empty.

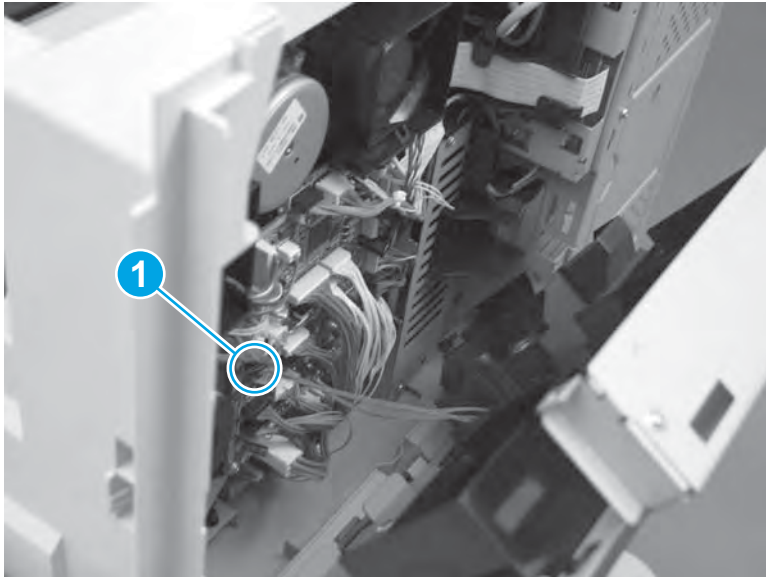
Figure 1-902 Connect all of the connectors



Step 22: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly

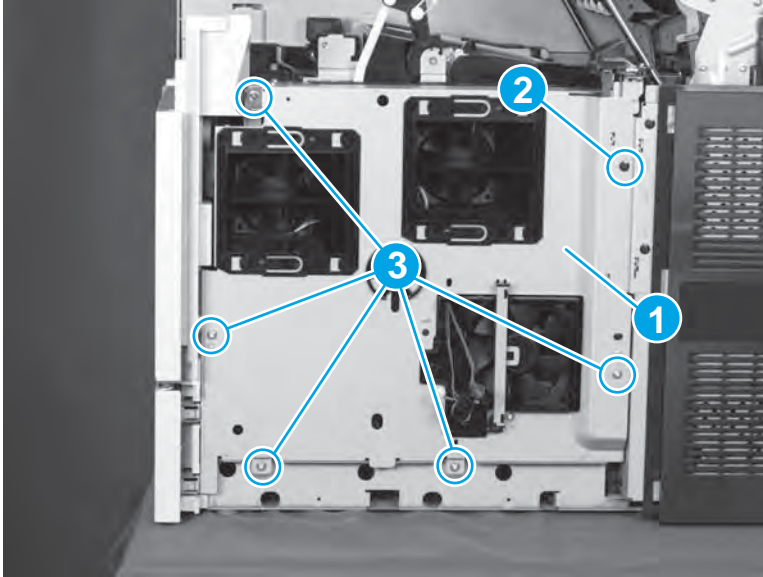
1. Position the shield near the product, and then connect one connector (J42; callout 1).

Figure 1-903 Install the shield and connect one connector



2. Rotate the top of the shield (callout 1) toward the product, install one black screw (callout 2), and then install five silver screws (callout 3).

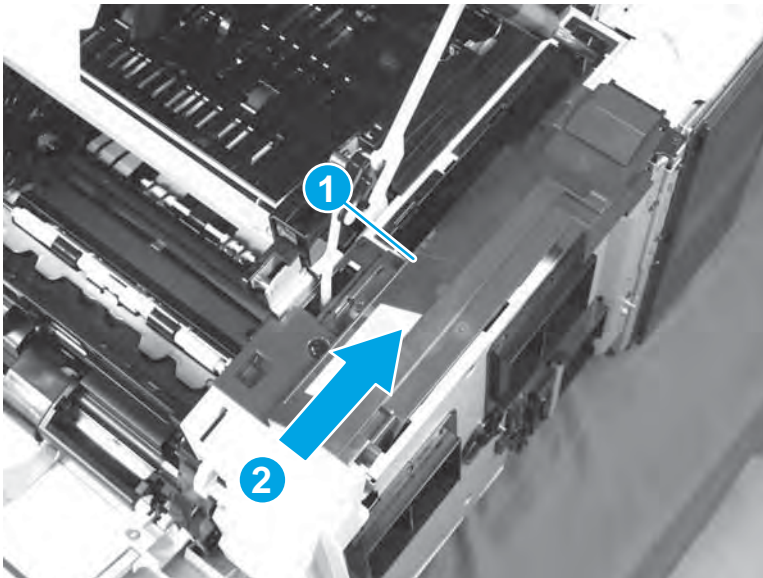
Figure 1-904 Remove six screws



Step 23: Install the rear-top cover

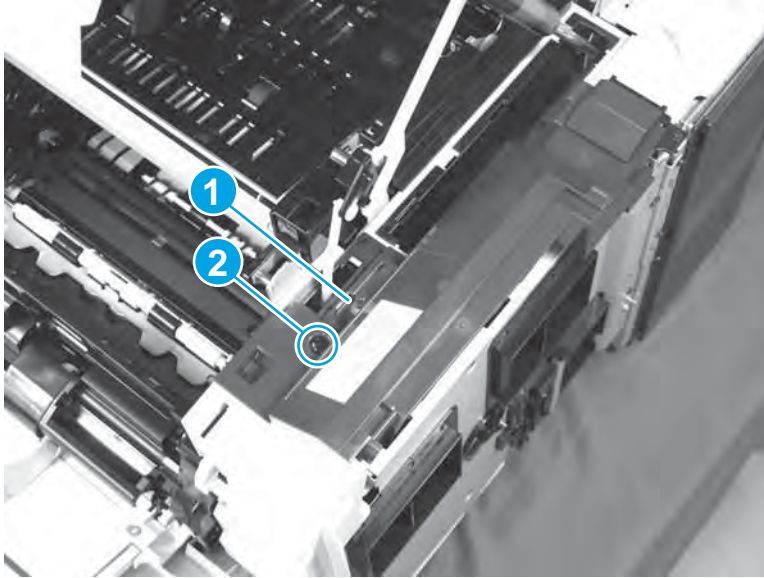
1. Position the cover on the product, Push the cover (callout 1) away Tray 1 to install it (callout 2).

Figure 1-905 Install the cover



2. Make sure that the tab (callout 2) is engaged, and then install one screw (callout 2).

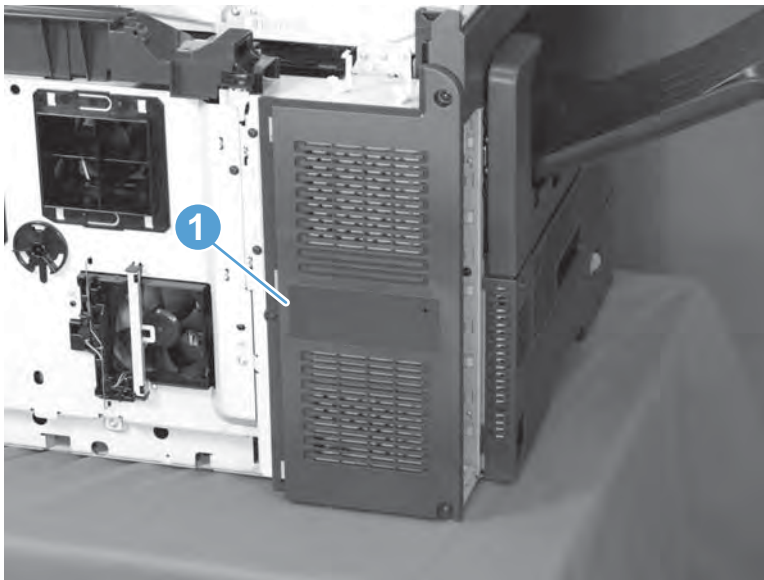
Figure 1-906 Install one screw



Step 24: Install the rear-left cover

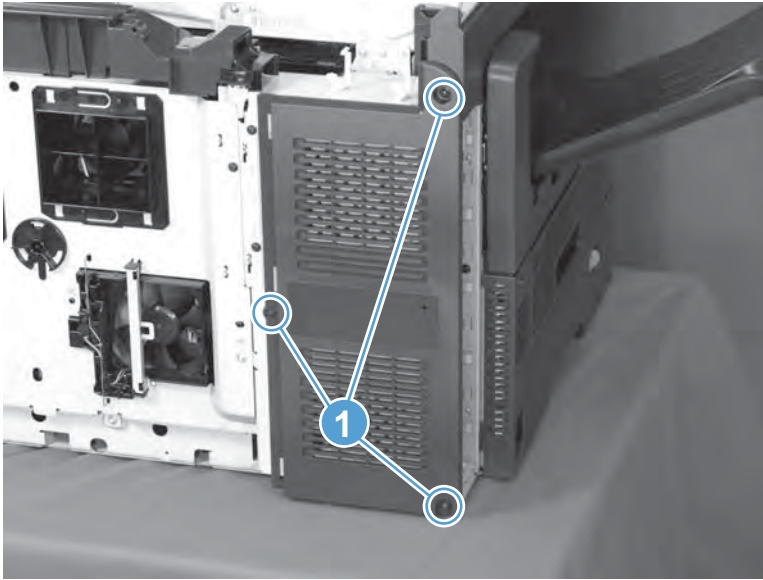
1. Position the cover (callout 1) on the product.

Figure 1-907 Install the cover



2. Install three screws (callout 1).

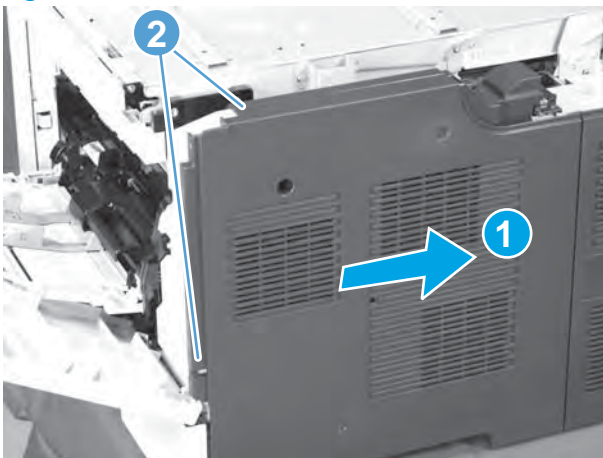
Figure 1-908 Install three screws



Step 25: Install the rear-right cover

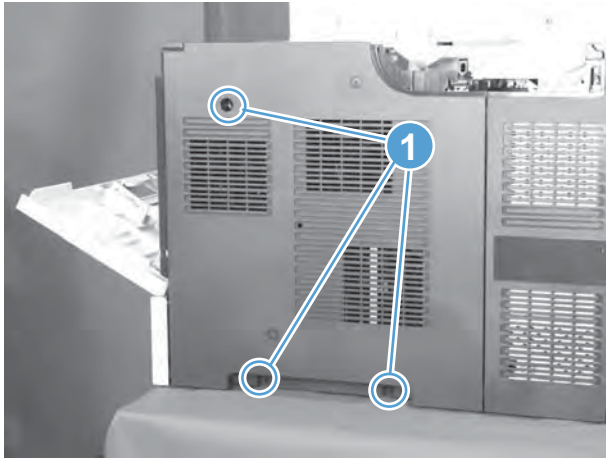
1. Position the cover on the product, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 1) to engage two tabs (callout 2).

Figure 1-909 Install the cover



2. Install three screws (callout 1), and then close the top cover and Tray 1.

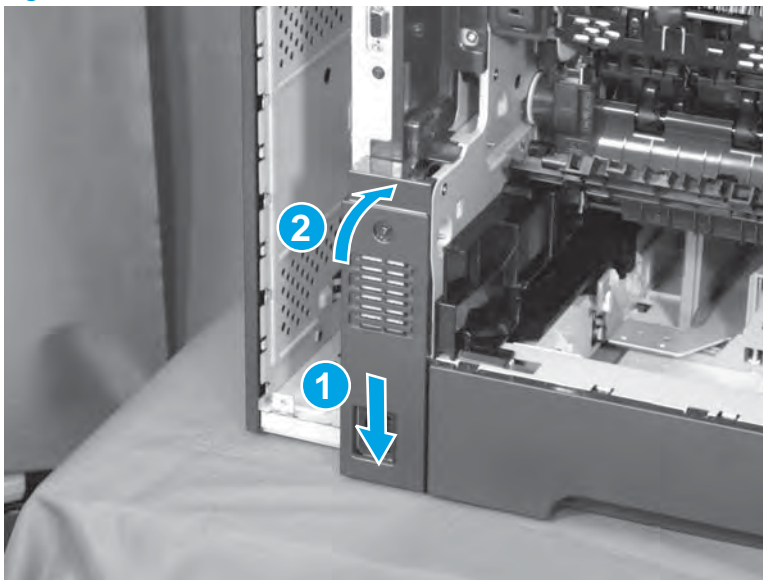
Figure 1-910 Install three screws



Step 26: Install the side-rear cover

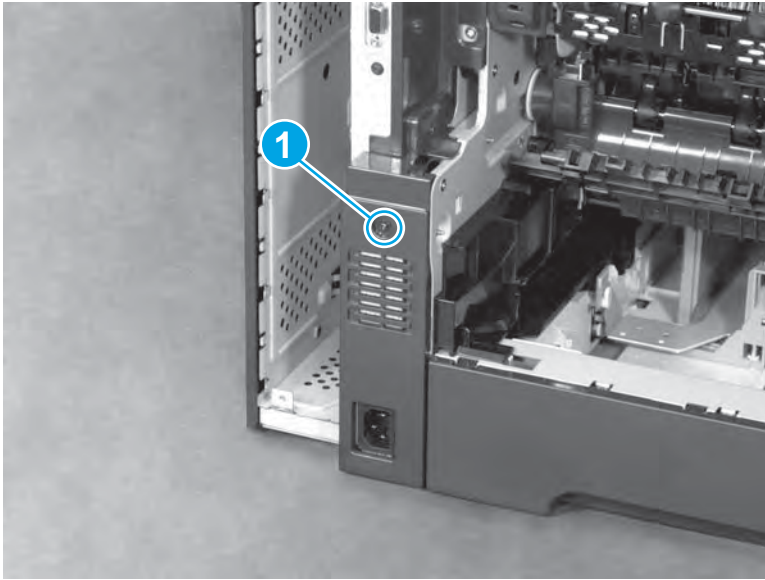
1. Position the bottom of the cover on the product (callout 1), and then rotate the top of the cover toward the product (callout 2) to install it.

Figure 1-911 Install the side-rear cover



2. Install one screw (callout 1).

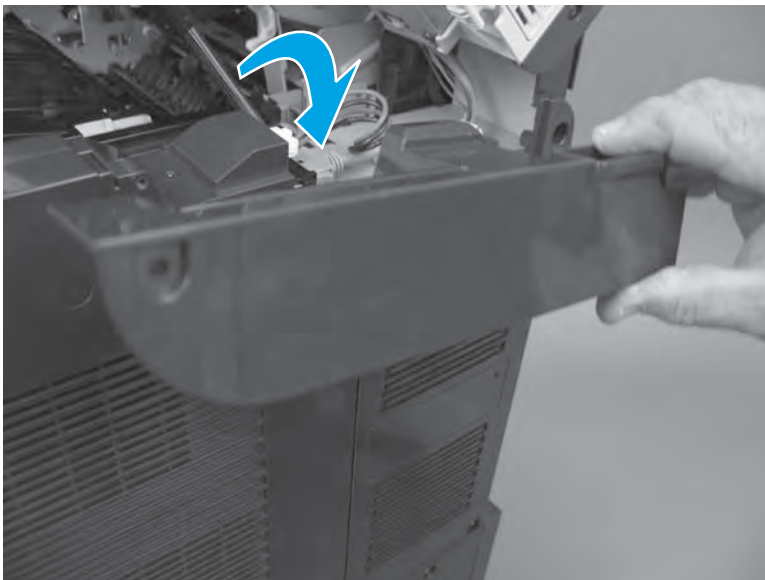
Figure 1-912 Install one screw



Step 27: Install the image scanner cable cover

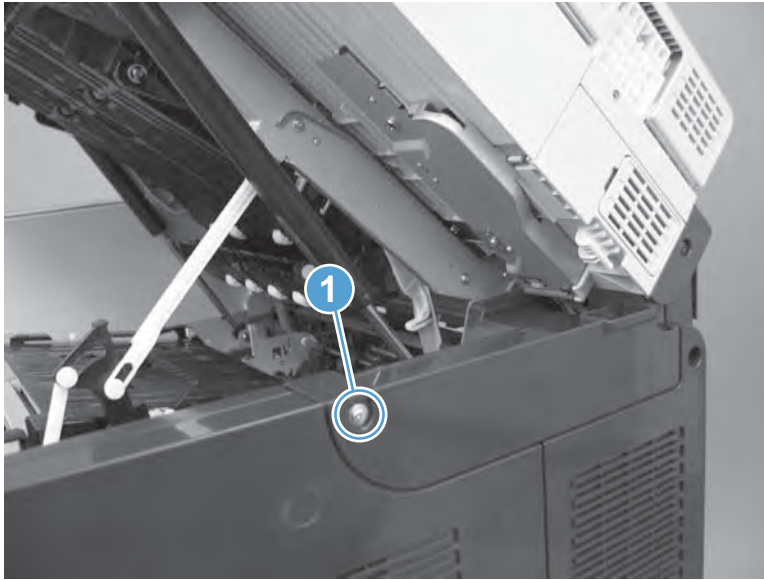
1. Install the cover on the product.

Figure 1-913 Install the cover



2. Install one screw (callout 1), and then close the top cover.

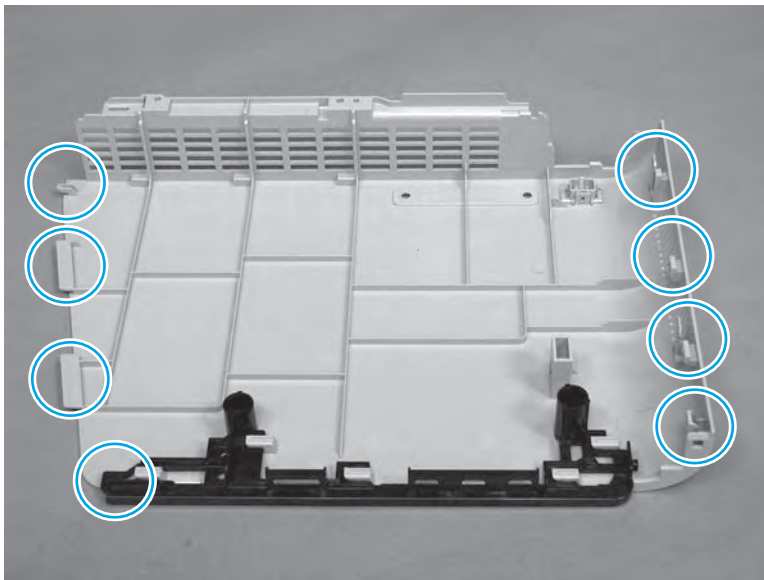
Figure 1-914 Install one screw



Step 28: Install the front cover

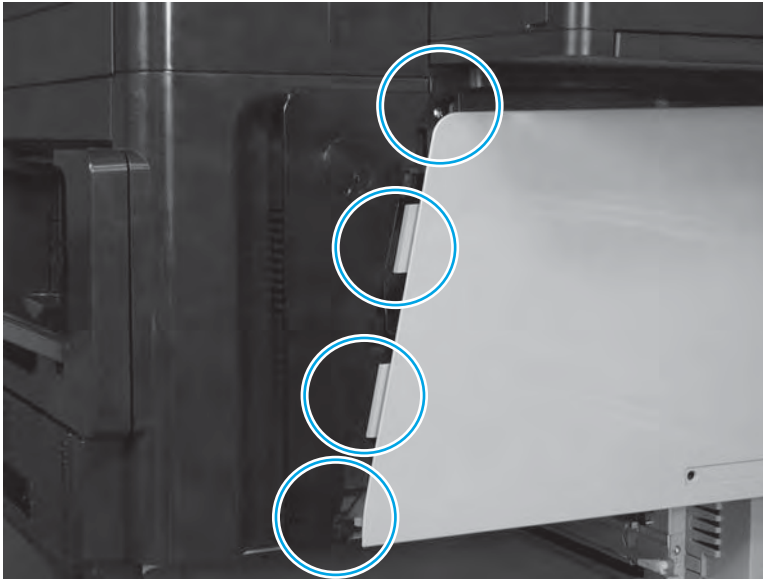
1. Take note of the location of all of the tabs on the back of the cover.

Figure 1-915 Note of the location of the tabs



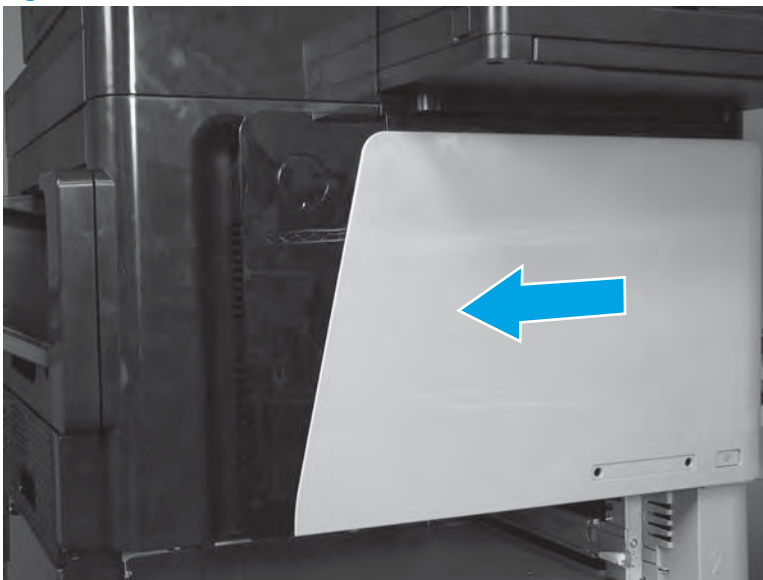
2. Align the four tabs (callout 1) on the cover with the slots (callout 2) on the logo panel.

Figure 1-916 Align four tabs



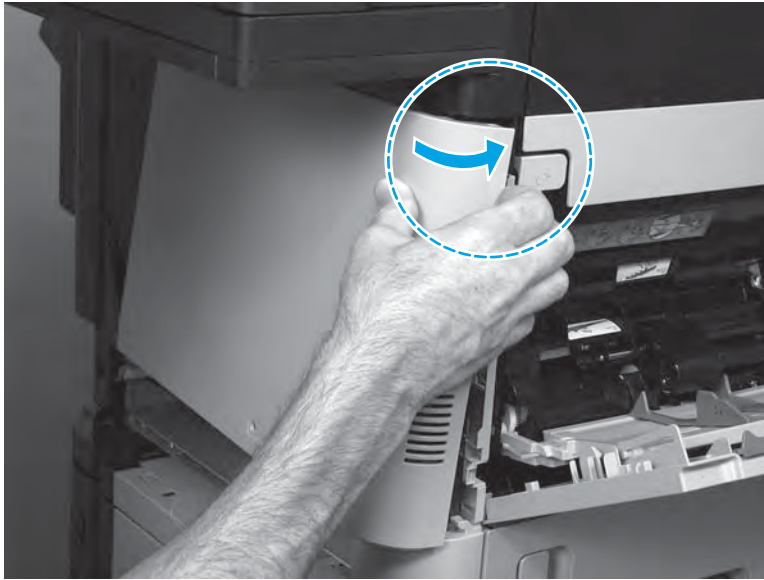
3. Slightly slide the cover toward the left side of the product to engage the tabs in the slots.

Figure 1-917 Slide the cover to the left



- Carefully flex the right-upper corner of the cover toward from the product to engage one locking pin.

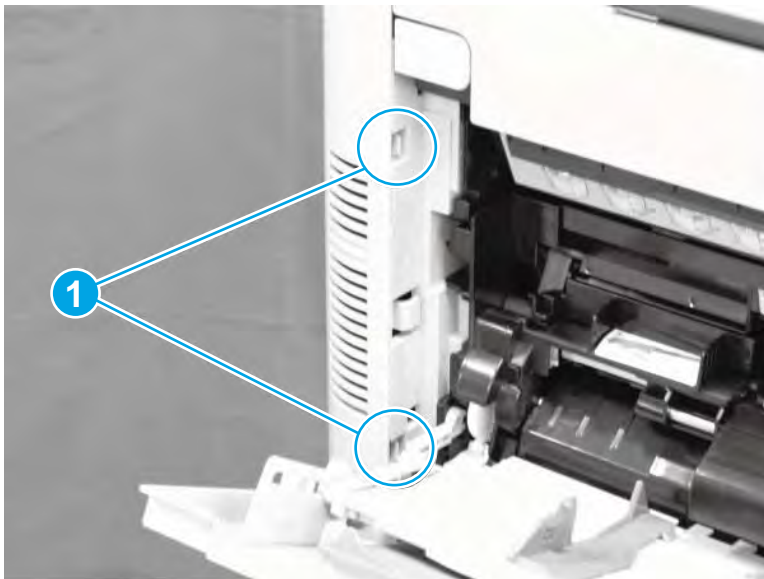
Figure 1-918 Engage one locking pin



- Engage two tabs (callout 1).

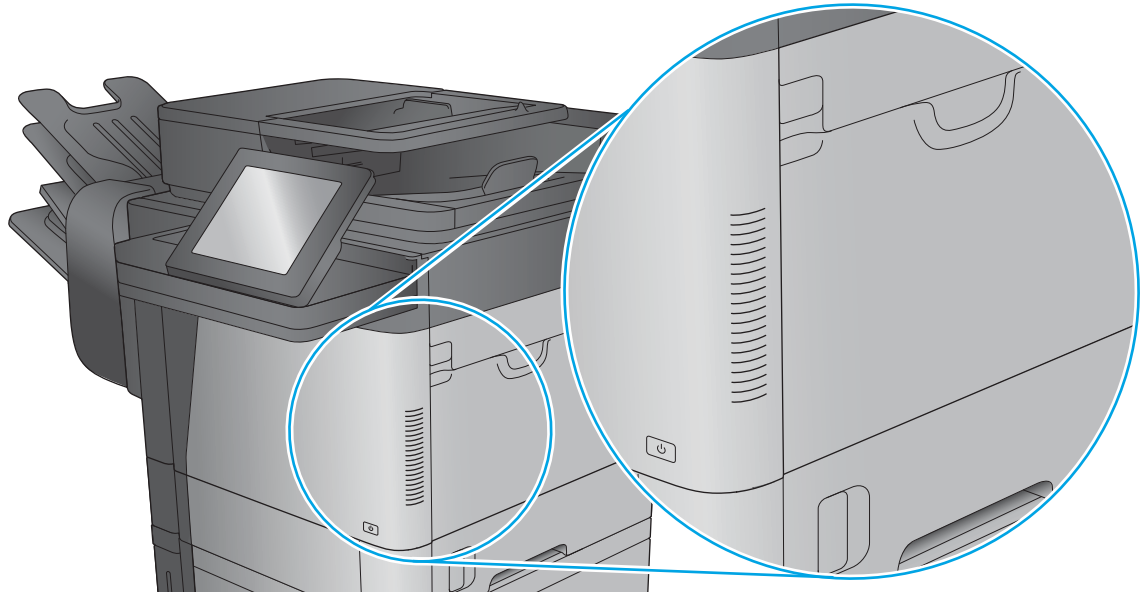
 **TIP:** Engage the upper tab first, and then engage the lower tab.

Figure 1-919 Engage two tabs



6. Close Tray 1, and verify that the gap between the edge of the front cover and the tray is even. If it is uneven, the tabs are not correctly engaged.

Figure 1-920 Check cover installation



7. Install two screws (callout 1), and then reinstall Tray 2.


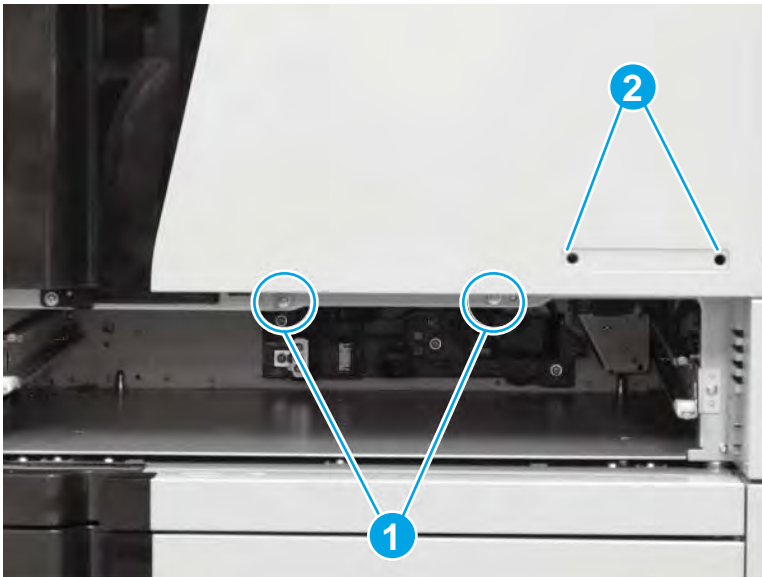
 **Reinstallation tip:** To install the product nameplate on the front cover, align the pins on the back side of the nameplate with the holes in the cover (callout 2), and then push in on the nameplate until it snaps in place.

Figure 1-921 Install two screws



Step 29: Install the fuser

- ▲ Position the fuser in the product, push in to install it, and then make sure that it is fully seated.


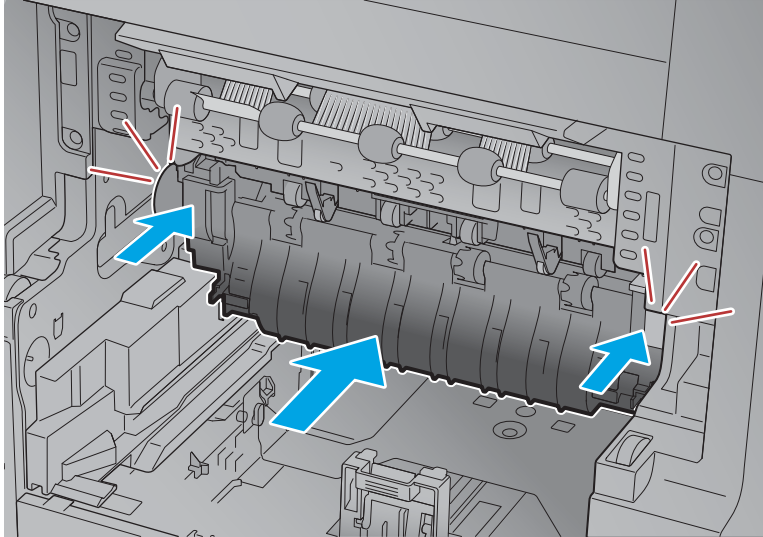
 **TIP:** When the fuser is fully seated, the two blue locking levers make an audible click.

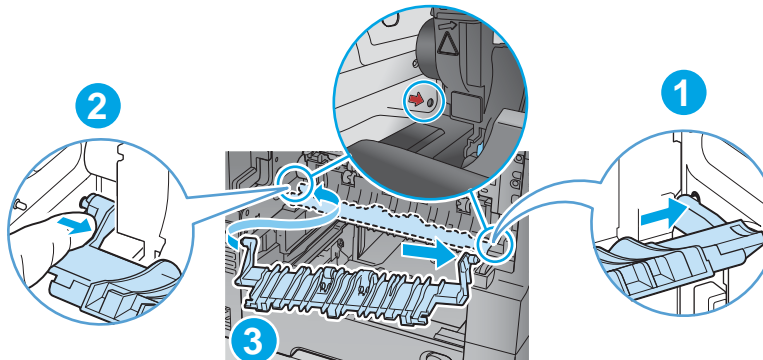
Figure 1-922 Install the fuser



Step 30: Install the fuser-entrance guide

1. Position the front hinge-pin of the fuser-entrance guide in the mounting hole in the product chassis (callout 1).
2. Slightly flex the rear hinge pin (callout 2), rotate the guide into the product (callout 3) to install it.

Figure 1-923 Install the fuser-entrance guide



Step 31: Install the duplex accessory

- ▲ Position the duplex assembly on the product at a slight angle, engage the slide rails, and then slide the duplex assembly all of the way into the product to install it.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that the duplex accessory is full installed.


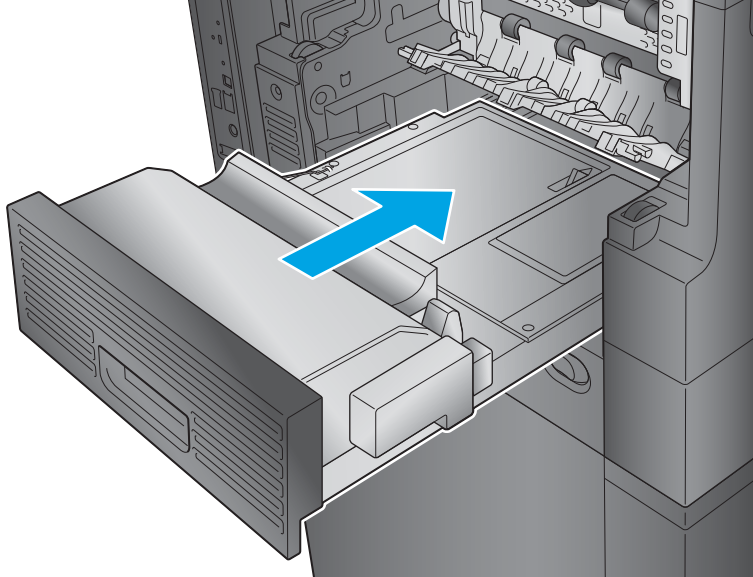
 **NOTE:** After servicing, turn the power off, and then on again so that the product detects the installed duplex accessory.

Figure 1-924 Install the duplex accessory

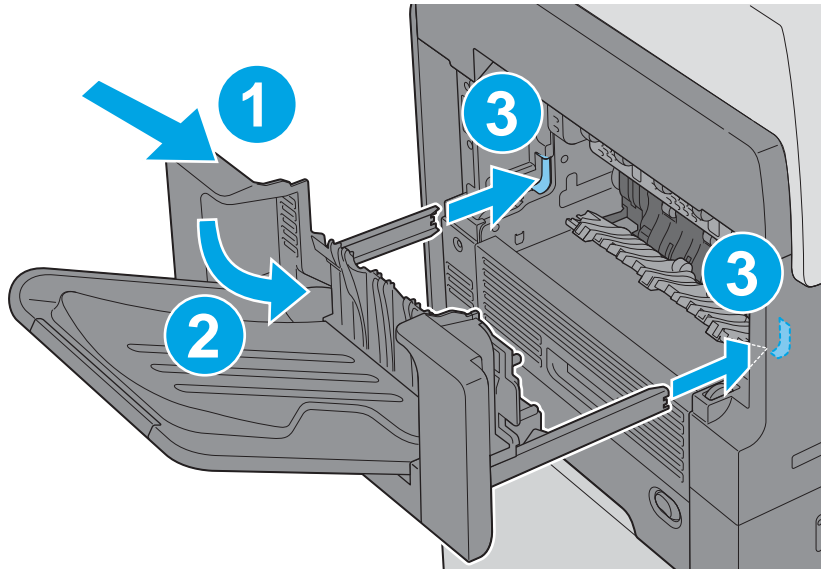


Step 32: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox

▲ Do one of the following:

- a. **M630dn and M630f:** Position the assembly at an angle to the product (callout 1), lower the assembly into place (callout 2) while engaging the slide rails (callout 3), and then slide the bin base into the product.

Figure 1-925 Install the output bin



- b. **M630z:** Position the assembly at an angle to the product (callout 1), lower the assembly into place (callout 2) while engaging the slide rails (callout 3), connect the interface cable (callout 4), and then slide the stapling mailbox (callout 5) into the product.


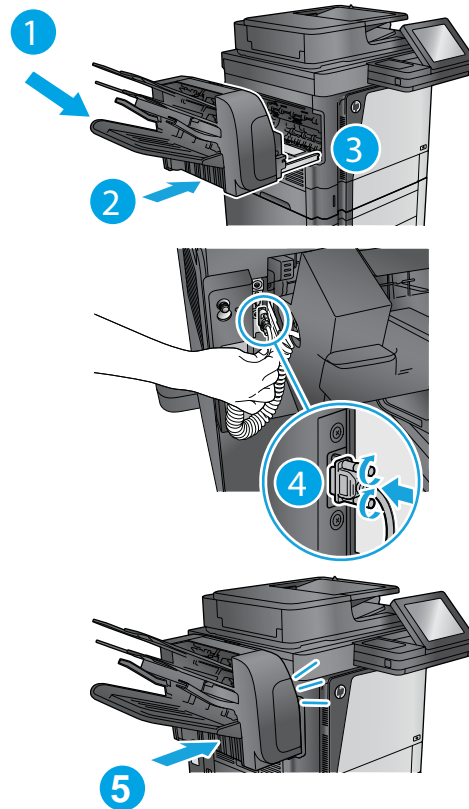
 **TIP:** After servicing, turn the power off, and then on again so that the product detects the installed stapling mailbox.

Figure 1-926 Install the stapling mailbox

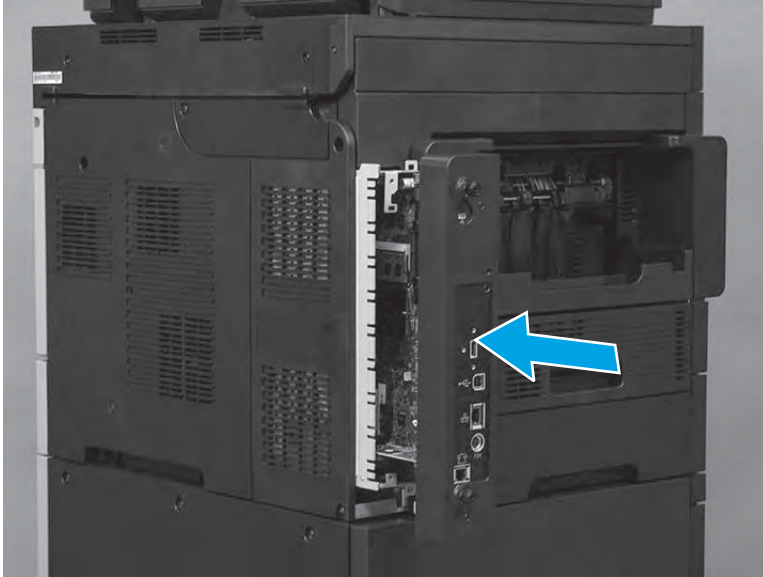


Step 33: Install the formatter

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive assembly.

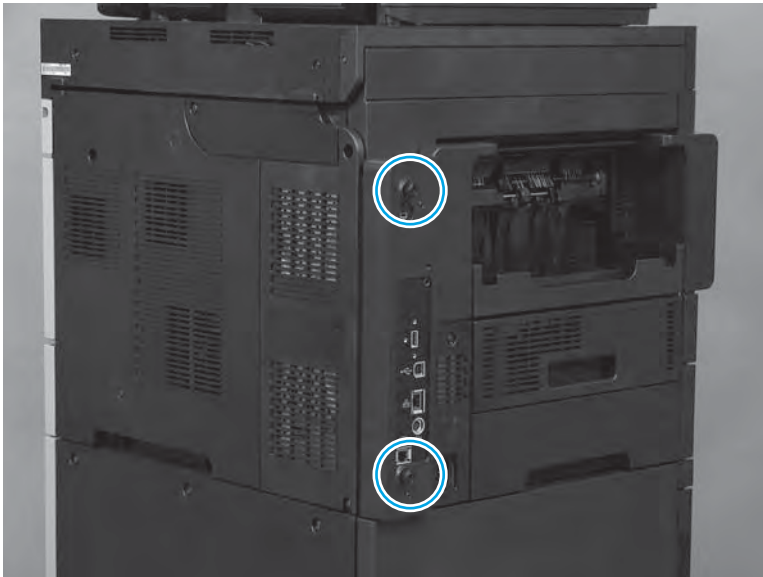
1. Align the formatter with the guides at the top and bottom of the formatter cage and push the formatter into the slot until it is fully seated.

Figure 1-927 Align the formatter with the guides and push the formatter into the slot




2. Finger-tighten the two thumbscrews.

Figure 1-928 Tighten the two thumbscrews



Step 34: Test the installation

1. Do the following steps:
 - a. Reconnect all cables to the formatter.
 - b. Plug in the power cord.
2. Turn on the product.

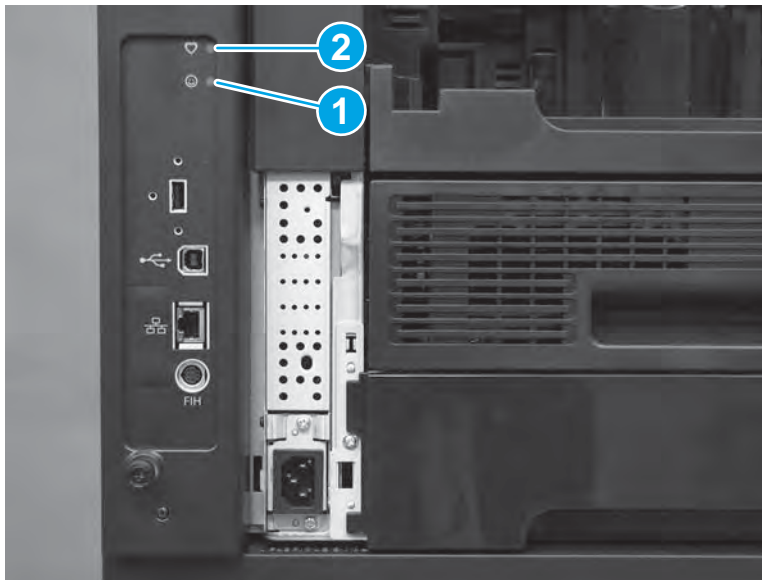
 **TIP:** If the product does not initialize when the power is turned on, make sure that the memory DIMM is correctly installed.

To verify that the formatter is correctly installed, observe the following functions of the LEDs on the formatter:

- The heartbeat LED (callout 1) illuminates if the formatter is functioning correctly.
 - While the product is initializing, the heartbeat LED illuminates solid red for about one second, and then turns solid green for about twenty seconds.
 - After the initialization sequence is complete, the heartbeat LED blinks continuously if the printer is functioning correctly.
- The connectivity LED (callout 2) indicates that the formatter is completely seated. It illuminates green when the product power is turned on and stays green if the formatter is properly seated.

If the LEDs do not correctly function, turn the product power off, remove the formatter, and then reinstall it (make sure that the formatter is fully seated before tightening the thumbscrews).

Figure 1-929 Verify that the formatter is functioning



Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Feed roller assembly

Remove the following assemblies:

- Output bin and bin base assembly. See [Output bin and bin base assembly on page 68](#).



NOTE: If the optional HP Stapling Mailbox is installed, remove it.

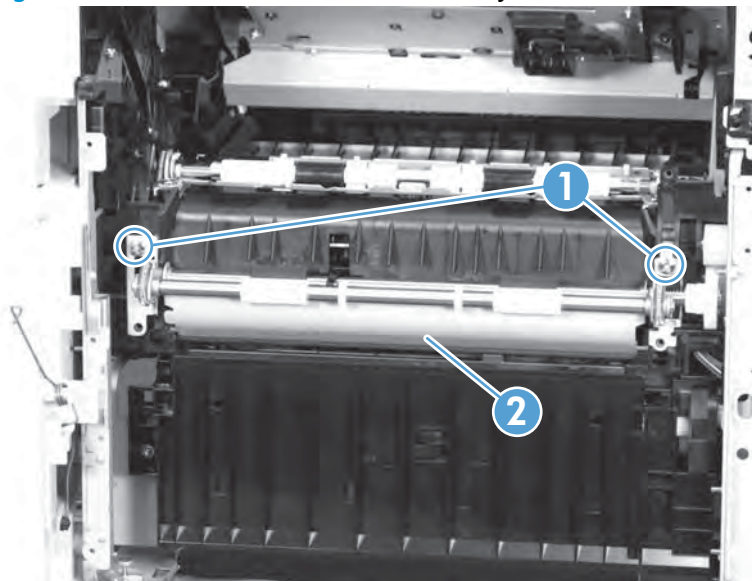
- Image scanner cable cover. See [Image scanner cable cover on page 283](#).
- Tray 1 cover. See [Tray 1 cover on page 287](#).
- Rear-right cover. See [Rear-right cover on page 323](#).
- Rear-top cover. See [Rear-top cover on page 335](#).
- Right-lower door. See [Right-lower door on page 345](#).
- DC controller shield-plate assembly. See [DC controller shield-plate assembly on page 382](#).
- Tray 1 pickup assembly. See [Tray 1 pickup assembly on page 403](#).

Remove the feed roller assembly

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the feed roller assembly (callout 2).

Figure 1-930 Remove the feed roller assembly



Pickup drive assembly

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox](#)
- [Step 2: Remove the Tray 1 cover](#)
- [Step 3: Remove the image scanner cable cover](#)
- [Step 4: Remove the rear-right cover](#)
- [Step 5: Remove the rear-left cover](#)
- [Step 6: Remove the rear-top cover](#)
- [Step 7: Remove the right-lower door](#)
- [Step 8: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly](#)
- [Step 9: Remove the DC controller](#)
- [Step 10: Remove the feed motor](#)
- [Step 11: Remove the pickup drive assembly](#)
- [Step 12: Unpack the replacement pickup drive assembly](#)
- [Step 13: Install the pickup drive assembly](#)
- [Step 14: Install the feed motor](#)
- [Step 15: Install the DC controller](#)
- [Step 16: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly](#)
- [Step 17: Install the right-lower door](#)
- [Step 18: Install the rear-top cover](#)
- [Step 19: Install the rear-left cover](#)
- [Step 20: Install the rear-right cover](#)
- [Step 21: Install the image scanner cable cover](#)
- [Step 22: Install the Tray 1 cover](#)
- [Step 23: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox](#)
- [Step 24: Turn the product power on](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the pickup drive assembly.

Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the kit.

Pickup drive assembly part number	
RM2-5804-000CN	Pickup drive assembly

Do the following steps:

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

Required tools

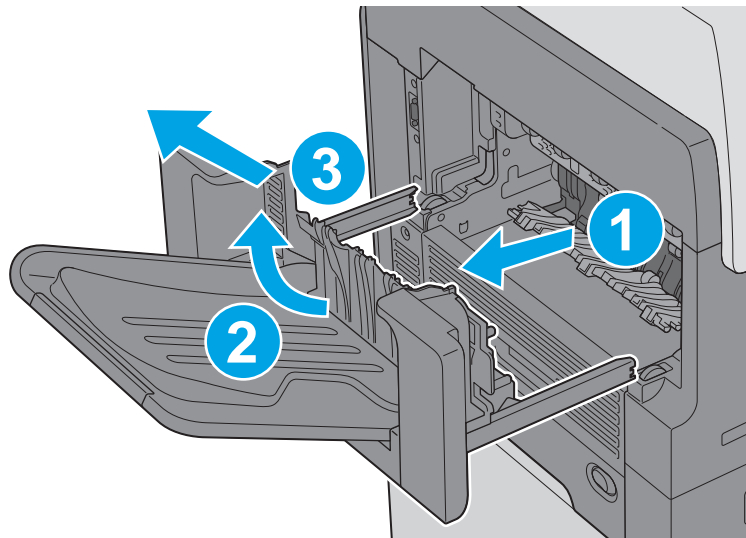
#2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152-mm (6-in) shaft length

Step 1: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox

▲ Do one of the following steps:

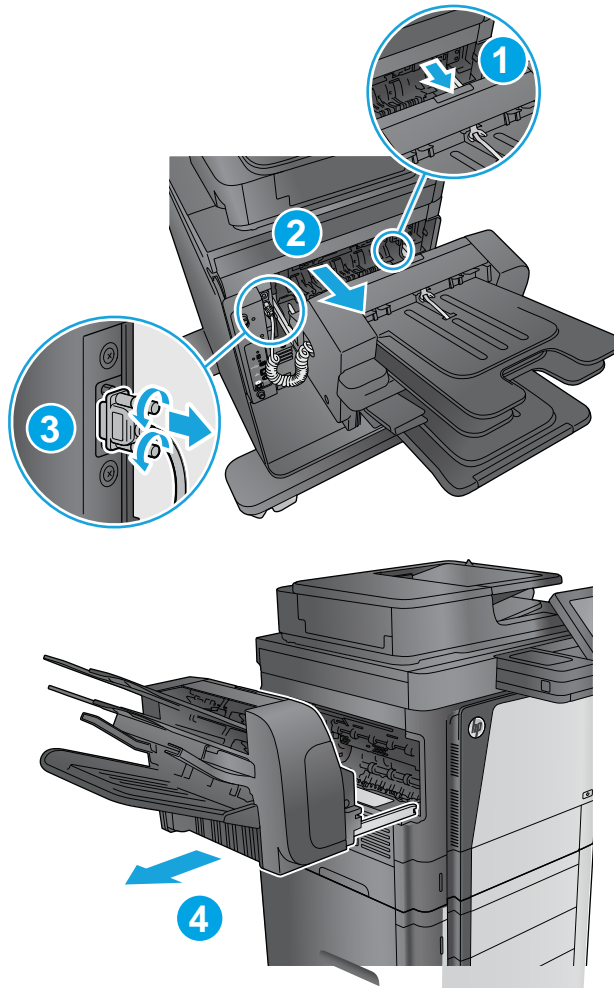
- M630dn and M630f:** Slide the bin base away from the product (callout 1) until it stops, slightly lift up on the assembly to disengage the slide rails (callout 2), and then remove the assembly (callout 3).

Figure 1-931 Remove the output bin



- b. **M630z:** Press the latch (callout 1), pull the stapling mailbox away from the product (callout 2), disconnect the interface cable (callout 3), and then remove the stapling mailbox (callout 4).

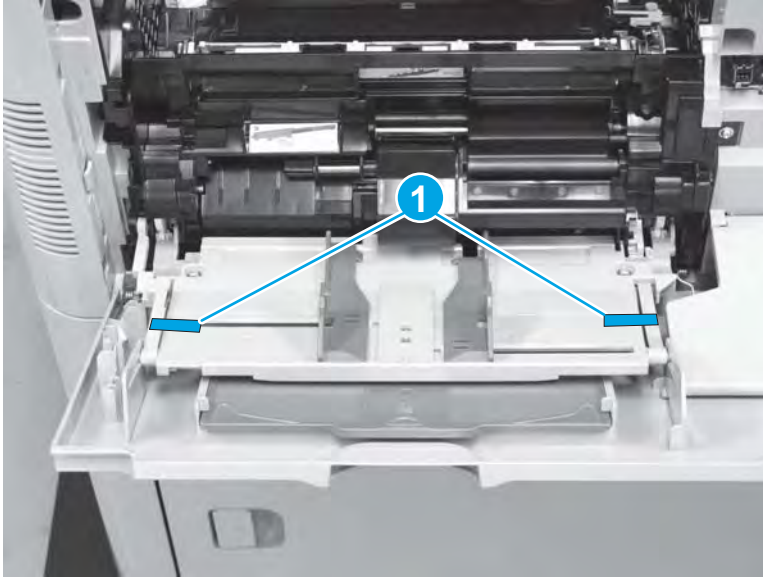
Figure 1-932 Remove the stapling mailbox



Step 2: Remove the Tray 1 cover

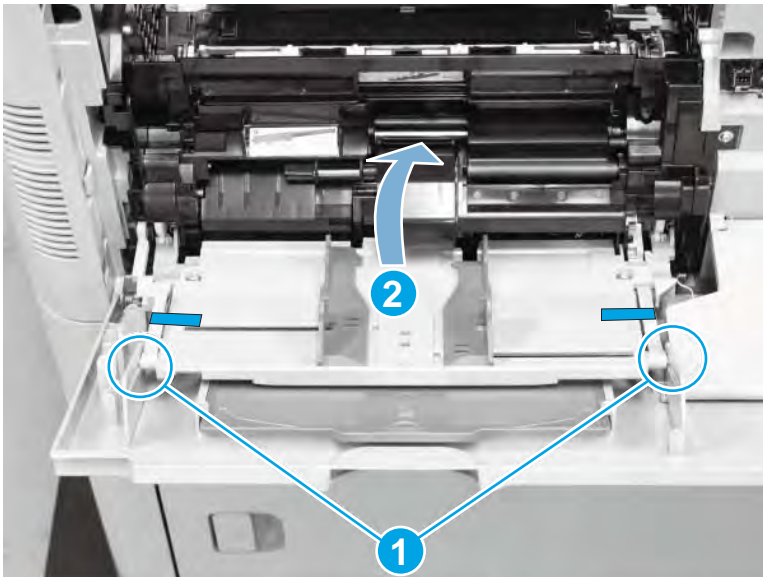
1. Use low adhesive tape to secure the outer retaining pins (callout 1) to the inner tray.

Figure 1-933 Secure the outer retaining pins



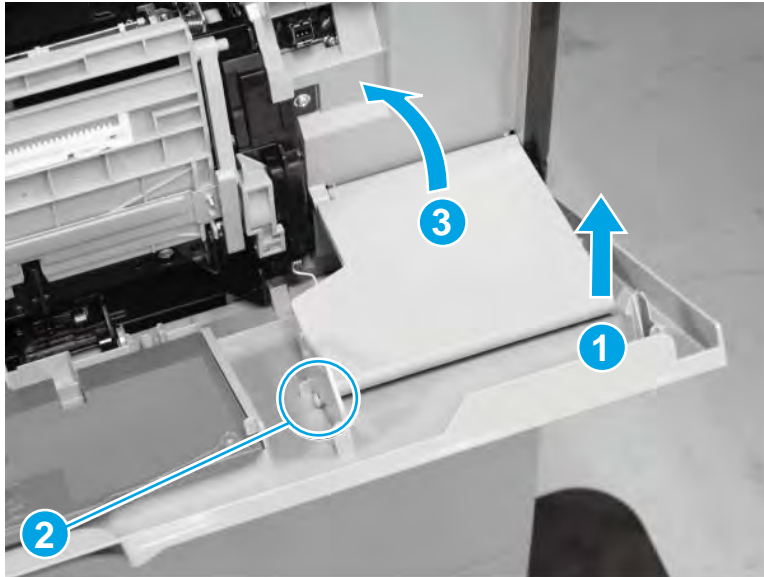
2. Open Tray 1, release the two outer retaining pins (callout 1) on the cover, and then carefully fold the inner tray up (callout 2) and into the product to protect it.

Figure 1-934 Release two outer retaining pins



- Carefully lift on the outer corner of the tray inner cover (callout 1) to release one pin (callout 2) from the guide, and then fold the inner cover up (callout 3) and into the product.

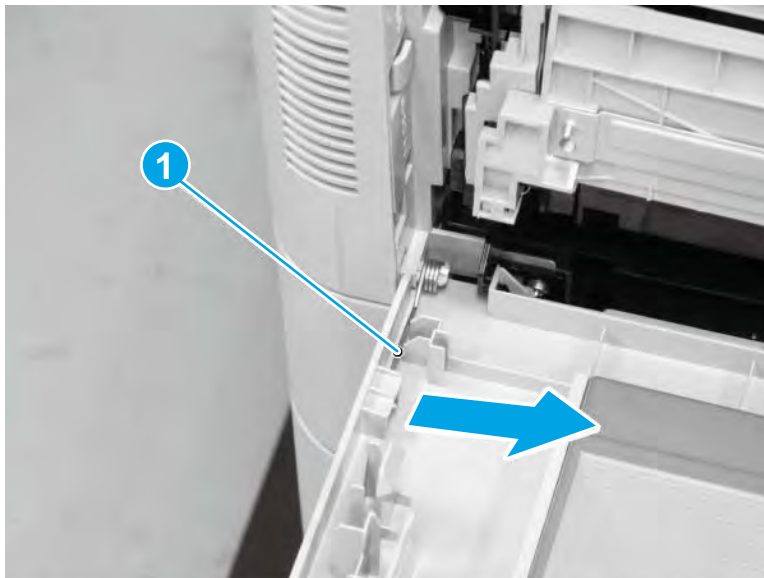
Figure 1-935 Release one pin



- Release the left-side spring arm (callout 1).

CAUTION: The spring is not captive when the spring arm is released and can be dislodged and lost.

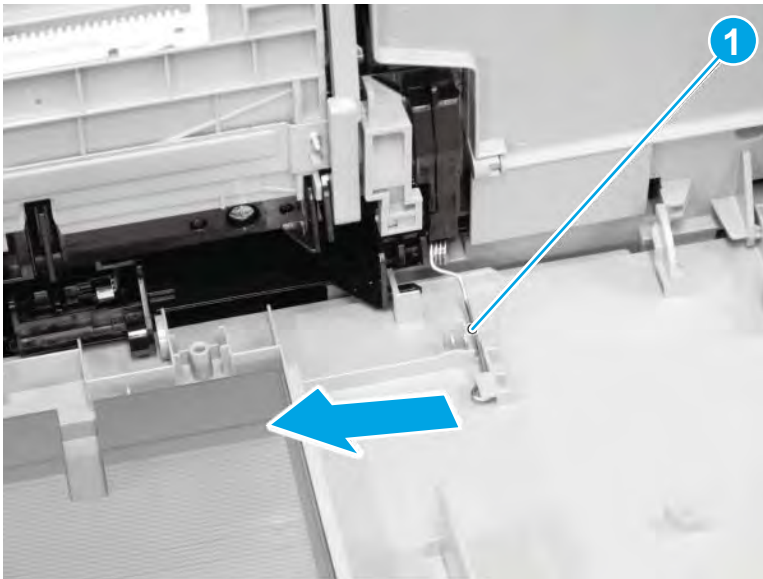
Figure 1-936 Release the left-side spring



5. Release the right-side spring arm (callout 1).

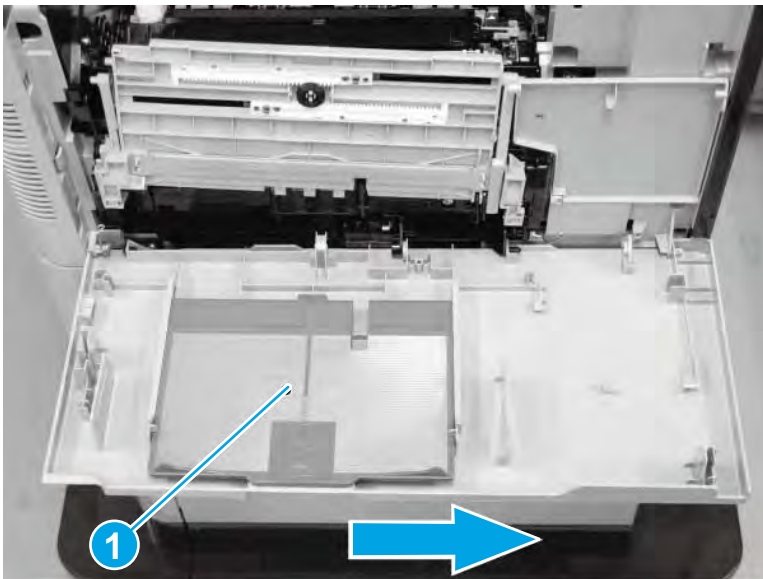
⚠ CAUTION: The spring is not captive when the spring arm is released and can be dislodged and lost.

Figure 1-937 Release the right-side spring



6. Slide the cover (callout 1) toward the back of the product to release it, and then remove the cover.

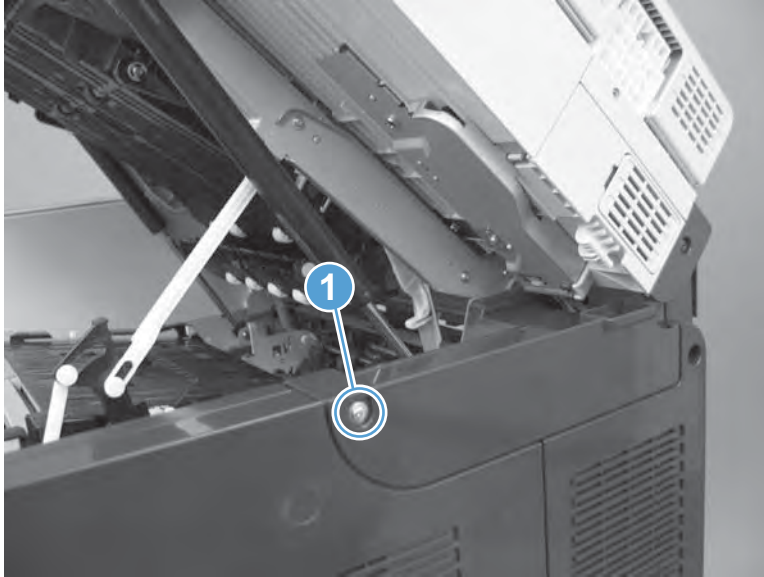
Figure 1-938 Remove the cover



Step 3: Remove the image scanner cable cover

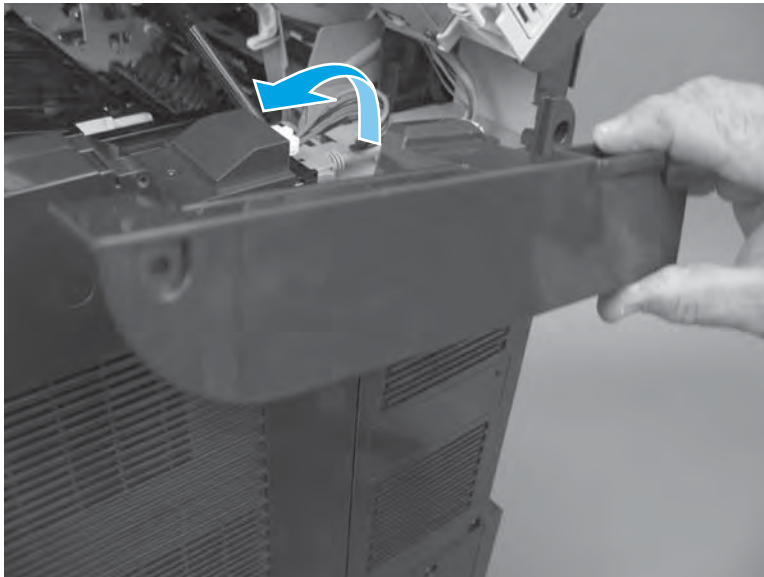
1. Open the top cover, and then remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-939 Remove one screw



2. Remove the cover.

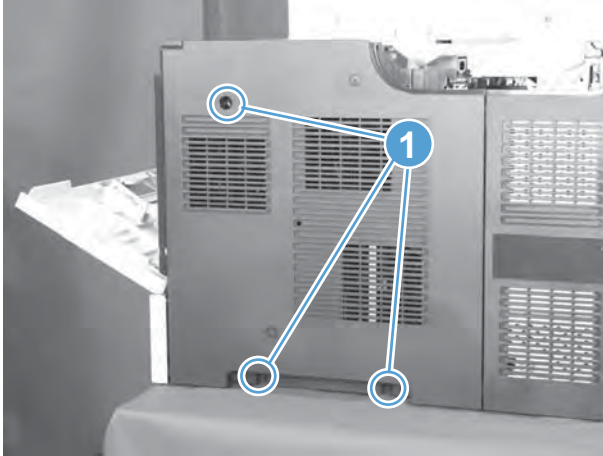
Figure 1-940 Remove the cover



Step 4: Remove the rear-right cover

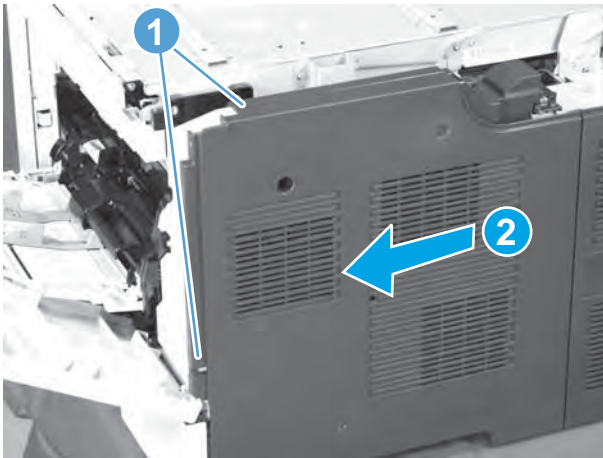
1. Open the top cover and Tray 1, and then remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-941 Remove three screws



2. Release two tabs (callout 1), slightly separate the edge of the cover near Tray 1 from the product, slide the cover towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

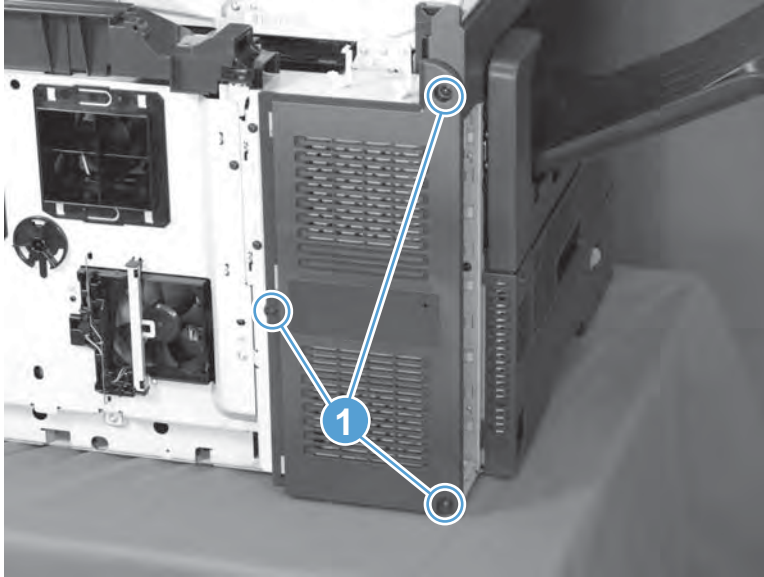
Figure 1-942 Remove the cover



Step 5: Remove the rear-left cover

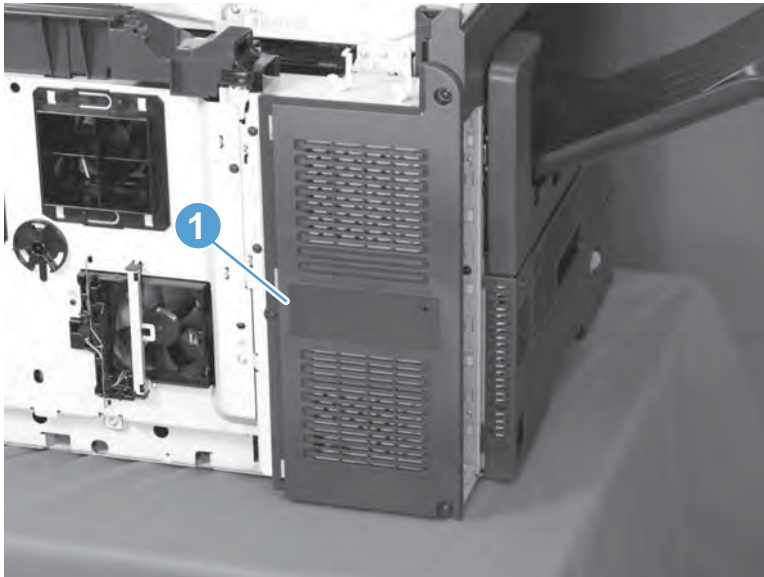
1. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-943 Remove three screws



2. Remove the cover (callout 1).

Figure 1-944 Remove the cover

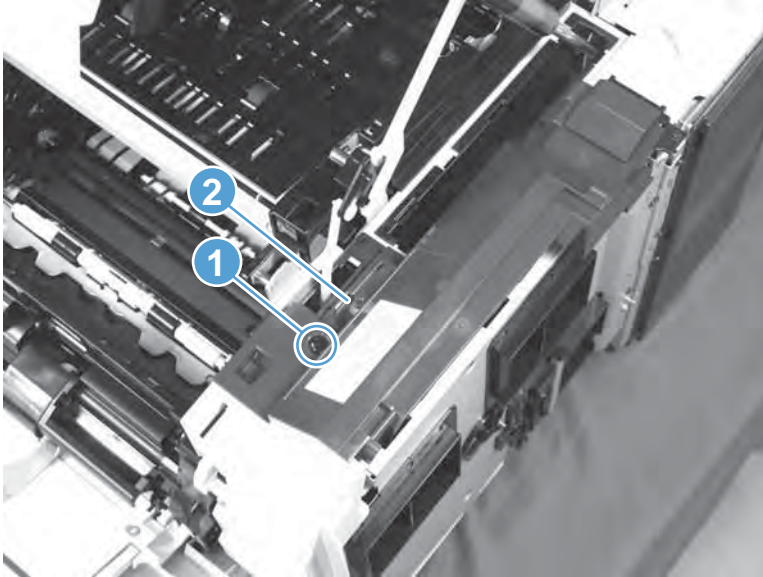


Step 6: Remove the rear-top cover

 **NOTE:** If the top cover is closed, open it now.

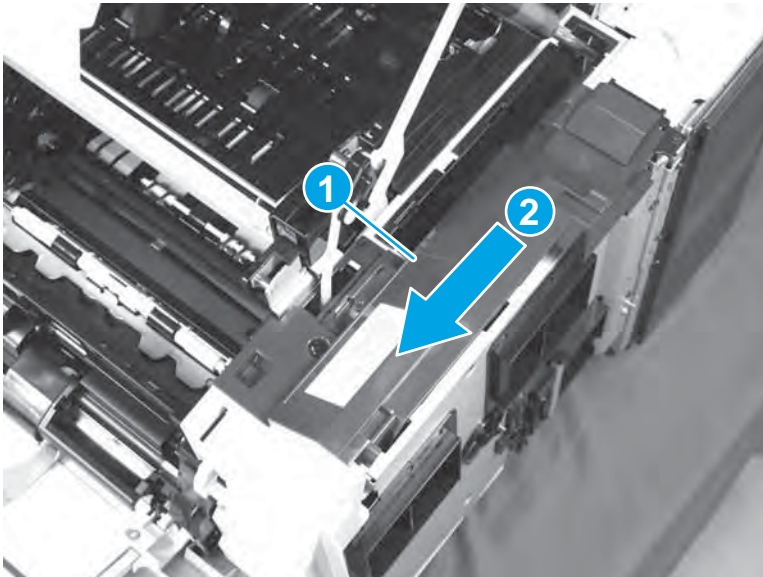
1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release one tab (callout 2).

Figure 1-945 Remove one screw



2. Push the cover (callout 1) towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

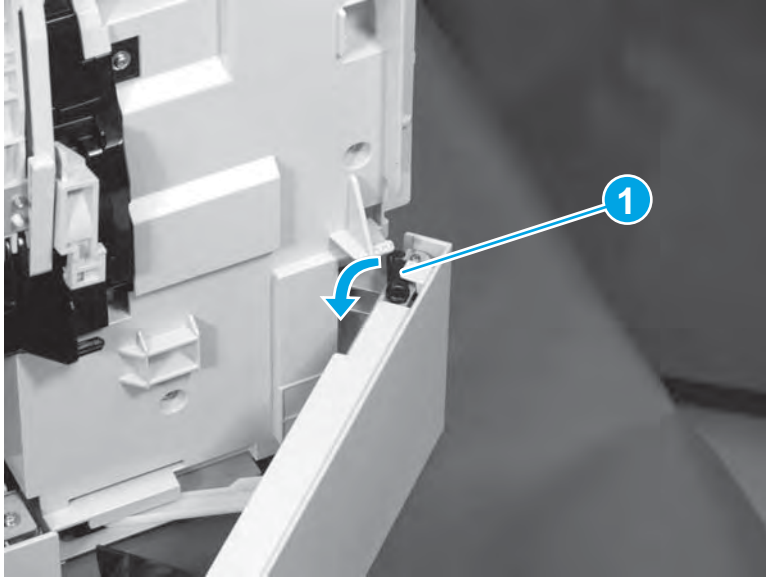
Figure 1-946 Remove the cover



Step 7: Remove the right-lower door

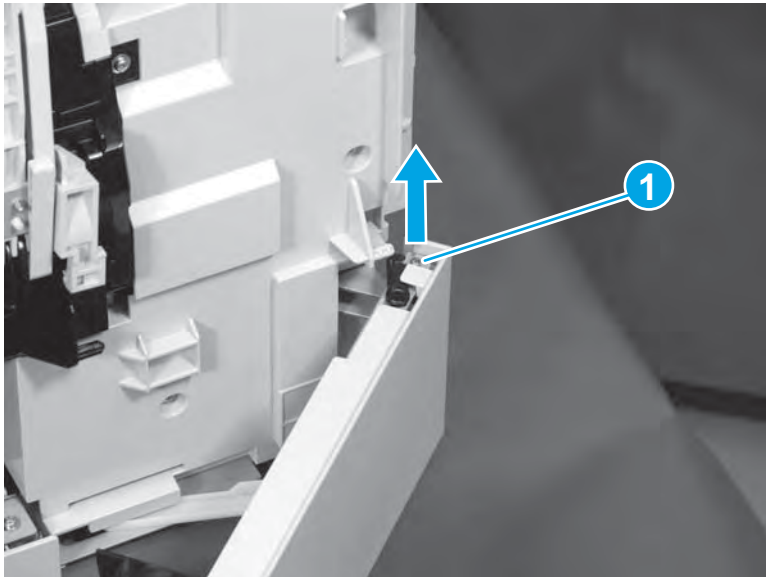
1. Open the right-lower door, and then rotate the stopper (callout 1) to release it.

Figure 1-947 Rotate the stopper



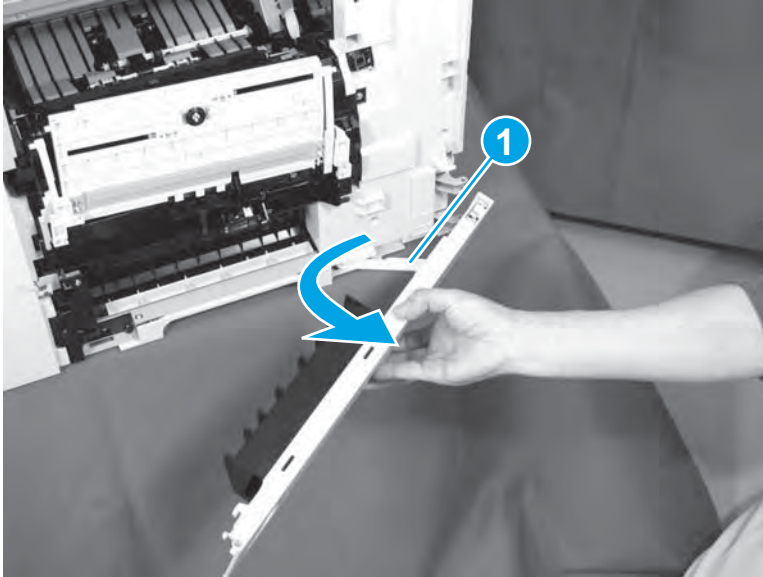
2. Support the door, and then remove the shaft (callout 1).

Figure 1-948 Remove the shaft



3. Release the door-retainer arm (callout 1) by sliding it toward the front of the product, and then remove the door.

Figure 1-949 Remove the door

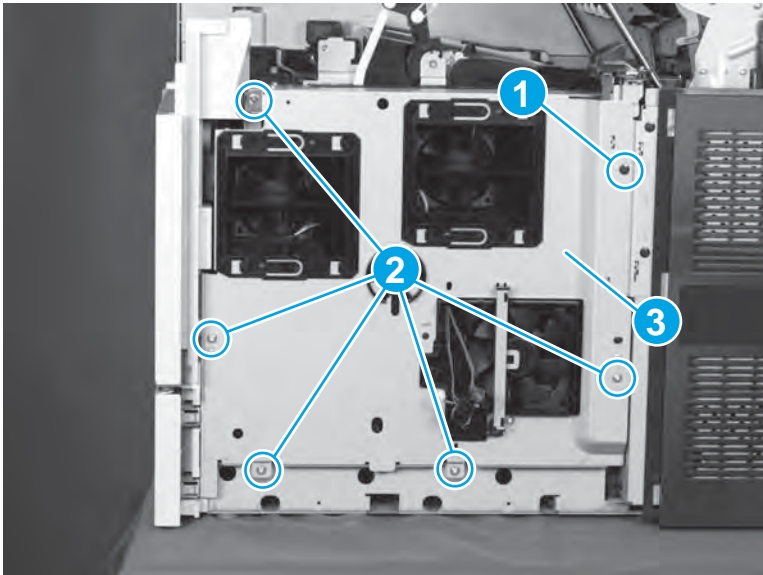


Step 8: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly

1. Remove one black screw (callout 1), remove five silver screws (callout 2), and then slightly rotate the top of the shield (callout 3) away from the product.

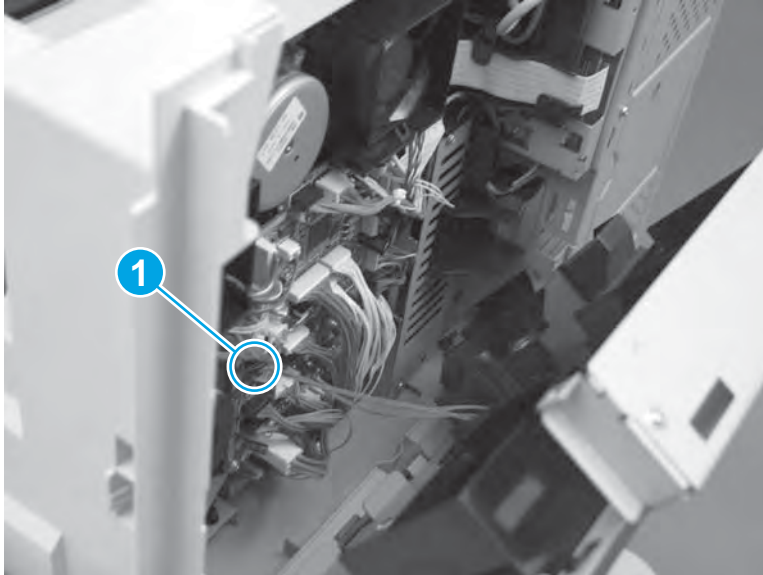
CAUTION: The shield is still connected to the product by a wire harness. Do not completely remove the shield after removing the screws.

Figure 1-950 Remove six screws



2. Disconnect one connector (J42; callout 1) from the DC controller, and then remove the DC controller shield.

Figure 1-951 Disconnect one connector and remove the shield



Step 9: Remove the DC controller

1. Disconnect all of the connectors (callout 1) on the DC controller.
 - 34 wire-harness connectors
 - 1 flat-flexible cable (FFC)


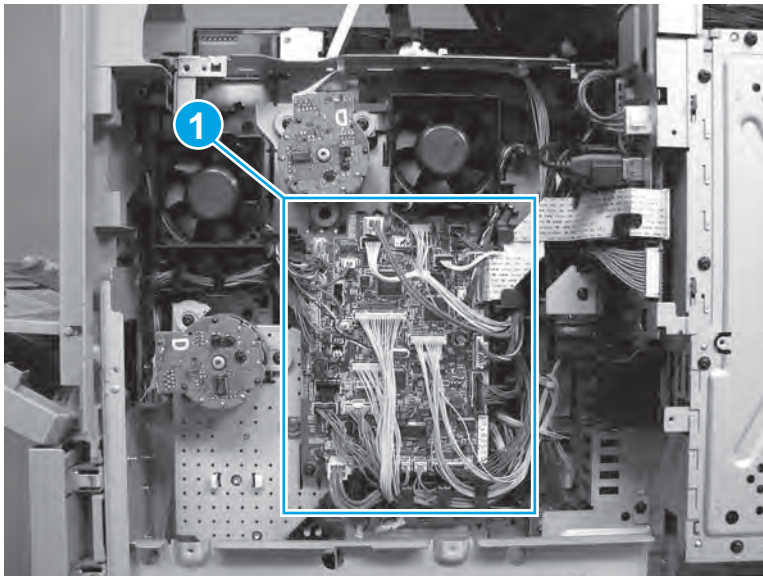
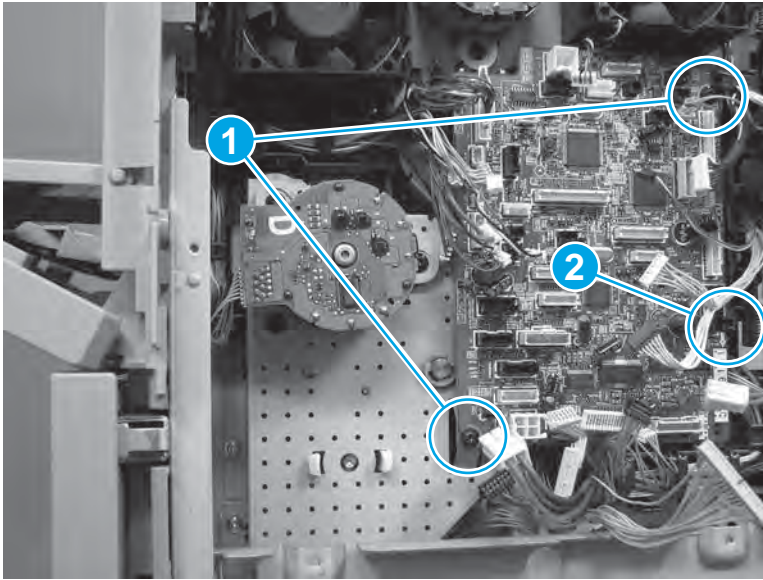
 **Reinstallation tip:** When the DC controller is reinstalled, connectors J42, J59, and J80 are empty.

Figure 1-952 Disconnect all of the connectors



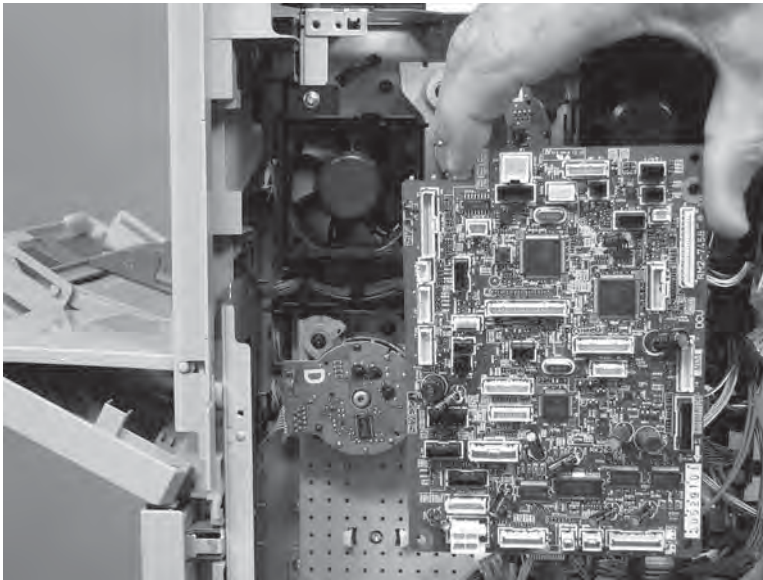
2. Remove two screws (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2).

Figure 1-953 Remove two screws and release one tab




3. Remove the DC controller.

Figure 1-954 Remove the DC controller



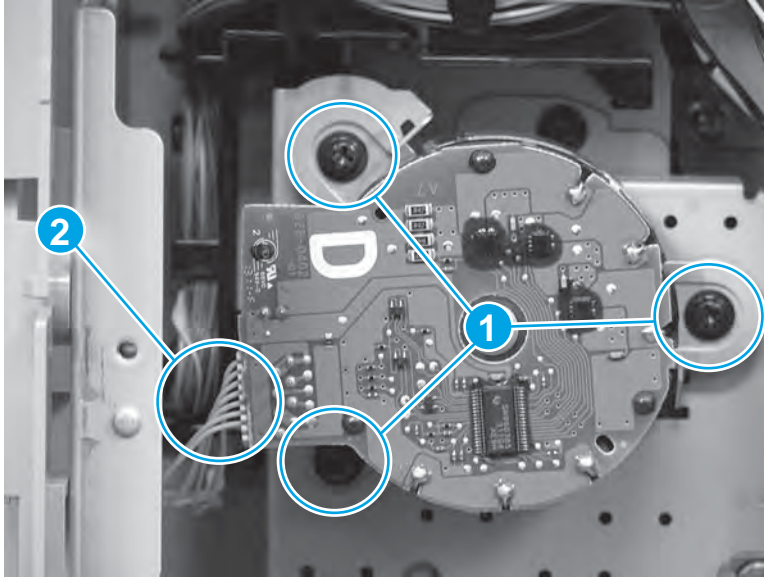
Step 10: Remove the feed motor

- ▲ At the DC controller side of the product, remove three screws (callout 1), remove the feed motor, and then disconnect one connector (callout 2).

 **NOTE:** The feed motor is located at the left-hand side of the DC controller.

 **TIP:** Slightly turn the motor counter clockwise to disengage it from the mounting bracket.

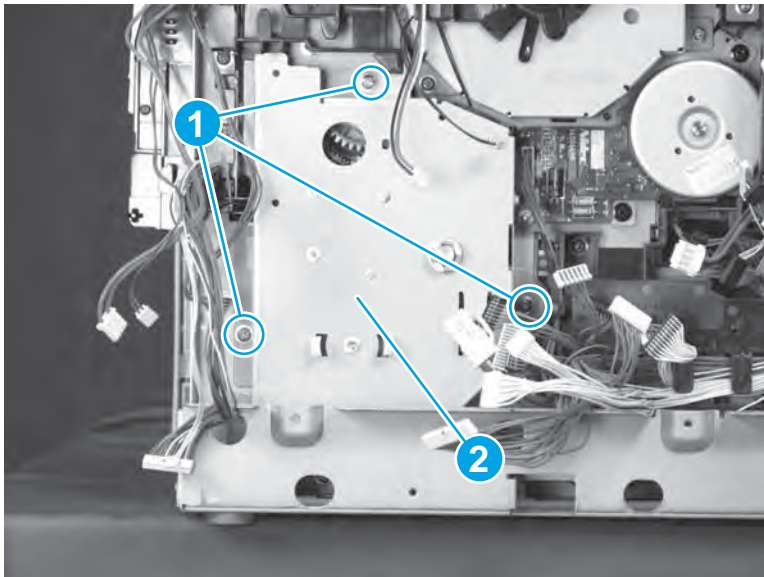
Figure 1-955 Remove the feed motor



Step 11: Remove the pickup drive assembly

- ▲ Remove three screws (callout 1), and then remove the pickup drive assembly (callout 2).


Figure 1-956 Remove the pickup drive assembly

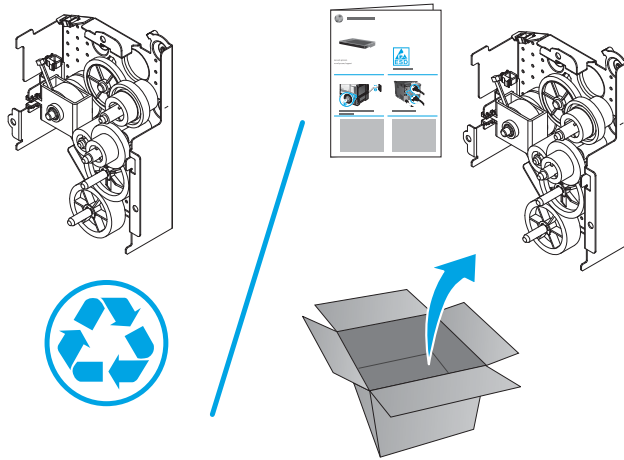


Step 12: Unpack the replacement pickup drive assembly

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

www.Product return and recycling.

 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.

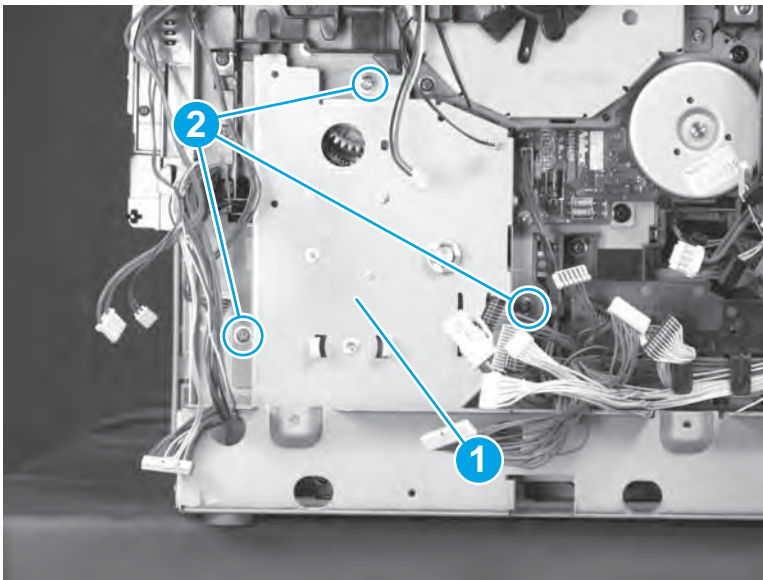


Step 13: Install the pickup drive assembly

1. Position the pickup drive assembly (callout 1) on the product, and then install three screws (callout 2).

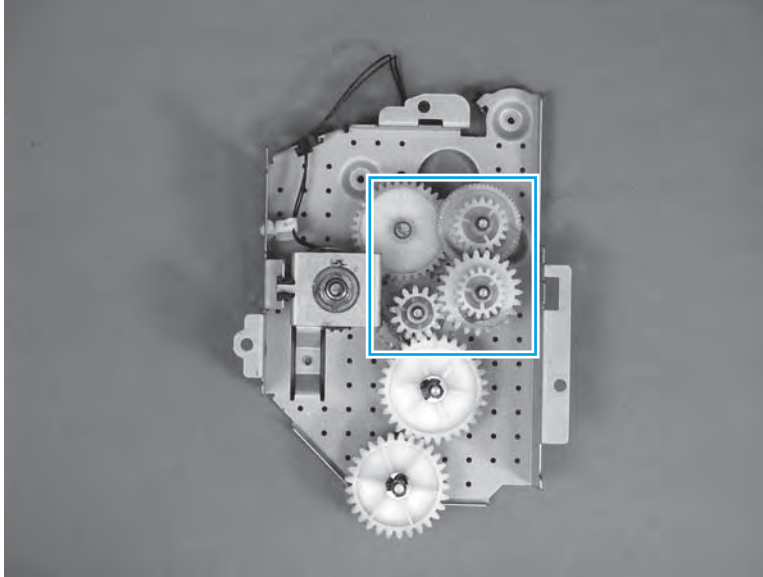
⚠ CAUTION: Some of the gears on the backside of the assembly are not captive.

Figure 1-957 Install the pickup drive assembly



2. If the gears located on the backside of the assembly become dislodged, replace them as shown in the figure.

Figure 1-958 Check the pickup drive assembly gears



Step 14: Install the feed motor

- ▲ Connect one connector (callout 1), and then install three screws (callout 2).


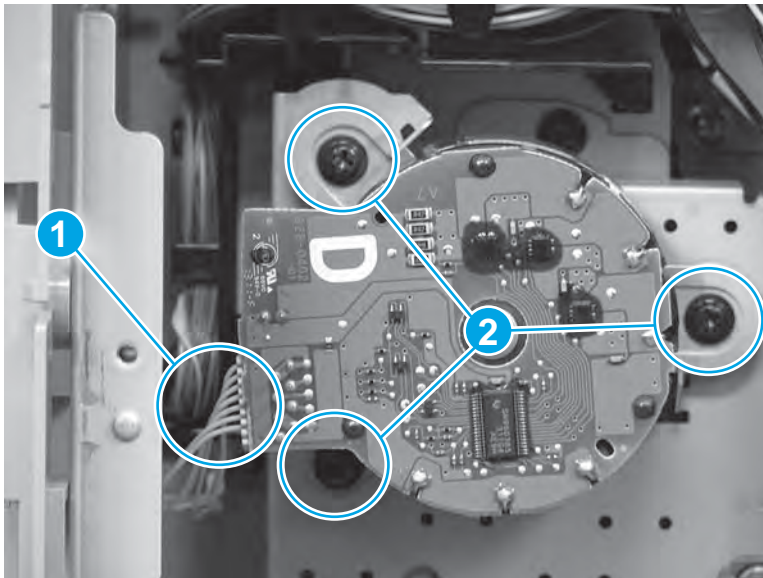
 **TIP:** It is easier to connect the connector before mounting the motor to the chassis.

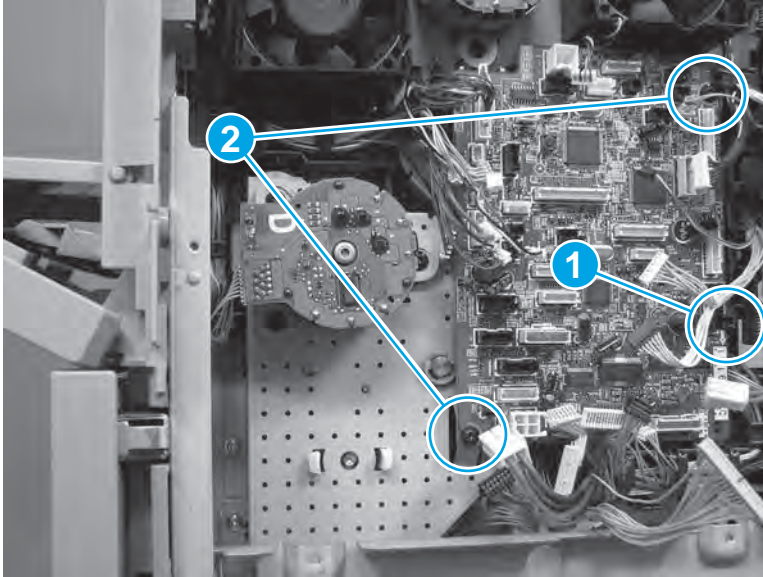
Figure 1-959 Install the feed motor



Step 15: Install the DC controller

1. Position the DC controller on the product, engage one tab (callout 1), and then install two screws (callout 2).

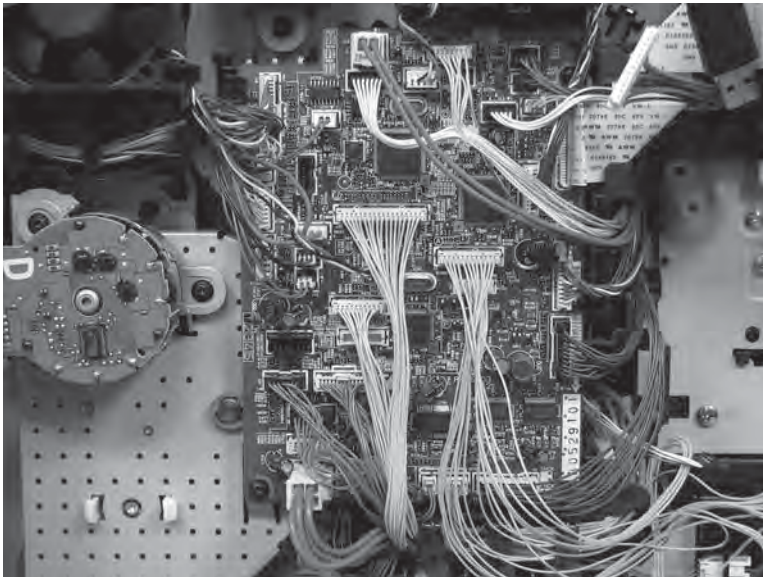
Figure 1-960 Install the DC controller



2. Connect all of the connectors on the DC controller.
 - 34 wire-harness connectors
 - 1 flat-flexible cable (FFC)

 **Reinstallation tip:** Connectors J42, J59, and J80 are empty.

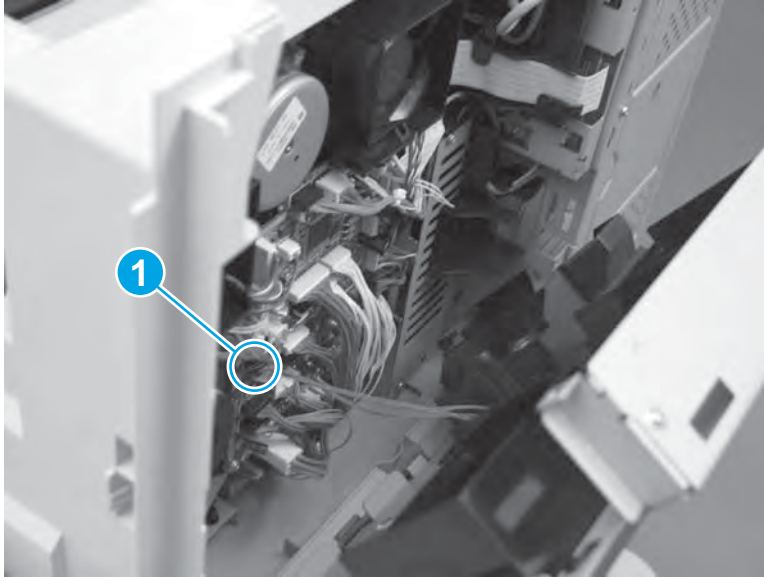
Figure 1-961 Connect all of the connectors



Step 16: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly

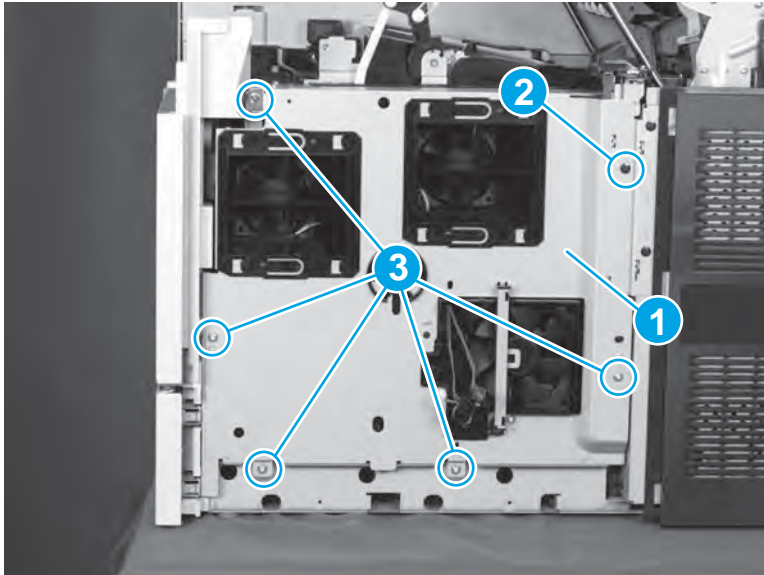
1. Position the shield near the product, and then connect one connector (J42; callout 1).

Figure 1-962 Install the shield and connect one connector



2. Rotate the top of the shield (callout 1) toward the product, install one black screw (callout 2), and then install five silver screws (callout 3).

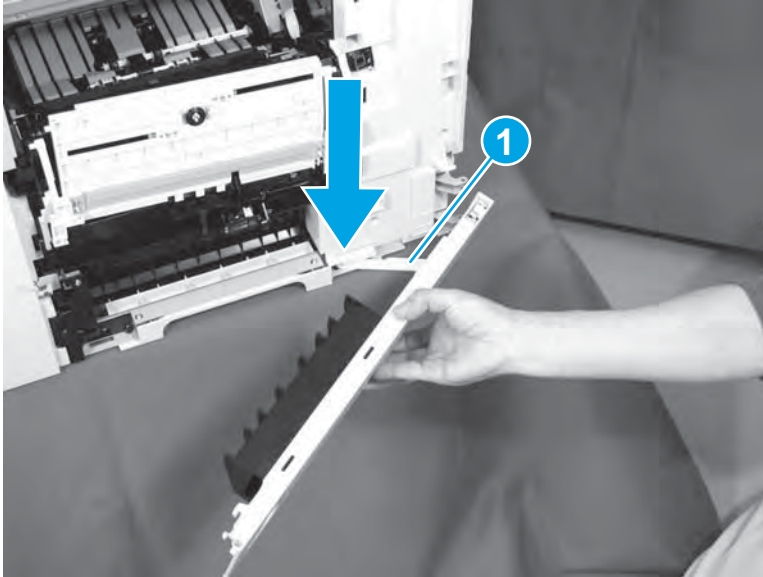
Figure 1-963 Remove six screws



Step 17: Install the right-lower door

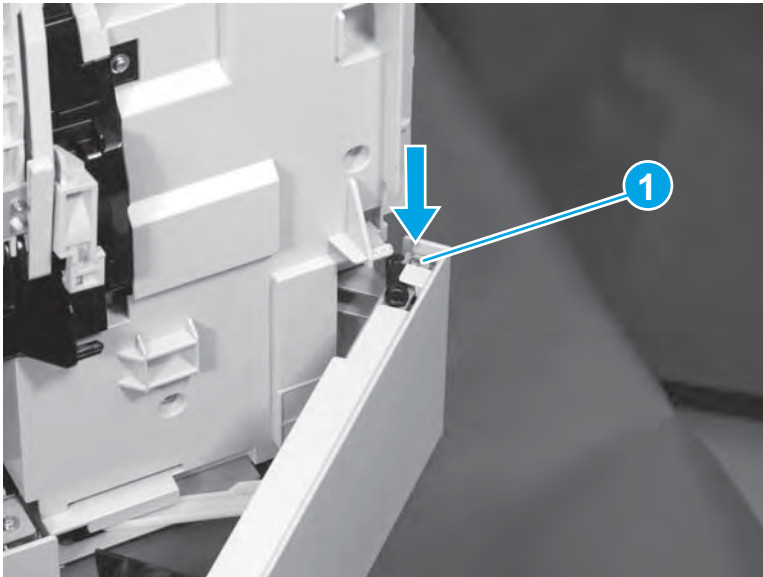
1. Install the door-retainer arm (callout 1) in the slot, and then position the right edge of the door on the product.

Figure 1-964 Install the door



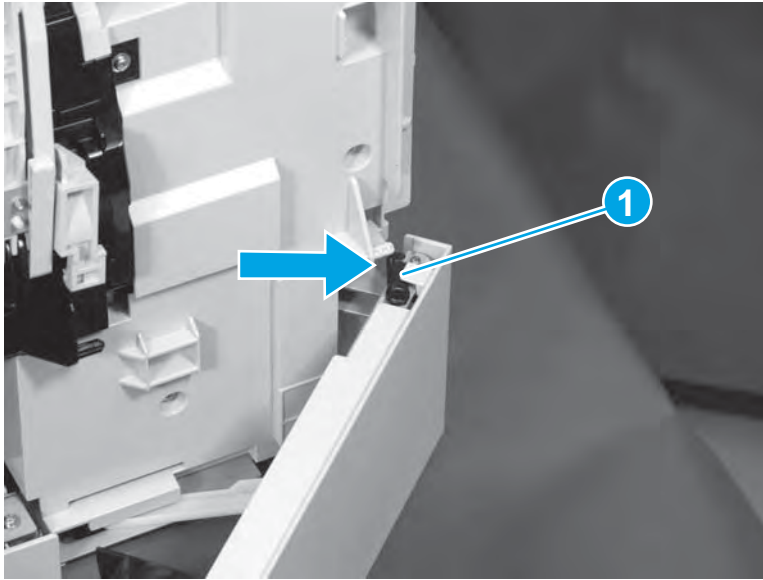
2. Install the shaft (callout 1).

Figure 1-965 Install the shaft



3. Rotate the stopper (callout 1) to until it locks in place.

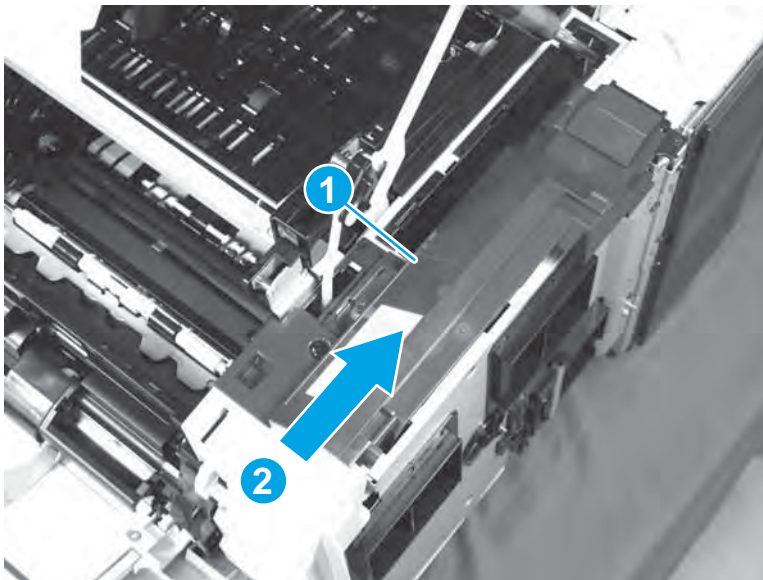
Figure 1-966 Rotate the stopper



Step 18: Install the rear-top cover

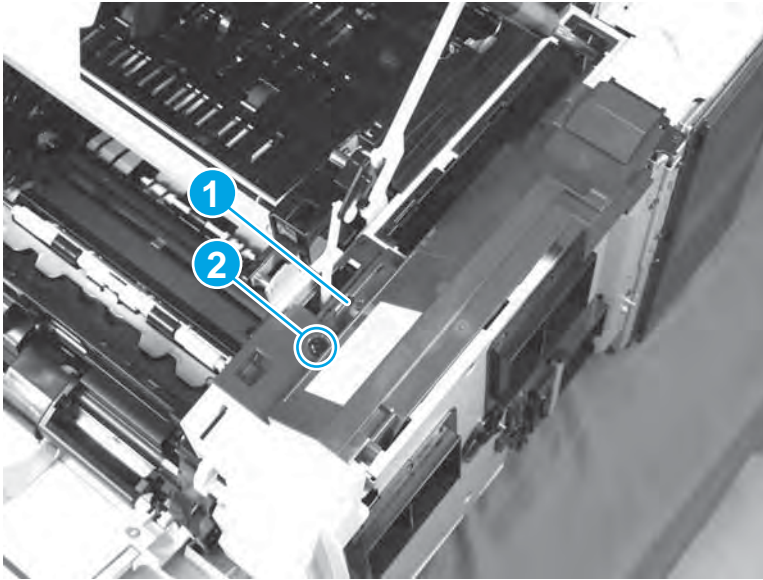
1. Position the cover on the product, Push the cover (callout 1) away Tray 1 to install it (callout 2).

Figure 1-967 Install the cover



2. Make sure that the tab (callout 2) is engaged, and then install one screw (callout 2).

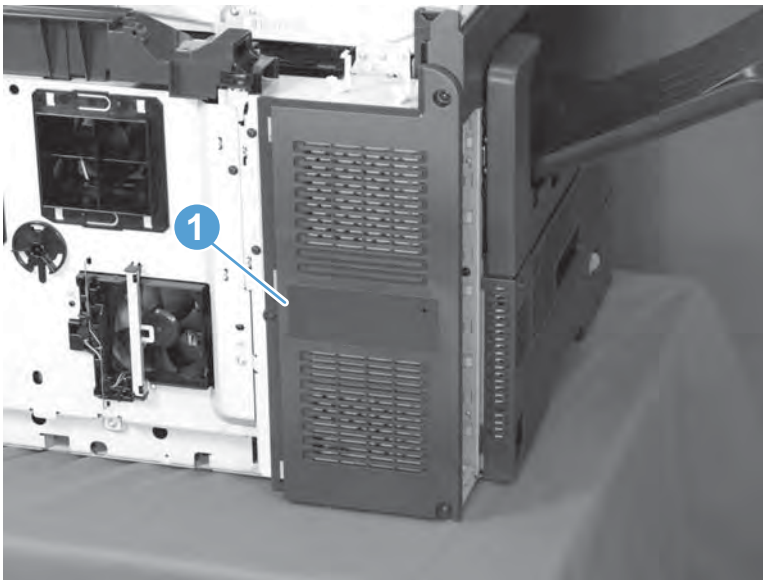
Figure 1-968 Install one screw



Step 19: Install the rear-left cover

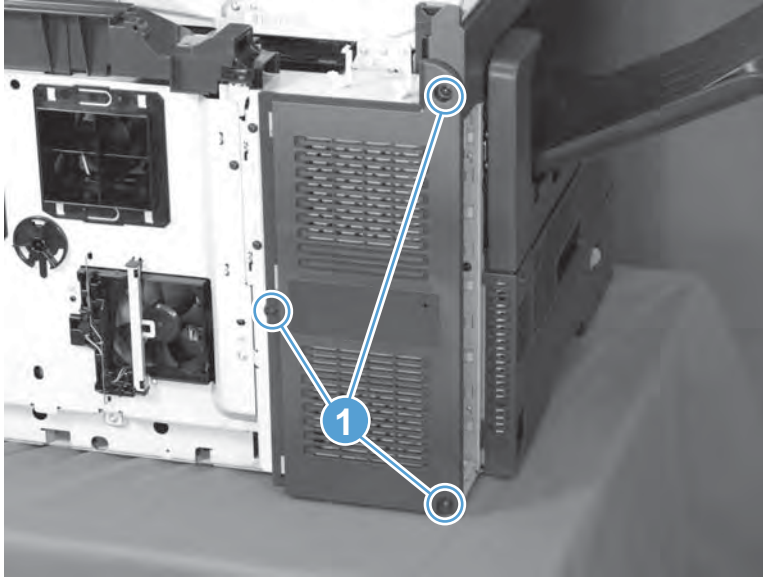
1. Position the cover (callout 1) on the product.

Figure 1-969 Install the cover



2. Install three screws (callout 1).

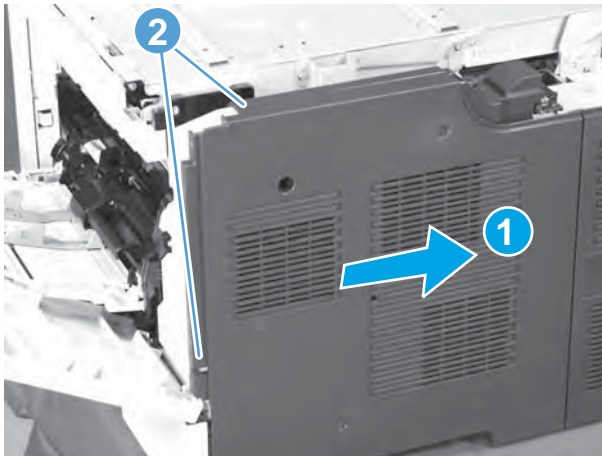
Figure 1-970 Install three screws



Step 20: Install the rear-right cover

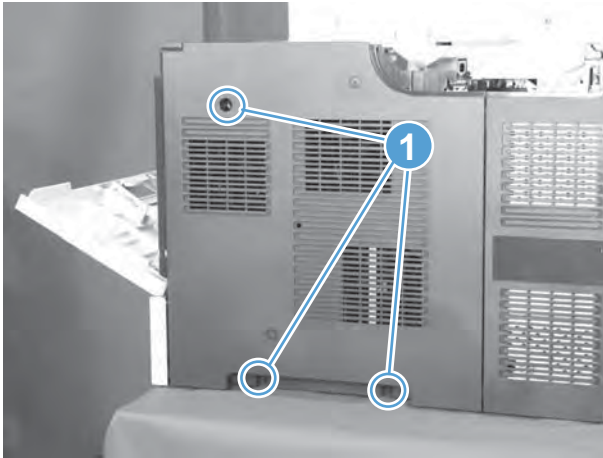
1. Position the cover on the product, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 1) to engage two tabs (callout 2).

Figure 1-971 Install the cover



2. Install three screws (callout 1), and then close the top cover and Tray 1.

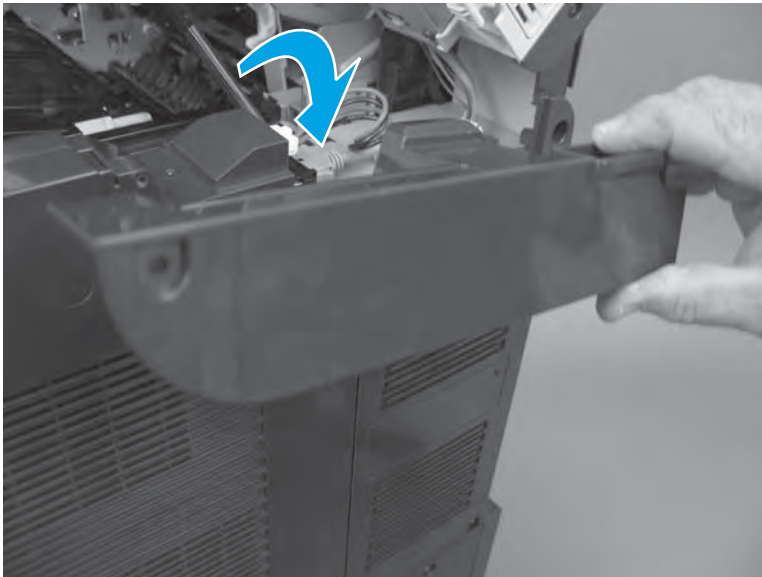
Figure 1-972 Install three screws



Step 21: Install the image scanner cable cover

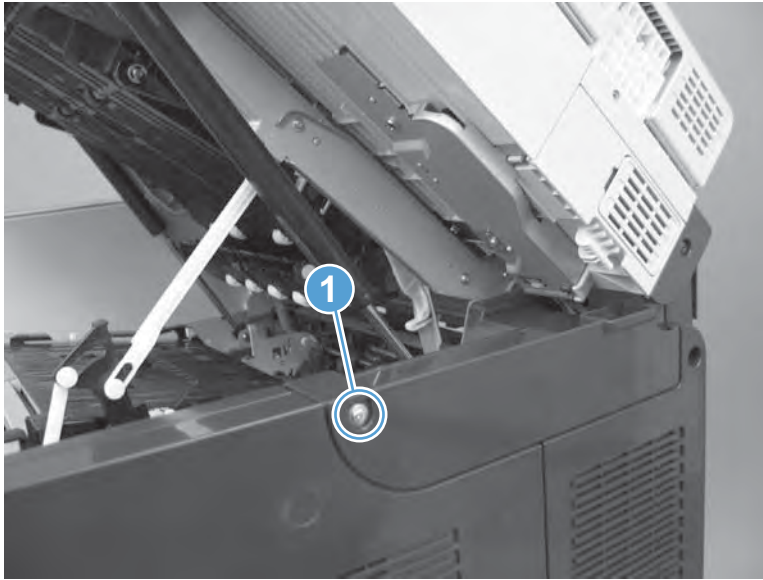
1. Install the cover on the product.

Figure 1-973 Install the cover



2. Install one screw (callout 1), and then close the top cover.

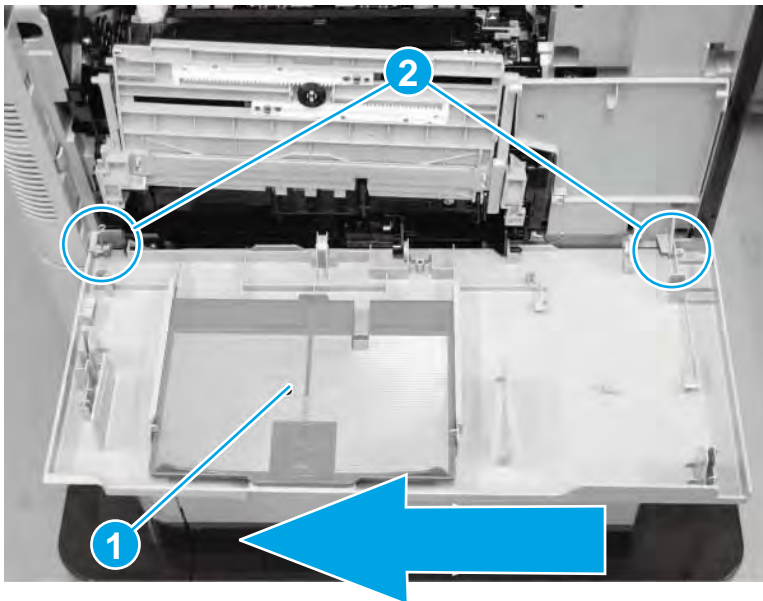
Figure 1-974 Install one screw



Step 22: Install the Tray 1 cover

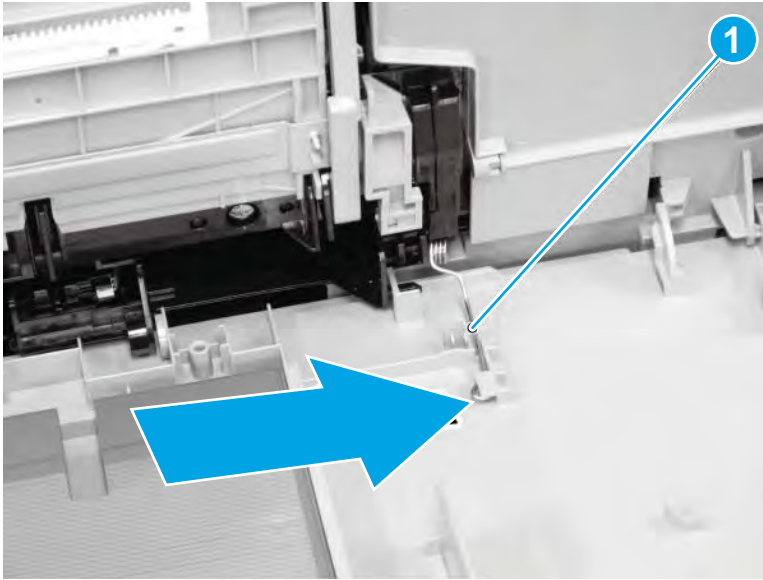
1. Slide the cover (callout 1) toward the front of the product to install it on the hinge pins (callout 2).

Figure 1-975 Install the cover



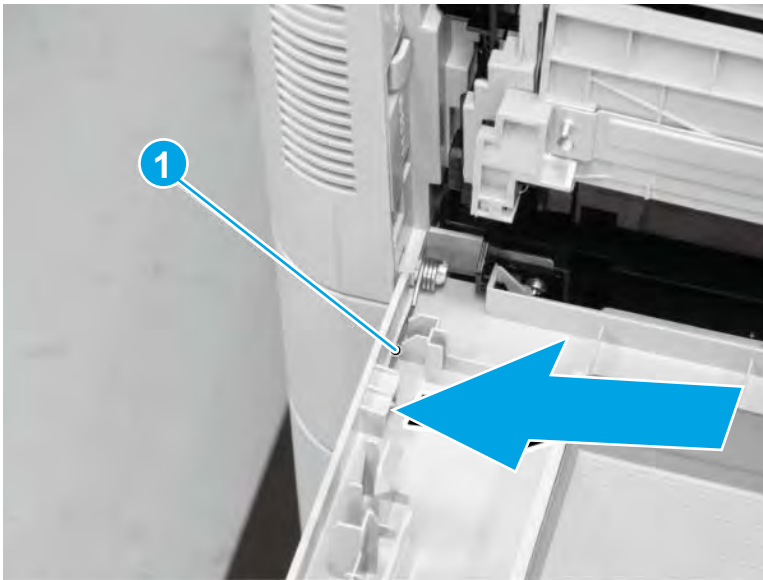
2. Engage the right-side spring arm (callout 1).

Figure 1-976 Engage the right-side spring



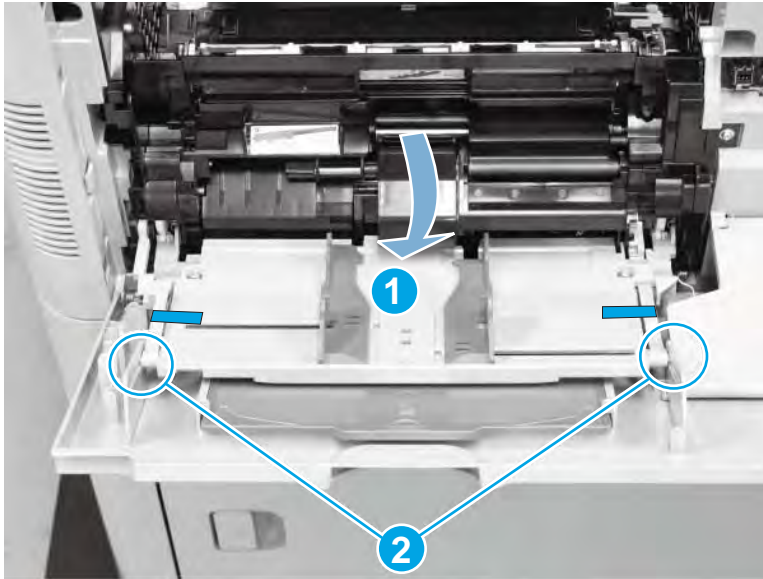
3. Engage the left-side spring arm (callout 1).

Figure 1-977 Engage the left-side spring



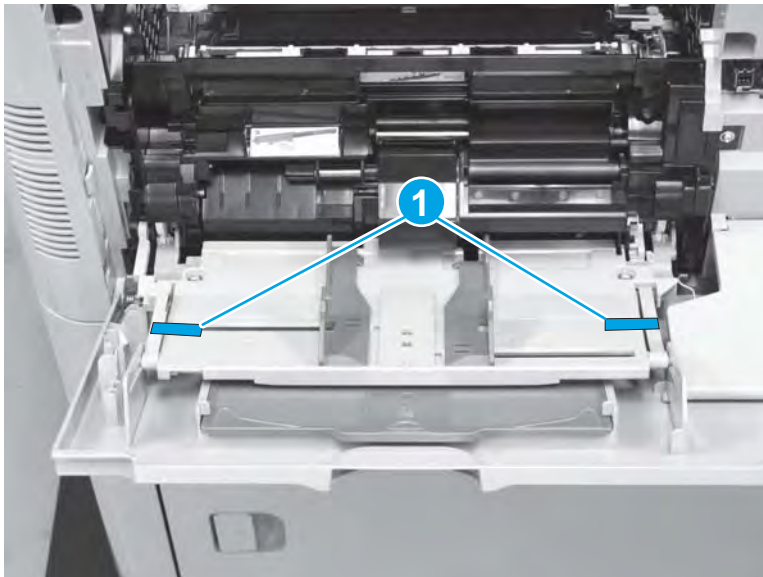
4. Lower the inner tray assembly (callout 1), and then engage the two outer retaining pins (callout 2) on the cover.

Figure 1-978 Engage two outer retaining pins



5. Remove the low adhesive tape (callout 1), and then close the tray.

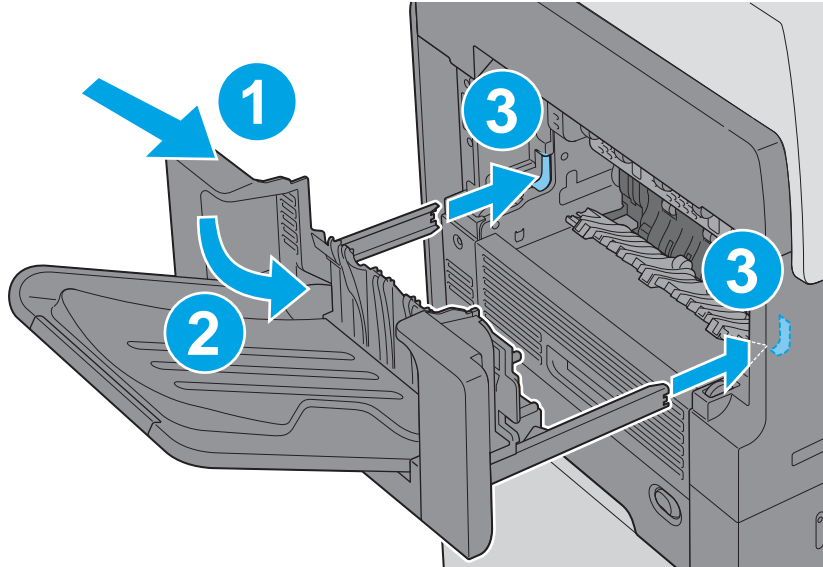
Figure 1-979 Remove the low adhesive tape



Step 23: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox

- ▲ Do one of the following:
 - a. **M630dn and M630f:** Position the assembly at an angle to the product (callout 1), lower the assembly into place (callout 2) while engaging the slide rails (callout 3), and then slide the bin base into the product.

Figure 1-980 Install the output bin



- b. M630z:** Position the assembly at an angle to the product (callout 1), lower the assembly into place (callout 2) while engaging the slide rails (callout 3), connect the interface cable (callout 4), and then slide the stapling mailbox (callout 5) into the product.


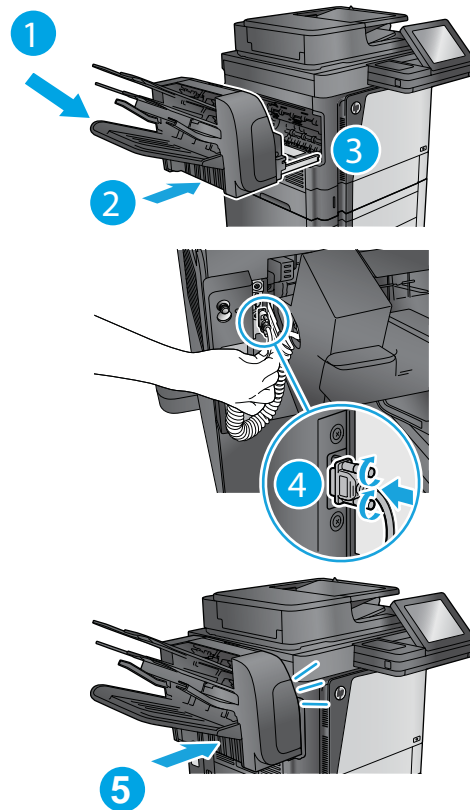
 **TIP:** After servicing, turn the power off, and then on again so that the product detects the installed stapling mailbox.

Figure 1-981 Install the stapling mailbox



Step 24: Turn the product power on

After servicing

Do the following steps:

Connect the power cable.

Turn on the product.

Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Cassette pickup assembly

- [Introduction](#)
- [Step 1: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox](#)
- [Step 2: Remove the Tray 1 cover](#)
- [Step 3: Remove the cassette-door-open detection switch](#)
- [Step 4: Remove the image scanner cable cover](#)
- [Step 5: Remove the rear-right cover](#)
- [Step 6: Remove the rear-left cover](#)
- [Step 7: Remove the rear-top cover](#)
- [Step 8: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly](#)
- [Step 9: Remove the DC controller](#)
- [Step 10: Remove the Tray 1 pickup assembly](#)
- [Step 11: Remove the feed motor](#)
- [Step 12: Remove the pickup drive assembly](#)
- [Step 13: Remove the cassette pickup assembly](#)
- [Step 14: Unpack the replacement cassette pickup assembly](#)
- [Step 15: Install the cassette pickup assembly](#)
- [Step 16: Install the pickup drive assembly](#)
- [Step 17: Install the feed motor](#)
- [Step 18: Install the Tray 1 pickup assembly](#)
- [Step 19: Install the DC controller](#)
- [Step 20: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly](#)
- [Step 21: Install the rear-top cover](#)
- [Step 22: Install the rear-left cover](#)
- [Step 23: Install the rear-right cover](#)
- [Step 24: Install the image scanner cable cover](#)
- [Step 25: Install the cassette-door-open detection switch](#)
- [Step 26: Install the Tray 1 cover](#)
- [Step 27: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox](#)
- [Step 28: Turn the product power on](#)
- [Parts Return](#)

Introduction

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the cassette pickup assembly.

Before servicing

Use the table below to identify the correct kit part number for your product, and then go to www.hp.com/buy/parts to order the kit.

Cassette pickup assembly part number

RM1-5919-000CN

Cassette pickup assembly

NOTE: This assembly is also called the paper pickup assembly.

Do the following steps:

Turn off the product.

Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the product, turn the product off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the product.

Required tools

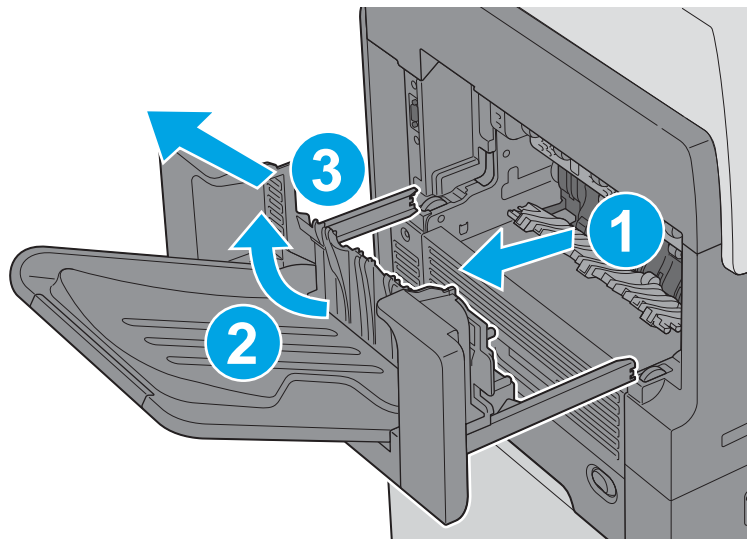
#2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152-mm (6-in) shaft length

Step 1: Remove the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox

▲ Do one of the following steps:

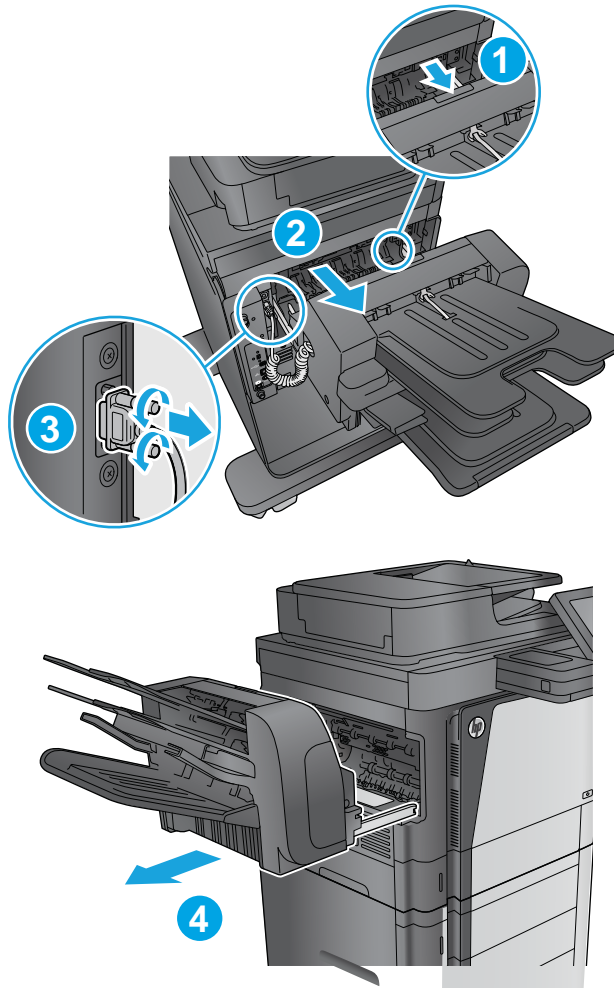
- a. **M630dn and M630f:** Slide the bin base away from the product (callout 1) until it stops, slightly lift up on the assembly to disengage the slide rails (callout 2), and then remove the assembly (callout 3).

Figure 1-982 Remove the output bin



- b. **M630z:** Press the latch (callout 1), pull the stapling mailbox away from the product (callout 2), disconnect the interface cable (callout 3), and then remove the stapling mailbox (callout 4).

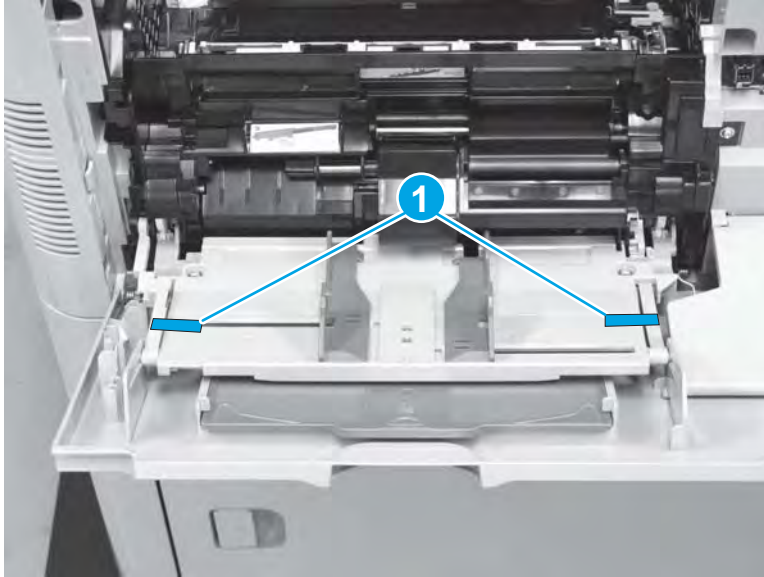
Figure 1-983 Remove the stapling mailbox



Step 2: Remove the Tray 1 cover

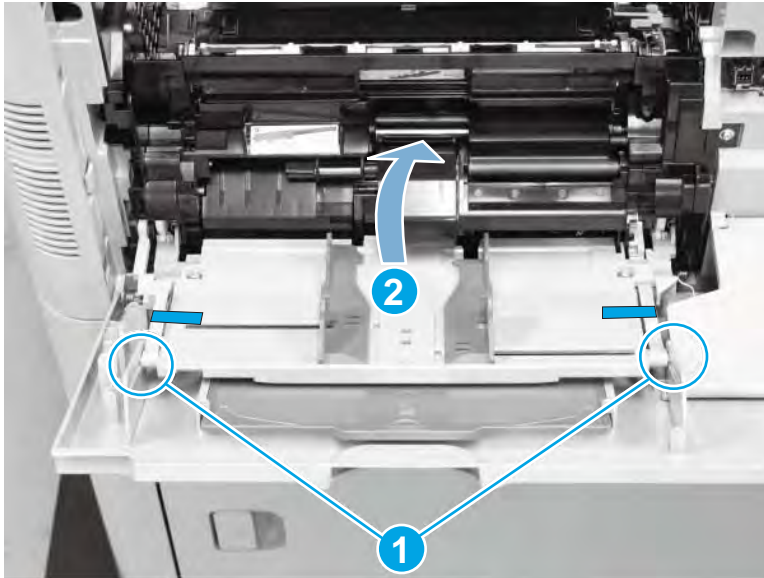
1. Use low adhesive tape to secure the outer retaining pins (callout 1) to the inner tray.

Figure 1-984 Secure the outer retaining pins



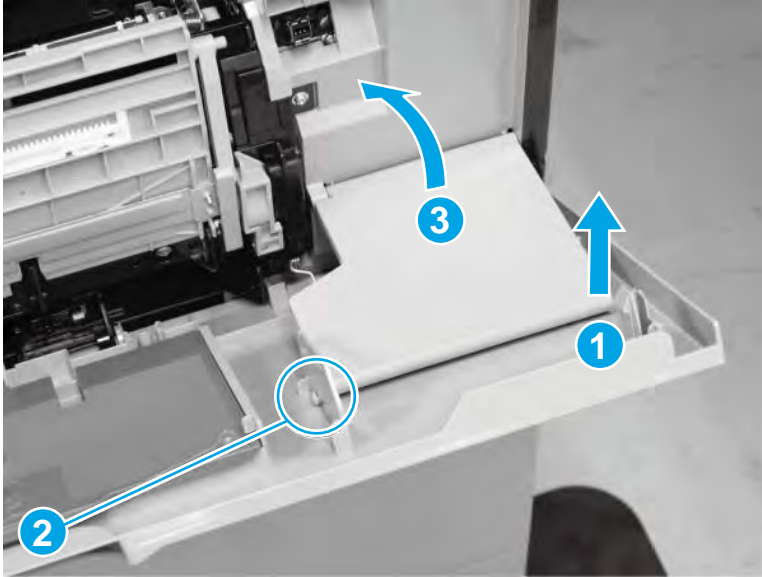
2. Open Tray 1, release the two outer retaining pins (callout 1) on the cover, and then carefully fold the inner tray up (callout 2) and into the product to protect it.

Figure 1-985 Release two outer retaining pins



- Carefully lift on the outer corner of the tray inner cover (callout 1) to release one pin (callout 2) from the guide, and then fold the inner cover up (callout 3) and into the product.

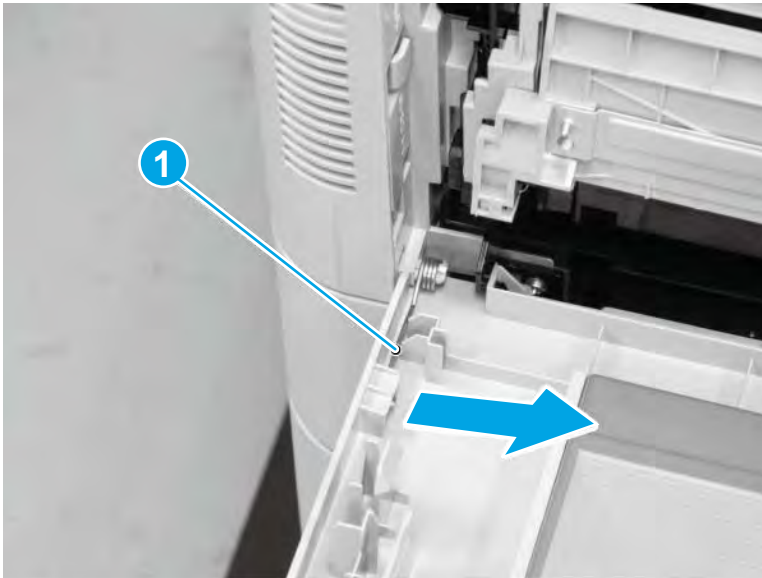
Figure 1-986 Release one pin



- Release the left-side spring arm (callout 1).

CAUTION: The spring is not captive when the spring arm is released and can be dislodged and lost.

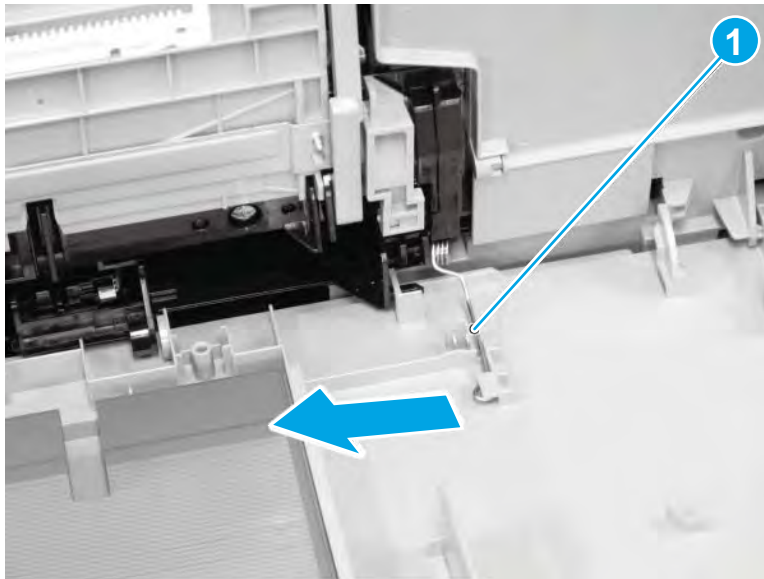
Figure 1-987 Release the left-side spring



5. Release the right-side spring arm (callout 1).

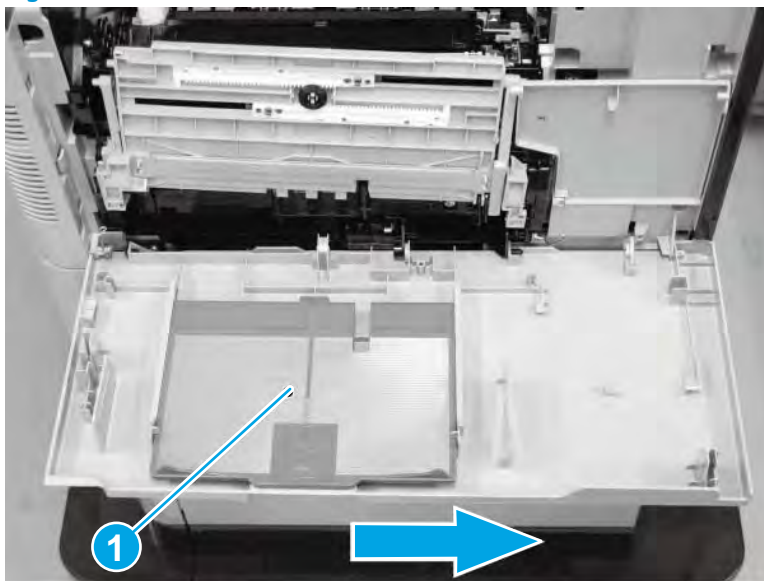
CAUTION: The spring is not captive when the spring arm is released and can be dislodged and lost.

Figure 1-988 Release the right-side spring



6. Slide the cover (callout 1) toward the back of the product to release it, and then remove the cover.

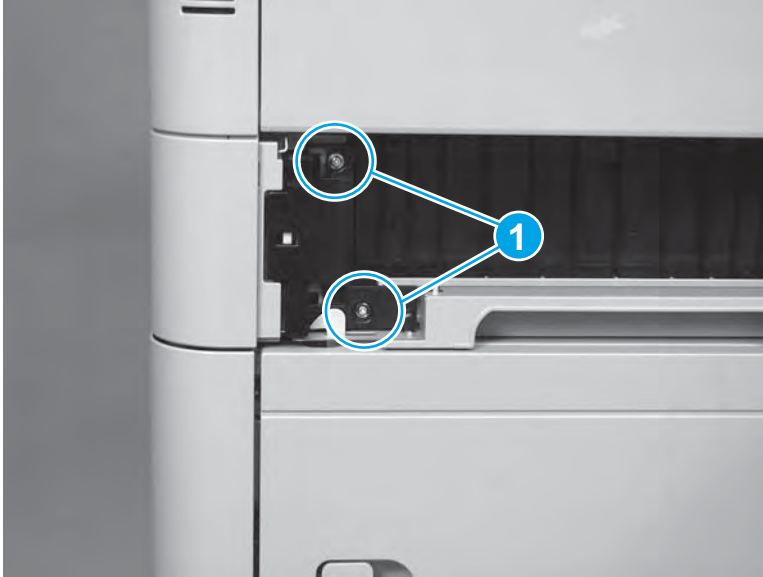
Figure 1-989 Remove the cover



Step 3: Remove the cassette-door-open detection switch

1. Open the right-lower door, and then remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-990 Remove two screws



2. Remove the switch cover (callout 1).


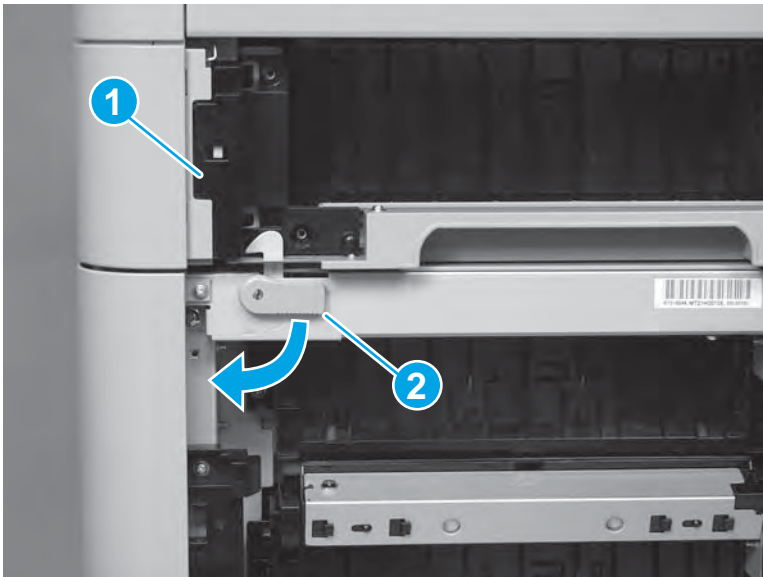
 **TIP:** If the product is installed on an optional input accessory, open the accessory right door, and then release the blue lever (callout 2) to lower the locking latch to make removing the cover easier.

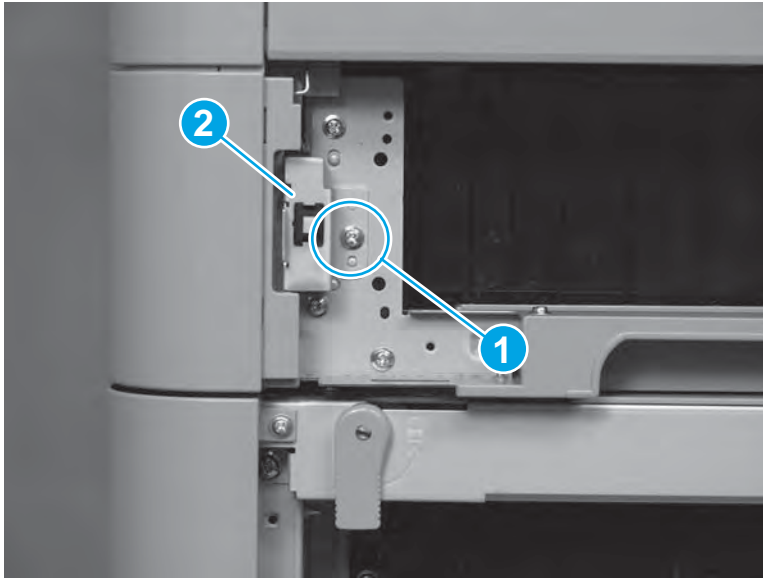
Figure 1-991 Remove the cover



3. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then separate the switch assembly (callout 2) from the product.

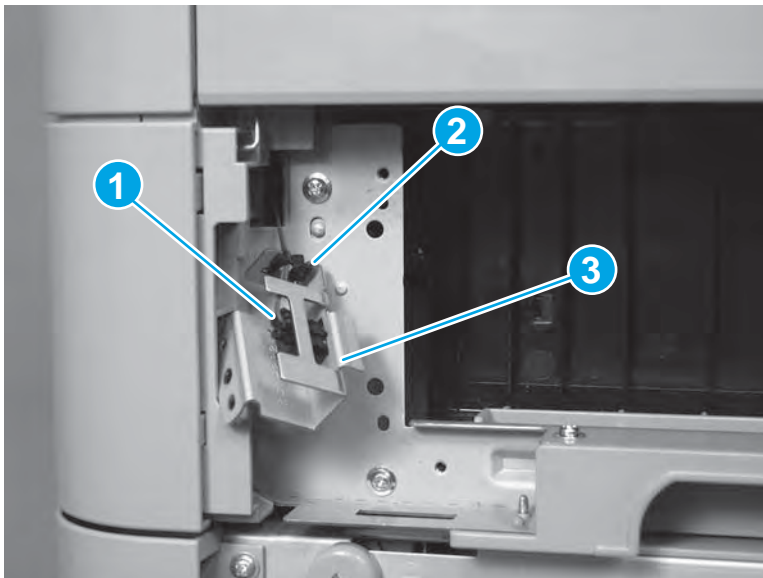
CAUTION: A wire harness connects the switch assembly to the product. Do not attempt to completely remove the switch assembly.

Figure 1-992 Remove one screw



4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), release the wire harness from the retainer (callout 2), and then remove the switch assembly (callout 3).

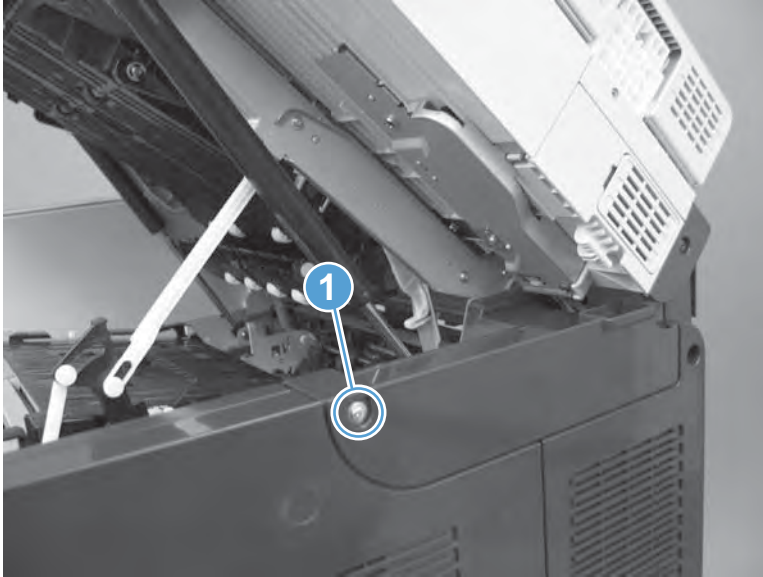
Figure 1-993 Remove the switch



Step 4: Remove the image scanner cable cover

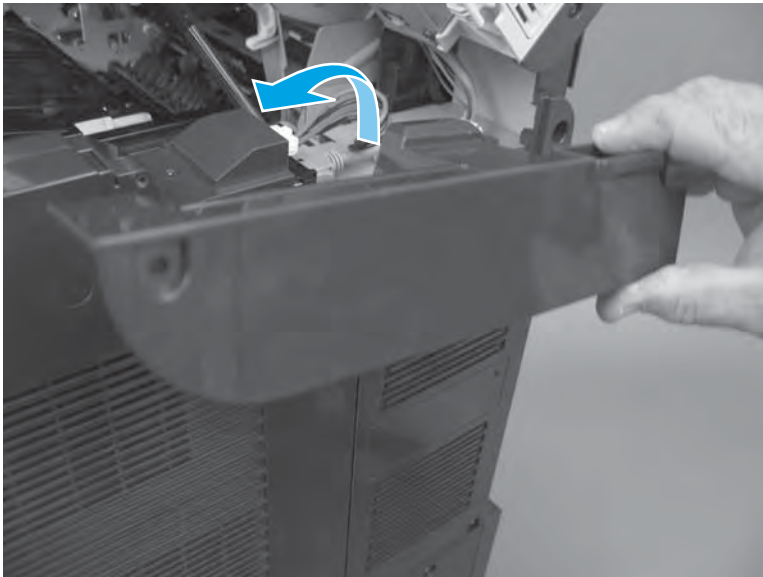
1. Open the top cover, and then remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-994 Remove one screw



2. Remove the cover.

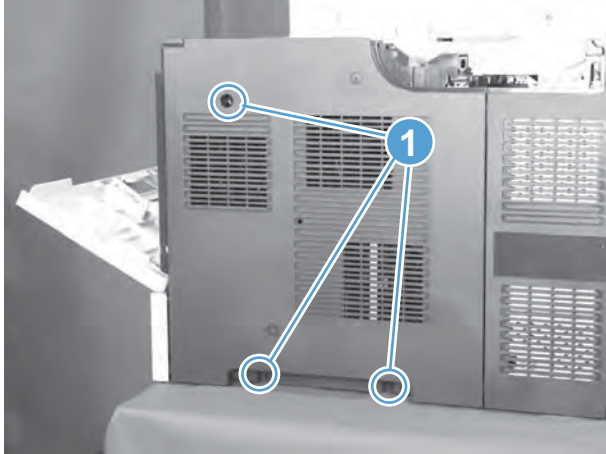
Figure 1-995 Remove the cover



Step 5: Remove the rear-right cover

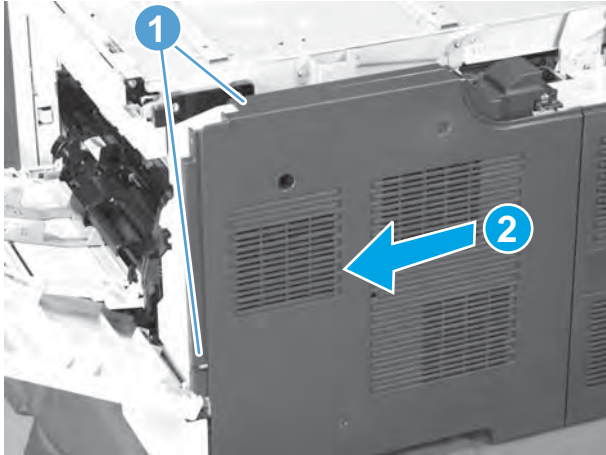
1. Open the top cover and Tray 1, and then remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-996 Remove three screws



2. Release two tabs (callout 1), slightly separate the edge of the cover near Tray 1 from the product, slide the cover towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

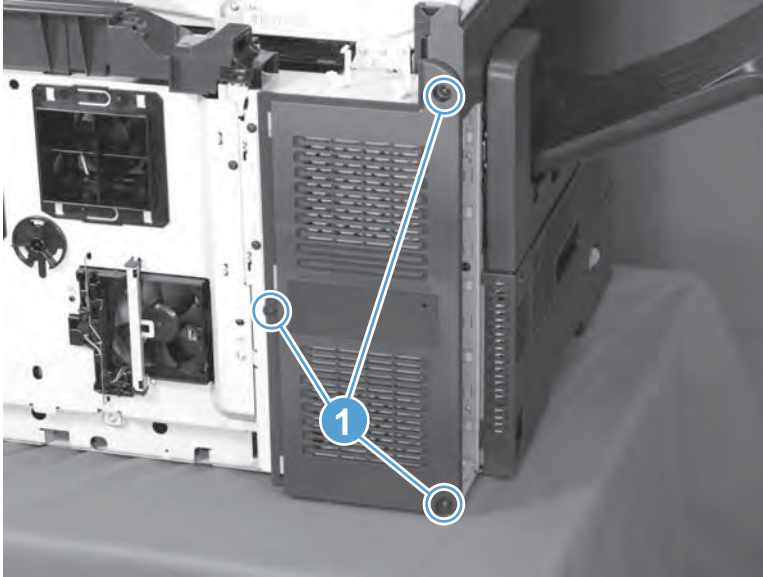
Figure 1-997 Remove the cover



Step 6: Remove the rear-left cover

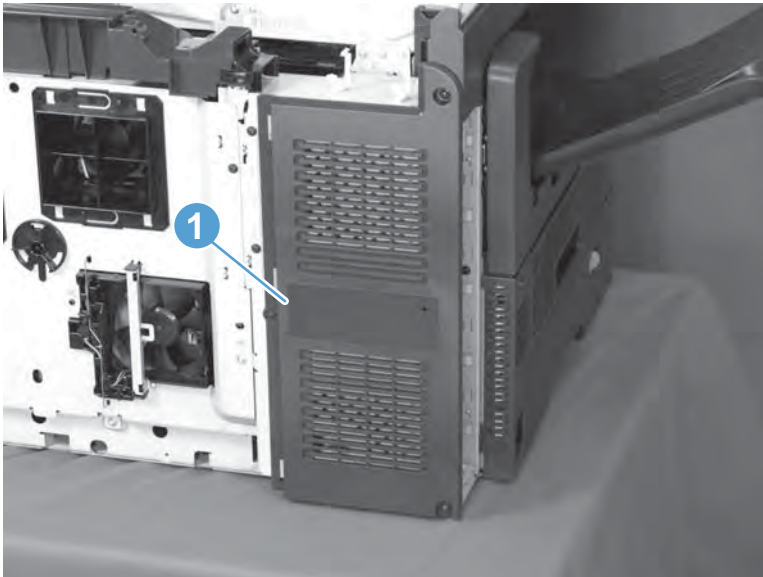
1. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-998 Remove three screws



2. Remove the cover (callout 1).

Figure 1-999 Remove the cover

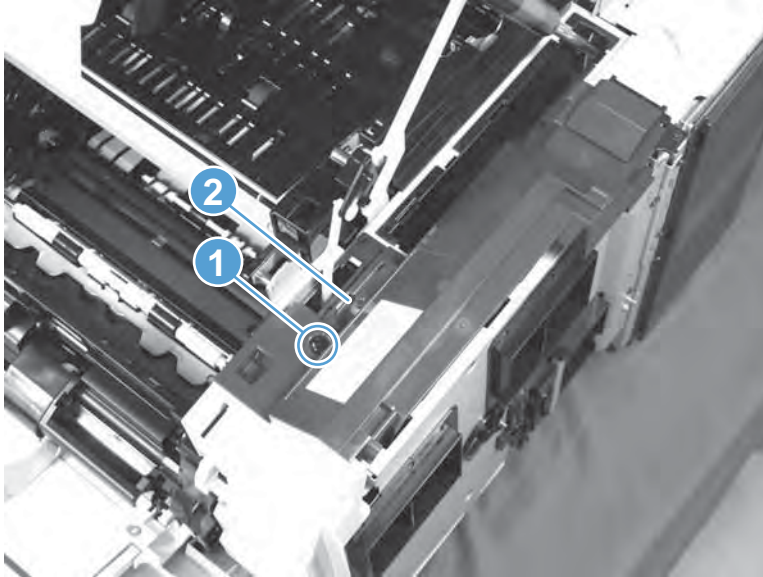


Step 7: Remove the rear-top cover

 **NOTE:** If the top cover is closed, open it now.

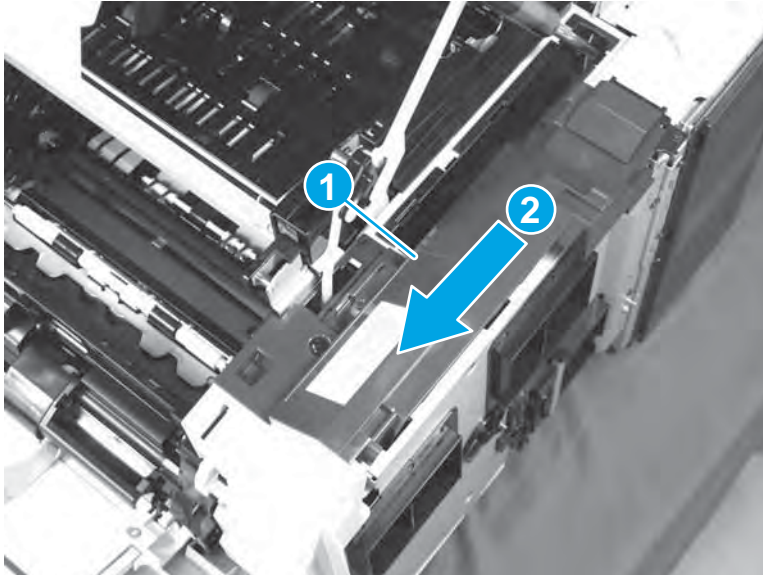
1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release one tab (callout 2).

Figure 1-1000 Remove one screw



2. Push the cover (callout 1) towards Tray 1 to release it (callout 2), and then remove the cover.

Figure 1-1001 Remove the cover

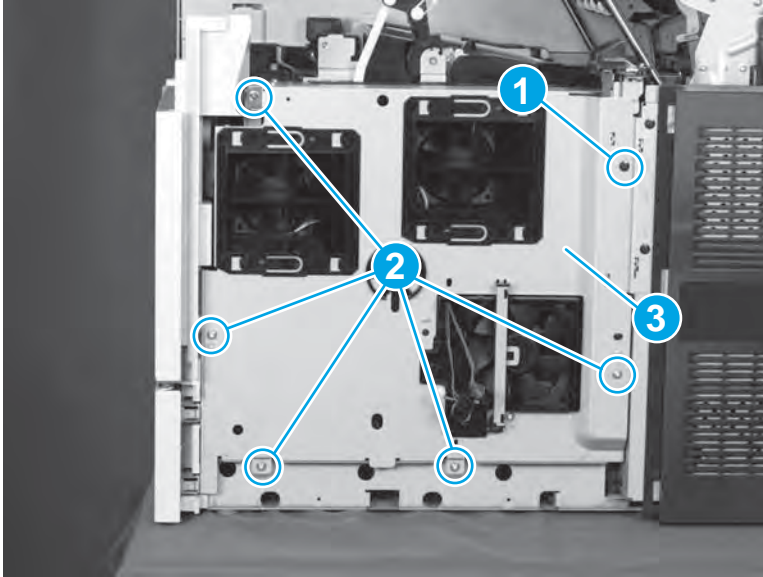


Step 8: Remove the DC controller shield-plate assembly

1. Remove one black screw (callout 1), remove five silver screws (callout 2), and then slightly rotate the top of the shield (callout 3) away from the product.

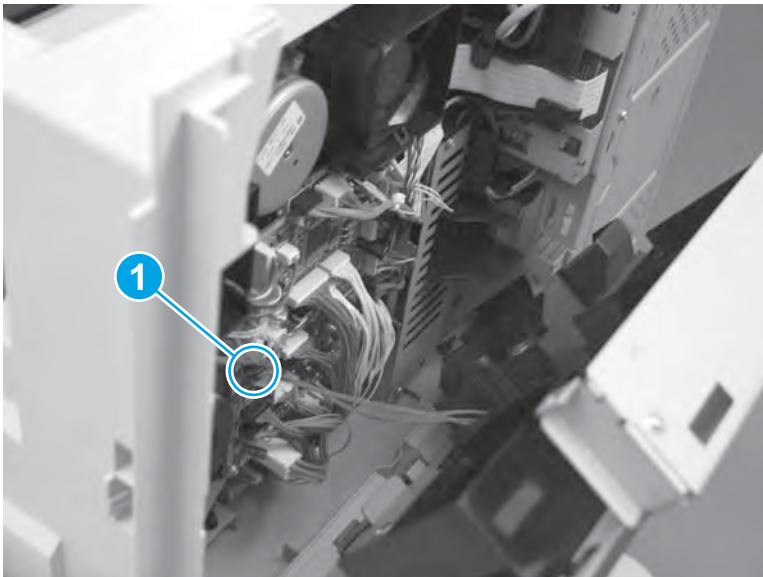
CAUTION: The shield is still connected to the product by a wire harness. Do not completely remove the shield after removing the screws.

Figure 1-1002 Remove six screws



2. Disconnect one connector (J42; callout 1) from the DC controller, and then remove the DC controller shield.

Figure 1-1003 Disconnect one connector and remove the shield

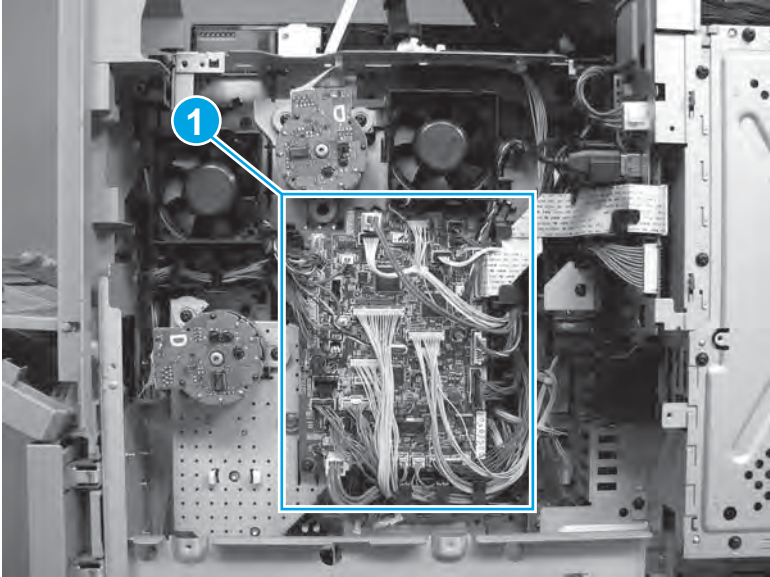


Step 9: Remove the DC controller

1. Disconnect all of the connectors (callout 1) on the DC controller.
 - 34 wire-harness connectors
 - 1 flat-flexible cable (FFC)

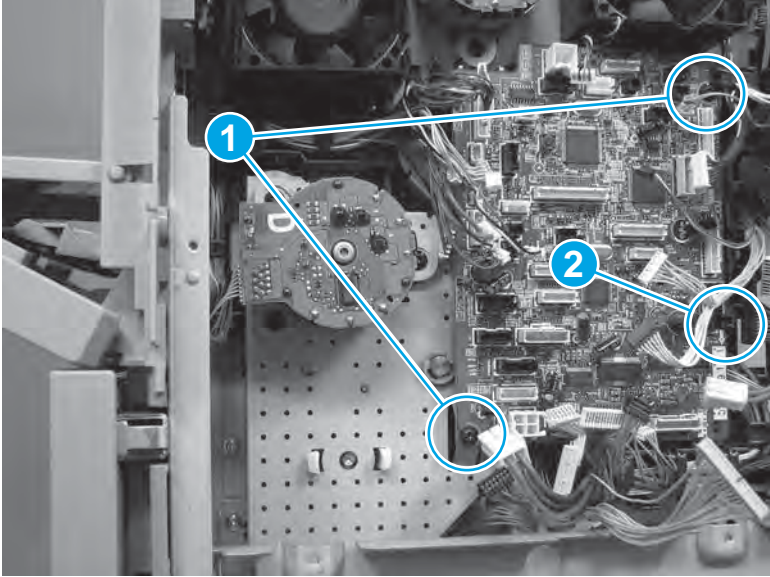
 **Reinstallation tip:** When the DC controller is reinstalled, connectors J42, J59, and J80 are empty.

Figure 1-1004 Disconnect all of the connectors



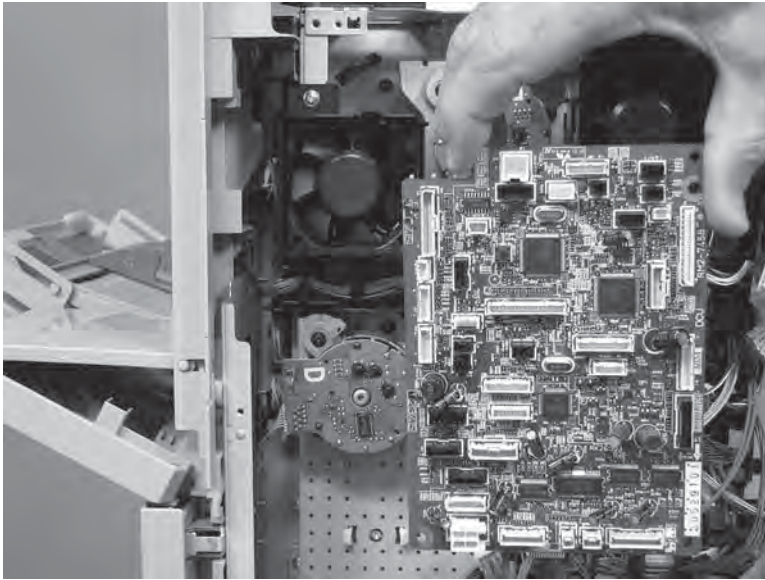
- 2. Remove two screws (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2).

Figure 1-1005 Remove two screws and release one tab



3. Remove the DC controller.

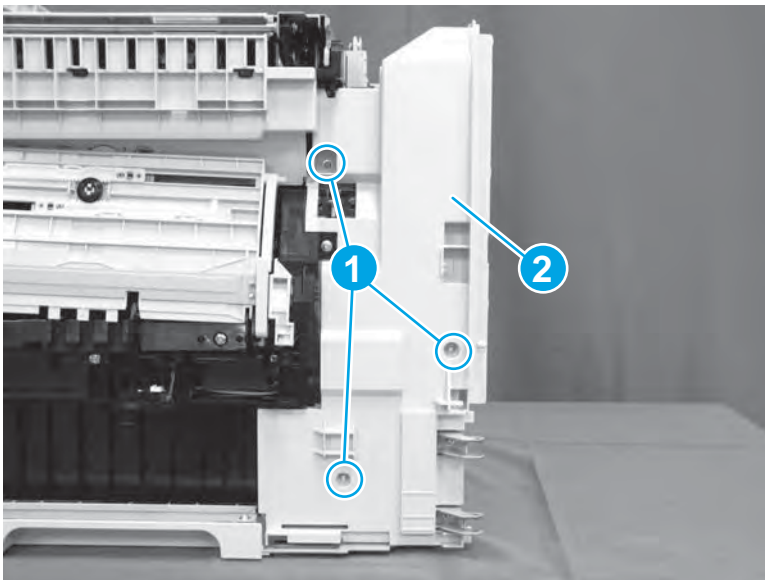
Figure 1-1006 Remove the DC controller



Step 10: Remove the Tray 1 pickup assembly

1. Remove three screws (callout 1), and then remove the Tray 1 gear cover (callout 2).

Figure 1-1007 Remove three screws and the Tray 1 gear cover



2. Disconnect two connectors (J71 and J81; callout 1).


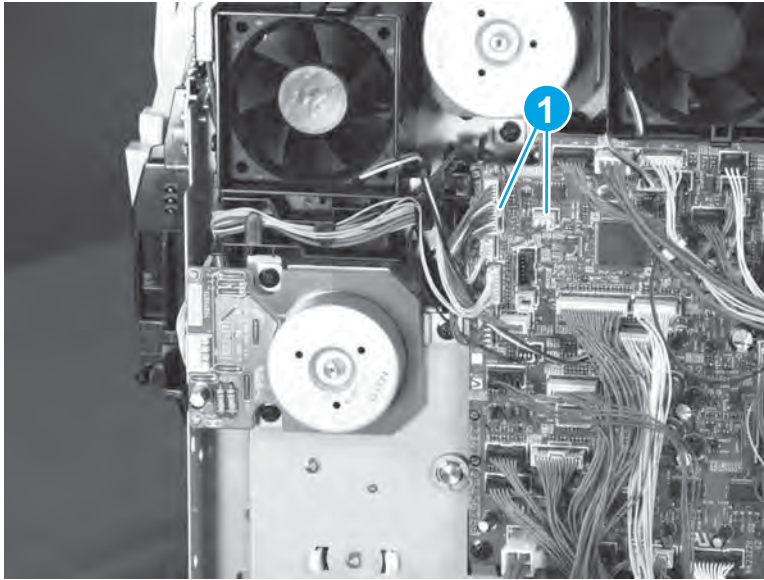
 **NOTE:** The feed motor is shown installed in the figure below, but it has been removed earlier in this procedure.

Figure 1-1008 Disconnect two connectors



3. Release the wire harnesses (callout 1) from the guide (callout 2).


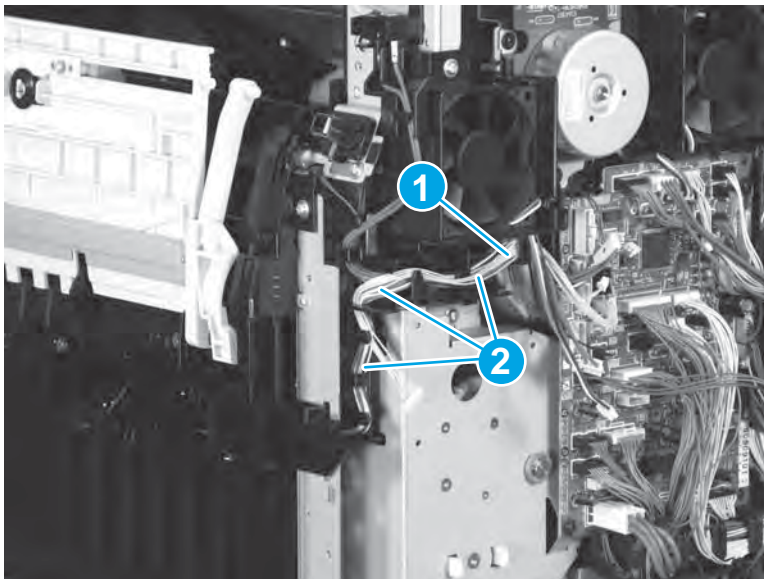
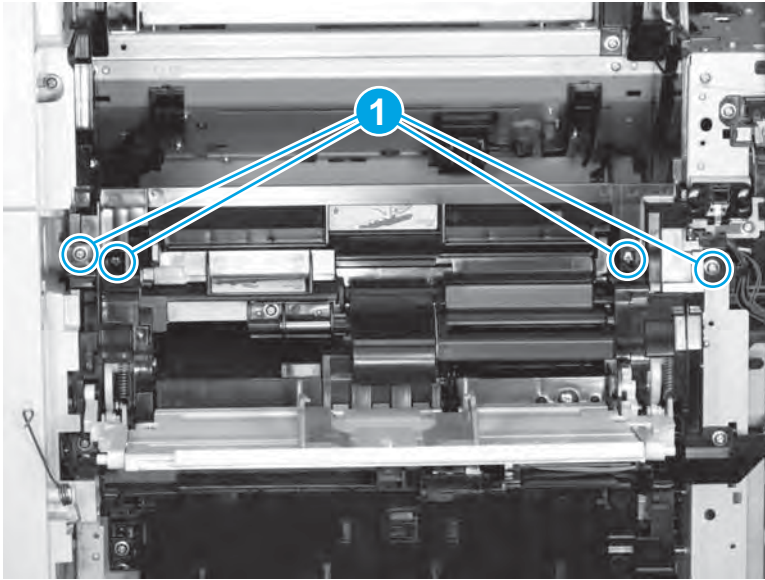
 **NOTE:** The feed motor is shown removed in the figure below, but it does not need to be removed.

Figure 1-1009 Release the wire harnesses



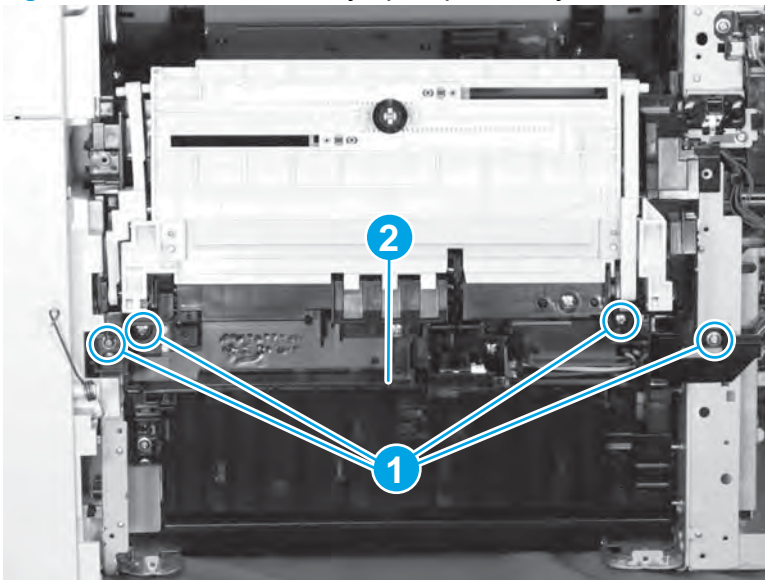
4. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-1010 Remove four screws




5. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the Tray 1 pickup assembly (callout 2).

Figure 1-1011 Remove the Tray 1 pickup assembly



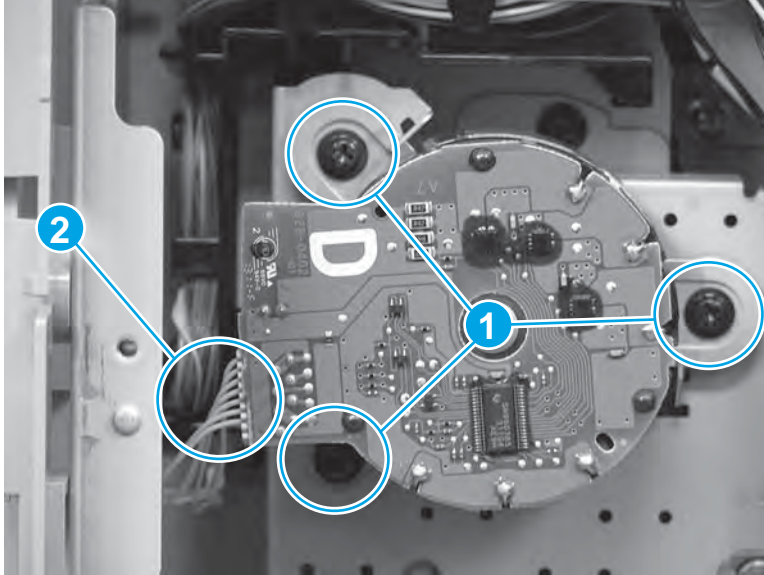
Step 11: Remove the feed motor

- ▲ At the DC controller side of the product, remove three screws (callout 1), remove the feed motor, and then disconnect one connector (callout 2).

 **NOTE:** The feed motor is located at the left-hand side of the DC controller.

 **TIP:** Slightly turn the motor counter clockwise to disengage it from the mounting bracket.

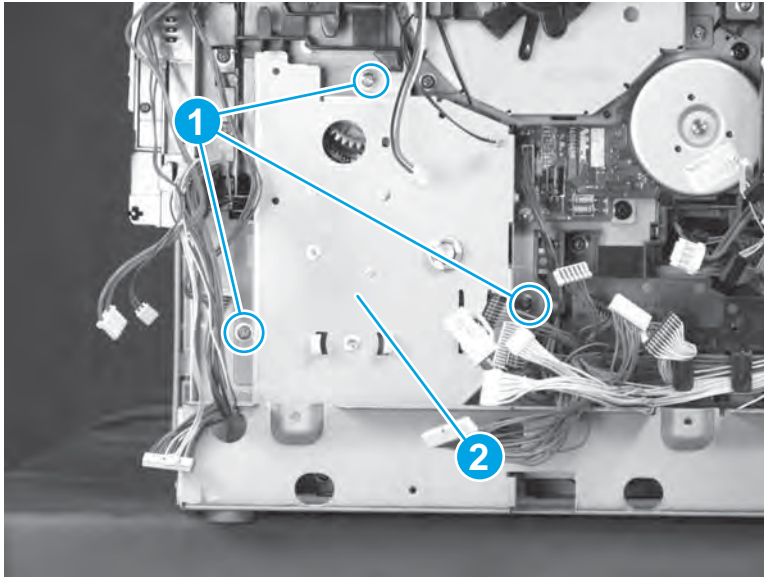
Figure 1-1012 Remove the feed motor



Step 12: Remove the pickup drive assembly

- ▲ Remove three screws (callout 1), and then remove the pickup drive assembly (callout 2).

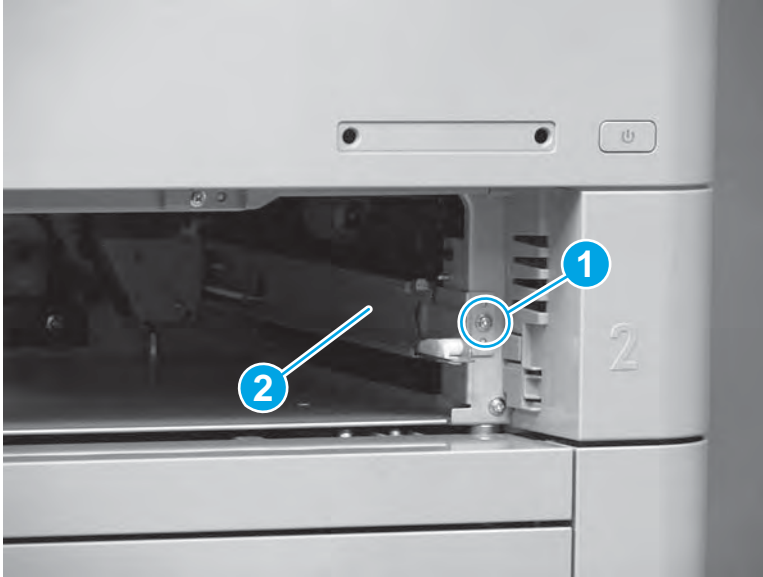
Figure 1-1013 Remove the pickup drive assembly



Step 13: Remove the cassette pickup assembly

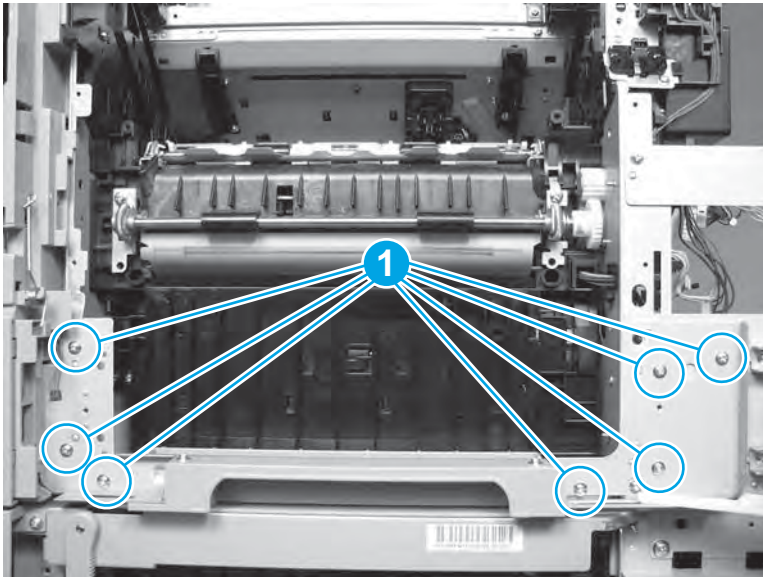
1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the cassette rail (callout 2).

Figure 1-1014 Remove one screw and the cassette rail



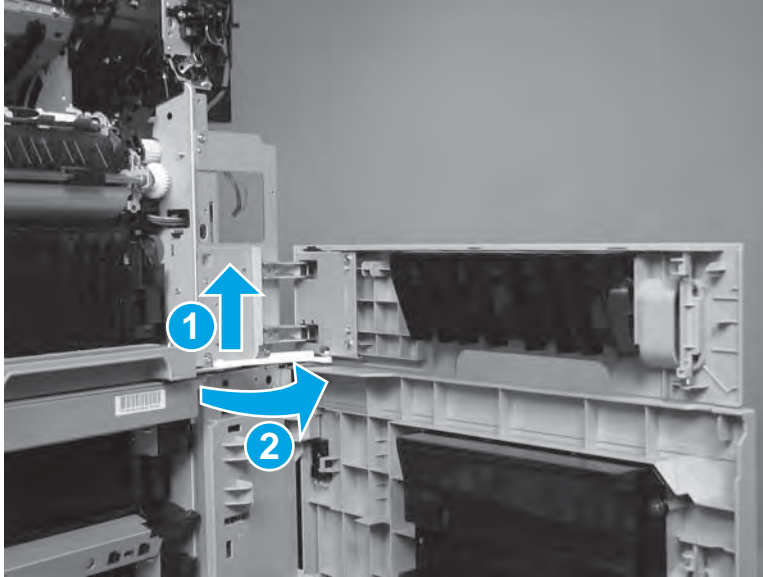
2. Remove seven screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-1015 Remove seven screws



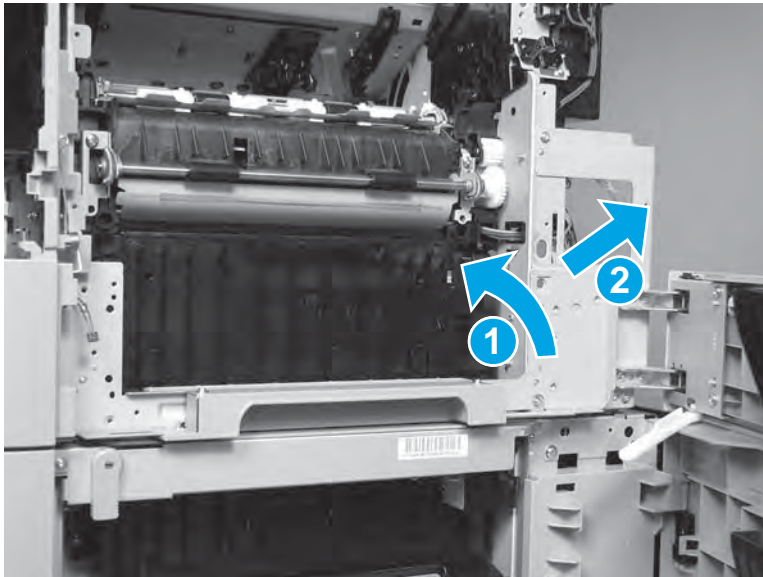
3. Open the right lower cover, lift up on the retainer arm to disengage it (callout 1), and then rotate it out of the way (callout 2).

Figure 1-1016 Disengage the cover retainer



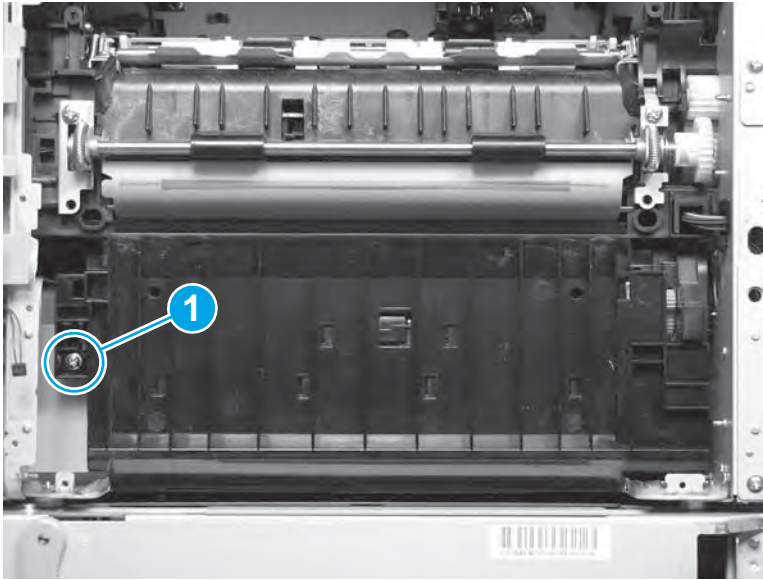
4. Rotate the sheet-metal plate up (callout 1), and then remove it (callout 2).

Figure 1-1017 Remove the sheet-metal plate



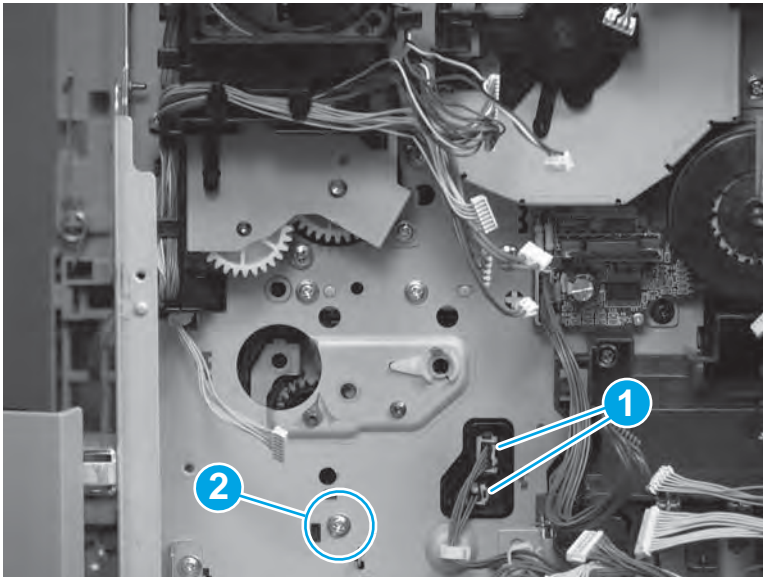
5. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-1018 Remove one screw



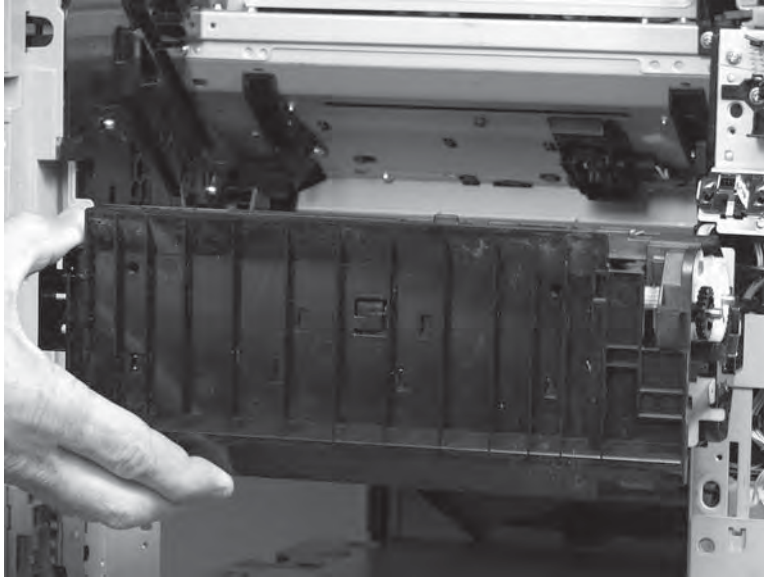
6. At the DC controller side of the product, disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 1-1019 Disconnect two connectors and remove one screw



7. Remove the cassette pickup assembly.

Figure 1-1020 Remove the cassette pickup assembly

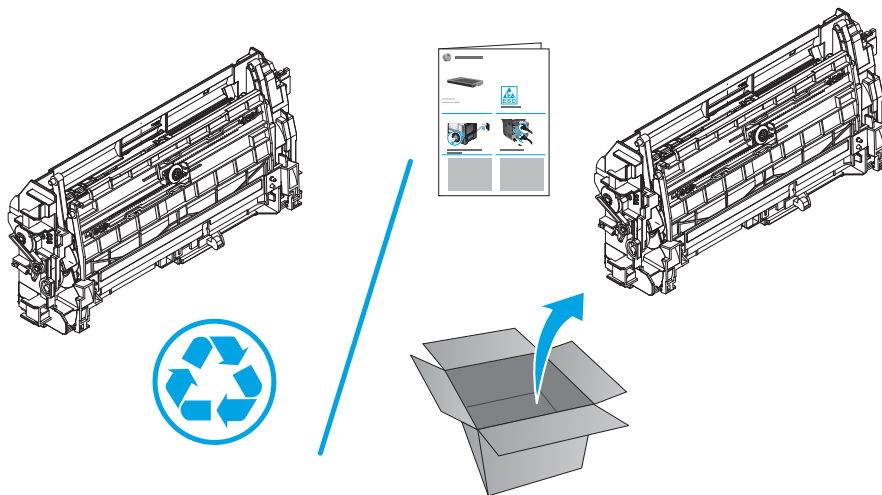


Step 14: Unpack the replacement cassette pickup assembly

Unpack the replacement assembly from the packaging.

www.Product return and recycling.

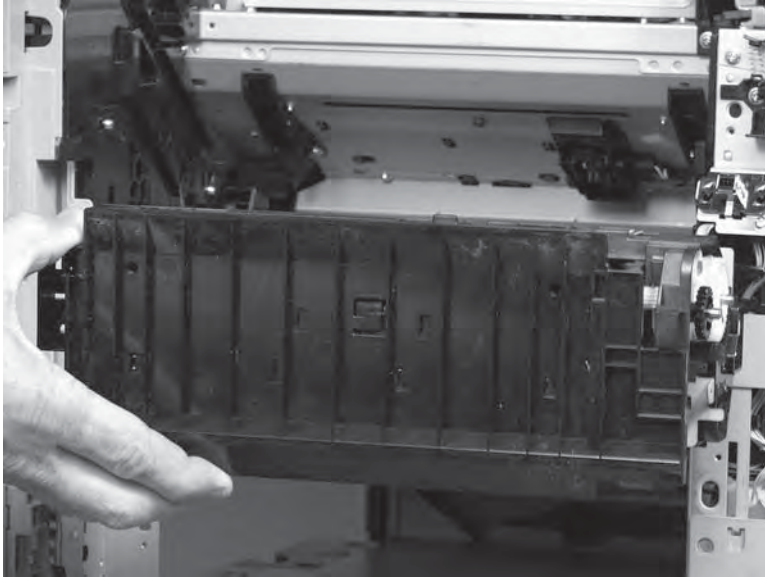
 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective assembly.



Step 15: Install the cassette pickup assembly

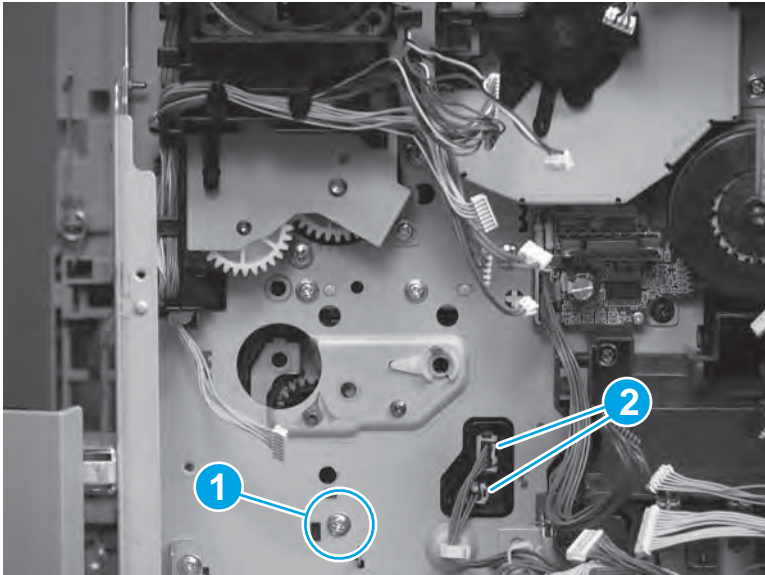
1. Position the cassette pickup assembly on the product.

Figure 1-1021 Install the cassette pickup assembly



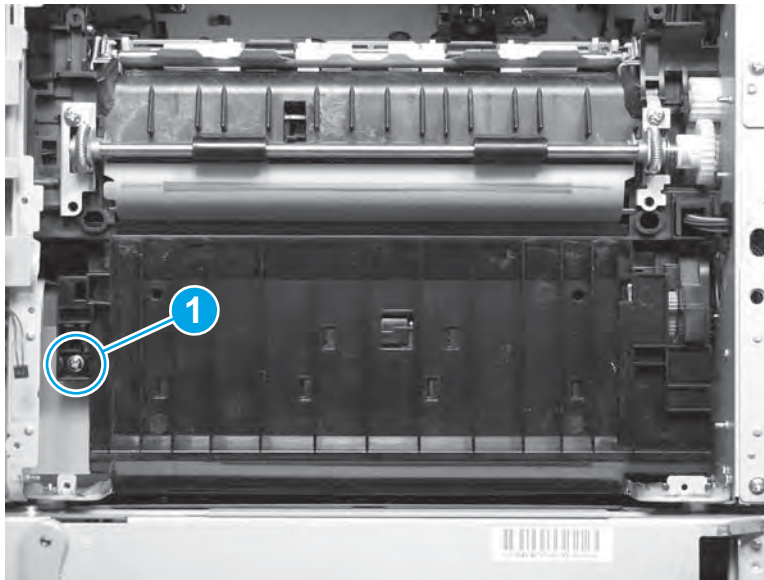
2. At the DC controller side of the product, install one screw (callout 1), and then connect two connectors (callout 2).

Figure 1-1022 Install one screw and connect two connectors



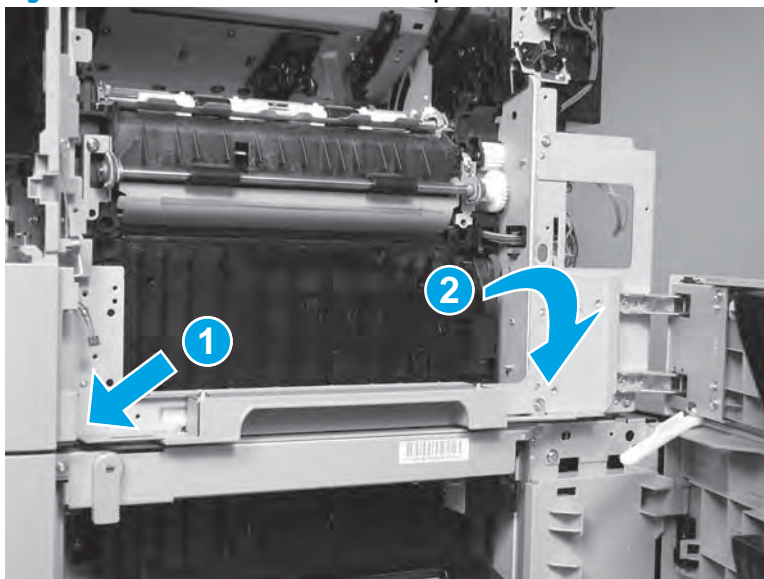
3. Install one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-1023 Install one screw



4. Position the corner of the sheet-metal plate (callout 1) on the product, and then rotate it down (callout 2) to install it.

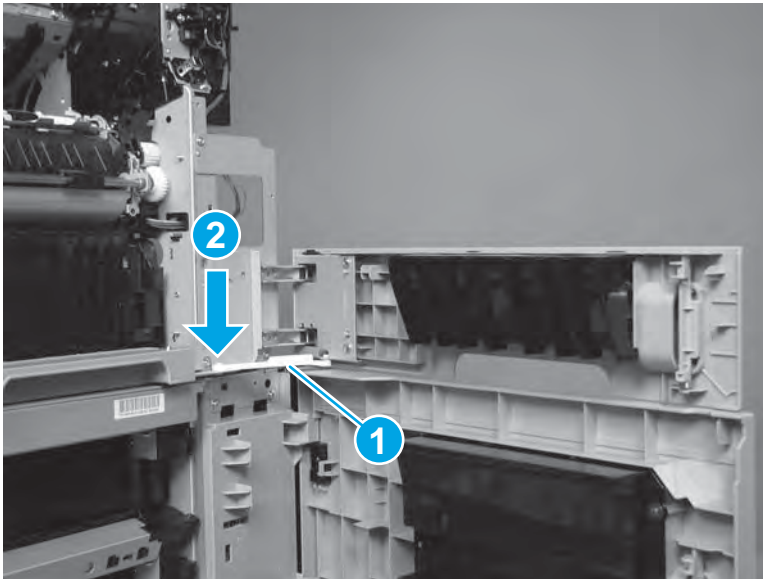
Figure 1-1024 Install the sheet-metal plate



5. Rotate the retainer arm (callout 1) into place, and then engage it with the slot in the product (callout 2).

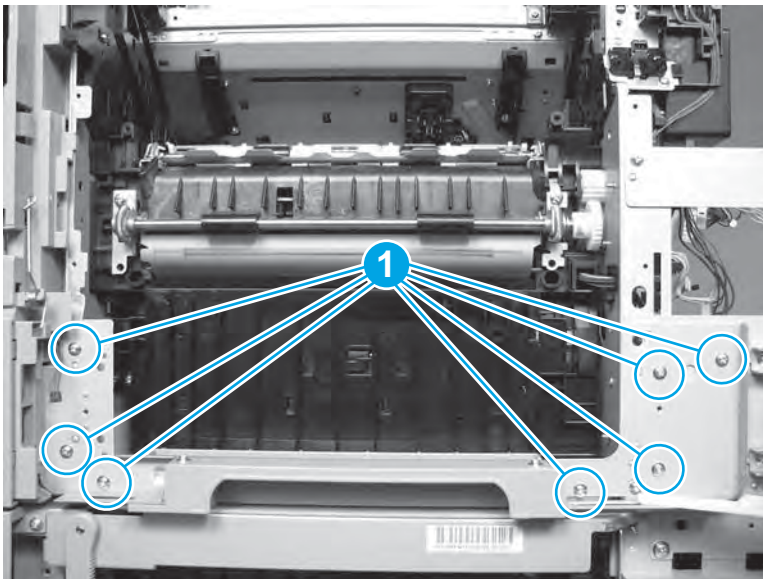
 **TIP:** Slightly raise the sheet-metal plate to make engaging the retainer arm easier.

Figure 1-1025 Engage the cover retainer



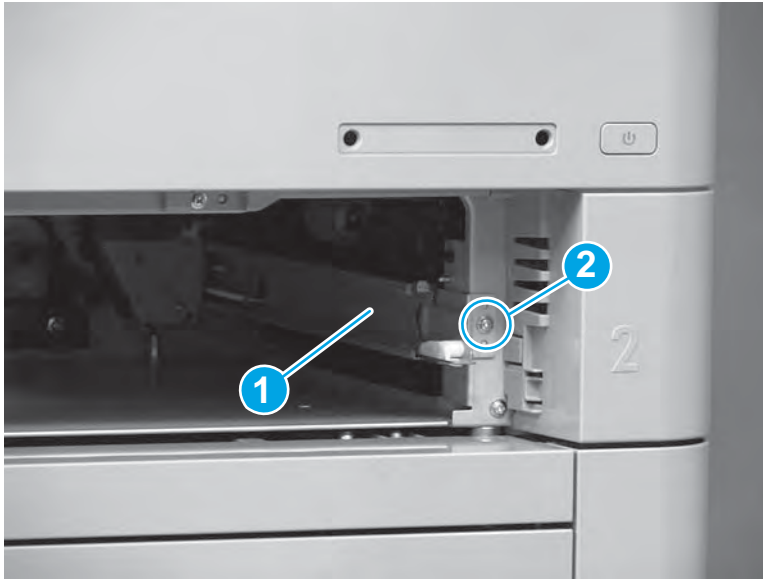
6. Install seven screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-1026 Install seven screws



7. Install the cassette rail (callout 1), and then install one screw (callout 2).

Figure 1-1027 Install the cassette rail and one screw

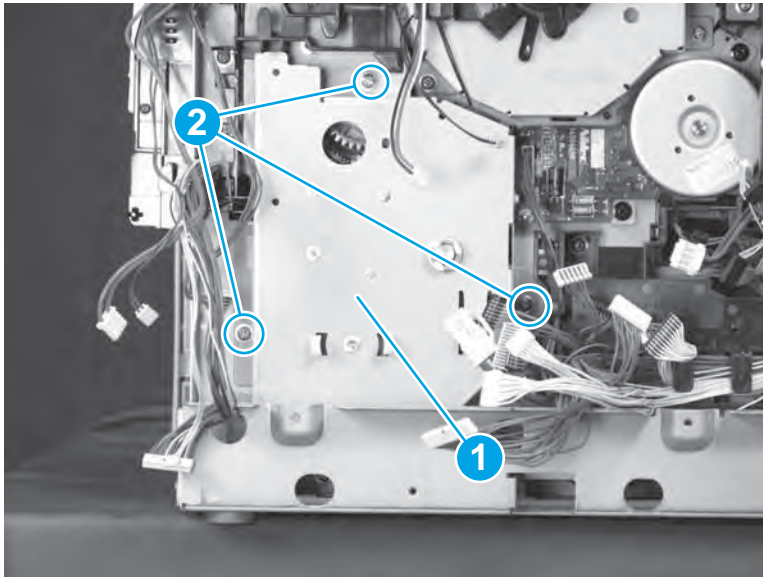


Step 16: Install the pickup drive assembly

1. Position the pickup drive assembly (callout 1) on the product, and then install three screws (callout 2).

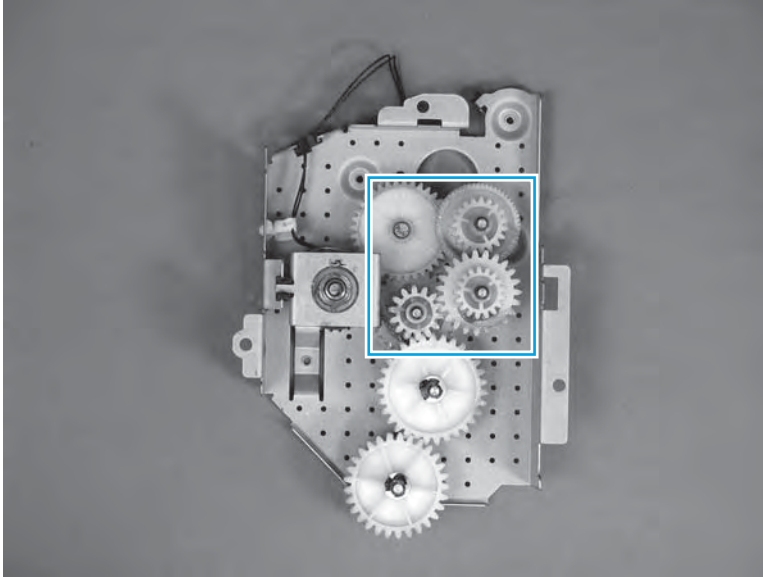
CAUTION: Some of the gears on the backside of the assembly are not captive.

Figure 1-1028 Install the pickup drive assembly



2. If the gears located on the backside of the assembly become dislodged, replace them as shown in the figure.

Figure 1-1029 Check the pickup drive assembly gears



Step 17: Install the feed motor

- ▲ Connect one connector (callout 1), and then install three screws (callout 2).


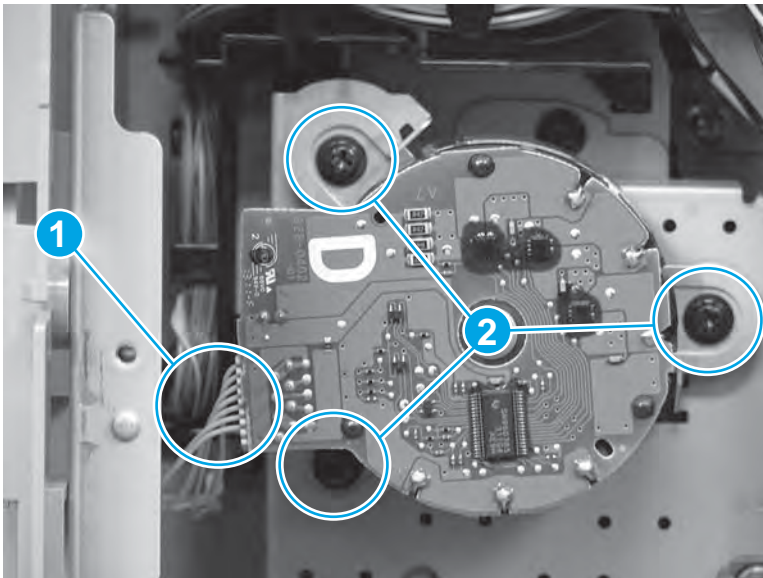
 **TIP:** It is easier to connect the connector before mounting the motor to the chassis.

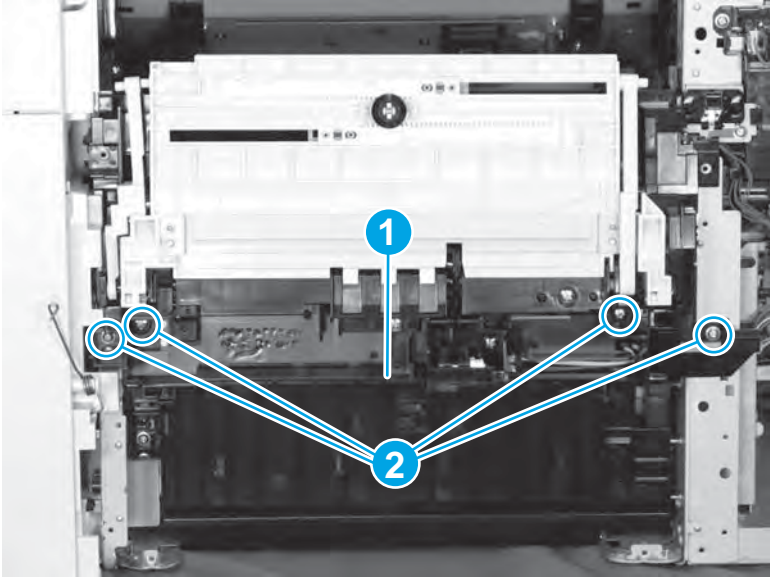
Figure 1-1030 Install the feed motor



Step 18: Install the Tray 1 pickup assembly

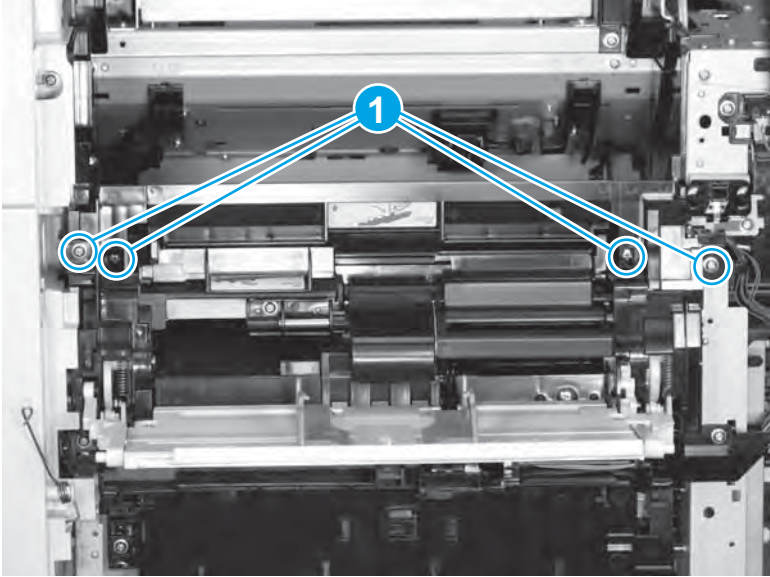
1. Position the Tray 1 pickup assembly (callout 1) on the product, and then install four screws (callout 2).

Figure 1-1031 Install the Tray 1 pickup assembly



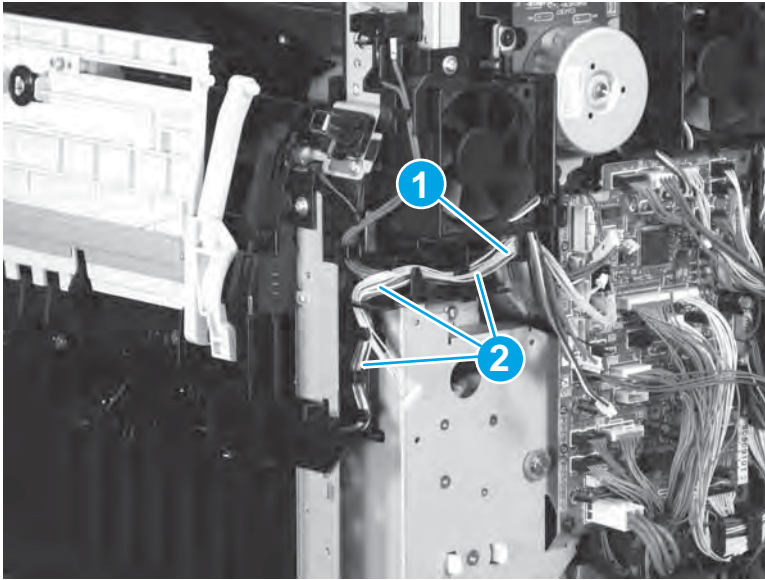
- 2. Install four screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-1032 Install four screws



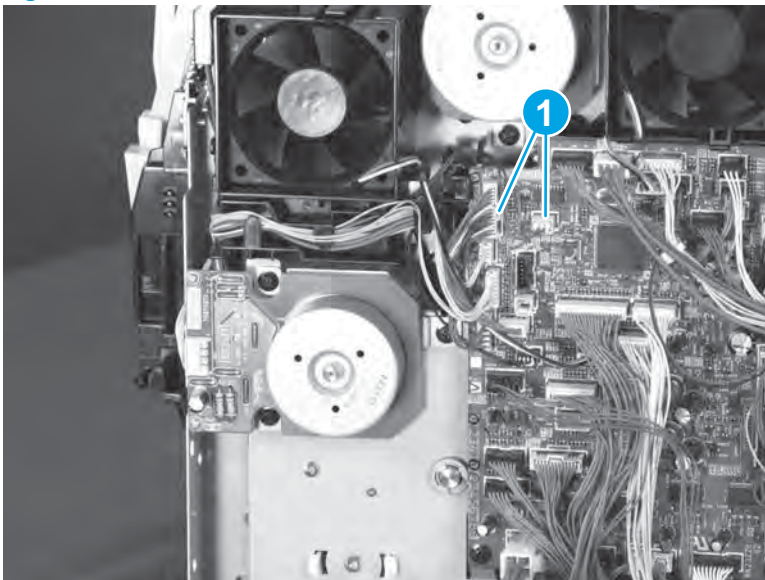
3. Install the wire harnesses (callout 1) in the guide (callout 2).

Figure 1-1033 Install the wire harnesses in the guide



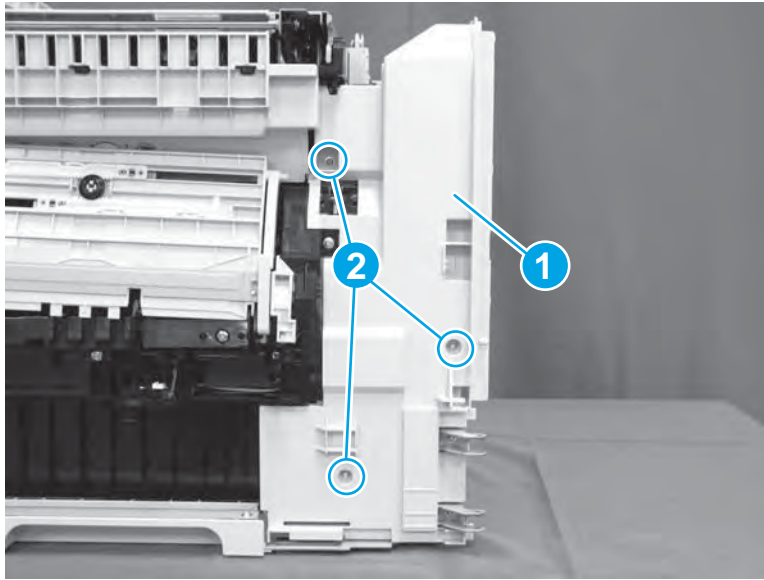
4. Connect two connectors (J71 and J81; callout 1).

Figure 1-1034 Connect two connectors



5. Position the Tray 1 gear cover (callout 1) on the product, and then install three screws (callout 2).

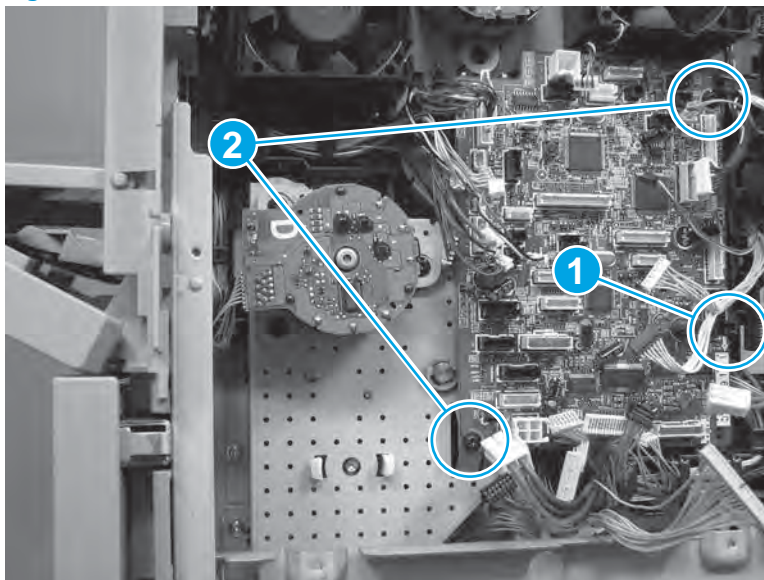
Figure 1-1035 Install the Tray 1 gear cover



Step 19: Install the DC controller

1. Position the DC controller on the product, engage one tab (callout 1), and then install two screws (callout 2).

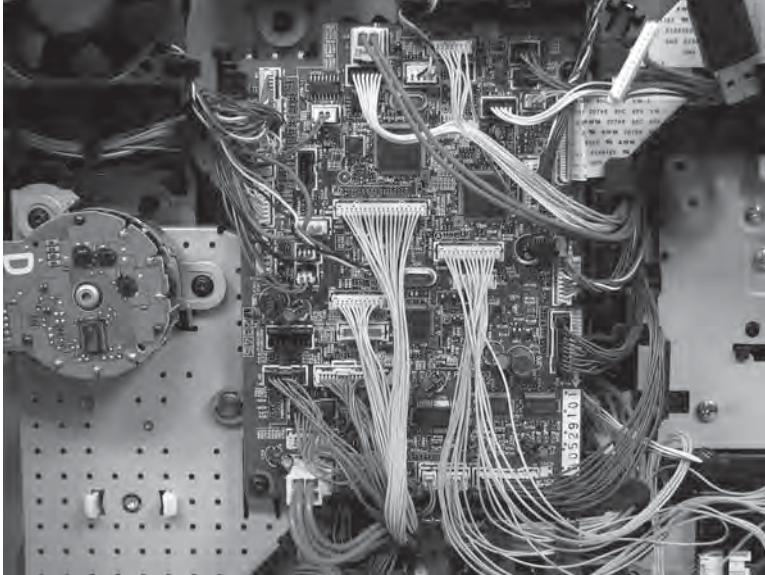
Figure 1-1036 Install the DC controller



2. Connect all of the connectors on the DC controller.
 - 34 wire-harness connectors
 - 1 flat-flexible cable (FFC)

 **Reinstallation tip:** Connectors J42, J59, and J80 are empty.

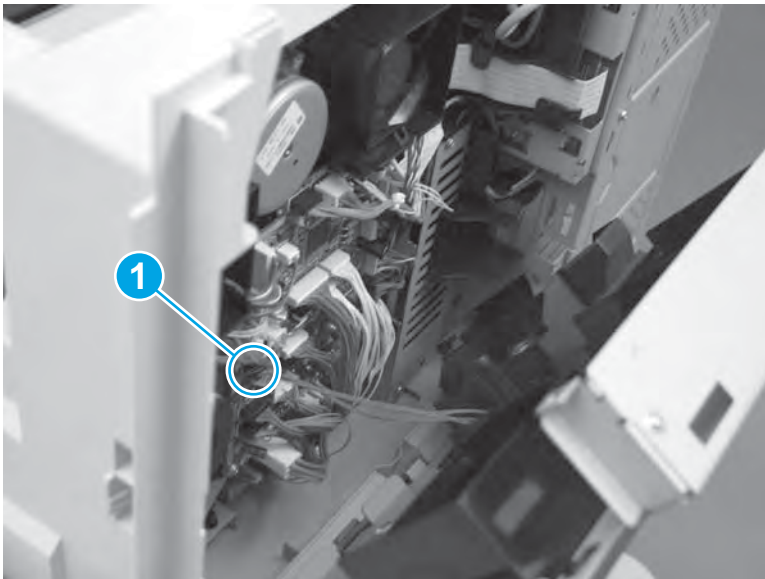
Figure 1-1037 Connect all of the connectors



Step 20: Install the DC controller shield-plate assembly

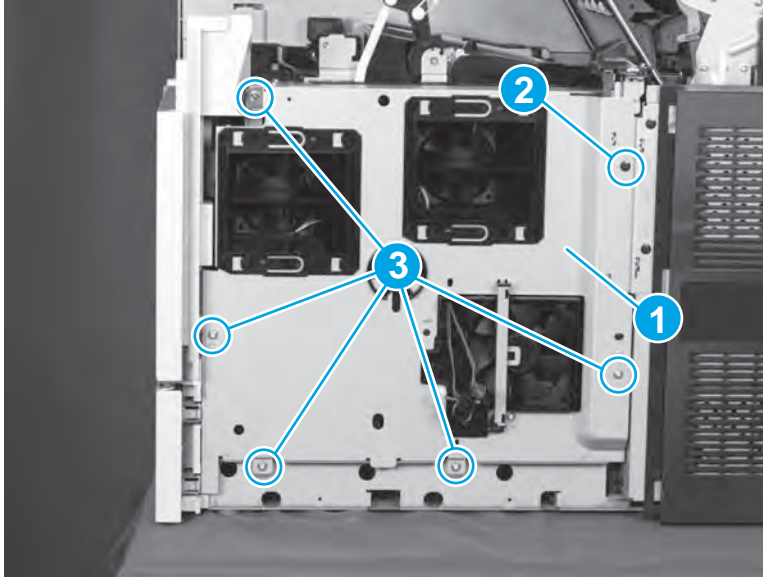
1. Position the shield near the product, and then connect one connector (J42; callout 1).

Figure 1-1038 Install the shield and connect one connector



2. Rotate the top of the shield (callout 1) toward the product, install one black screw (callout 2), and then install five silver screws (callout 3).

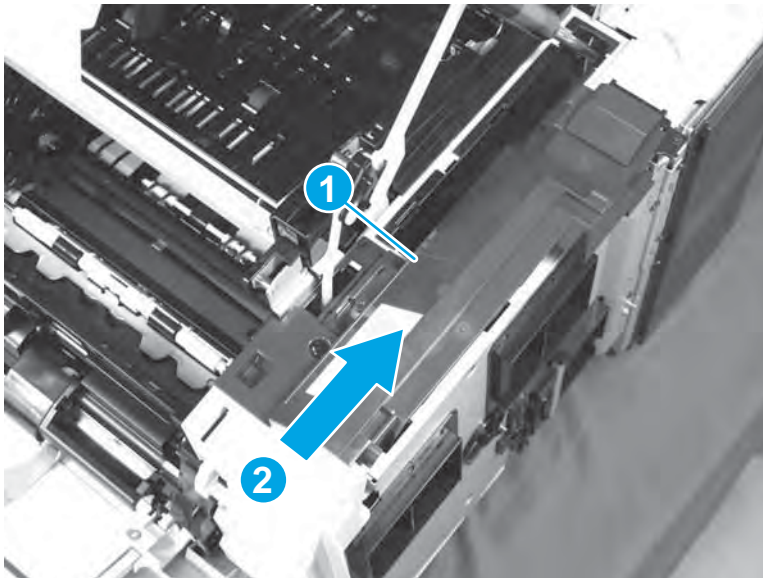
Figure 1-1039 Remove six screws



Step 21: Install the rear-top cover

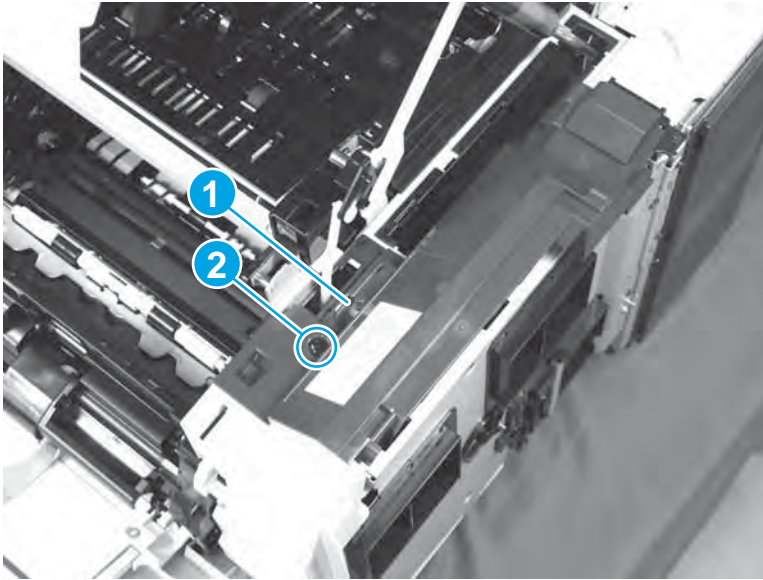
1. Position the cover on the product, Push the cover (callout 1) away Tray 1 to install it (callout 2).

Figure 1-1040 Install the cover



2. Make sure that the tab (callout 2) is engaged, and then install one screw (callout 2).

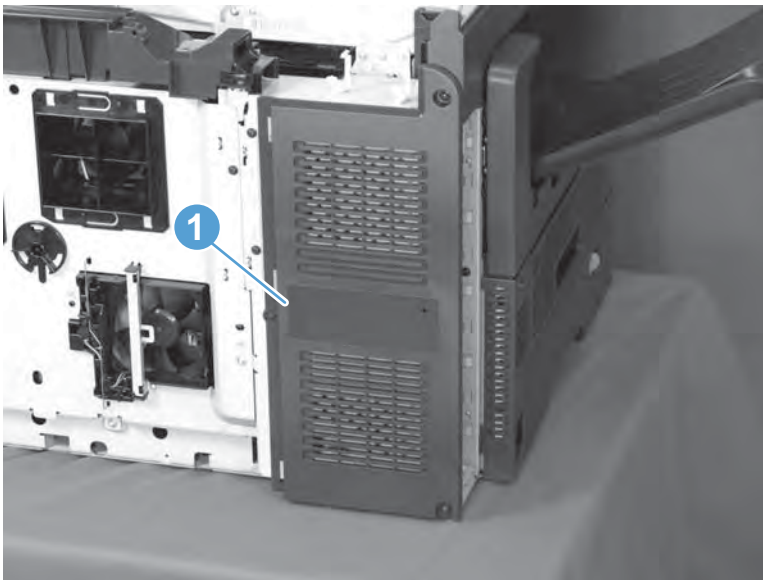
Figure 1-1041 Install one screw



Step 22: Install the rear-left cover

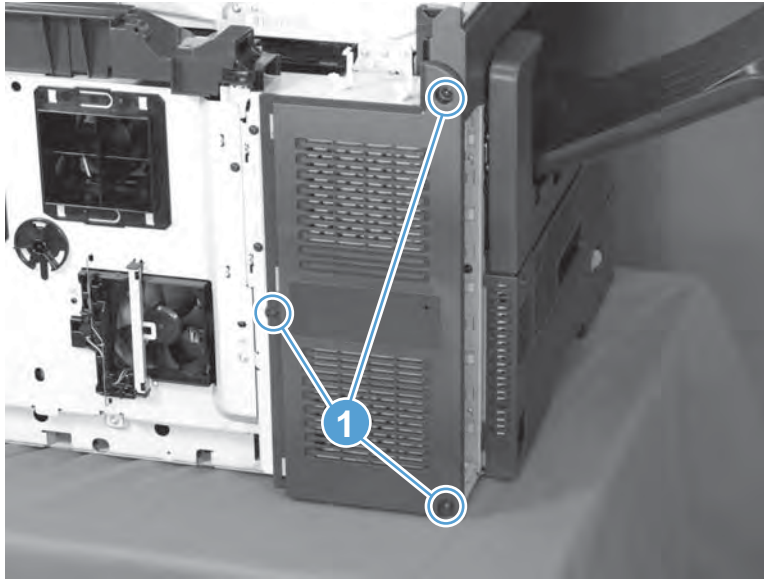
1. Position the cover (callout 1) on the product.

Figure 1-1042 Install the cover



2. Install three screws (callout 1).

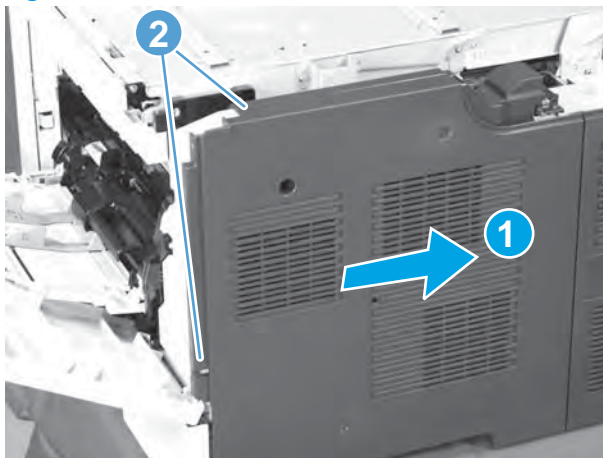
Figure 1-1043 Install three screws



Step 23: Install the rear-right cover

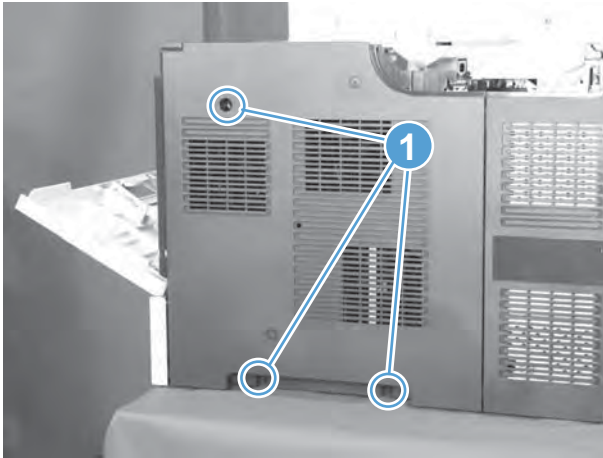
1. Position the cover on the product, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 1) to engage two tabs (callout 2).

Figure 1-1044 Install the cover



2. Install three screws (callout 1), and then close the top cover and Tray 1.

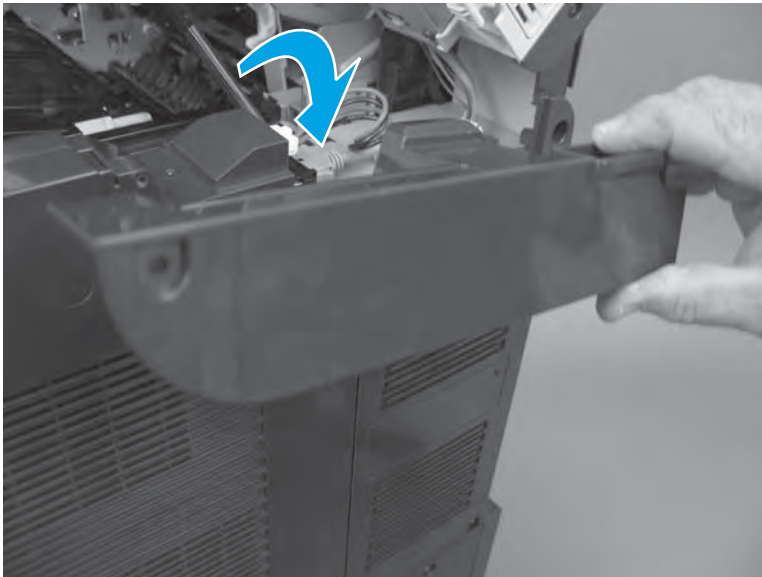
Figure 1-1045 Install three screws



Step 24: Install the image scanner cable cover

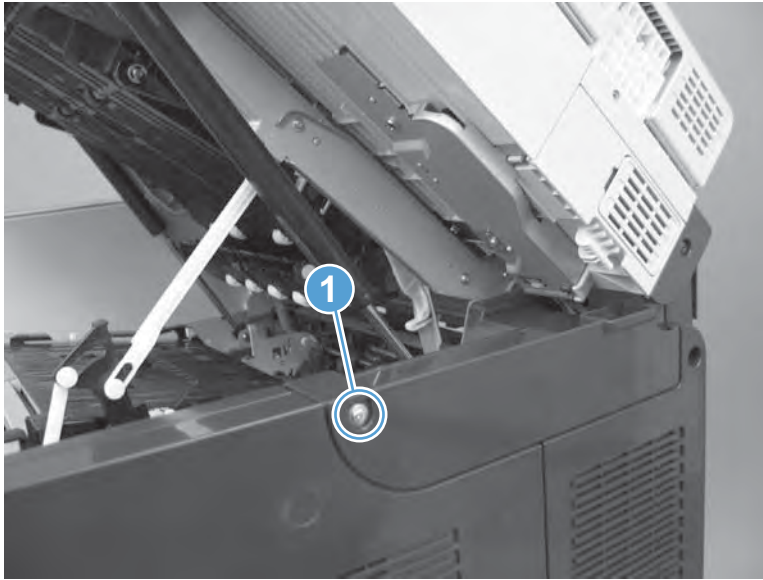
1. Install the cover on the product.

Figure 1-1046 Install the cover



2. Install one screw (callout 1), and then close the top cover.

Figure 1-1047 Install one screw



Step 25: Install the cassette-door-open detection switch

1. Connect one connector, and then install the wire harness in the retainer (callout 1).


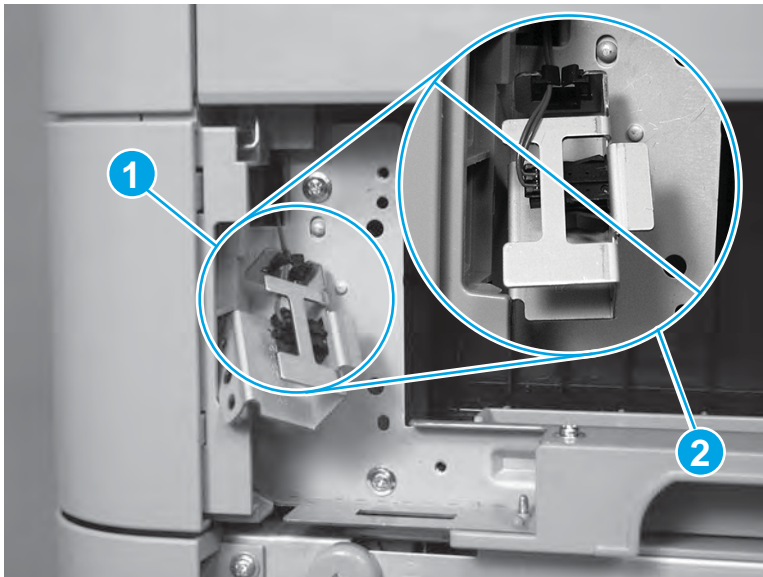
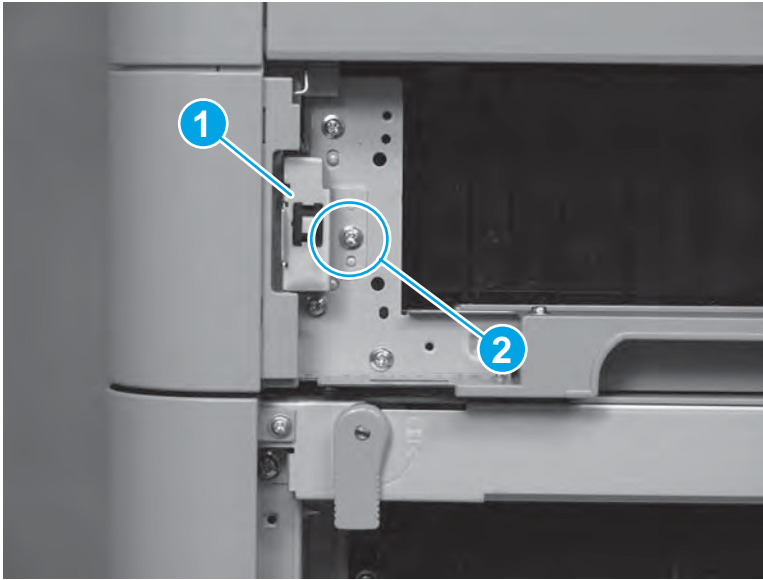
 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that the wire harness is routed *inside* the bracket. It must not be routed outside of the bracket (callout 2).

Figure 1-1048 Connect one connector



2. Position the switch assembly (callout 1) on the product, and then install one screw (callout 2).

Figure 1-1049 Install one screw

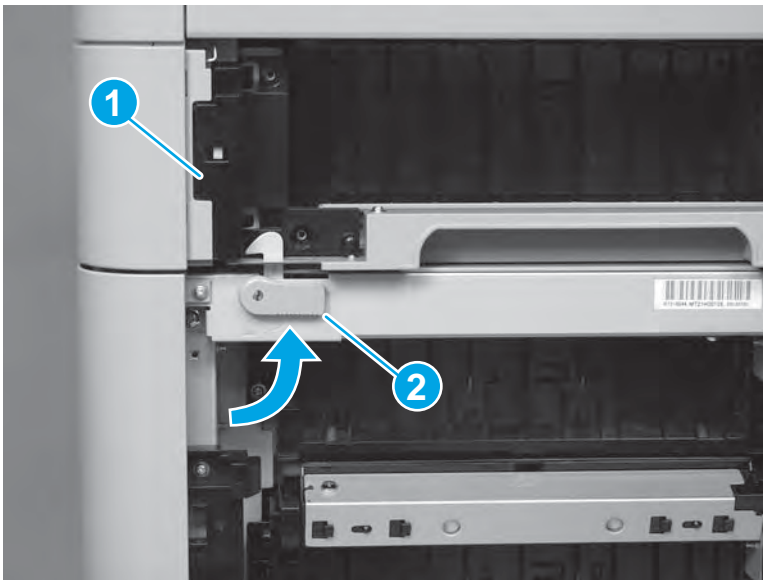


3. Install the switch cover (callout 1).



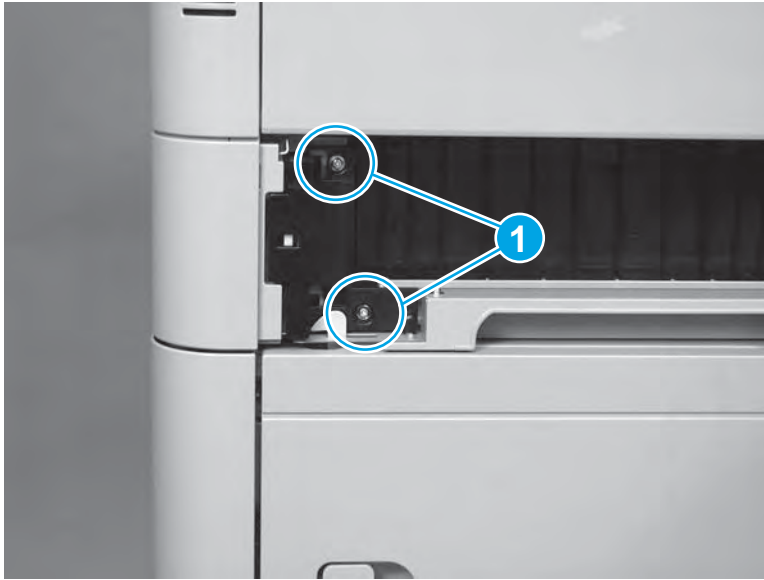
NOTE: If the product is installed on an optional input accessory, make sure to rotate the blue lever (callout 2) to lock the latch.

Figure 1-1050 Install the cover



4. Install two screws (callout 1), and then close all of the doors.

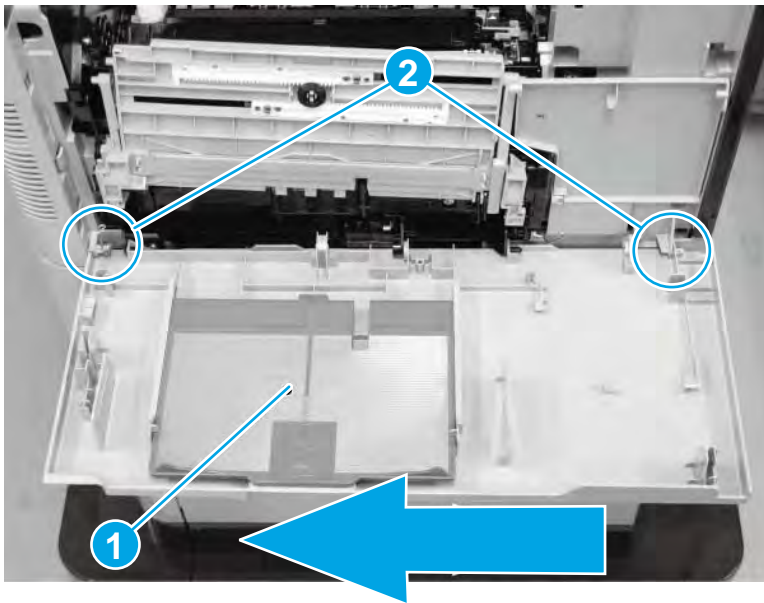
Figure 1-1051 Install two screws



Step 26: Install the Tray 1 cover

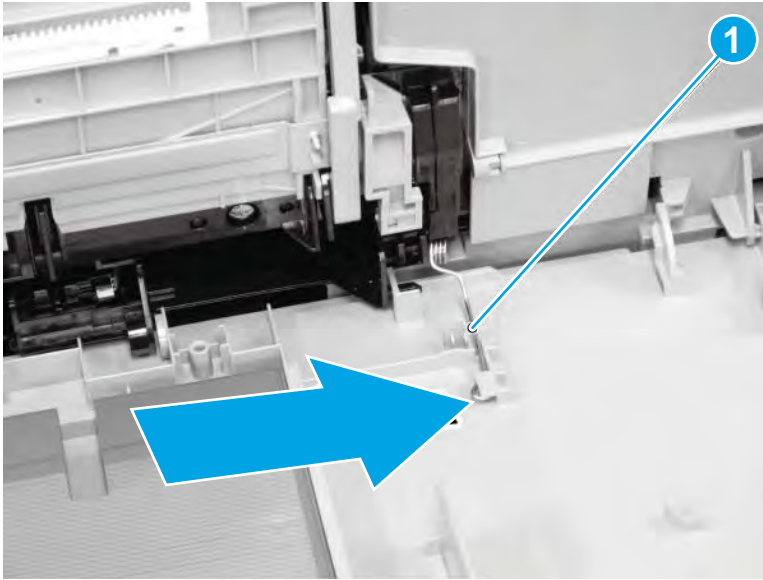
1. Slide the cover (callout 1) toward the front of the product to install it on the hinge pins (callout 2).

Figure 1-1052 Install the cover



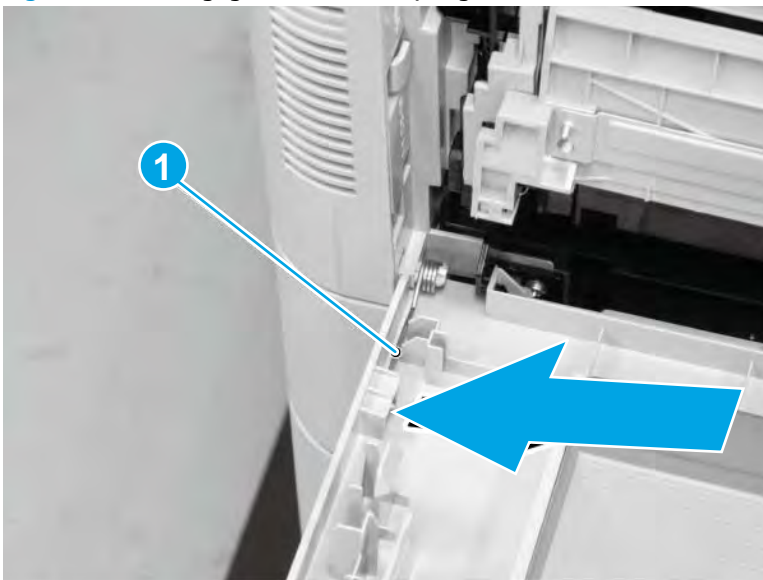
2. Engage the right-side spring arm (callout 1).

Figure 1-1053 Engage the right-side spring



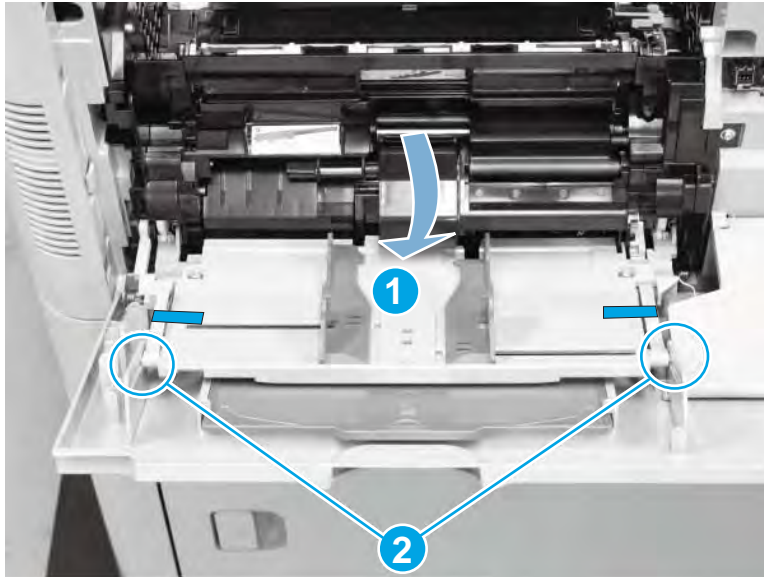
3. Engage the left-side spring arm (callout 1).

Figure 1-1054 Engage the left-side spring



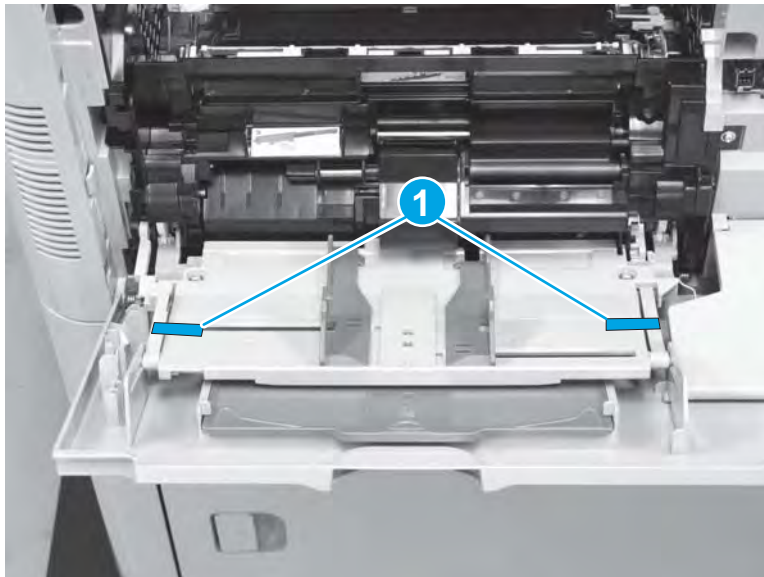
4. Lower the inner tray assembly (callout 1), and then engage the two outer retaining pins (callout 2) on the cover.

Figure 1-1055 Engage two outer retaining pins



5. Remove the low adhesive tape (callout 1), and then close the tray.

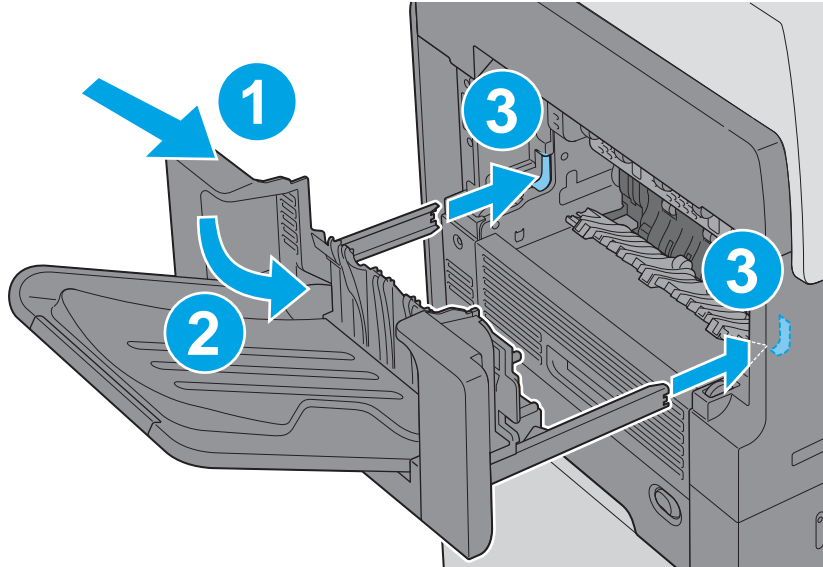
Figure 1-1056 Remove the low adhesive tape



Step 27: Install the output bin and bin base assembly or stapling mailbox

- ▲ Do one of the following:
 - a. **M630dn and M630f:** Position the assembly at an angle to the product (callout 1), lower the assembly into place (callout 2) while engaging the slide rails (callout 3), and then slide the bin base into the product.

Figure 1-1057 Install the output bin



- b. **M630z:** Position the assembly at an angle to the product (callout 1), lower the assembly into place (callout 2) while engaging the slide rails (callout 3), connect the interface cable (callout 4), and then slide the stapling mailbox (callout 5) into the product.


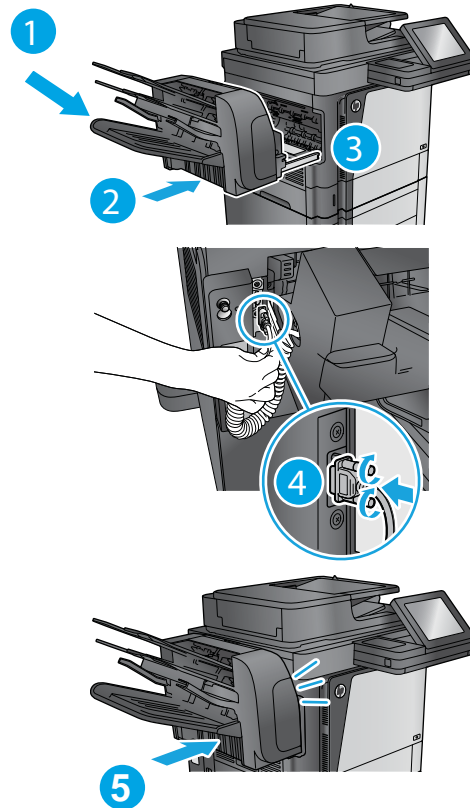
 **TIP:** After servicing, turn the power off, and then on again so that the product detects the installed stapling mailbox.

Figure 1-1058 Install the stapling mailbox



Step 28: Turn the product power on

After servicing

Do the following steps:

Connect the power cable.

Turn on the product.

Parts Return

www.Product return and recycling.

Optional input and output accessories



NOTE: HP recommends removing the accessories from the product before servicing them.

Some of the figures in this section might look slightly different than the M630 accessories. However, the procedures are correct for this product.

- [1x500-sheet paper feeder](#)
- [1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet](#)
- [2,500-sheet high capacity input \(HCI\)](#)
- [Stapling mailbox](#)

1x500-sheet paper feeder



NOTE: HP recommends removing the accessory from the product before servicing it.

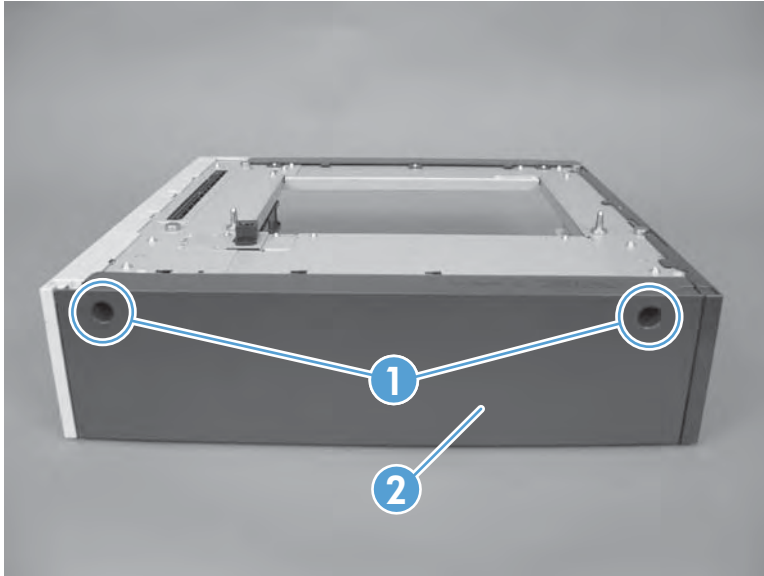
Some of the figures in this section might look slightly different than the M630 accessory. However, the procedures are correct for this product.

- [Rear cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder\)](#)
- [Left cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder\)](#)
- [Right cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder\)](#)
- [Right-front cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder\)](#)
- [Front-upper cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder\)](#)
- [Pickup drive assembly \(1x500-sheet paper feeder\)](#)
- [Pickup assembly \(1x500-sheet paper feeder\)](#)
- [Lifter base assembly \(1x500-sheet paper feeder\)](#)
- [Lifter assembly \(1x500-sheet paper feeder\)](#)
- [Controller printed-circuit assembly \(PCA\) \(1x500-sheet paper feeder\)](#)

Rear cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the rear cover (callout 2).

Figure 1-1059 Remove the rear cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



Left cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

Remove the following assemblies:

- Rear cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder). See [Rear cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder\) on page 658](#).

 **NOTE:** Remove the Tray 3 cassette if it has not already been removed.

Remove the left cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

1. The figure below shows the left cover removed. Take note of the locations of the tabs.


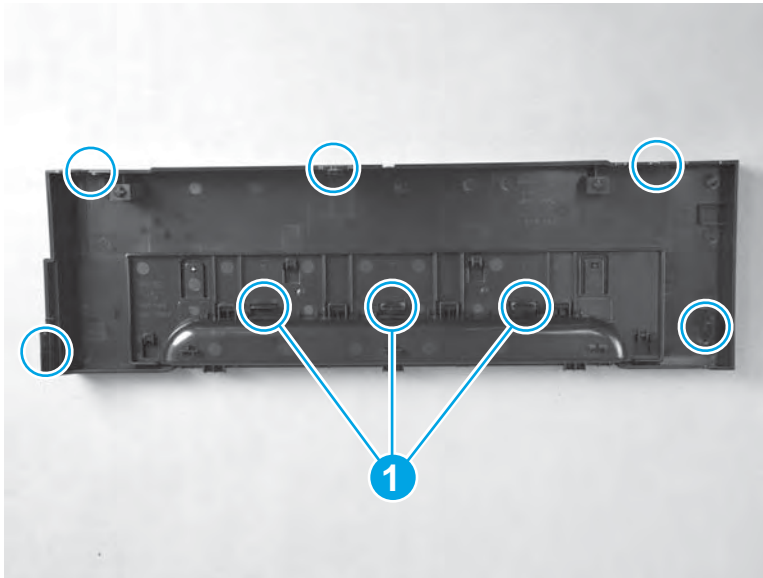
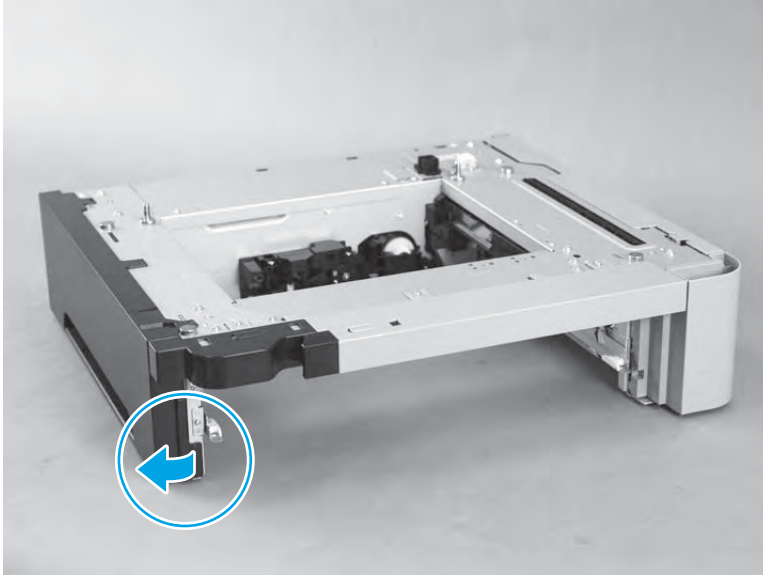
 **NOTE:** The three tabs (callout 1) along the inside middle are of the cover are difficult to see when removing the cover.

Figure 1-1060 Left cover tab locations (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



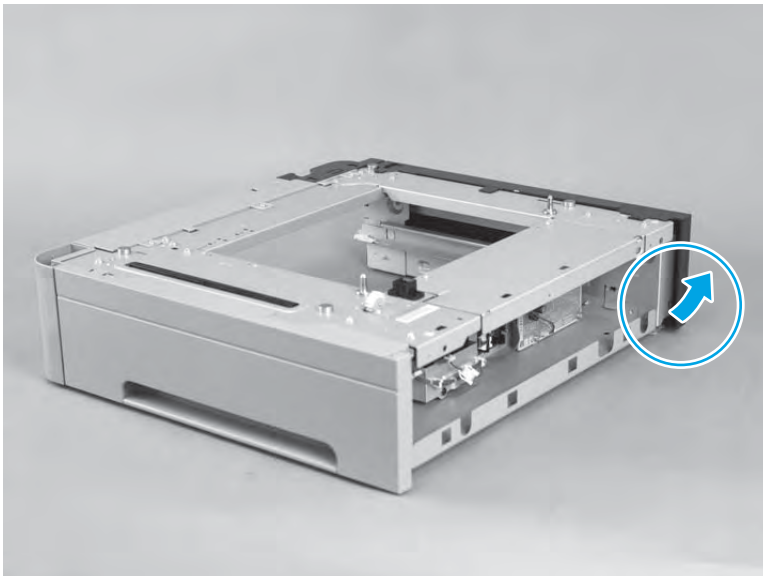
2. At the front of the accessory, release one tab, and then slightly separate the corner of the cover from the chassis.

Figure 1-1061 Release one tab (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



3. At the rear of the accessory, release one tab, and then slightly separate the corner of the cover from the chassis.

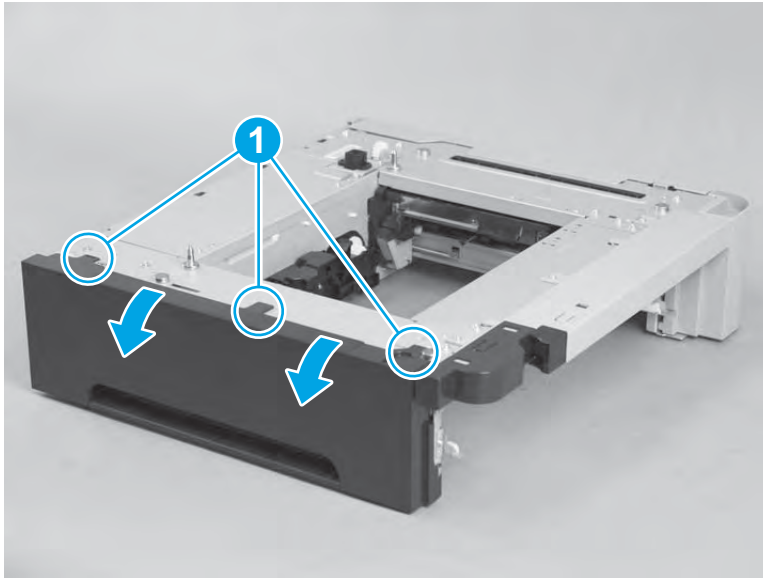
Figure 1-1062 Release one tab (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



4. At the top of the accessory, release three tabs (callout 1), and then slightly separate the top edge of the cover from the chassis.

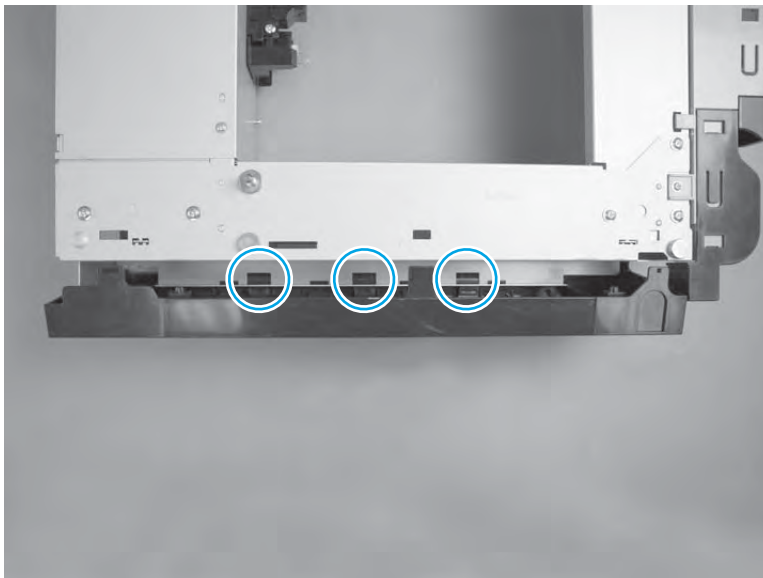
CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the cover. It is still attached to the chassis by three inner tabs.

Figure 1-1063 Release three tabs (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



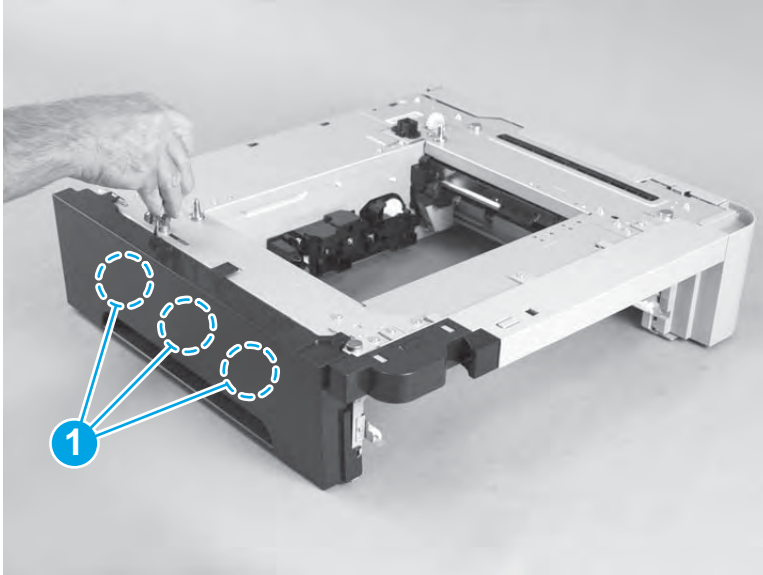
5. Look down at the top of the accessory, and then locate the three inner mounting tabs.

Figure 1-1064 Locate three tabs (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



6. Use a long-blade screwdriver to release the three inner mounting tabs (callout 1), and then remove the cover.

Figure 1-1065 Remove the left cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



Right cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

Remove the following assemblies:

- Rear cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder). See [Rear cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder\) on page 658](#).

 **NOTE:** Remove the Tray 3 cassette if it has not already been removed.

Remove the right cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

1. The figure below shows the left cover removed. Take note of the locations of the tabs.


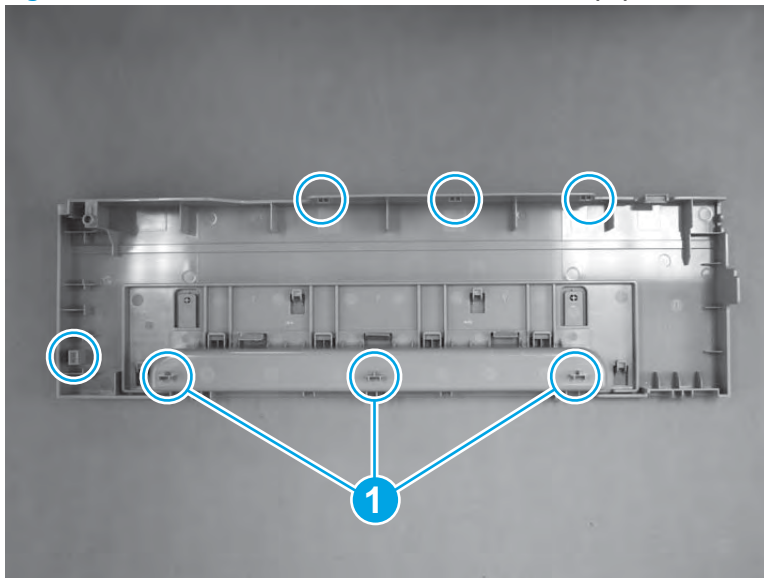
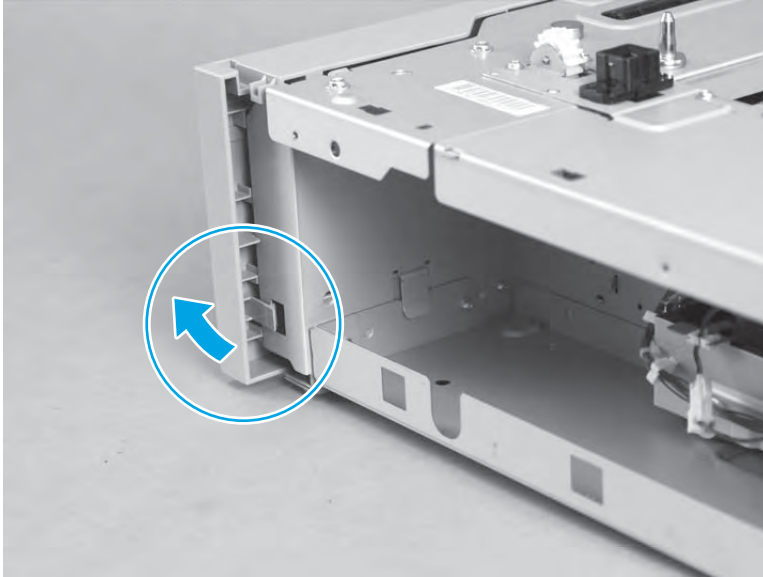
 **NOTE:** The three tabs (callout 1) along the inside middle are of the cover are difficult to see when removing the cover.

Figure 1-1066 Left cover tab locations (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



2. At the rear of the accessory, release one tab, and then slightly separate the corner of the cover from the chassis.

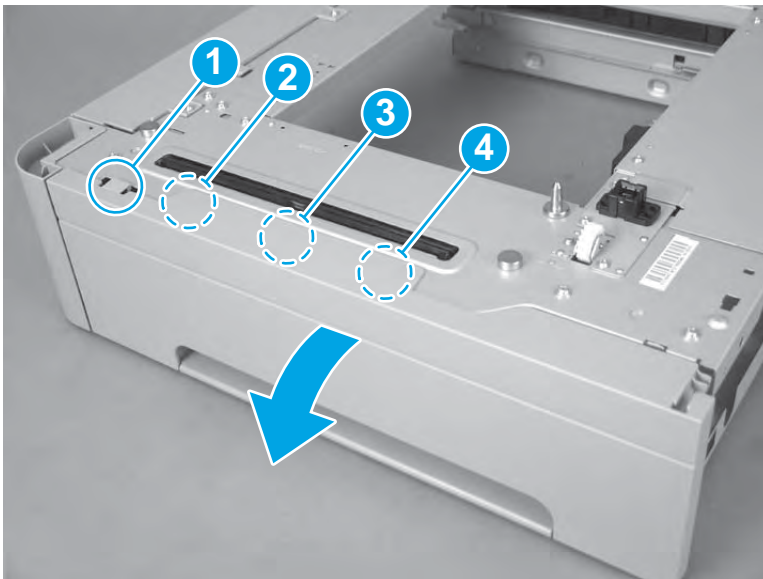
Figure 1-1067 Release one tab (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



3. At the top of the accessory, release four tabs in the order shown below (callout 1/2/3/4), and then slightly separate the top edge of the cover from the chassis.

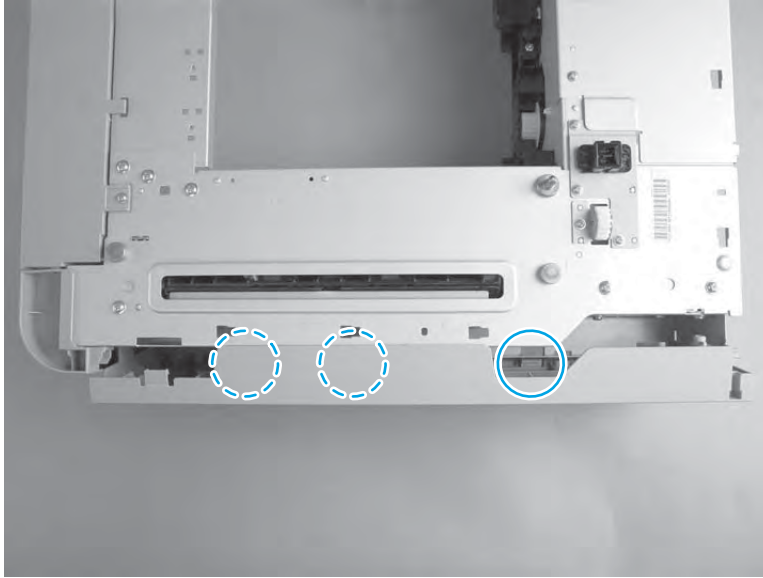
CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the cover. It is still attached to the chassis by three inner tabs.

Figure 1-1068 Release four tabs (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



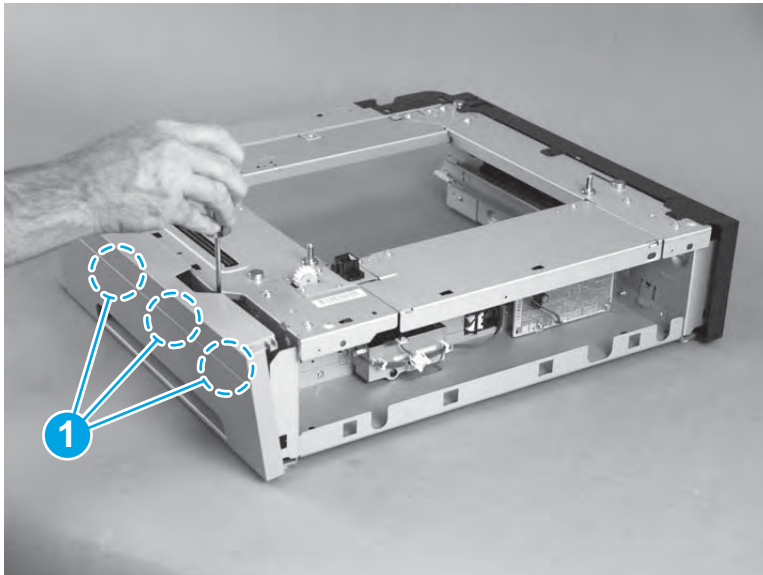
4. Look down at the top of the accessory, and then locate the three inner mounting tabs.

Figure 1-1069 Locate three tabs (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



5. Use a long-blade screwdriver to release the three inner mounting tabs (callout 1), and then remove the cover.

Figure 1-1070 Remove the right cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



Right-front cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

Remove the following assemblies:

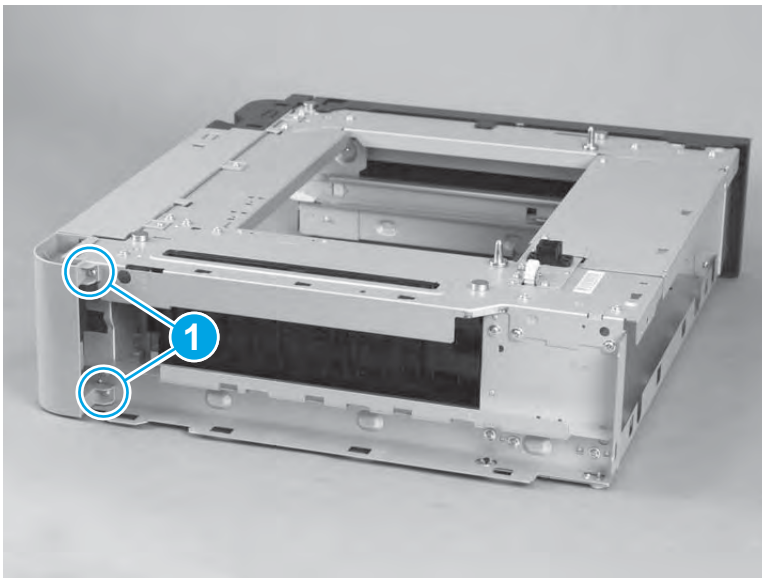
- Rear cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder). See [Rear cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder\) on page 658](#).
- Right cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder). See [Right cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder\) on page 663](#).

 **NOTE:** Remove the Tray 3 cassette if it has not already been removed.

Remove the right-front cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

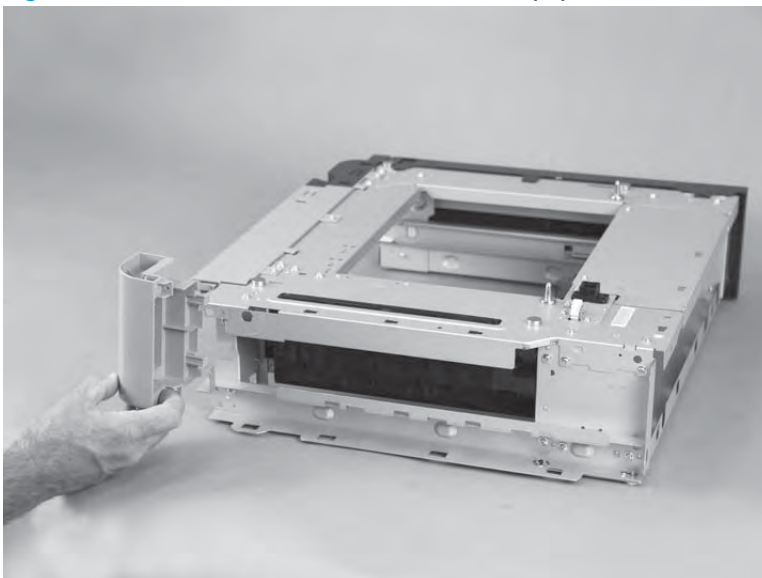
1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-1071 Remove two screws (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



2. Remove the cover.

Figure 1-1072 Remove the cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



Front-upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

Remove the following assemblies:

- Rear cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder). See [Rear cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder\) on page 658](#).
- Right cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder). See [Right cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder\) on page 663](#).
- Right-front cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder). See [Right-front cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder\) on page 666](#).

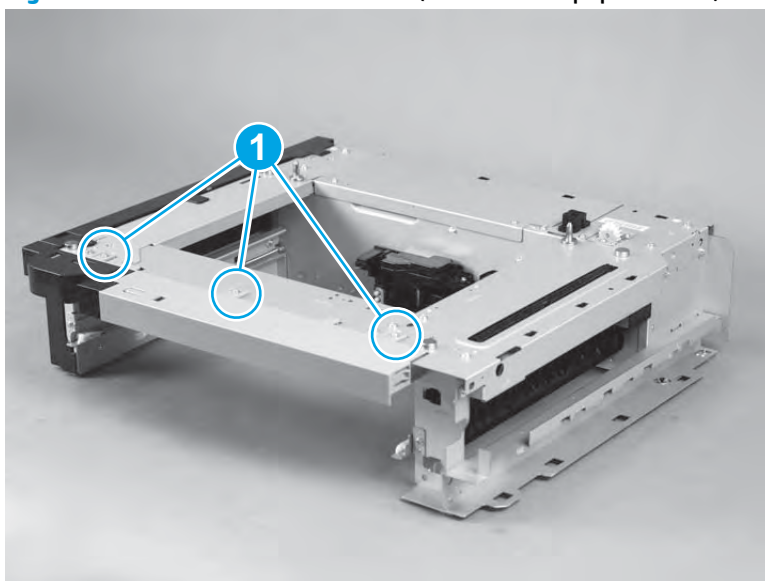


NOTE: Remove the Tray 3 cassette if it has not already been removed.

Remove the front-upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

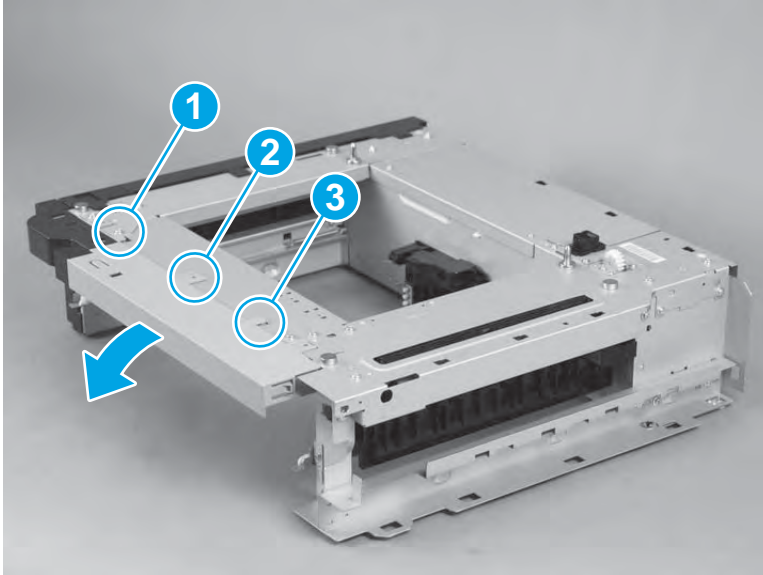
1. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-1073 Remove three screws (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



2. Release three tabs in the order shown below (callout 1/2/3), and then rotate the top edge of the cover away from the chassis to remove the cover.

Figure 1-1074 Remove the front-upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



Pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

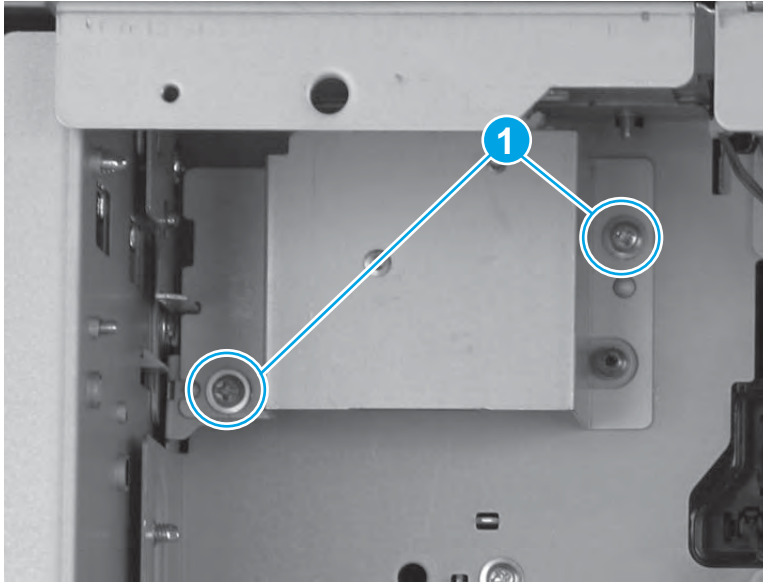
Remove the following assemblies:

- Rear cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder). See [Rear cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder\) on page 658](#).

Remove the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

1. At the rear of the accessory, remove two screws (callout 1).

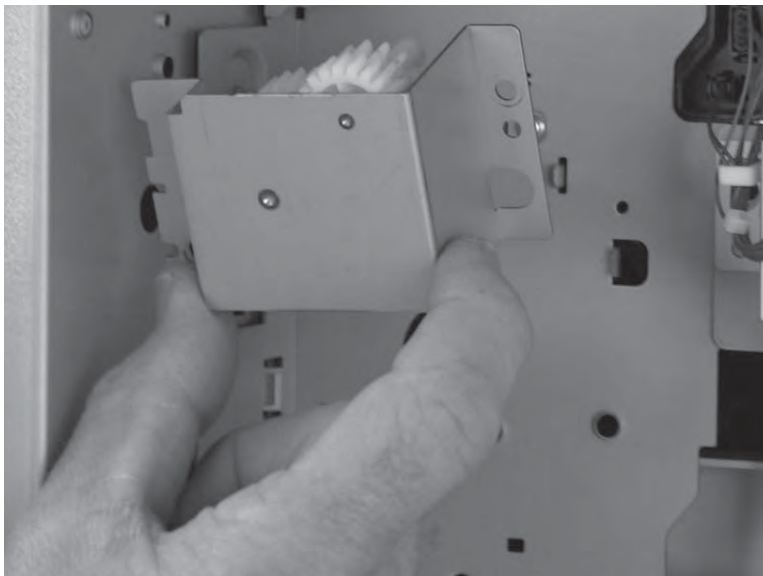
Figure 1-1075 Remove the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



2. Remove the pickup drive assembly.

⚠ CAUTION: The gears on the back side of the drive assembly are not captive. If they become dislodged, see [Install the pickup drive assembly on page 670](#) to reinstall them.

Figure 1-1076 Remove the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



Install the pickup drive assembly

If the gears on the drive assembly become dislodged, use the figure to reinstall them.


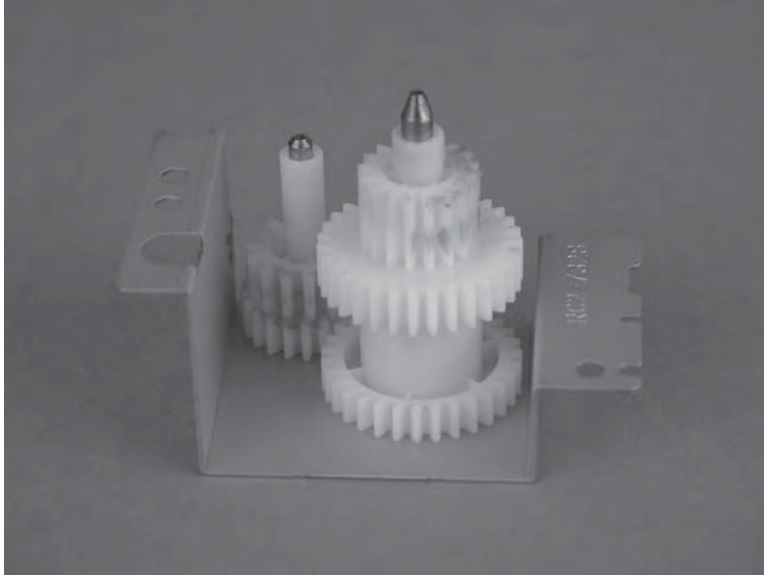
 **NOTE:** Do not remove the grease that is on the gears when handling them.

Figure 1-1077 Gears on the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



Pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

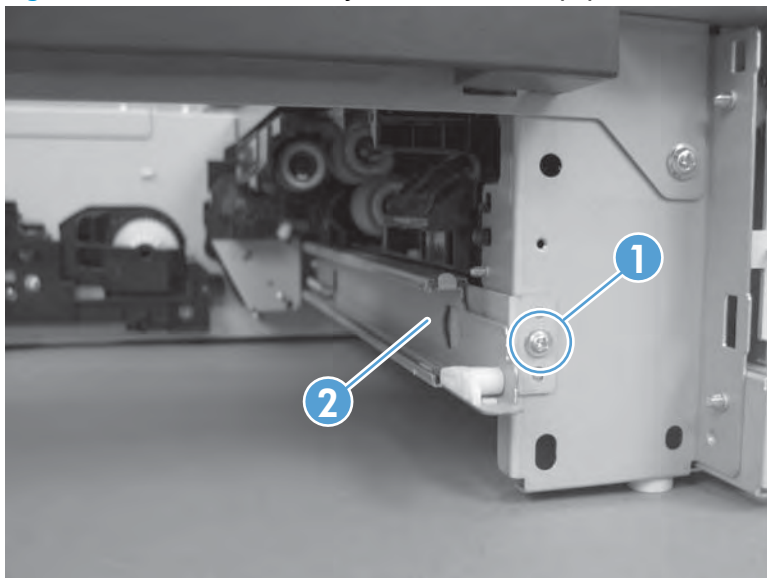
Remove the following assemblies:

- Rear cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder). See [Rear cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder\) on page 658](#).
- Right cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder). See [Right cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder\) on page 663](#).
- Right-front cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder). See [Right-front cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder\) on page 666](#).

Remove the pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

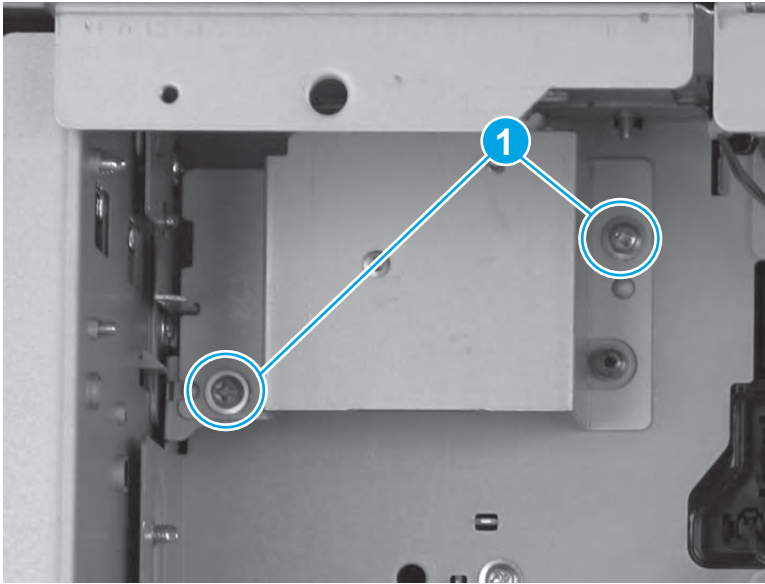
1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the tray rail (callout 2).

Figure 1-1078 Remove the tray rail (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



2. At the rear of the accessory, remove two screws (callout 1).

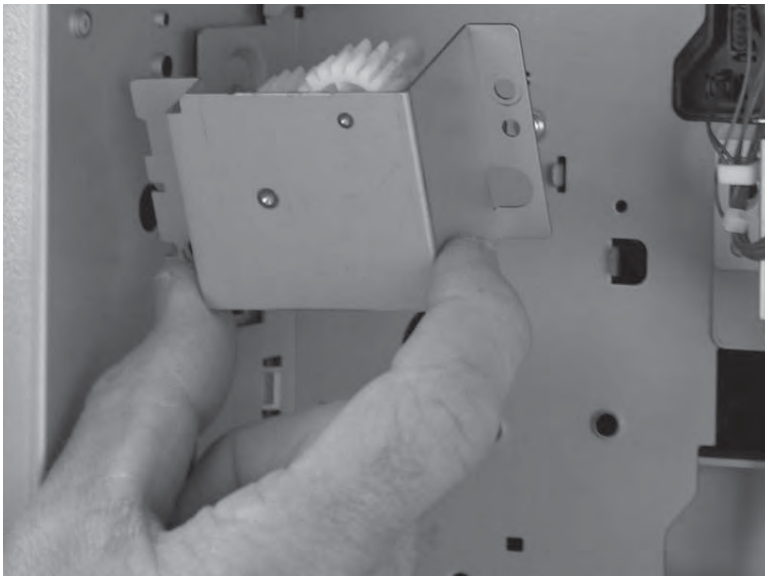
Figure 1-1079 Remove the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



3. Remove the pickup drive assembly.

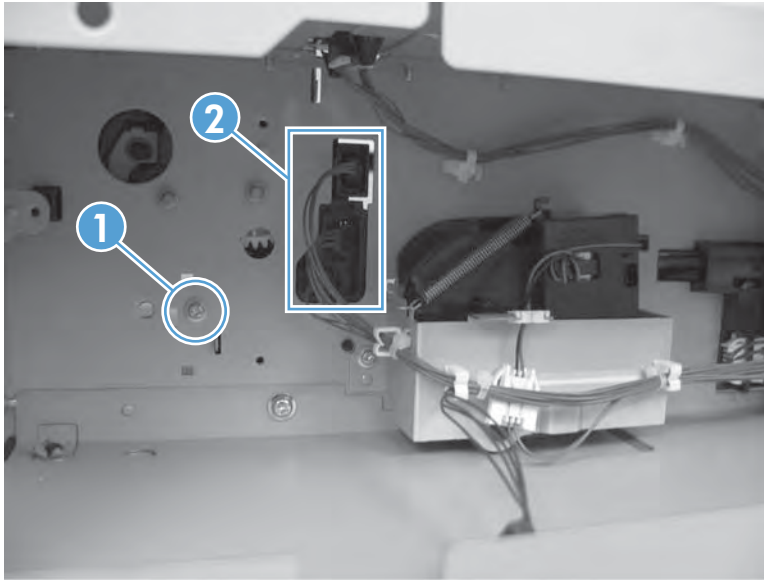
CAUTION: The gears on the back side of the drive assembly are not captive. If they become dislodged, see [Install the pickup assembly \(1x500-sheet paper feeder\) on page 674](#) to reinstall them.

Figure 1-1080 Remove the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



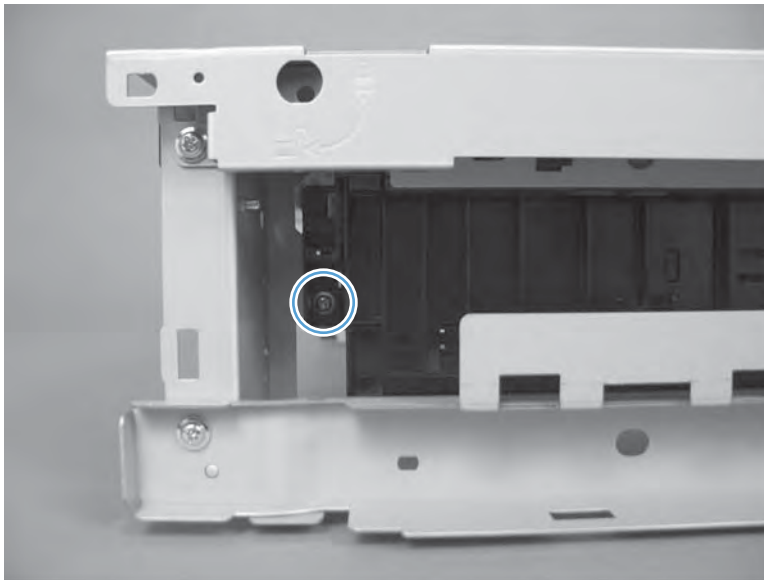
4. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then disconnect three connectors (callout 2).

Figure 1-1081 Remove one screw and disconnect three connectors (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



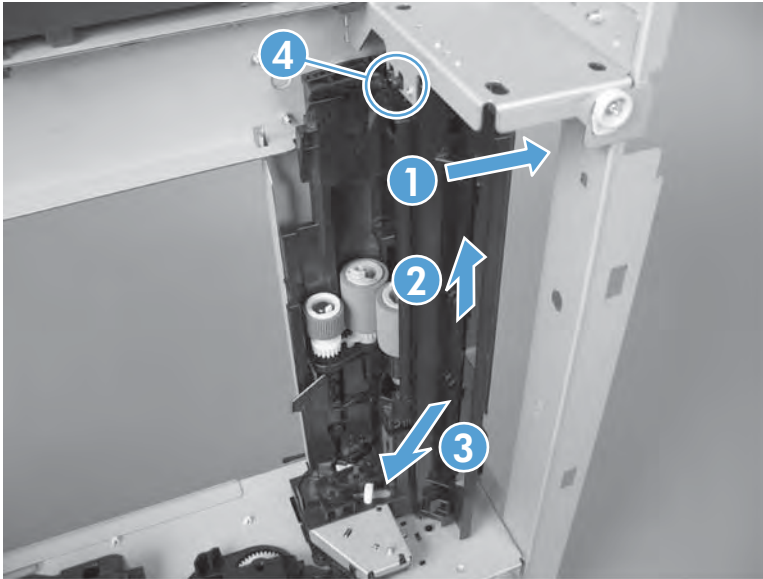
5. Remove one screw.

Figure 1-1082 Remove one screw (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



6. Move the top of the assembly to the right (callout 1) until the post (callout 4) is free of the hole. Lift the assembly (callout 2), and then pull the bottom of the assembly (callout 3) to remove it.

Figure 1-1083 Remove the pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



Install the pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

If the gears on the drive assembly become dislodged, use the figure to reinstall them.


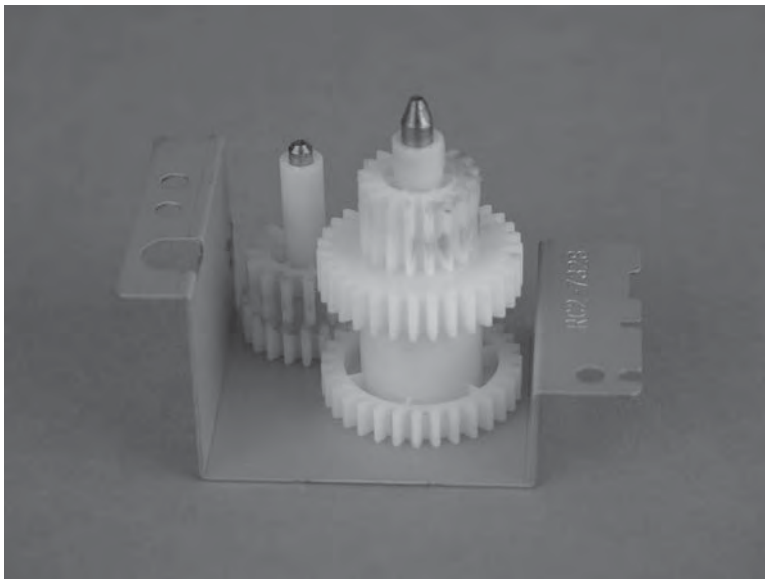
 **NOTE:** Do not remove the grease that is on the gears when handling them.

Figure 1-1084 Gears on the paper drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



Lifter base assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

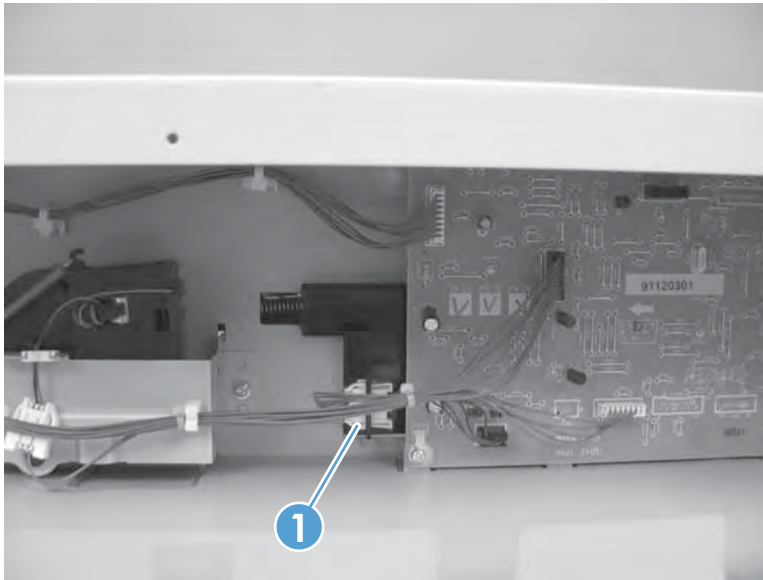
Remove the following assemblies:

- Rear cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder). See [Rear cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder\) on page 658](#).

Remove the lifter base assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 1-1085 Disconnect one connector (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



2. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the lifter assembly (callout 2).


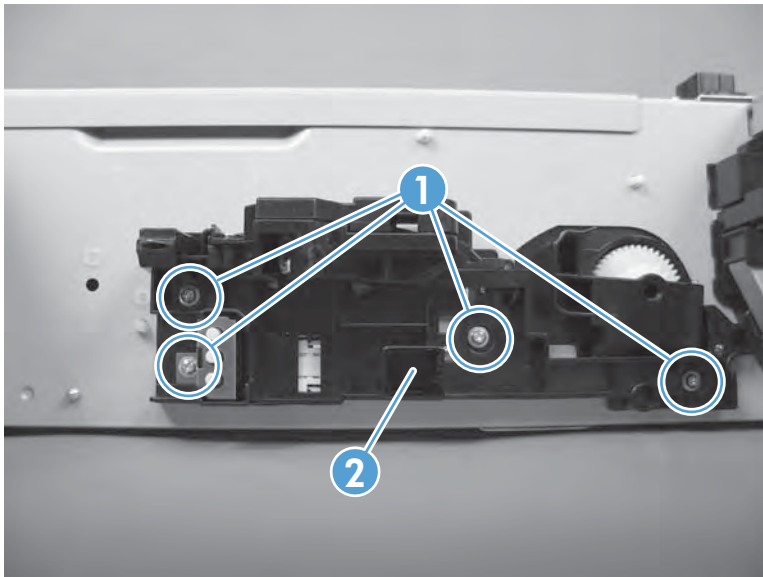
 **NOTE:** There is a spring behind the lifter assembly that is not captive. Do not lose the spring when the assembly is removed. make sure that the spring is correctly positioned when the assembly is reinstalled.

Figure 1-1086 Remove the lifter assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



Lifter assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

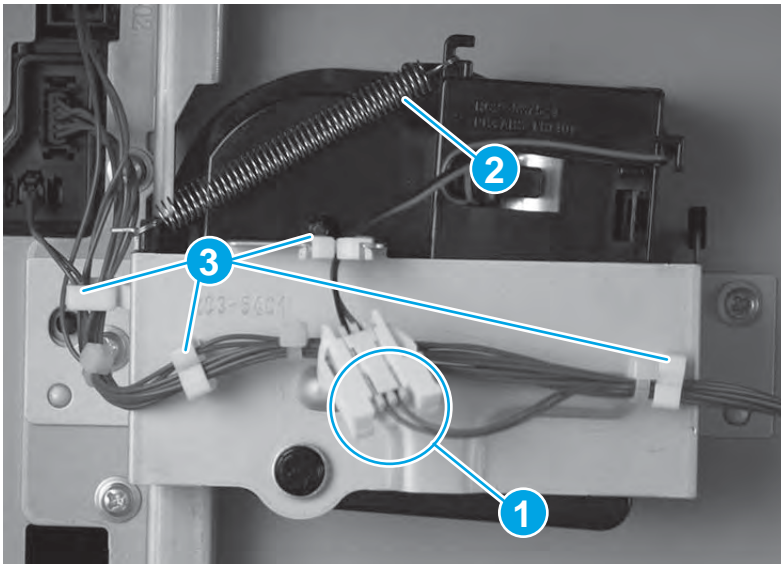
Remove the following assemblies:

- Rear cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder). See [Rear cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder\) on page 658](#).

Remove the lifter assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

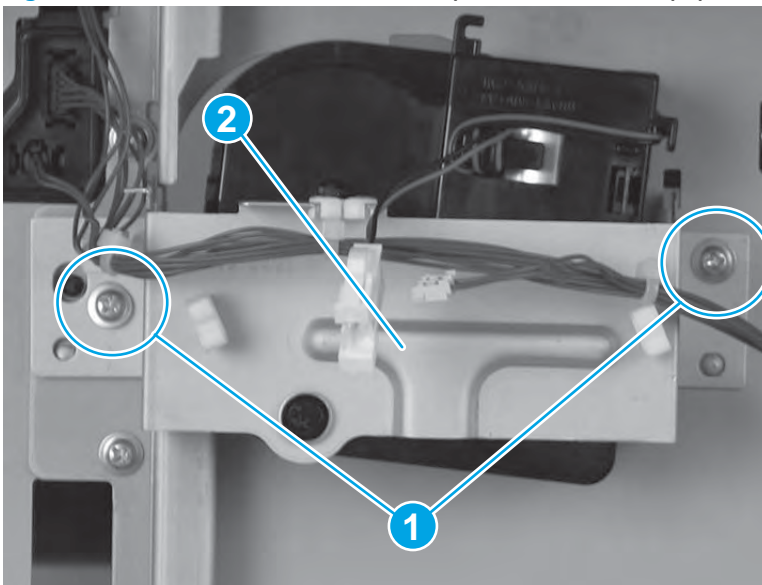
1. At the rear of the accessory, disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove one spring (callout 2), and then release the wire harnesses from the guides (callout 3).

Figure 1-1087 Disconnect one connector and remove one spring (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



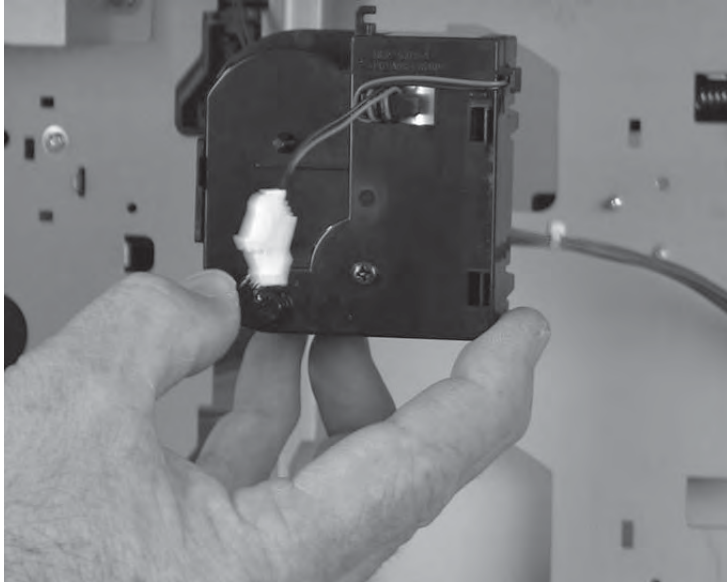
2. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the sheet-metal plate (callout 2).

Figure 1-1088 Remove the sheet-metal plate (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



3. Remove the lifter assembly.

Figure 1-1089 Remove the lifter assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



Controller printed-circuit assembly (PCA) (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

Remove the following assemblies:

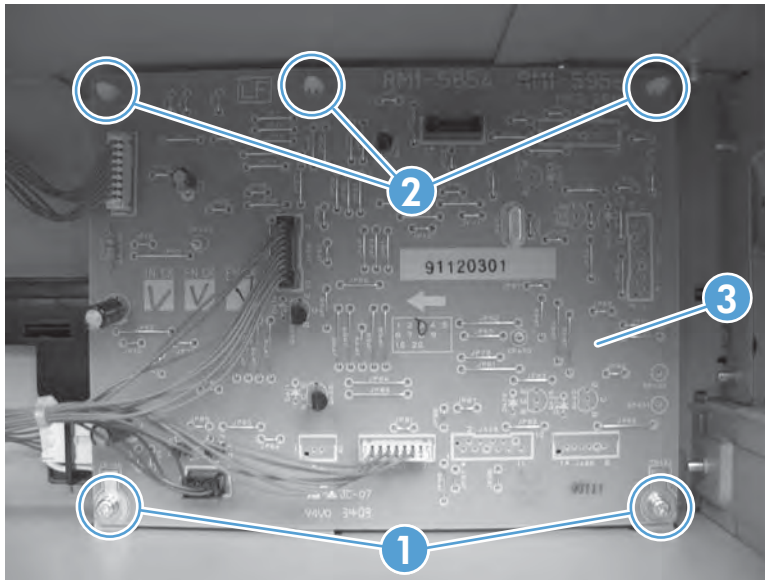
- Rear cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder). See [Rear cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder\) on page 658](#).

Remove the controller PCA (1x500-sheet paper feeder)

CAUTION: ESD-sensitive part.

Disconnect all connectors, remove two screws (callout 1), use a pair of needle nose pliers to release three standoffs (callout 2), and then remove the PCA (callout 3).

Figure 1-1090 Remove the controller PCA (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet



NOTE: HP recommends removing the accessory from the product before servicing it.

Some of the figures in this section might look slightly different than the M630 accessory. However, the procedures are correct for this product.

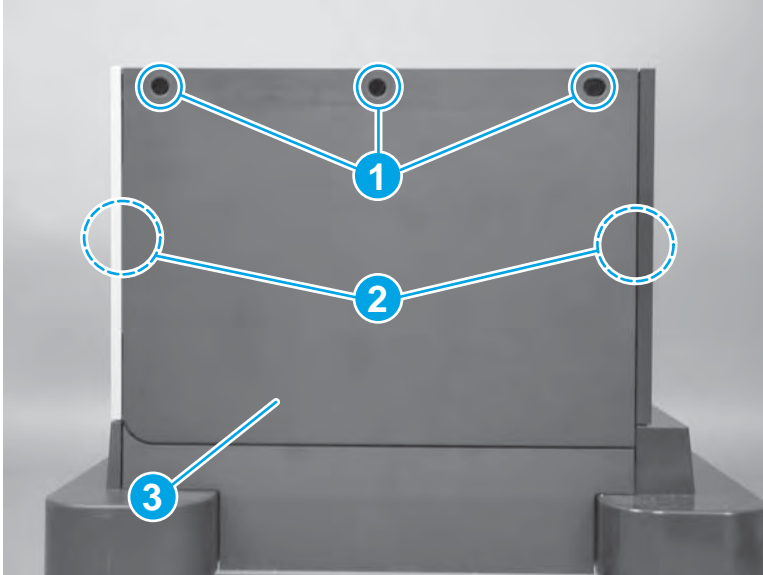
- [Rear and rear lower cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\)](#)
- [Stock box door \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\)](#)
- [Stock box and rails \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\)](#)
- [Left cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\)](#)
- [Front upper cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\)](#)
- [Right-front cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\)](#)
- [Right door \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\)](#)
- [Right center cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\)](#)
- [Right-door hinge cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\)](#)
- [Pickup drive assembly \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\)](#)
- [Paper-pickup assembly \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\)](#)
- [Lifter base assembly \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\)](#)
- [Lifter assembly \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\)](#)
- [Controller printed-circuit assembly \(PCA\) \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\)](#)

Rear and rear lower cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

- ▲ Remove three screws (callout 1), release two tabs (callout 2), and then remove the rear and rear lower cover (callout 3).

Figure 1-1091 Remove the rear and rear lower cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

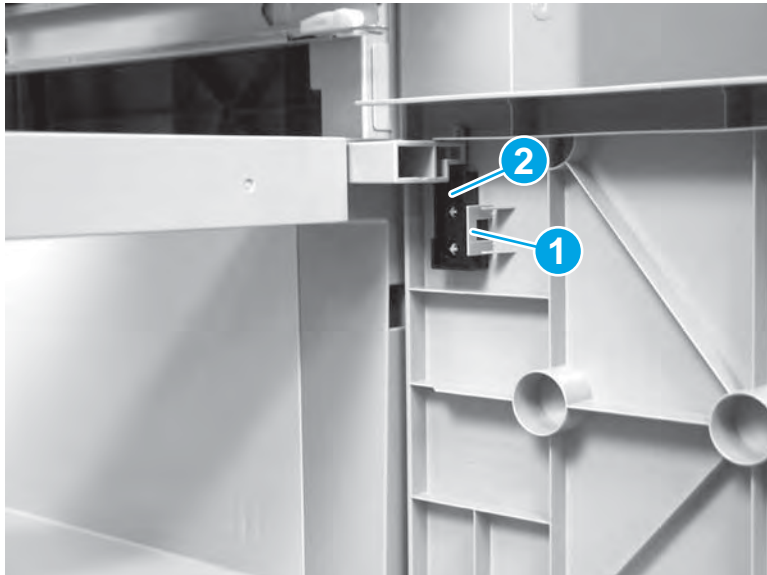


Stock box door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

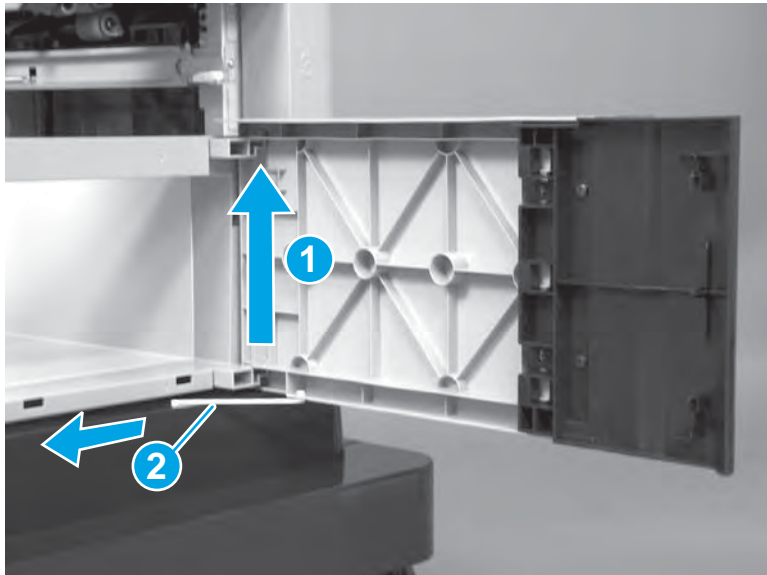
1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then remove the stopper (callout 2).

Figure 1-1092 Remove the stopper (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



2. Lift up on the door to remove it from the hinge pins (callout 1), slide it to the left to release the link arm (callout 2), and then remove it.

Figure 1-1093 Remove the stock box door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



Stock box and rails (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

Remove the following assemblies:

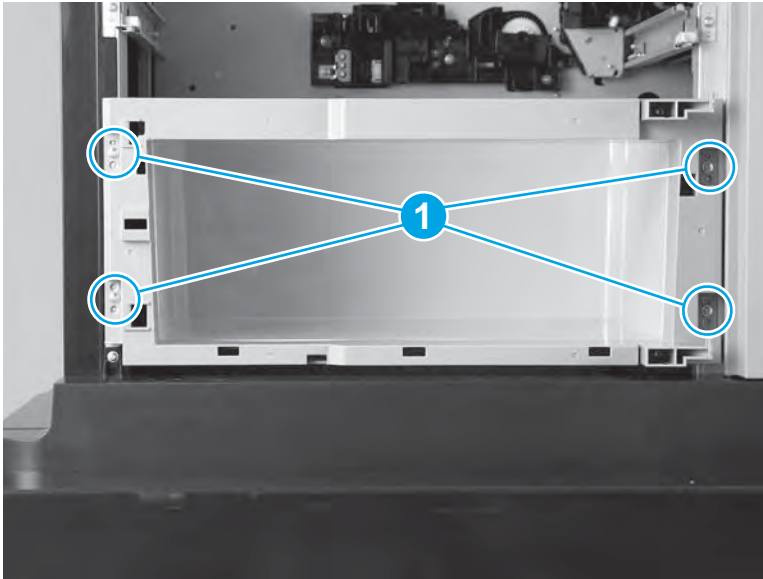
- Stock box door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet). See [Stock box door \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\) on page 681](#).

Remove the stock box and rails

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

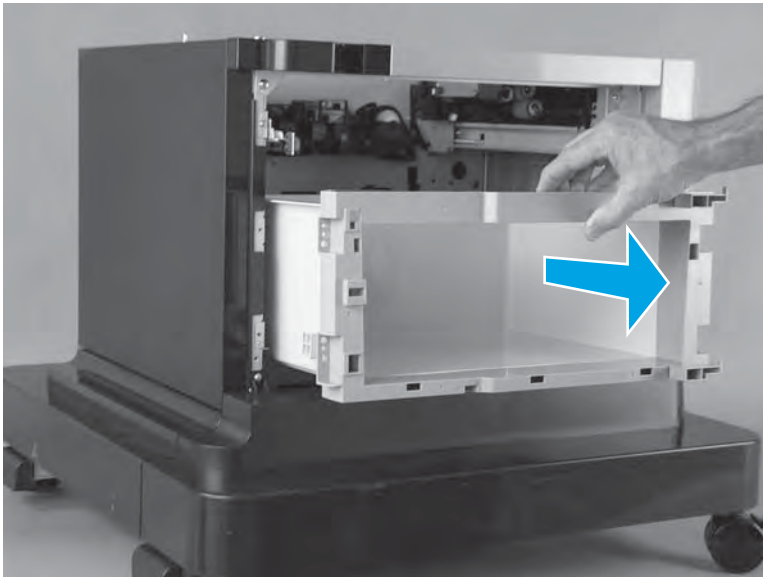
1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-1094 Remove four screws (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



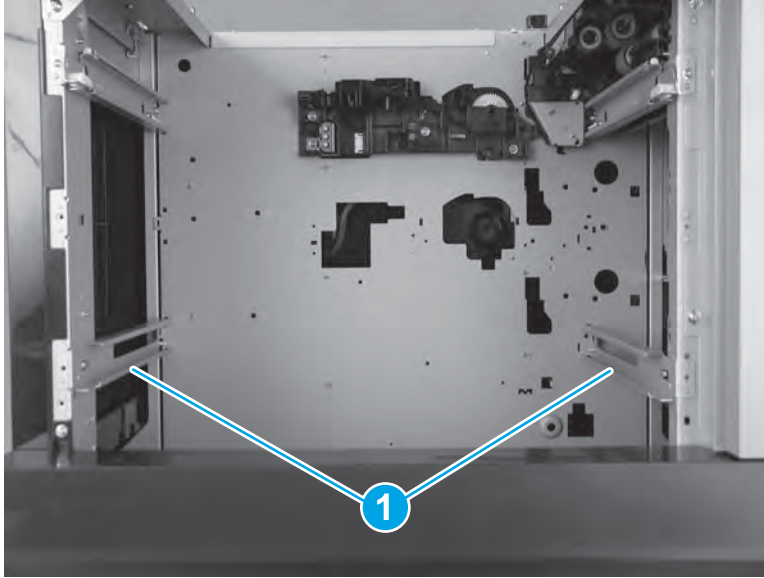
2. Slide the stock box out of the accessory to remove it.

Figure 1-1095 Remove the stock box (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



3. Remove the stock box rails.

Figure 1-1096 Remove the stock box rails (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



Left cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

Remove the following assemblies:

- Rear and rear lower cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet). See [Rear and rear lower cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\) on page 680](#).
- Stock box door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet). See [Stock box door \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\) on page 681](#).
- Stock box and rails (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet). See [Stock box and rails \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\) on page 682](#).

 **NOTE:** The output accessory must be removed from the product before servicing this assembly.

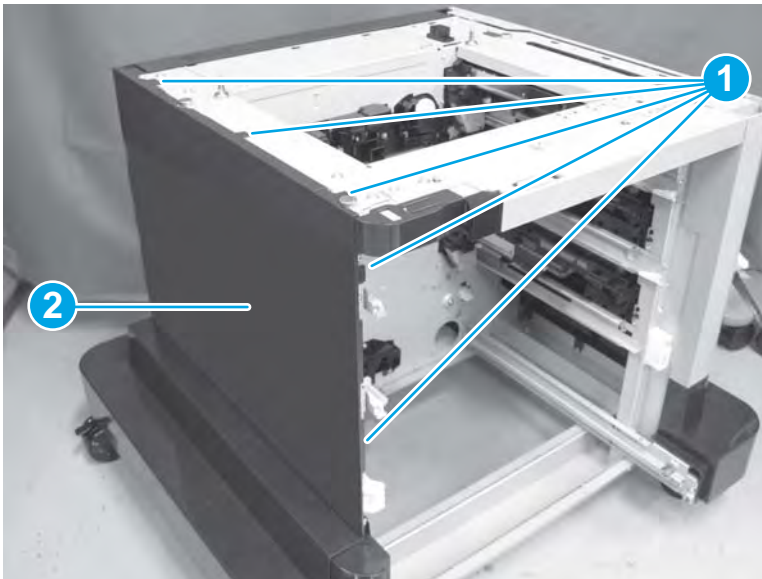
Remove the left cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

- ▲ Release five tabs (callout 1), and then remove the left cover (callout 2).

 **NOTE:** The figure below shows the 2,500-sheet paper feeder. However, this procedure is valid for the 1x500-sheet accessory.

Figure 1-1097 Remove the left cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



Front upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

Remove the following assemblies:

- Stock box door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet). See [Stock box door \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\) on page 681](#).



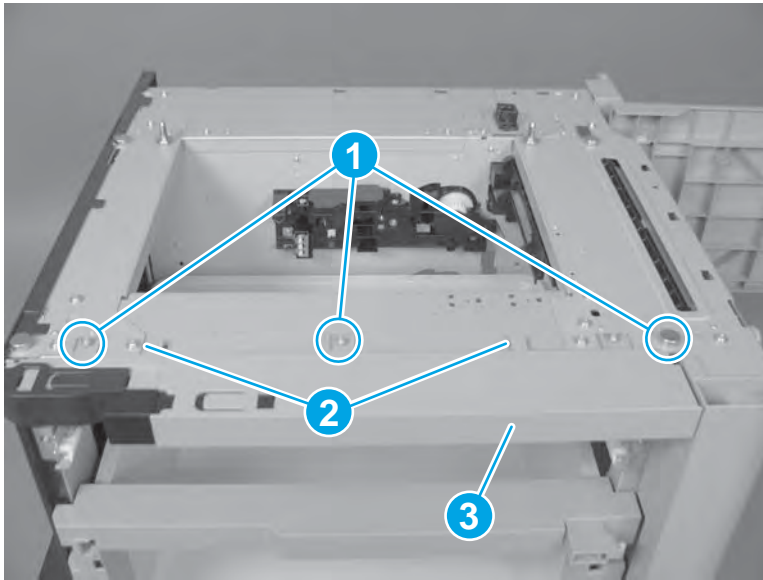
NOTE: The output accessory must be removed from the product before servicing this assembly.

Remove the front upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

- ▲ Remove three screws (callout 1), release two tabs (callout 2), and then remove the front upper cover (callout 3).

Figure 1-1098 Remove the front upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



Right-front cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

Remove the following assemblies:

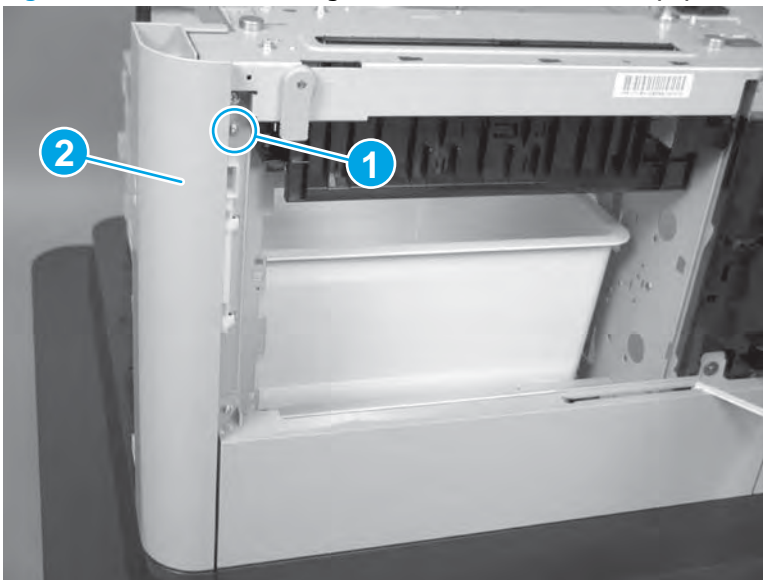
- Stock box door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet). See [Stock box door \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\) on page 681](#).
- Front upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet). See [Front upper cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\) on page 685](#).

Remove the right-front cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

- ▲ Open the right door. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the right-front cover (callout 2).

Figure 1-1099 Remove the right-front cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

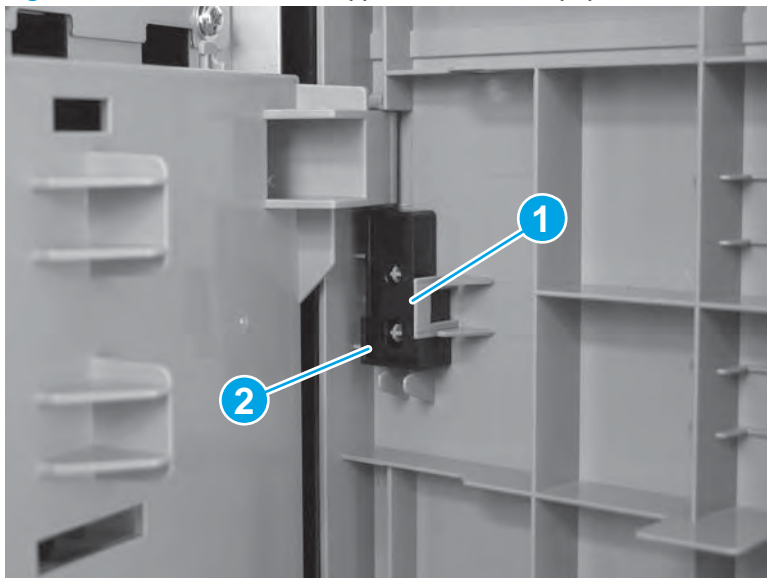


Right door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

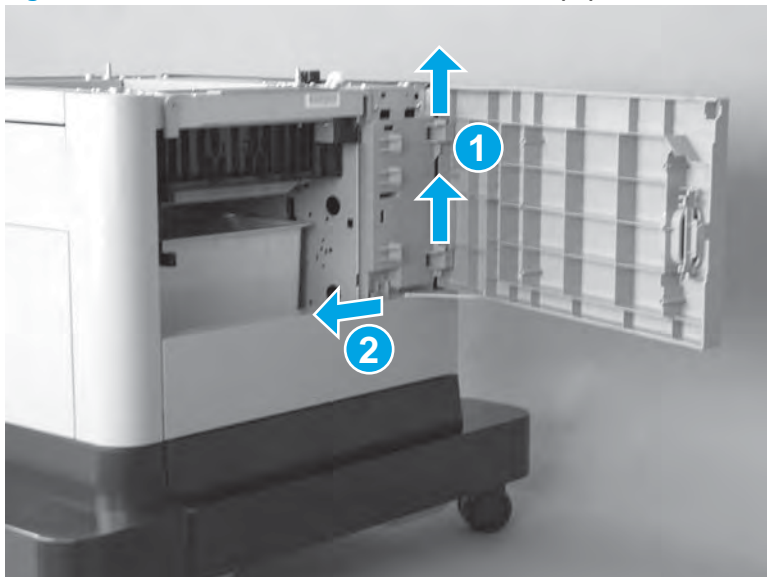
1. Open the right door, release one tab (callout 1), and then remove the stopper (callout 2).

Figure 1-1100 Remove the stopper (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



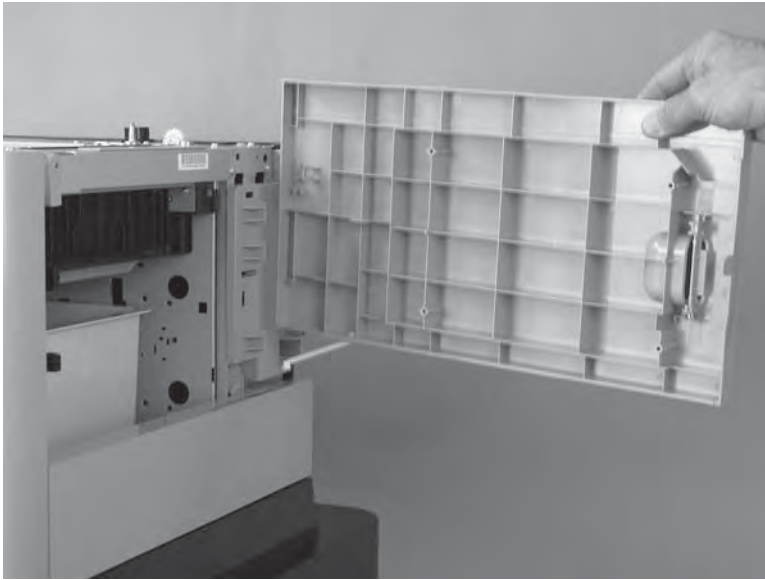
2. Lift up on the door (callout 1) to remove it from the hinge pins, and then slide it to the left to release the link arm (callout 2).

Figure 1-1101 Release the link arm (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



3. Remove the right door.

Figure 1-1102 Remove the right door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



Right center cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

Remove the following assemblies:

- Right door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet). See [Right door \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\) on page 687](#).

Remove the right center cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

- ▲ Remove two screws (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then remove the right center cover (callout 3).


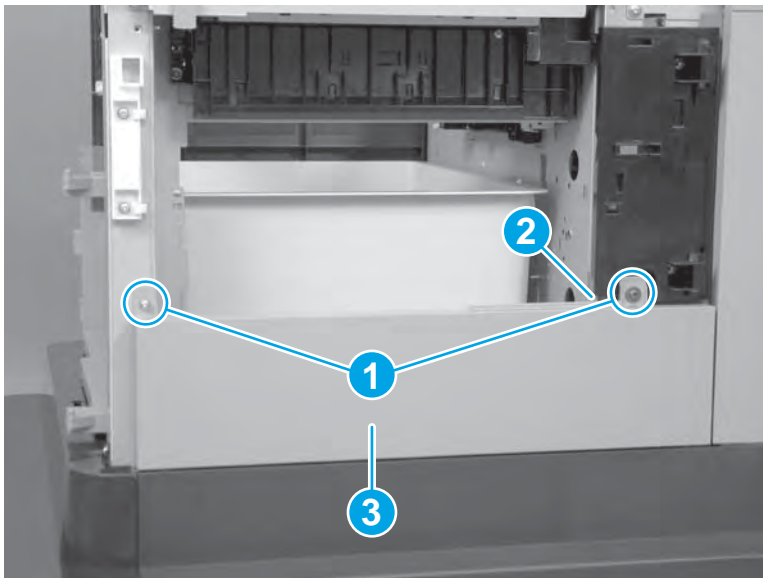
 **Reinstallation tip:** The screw for the right side of the cover—near the tab (callout 2)—is a shoulder screw.

Figure 1-1103 Remove the right center cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



Right-door hinge cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

Remove the following assemblies:

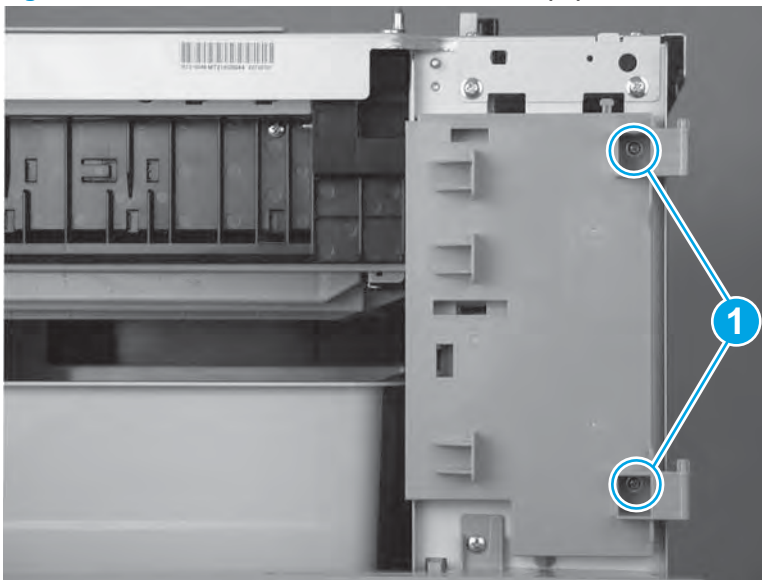
- Rear and rear lower cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet). See [Rear and rear lower cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\) on page 680](#).
- Right door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet). See [Right door \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\) on page 687](#).

Remove the right-door hinge cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

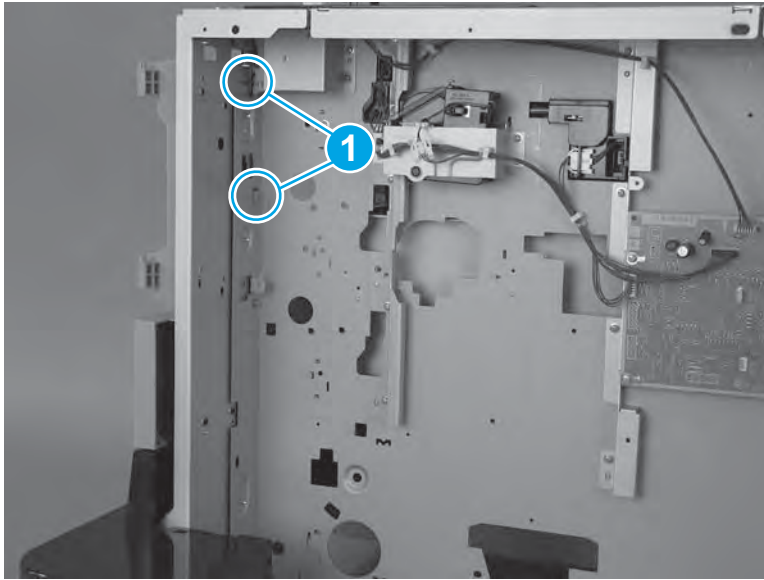
1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-1104 Remove the screws (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



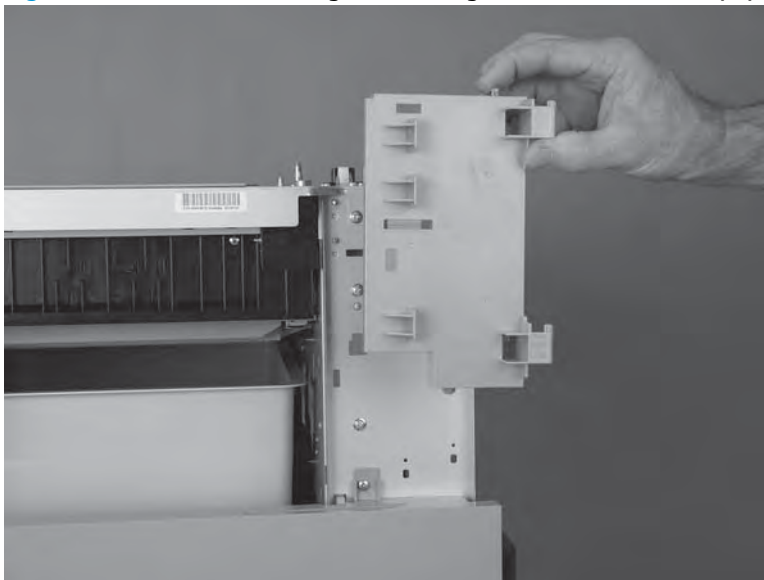
2. Release two tabs (callout 1).

Figure 1-1105 Release two tabs (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



3. Remove the right-door hinge cover.

Figure 1-1106 Remove the right-door hinge cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



Pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

Remove the following assemblies:

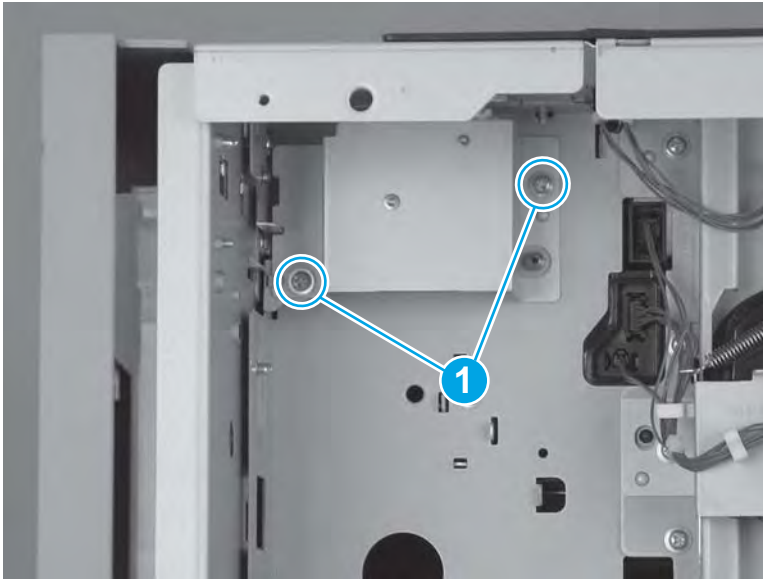
- Rear and rear lower cover. See [Rear and rear lower cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\) on page 680](#).

Remove the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

1. At the rear of the accessory, remove two screws (callout 1).

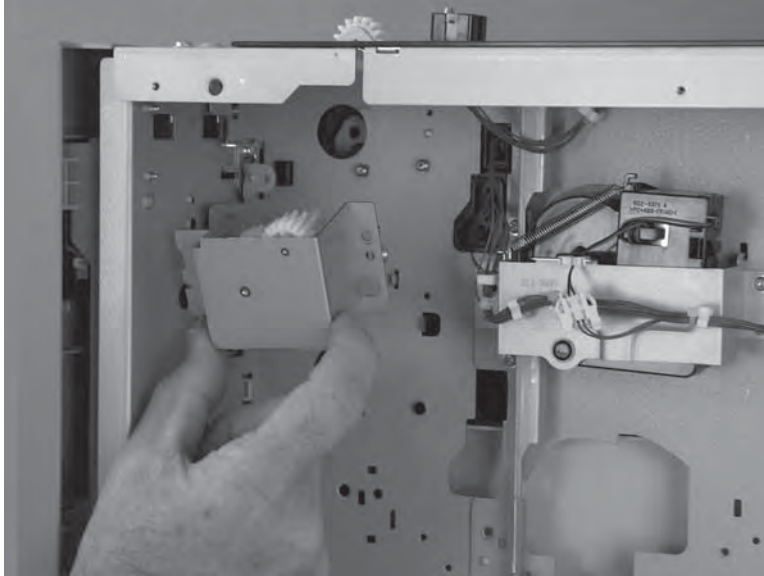
Figure 1-1107 Remove the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



2. Remove the pickup drive assembly.

CAUTION: The gears on the back side of the drive assembly are not captive. If they become dislodged, see [Install the paper drive assembly \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\) on page 694](#) to reinstall them.

Figure 1-1108 Remove the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



Install the paper drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

If the gears on the drive assembly become dislodged, use the figure to reinstall them.


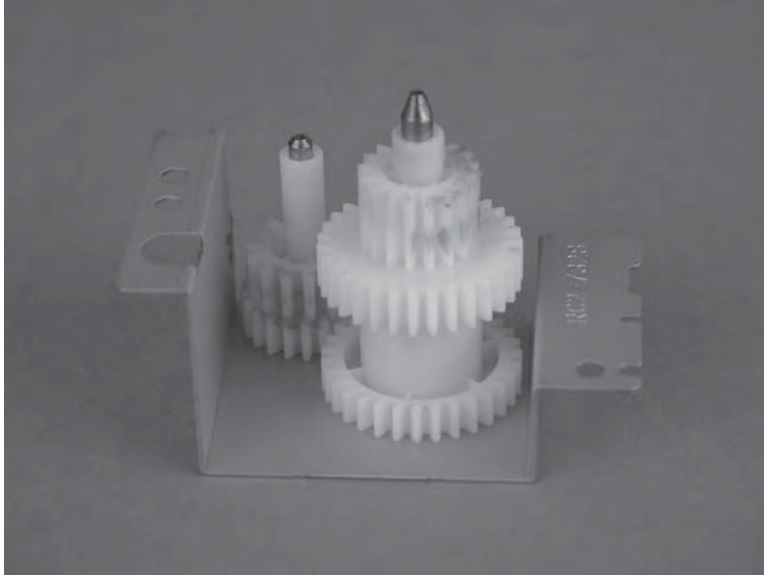
 **NOTE:** Do not remove the grease that is on the gears when handling them.

Figure 1-1109 Paper drive assembly gears (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



Paper-pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

Remove the following assemblies:

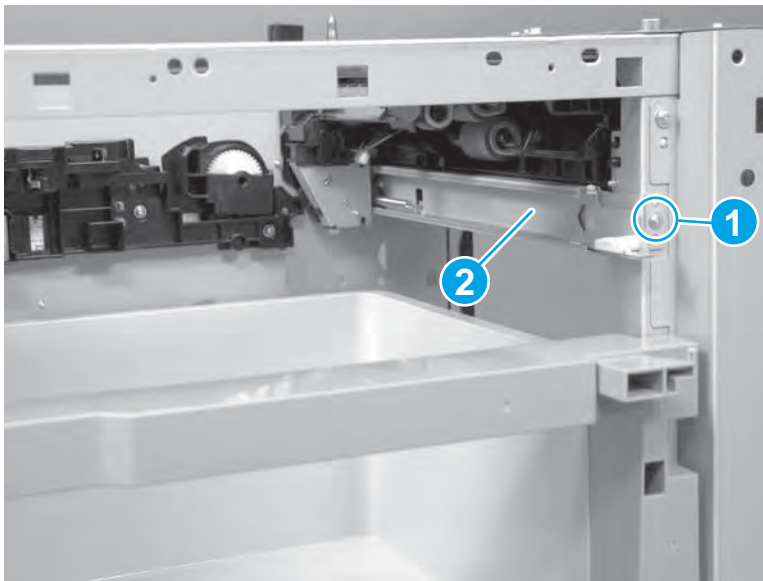
- Rear and rear lower cover. See [Rear and rear lower cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\) on page 680](#).
- Stock box door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet). See [Stock box door \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\) on page 681](#)
- Front upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet). See [Front upper cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\) on page 685](#).
- Right front cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet). See [Right-front cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\) on page 686](#).

Remove the paper-pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

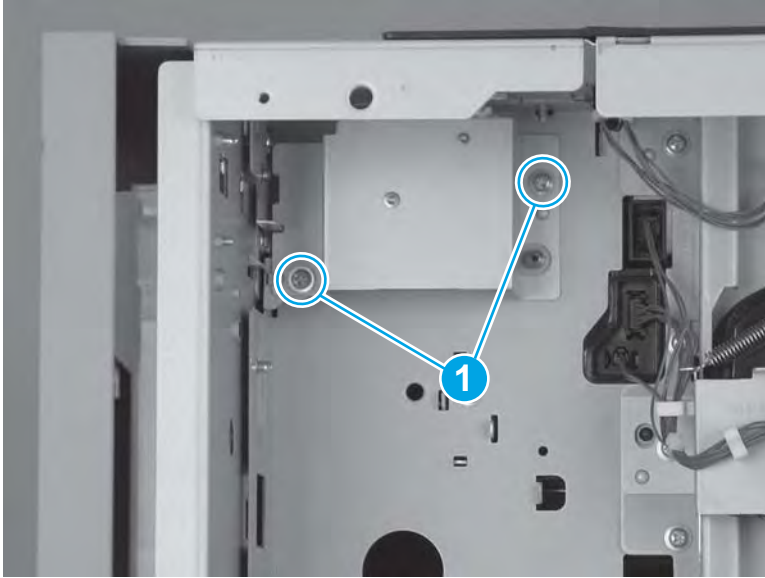
1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the tray rail (callout 2).

Figure 1-1110 Remove the tray rail (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



2. At the rear of the accessory, remove two screws (callout 1).

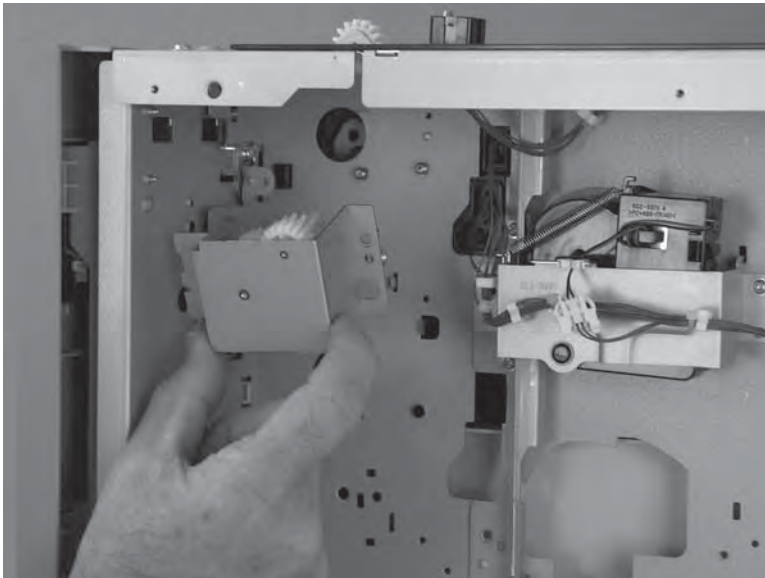
Figure 1-1111 Remove the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



3. Remove the pickup drive assembly.

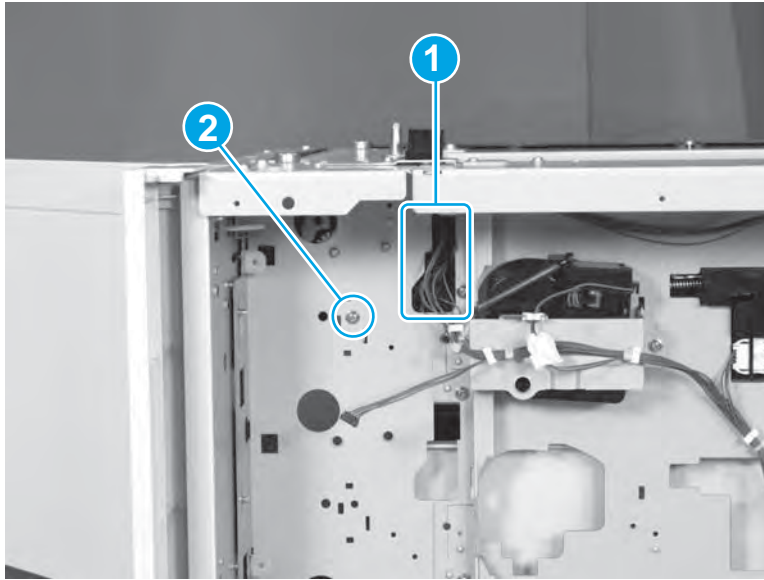
CAUTION: The gears on the back side of the drive assembly are not captive. If they become dislodged, see [Install the paper-pickup assembly \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\) on page 698](#) to reinstall them.

Figure 1-1112 Remove the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)



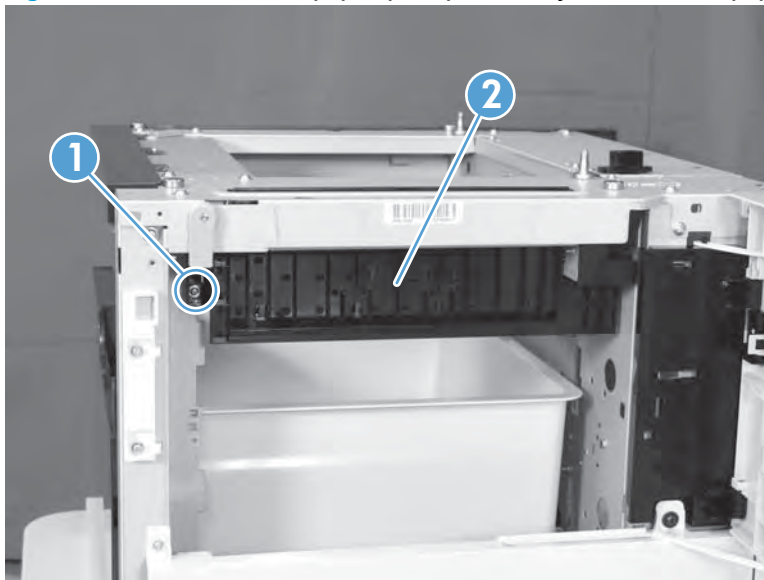
4. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 1-1113 Disconnect connectors and remove the screw (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



5. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the paper-pickup assembly (callout 2).

Figure 1-1114 Remove the paper-pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



Install the paper-pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

If the gears on the drive assembly become dislodged, use the figure to reinstall them.


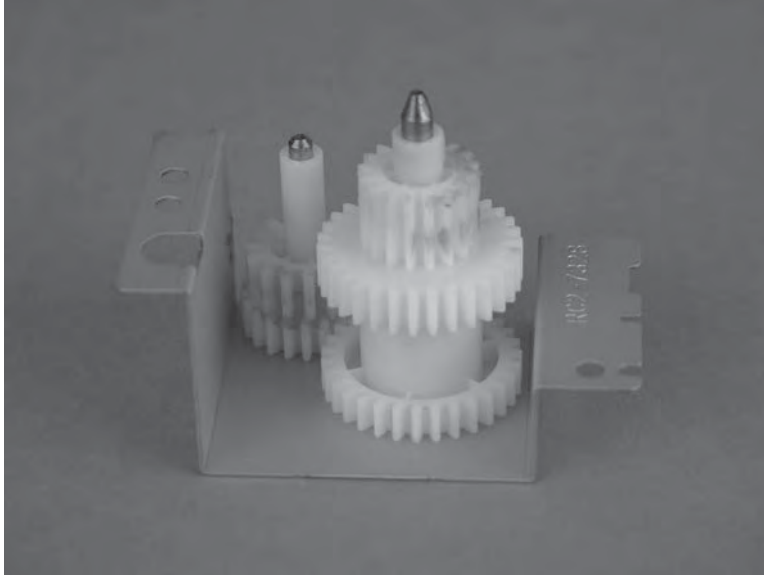
 **NOTE:** Do not remove the grease that is on the gears when handling them.

Figure 1-1115 Gears on the pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



Lifter base assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

Remove the following assemblies:

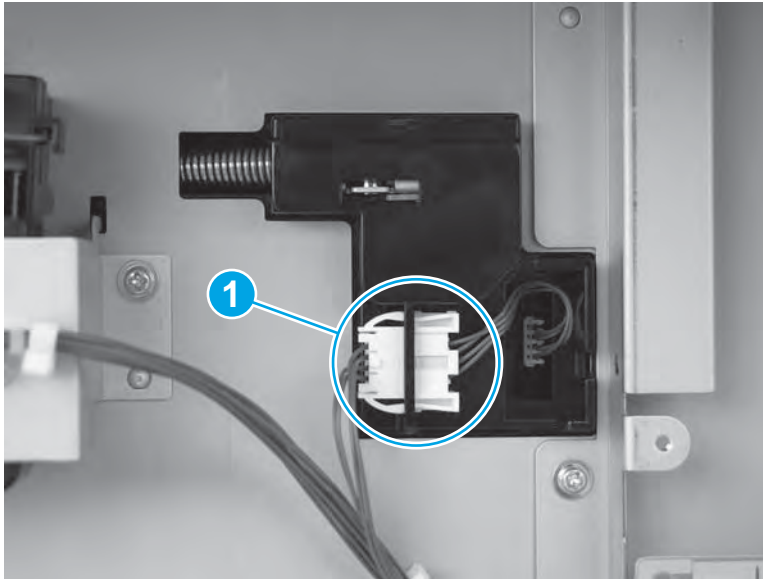
- Rear and rear lower cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet). See [Rear and rear lower cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\) on page 680](#).

Remove the lifter base assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

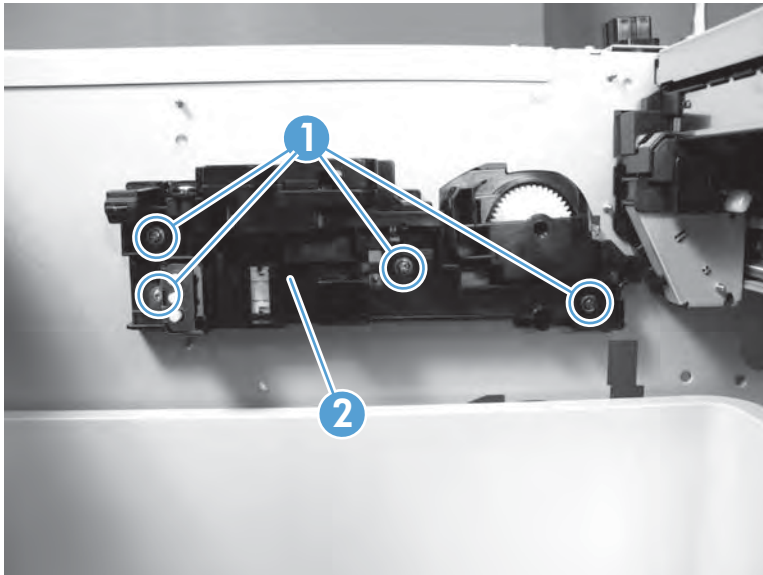
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 1-1116 Disconnect connector (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



2. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the lifter assembly (callout 2).

Figure 1-1117 Remove the lifter base assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



Lifter assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

Remove the following assemblies:

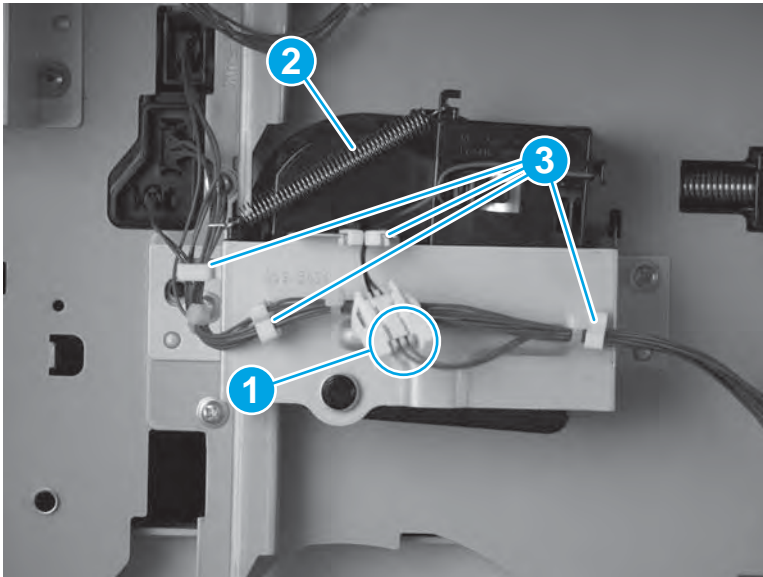
- Rear and rear lower cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet). See [Rear and rear lower cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\)](#) on page 680.

Remove the lifter assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

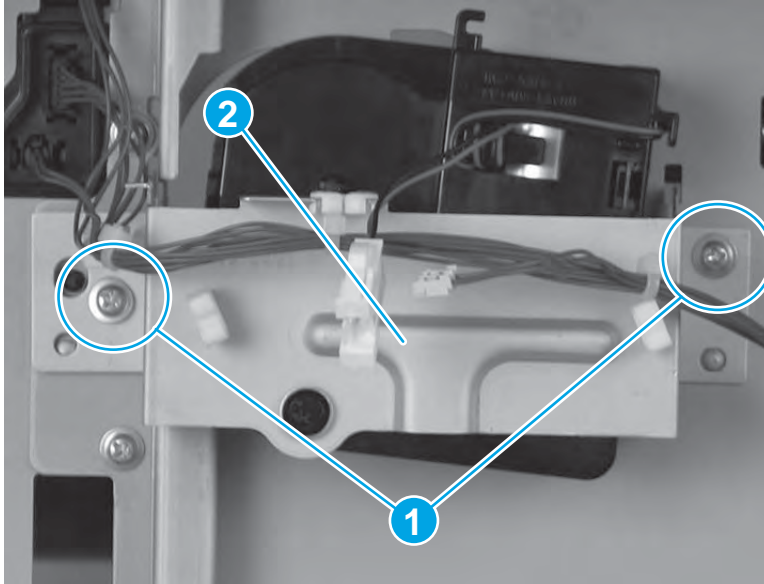
1. At the rear of the accessory, disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove one spring (callout 2), and then release the wire harnesses from the guides (callout 3).

Figure 1-1118 Disconnect one connector and remove one spring (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



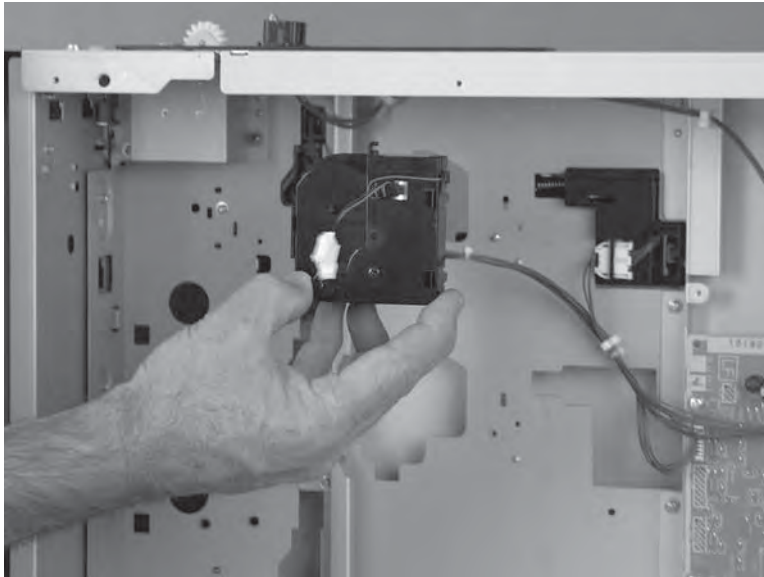
2. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the sheet-metal plate (callout 2).

Figure 1-1119 Remove the sheet-metal plate (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



3. Remove the lifter assembly.

Figure 1-1120 Remove the lifter assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



Controller printed-circuit assembly (PCA) (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

Remove the following assemblies

- Rear and rear lower cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet). See [Rear and rear lower cover \(1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet\)](#) on page 680.

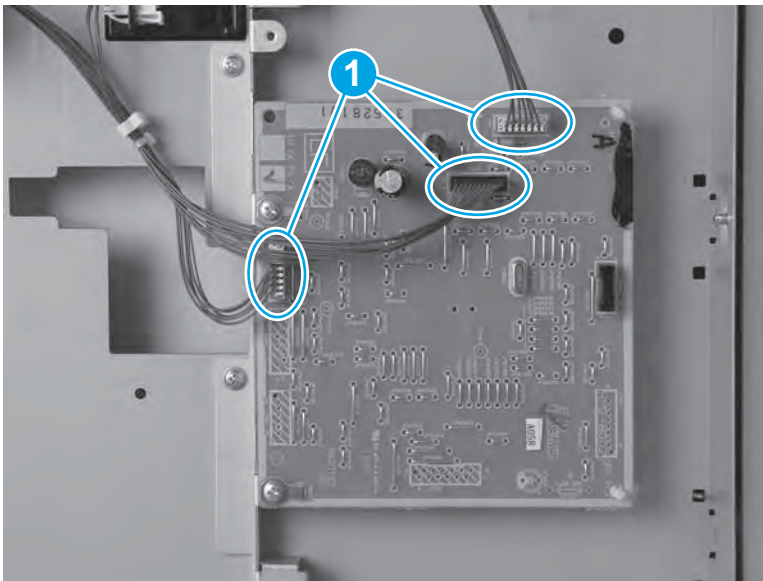
Remove the controller PCA (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)

 **CAUTION:**  ESD-sensitive assembly.

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

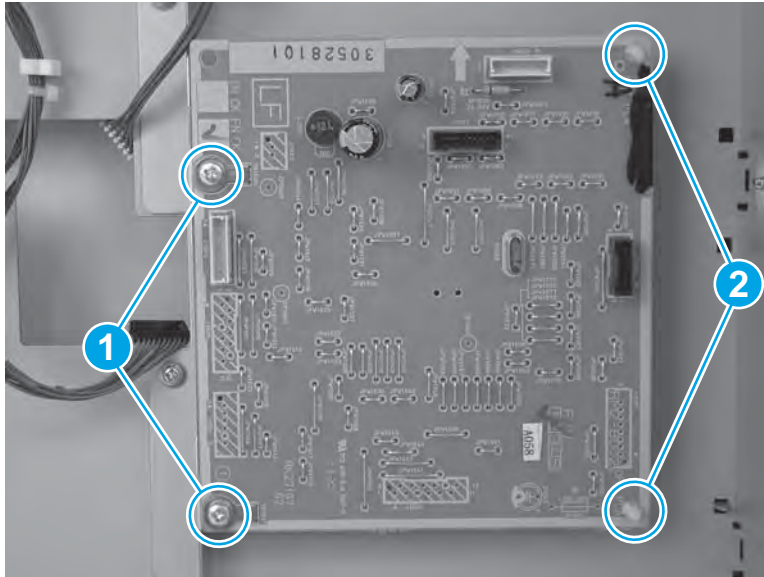
1. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1).

Figure 1-1121 Disconnect three connectors (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



2. Remove two screws (callout 1), use a pair needle-nose pliers to release two standoffs (callout 2), and then remove the controller PCA.

Figure 1-1122 Remove the controller PCA (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



2,500-sheet high capacity input (HCI)



NOTE: HP recommends removing the accessory from the product before servicing it.

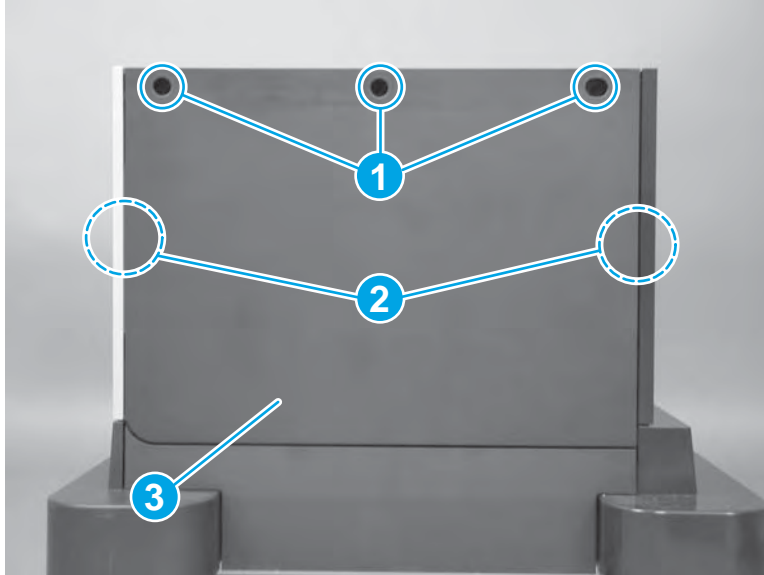
- [Rear and rear lower cover \(HCI optional paper feeder\)](#)
- [Right door \(HCI optional paper feeder\)](#)
- [Right center cover \(HCI optional paper feeder\)](#)
- [Right lower cover \(HCI optional paper feeder\)](#)
- [Front upper cover \(HCI optional paper feeder\)](#)
- [Right front cover \(HCI optional paper feeder\)](#)
- [Left cover \(HCI optional paper feeder\)](#)
- [Tray 3 pickup assembly \(HCI optional paper feeder\)](#)
- [Tray 4 pickup assembly \(HCI optional paper feeder\)](#)
- [Tray 5 pickup assembly \(HCI optional paper feeder\)](#)
- [Pickup drive assembly \(HCI optional paper feeder\)](#)
- [Tray 3 lifter base assembly \(HCI optional paper feeder\)](#)
- [Tray 4 lifter base assembly \(HCI optional paper feeder\)](#)
- [Tray 3 lifter assembly \(HCI optional paper feeder\)](#)
- [Tray 4 lifter assembly \(HCI optional paper feeder\)](#)
- [Tray 5 lifter drive assembly \(HCI optional paper feeder\)](#)
- [Controller printed-circuit assembly \(PCA\) \(HCI optional paper feeder\)](#)

Rear and rear lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

- ▲ Remove three screws (callout 1), release two tabs (callout 2), and then remove the rear and rear lower cover (callout 3).

Figure 1-1123 Remove rear and rear lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder)

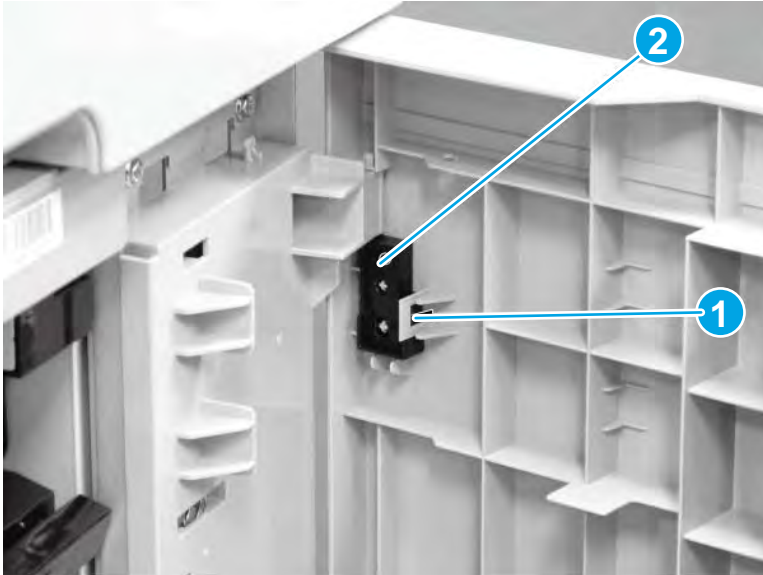


Right door (HCI optional paper feeder)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

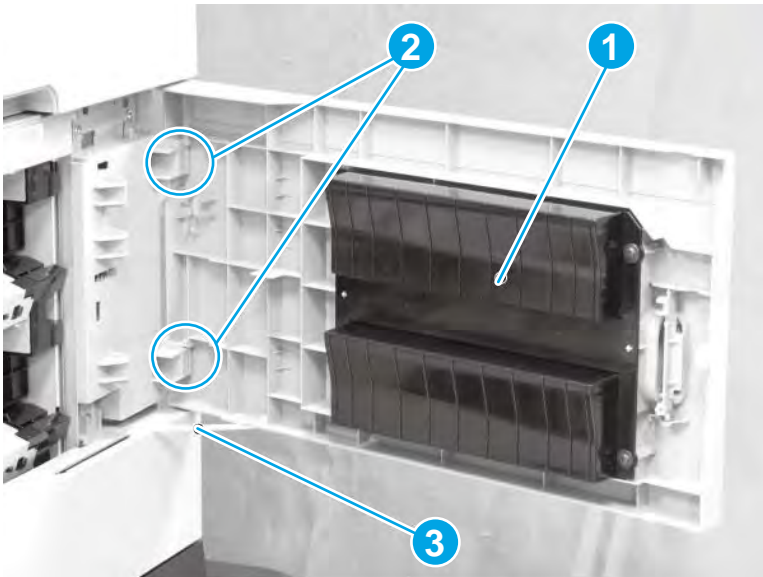
1. Open the right door, release one tab (callout 1), and then remove the stopper (callout 2)

Figure 1-1124 Remove the stopper (HCI optional paper feeder)



2. Lift up on the door (callout 1) to remove it from the hinge pins (callout 2), slide it to the left to release the link arm (callout 3), and then remove the door.

Figure 1-1125 Remove the right door (HCI optional paper feeder)



Right center cover (HCI optional paper feeder)

Remove the following assemblies:

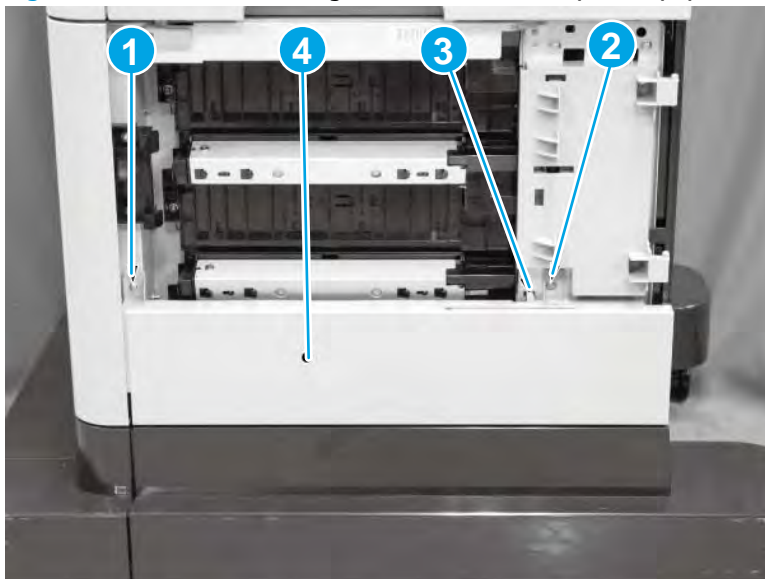
- Right door (HCI optional paper feeder). See [Right door \(HCI optional paper feeder\) on page 706](#).

Remove the right center cover (HCI optional paper feeder)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

- ▲ Remove one screw (callout 1), remove one shoulder screw (callout 2), release one tab (callout 3), and then remove the right cover (callout 4).

Figure 1-1126 Remove the right center cover (HCI optional paper feeder)



Right lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder)

Remove the following assemblies:

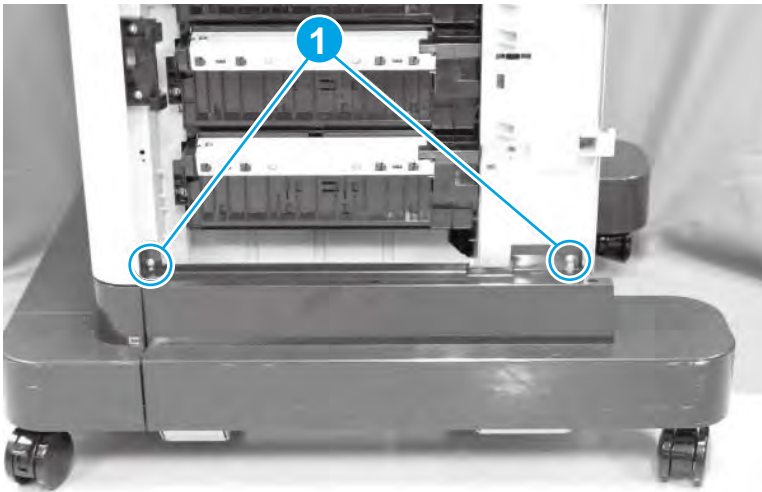
- Right door (HCI optional paper feeder). See [Right door \(HCI optional paper feeder\) on page 706](#).
- Right center cover (HCI optional paper feeder). See [Right center cover \(HCI optional paper feeder\) on page 707](#).

Remove the right center cover (HCI optional paper feeder)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

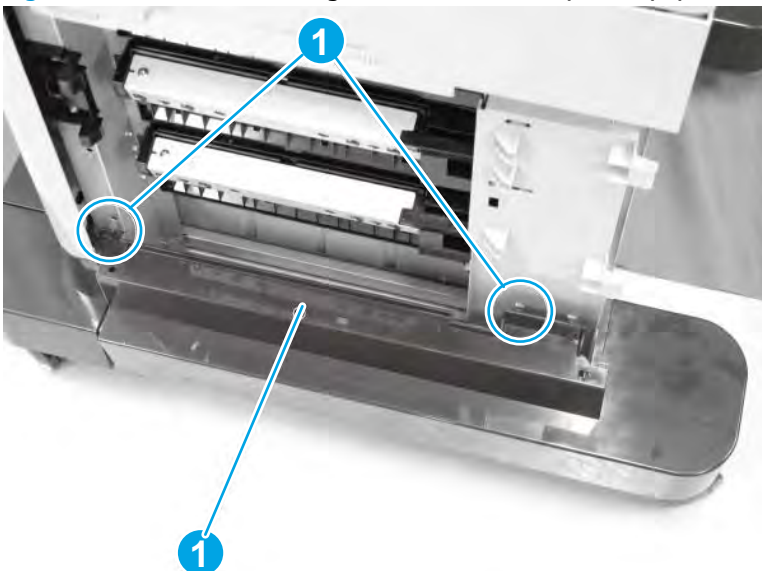
1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-1127 Remove the screws (HCI optional paper feeder)



2. Release two pins (callout 1), and then remove the lower right cover (callout 2).

Figure 1-1128 Remove the right lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder)

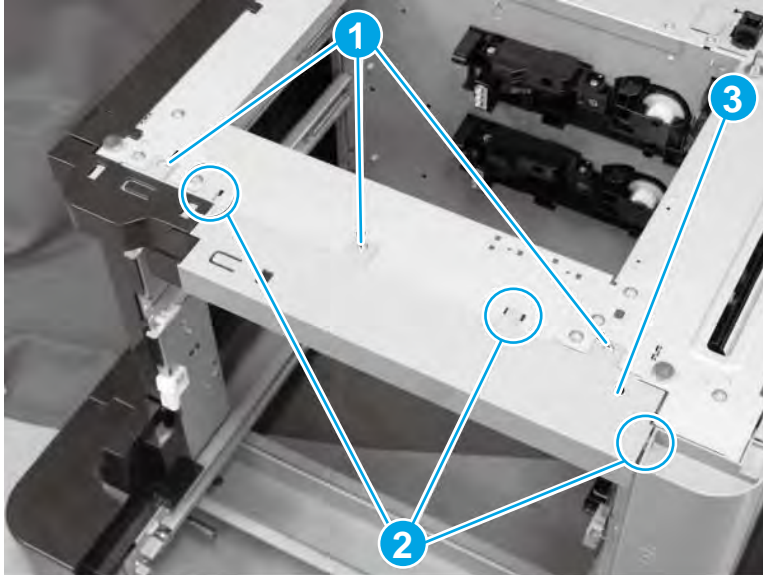


Front upper cover (HCI optional paper feeder)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

- ▲ Remove three screws (callout 1), release three tabs (callout 2), and then remove the front upper cover (callout 3).

Figure 1-1129 Remove the front upper cover (HCI optional paper feeder)



Right front cover (HCI optional paper feeder)

Remove the following assemblies:

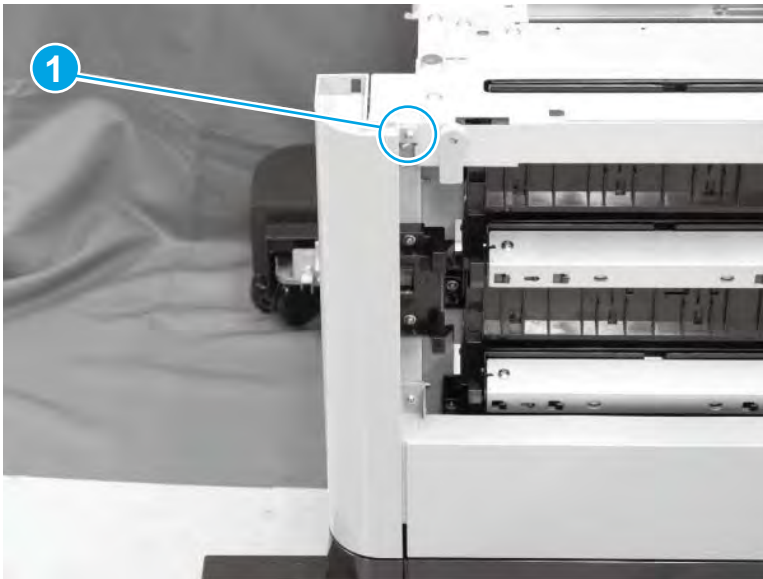
- Front upper cover (HCI optional paper feeder). See [Front upper cover \(HCI optional paper feeder\)](#) on page 709.

Remove the right front cover (HCI optional paper feeder)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

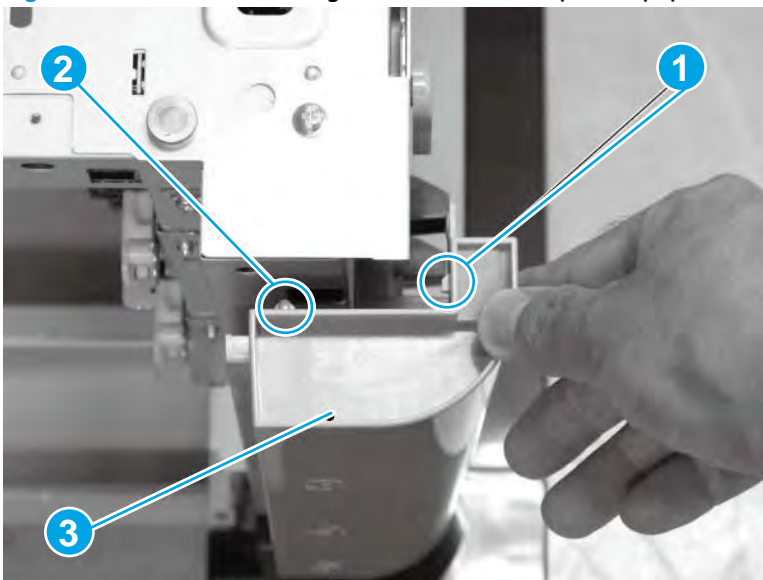
1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 1-1130 Remove the screw (HCI optional paper feeder)



2. Release one tab (callout 1), release one pin (callout 2), and then pull up to remove the right front cover (callout 2).

Figure 1-1131 Remove the right front cover (HCI optional paper feeder)

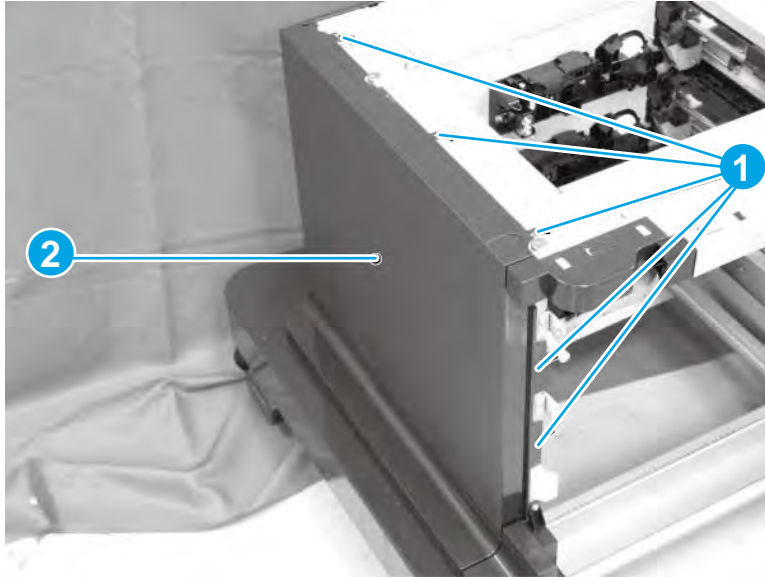


Left cover (HCI optional paper feeder)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

- ▲ Release five tabs (callout 1), and then remove the left cover (callout 2).

Figure 1-1132 Remove the left cover (HCI optional paper feeder)



Tray 3 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

Remove the following assemblies:

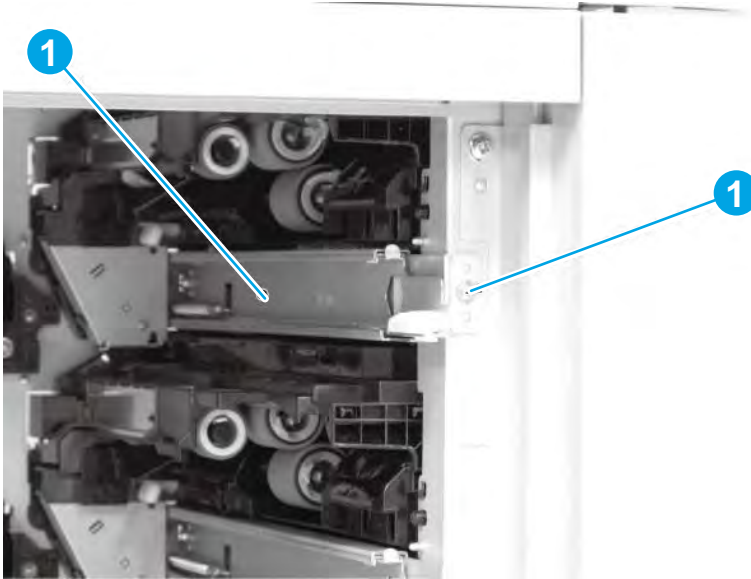
- Rear and rear lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder). See [Rear and rear lower cover \(HCI optional paper feeder\) on page 705](#).

Remove the Tray 3 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the tray rail (callout 2).

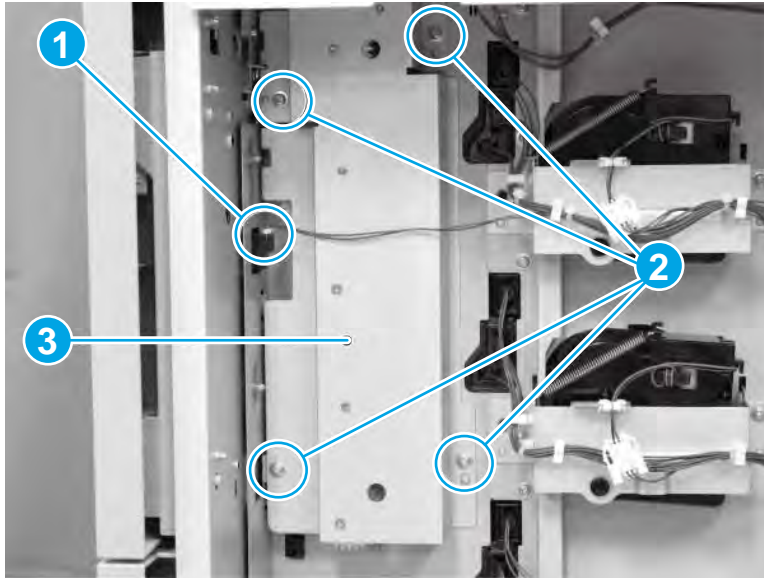
Figure 1-1133 Remove the tray rail (HCI optional paper feeder)



2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove four screws (callout 2), and then remove the pickup drive assembly (callout 3).

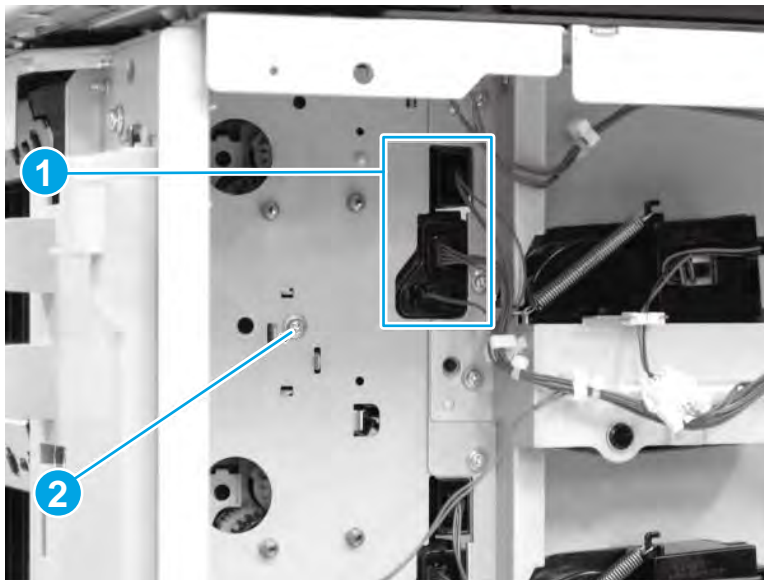
CAUTION: The gears on the back side of the drive assembly are not captive. If they become dislodged, see [Install the Tray 3 pickup assembly \(HCI optional paper feeder\) on page 715](#) to reinstall them.

Figure 1-1134 Remove the pickup drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)



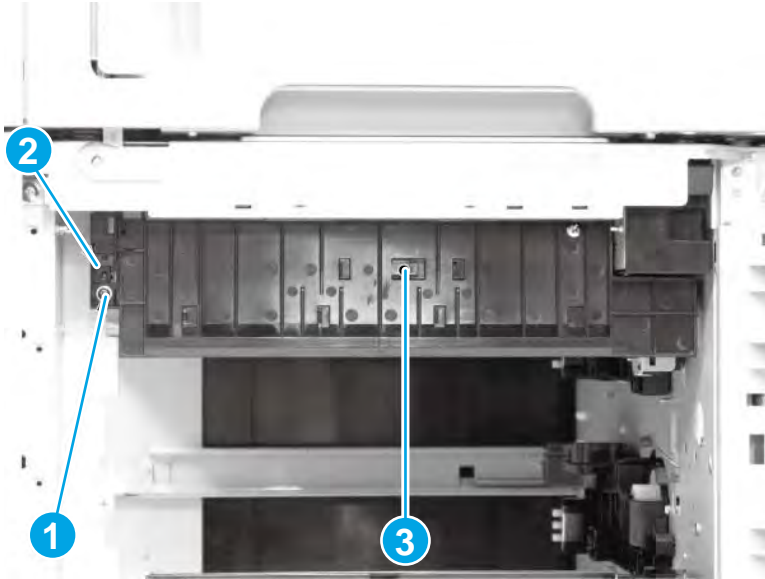
3. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 1-1135 Disconnect connectors and remove the screw (HCI optional paper feeder)



4. Remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then remove the Tray 3 pickup assembly (callout 3).

Figure 1-1136 Remove the Tray 3 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)



Install the Tray 3 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

If the gears on the drive assembly become dislodged, use the figure to reinstall them.


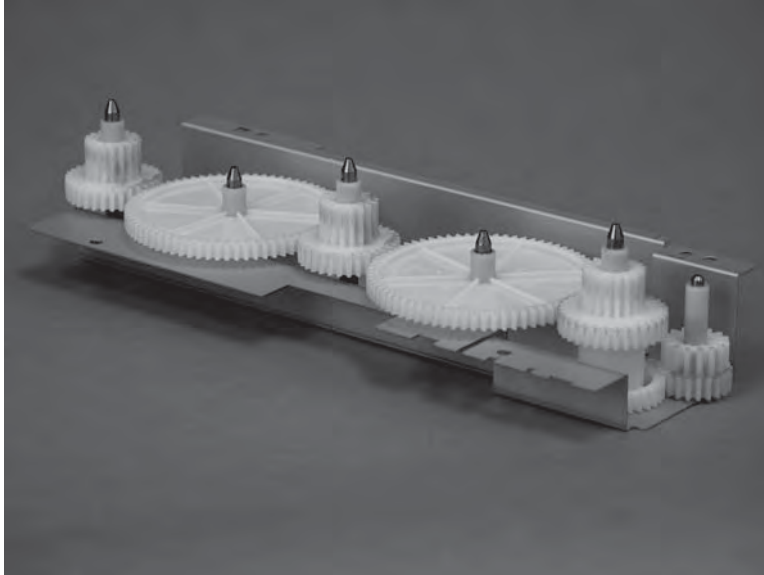
 **NOTE:** Do not remove the grease that is on the gears when handling them.

Figure 1-1137 Paper drive assembly gears (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



Tray 4 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

Remove the following assemblies:

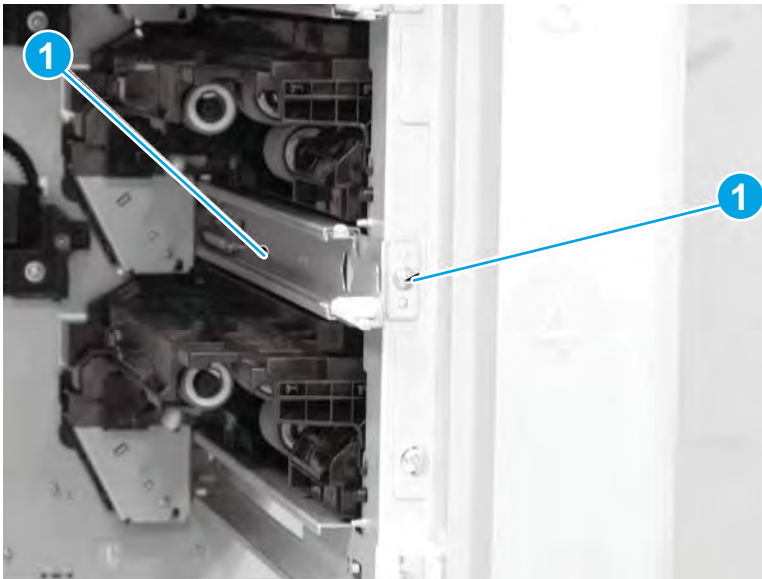
- Rear and rear lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder). See [Rear and rear lower cover \(HCI optional paper feeder\) on page 705](#).

Remove the Tray 4 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the tray rail (callout 2).

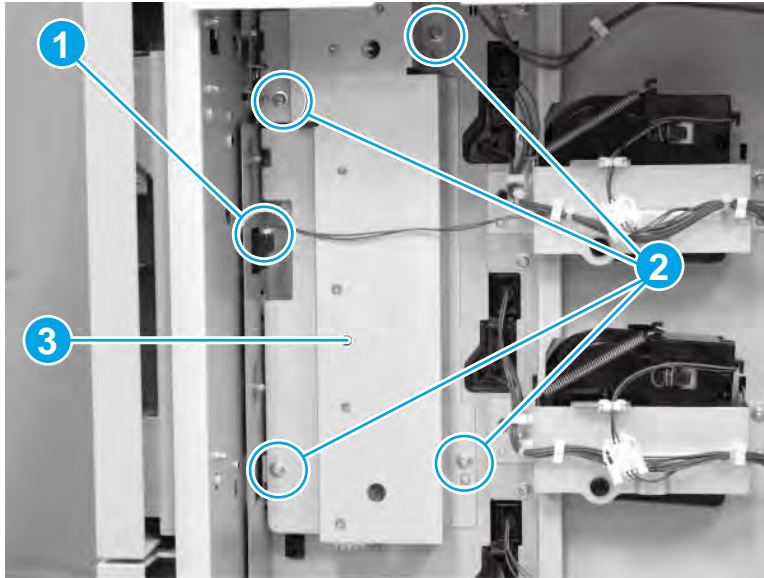
Figure 1-1138 Remove the tray rail (HCI optional paper feeder)



2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove four screws (callout 2), and then remove the pickup drive assembly (callout 3).

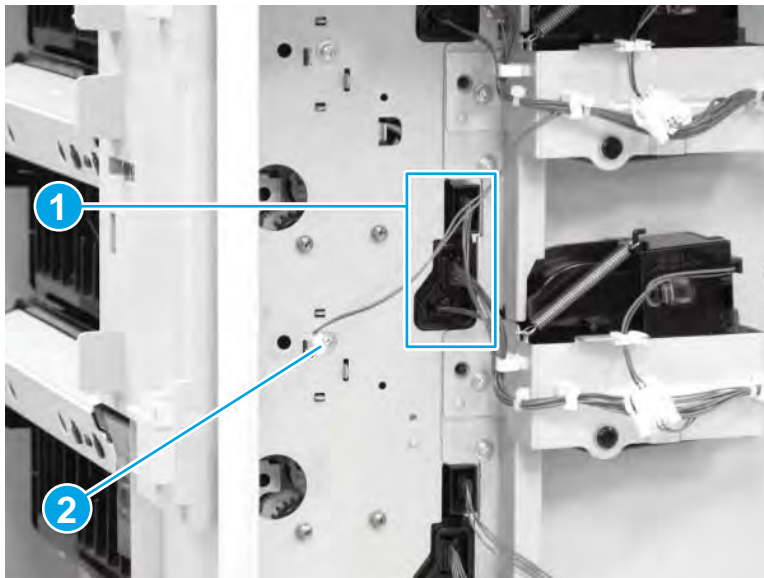
CAUTION: The gears on the back side of the drive assembly are not captive. If they become dislodged, see [Install the Tray 3 pickup assembly \(HCI optional paper feeder\) on page 715](#) to reinstall them.

Figure 1-1139 Remove the pickup drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)



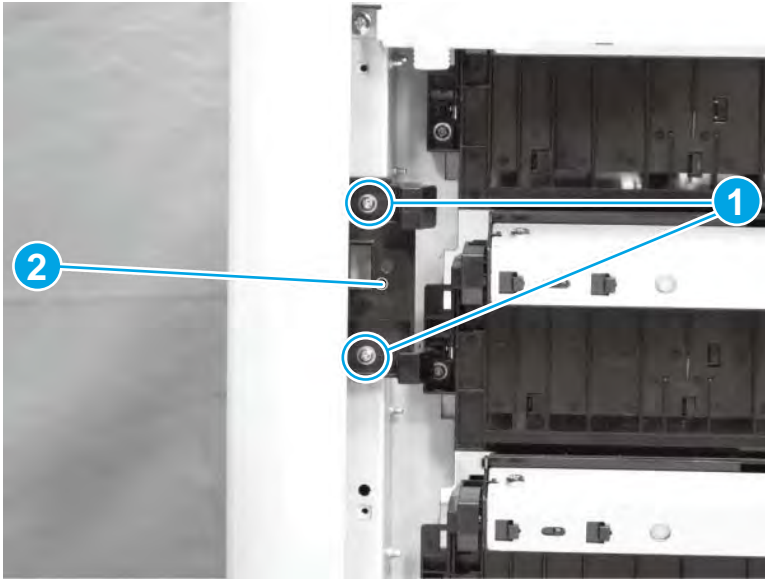
3. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 1-1140 Disconnect connectors and remove the screw (HCI optional paper feeder)



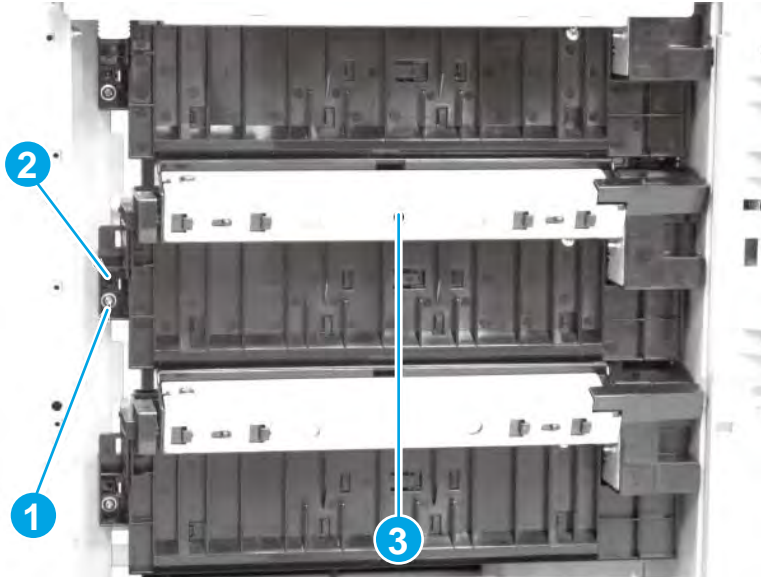
4. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the latch holder (callout 2).

Figure 1-1141 Remove the latch holder (HCI optional paper feeder)



5. Remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then remove the Tray 4 pickup assembly (callout 3).

Figure 1-1142 Remove the Tray 4 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)



Install the Tray 4 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

If the gears on the drive assembly become dislodged, use the figure to reinstall them.


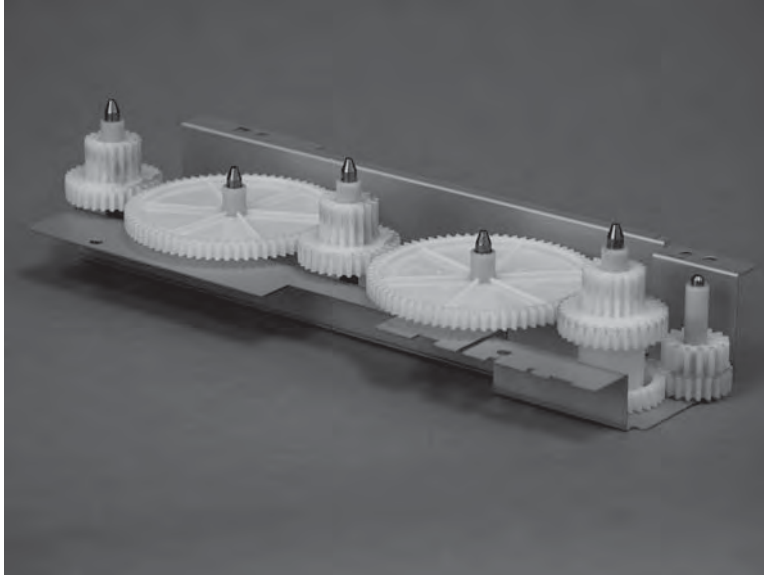
 **NOTE:** Do not remove the grease that is on the gears when handling them.

Figure 1-1143 Paper drive assembly gears (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)



Tray 5 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

Remove the following assemblies:

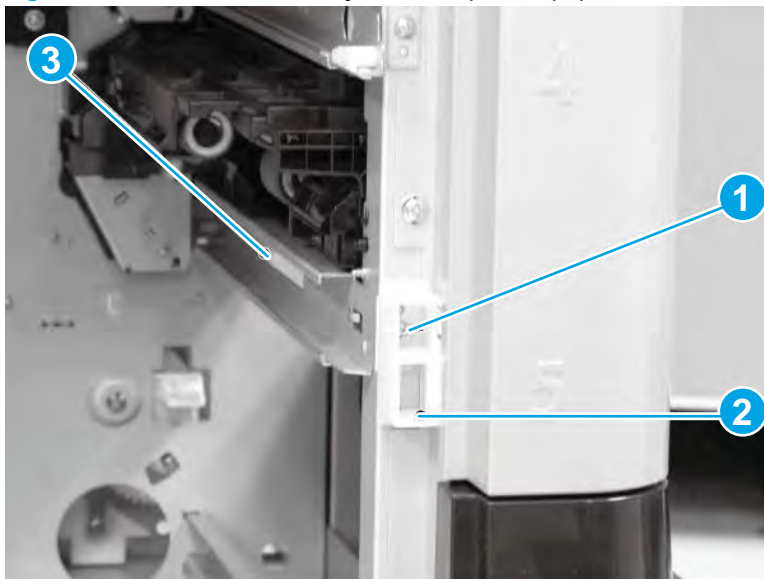
- Rear and rear lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder). See [Rear and rear lower cover \(HCI optional paper feeder\) on page 705](#).

Remove the Tray 5 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

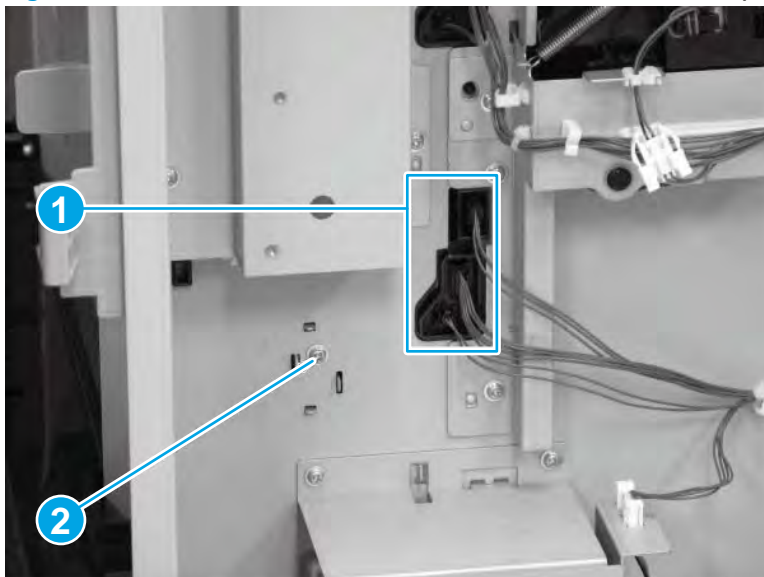
1. Remove one screw (callout 1), remove the cover (callout 2), and then remove the tray rail (callout 3).

Figure 1-1144 Remove the tray rail (HCI optional paper feeder)



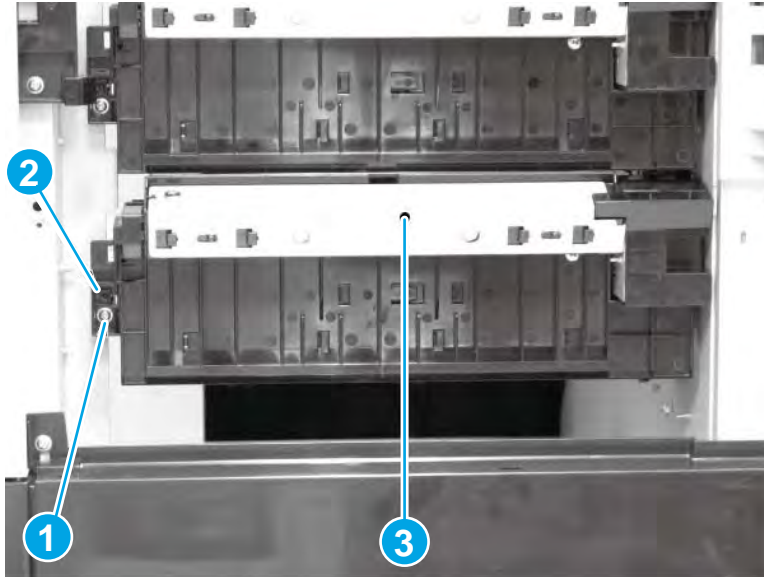
2. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 1-1145 Disconnect connectors and remove the screw (HCI optional paper feeder)



3. Remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then remove the Tray 5 pickup assembly (callout 3).

Figure 1-1146 Remove the Tray 5 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)



Pickup drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

Remove the following assemblies:

- Rear and rear lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder). See [Rear and rear lower cover \(HCI optional paper feeder\) on page 705](#).

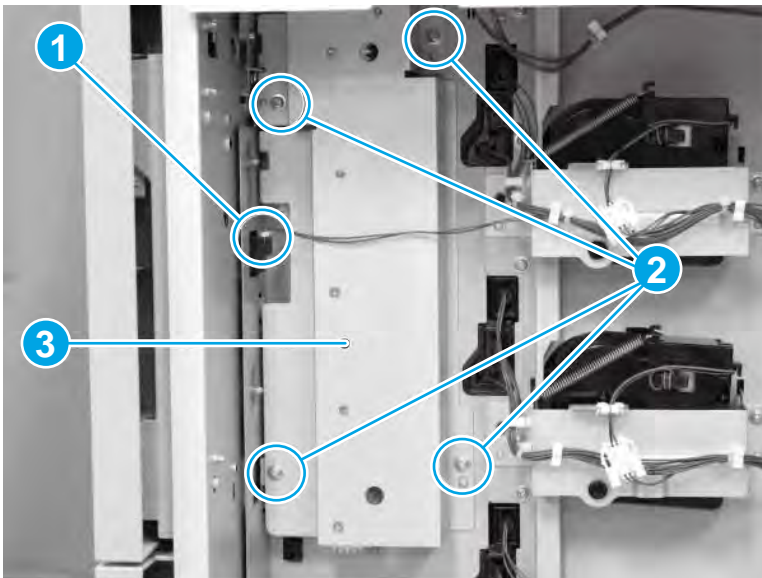
Remove the pickup drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

- ▲ Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove four screws (callout 2), and then remove the pickup drive assembly (callout 3).

CAUTION: The gears on the back side of the drive assembly are not captive. If they become dislodged, see [Install the pickup drive assembly on page 723](#) to reinstall them.

Figure 1-1147 Remove the pickup drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)



Install the pickup drive assembly

If the gears on the drive assembly become dislodged, use the figure to reinstall them.


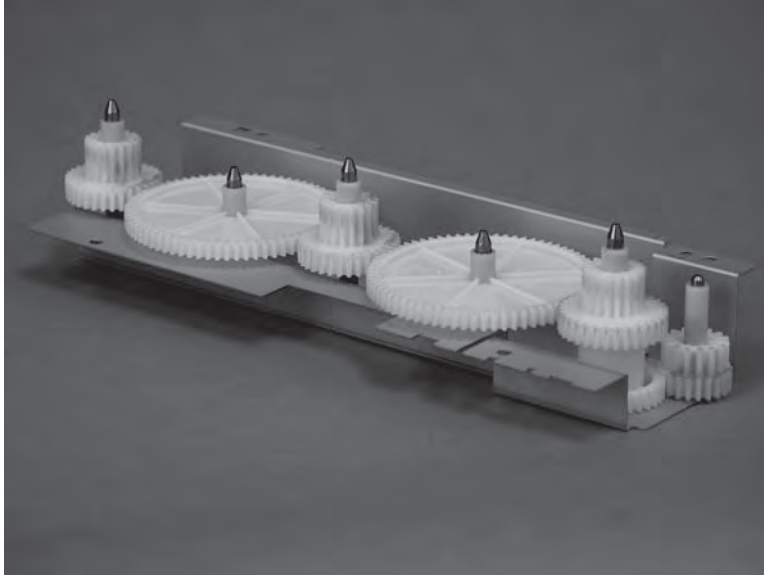
 **NOTE:** Do not remove the grease that is on the gears when handling them.

Figure 1-1148 Gears on the pickup drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)



Tray 3 lifter base assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

Remove the following assemblies:

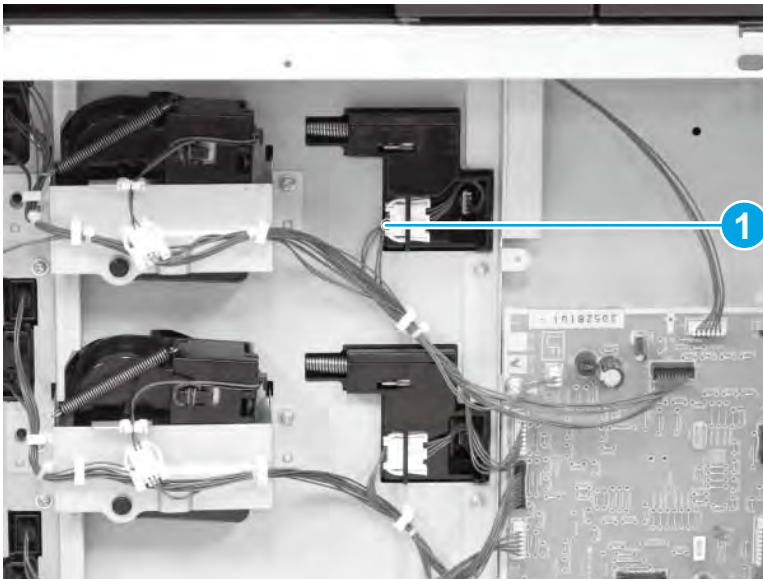
- Rear and rear lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder). See [Rear and rear lower cover \(HCI optional paper feeder\) on page 705](#).

Remove the Tray 3 lifter base assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

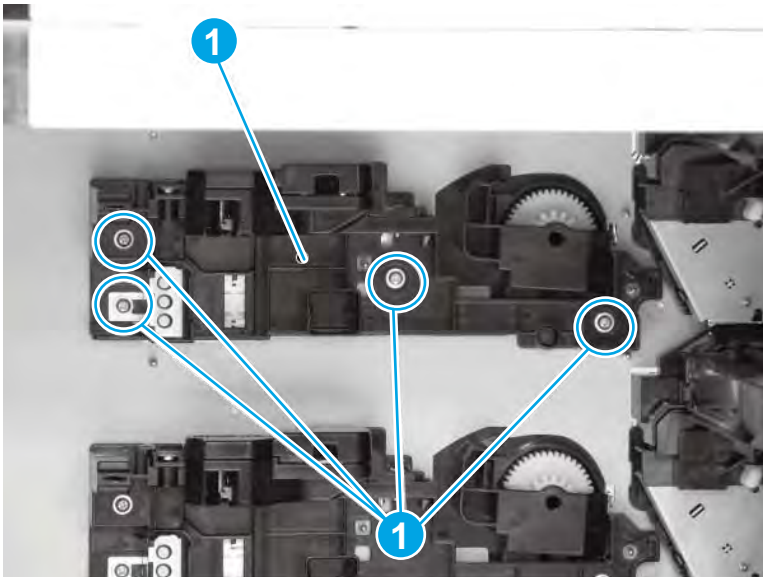
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 1-1149 Disconnect connector (HCI optional paper feeder)



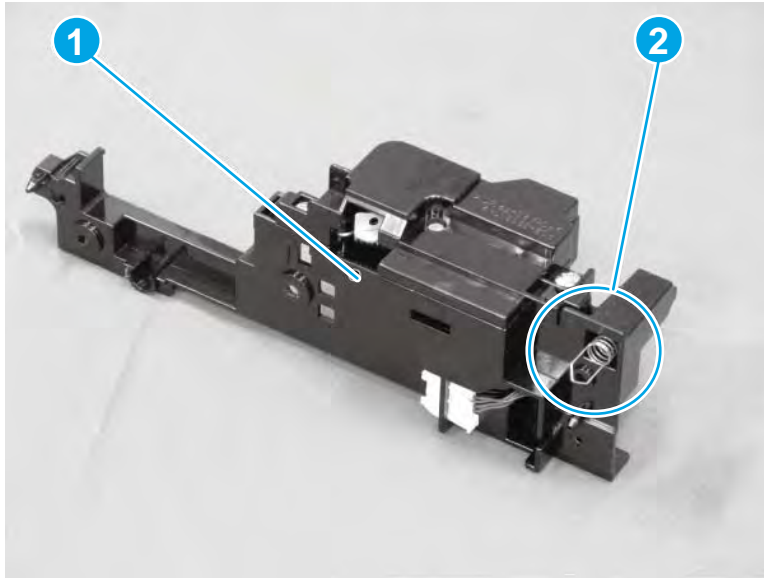
2. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the Tray 3 lifter base assembly (callout 2).

Figure 1-1150 Remove the Tray 3 lifter base assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)



3. Remove the Tray 3 lifter base assembly (callout 1) spring (callout 2).

Figure 1-1151 Remove the lifter base assembly spring (HCI optional paper feeder)



Tray 4 lifter base assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

Remove the following assemblies:

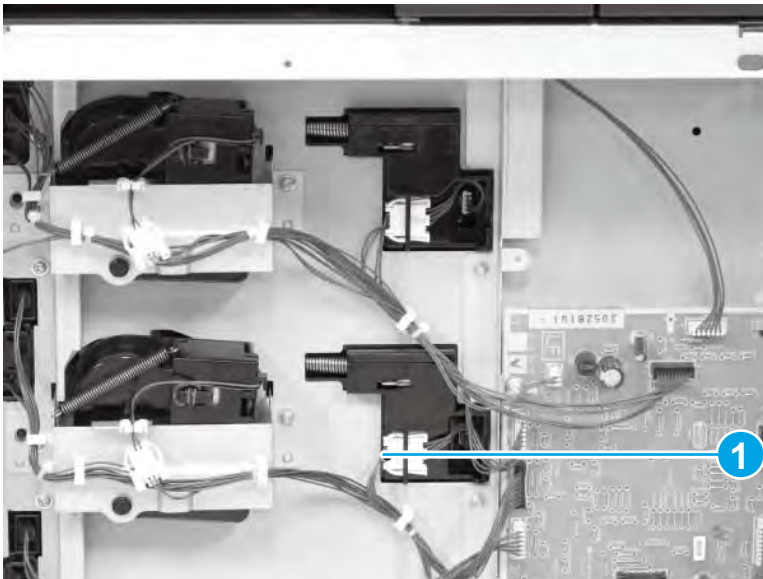
- Rear and rear lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder). See [Rear and rear lower cover \(HCI optional paper feeder\) on page 705](#).

Remove the Tray 4 lifter base assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

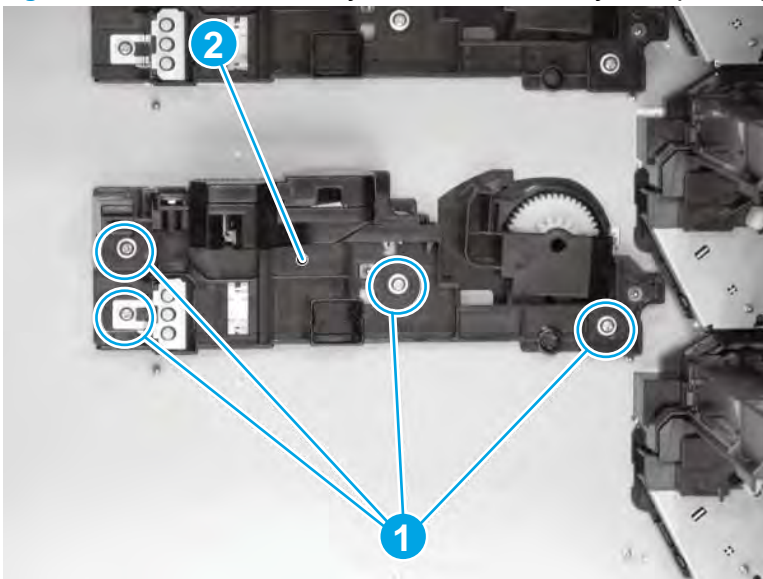
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 1-1152 Disconnect connector (HCI optional paper feeder)



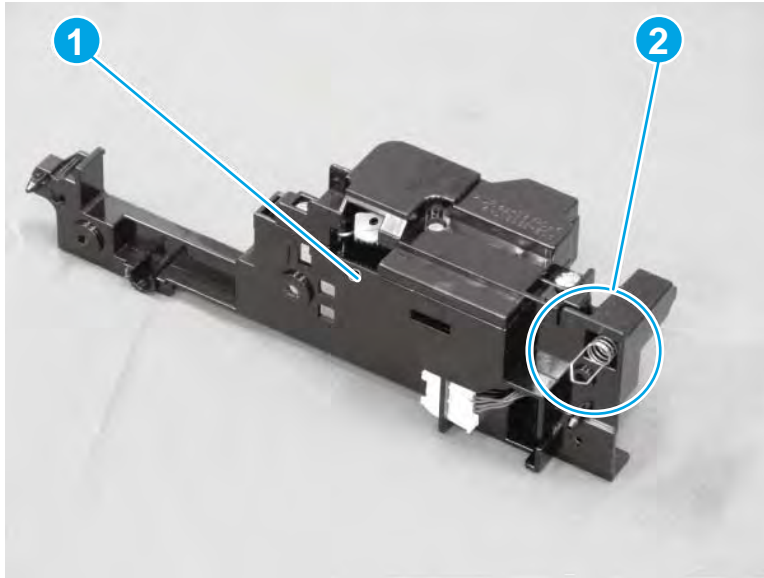
2. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the Tray 4 lifter base assembly (callout 2).

Figure 1-1153 Remove the Tray 4 lifter base assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)



3. Remove the Tray 4 lifter base assembly (callout 1) spring (callout 2).

Figure 1-1154 Remove the lifter base assembly spring (HCI optional paper feeder)



Tray 3 lifter assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

Remove the following assemblies:

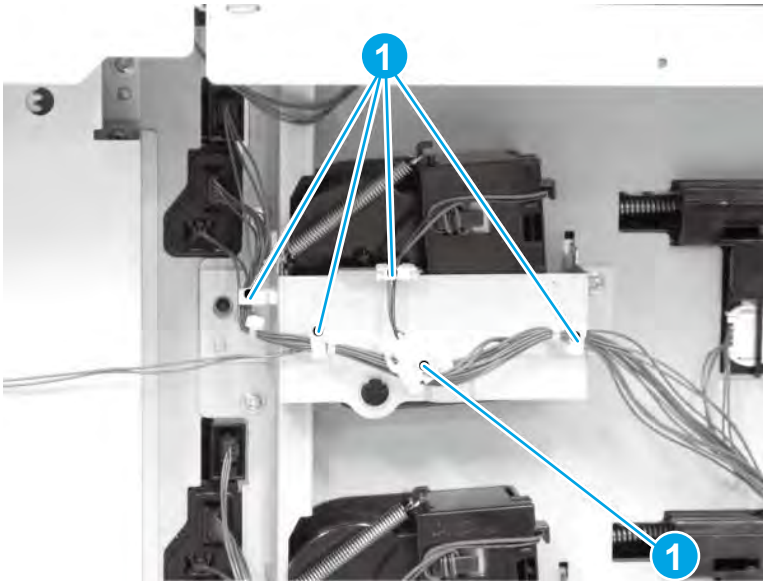
- Rear and rear lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder). See [Rear and rear lower cover \(HCI optional paper feeder\) on page 705](#).

Remove the Tray 3 lifter assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

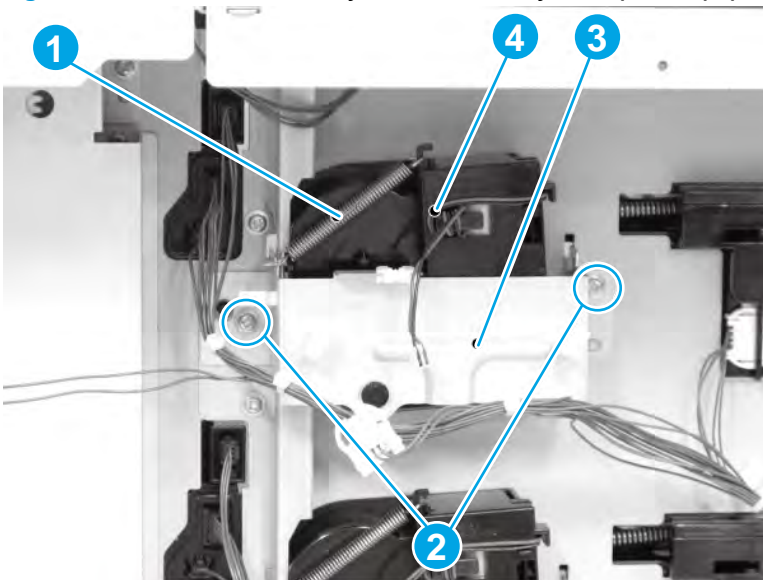
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and the release the wire harnesses from four retainers (callout 2).

Figure 1-1155 Disconnect connectors (HCI optional paper feeder)



2. Remove one spring (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), remove the sheet-metal plate (callout 3), and then remove the Tray 3 lifter assembly (callout 4).

Figure 1-1156 Remove the Tray 3 lifter assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)



Tray 4 lifter assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

Remove the following assemblies:

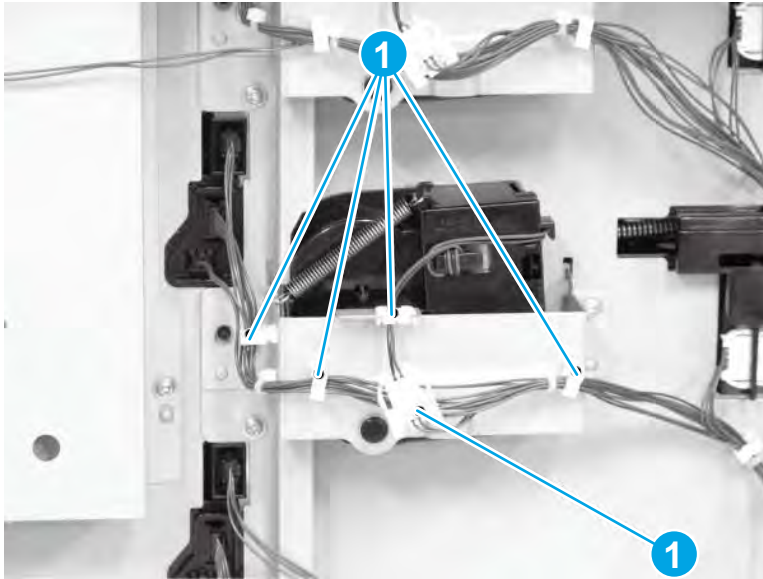
- Rear and rear lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder). See [Rear and rear lower cover \(HCI optional paper feeder\) on page 705](#).

Remove the Tray 4 lifter assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

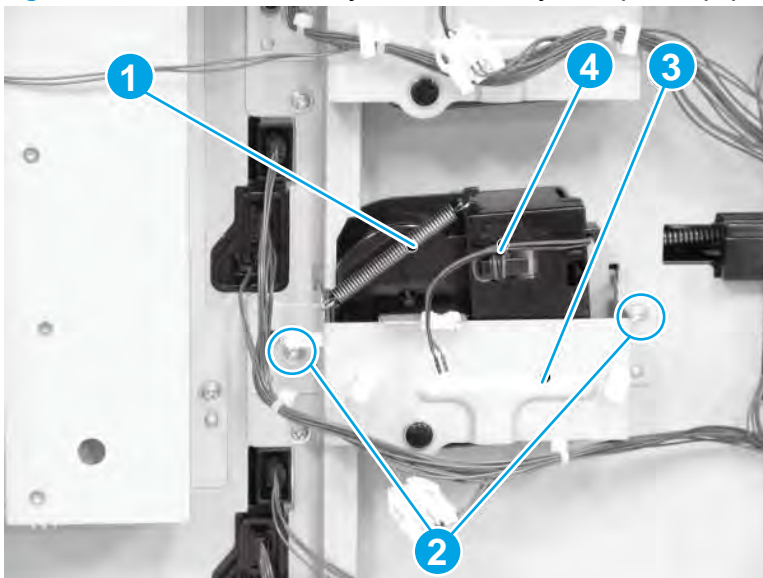
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and the release the wire harnesses from four retainers (callout 2).

Figure 1-1157 Disconnect connectors (HCI optional paper feeder)



2. Remove one spring (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), remove the sheet-metal plate (callout 3), and then remove the Tray 4 lifter assembly (callout 4).

Figure 1-1158 Remove the Tray 4 lifter assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)



Tray 5 lifter drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

Remove the following assemblies:

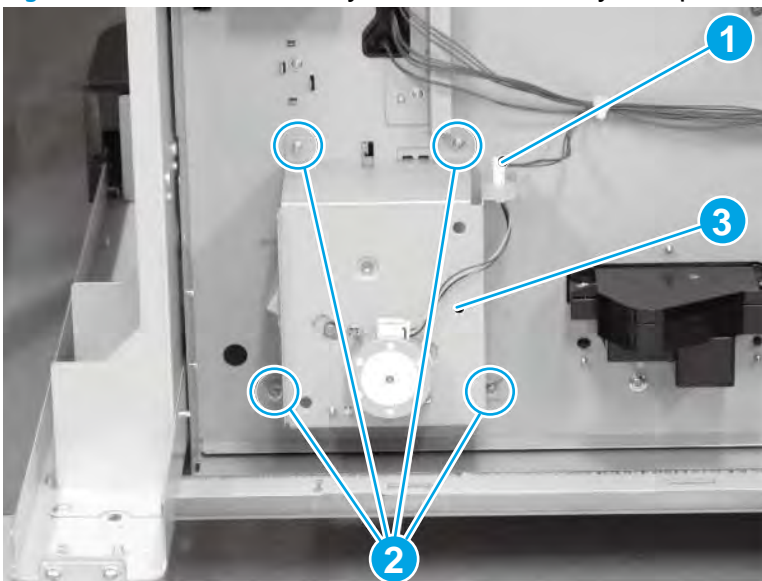
- Rear and rear lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder). See [Rear and rear lower cover \(HCI optional paper feeder\) on page 705](#).
- Right door (HCI optional paper feeder). See [Right door \(HCI optional paper feeder\) on page 706](#).
- Right center cover (HCI optional paper feeder). See [Right center cover \(HCI optional paper feeder\) on page 707](#).
- Right lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder). See [Right lower cover \(HCI optional paper feeder\) on page 708](#).

Remove the Tray 5 lifter drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

- ▲ Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove four screws (callout 2), and then remove the Tray 5 lifter drive assembly (callout 3).

Figure 1-1159 Remove the Tray 5 lifter drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)



Controller printed-circuit assembly (PCA) (HCI optional paper feeder)

Remove the following assemblies:

- Rear and rear lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder). See [Rear and rear lower cover \(HCI optional paper feeder\) on page 705](#).

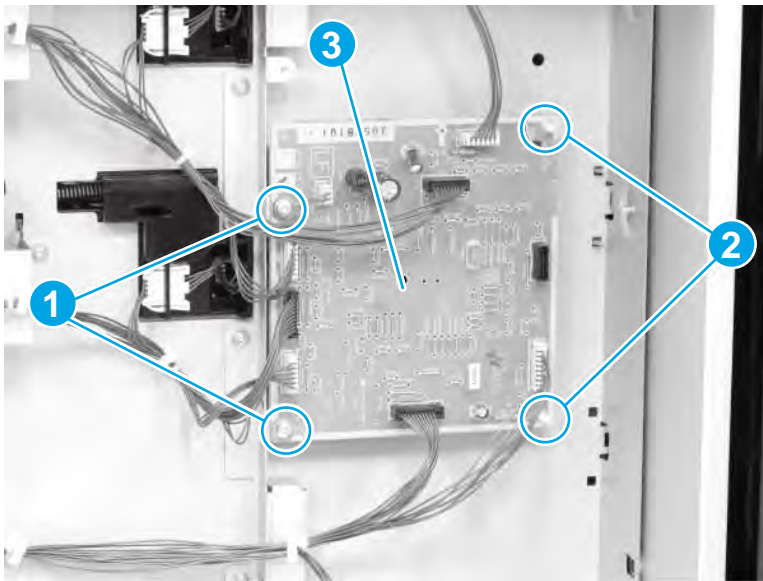
Remove the controller PCA (HCI optional paper feeder)

⚠ CAUTION: ESD-sensitive part.

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

- ▲ Disconnect all of the connectors, remove two screws (callout 1), use a pair needle-nose pliers to release two standoffs (callout 2), and then remove the feeder PCA (callout 3).

Figure 1-1160 Remove the controller PCA (HCI optional paper feeder)



Stapling mailbox



NOTE: HP recommends removing the accessory from the product before servicing it.

Some of the figures in this section might look slightly different than the M630 accessory. However, the procedures are correct for this product.

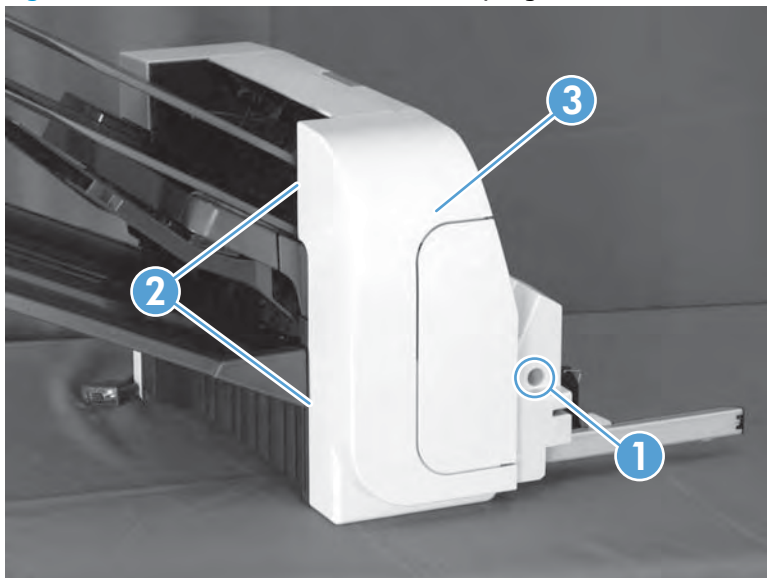
- [Front cover \(stapling mailbox\)](#)
- [Rear cover \(stapling mailbox\)](#)
- [Handle assembly \(stapling mailbox\)](#)
- [Top cover \(stapling mailbox\)](#)
- [Output bin 3 \(stapling mailbox\)](#)
- [Output bin assembly cover \(stapling mailbox\)](#)
- [Driver printed-circuit assembly \(PCA\) \(stapling mailbox\)](#)
- [Output bin sensor printed-circuit assembly \(PCA\) \(stapling mailbox\)](#)
- [Stapler assembly \(stapling mailbox\)](#)
- [Jogger assembly \(stapling mailbox\)](#)
- [Output bin solenoid \(stapling mailbox\)](#)
- [Output bin assembly \(stapling mailbox\)](#)
- [Stage top assembly \(stapling mailbox\)](#)
- [Stage assembly \(stapling mailbox\)](#)
- [Output bin 3 drive assembly \(stapling mailbox\)](#)

Front cover (stapling mailbox)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

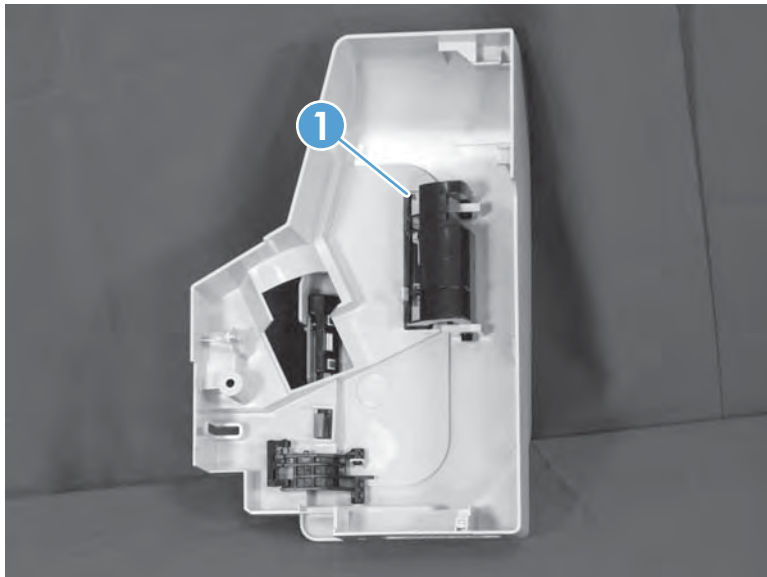
1. Remove one screw (callout 1), release two tabs (callout 2), and then remove the front cover (callout 3).

Figure 1-1161 Remove the front cover (stapling mailbox)



2. If necessary, remove the lever assembly (callout 1) from the cover.

Figure 1-1162 Remove the lever assembly (stapling mailbox)

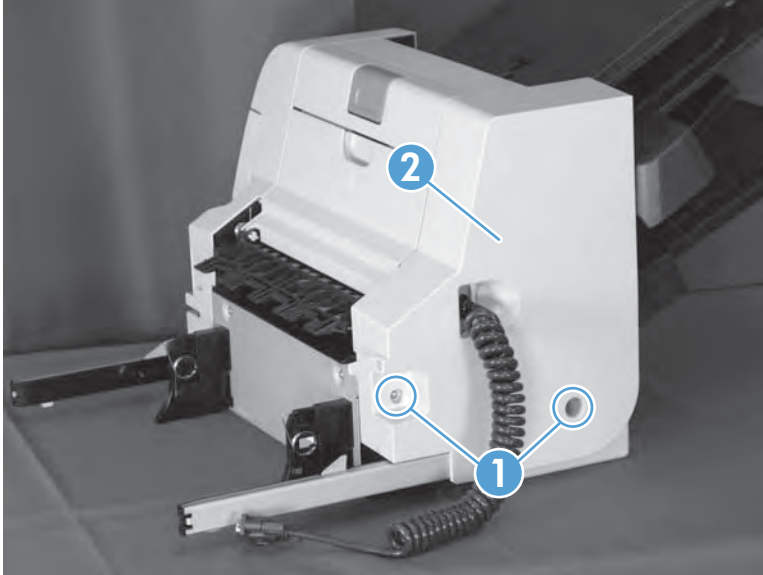


Rear cover (stapling mailbox)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

- ▲ Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the rear cover (callout 2).

Figure 1-1163 Remove the rear cover (stapling mailbox)



Handle assembly (stapling mailbox)

Remove the following assemblies:

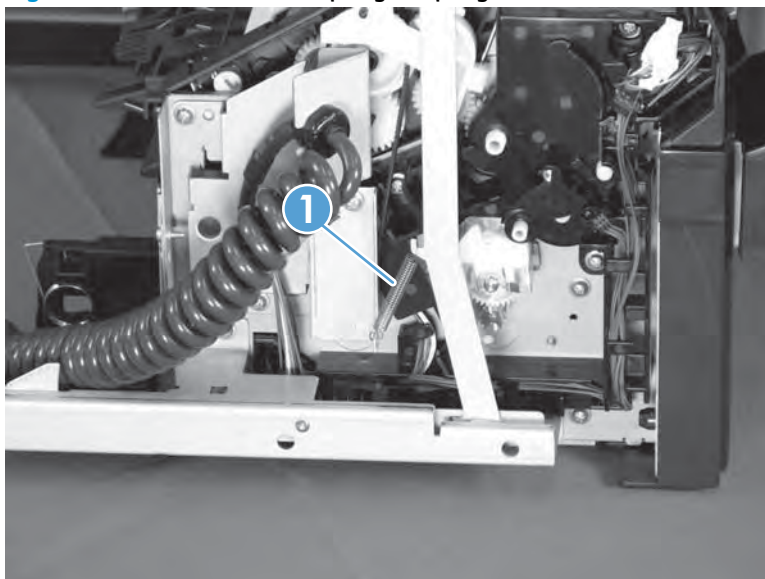
- Front cover. See [Front cover \(stapling mailbox\) on page 733](#).
- Rear cover. See [Rear cover \(stapling mailbox\) on page 734](#).

Remove the handle assembly

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

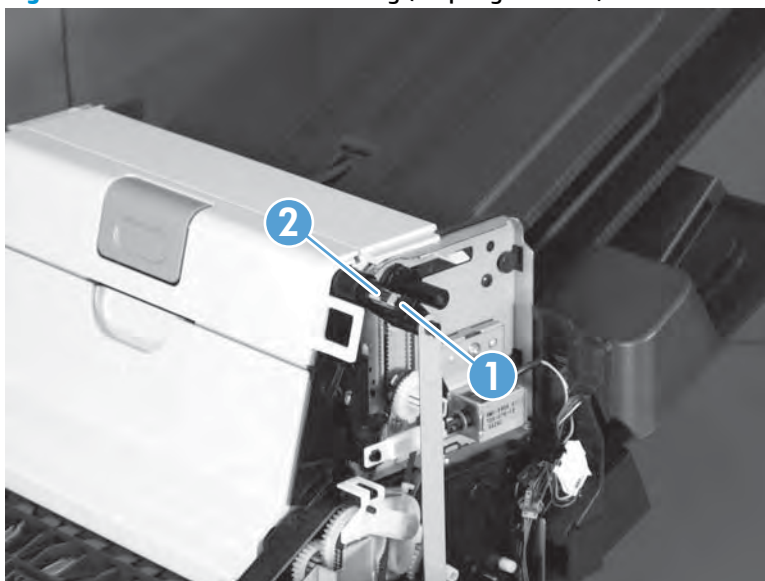
1. Remove one spring (callout 1).

Figure 1-1164 Remove one spring (stapling mailbox)



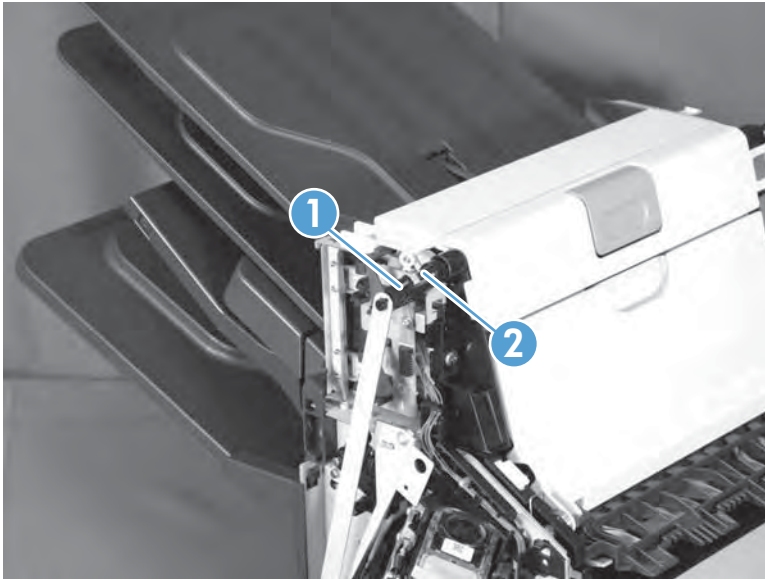
2. Release one tab (callout 1), and then remove the bushing (callout 2).

Figure 1-1165 Remove the bushing (stapling mailbox)



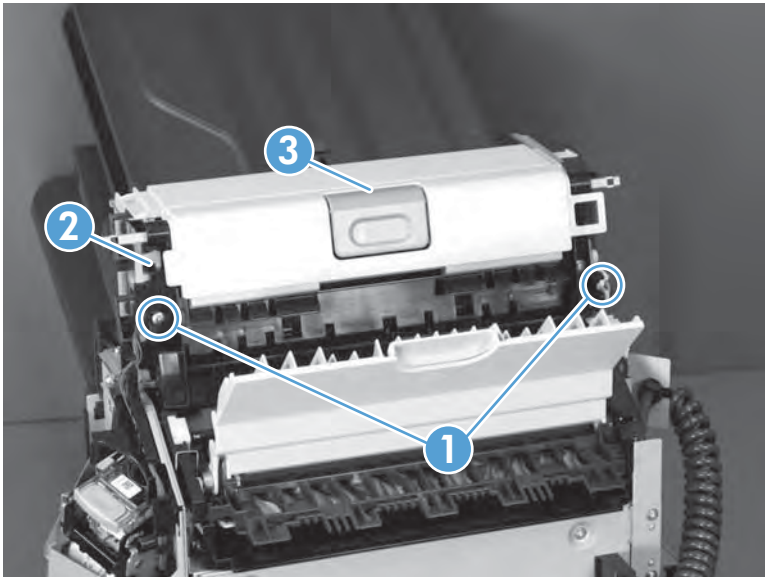
3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then remove the bushing (callout 2).

Figure 1-1166 Remove the bushing (stapling mailbox)



4. Remove two screws (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then remove the handle assembly (callout 3).

Figure 1-1167 Remove the handle assembly (stapling mailbox)



Top cover (stapling mailbox)

Remove the following assemblies:

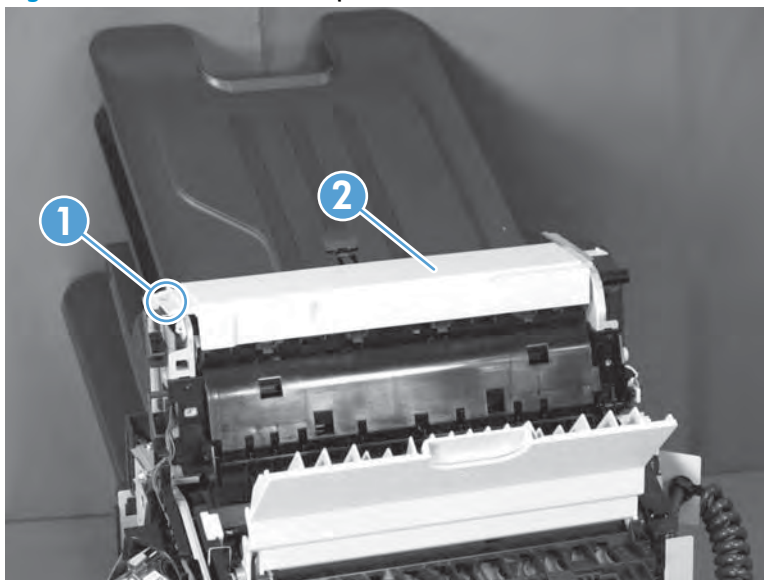
- Front cover (stapling mailbox). See [Front cover \(stapling mailbox\) on page 733](#).
- Rear cover (stapling mailbox). See [Rear cover \(stapling mailbox\) on page 734](#).
- Handle assembly (stapling mailbox). See [Handle assembly \(stapling mailbox\) on page 735](#).

Remove the top cover

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

- ▲ Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the top cover (callout 2).

Figure 1-1168 Remove the top cover

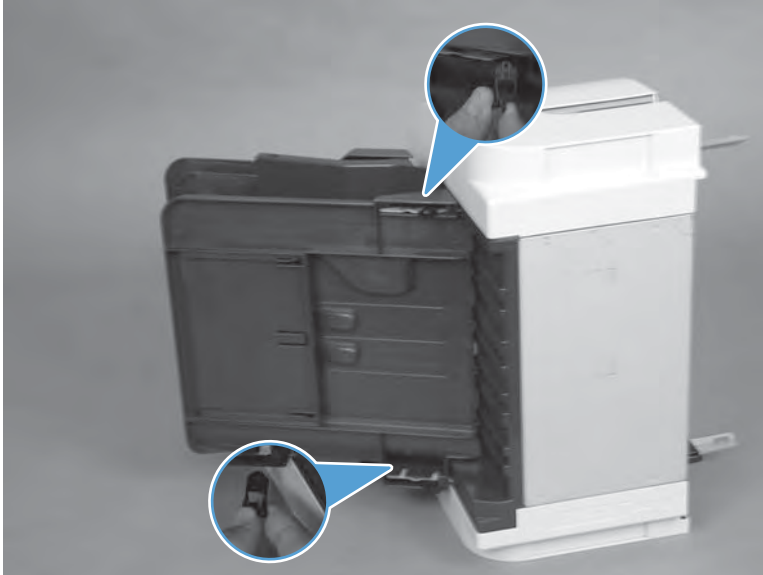


Output bin 3 (stapling mailbox)

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

1. Squeeze and pull two stoppers to remove them from the output bin.

Figure 1-1169 Remove two stoppers (stapling mailbox)




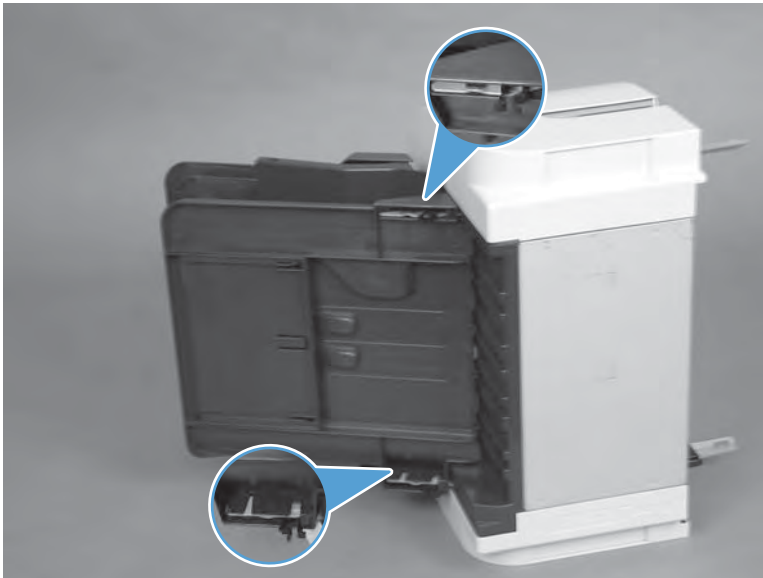
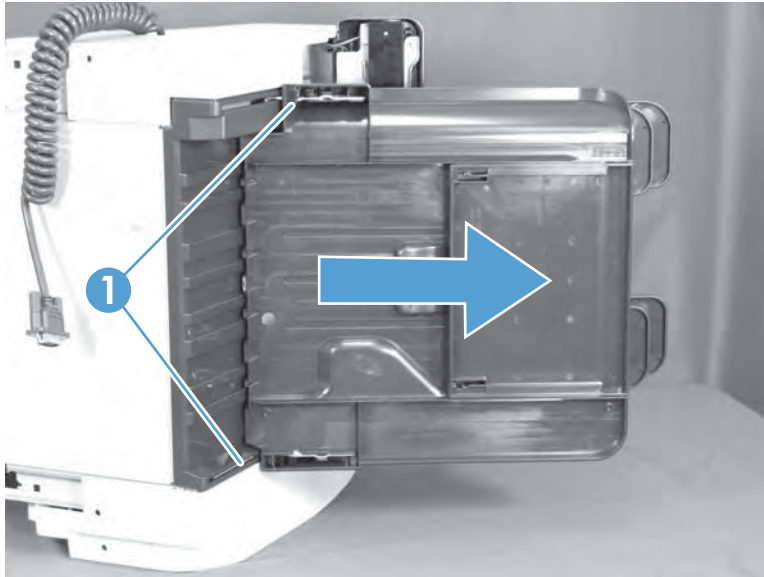
 **NOTE:** When reinstalling the output bin, make sure the two stoppers are installed in the correct position.

Figure 1-1170 Reinstall the two stoppers (stapling mailbox)



2. Release two tabs (callout 1) and then slide the output bin away from the stapling mailbox chassis to remove it.

Figure 1-1171 Remove the output bin (stapling mailbox)



Output bin assembly cover (stapling mailbox)

Remove the following assemblies:

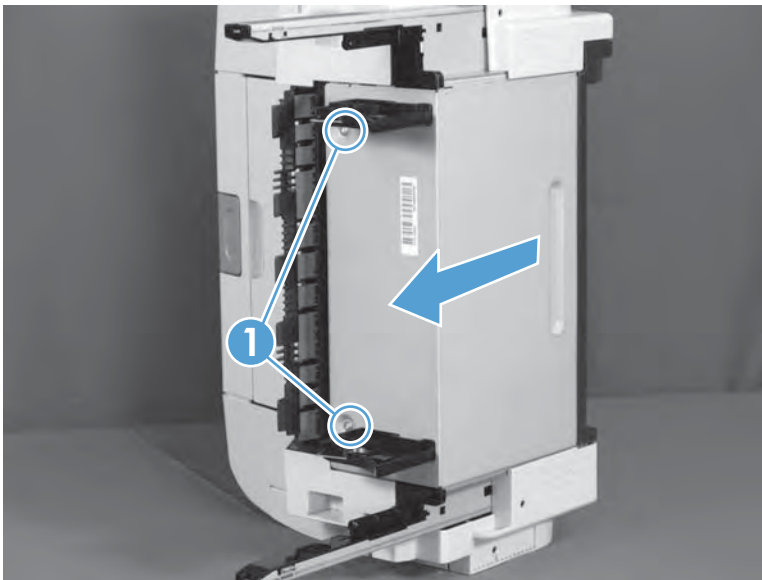
- Front cover (stapling mailbox). See [Front cover \(stapling mailbox\) on page 733](#).
- Rear cover (stapling mailbox). See [Rear cover \(stapling mailbox\) on page 734](#).
- Output bin 3 (stapling mailbox). See [Output bin 3 \(stapling mailbox\) on page 738](#).

Remove the output bin assembly cover

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

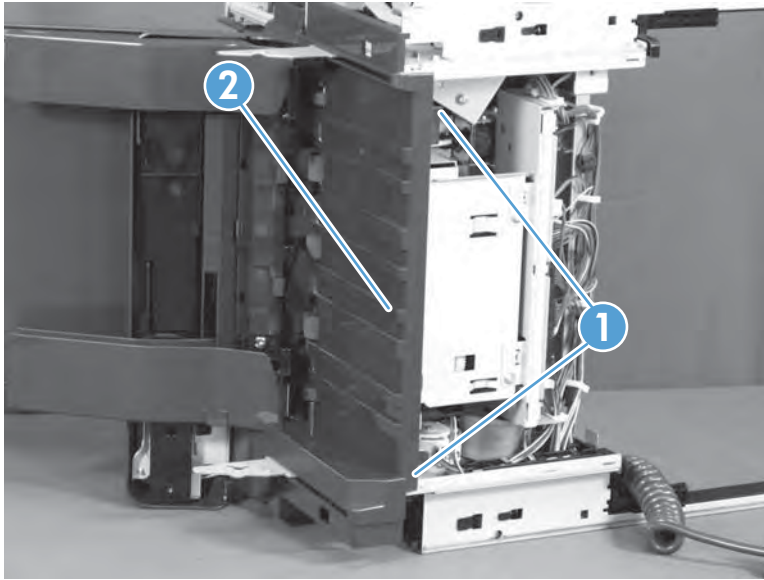
1. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then slide the PCA cover away from the stapling mailbox chassis to remove it.

Figure 1-1172 Remove the PCA cover (stapling mailbox)



2. Release two tabs (callout 1), and then remove the output bin cover assembly (callout 2).

Figure 1-1173 Remove the output bin assembly cover (stapling mailbox)



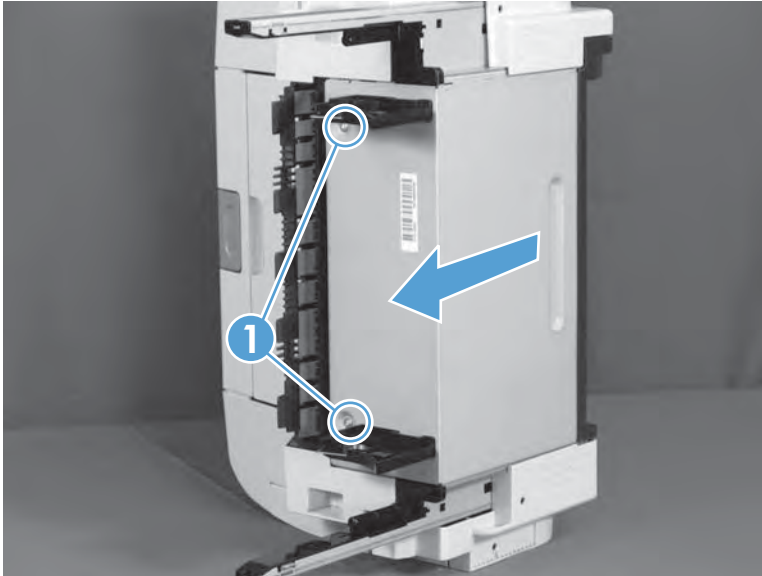
Driver printed-circuit assembly (PCA) (stapling mailbox)

CAUTION: ESD-sensitive part.

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

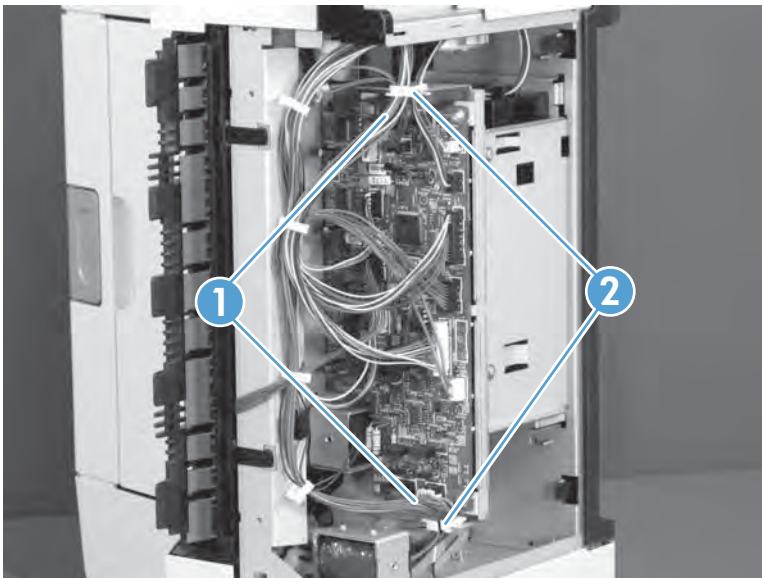
1. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then slide the PCA cover away from the stapling mailbox chassis to remove it.

Figure 1-1174 Remove the PCA cover (stapling mailbox)



2. Release the wire harnesses (callout 1) from the guide (callout 2).

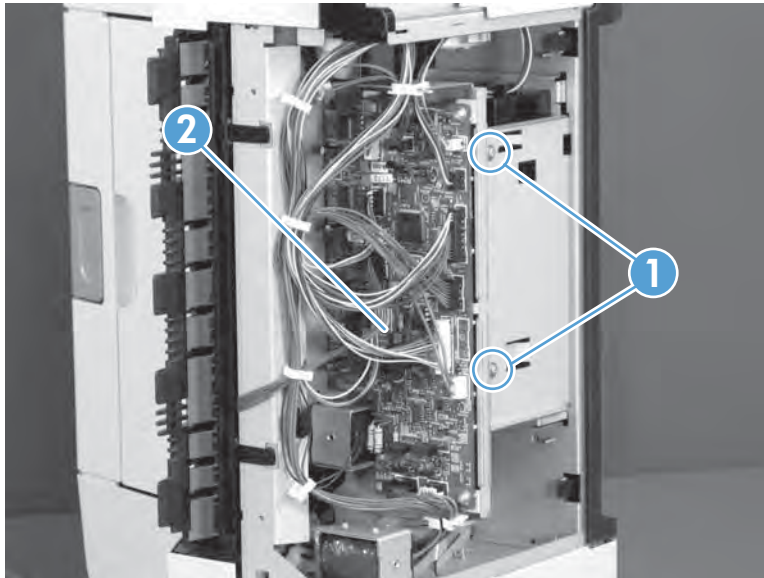
Figure 1-1175 Release the wire harnesses (stapling mailbox)



3. Disconnect all connectors from the PCA, remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the PCA (callout 2).

 **NOTE:** Connector J460 is empty.

Figure 1-1176 Remove the PCA (stapling mailbox)



Output bin sensor printed-circuit assembly (PCA) (stapling mailbox)

Remove the following assemblies:

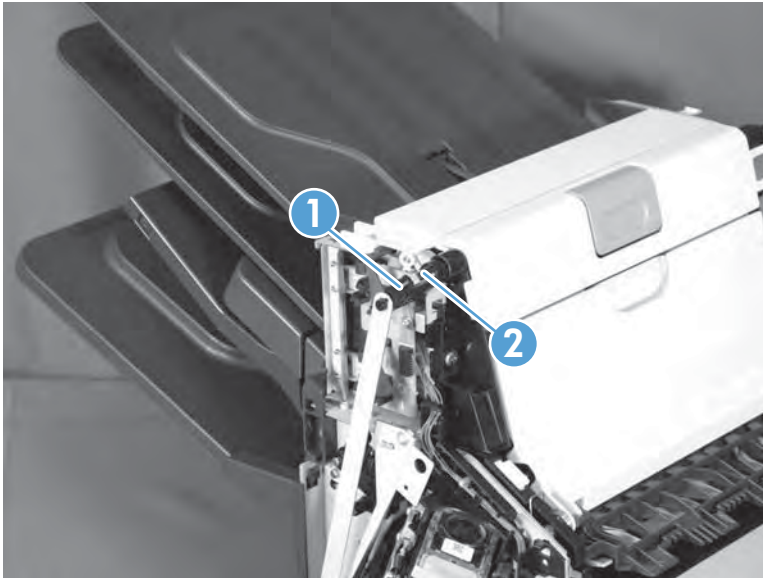
- Front cover (stapling mailbox). See [Front cover \(stapling mailbox\) on page 733](#).

Remove the output bin sensor PCA

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

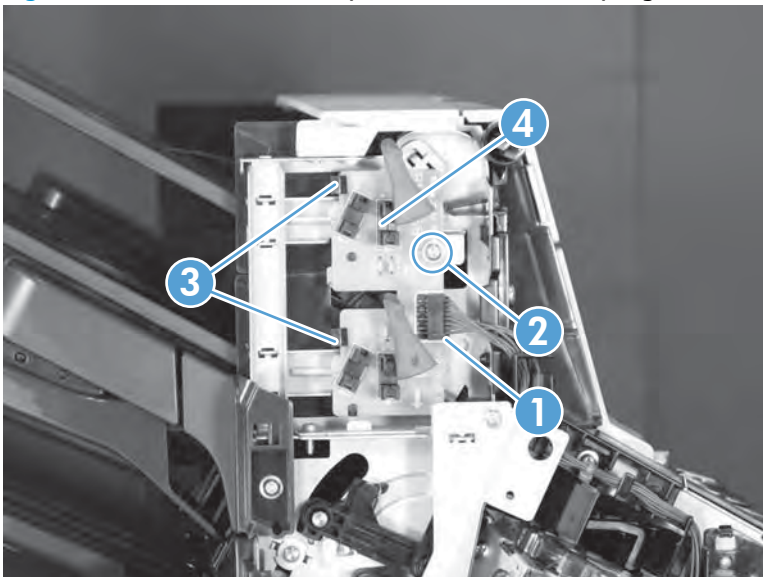
1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then remove the bushing (callout 2).

Figure 1-1177 Remove the bushing (stapling mailbox)



2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove one screw (callout 2), release two tabs (callout 3), and then remove the output bin sensor PCA (callout 4).

Figure 1-1178 Remove the output bin sensor PCA (stapling mailbox)



Stapler assembly (stapling mailbox)

Remove the following assemblies:

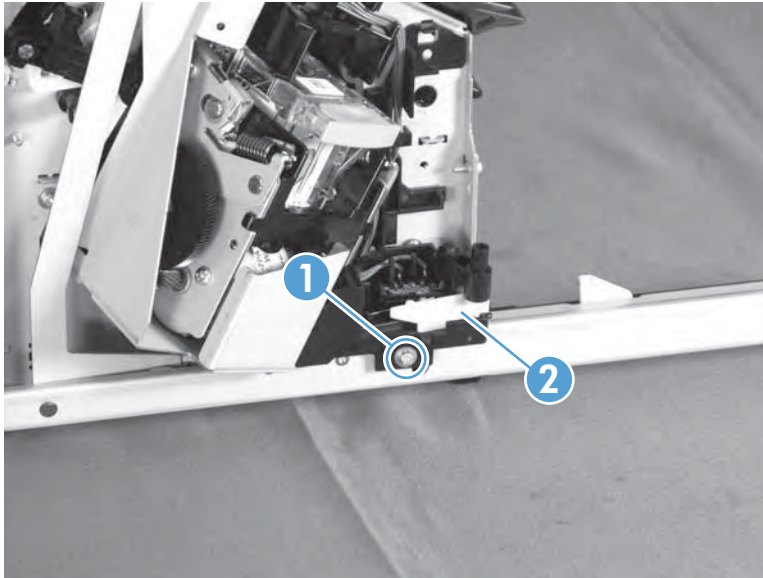
- Front cover (stapling mailbox). See [Front cover \(stapling mailbox\) on page 733](#).

Remove the stapler assembly

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

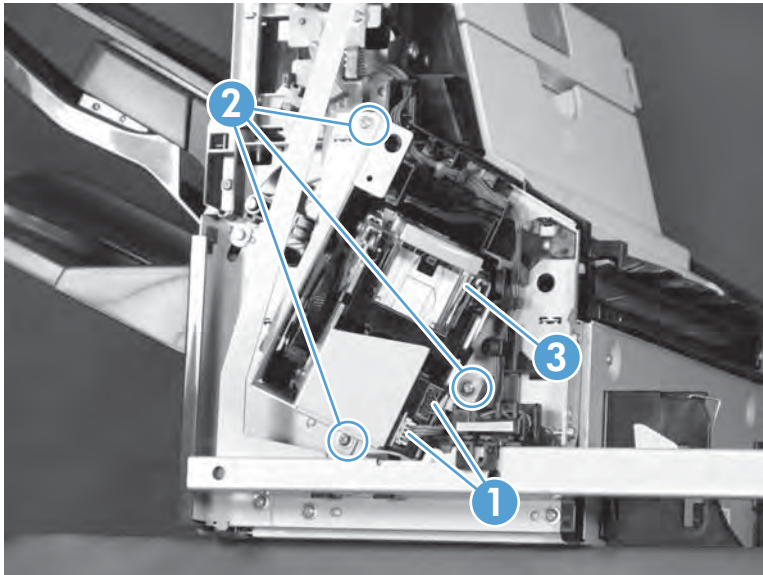
1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the interlock assembly (callout 2).

Figure 1-1179 Remove the interlock assembly (stapling mailbox)



2. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), remove three screws (callout 2), and then remove the stapler assembly (callout 3).

Figure 1-1180 Remove the stapler assembly (stapling mailbox)



Jogger assembly (stapling mailbox)

Remove the following assemblies:

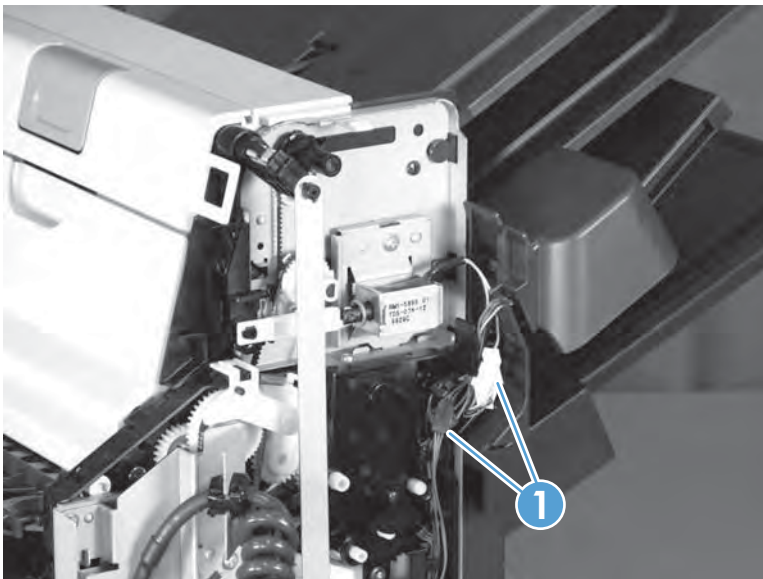
- Front cover (stapling mailbox). See [Front cover \(stapling mailbox\) on page 733](#).
- Rear cover (stapling mailbox). See [Rear cover \(stapling mailbox\) on page 734](#).

Remove the jogger assembly

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

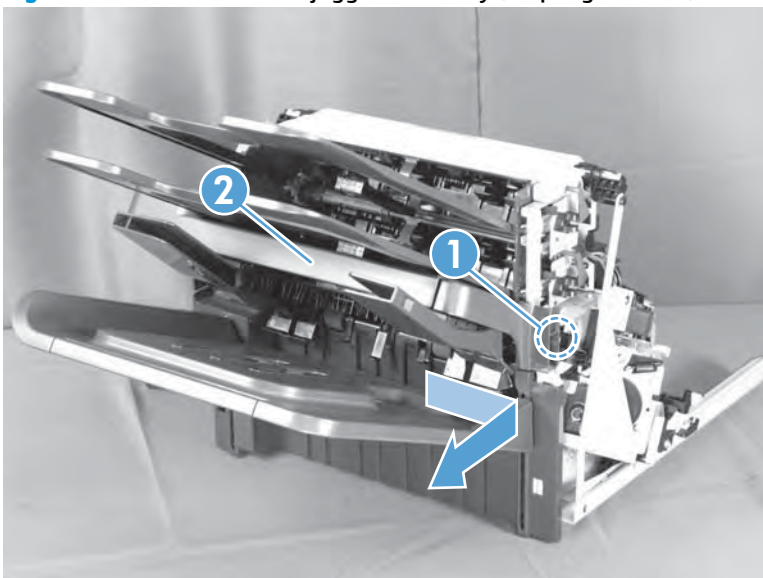
1. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1).

Figure 1-1181 Disconnect two connectors (stapling mailbox)



2. Remove one screw (callout 1), slide the jogger assembly (callout 2) toward the right-side of the stapler, and then pull the assembly away from the stapler to remove it.

Figure 1-1182 Remove the jogger assembly (stapling mailbox)



Output bin solenoid (stapling mailbox)

Remove the following assemblies:

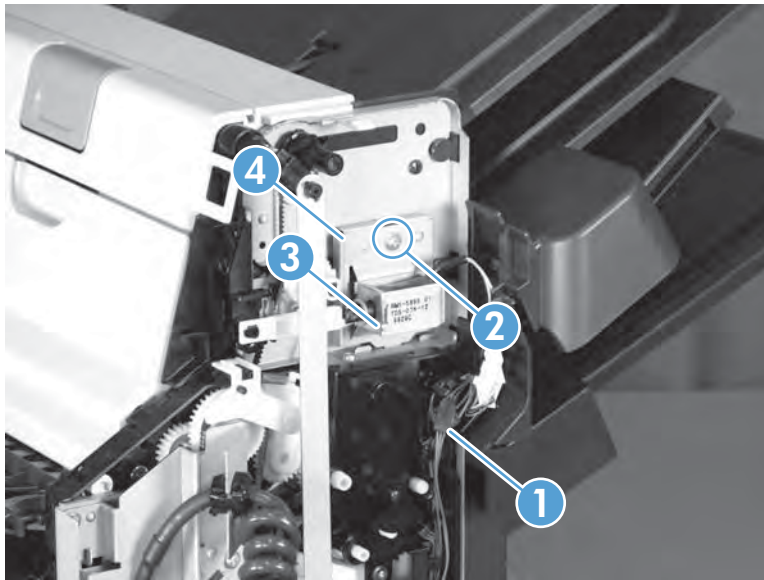
- Front cover (stapling mailbox). See [Front cover \(stapling mailbox\) on page 733](#).
- Rear cover (stapling mailbox). See [Rear cover \(stapling mailbox\) on page 734](#).

Remove the output bin solenoid

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

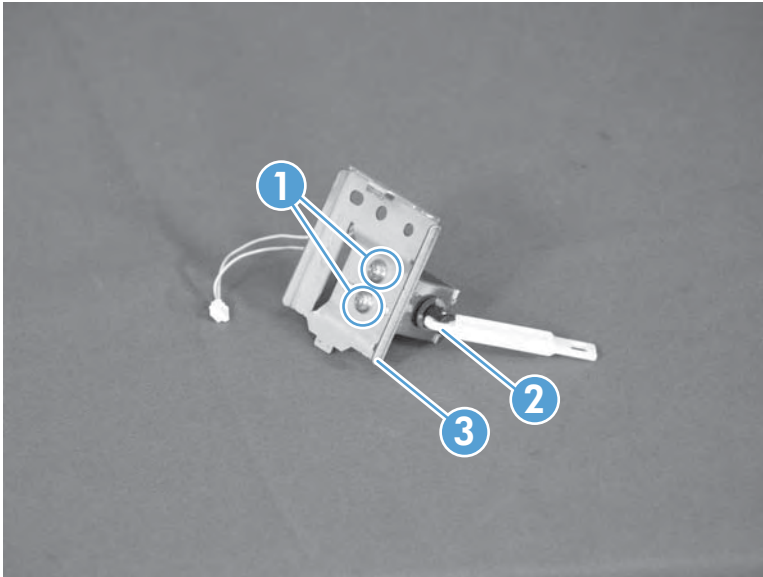
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove one screw (callout 2), and then remove the output bin solenoid (callout 3) and the sheet-metal plate (callout 4) together.

Figure 1-1183 Remove the output bin solenoid and sheet-metal plate (stapling mailbox)



2. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then separate the output bin solenoid (callout 2) from the sheet-metal plate (callout 3).

Figure 1-1184 Remove the output bin solenoid (stapling mailbox)



Output bin assembly (stapling mailbox)

Remove the following assemblies:

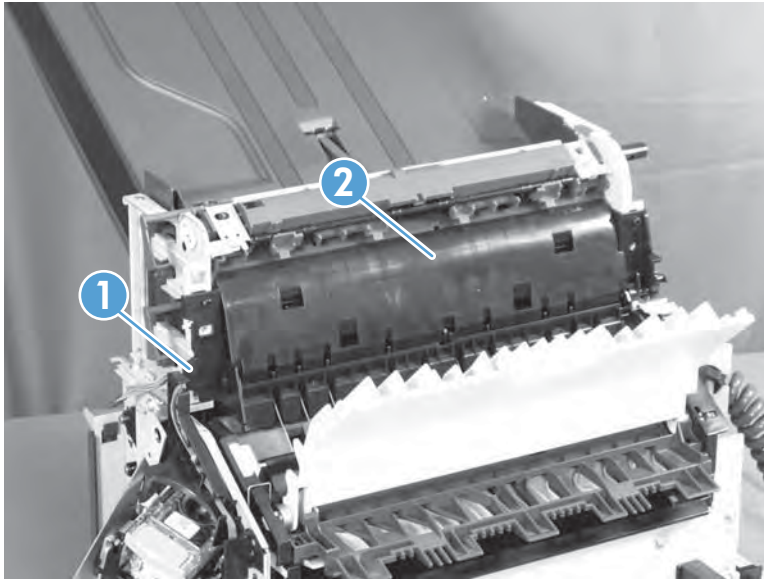
- Front cover (stapling mailbox). See [Front cover \(stapling mailbox\) on page 733](#).
- Rear cover (stapling mailbox). See [Rear cover \(stapling mailbox\) on page 734](#).
- Handle assembly (stapling mailbox). See [Handle assembly \(stapling mailbox\) on page 735](#).
- Top cover (stapling mailbox). See [Top cover \(stapling mailbox\) on page 737](#).
- Output bin sensor PCA (stapling mailbox). See [Output bin sensor printed-circuit assembly \(PCA\) \(stapling mailbox\) on page 744](#).
- Jogger assembly (stapling mailbox). See [Jogger assembly \(stapling mailbox\) on page 746](#).
- Output bin solenoid (stapling mailbox). See [Output bin solenoid \(stapling mailbox\) on page 747](#).

Remove the output bin assembly

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

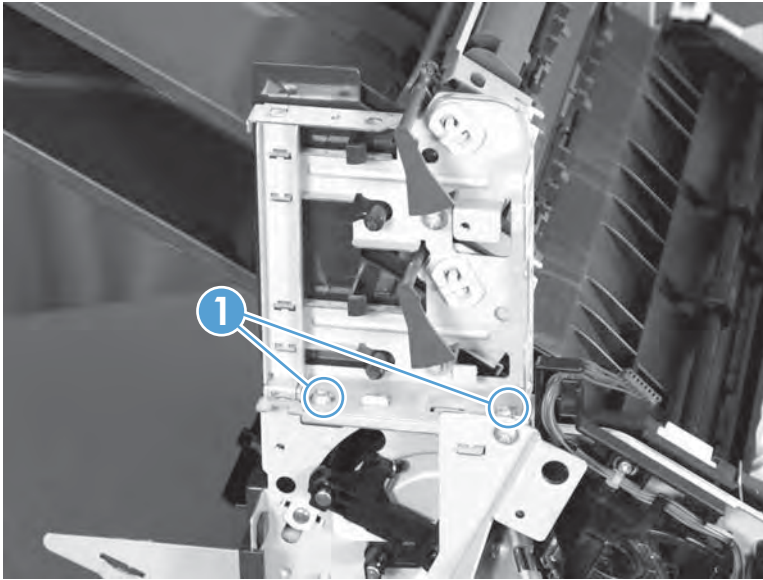
1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then remove the output-bin flapper assembly (callout 2).

Figure 1-1185 Remove the output-bin flapper assembly (stapling mailbox)



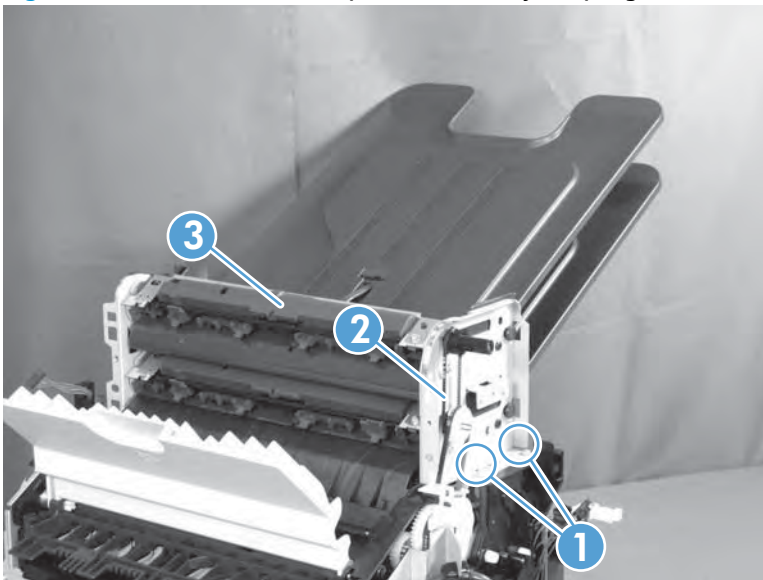
2. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 1-1186 Remove two screws (stapling mailbox)



3. Remove two screws (callout 1), remove the belt (callout 2), and then remove the assembly (callout 3).

Figure 1-1187 Remove the output bin assembly (stapling mailbox)



Stage top assembly (stapling mailbox)

Remove the following assemblies:

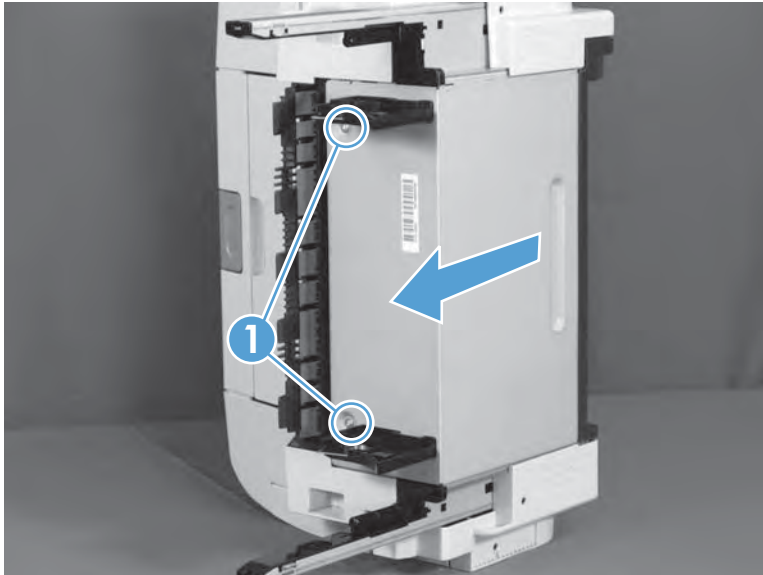
- Front cover (stapling mailbox). See [Front cover \(stapling mailbox\) on page 733](#).
- Rear cover (stapling mailbox). See [Rear cover \(stapling mailbox\) on page 734](#).
- Handle assembly (stapling mailbox). See [Handle assembly \(stapling mailbox\) on page 735](#).
- Top cover (stapling mailbox). See [Top cover \(stapling mailbox\) on page 737](#).
- Output bin sensor PCA (stapling mailbox). See [Output bin sensor printed-circuit assembly \(PCA\) \(stapling mailbox\) on page 744](#).
- Stapler assembly (stapling mailbox). See [Stapler assembly \(stapling mailbox\) on page 745](#).
- Jogger assembly (stapling mailbox). See [Jogger assembly \(stapling mailbox\) on page 746](#).
- Output bin solenoid (stapling mailbox). See [Output bin solenoid \(stapling mailbox\) on page 747](#).
- Output bin assembly (stapling mailbox). See [Output bin assembly \(stapling mailbox\) on page 749](#).

Remove the stage top assembly

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

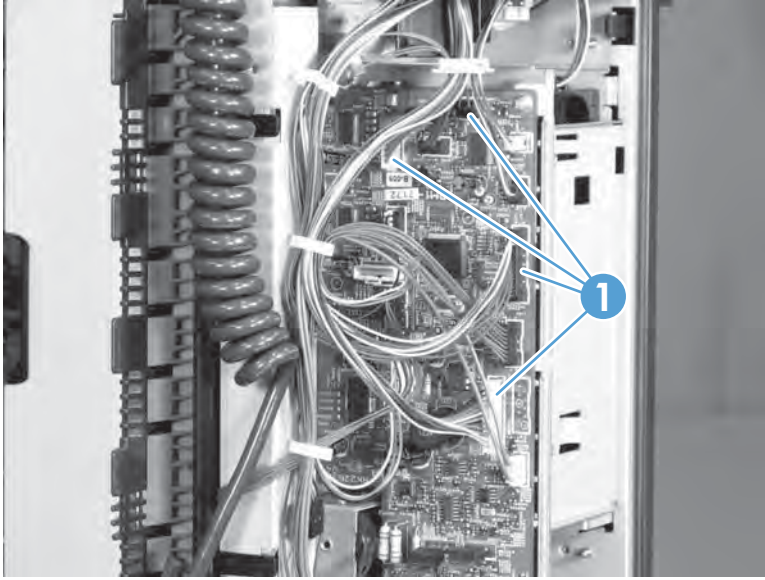
1. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then slide the PCA cover away from the stapling mailbox chassis to remove it.

Figure 1-1188 Remove the PCA cover (stapling mailbox)



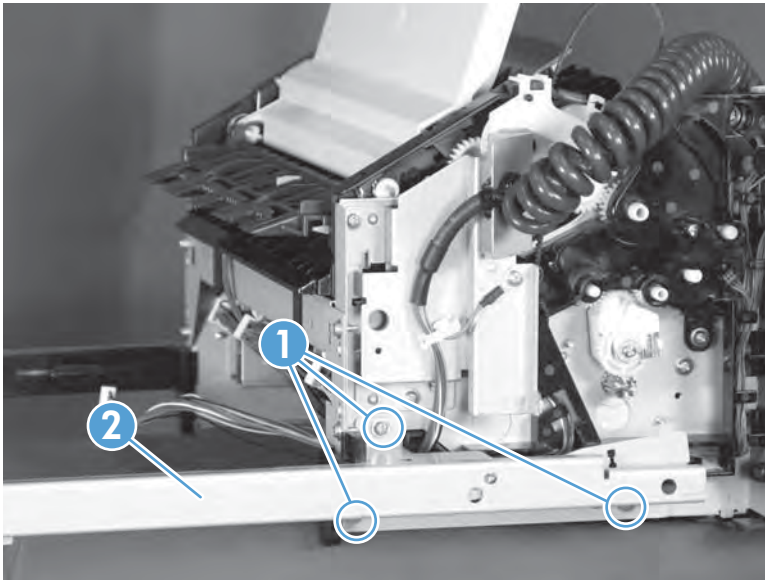
2. Disconnect four connectors (callout 1).

Figure 1-1189 Disconnect four connectors (stapling mailbox)



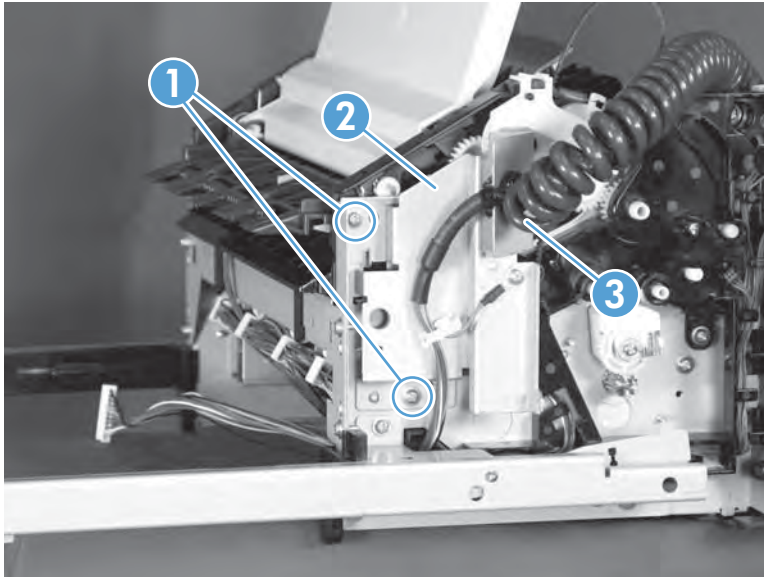
3. Remove three screws (callout 1), and then remove the rear-rail assembly (callout 2).

Figure 1-1190 Remove the rear-rail assembly (stapling mailbox)



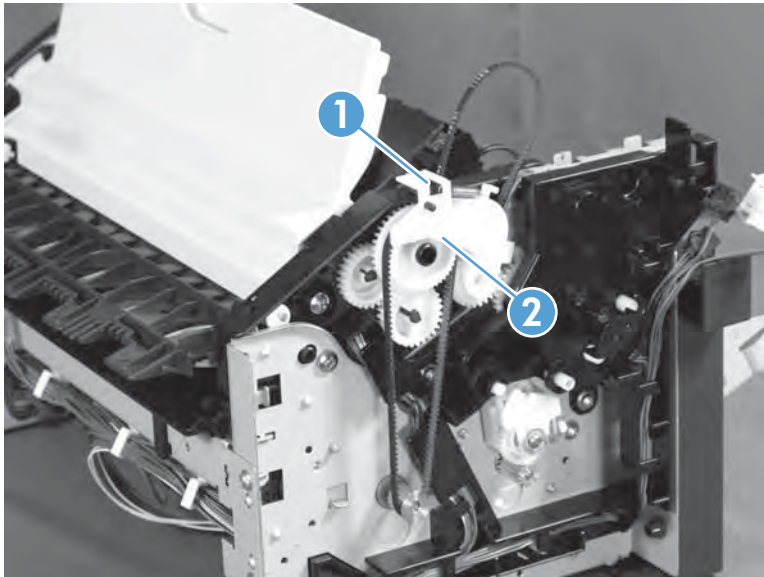
4. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the sheet-metal plate (callout 2) and wire harness (callout 3) together.

Figure 1-1191 Remove the sheet-metal plate (stapling mailbox)



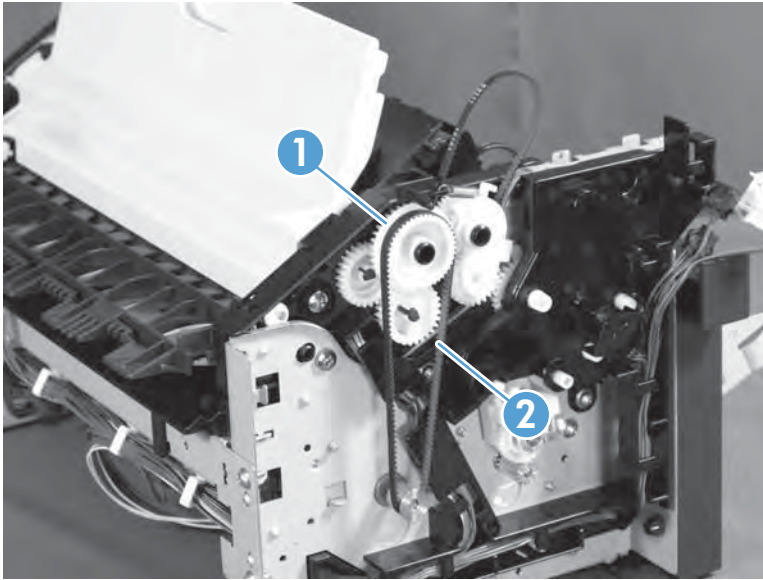
5. Release one tab (callout 1), and then remove the gear stopper (callout 2).

Figure 1-1192 Remove the gear stopper (stapling mailbox)



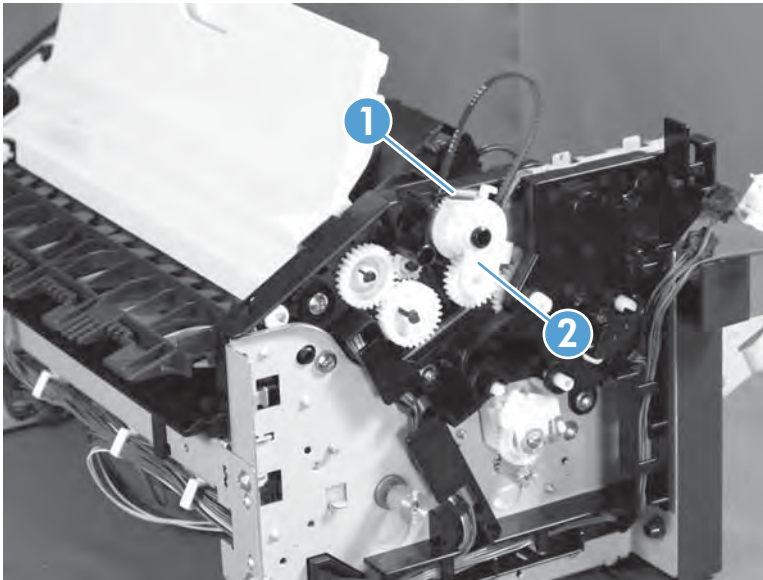
6. Remove one gear (callout 1), and then remove the belt (callout 2).

Figure 1-1193 Remove one gear and the belt (stapling mailbox)



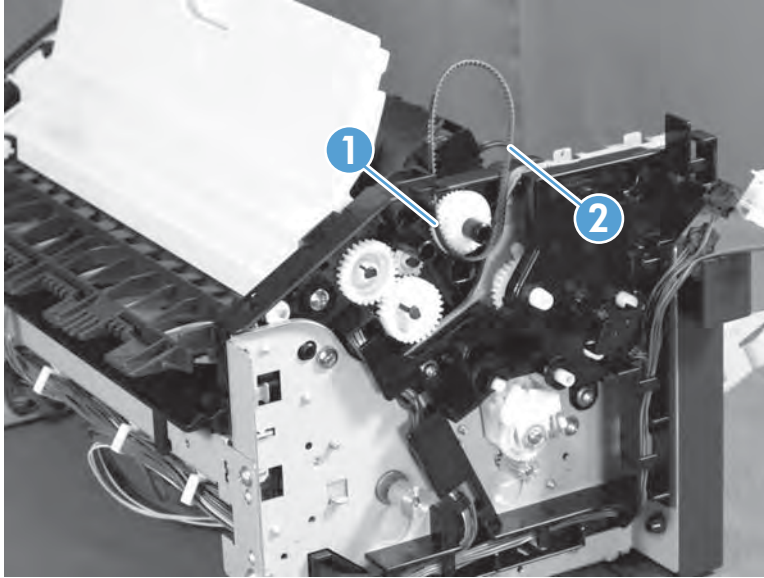
7. Release one spring (callout 1), and then remove the swing gear (callout 2).

Figure 1-1194 Release one spring and remove the swing gear (stapling mailbox)



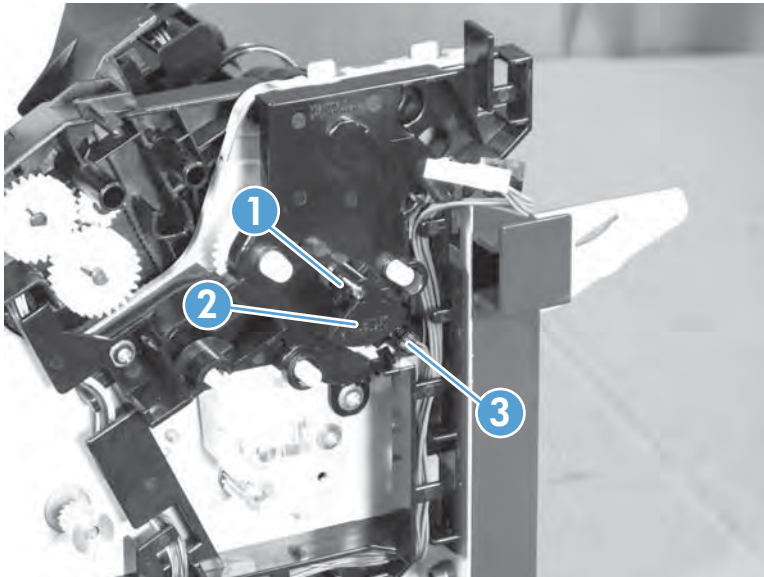
8. Remove one gear (callout 1), and then remove the belt (callout 2).

Figure 1-1195 Remove one gear and remove the belt (stapling mailbox)



9. Release one tab (callout 1), remove the sensor flag (callout 2), and then disconnect one connector (callout 3).

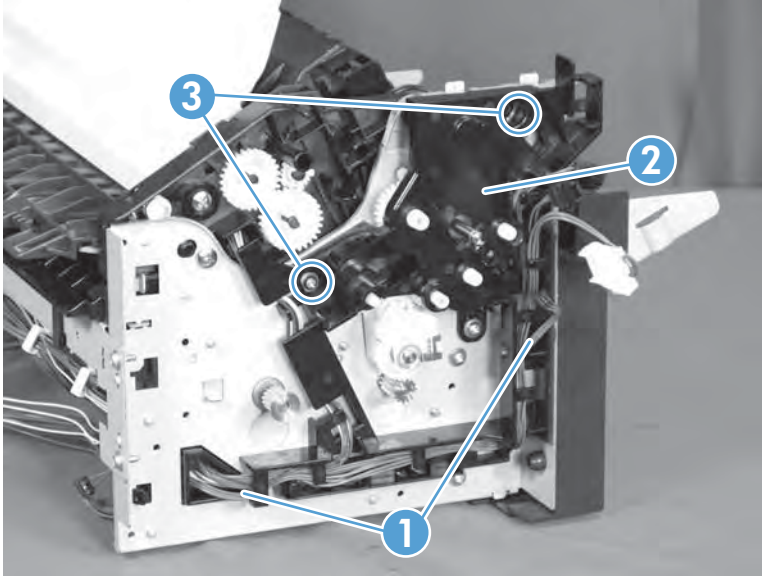
Figure 1-1196 Remove the sensor flag (stapling mailbox)



10. Release the wire harnesses (callout 1) from the guide (callout 2), remove two screws (callout 3), and then remove the guide (callout 2).

⚠ CAUTION: Not all of the gears behind the guide are captive. Make sure that they are not dislodged when the guide is removed.

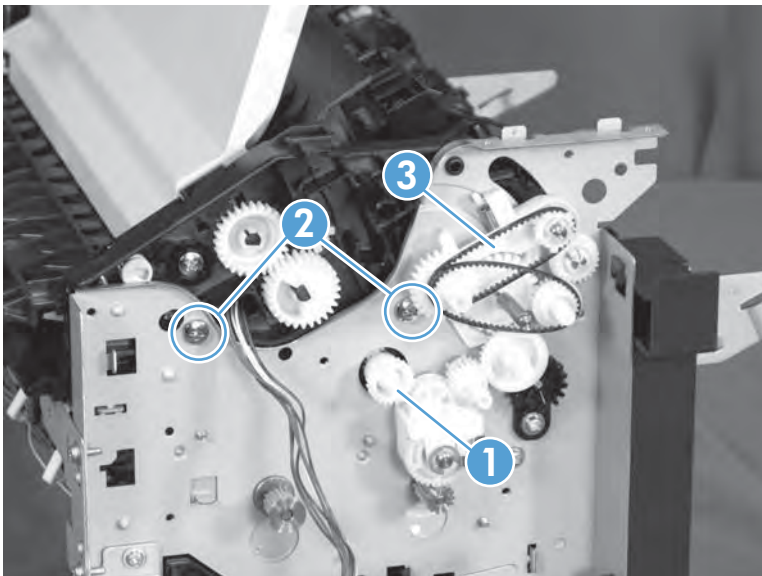
Figure 1-1197 Remove the guide (stapling mailbox)



11. Remove one gear (callout 1), and then remove two screws (callout 2).

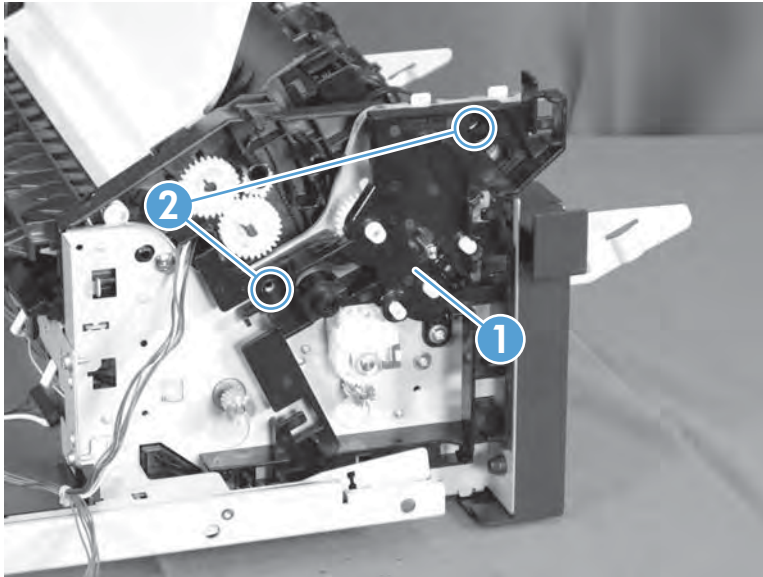
⚠ CAUTION: Not all of the gears are captive. Make sure that they are not dislodged.

Figure 1-1198 Remove one gear (stapling mailbox)



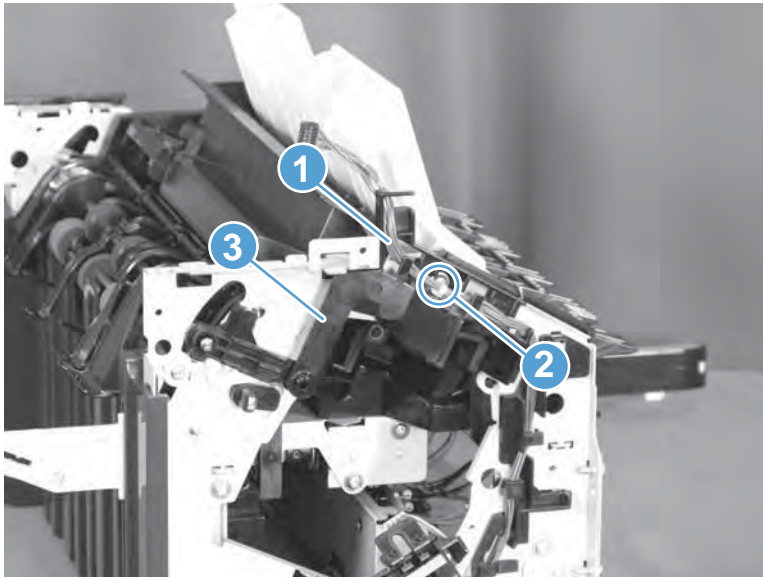
12. Replace the guide (callout 1), and then install two screws (callout 2) to secure it and prevent loose gears from becoming dislodged.

Figure 1-1199 Replace the guide (stapling mailbox)



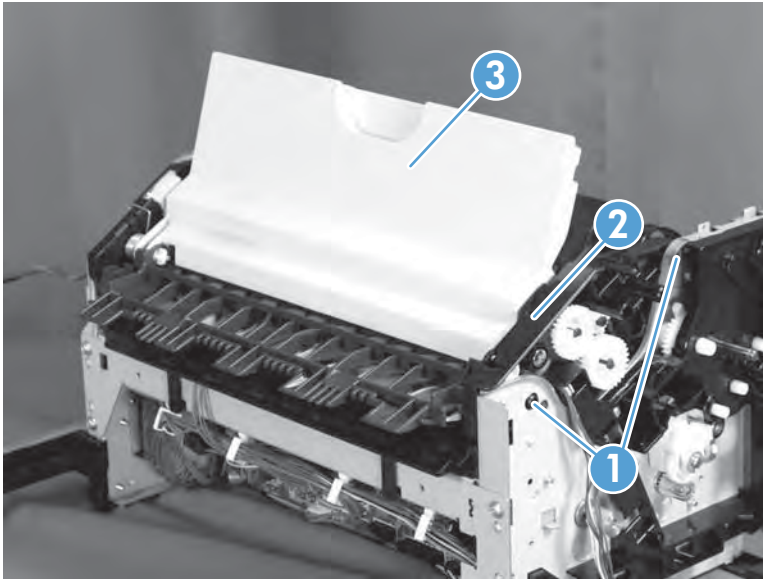
13. Release the wire harnesses (callout 1) from the guide (callout 2), and then remove the guide (callout 3).

Figure 1-1200 Remove the guide (stapling mailbox)



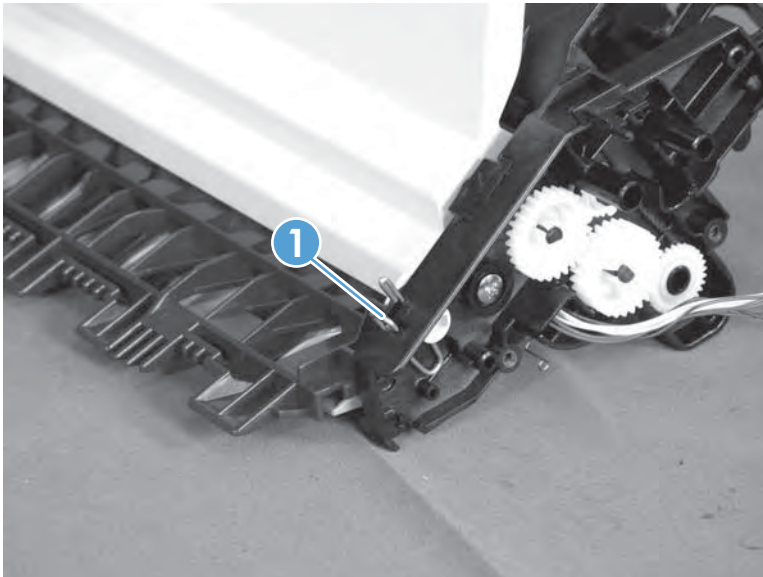
14. Release two bosses (callout 1), and then remove the stage top assembly (callout 2) and the right door (callout 3) together.

Figure 1-1201 Remove the stage top assembly and right door (stapling mailbox)



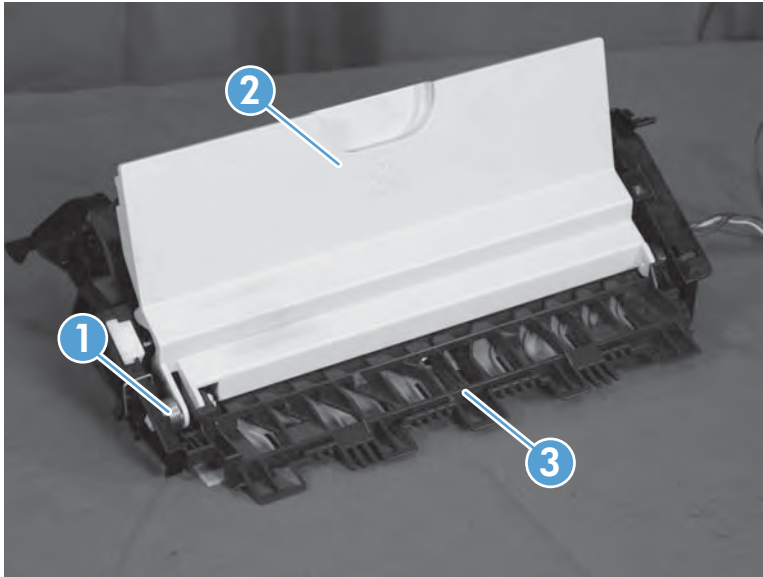
15. Remove the stopper (callout 1).

Figure 1-1202 Remove the stopper (stapling mailbox)



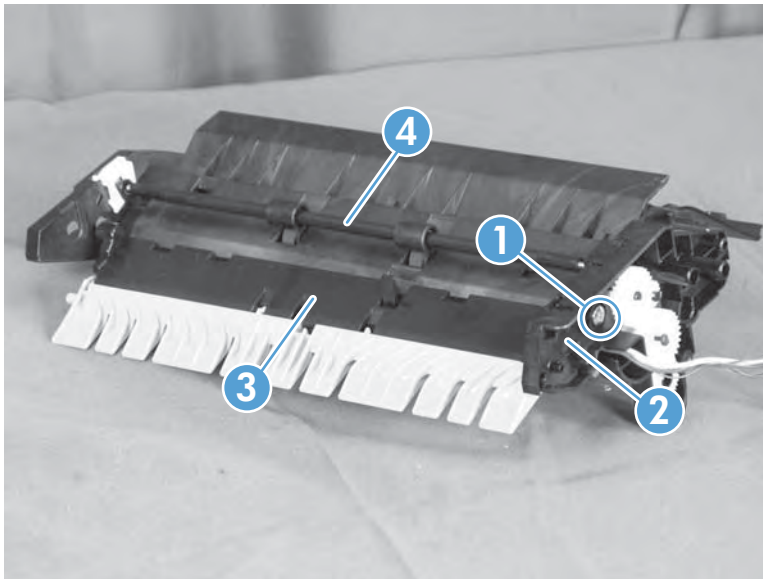
16. Remove one spring (callout 1), and then remove the right door (callout 2) and the inlet guide (callout 3) together.

Figure 1-1203 Remove the right door and inlet guide (stapling mailbox)



17. Remove one screw (callout 1), remove the bushing (callout 2), and then remove the paper feed guide (callout 3) from the stage top assembly (callout 4).

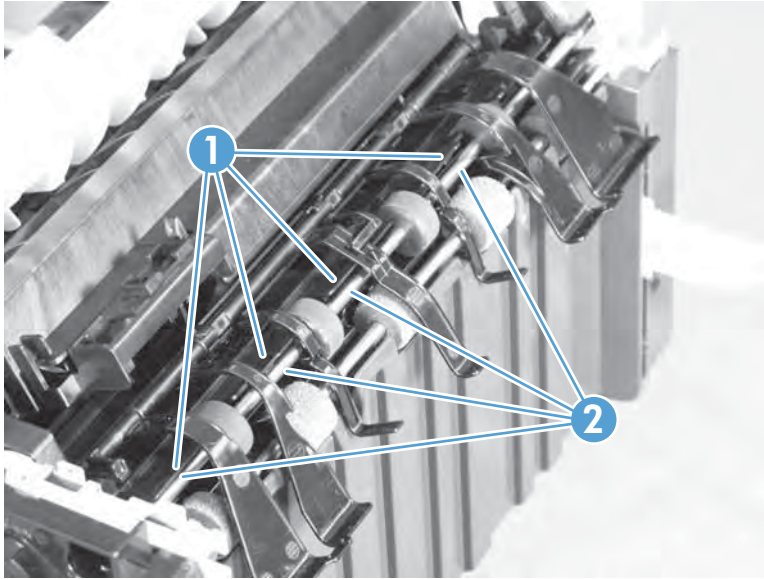
Figure 1-1204 Remove the paper feed guide (stapling mailbox)



Install the stage top assembly

When installing the stage top assembly, make sure to insert the guide (callout 1) of the assembly **under** the shaft (callout 2) of the output bin 3 upper delivery roller.

Figure 1-1205 Install the stage top assembly (stapling mailbox)



Stage assembly (stapling mailbox)

Remove the following assemblies:

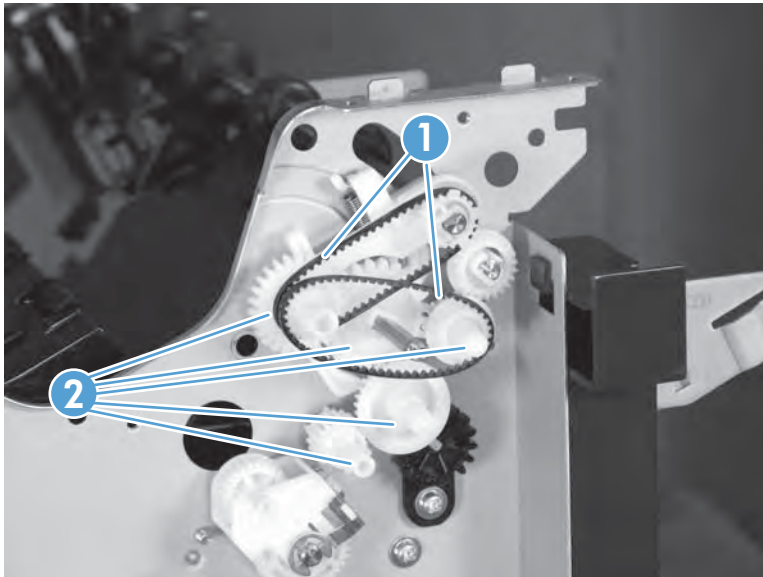
- Front cover (stapling mailbox). See [Front cover \(stapling mailbox\) on page 733](#).
- Rear cover (stapling mailbox). See [Rear cover \(stapling mailbox\) on page 734](#).
- Handle assembly (stapling mailbox). See [Handle assembly \(stapling mailbox\) on page 735](#).
- Top cover (stapling mailbox). See [Top cover \(stapling mailbox\) on page 737](#).
- Output bin sensor PCA (stapling mailbox). See [Output bin sensor printed-circuit assembly \(PCA\) \(stapling mailbox\) on page 744](#).
- Stapler assembly (stapling mailbox). See [Stapler assembly \(stapling mailbox\) on page 745](#).
- Jogger assembly (stapling mailbox). See [Jogger assembly \(stapling mailbox\) on page 746](#).
- Output bin solenoid (stapling mailbox). See [Output bin solenoid \(stapling mailbox\) on page 747](#).
- Output bin assembly (stapling mailbox). See [Output bin assembly \(stapling mailbox\) on page 749](#).
- Stage top assembly (stapling mailbox). See [Stage top assembly \(stapling mailbox\) on page 751](#).

Remove the stage assembly

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

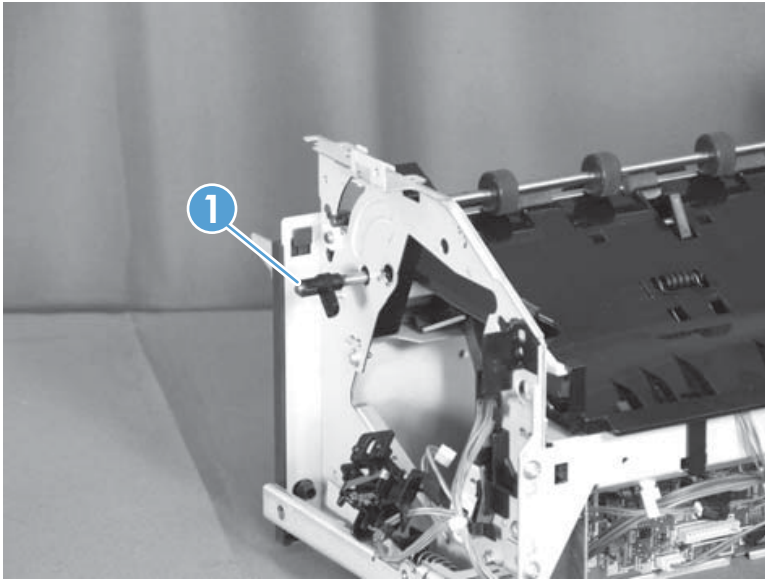
1. Remove two belts (callout 1), and then remove five gears (callout 2).

Figure 1-1206 Remove two belts and five gears (stapling mailbox)



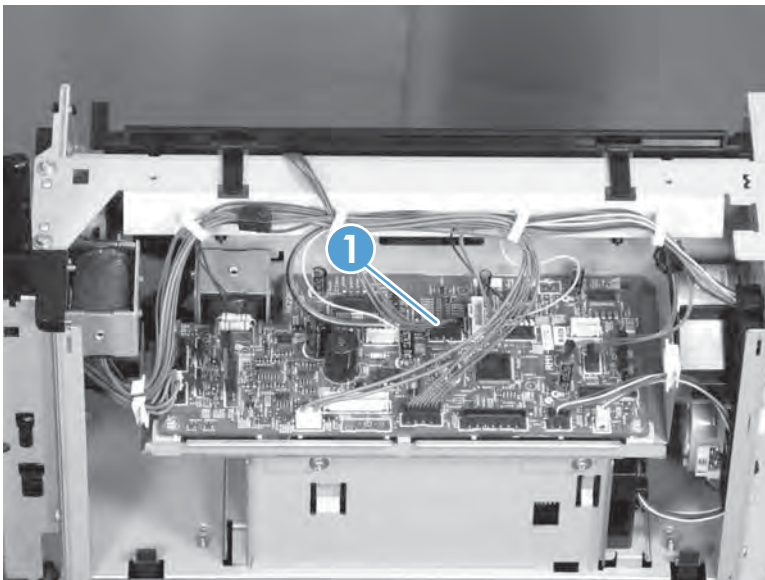
2. Pull out the shaft (callout 1).

Figure 1-1207 Pull out the shaft (stapling mailbox)



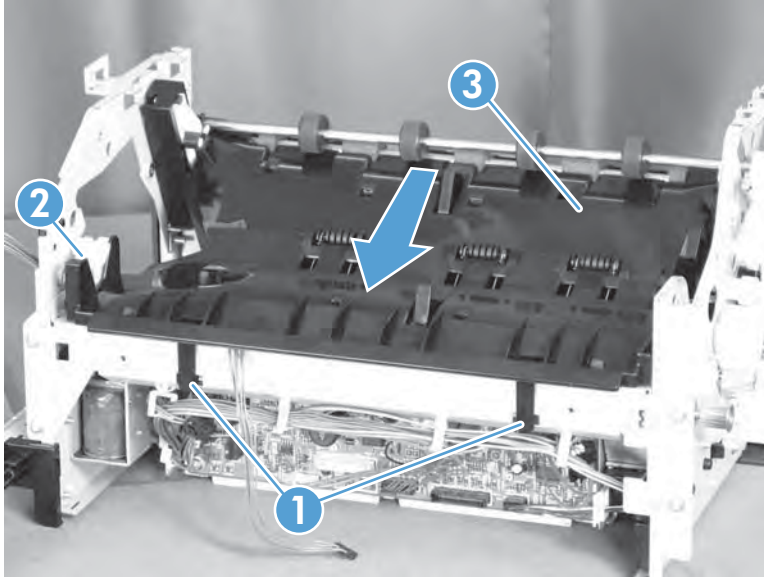
3. Disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 1-1208 Disconnect one connector (stapling mailbox)



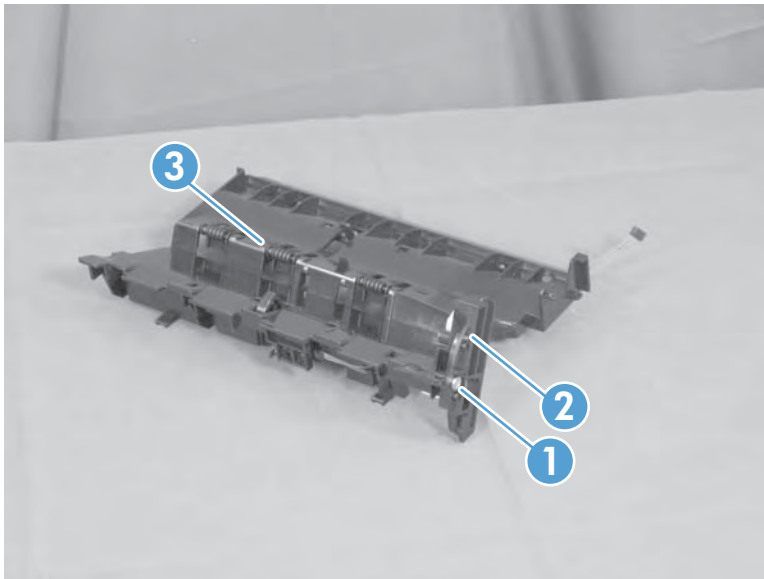
4. Release two tabs (callout 1), remove the solenoid arm (callout 2), and then slide the stage assembly (callout 3) as shown below to remove it.

Figure 1-1209 Remove the stage assembly (stapling mailbox)



5. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the stamp assembly (callout 2) from the stage assembly (callout 3).

Figure 1-1210 Remove the stamp assembly (stapling mailbox)



Output bin 3 drive assembly (stapling mailbox)

Remove the following assemblies:

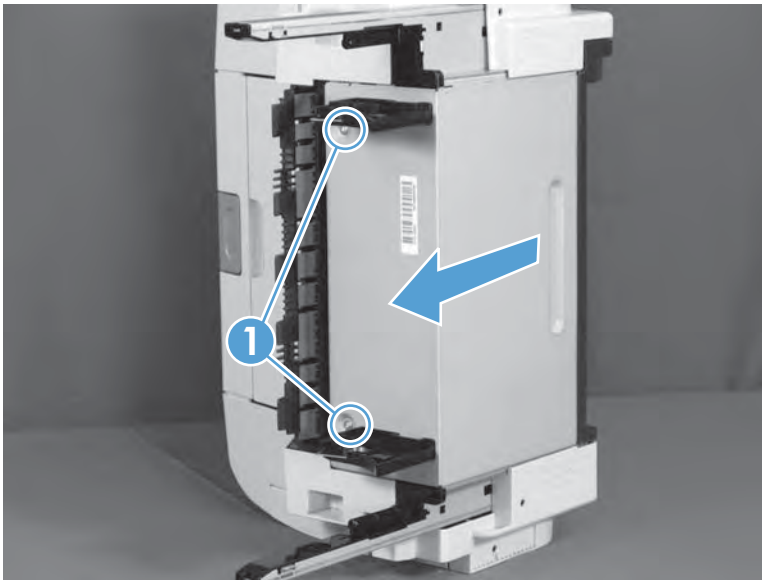
- Front cover (stapling mailbox). See [Front cover \(stapling mailbox\) on page 733](#).
- Rear cover (stapling mailbox). See [Rear cover \(stapling mailbox\) on page 734](#).
- Output bin 3 (stapling mailbox). See [Output bin 3 \(stapling mailbox\) on page 738](#).
- Output bin assembly cover (stapling mailbox). See [Output bin assembly cover \(stapling mailbox\) on page 740](#).

Remove the output bin 3 drive assembly

Before servicing, turn the product off. After servicing, turn the product on.

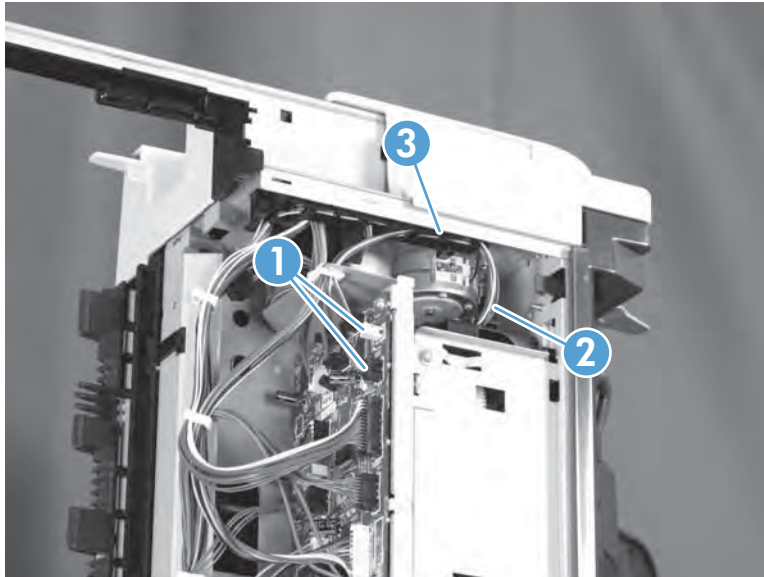
1. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then slide the PCA cover away from the stapling mailbox chassis to remove it.

Figure 1-1211 Remove the PCA cover (stapling mailbox)



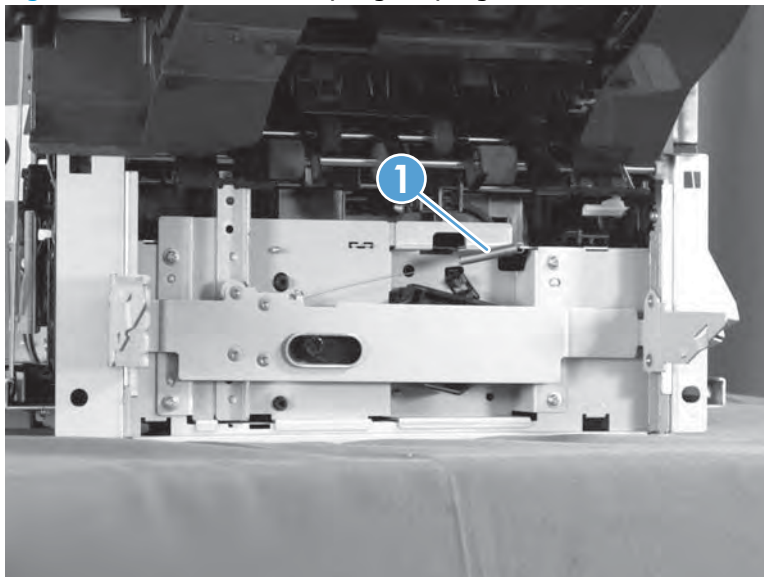
2. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then release the wire harnesses (callout 2) from the guide (callout 3).

Figure 1-1212 Disconnect two connectors (stapling mailbox)



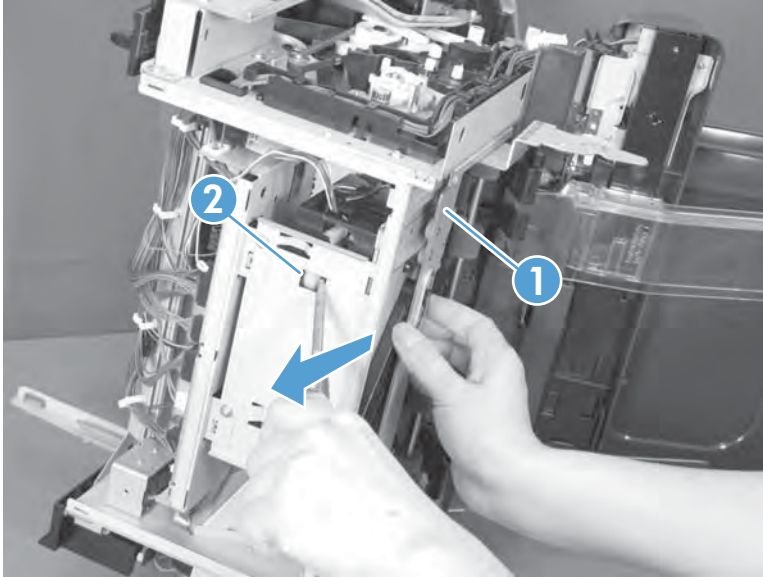
3. Remove one spring (callout 1).

Figure 1-1213 Remove one spring (stapling mailbox)



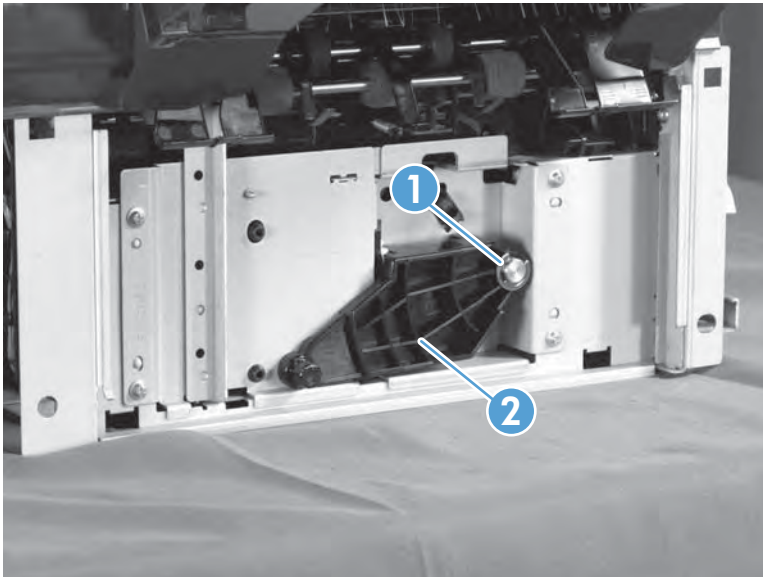
4. Use a screw driver to disengage the gear (callout 1), and then slide the tray support (callout 2) as shown below to remove it.

Figure 1-1214 Remove the tray support (stapling mailbox)



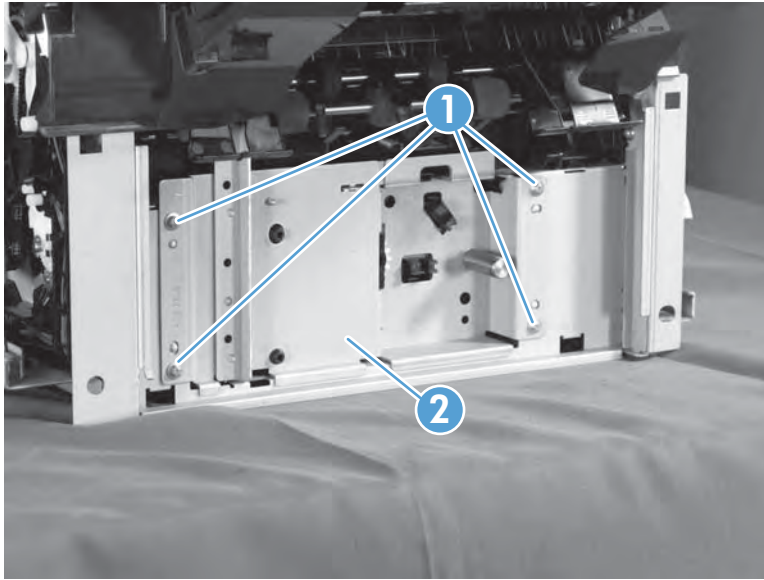
5. Remove one e-ring (callout 1), and then remove the lifter lever (callout 2).

Figure 1-1215 Remove the lifter lever (stapling mailbox)



6. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the output bin 3 drive assembly.

Figure 1-1216 Remove the output bin 3 drive assembly (stapling mailbox)



2 Parts and diagrams

- [For additional service and support information](#)
- [Order parts, accessories, and supplies](#)
- [How to use the parts lists and diagrams](#)
- [Document feeder and scanner components](#)
- [Document feeder components](#)
- [Scanner control board \(SCB\)](#)
- [Control panel](#)
- [Covers](#)
- [Upper plate assembly](#)
- [Internal components](#)
- [1x500-sheet paper feeder](#)
- [1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet](#)
- [2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder](#)
- [Stapling mailbox](#)
- [Envelope feeder](#)
- [Alphabetical parts list](#)
- [Numerical parts list](#)

For additional service and support information

HP service personnel, go to the Link Service Access Work Bench (SAW) at <http://h41302.www4.hp.com/km/saw/home.do>.

Channel partners, go to Link HP Channel Services Network (CNS) at <https://h30125.www3.hp.com/hpcsn>.

- Install and configure
- Product specifications
- Up to date control-panel message (CPMD) troubleshooting
- Solutions for product issues and emerging issues
- Remove and replace part instructions and videos
- Service advisories
- Warranty & regulatory information

Order parts, accessories, and supplies

Use the following list to locate part number and ordering information for the product:

- Information on where to order parts
See [Ordering information on page 771](#).
- Related documentation available for the product
See [Related documentation on page 771](#).
- Part numbers for supplies
See [Supplies part numbers on page 772](#).
- Part numbers for both customer-replaceable and service-replaceable kits
See [Customer self-repair kits on page 772](#) and [Service replacement kits on page 774](#).
- Part numbers for accessories
See [Accessories on page 775](#).

Ordering information

Table 2-1 Ordering information

Order supplies and paper	www.hp.com/go/suresupply
Order genuine HP parts or accessories	www.hp.com/buy/parts
Order through service or support providers	Contact an HP-authorized service or support provider.
Order using HP software	For information about using the HP software to order parts, accessories, and supplies, see the product user guide.

Related documentation

Table 2-2 Related documentation and software

Item	Description	Part number
<i>HP LaserJet Enterprise M630 User Guide</i>	Product user guide	B3G84-90904
<i>HP LaserJet Enterprise M630 Repair Manual</i>	English repair manual	Not applicable
<i>HP LaserJet Enterprise M630 Troubleshooting Manual</i>	English troubleshooting manual	Not applicable

Supplies part numbers

Table 2-3 Supplies part numbers

Item	Description	Part number
HP LaserJet toner cartridges	High-capacity toner cartridge	CF281X (new) CF281-67902 (service)
	Standard-capacity toner cartridge	CF281A (new) CF281-67901 (service)

Customer self-repair kits

Following are the customer-replaceable kits available for the product. Each kit includes parts and installation instructions.

The customer self-repair (CSR) level indicates the expected difficulty the customer will experience when replacing this part:

- **A:** Easy
- **B:** Difficult

Table 2-4 Customer self-repair kits

Item	Description	CSR level	Part number
Control panel replacement kit	• Control panel assembly	A	B3G84-67908
Stapling mailbox replacement kit	• 900-sheet, 3-bin stapling mailbox	A	B3M76-67902
Staple cartridge replacement kit	• HP staple cartridge refill	A	C8085-60541
1x500-sheet paper feeder kit	• 500-sheet paper feeder	A	B3M73-67902
1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet kit	• 500-sheet paper feeder and cabinet	A	B3M74-67902
2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder kit	• 2,500-sheet paper feeder	A	B3M75-67902
Envelope feeder kit	• Envelope feeder	A	B3G87-67902
HP LaserJet postcard media insert tray kit	• HP LaserJet postcard media insert tray	A	CC497-67902
Duplex assembly kit	• Duplex assembly	A	B3G84-67903
Formatter assembly kit	• Formatter printed circuit assembly (PCA)	A	B3G85-67901
	• Formatter tray with fax opening		
	• Formatter extension cover bracket		

Table 2-4 Customer self-repair kits (continued)

Item	Description	CSR level	Part number
Formatter assembly kit (India/China only)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Formatter printed circuit assembly (PCA) • Formatter tray with fax opening • Formatter extension cover bracket 	A	B3G85-67902
Hard disk drive kit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 320 GB encrypted hard disk drive • Cradle 	B	B3G85-67903
Hard disk drive kit (U.S. government only)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FIPS HDD 500 GB hard disk drive • Cradle 	B	B3G85-67904
Solid-state memory (SSM) kit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 8 GB SSM module • Retainer bracket 	B	B3G84-67907
1 GB memory DIMM kit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1 GB memory DIMM 	A	B3G84-67910
2 GB memory DIMM kit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 2 GB memory DIMM 	A	B3G84-67909
Fax card kit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • HP LaserJet MFP Analog Fax Accessory 500 	A	A2W77-67910
USB wireless print server kit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Jetdirect 2700w USB Wireless Print Server 	A	J8026-61001
NFC accessory kit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • HP Jetdirect 2800w NFC & Wireless Direct Accessory 	A	J8029-61001
Fuser service kit (110V)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 110V Fuser 	A	B3M77-67903
Fuser service kit (220V)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 220V Fuser 	A	B3M78-67903
Fuser entrance guide kit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Face-up open guide assembly 	A	B3G84-67904
Tray 1 roller kit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Paper pickup, feed, and separation rollers for Tray 1 	B	B3G84-67906
Tray 2–5 roller kit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Paper pickup and feed rollers for Trays 2–5 	A	B3G84-67905
Transfer roller kit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Transfer roller 	A	B3G84-67901
ADF roller maintenance kit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Document feeder roller • Document feeder separation pad 	A	L2725-60002
ADF separation pad spring kit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Document feeder separation pad spring 	A	5851-4879
ADF white backing kit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • White backing for the document feeder • Mylar strips 	A	5851-6084
Backside background selector kit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Backside background selector for the document feeder 	A	5851-5022
Service maintenance kit (110V)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 110V Fuser • Transfer roller • Tray 2–5 pickup and feed rollers 	A	B3M77-67902
Service maintenance kit (220V)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 220V Fuser • Transfer roller • Tray 2–5 pickup and feed rollers 	A	B3M78-67902

Table 2-4 Customer self-repair kits (continued)

Item	Description	CSR level	Part number
U.S. English keyboard kit (M630z)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> U.S. English keyboard 	A	5851-5380
U.K. English keyboard kit (M630z)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> U.K. English keyboard 	A	5851-5008
Keyboard overlay kit (M630z)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Keyboard overlay 	A	5851-6019 (FR, IT, RU, DE, ES: UK Kybd) 5851-6020 (FR-CN, ES-LA, ES: US Kybd) 5851-6021 (FR-SW, DE-SW, DA: UK Kybd) 5851-6022 (ZHTW, ZHCN) 5851-6023 (ES, PT) 5851-6024 (JA-KG, JA-KT)

Service replacement kits

Following are the service replacement kits available for the product that include installation instructions. These kits are not customer-replaceable and must be installed by authorized service providers.

See the diagrams and parts lists following [How to use the parts lists and diagrams on page 776](#) for a complete listing of all service parts available for the product.

Table 2-5 Service replacement kits

Item	Description	Part number
Front cover assembly kit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Front cover Nameplate Jewel 	B3G85-67905
Mylar kit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Mylar strips 	B3G86-67903
Scanner control board (SCB) kit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Scanner control board 	B3G86-67904
ADF whole unit kit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ADF whole unit ADF white backing 	B3G86-67901
Image scanner whole unit kit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Image scanner whole unit ADF white backing Mylar strips 	B3G86-67905


Accessories


Table 2-6 Accessories

Item	Description	Part number
1x500-sheet paper feeder	500-sheet paper feeder accessory	B3M73A (new)
		B3M73-67902 (service)
1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet	500-sheet paper feeder and storage cabinet accessory	B3M74A (new)
		B3M74-67902 (service)
2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder	2,500-sheet paper feeder accessory	B3M75A (new)
		B3M75-67902 (service)
Stapling mailbox	900-sheet, 3-bin stapling mailbox accessory	B3M76A (new)
		B3M76-67902 (service)
Envelope feeder	Envelope feeder accessory	B3G87A (new)
		B3G87-67902 (service)
HP LaserJet postcard media insert tray	Tray insert for printing small-size paper	CC497A (new)
		CC497-67902 (service)
HP LaserJet MFP Analog Fax Accessory 500	Analog fax accessory	CC487A (new)
		A2W77-67910 (service)
HP Jetdirect 2700w USB wireless print server	Accessory for wireless printing	J8026A (new)
		J8026-61001 (service)
HP Jetdirect 2800w NFC/wireless direct accessory	Wireless direct accessory for “touch” printing from mobile devices	J8029A (new)
		J8029-61001 (service)

How to use the parts lists and diagrams

The figures in this chapter show the major subassemblies in the product and their component parts. A parts list table follows each exploded view assembly diagram. Each table lists the item number, the associated part number, and the description of each part. If a part is not listed in the table, then it is not a field replacement unit (FRU).

 **CAUTION:** Be sure to order the correct part. When looking for part numbers for electrical components, pay careful attention to the voltage that is listed in the description column. Doing so will ensure that the part number selected is for the correct model.

 **NOTE:** In this manual, the abbreviation “PCA” stands for “printed circuit-board assembly.” Components described as a PCA might consist of a single circuit board or a circuit board plus other parts, such as cables and sensors.

Document feeder and scanner components

Figure 2-1 Document feeder and scanner components

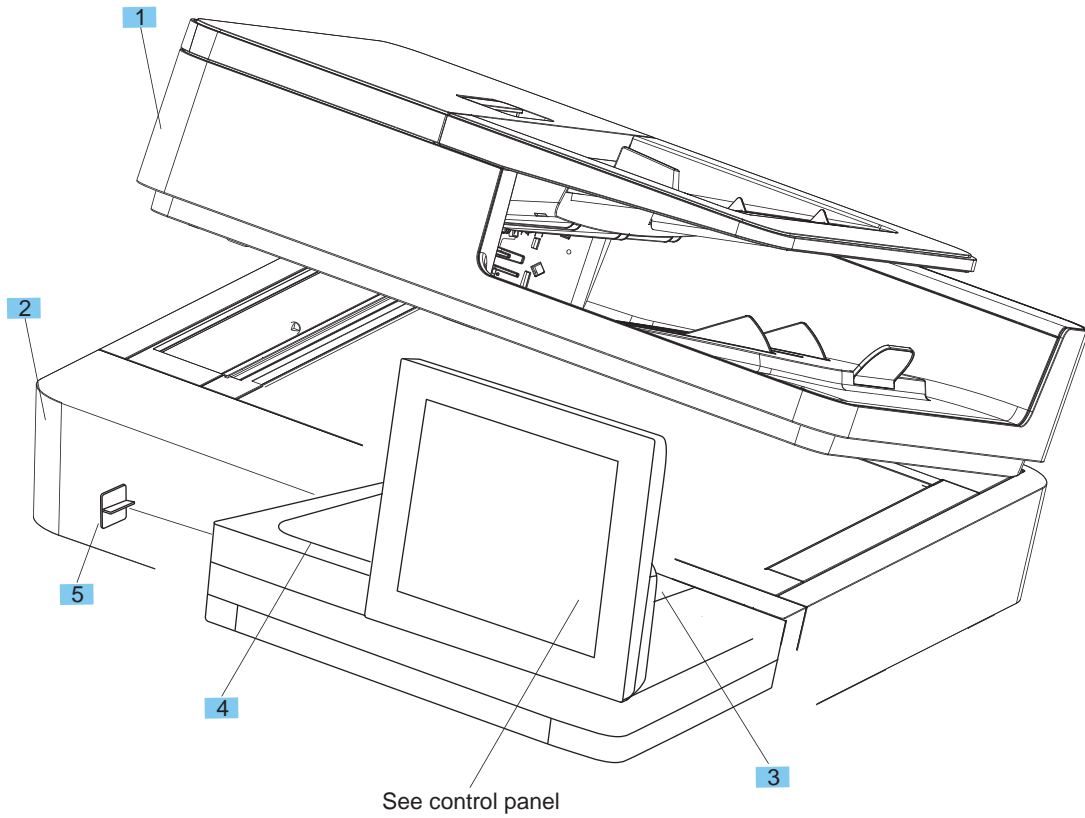


Table 2-7 Document feeder and scanner components

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Kit, document feeder, complete with white backing ¹	B3G86-67901	1
2	Kit, image scanner assembly, complete with white backing ²	B3G86-67905	1
3	Cover, control panel access	5042-9118	1
4	Cover, HIP	5851-5361	1
5	Cover, USB	5851-5360	1

¹ When the document feeder assembly is replaced, use the [Service](#) menu to set the [Document feeder Kit Interval](#), [ADF Count](#), and [Clean Rollers Count](#) values to zero.

² When the image scanner assembly is replaced, use the [Service](#) menu to set the [Flatbed Count](#) value to zero.

Document feeder components

Document feeder components (1 of 2)

Figure 2-2 Document feeder components (1 of 2)

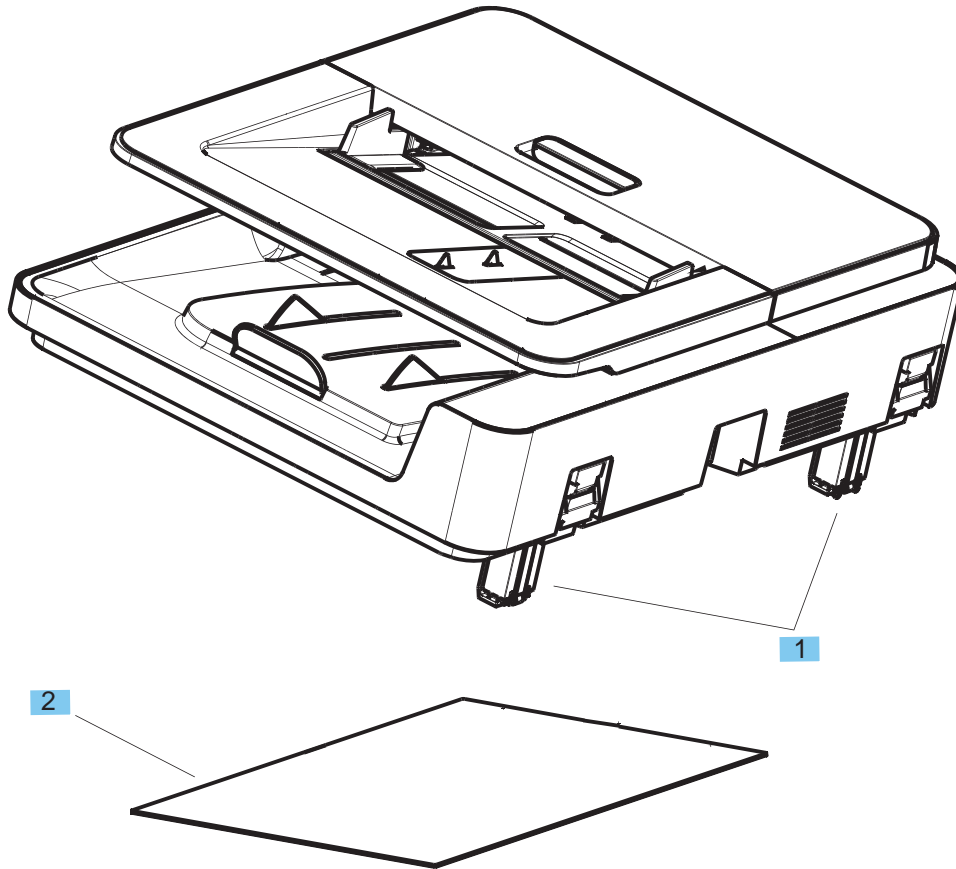


Table 2-8 Document feeder components (1 of 2)

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Assembly, Hinge HR	B4A39-60008	2
2	Kit, ADF white backing	5851-6084	1

Document feeder components (2 of 2)

Figure 2-3 Document feeder components (2 of 2)

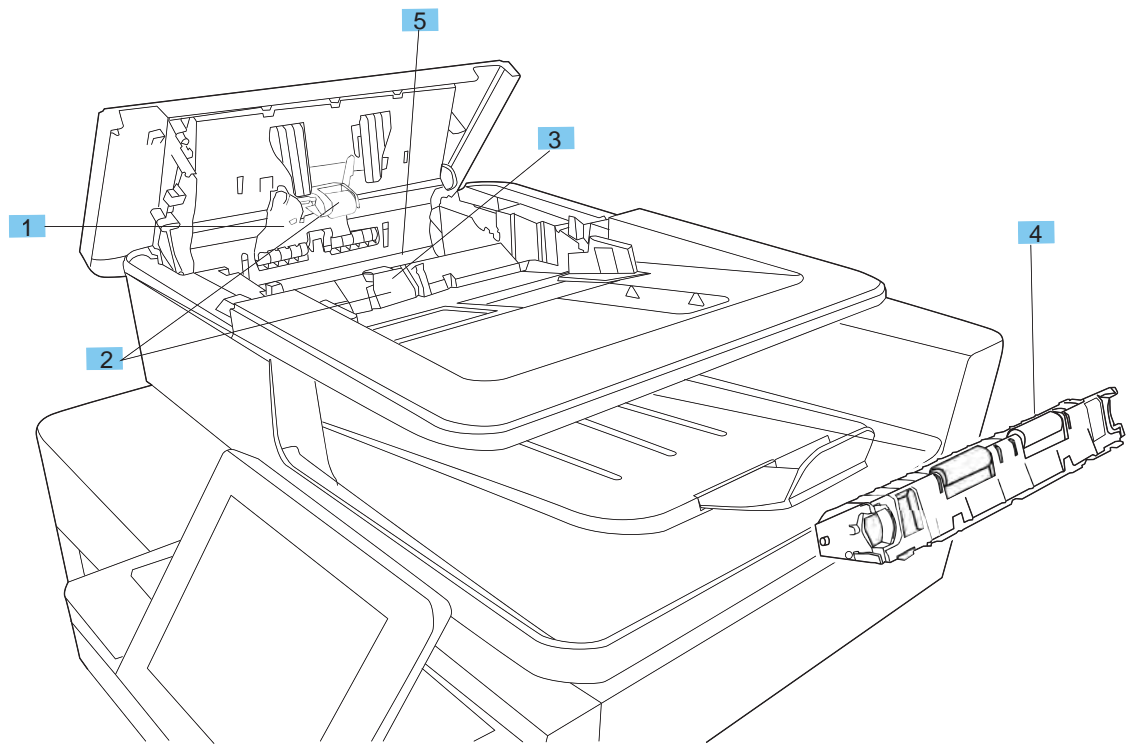


Table 2-9 Document feeder components (2 of 2)

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Cover, document-feeder roller	CC355-40013	1
2	Kit, ADF roller maintenance (includes roller and separation pad)	L2725-60002	1
3	Kit, ADF separation pad spring	5851-4879	1
4	Kit, background selector for backside scan	5851-5022	1
5	Kit, document feeder mylar strip	B3G86-67903	2

Scanner control board (SCB)

Figure 2-4 Scanner control board (SCB)

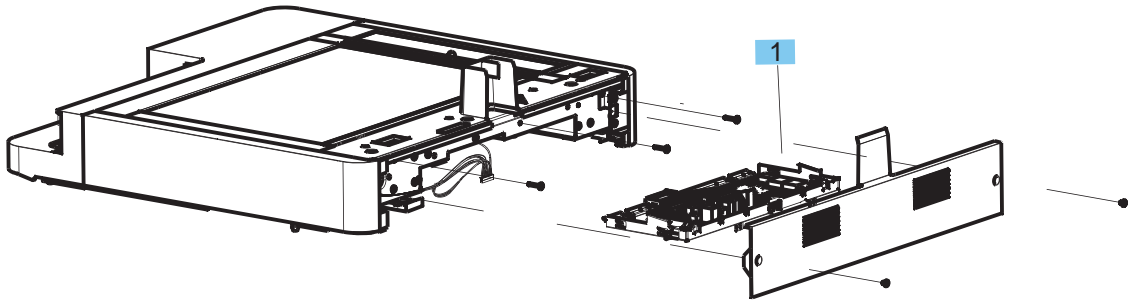


Table 2-10 Scanner control board (SCB)

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Scanner control board	B3G86-67904	1
Not shown	Cable, SCB wire harness	B3G84-60109	1
Not shown	Cable, SCB right	B3G84-60107	1
Not shown	Cable, SCB left	B3G84-60108	1

Control panel

Figure 2-5 Control panel

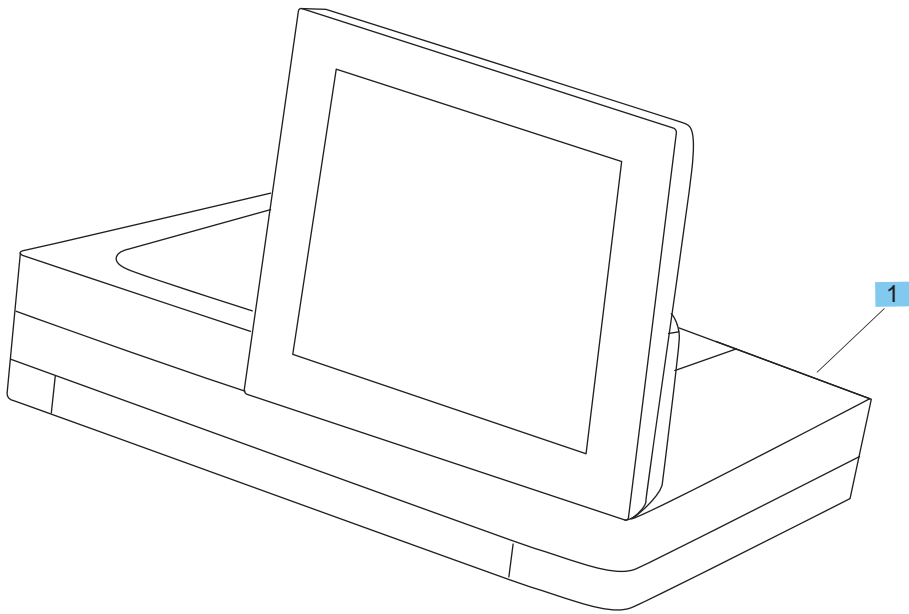


Table 2-11 Control panel

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Kit, control panel (without keyboard)	B3G84-67908	1
Not shown	Thumbscrew, control panel	5851-0660	1
Not shown	Kit, U.S. English keyboard (M630z)	5851-5380	1
Not shown	Kit, U.K. English keyboard (M630z)	5851-5008	1

Covers

Figure 2-6 Covers

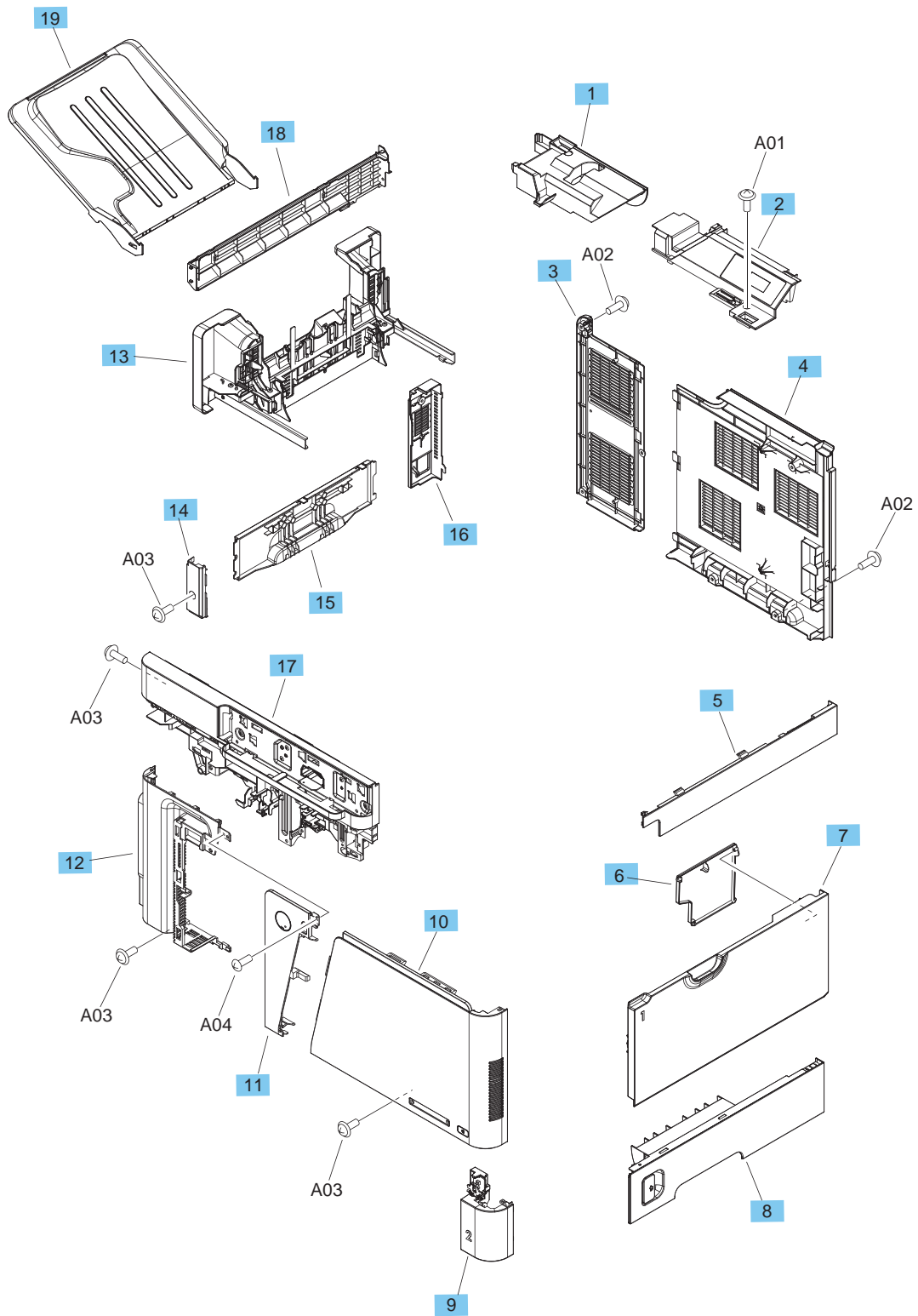


Table 2-12 Covers

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Cover, IS cable	RC4-1575-000CN	1
2	Cover, rear top	RC4-1574-000CN	1
3	Cover, rear left	RC4-5692-000CN	1
4	Cover, rear right	RL2-0999-000CN	1
5	Cover, IS right	RC4-1527-000CN	1
6	Cover, MP (Tray 1) inner	RC4-3948-000CN	1
7	Assembly, MP (Tray 1) cover	RM2-5816-000CN	1
8	Assembly, right lower door	RM2-5820-000CN	1
9	Assembly, power switch	RM2-5818-000CN	1
10	Kit, front cover assembly	B3G85-67905	1
11	Panel, logo	RL2-1000-000CN	1
12	Cover, front left	RC4-1515-000CN	1
13	Assembly, tray base (part of output bin assembly kit)	B3G84-69702	1
14	Cover, front left lower	RC4-5717-000CN	1
15	Cover, cassette (Tray 2) left	RC4-1573-000CN	1
16	Cover, side rear	RC4-5716-000CN	1
17	Assembly, front top cover	RM2-5814-000CN	1
18	Cover, IS left lower	RC4-5693-000CN	1
19	Assembly, paper delivery tray (part of output bin assembly kit)	B3G84-69702	1

Upper plate assembly

Figure 2-7 Upper plate assembly

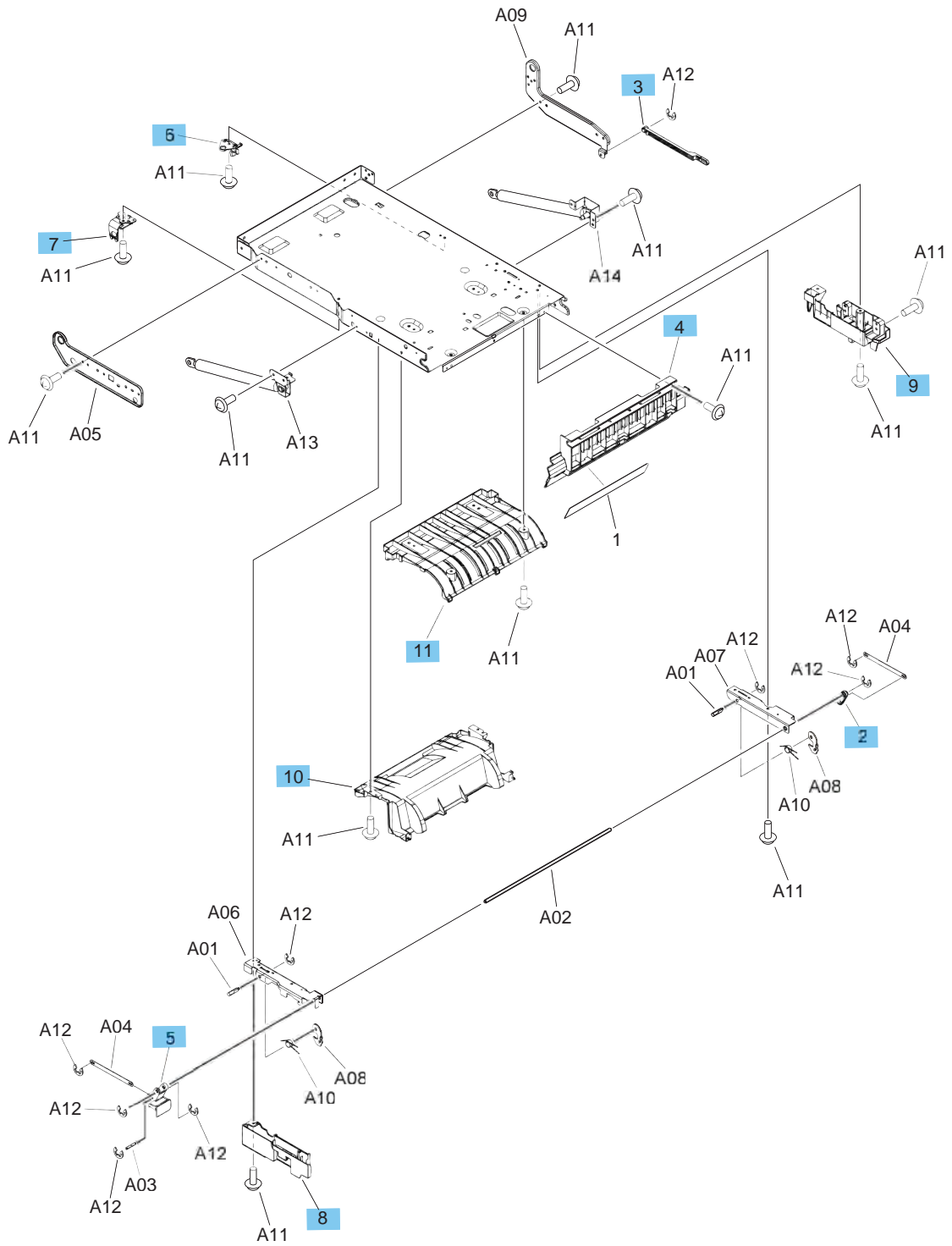


Table 2-13 Upper plate assembly

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
2	Link, handle	RC1-2822-000CN	1
3	Rod, link	RC4-5729-000CN	1
4	Holder, shutter, light	RC4-5707-000CN	1
5	Handle, lock	RC4-5690-000CN	1
6	Block upper guide support, rear	RC4-1531-000CN	1
7	Block upper guide support, front	RC4-1530-000CN	1
8	Cover, IS lock, front	RC4-5721-000CN	1
9	Cover, IS lock, rear	RC4-1537-000CN	1
10	Guide, cartridge, upper	RC4-1529-000CN	1
11	Guide, legal	RC2-8029-000CN	1

Internal components

Internal components (1 of 5)

Figure 2-8 Internal components (1 of 5)

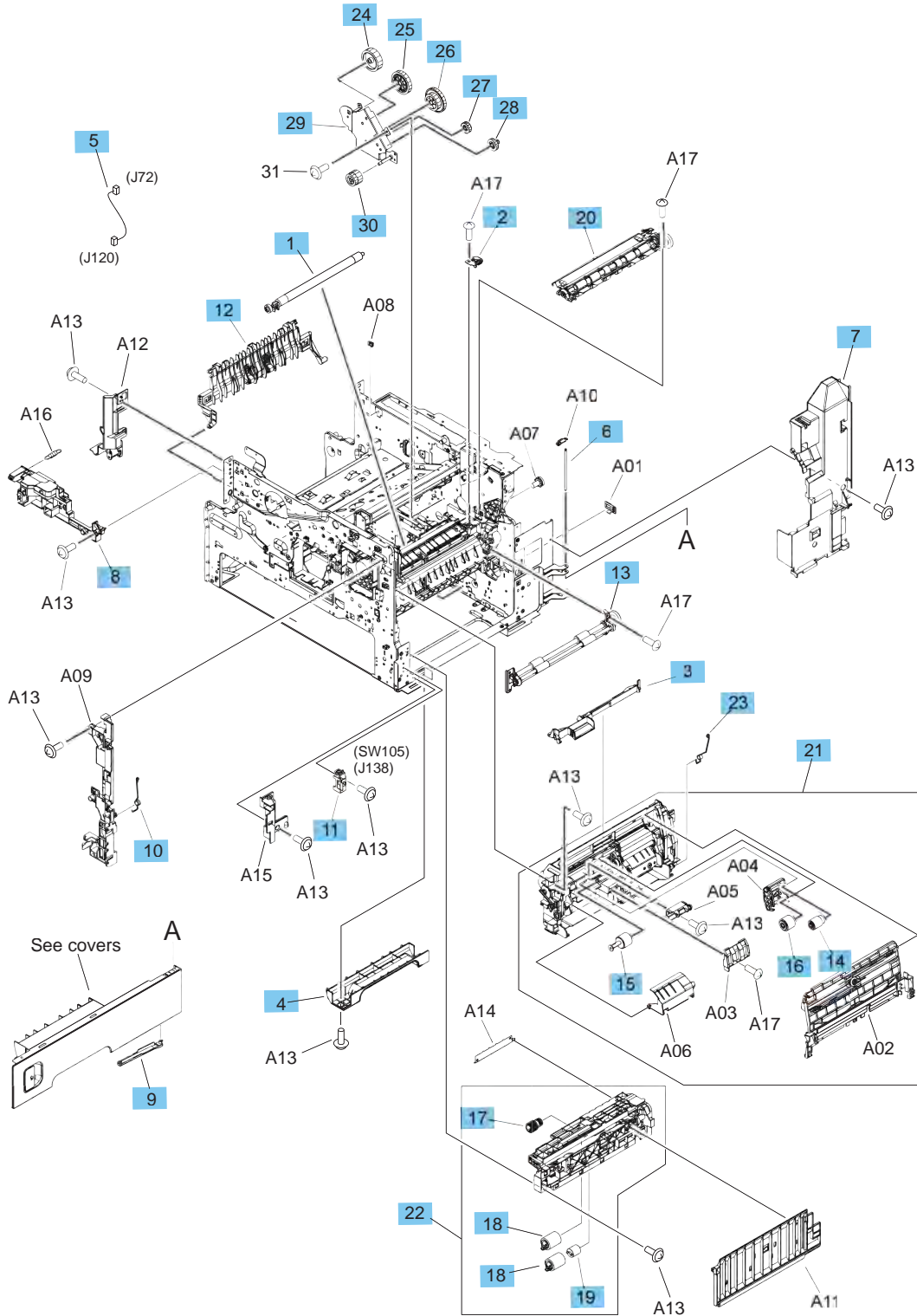


Table 2-14 Internal components (1 of 5)

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Kit, transfer roller	B3G84-67901	1
2	Assembly, grounding plate	RM1-5461-000CN	1
3	Cover, envelope	RL1-2831-000CN	1
4	Cover, handle right lower	RC4-5706-000CN	1
5	Cable, size detect (SW102)	RM1-7179-000CN	1
6	Shaft, right door hinge	RU5-4142-000CN	1
7	Cover, MP (Tray 1) gear	RC4-1572-000CN	1
8	Assembly, lifter base	RM1-5913-000CN	1
9	Rod, link	RC1-2902-000CN	1
10	Spring, torsion	RC2-8085-000CN	1
11	Assembly, right door sensor (SW105)	RM1-1045-000CN	1
12	Kit, fuser-entrance guide	B3G84-67904	1
13	Assembly, paper feed roller	RM1-8411-010CN	1
14	Roller, Tray 1 pickup (part of Tray 1 roller kit)	B3G84-67906	1
15	Roller, Tray 1 separation (part of Tray 1 roller kit)	B3G84-67906	1
16	Roller, Tray 1 feed (part of Tray 1 roller kit)	B3G84-67906	1
17	Roller, Tray 2 pickup (part of Tray 2-5 roller kit)	B3G84-67905	1
18	Roller, Tray 2 feed (part of Tray 2-5 roller kit)	B3G84-67905	2
19	Limiters, torque	RC1-3293-000CN	1
20	Assembly, registration	RM1-8413-000CN	1
21	Assembly, MP (Tray 1) pickup	RM2-5822-000CN	1
22	Assembly, paper pickup	RM1-5919-000CN	1
23	Spring, torsion	RC3-1470-000CN	1
24	Gear, 33T	RU7-0292-000CN	1
25	Gear, 35T	RU7-0303-000CN	1
26	Gear, 91T/25T	RU7-0290-000CN	1
27	Gear, 15T	RU7-0294-000CN	1
28	Gear, 17T	RU7-0293-000CN	1
29	Side plate, fuser drive	RL1-3024-000CN	1
30	Gear, 23T/19T	RU7-0295-000CN	1

Internal components (2 of 5)

Figure 2-9 Internal components (2 of 5)

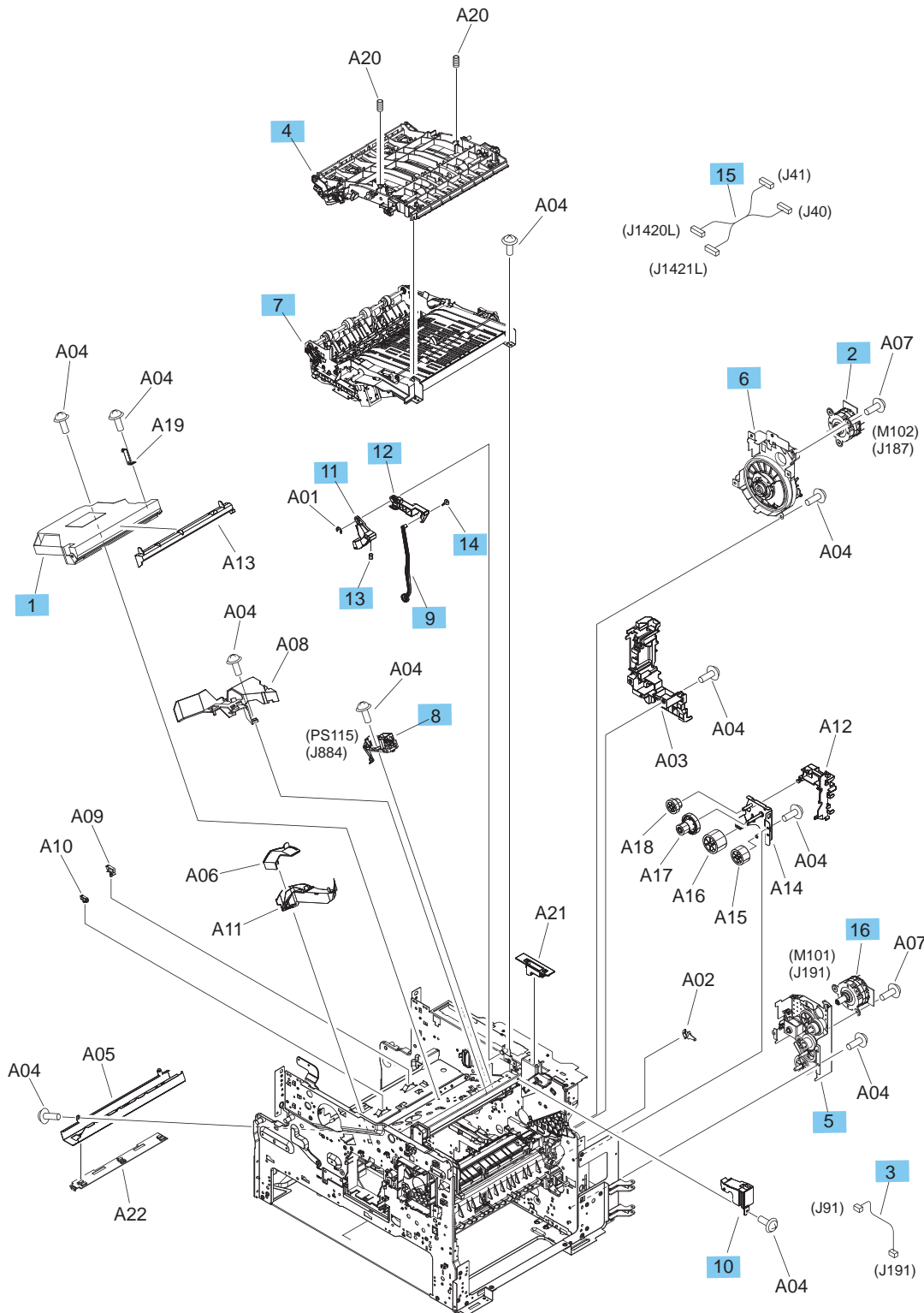


Table 2-15 Internal components (2 of 5)

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Assembly, laser/scanner	RM1-8406-000CN	1
2	Assembly, drum motor (M102)	RM1-8358-000CN	1
3	Assembly, feed motor cable	RM2-7470-000CN	1
4	Assembly, reverse guide	RM2-5810-000CN	1
5	Assembly, paper pickup drive	RM2-5804-000CN	1
6	Assembly, drum drive	RM2-5918-000CN	1
7	Assembly, reverse	RM2-5799-000CN	1
8	Assembly, cartridge sensor (PS115)	RM1-8323-000CN	1
9	Rod, release	RC2-8086-000CN	1
10	Cover, door arm	RC1-2833-000CN	1
11	Arm, door B	RC2-7967-000CN	1
12	Arm, door 1	RC4-5728-000CN	1
13	Spring, compression	RU5-2265-000CN	1
14	Stopper, bushing arm	RC1-3090-000CN	1
15	Assembly, reverse joint cable	RM2-7487-000CN	1
16	Assembly, feed motor (M101)	RM2-5942-000CN	1

Internal components (3 of 5)

Figure 2-10 Internal components (3 of 5)

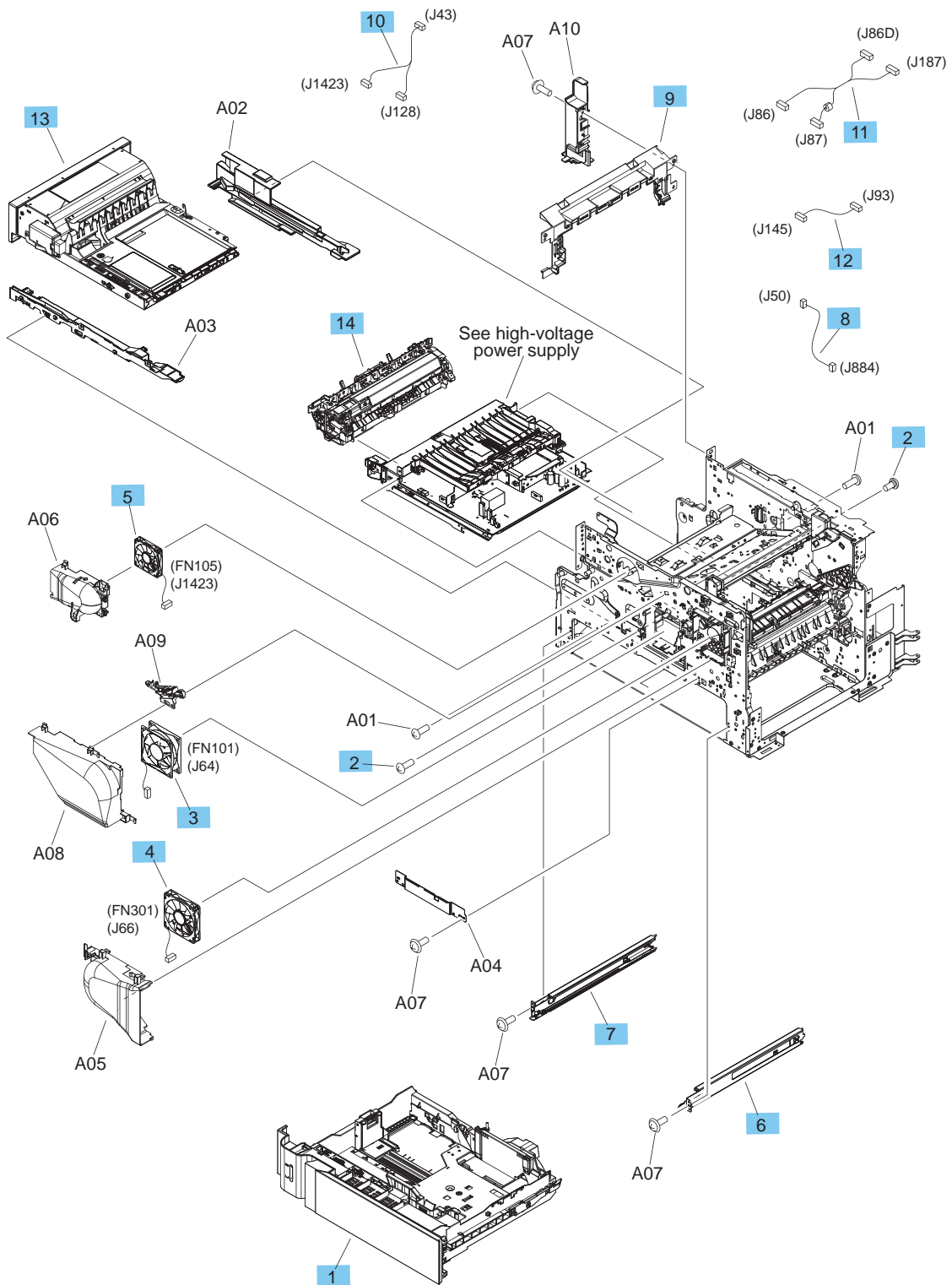


Table 2-16 Internal components (3 of 5)

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Cassette (Tray 2)	RM2-5094-000CN	1
2	Screw, M4x5	RC2-2633-000CN	2
3	Fan (FN101)	RK2-1988-000CN	1
4	Fan (FN301)	RK2-3244-000CN	1
5	Fan (FN105)	RK2-0280-000CN	1
6	Assembly, cassette (Tray 2) right rail	RM1-5931-000CN	1
7	Assembly, cassette (Tray 2) left rail	RM1-5932-000CN	1
8	Assembly, cartridge sensor cable	RM2-7477-000CN	1
9	Shroud, center	RL2-0995-000CN	1
10	Assembly, reverse fan cable	RM2-7486-000CN	1
11	Assembly, scanner joint cable	RM2-7471-000CN	1
12	Assembly, laser scanner cable	RM2-7482-000CN	1
13	Kit, duplex assembly	B3G84-67903	1
14	Kit, fuser replacement, 110V	B3M77-67903	1
14	Kit, fuser replacement, 220V	B3M78-67903	1

Internal components (4 of 5)

Figure 2-11 Internal components (4 of 5)

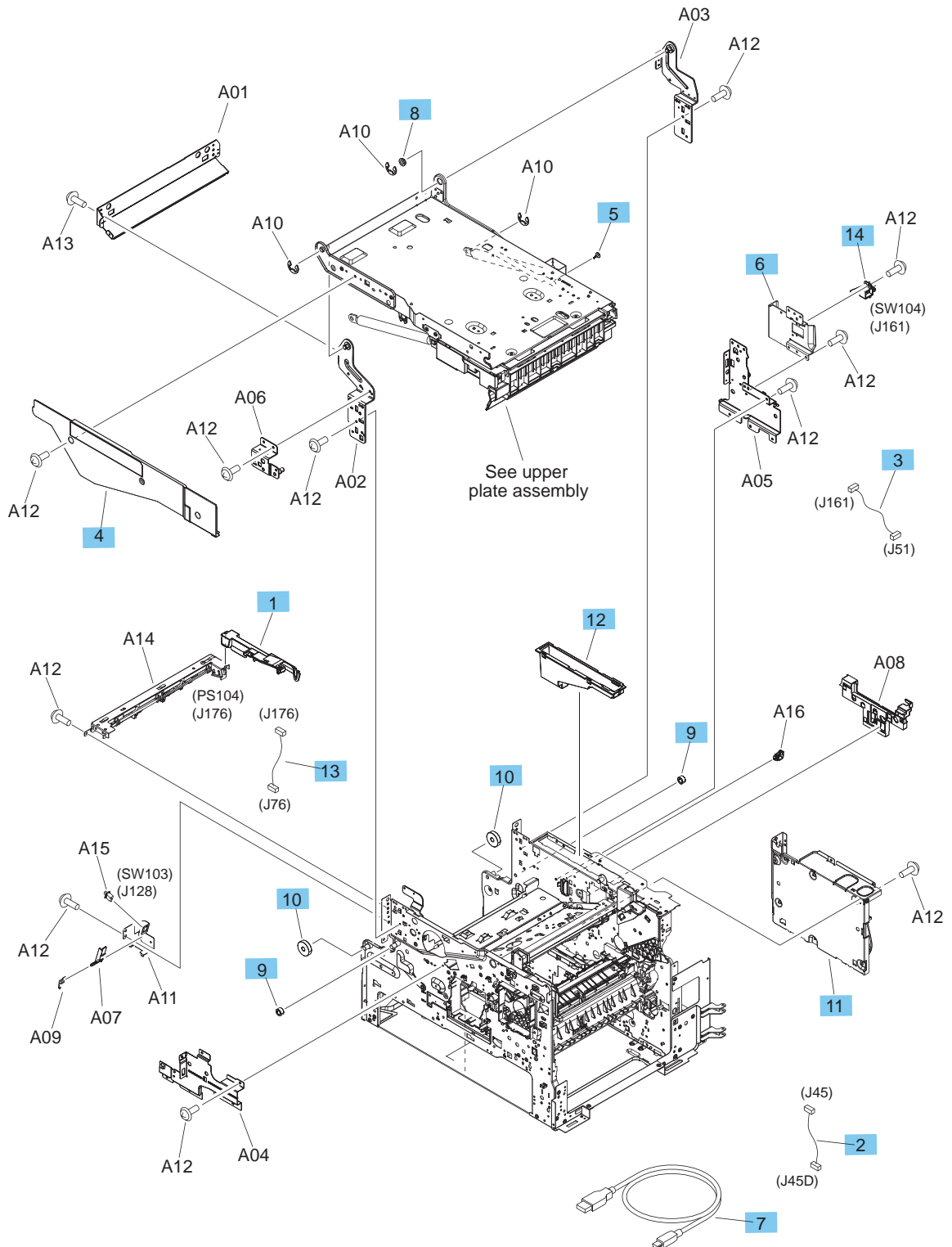


Table 2-17 Internal components (4 of 5)

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Cover, reverse side rear	RC1-2852-000CN	1
2	Assembly, IS power cable	RM2-7491-000CN	1
3	Assembly, option sensor cable	RM2-7484-000CN	1
4	Cover, IS front	RL2-0996-000CN	1
5	Stopper, bushing arm	RC1-3090-000CN	1
6	Assembly, mounting plate	RM2-5917-000CN	1
7	Cable, USB	RK2-6506-000CN	1
8	Bushing	RC4-1569-000CN	1
9	Roller, delivery option 1	RC1-2892-000CN	2
10	Roller, delivery option 2	RC1-2893-000CN	2
11	Low-voltage power supply, 110V	RM2-5792-000CN	1
11	Low-voltage power supply, 220V	RM2-5793-000CN	1
12	Guard, gas spring edge, rear	RC1-2886-000CN	1
13	Assembly, full sensor cable	RM2-7480-000CN	1
14	Assembly, push button switch (SW104)	RM1-7374-000CN	1

Internal components (5 of 5)

Figure 2-12 Internal components (5 of 5)

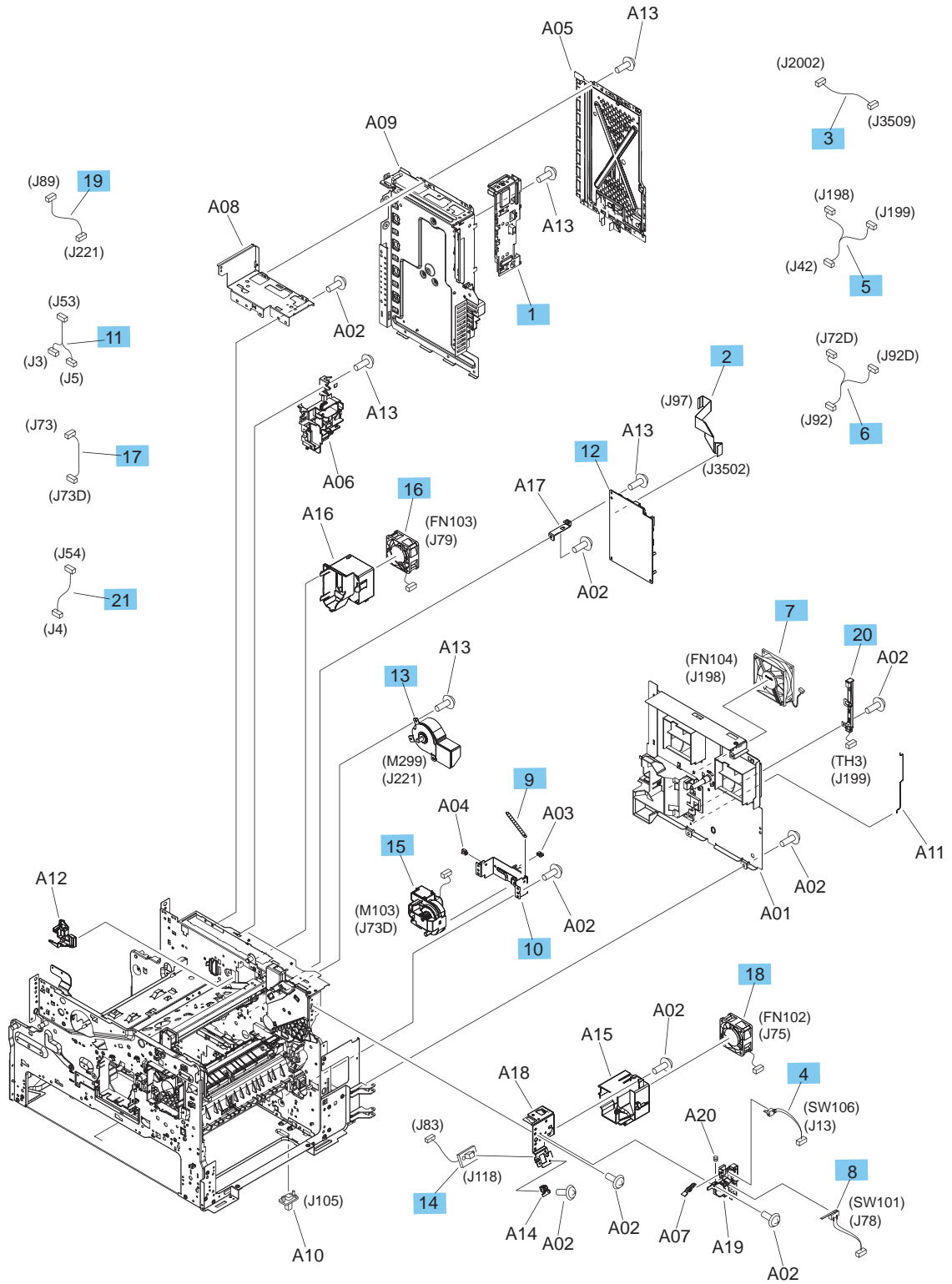


Table 2-18 Internal components (5 of 5)

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Assembly, interconnect board (ICB) PCA	RM2-5791-000CN	1
2	Cable, flat	RK2-6508-000CN	1
3	Assembly, side band cable	RM2-7474-000CN	1
4	Assembly, door sensor cable (SW106)	RM2-7476-000CN	1
5	Assembly, environmental sensor cable	RM2-7473-000CN	1
6	Cable, P sensor solenoid	RM1-7170-000CN	1
7	Fan (FN104)	RK2-6509-000CN	1
8	Assembly, door switch cable (SW101)	RM2-7478-000CN	1
9	Spring, tension	RU6-2475-000CN	1
10	Support, lifter	RC2-6441-000CN	1
11	Assembly, DC controller cable	RM2-7479-000CN	1
12	Assembly, DC controller PCA	RM2-7458-000CN	1
13	Assembly, fuser motor (M299)	RM1-5051-020CN	1
14	Cable, envelope feeder	RM1-5085-000CN	1
15	Assembly, lifter (M103)	RM1-5914-000CN	1
16	Fan (FN103)	RK2-1992-000CN	1
17	Cable, lifter motor	RM1-7162-000CN	1
18	Fan (FN102)	RK2-1989-000CN	1
19	Cable, fuser motor	RM1-7159-000CN	1
20	Assembly, temperature sensor (TH3)	RM1-7420-000CN	1
21	Assembly, DC controller cable	RM2-7481-000CN	1

High-voltage power supply

Figure 2-13 High-voltage power supply

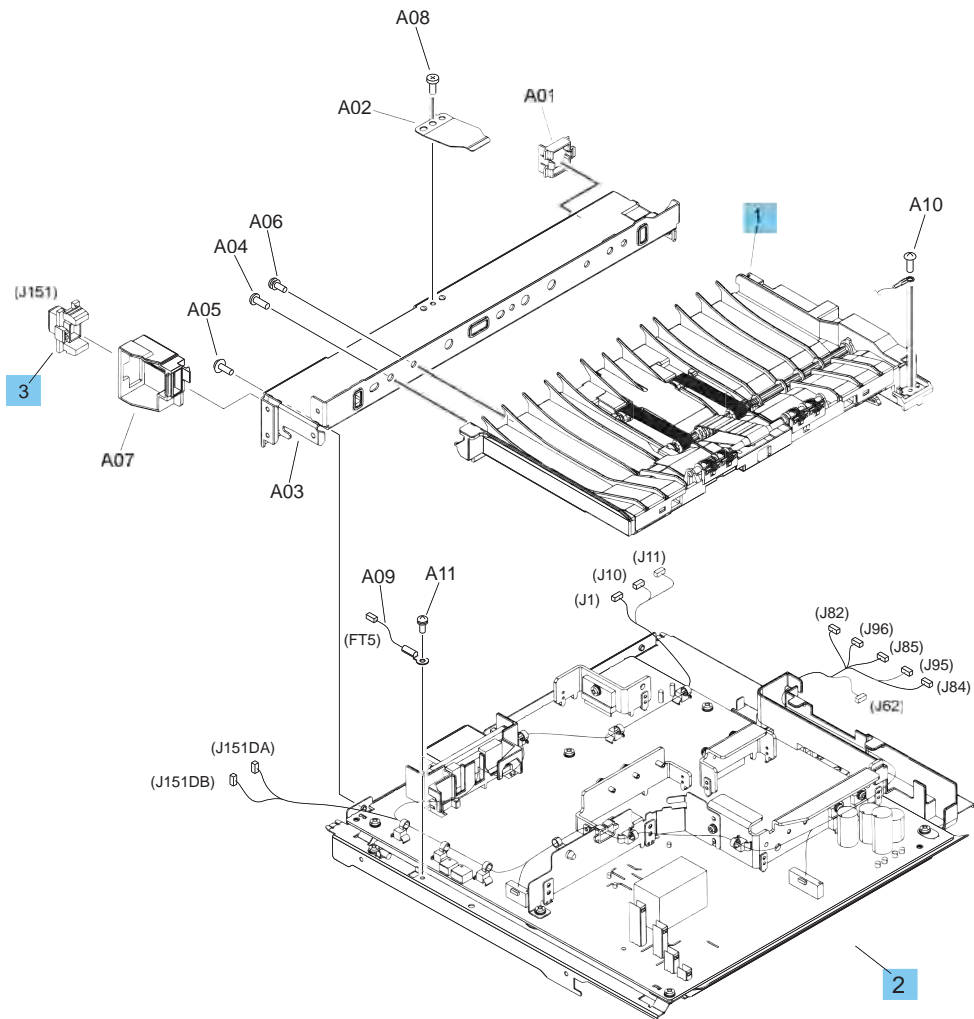


Table 2-19 High-voltage power supply

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Assembly, paper feed	RM1-4548-000CN	1
2	High-voltage power supply 110V	RM2-5826-000CN	1
2	High-voltage power supply 220V	RM2-5827-000CN	1
3	Connector, drawer	WS1-6336-000CN	1

1x500-sheet paper feeder

1x500-sheet paper feeder covers

Figure 2-14 500-sheet paper feeder covers

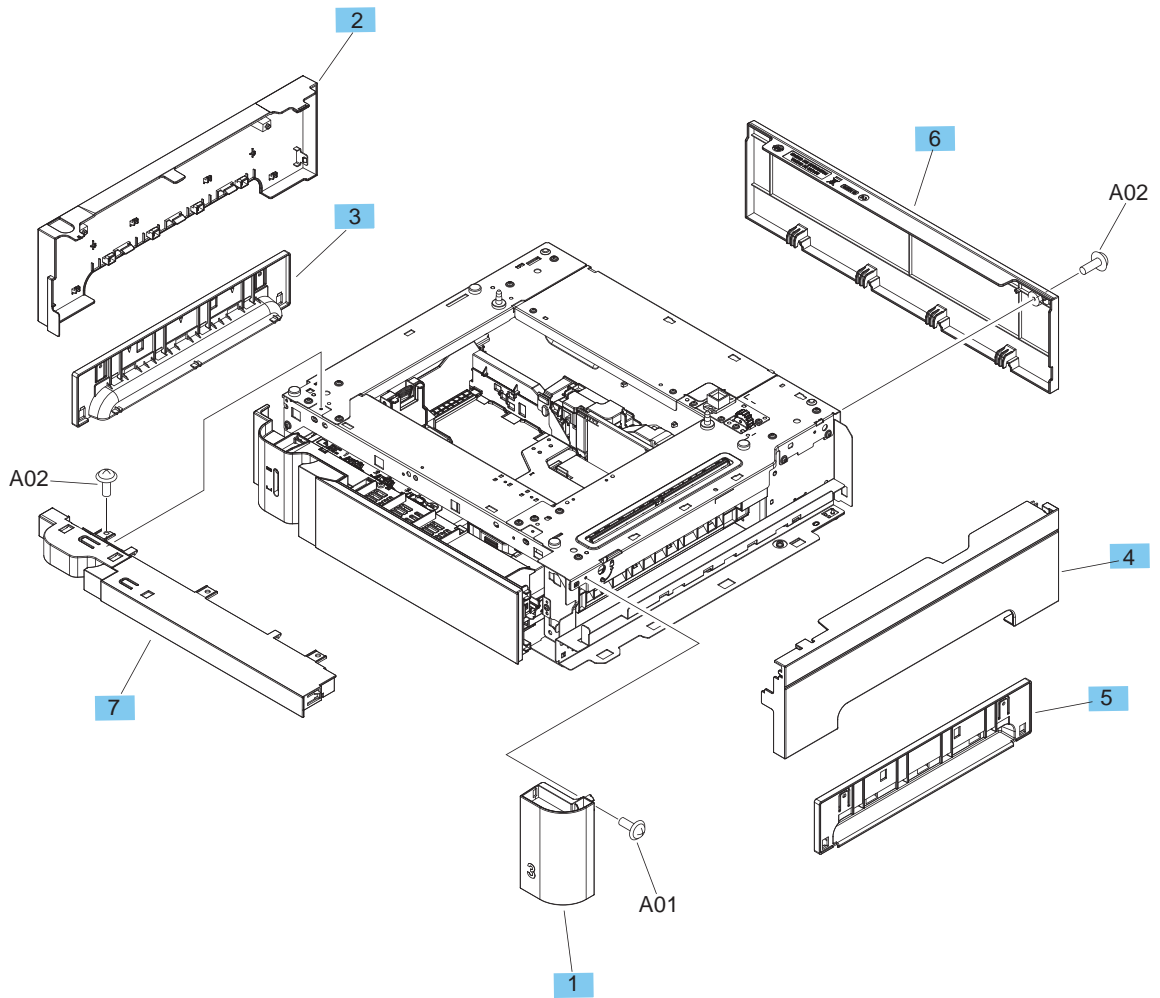


Table 2-20 1x500-sheet paper feeder covers

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Cover, right front (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RC4-1638-000CN	1
2	Cover, left (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RC4-1966-000CN	1
3	Cover, handle, left (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RC4-1967-000CN	1
4	Cover, right (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RC4-1968-000CN	1
5	Cover, handle, right (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RC4-1969-000CN	1
6	Cover, rear (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RC4-1970-000CN	1
7	Assembly, front upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RM2-5106-000CN	1

1x500-sheet paper feeder components

Figure 2-15 1x500-sheet paper feeder components

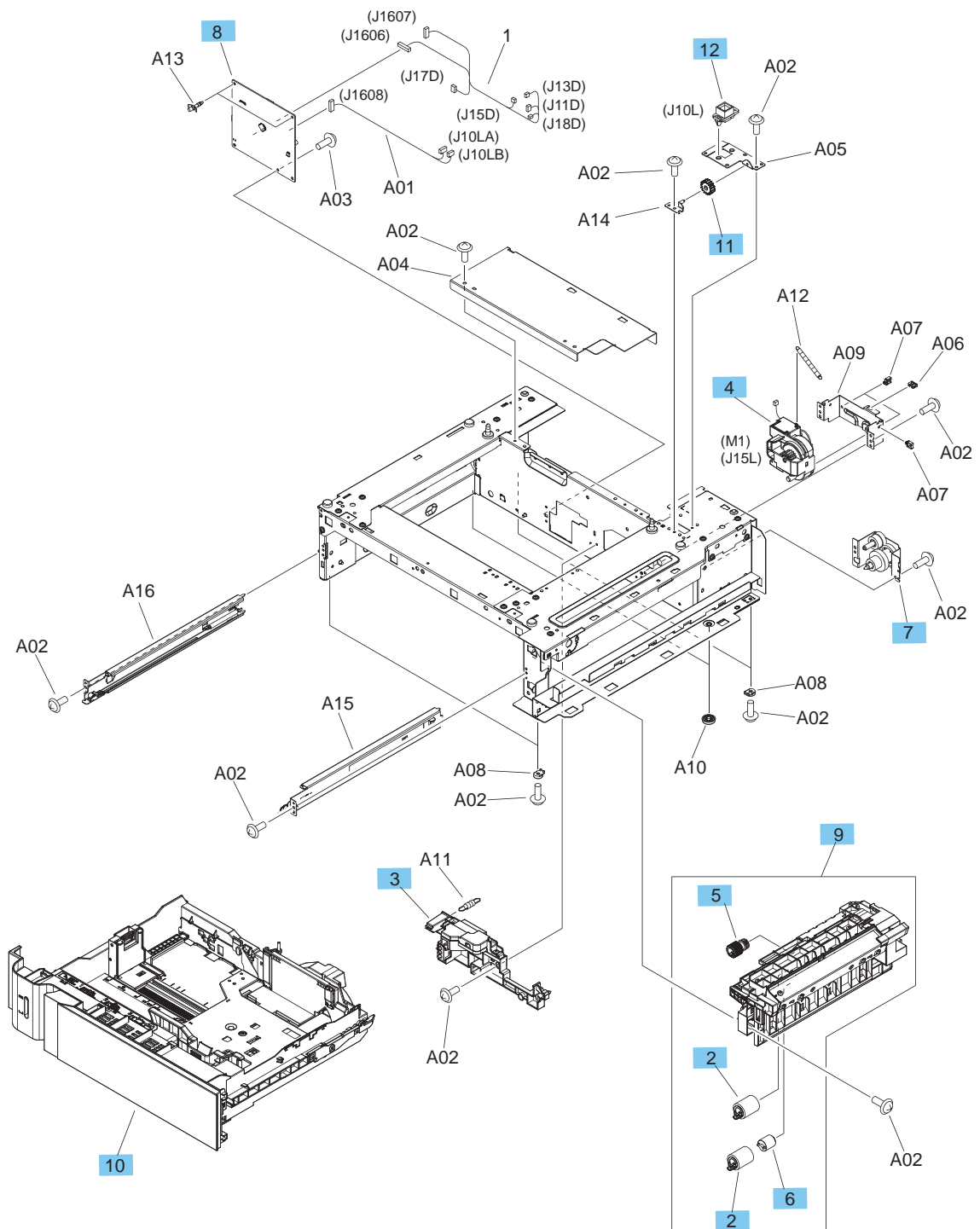


Table 2-21 1x500-sheet paper feeder components

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
2	Roller, paper feed/separation (1x500-sheet paper feeder) (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	B3G84-67905	2
3	Assembly, lifter base (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RM1-5913-000CN	1
4	Assembly, lifter (M1) (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RM1-5914-000CN	1
5	Roller, paper pickup (1x500-sheet paper feeder) (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	B3G84-67905	1
6	Limitter, torque (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RC1-3293-000CN	1
7	Assembly, paper pickup drive (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RM1-5941-000CN	1
8	Assembly, controller PCA (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RM2-8002-000CN	1
9	Assembly, paper pickup (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RM2-0341-000CN	1
10	Assembly, cassette (tray) (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RM2-5094-000CN	1
11	Gear, 16T	RU5-0083-000CN	1
12	Connector, drawer 6P	VS1-7500-006CN	1

1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet

1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers

Figure 2-16 1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers

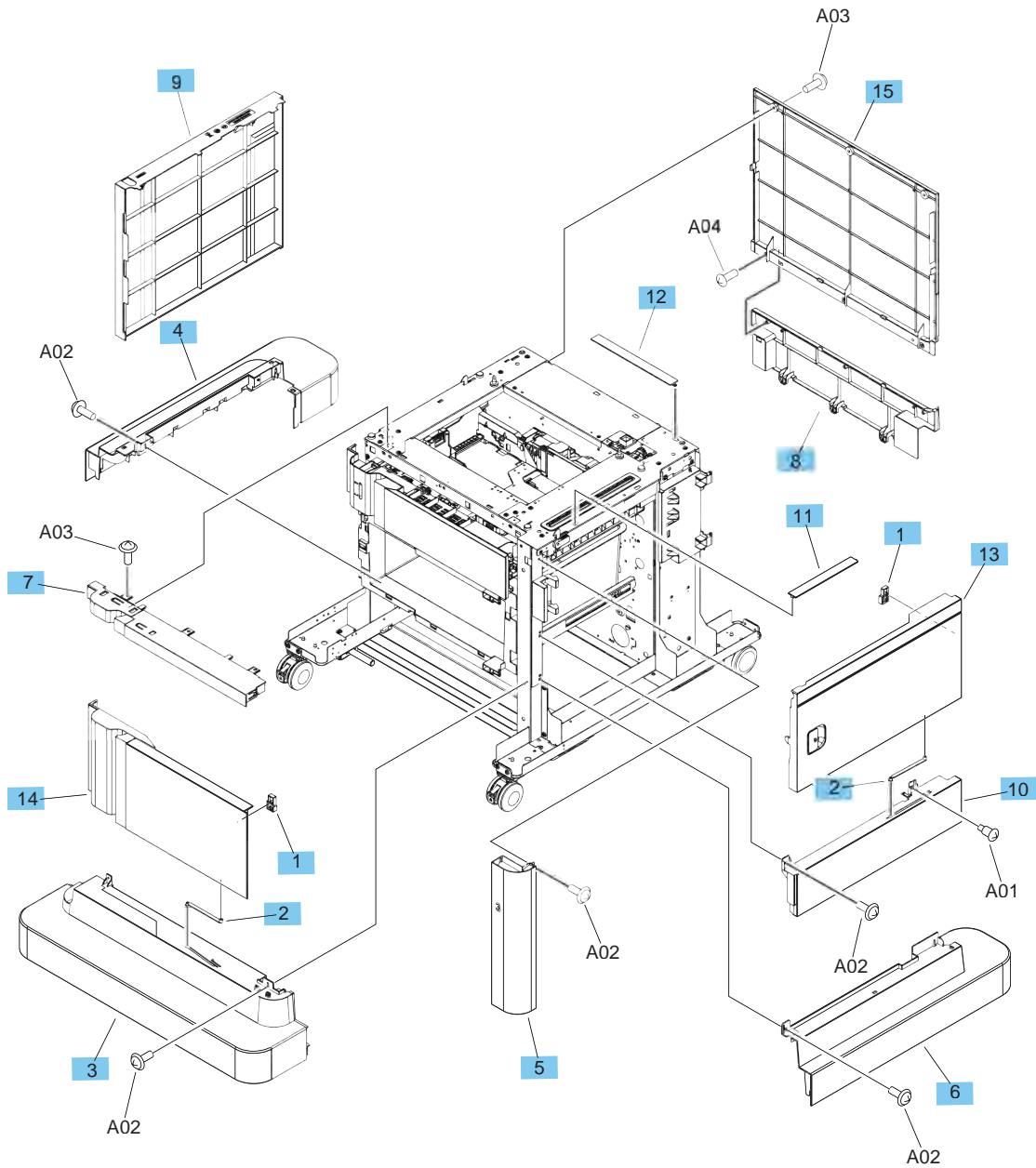


Table 2-22 1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Stopper, front door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC2-2666-000CN	2
2	Link, door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC2-6438-000CN	2
3	Cover, front lower (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC4-1632-000CN	1
4	Cover, left lower (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC4-1633-000CN	1
5	Cover, right front (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC4-1636-000CN	1
6	Cover, right lower (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC4-1643-000CN	1
7	Assembly, front upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RM2-5106-000CN	1
8	Cover, rear lower (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC4-1958-000CN	1
9	Cover, left (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC4-1959-000CN	1
10	Cover, right center (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC4-1961-000CN	1
11	Cover, right upper (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC4-1962-000CN	1
12	Cover, rear upper (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC4-1964-000CN	1
13	Assembly, right door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RM2-5104-000CN	1
14	Assembly, stock door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RM2-5105-000CN	1
15	Cover, rear (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC4-1957-000CN	1

1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components

Figure 2-17 1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components

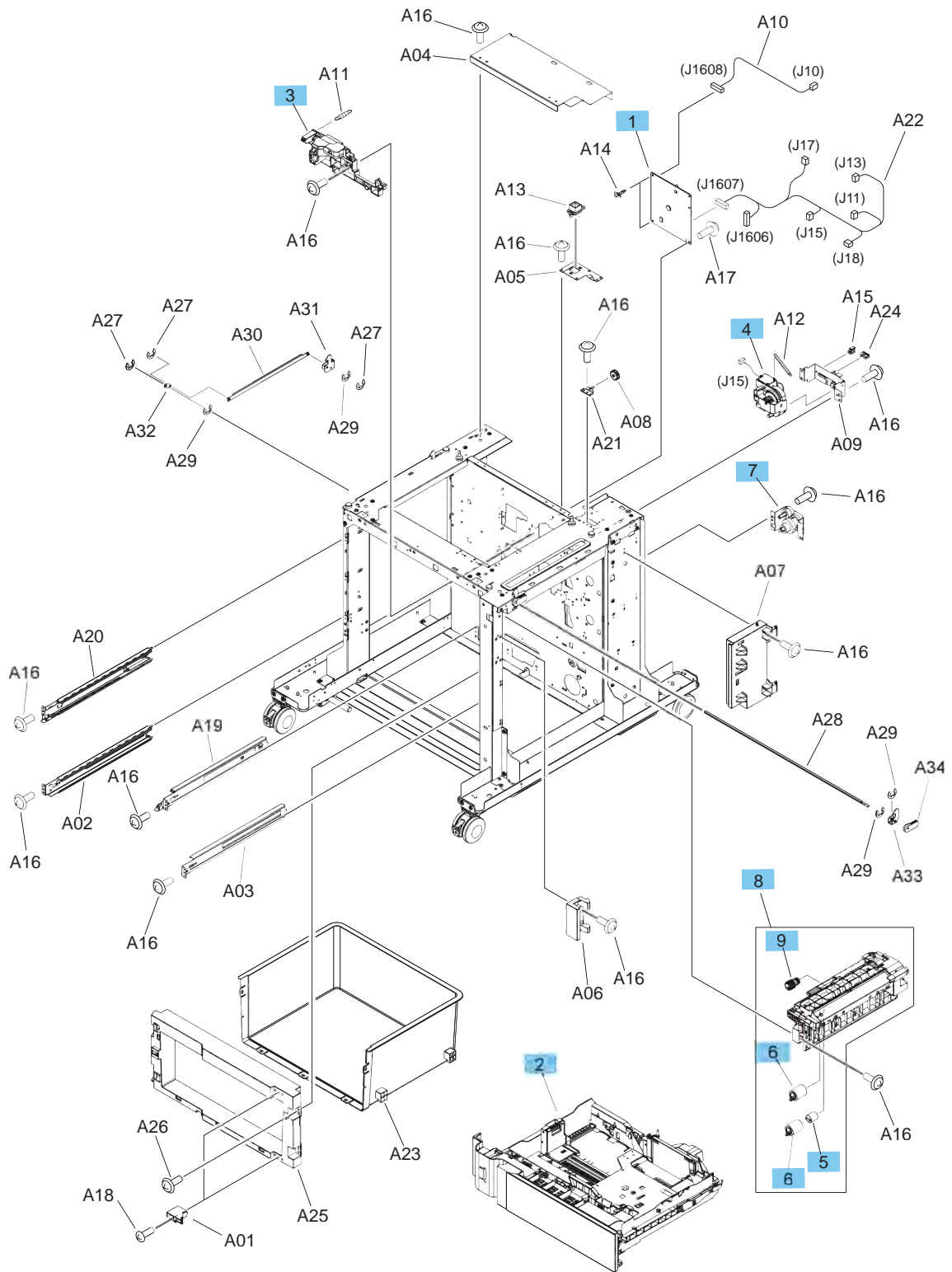


Table 2-23 1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Assembly, controller PCA (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RM2-8002-000CN	1
2	Assembly, cassette (tray) (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RM2-5094-000CN	1
3	Assembly, lifter base (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RM1-5913-000CN	1
4	Assembly, lifter (M1) (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RM1-5914-000CN	1
5	Limiters, torque (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC1-3293-000CN	1
6	Roller, paper feed/separation (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	B3G84-67905	2
7	Assembly, paper pickup drive (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RM1-5941-000CN	1
8	Assembly, paper pickup (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RM2-0341-000CN	1
9	Roller, paper pickup (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	B3G84-67905	1

2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder

2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers

Figure 2-18 2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers

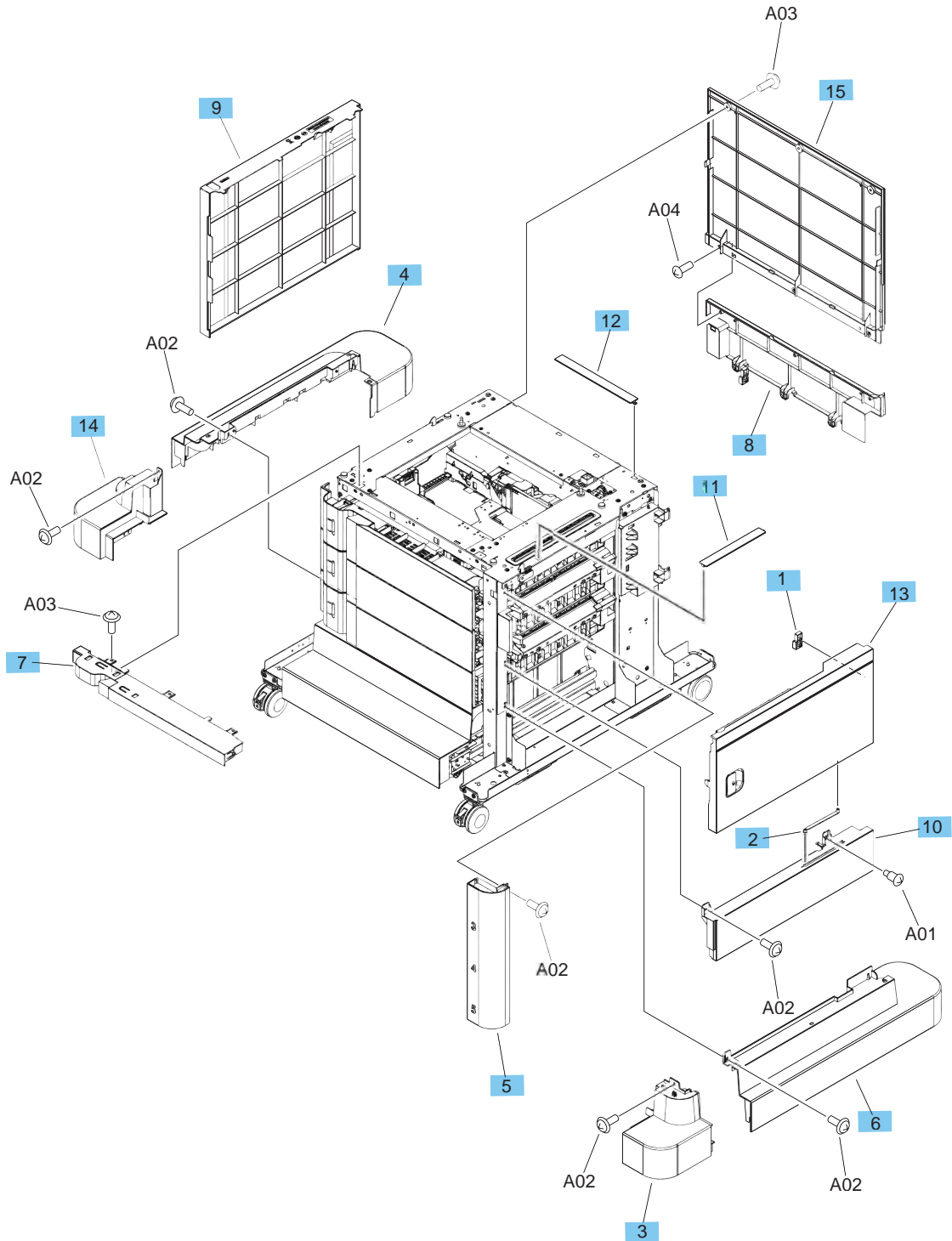


Table 2-24 2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Stopper, front door (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC2-2666-000CN	1
2	Link, door (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC2-6438-000CN	1
3	Cover, front lower right (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1639-000CN	1
4	Cover, left lower (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1633-000CN	1
5	Cover, right front (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1637-000CN	1
6	Cover, right lower (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1643-000CN	1
7	Assembly, front upper cover (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM2-5106-000CN	1
8	Cover, rear lower (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1958-000CN	1
9	Cover, left (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1959-000CN	1
10	Cover, right center (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1961-000CN	1
11	Cover, right upper (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1962-000CN	1
12	Cover, rear upper (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1964-000CN	1
13	Assembly, right door (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM2-5101-000CN	1
14	Cover, front lower left (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1640-000CN	1
15	Cover, rear (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1957-000CN	1

2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (1 of 2)

Figure 2-19 2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (1 of 2)

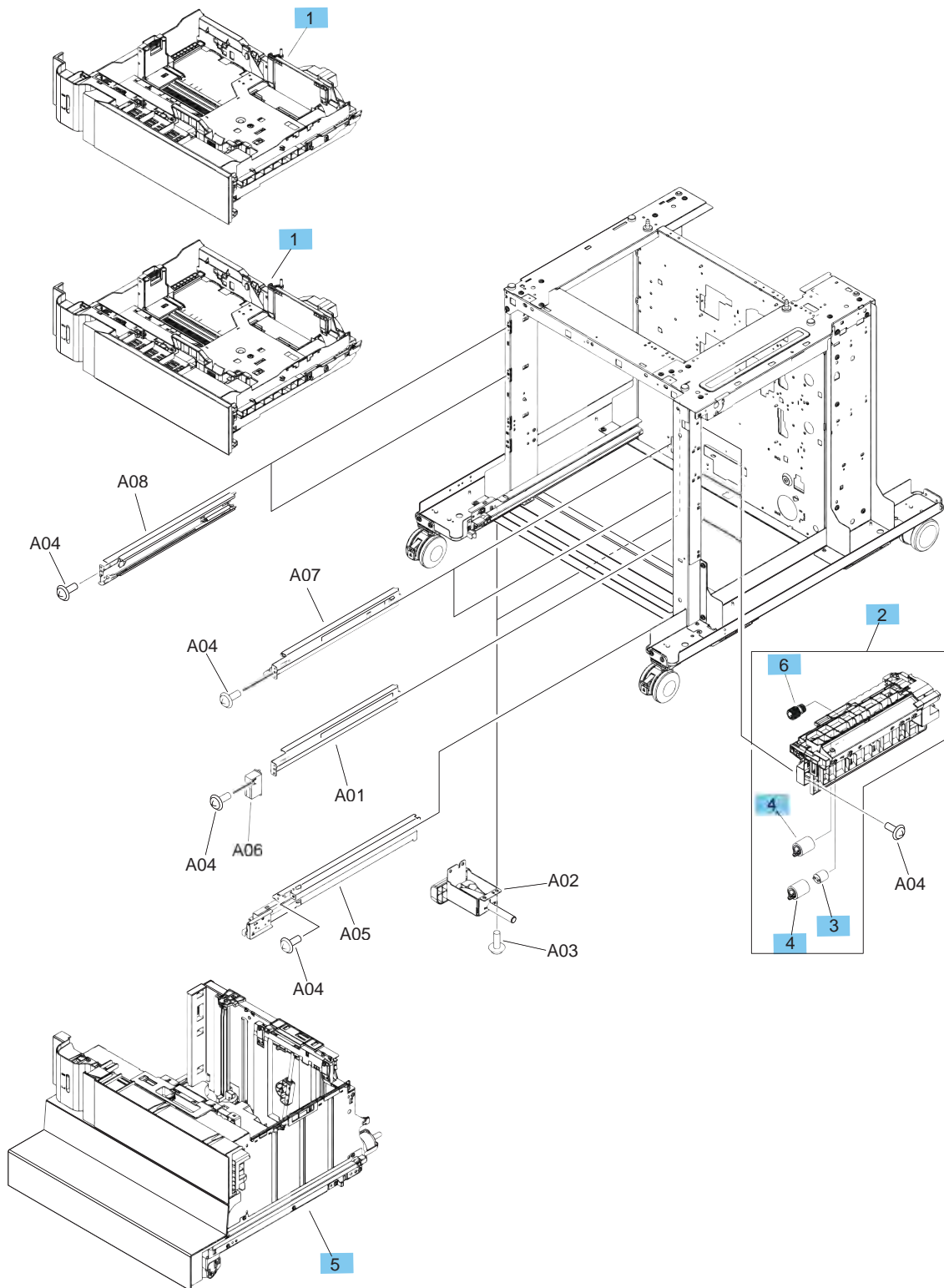


Table 2-25 2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (1 of 2)

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Assembly, cassette (tray) (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM2-5094-000CN	2
2	Assembly, paper pickup (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM2-0341-000CN	3
3	Limiter, torque (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC1-3293-000CN	3
4	Roller, paper feed/separation (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder) (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	B3G84-67905	6
5	Assembly, tray (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM2-5100-000CN	1
6	Roller, paper pickup (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder) (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	B3G84-67905	3

2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (2 of 2)

Figure 2-20 2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (2 of 2)

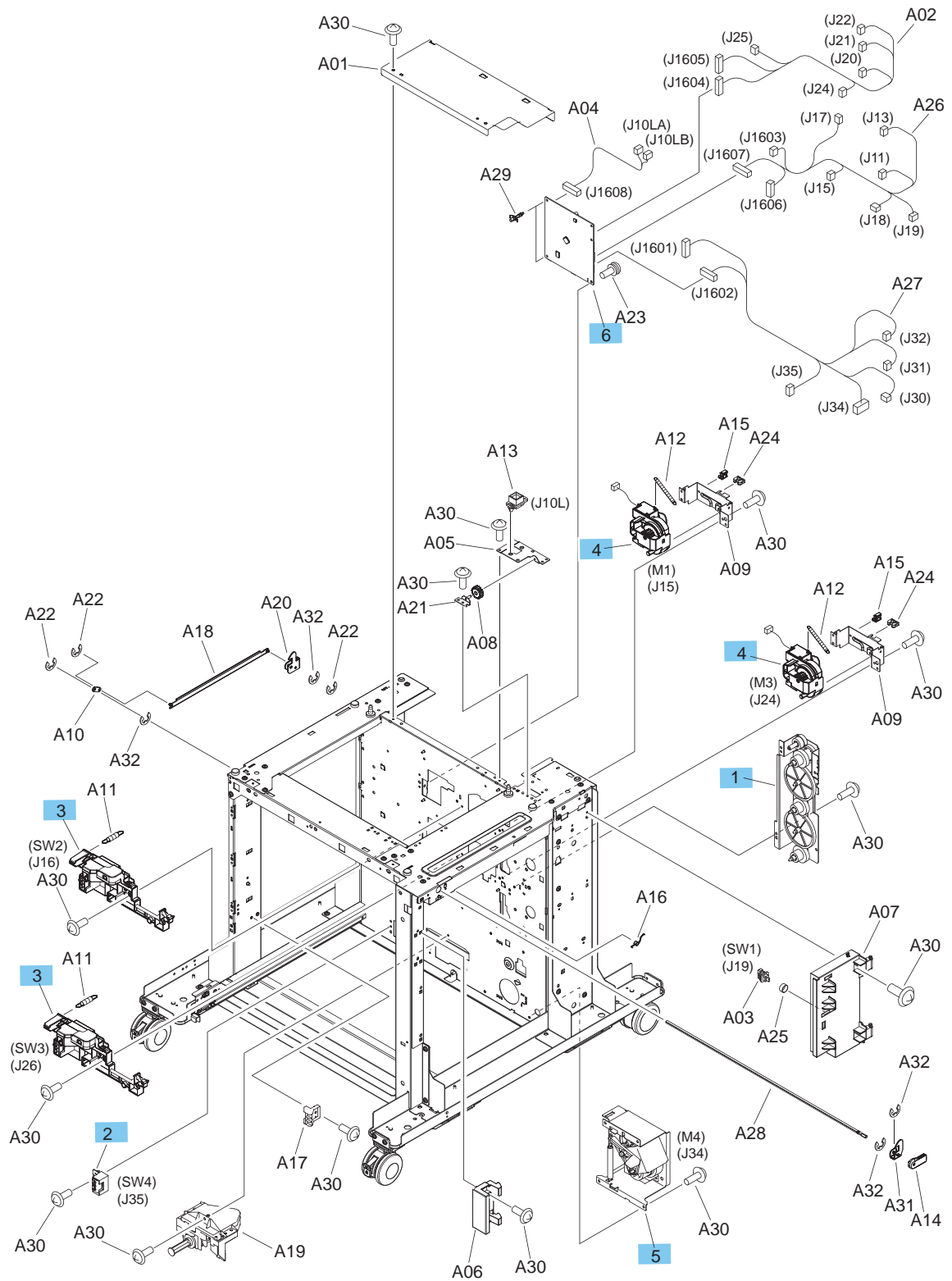


Table 2-26 2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (2 of 2)

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Assembly, paper pickup drive (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM1-5942-000CN	1
2	Assembly, tray size sensor (SW4) (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM2-0350-000CN	1
3	Assembly, lifter base (SW2, SW3) (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM1-5913-000CN	2
4	Assembly, lifter (M1, M3) (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM1-5914-000CN	2
5	Assembly, lifter drive (M4) (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM2-0346-000CN	1
6	Assembly, controller PCA (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM2-8007-000CN	1

Stapling mailbox

Stapling mailbox covers

Figure 2-21 Stapling mailbox covers

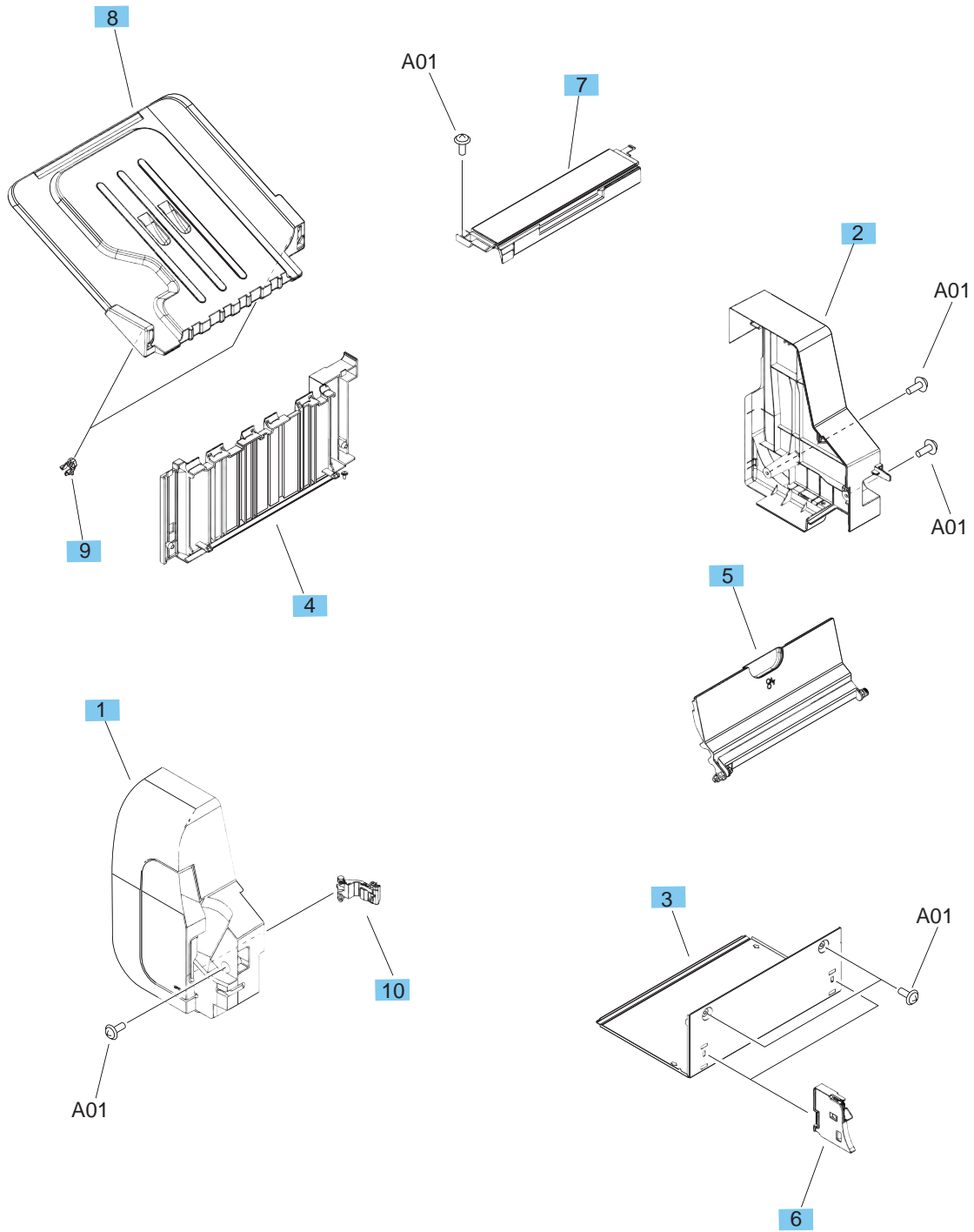


Table 2-27 Stapling mailbox covers

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Assembly, front cover (stapling mailbox)	RM2-5275-000CN	1
2	Cover, rear (stapling mailbox)	RC4-2039-000CN	1
3	Cover, bottom (stapling mailbox)	RL1-2438-000CN	1
4	Panel, stacking (stapling mailbox)	RL2-0501-000CN	1
5	Door, right (stapling mailbox)	RC4-2037-000CN	1
6	Assembly, lifter guide (stapling mailbox)	RM1-6330-000CN	2
7	Assembly, top cover (stapling mailbox)	RL2-0502-000CN	1
8	Output bin 3 (stapling mailbox)	RM2-5240-000CN	1
9	Stopper, tray (stapling mailbox)	RC2-5576-000CN	2
10	Assembly, interlock lever (stapling mailbox)	RM1-6335-000CN	1

Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2)

Figure 2-22 Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2)

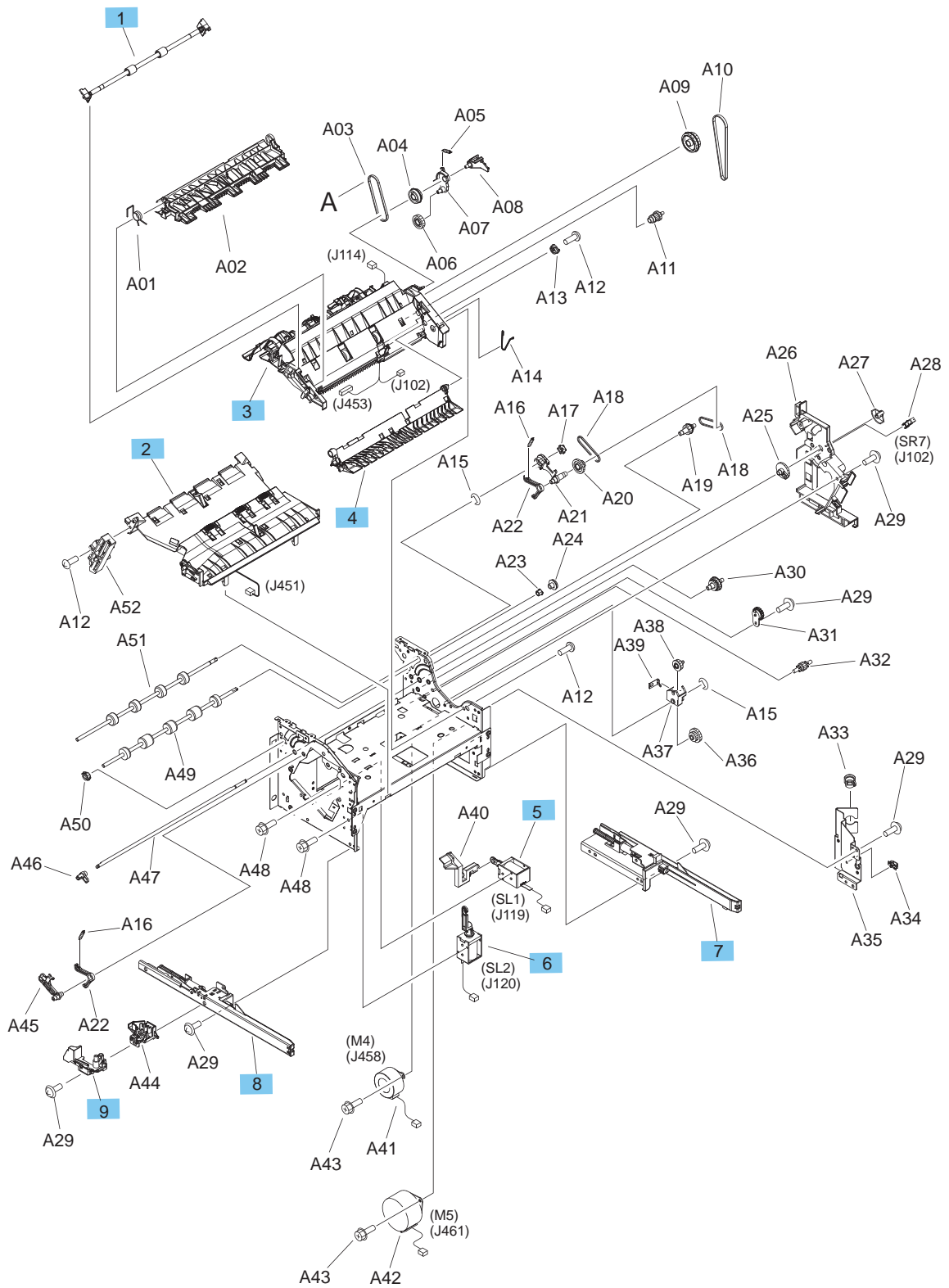


Table 2-28 Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2)

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Assembly, paper feed roller (stapling mailbox)	RM1-6332-000CN	1
2	Assembly, stage (stapling mailbox)	RM1-5159-000CN	1
3	Subassembly, stage top (stapling mailbox)	RM1-7437-010CN	1
4	Assembly, paper feed guide (stapling mailbox)	RM1-5173-000CN	1
5	Assembly, stamp solenoid (SL1) (stapling mailbox)	RM1-6664-000CN	1
6	Assembly, entrance solenoid (SL2)(stapling mailbox)	RM1-6663-000CN	1
7	Assembly, rail rear (stapling mailbox)	RM1-6327-000CN	1
8	Assembly, rail front (stapling mailbox)	RM1-6326-000CN	1
9	Assembly, interlock (stapling mailbox)	RM1-7431-000CN	1

Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2)

Figure 2-23 Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2)

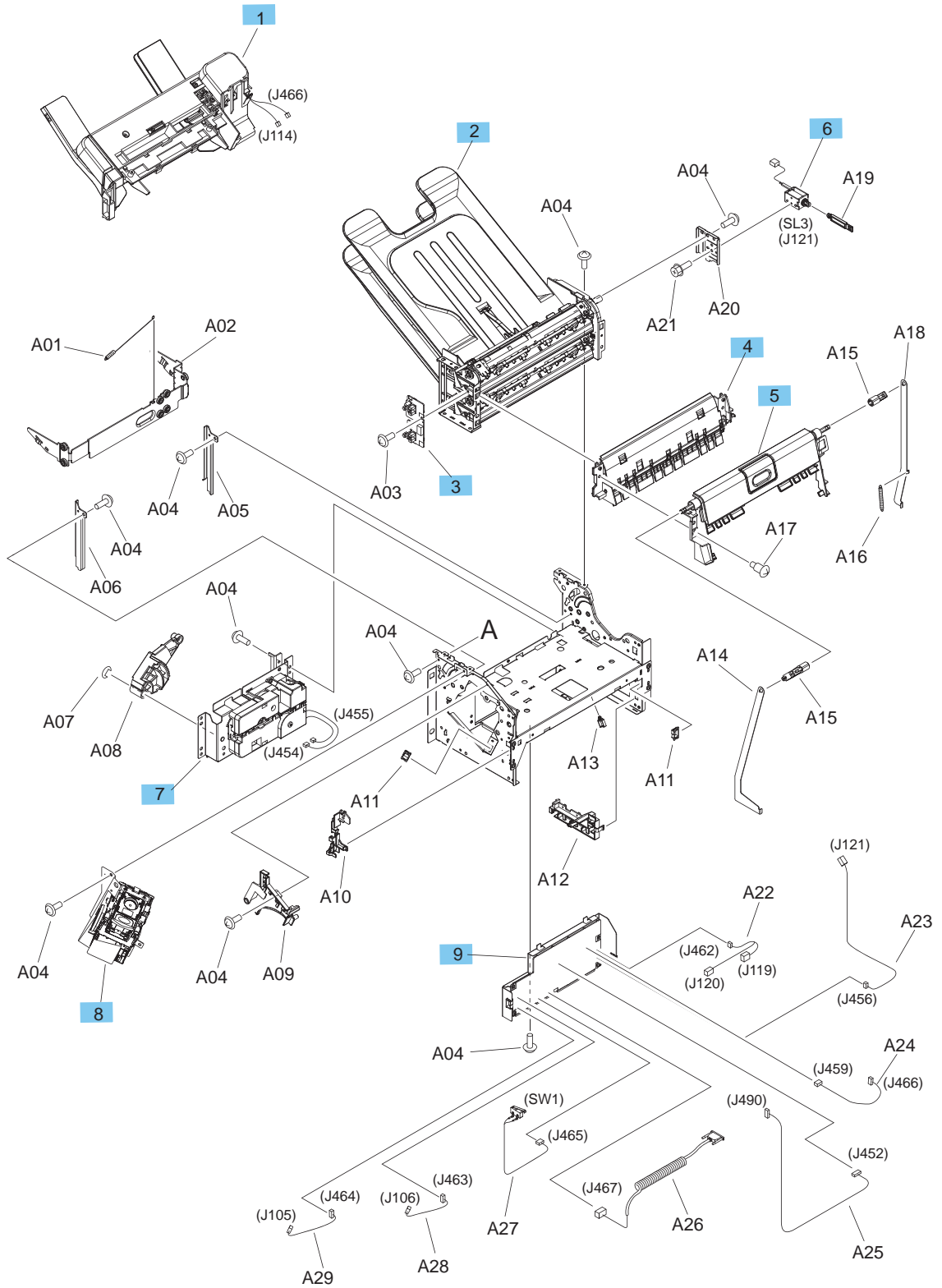


Table 2-29 Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2)

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Assembly, jog (stapling mailbox)	RM2-5235-000CN	1
2	Assembly, bin (stapling mailbox)	RM2-5242-000CN	1
3	Assembly, bin sensor PCA (stapling mailbox)	RM1-5894-000CN	1
4	Assembly, flapper (stapling mailbox)	RM1-5157-000CN	1
5	Assembly, handle	RM2-5277-000CN	1
6	Assembly, bin solenoid (SL3) (stapling mailbox)	RM1-5896-000CN	1
7	Assembly, output bin 3 drive (stapling mailbox)	RM1-5156-000CN	1
8	Assembly, stapler (stapling mailbox)	RM1-5166-000CN	1
9	Assembly, driver PCA (stapling mailbox)	RM2-5278-000CN	1

Envelope feeder

Envelope feeder covers

Figure 2-24 Envelope feeder covers

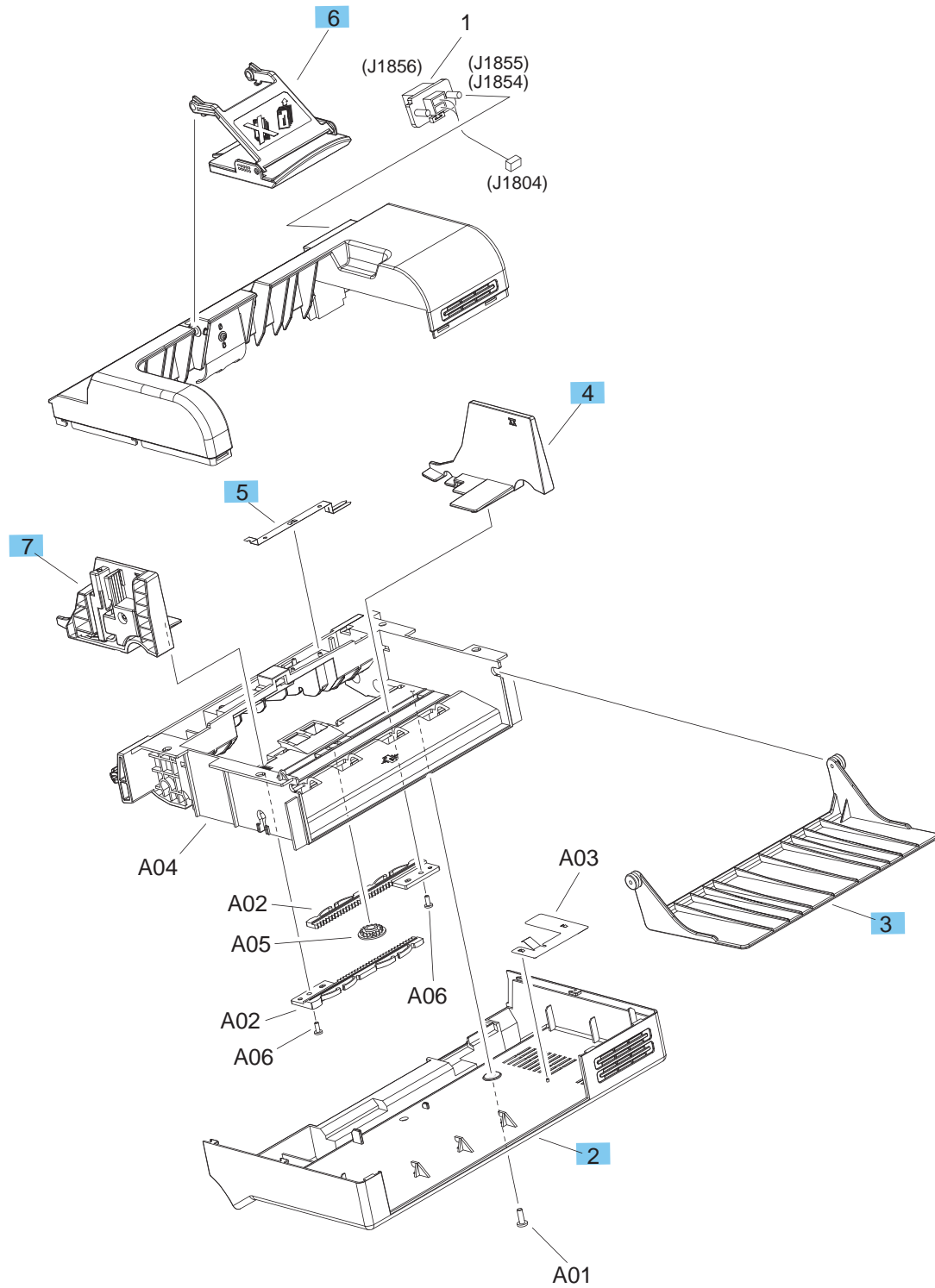


Table 2-30 Envelope feeder covers

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
2	Cover, lower (envelope feeder)	RC4-6105-000CN	1
3	Tray, extension (envelope feeder)	RC4-6106-000CN	1
4	Plate, width limit right (envelope feeder)	RC4-6107-000CN	1
5	Plate, grounding 1 (envelope feeder)	RC2-5688-000CN	1
6	Assembly, weight (envelope feeder)	RM2-6170-000CN	1
7	Assembly, paper side end (envelope feeder)	RM2-6171-000CN	1

Envelope feeder components (1 of 2)

Figure 2-25 Envelope feeder components (1 of 2)

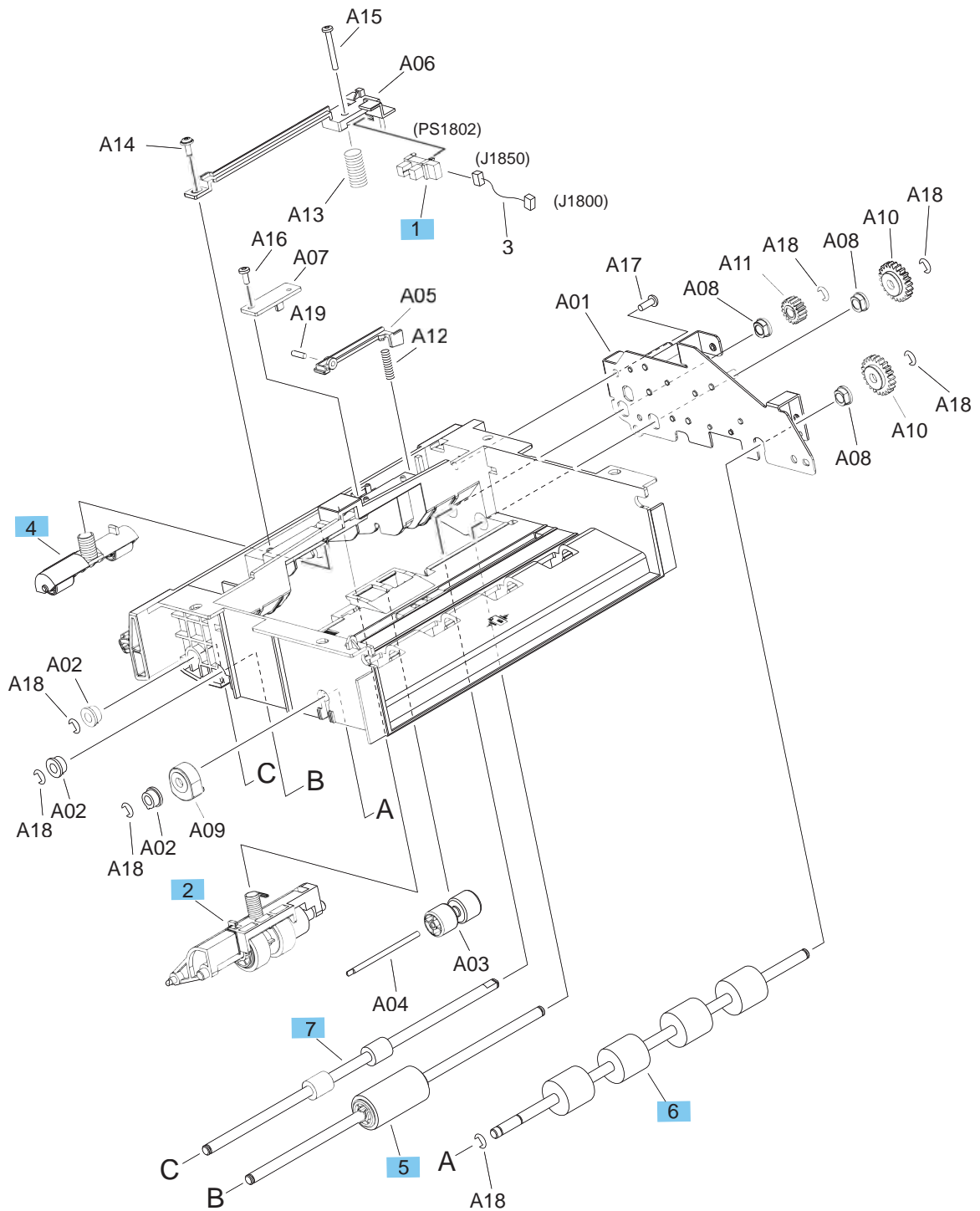


Table 2-31 Envelope feeder components (1 of 2)

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Photointerrupter (PS1802) (envelope feeder)	WG8-5624-000CN	1
2	Assembly, separation roller (envelope feeder)	RM1-5224-000CN	1
4	Assembly, paper-feed roller (envelope feeder)	RM1-5223-000CN	1
5	Assembly, paper pickup roller (envelope feeder)	RM1-5221-000CN	1
6	Roller, paper pickup (envelope feeder)	RC2-5700-000CN	1
7	Roller, paper-feed (envelope feeder)	RC2-5701-000CN	1

Envelope feeder components (2 of 2)

Figure 2-26 Envelope feeder components (2 of 2)

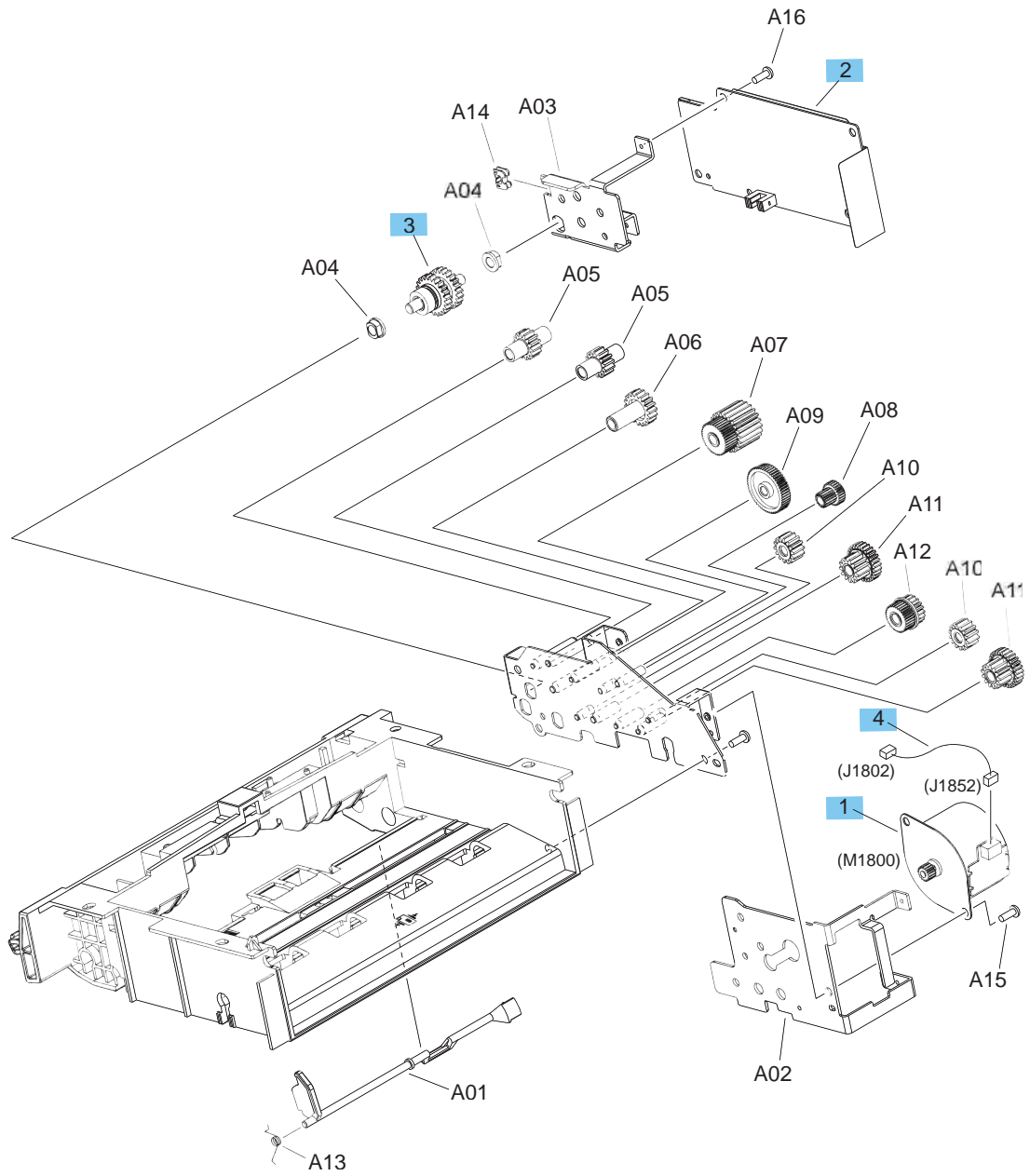


Table 2-32 Envelope feeder components (2 of 2)

Ref	Description	Part number	Qty
1	Motor, stepping DC24V (M1800) (envelope feeder)	RK2-2162-000CN	1
2	Assembly, controller PCA (envelope feeder)	RM2-8134-000CN	1
3	Assembly, joint shaft (envelope feeder)	RM1-5222-000CN	1
4	Cable, paper feed motor (envelope feeder)	RM1-5238-000CN	1

Alphabetical parts list

Table 2-33 Alphabetical parts list

Description	Part number	Table and page
Arm, door 1	RC4-5728-000CN	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
Arm, door B	RC2-7967-000CN	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
Assembly, bin (stapling mailbox)	RM2-5242-000CN	Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2) on page 823
Assembly, bin sensor PCA (stapling mailbox)	RM1-5894-000CN	Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2) on page 823
Assembly, bin solenoid (SL3) (stapling mailbox)	RM1-5896-000CN	Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2) on page 823
Assembly, cartridge sensor (PS115)	RM1-8323-000CN	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
Assembly, cartridge sensor cable	RM2-7477-000CN	Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797
Assembly, cassette (Tray 2) left rail	RM1-5932-000CN	Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797
Assembly, cassette (Tray 2) right rail	RM1-5931-000CN	Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797
Assembly, cassette (tray) (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RM2-5094-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components on page 811
Assembly, cassette (tray) (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RM2-5094-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807
Assembly, cassette (tray) (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM2-5094-000CN	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (1 of 2) on page 815
Assembly, controller PCA (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RM2-8002-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components on page 811
Assembly, controller PCA (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RM2-8002-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807
Assembly, controller PCA (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM2-8007-000CN	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (2 of 2) on page 817
Assembly, controller PCA (envelope feeder)	RM2-8134-000CN	Envelope feeder components (2 of 2) on page 829
Assembly, DC controller cable	RM2-7479-000CN	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
Assembly, DC controller cable	RM2-7481-000CN	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
Assembly, DC controller PCA	RM2-7458-000CN	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801

Table 2-33 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Assembly, door sensor cable (SW106)	RM2-7476-000CN	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
Assembly, door switch cable (SW101)	RM2-7478-000CN	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
Assembly, driver PCA (stapling mailbox)	RM2-5278-000CN	Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2) on page 823
Assembly, drum drive	RM2-5918-000CN	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
Assembly, drum motor (M102)	RM1-8358-000CN	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
Assembly, entrance solenoid (SL2)(stapling mailbox)	RM1-6663-000CN	Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2) on page 821
Assembly, environmental sensor cable	RM2-7473-000CN	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
Assembly, feed motor (M101)	RM2-5942-000CN	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
Assembly, feed motor cable	RM2-7470-000CN	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
Assembly, flapper (stapling mailbox)	RM1-5157-000CN	Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2) on page 823
Assembly, front cover (stapling mailbox)	RM2-5275-000CN	Stapling mailbox covers on page 819
Assembly, front top cover	RM2-5814-000CN	Covers on page 789
Assembly, front upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RM2-5106-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809
Assembly, front upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RM2-5106-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder covers on page 805
Assembly, front upper cover (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM2-5106-000CN	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813
Assembly, full sensor cable	RM2-7480-000CN	Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799
Assembly, fuser motor (M299)	RM1-5051-020CN	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
Assembly, grounding plate	RM1-5461-000CN	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
Assembly, handle	RM2-5277-000CN	Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2) on page 823
Assembly, Hinge HR	B4A39-60008	Document feeder components (1 of 2) on page 781
Assembly, interconnect board (ICB) PCA	RM2-5791-000CN	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
Assembly, interlock (stapling mailbox)	RM1-7431-000CN	Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2) on page 821

Table 2-33 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Assembly, interlock lever (stapling mailbox)	RM1-6335-000CN	Stapling mailbox covers on page 819
Assembly, IS power cable	RM2-7491-000CN	Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799
Assembly, jog (stapling mailbox)	RM2-5235-000CN	Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2) on page 823
Assembly, joint shaft (envelope feeder)	RM1-5222-000CN	Envelope feeder components (2 of 2) on page 829
Assembly, laser scanner cable	RM2-7482-000CN	Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797
Assembly, laser/scanner	RM1-8406-000CN	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
Assembly, lifter (M1) (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RM1-5914-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components on page 811
Assembly, lifter (M1) (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RM1-5914-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807
Assembly, lifter (M1, M3) (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM1-5914-000CN	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (2 of 2) on page 817
Assembly, lifter (M103)	RM1-5914-000CN	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
Assembly, lifter base (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RM1-5913-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components on page 811
Assembly, lifter base (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RM1-5913-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807
Assembly, lifter base (SW2, SW3) (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM1-5913-000CN	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (2 of 2) on page 817
Assembly, lifter base	RM1-5913-000CN	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
Assembly, lifter drive (M4) (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM2-0346-000CN	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (2 of 2) on page 817
Assembly, lifter guide (stapling mailbox)	RM1-6330-000CN	Stapling mailbox covers on page 819
Assembly, mounting plate	RM2-5917-000CN	Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799
Assembly, MP (Tray 1) cover	RM2-5816-000CN	Covers on page 789
Assembly, MP (Tray 1) pickup	RM2-5822-000CN	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
Assembly, option sensor cable	RM2-7484-000CN	Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799

Table 2-33 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Assembly, output bin 3 drive (stapling mailbox)	RM1-5156-000CN	Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2) on page 823
Assembly, paper delivery tray (part of output bin assembly kit)	B3G84-69702	Covers on page 789
Assembly, paper feed	RM1-4548-000CN	High-voltage power supply on page 803
Assembly, paper feed guide (stapling mailbox)	RM1-5173-000CN	Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2) on page 821
Assembly, paper feed roller (stapling mailbox)	RM1-6332-000CN	Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2) on page 821
Assembly, paper feed roller	RM1-8411-010CN	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
Assembly, paper pickup (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RM2-0341-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components on page 811
Assembly, paper pickup (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RM2-0341-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807
Assembly, paper pickup (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM2-0341-000CN	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (1 of 2) on page 815
Assembly, paper pickup drive (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RM1-5941-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components on page 811
Assembly, paper pickup drive (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RM1-5941-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807
Assembly, paper pickup drive (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM1-5942-000CN	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (2 of 2) on page 817
Assembly, paper pickup drive	RM2-5804-000CN	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
Assembly, paper pickup roller (envelope feeder)	RM1-5221-000CN	Envelope feeder components (1 of 2) on page 827
Assembly, paper pickup	RM1-5919-000CN	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
Assembly, paper side end (envelope feeder)	RM2-6171-000CN	Envelope feeder covers on page 825
Assembly, paper-feed roller (envelope feeder)	RM1-5223-000CN	Envelope feeder components (1 of 2) on page 827
Assembly, power switch	RM2-5818-000CN	Covers on page 789
Assembly, push button switch (SW104)	RM1-7374-000CN	Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799
Assembly, rail front (stapling mailbox)	RM1-6326-000CN	Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2) on page 821
Assembly, rail rear (stapling mailbox)	RM1-6327-000CN	Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2) on page 821

Table 2-33 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Assembly, registration	RM1-8413-000CN	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
Assembly, reverse fan cable	RM2-7486-000CN	Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797
Assembly, reverse guide	RM2-5810-000CN	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
Assembly, reverse joint cable	RM2-7487-000CN	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
Assembly, reverse	RM2-5799-000CN	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
Assembly, right door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RM2-5104-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809
Assembly, right door (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM2-5101-000CN	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813
Assembly, right door sensor (SW105)	RM1-1045-000CN	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
Assembly, right lower door	RM2-5820-000CN	Covers on page 789
Assembly, scanner joint cable	RM2-7471-000CN	Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797
Assembly, separation roller (envelope feeder)	RM1-5224-000CN	Envelope feeder components (1 of 2) on page 827
Assembly, side band cable	RM2-7474-000CN	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
Assembly, stage (stapling mailbox)	RM1-5159-000CN	Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2) on page 821
Assembly, stamp solenoid (SL1) (stapling mailbox)	RM1-6664-000CN	Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2) on page 821
Assembly, stapler (stapling mailbox)	RM1-5166-000CN	Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2) on page 823
Assembly, stock door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RM2-5105-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809
Assembly, temperature sensor (TH3)	RM1-7420-000CN	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
Assembly, top cover (stapling mailbox)	RL2-0502-000CN	Stapling mailbox covers on page 819
Assembly, tray (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM2-5100-000CN	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (1 of 2) on page 815
Assembly, tray base (part of output bin assembly kit)	B3G84-69702	Covers on page 789
Assembly, tray size sensor (SW4) (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RM2-0350-000CN	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (2 of 2) on page 817

Table 2-33 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Assembly, weight (envelope feeder)	RM2-6170-000CN	Envelope feeder covers on page 825
Block upper guide support, front	RC4-1530-000CN	Upper plate assembly on page 791
Block upper guide support, rear	RC4-1531-000CN	Upper plate assembly on page 791
Bushing	RC4-1569-000CN	Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799
Cable, envelope feeder	RM1-5085-000CN	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
Cable, flat	RK2-6508-000CN	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
Cable, fuser motor	RM1-7159-000CN	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
Cable, lifter motor	RM1-7162-000CN	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
Cable, P sensor solenoid	RM1-7170-000CN	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
Cable, paper feed motor (envelope feeder)	RM1-5238-000CN	Envelope feeder components (2 of 2) on page 829
Cable, SCB left	B3G84-60108	Scanner control board (SCB) on page 785
Cable, SCB right	B3G84-60107	Scanner control board (SCB) on page 785
Cable, SCB wire harness	B3G84-60109	Scanner control board (SCB) on page 785
Cable, size detect (SW102)	RM1-7179-000CN	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
Cable, USB	RK2-6506-000CN	Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799
Cassette (Tray 2)	RM2-5094-000CN	Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797
Connector, drawer	WS1-6336-000CN	High-voltage power supply on page 803
Connector, drawer 6P	VS1-7500-006CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807
Cover, bottom (stapling mailbox)	RL1-2438-000CN	Stapling mailbox covers on page 819
Cover, cassette (Tray 2) left	RC4-1573-000CN	Covers on page 789
Cover, control panel access	5042-9118	Document feeder and scanner components on page 779
Cover, document-feeder roller	CC355-40013	Document feeder components (2 of 2) on page 783

Table 2-33 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Cover, door arm	RC1-2833-000CN	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
Cover, envelope	RL1-2831-000CN	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
Cover, front left	RC4-1515-000CN	Covers on page 789
Cover, front left lower	RC4-5717-000CN	Covers on page 789
Cover, front lower (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC4-1632-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809
Cover, front lower left (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1640-000CN	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813
Cover, front lower right (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1639-000CN	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813
Cover, handle right lower	RC4-5706-000CN	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
Cover, handle, left (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RC4-1967-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder covers on page 805
Cover, handle, right (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RC4-1969-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder covers on page 805
Cover, HIP	5851-5361	Document feeder and scanner components on page 779
Cover, IS cable	RC4-1575-000CN	Covers on page 789
Cover, IS front	RL2-0996-000CN	Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799
Cover, IS left lower	RC4-5693-000CN	Covers on page 789
Cover, IS lock, front	RC4-5721-000CN	Upper plate assembly on page 791
Cover, IS lock, rear	RC4-1537-000CN	Upper plate assembly on page 791
Cover, IS right	RC4-1527-000CN	Covers on page 789
Cover, left (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC4-1959-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809
Cover, left (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RC4-1966-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder covers on page 805
Cover, left (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1959-000CN	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813
Cover, left lower (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC4-1633-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809
Cover, left lower (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1633-000CN	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813
Cover, lower (envelope feeder)	RC4-6105-000CN	Envelope feeder covers on page 825

Table 2-33 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Cover, MP (Tray 1) gear	RC4-1572-000CN	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
Cover, MP (Tray 1) inner	RC4-3948-000CN	Covers on page 789
Cover, rear (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC4-1957-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809
Cover, rear (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RC4-1970-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder covers on page 805
Cover, rear (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1957-000CN	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813
Cover, rear (stapling mailbox)	RC4-2039-000CN	Stapling mailbox covers on page 819
Cover, rear left	RC4-5692-000CN	Covers on page 789
Cover, rear lower (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC4-1958-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809
Cover, rear lower (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1958-000CN	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813
Cover, rear right	RL2-0999-000CN	Covers on page 789
Cover, rear top	RC4-1574-000CN	Covers on page 789
Cover, rear upper (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC4-1964-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809
Cover, rear upper (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1964-000CN	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813
Cover, reverse side rear	RC1-2852-000CN	Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799
Cover, right (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RC4-1968-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder covers on page 805
Cover, right center (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC4-1961-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809
Cover, right center (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1961-000CN	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813
Cover, right front (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC4-1636-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809
Cover, right front (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RC4-1638-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder covers on page 805
Cover, right front (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1637-000CN	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813
Cover, right lower (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC4-1643-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809
Cover, right lower (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1643-000CN	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813
Cover, right upper (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC4-1962-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809

Table 2-33 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Cover, right upper (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC4-1962-000CN	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813
Cover, side rear	RC4-5716-000CN	Covers on page 789
Cover, USB	5851-5360	Document feeder and scanner components on page 779
Door, right (stapling mailbox)	RC4-2037-000CN	Stapling mailbox covers on page 819
Fan (FN101)	RK2-1988-000CN	Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797
Fan (FN102)	RK2-1989-000CN	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
Fan (FN103)	RK2-1992-000CN	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
Fan (FN104)	RK2-6509-000CN	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
Fan (FN105)	RK2-0280-000CN	Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797
Fan (FN301)	RK2-3244-000CN	Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797
Gear, 15T	RU7-0294-000CN	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
Gear, 16T	RU5-0083-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807
Gear, 17T	RU7-0293-000CN	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
Gear, 23T/19T	RU7-0295-000CN	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
Gear, 33T	RU7-0292-000CN	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
Gear, 35T	RU7-0303-000CN	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
Gear, 91T/25T	RU7-0290-000CN	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
Guard, gas spring edge, rear	RC1-2886-000CN	Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799
Guide, cartridge, upper	RC4-1529-000CN	Upper plate assembly on page 791
Guide, legal	RC2-8029-000CN	Upper plate assembly on page 791
Handle, lock	RC4-5690-000CN	Upper plate assembly on page 791
High-voltage power supply 110V	RM2-5826-000CN	High-voltage power supply on page 803

Table 2-33 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
High-voltage power supply 220V	RM2-5827-000CN	High-voltage power supply on page 803
Holder, shutter, light	RC4-5707-000CN	Upper plate assembly on page 791
Kit, ADF roller maintenance (includes roller and separation pad)	L2725-60002	Document feeder components (2 of 2) on page 783
Kit, ADF separation pad spring	5851-4879	Document feeder components (2 of 2) on page 783
Kit, ADF white backing	5851-6084	Document feeder components (1 of 2) on page 781
Kit, background selector for backside scan	5851-5022	Document feeder components (2 of 2) on page 783
Kit, control panel (without keyboard)	B3G84-67908	Control panel on page 787
Kit, document feeder mylar strip	B3G86-67903	Document feeder components (2 of 2) on page 783
Kit, document feeder, complete with white backing ¹	B3G86-67901	Document feeder and scanner components on page 779
Kit, duplex assembly	B3G84-67903	Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797
Kit, front cover assembly	B3G85-67905	Covers on page 789
Kit, fuser replacement, 110V	B3M77-67903	Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797
Kit, fuser replacement, 220V	B3M78-67903	Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797
Kit, fuser-entrance guide	B3G84-67904	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
Kit, image scanner assembly, complete with white backing ²	B3G86-67905	Document feeder and scanner components on page 779
Kit, transfer roller	B3G84-67901	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
Kit, U.K. English keyboard (M630z)	5851-5008	Control panel on page 787
Kit, U.S. English keyboard (M630z)	5851-5380	Control panel on page 787
Limiters, torque	RC1-3293-000CN	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
Limiters, torque (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC1-3293-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components on page 811
Limiters, torque (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	RC1-3293-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807
Limiters, torque (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC1-3293-000CN	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (1 of 2) on page 815

Table 2-33 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Link, door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC2-6438-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809
Link, door (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC2-6438-000CN	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813
Link, handle	RC1-2822-000CN	Upper plate assembly on page 791
Low-voltage power supply, 110V	RM2-5792-000CN	Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799
Low-voltage power supply, 220V	RM2-5793-000CN	Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799
Motor, stepping DC24V (M1800) (envelope feeder)	RK2-2162-000CN	Envelope feeder components (2 of 2) on page 829
Output bin 3 (stapling mailbox)	RM2-5240-000CN	Stapling mailbox covers on page 819
Panel, logo	RL2-1000-000CN	Covers on page 789
Panel, stacking (stapling mailbox)	RL2-0501-000CN	Stapling mailbox covers on page 819
Photointerrupter (PS1802) (envelope feeder)	WG8-5624-000CN	Envelope feeder components (1 of 2) on page 827
Plate, grounding 1 (envelope feeder)	RC2-5688-000CN	Envelope feeder covers on page 825
Plate, width limit right (envelope feeder)	RC4-6107-000CN	Envelope feeder covers on page 825
Rod, link	RC4-5729-000CN	Upper plate assembly on page 791
Rod, link	RC1-2902-000CN	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
Rod, release	RC2-8086-000CN	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
Roller, delivery option 1	RC1-2892-000CN	Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799
Roller, delivery option 2	RC1-2893-000CN	Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799
Roller, paper feed/separation (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	B3G84-67905	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components on page 811
Roller, paper feed/separation (1x500-sheet paper feeder) (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	B3G84-67905	1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807
Roller, paper feed/separation (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder) (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	B3G84-67905	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (1 of 2) on page 815
Roller, paper pickup (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	B3G84-67905	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components on page 811

Table 2-33 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Roller, paper pickup (1x500-sheet paper feeder) (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	B3G84-67905	1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807
Roller, paper pickup (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder) (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	B3G84-67905	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (1 of 2) on page 815
Roller, paper pickup (envelope feeder)	RC2-5700-000CN	Envelope feeder components (1 of 2) on page 827
Roller, paper-feed (envelope feeder)	RC2-5701-000CN	Envelope feeder components (1 of 2) on page 827
Roller, Tray 1 feed (part of Tray 1 roller kit)	B3G84-67906	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
Roller, Tray 1 pickup (part of Tray 1 roller kit)	B3G84-67906	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
Roller, Tray 1 separation (part of Tray 1 roller kit)	B3G84-67906	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
Roller, Tray 2 feed (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	B3G84-67905	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
Roller, Tray 2 pickup (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	B3G84-67905	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
Scanner control board	B3G86-67904	Scanner control board (SCB) on page 785
Screw, M4x5	RC2-2633-000CN	Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797
Shaft, right door hinge	RU5-4142-000CN	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
Shroud, center	RL2-0995-000CN	Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797
Side plate, fuser drive	RL1-3024-000CN	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
Spring, compression	RU5-2265-000CN	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
Spring, tension	RU6-2475-000CN	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
Spring, torsion	RC2-8085-000CN	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
Spring, torsion	RC3-1470-000CN	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
Stopper, bushing arm	RC1-3090-000CN	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
Stopper, bushing arm	RC1-3090-000CN	Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799
Stopper, front door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	RC2-2666-000CN	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809

Table 2-33 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Stopper, front door (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	RC2-2666-000CN	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813
Stopper, tray (stapling mailbox)	RC2-5576-000CN	Stapling mailbox covers on page 819
Subassembly, stage top (stapling mailbox)	RM1-7437-010CN	Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2) on page 821
Support, lifter	RC2-6441-000CN	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
Thumbscrew, control panel	5851-0660	Control panel on page 787
Tray, extension (envelope feeder)	RC4-6106-000CN	Envelope feeder covers on page 825

Numerical parts list

Table 2-34 Numerical parts list

Part number	Description	Table and page
5042-9118	Cover, control panel access	Document feeder and scanner components on page 779
5851-0660	Thumbscrew, control panel	Control panel on page 787
5851-4879	Kit, ADF separation pad spring	Document feeder components (2 of 2) on page 783
5851-5008	Kit, U.K. English keyboard (M630z)	Control panel on page 787
5851-5022	Kit, background selector for backside scan	Document feeder components (2 of 2) on page 783
5851-5360	Cover, USB	Document feeder and scanner components on page 779
5851-5361	Cover, HIP	Document feeder and scanner components on page 779
5851-5380	Kit, U.S. English keyboard (M630z)	Control panel on page 787
5851-6084	Kit, ADF white backing	Document feeder components (1 of 2) on page 781
B3G84-60107	Cable, SCB right	Scanner control board (SCB) on page 785
B3G84-60108	Cable, SCB left	Scanner control board (SCB) on page 785
B3G84-60109	Cable, SCB wire harness	Scanner control board (SCB) on page 785
B3G84-67901	Kit, transfer roller	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
B3G84-67903	Kit, duplex assembly	Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797
B3G84-67904	Kit, fuser-entrance guide	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
B3G84-67905	Roller, Tray 2 pickup (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
B3G84-67905	Roller, Tray 2 feed (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
B3G84-67905	Roller, paper feed/separation (1x500-sheet paper feeder) (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807
B3G84-67905	Roller, paper pickup (1x500-sheet paper feeder) (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807
B3G84-67905	Roller, paper feed/separation (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components on page 811
B3G84-67905	Roller, paper pickup (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components on page 811

Table 2-34 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
B3G84-67905	Roller, paper feed/separation (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder) (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (1 of 2) on page 815
B3G84-67905	Roller, paper pickup (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder) (part of Tray 2–5 roller kit)	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (1 of 2) on page 815
B3G84-67906	Roller, Tray 1 pickup (part of Tray 1 roller kit)	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
B3G84-67906	Roller, Tray 1 separation (part of Tray 1 roller kit)	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
B3G84-67906	Roller, Tray 1 feed (part of Tray 1 roller kit)	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
B3G84-67908	Kit, control panel (without keyboard)	Control panel on page 787
B3G84-69702	Assembly, tray base (part of output bin assembly kit)	Covers on page 789
B3G84-69702	Assembly, paper delivery tray (part of output bin assembly kit)	Covers on page 789
B3G85-67905	Kit, front cover assembly	Covers on page 789
B3G86-67901	Kit, document feeder, complete with white backing ¹	Document feeder and scanner components on page 779
B3G86-67903	Kit, document feeder mylar strip	Document feeder components (2 of 2) on page 783
B3G86-67904	Scanner control board	Scanner control board (SCB) on page 785
B3G86-67905	Kit, image scanner assembly, complete with white backing ²	Document feeder and scanner components on page 779
B3M77-67903	Kit, fuser replacement, 110V	Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797
B3M78-67903	Kit, fuser replacement, 220V	Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797
B4A39-60008	Assembly, Hinge HR	Document feeder components (1 of 2) on page 781
CC355-40013	Cover, document-feeder roller	Document feeder components (2 of 2) on page 783
L2725-60002	Kit, ADF roller maintenance (includes roller and separation pad)	Document feeder components (2 of 2) on page 783
RC1-2822-000CN	Link, handle	Upper plate assembly on page 791
RC1-2833-000CN	Cover, door arm	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
RC1-2852-000CN	Cover, reverse side rear	Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799
RC1-2886-000CN	Guard, gas spring edge, rear	Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799

Table 2-34 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
RC1-2892-000CN	Roller, delivery option 1	Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799
RC1-2893-000CN	Roller, delivery option 2	Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799
RC1-2902-000CN	Rod, link	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
RC1-3090-000CN	Stopper, bushing arm	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
RC1-3090-000CN	Stopper, bushing arm	Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799
RC1-3293-000CN	Limiter, torque	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
RC1-3293-000CN	Limiter, torque (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807
RC1-3293-000CN	Limiter, torque (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components on page 811
RC1-3293-000CN	Limiter, torque (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (1 of 2) on page 815
RC2-2633-000CN	Screw, M4x5	Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797
RC2-2666-000CN	Stopper, front door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809
RC2-2666-000CN	Stopper, front door (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813
RC2-5576-000CN	Stopper, tray (stapling mailbox)	Stapling mailbox covers on page 819
RC2-5688-000CN	Plate, grounding 1 (envelope feeder)	Envelope feeder covers on page 825
RC2-5700-000CN	Roller, paper pickup (envelope feeder)	Envelope feeder components (1 of 2) on page 827
RC2-5701-000CN	Roller, paper-feed (envelope feeder)	Envelope feeder components (1 of 2) on page 827
RC2-6438-000CN	Link, door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809
RC2-6438-000CN	Link, door (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813
RC2-6441-000CN	Support, lifter	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
RC2-7967-000CN	Arm, door B	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
RC2-8029-000CN	Guide, legal	Upper plate assembly on page 791

Table 2-34 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
RC2-8085-000CN	Spring, torsion	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
RC2-8086-000CN	Rod, release	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
RC3-1470-000CN	Spring, torsion	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
RC4-1515-000CN	Cover, front left	Covers on page 789
RC4-1527-000CN	Cover, IS right	Covers on page 789
RC4-1529-000CN	Guide, cartridge, upper	Upper plate assembly on page 791
RC4-1530-000CN	Block upper guide support, front	Upper plate assembly on page 791
RC4-1531-000CN	Block upper guide support, rear	Upper plate assembly on page 791
RC4-1537-000CN	Cover, IS lock, rear	Upper plate assembly on page 791
RC4-1569-000CN	Bushing	Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799
RC4-1572-000CN	Cover, MP (Tray 1) gear	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
RC4-1573-000CN	Cover, cassette (Tray 2) left	Covers on page 789
RC4-1574-000CN	Cover, rear top	Covers on page 789
RC4-1575-000CN	Cover, IS cable	Covers on page 789
RC4-1632-000CN	Cover, front lower (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809
RC4-1633-000CN	Cover, left lower (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809
RC4-1633-000CN	Cover, left lower (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813
RC4-1636-000CN	Cover, right front (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809
RC4-1637-000CN	Cover, right front (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813
RC4-1638-000CN	Cover, right front (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	1x500-sheet paper feeder covers on page 805
RC4-1639-000CN	Cover, front lower right (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813
RC4-1640-000CN	Cover, front lower left (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813
RC4-1643-000CN	Cover, right lower (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809

Table 2-34 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
RC4-1643-000CN	Cover, right lower (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813
RC4-1957-000CN	Cover, rear (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809
RC4-1957-000CN	Cover, rear (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813
RC4-1958-000CN	Cover, rear lower (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809
RC4-1958-000CN	Cover, rear lower (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813
RC4-1959-000CN	Cover, left (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809
RC4-1959-000CN	Cover, left (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813
RC4-1961-000CN	Cover, right center (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809
RC4-1961-000CN	Cover, right center (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813
RC4-1962-000CN	Cover, right upper (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809
RC4-1962-000CN	Cover, right upper (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813
RC4-1964-000CN	Cover, rear upper (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809
RC4-1964-000CN	Cover, rear upper (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813
RC4-1966-000CN	Cover, left (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	1x500-sheet paper feeder covers on page 805
RC4-1967-000CN	Cover, handle, left (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	1x500-sheet paper feeder covers on page 805
RC4-1968-000CN	Cover, right (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	1x500-sheet paper feeder covers on page 805
RC4-1969-000CN	Cover, handle, right (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	1x500-sheet paper feeder covers on page 805
RC4-1970-000CN	Cover, rear (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	1x500-sheet paper feeder covers on page 805
RC4-2037-000CN	Door, right (stapling mailbox)	Stapling mailbox covers on page 819
RC4-2039-000CN	Cover, rear (stapling mailbox)	Stapling mailbox covers on page 819
RC4-3948-000CN	Cover, MP (Tray 1) inner	Covers on page 789
RC4-5690-000CN	Handle, lock	Upper plate assembly on page 791

Table 2-34 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
RC4-5692-000CN	Cover, rear left	Covers on page 789
RC4-5693-000CN	Cover, IS left lower	Covers on page 789
RC4-5706-000CN	Cover, handle right lower	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
RC4-5707-000CN	Holder, shutter, light	Upper plate assembly on page 791
RC4-5716-000CN	Cover, side rear	Covers on page 789
RC4-5717-000CN	Cover, front left lower	Covers on page 789
RC4-5721-000CN	Cover, IS lock, front	Upper plate assembly on page 791
RC4-5728-000CN	Arm, door 1	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
RC4-5729-000CN	Rod, link	Upper plate assembly on page 791
RC4-6105-000CN	Cover, lower (envelope feeder)	Envelope feeder covers on page 825
RC4-6106-000CN	Tray, extension (envelope feeder)	Envelope feeder covers on page 825
RC4-6107-000CN	Plate, width limit right (envelope feeder)	Envelope feeder covers on page 825
RK2-0280-000CN	Fan (FN105)	Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797
RK2-1988-000CN	Fan (FN101)	Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797
RK2-1989-000CN	Fan (FN102)	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
RK2-1992-000CN	Fan (FN103)	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
RK2-2162-000CN	Motor, stepping DC24V (M1800) (envelope feeder)	Envelope feeder components (2 of 2) on page 829
RK2-3244-000CN	Fan (FN301)	Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797
RK2-6506-000CN	Cable, USB	Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799
RK2-6508-000CN	Cable, flat	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
RK2-6509-000CN	Fan (FN104)	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
RL1-2438-000CN	Cover, bottom (stapling mailbox)	Stapling mailbox covers on page 819
RL1-2831-000CN	Cover, envelope	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793

Table 2-34 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
RL1-3024-000CN	Side plate, fuser drive	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
RL2-0501-000CN	Panel, stacking (stapling mailbox)	Stapling mailbox covers on page 819
RL2-0502-000CN	Assembly, top cover (stapling mailbox)	Stapling mailbox covers on page 819
RL2-0995-000CN	Shroud, center	Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797
RL2-0996-000CN	Cover, IS front	Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799
RL2-0999-000CN	Cover, rear right	Covers on page 789
RL2-1000-000CN	Panel, logo	Covers on page 789
RM1-1045-000CN	Assembly, right door sensor (SW105)	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
RM1-4548-000CN	Assembly, paper feed	High-voltage power supply on page 803
RM1-5051-020CN	Assembly, fuser motor (M299)	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
RM1-5085-000CN	Cable, envelope feeder	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
RM1-5156-000CN	Assembly, output bin 3 drive (stapling mailbox)	Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2) on page 823
RM1-5157-000CN	Assembly, flapper (stapling mailbox)	Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2) on page 823
RM1-5159-000CN	Assembly, stage (stapling mailbox)	Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2) on page 821
RM1-5166-000CN	Assembly, stapler (stapling mailbox)	Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2) on page 823
RM1-5173-000CN	Assembly, paper feed guide (stapling mailbox)	Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2) on page 821
RM1-5221-000CN	Assembly, paper pickup roller (envelope feeder)	Envelope feeder components (1 of 2) on page 827
RM1-5222-000CN	Assembly, joint shaft (envelope feeder)	Envelope feeder components (2 of 2) on page 829
RM1-5223-000CN	Assembly, paper-feed roller (envelope feeder)	Envelope feeder components (1 of 2) on page 827
RM1-5224-000CN	Assembly, separation roller (envelope feeder)	Envelope feeder components (1 of 2) on page 827
RM1-5238-000CN	Cable, paper feed motor (envelope feeder)	Envelope feeder components (2 of 2) on page 829
RM1-5461-000CN	Assembly, grounding plate	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793

Table 2-34 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
RM1-5894-000CN	Assembly, bin sensor PCA (stapling mailbox)	Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2) on page 823
RM1-5896-000CN	Assembly, bin solenoid (SL3) (stapling mailbox)	Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2) on page 823
RM1-5913-000CN	Assembly, lifter base	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
RM1-5913-000CN	Assembly, lifter base (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807
RM1-5913-000CN	Assembly, lifter base (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components on page 811
RM1-5913-000CN	Assembly, lifter base (SW2, SW3) (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (2 of 2) on page 817
RM1-5914-000CN	Assembly, lifter (M103)	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
RM1-5914-000CN	Assembly, lifter (M1) (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807
RM1-5914-000CN	Assembly, lifter (M1) (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components on page 811
RM1-5914-000CN	Assembly, lifter (M1, M3) (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (2 of 2) on page 817
RM1-5919-000CN	Assembly, paper pickup	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
RM1-5931-000CN	Assembly, cassette (Tray 2) right rail	Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797
RM1-5932-000CN	Assembly, cassette (Tray 2) left rail	Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797
RM1-5941-000CN	Assembly, paper pickup drive (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807
RM1-5941-000CN	Assembly, paper pickup drive (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components on page 811
RM1-5942-000CN	Assembly, paper pickup drive (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (2 of 2) on page 817
RM1-6326-000CN	Assembly, rail front (stapling mailbox)	Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2) on page 821
RM1-6327-000CN	Assembly, rail rear (stapling mailbox)	Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2) on page 821
RM1-6330-000CN	Assembly, lifter guide (stapling mailbox)	Stapling mailbox covers on page 819

Table 2-34 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
RM1-6332-000CN	Assembly, paper feed roller (stapling mailbox)	Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2) on page 821
RM1-6335-000CN	Assembly, interlock lever (stapling mailbox)	Stapling mailbox covers on page 819
RM1-6663-000CN	Assembly, entrance solenoid (SL2)(stapling mailbox)	Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2) on page 821
RM1-6664-000CN	Assembly, stamp solenoid (SL1) (stapling mailbox)	Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2) on page 821
RM1-7159-000CN	Cable, fuser motor	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
RM1-7162-000CN	Cable, lifter motor	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
RM1-7170-000CN	Cable, P sensor solenoid	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
RM1-7179-000CN	Cable, size detect (SW102)	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
RM1-7374-000CN	Assembly, push button switch (SW104)	Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799
RM1-7420-000CN	Assembly, temperature sensor (TH3)	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
RM1-7431-000CN	Assembly, interlock (stapling mailbox)	Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2) on page 821
RM1-7437-010CN	Subassembly, stage top (stapling mailbox)	Stapling mailbox components (1 of 2) on page 821
RM1-8323-000CN	Assembly, cartridge sensor (PS115)	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
RM1-8358-000CN	Assembly, drum motor (M102)	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
RM1-8406-000CN	Assembly, laser/scanner	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
RM1-8411-010CN	Assembly, paper feed roller	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
RM1-8413-000CN	Assembly, registration	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
RM2-0341-000CN	Assembly, paper pickup (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807
RM2-0341-000CN	Assembly, paper pickup (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components on page 811
RM2-0341-000CN	Assembly, paper pickup (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (1 of 2) on page 815

Table 2-34 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
RM2-0346-000CN	Assembly, lifter drive (M4) (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (2 of 2) on page 817
RM2-0350-000CN	Assembly, tray size sensor (SW4) (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (2 of 2) on page 817
RM2-5094-000CN	Cassette (Tray 2)	Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797
RM2-5094-000CN	Assembly, cassette (tray) (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807
RM2-5094-000CN	Assembly, cassette (tray) (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components on page 811
RM2-5094-000CN	Assembly, cassette (tray) (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (1 of 2) on page 815
RM2-5100-000CN	Assembly, tray (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (1 of 2) on page 815
RM2-5101-000CN	Assembly, right door (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813
RM2-5104-000CN	Assembly, right door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809
RM2-5105-000CN	Assembly, stock door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809
RM2-5106-000CN	Assembly, front upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	1x500-sheet paper feeder covers on page 805
RM2-5106-000CN	Assembly, front upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet covers on page 809
RM2-5106-000CN	Assembly, front upper cover (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder covers on page 813
RM2-5235-000CN	Assembly, jog (stapling mailbox)	Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2) on page 823
RM2-5240-000CN	Output bin 3 (stapling mailbox)	Stapling mailbox covers on page 819
RM2-5242-000CN	Assembly, bin (stapling mailbox)	Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2) on page 823
RM2-5275-000CN	Assembly, front cover (stapling mailbox)	Stapling mailbox covers on page 819
RM2-5277-000CN	Assembly, handle	Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2) on page 823
RM2-5278-000CN	Assembly, driver PCA (stapling mailbox)	Stapling mailbox components (2 of 2) on page 823
RM2-5791-000CN	Assembly, interconnect board (ICB) PCA	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801

Table 2-34 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
RM2-5792-000CN	Low-voltage power supply, 110V	Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799
RM2-5793-000CN	Low-voltage power supply, 220V	Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799
RM2-5799-000CN	Assembly, reverse	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
RM2-5804-000CN	Assembly, paper pickup drive	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
RM2-5810-000CN	Assembly, reverse guide	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
RM2-5814-000CN	Assembly, front top cover	Covers on page 789
RM2-5816-000CN	Assembly, MP (Tray 1) cover	Covers on page 789
RM2-5818-000CN	Assembly, power switch	Covers on page 789
RM2-5820-000CN	Assembly, right lower door	Covers on page 789
RM2-5822-000CN	Assembly, MP (Tray 1) pickup	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
RM2-5826-000CN	High-voltage power supply 110V	High-voltage power supply on page 803
RM2-5827-000CN	High-voltage power supply 220V	High-voltage power supply on page 803
RM2-5917-000CN	Assembly, mounting plate	Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799
RM2-5918-000CN	Assembly, drum drive	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
RM2-5942-000CN	Assembly, feed motor (M101)	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
RM2-6170-000CN	Assembly, weight (envelope feeder)	Envelope feeder covers on page 825
RM2-6171-000CN	Assembly, paper side end (envelope feeder)	Envelope feeder covers on page 825
RM2-7458-000CN	Assembly, DC controller PCA	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
RM2-7470-000CN	Assembly, feed motor cable	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
RM2-7471-000CN	Assembly, scanner joint cable	Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797
RM2-7473-000CN	Assembly, environmental sensor cable	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
RM2-7474-000CN	Assembly, side band cable	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
RM2-7476-000CN	Assembly, door sensor cable (SW106)	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801

Table 2-34 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
RM2-7477-000CN	Assembly, cartridge sensor cable	Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797
RM2-7478-000CN	Assembly, door switch cable (SW101)	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
RM2-7479-000CN	Assembly, DC controller cable	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
RM2-7480-000CN	Assembly, full sensor cable	Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799
RM2-7481-000CN	Assembly, DC controller cable	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
RM2-7482-000CN	Assembly, laser scanner cable	Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797
RM2-7484-000CN	Assembly, option sensor cable	Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799
RM2-7486-000CN	Assembly, reverse fan cable	Internal components (3 of 5) on page 797
RM2-7487-000CN	Assembly, reverse joint cable	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
RM2-7491-000CN	Assembly, IS power cable	Internal components (4 of 5) on page 799
RM2-8002-000CN	Assembly, controller PCA (1x500-sheet paper feeder)	1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807
RM2-8002-000CN	Assembly, controller PCA (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)	1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet components on page 811
RM2-8007-000CN	Assembly, controller PCA (2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder)	2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder components (2 of 2) on page 817
RM2-8134-000CN	Assembly, controller PCA (envelope feeder)	Envelope feeder components (2 of 2) on page 829
RU5-0083-000CN	Gear, 16T	1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807
RU5-2265-000CN	Spring, compression	Internal components (2 of 5) on page 795
RU5-4142-000CN	Shaft, right door hinge	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
RU6-2475-000CN	Spring, tension	Internal components (5 of 5) on page 801
RU7-0290-000CN	Gear, 91T/25T	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
RU7-0292-000CN	Gear, 33T	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
RU7-0293-000CN	Gear, 17T	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793

Table 2-34 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
RU7-0294-000CN	Gear, 15T	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
RU7-0295-000CN	Gear, 23T/19T	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
RU7-0303-000CN	Gear, 35T	Internal components (1 of 5) on page 793
VS1-7500-006CN	Connector, drawer 6P	1x500-sheet paper feeder components on page 807
WG8-5624-000CN	Photointerrupter (PS1802) (envelope feeder)	Envelope feeder components (1 of 2) on page 827
WS1-6336-000CN	Connector, drawer	High-voltage power supply on page 803

Index

Symbols/Numerics

1x500-sheet paper feeder
 components 806
 covers 804
 part number 775
 parts lists and diagrams 804
1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet
 components 810
 covers 808
 part number 775
 parts lists and diagrams 808
2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder
 components 814, 816
 covers 812
 part number 775
 parts lists and diagrams 812
2,500-sheet tray
 rollers, removing and replacing 137
500-sheet trays
 rollers, removing and replacing 137

A
accessories
 ordering 771
 part numbers 775
ADF roller maintenance kit
 part number 772
ADF separation pad spring kit
 part number 772
ADF white backing
 location 781, 839, 843
 part number 781, 839, 843
 removing and replacing 161
ADF white backing kit
 part number 772

ADF whole unit kit
 part number 774
after-service checklist 6

B
backside background selector
 location 783, 839, 843
 part number 772, 783, 839, 843
 removing and replacing 18
before-service checklist 6

C
cartridge
 ordering 772
 part numbers 772
 removing and replacing 8
cartridge fan (FN301)
 location 797, 838, 848
 part number 797, 838, 848
 removing and replacing 467
cartridge front-side fan (FN103)
 location 801, 838, 848
 part number 801, 838, 848
 removing and replacing 460
cartridge sensor assembly
 location 795, 830, 851
 part number 795, 830, 851
 removing and replacing 378
cassette
 pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder), removing 671
 Tray 3 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder), removing 712

 Tray 4 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder), removing 716
 Tray 5 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder), removing 720
cassette lifter base assembly
 location 793, 832, 850
 part number 793, 832, 850
cassette pickup assembly
 location 793, 833, 850
 part number 793, 833, 850
 removing and replacing 614
cassette-door-open detection switch (SW105)
 removing and replacing 363
cautions iii
components
 1x500-sheet paper feeder 806
 1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet 810
 2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder 814, 816
 envelope feeder 826, 828
 HCI 814, 816
 stapling mailbox 820, 822
control panel
 parts lists and diagrams 786
control panel assembly
 part number 787, 839, 844
 removing and replacing 92
control panel replacement kit
 part number 772
control-panel assembly
 location 778
controller (1x500-sheet paper feeder)
 location 807, 830, 854

- part number 807, 830, 854
- PCA (1x500-sheet paper feeder), removing 678
- controller (HCI optional paper feeder) PCA (HCI optional paper feeder), removing 731
- controller PCA (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)
 - location 811, 830, 854
 - part number 811, 830, 854
 - removing and replacing 702
- controller PCA (HCI optional paper feeder)
 - location 817, 830, 854
 - part number 817, 830, 854
 - removing and replacing 731
- conventions, document iii
- covers
 - 1x500-sheet paper feeder 804
 - 1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet 808
 - 2,500-sheet high-capacity paper feeder 812
 - envelope feeder 824
 - front upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet), removing 685
 - front upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder), removing 667
 - front upper cover (HCI optional paper feeder), removing 709
 - HCI 812
 - left cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet), removing 684
 - left cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder), removing 659
 - left cover (HCI optional paper feeder), removing 711
 - output bin and bin base assembly, removing 68
 - rear and rear lower cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet), removing 680
 - rear and rear lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder), removing 705
 - rear cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder), removing 658
 - right center cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet), removing 689
 - right center cover (HCI optional paper feeder), removing 707
 - right cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder), removing and replacing 663
 - right door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet), removing 687
 - right door (HCI optional paper feeder), removing 706
 - right front cover (HCI optional paper feeder), removing 710
 - right lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder), removing 708
 - right-door hinge cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet), removing 690
 - right-front cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet), removing 686
 - right-front cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder), removing 666
 - stapling mailbox 818
 - stock box and rails (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet), removing 682
 - stock box door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet), removing 681
- covers, base product
 - parts lists and diagrams 788
- covers, doors, and panels (product base)
 - location diagram 273
- customer self-repair kits
 - part numbers 772
- D**
- DC controller
 - location 801, 830, 853
 - part number 801, 830, 853
 - removing and replacing 391
- DC controller shield-plate assembly
 - removing and replacing 382
- DIMM
 - part number 772
 - removing and replacing 54
- document conventions iii
- document feeder (ADF)
 - location 779, 839, 844
 - part number 779, 839, 844
 - removing and replacing 201
- document feeder and scanner components
 - parts lists and diagrams 778
- document feeder components
 - parts lists and diagrams 780
- document feeder maintenance kit
 - document-feeder roller and separation pad, removing and replacing 152
- document feeder roller cover
 - removing and replacing 176
- document feeder white backing
 - location 781, 839, 843
 - part number 781, 839, 843
 - removing and replacing 161
- document-feeder hinge assembly
 - location 781, 831, 844
 - part number 781, 831, 844
 - removing and replacing 229
- document-feeder hinge cover
 - removing and replacing 358
- document-feeder mylar strip
 - location 783, 839, 844
 - part number 783, 839, 844
 - removing and replacing 170
- document-feeder roller and separation pad
 - location 782, 783, 839, 844
 - part number 783, 839, 844
 - removing and replacing 152
- document-feeder roller cover
 - location 783, 835, 844
 - part number 783, 835, 844
 - removing and replacing 176
- documentation, related
 - user guide 771
- drum motor (M102)
 - location 795, 831, 851
 - part number 795, 831, 851
 - removing and replacing 454
- duplex accessory
 - location 797, 839, 843
 - part number 797, 839, 843
 - removing and replacing 70

duplex assembly kit
part number 772

E

electrostatic discharge (ESD) 3
envelope feeder
components 826, 828
covers 824
part number 775
parts lists and diagrams 824
envelope feeder cover
removing and replacing 282
environmental sensor
location 801, 834, 851
part number 801, 834, 851
ESD electrostatic discharge (ESD) 3

F

fax PCA
part number 775
removing and replacing 61
feed motor (M101)
location 795, 831, 853
part number 795, 831, 853
removing and replacing 443
feed roller assembly
location 793, 833, 851
part number 793, 833, 851
removing and replacing 584
field-replaceable units (FRUs)
replacing 3
formatter
part number 772
removing and replacing 23
front cover
location 789, 839, 844
part number 789, 839, 844
removing and replacing 274
front cover assembly kit
part number 774
front upper cover (1x500-sheet
paper feeder with cabinet)
location 809, 831, 852
part number 809, 831, 852
removing and replacing 685
front upper cover (1x500-sheet
paper feeder)
location 805, 831, 852
part number 805, 831, 852
removing and replacing 667

front upper cover (HCI optional paper
feeder)
location 813, 831, 852
part number 813, 831, 852
removing and replacing 709
front-left cover
removing and replacing 307
front-left cover and logo cover
assembly
removing and replacing 307
FRUs (field-replaceable units)
replacing 3
fuser
location 797, 839, 844
part number (110V) 797, 839,
844
part number (220V) 797, 839,
844
removing and replacing 83
fuser entrance guide kit
part number 772
fuser motor (M299)
location 801, 831, 849
part number 801, 831, 849
removing and replacing 455
fuser service kit
part number 772
fuser-entrance guide
location 793, 839, 843
part number 793, 839, 843
removing and replacing 76

H

hard disk drive (HDD)
part number 772
removing and replacing 40
HCI
components 814, 816
covers 812
high-voltage power supply
parts lists and diagrams 802
high-voltage power supply (HVPS)
location 803, 838, 853
part number (110V) 803, 838,
853
part number (220V) 803, 839,
853
removing and replacing 521

HP Jetdirect 2700w USB wireless
print serve
part number 775
HP Jetdirect 2800w NFC/wireless
direct accessory
part number 775
HP LaserJet MFP analog fax
accessory 500
part number 775
HP LaserJet postcard media insert
tray
part number 775

I

image scanner assembly
location 779, 839, 844
part number 779, 839, 844
removing and replacing 230
image scanner cable cover
removing and replacing 283
image scanner whole unit kit
part number 774
installation 3
screws 3
See also replacing parts
interconnect board (ICB)
location 801, 831, 852
part number 801, 831, 852
removing and replacing 426
interlock switch (SW101)
location 801, 831, 854
part number 801, 831, 854
interlock switch assembly (SW101
and SW106)
removing and replacing 471
internal components, product
parts lists and diagrams 792

K

keyboard assembly (M630z)
removing and replacing 110
keyboard kit
part number 772
keyboard overlay kit
part number 772
kit
document feeder (ADF) 201
instructions right-lower door
instructions 345

- instructions, 500-sheet trays and 2,500-sheet tray 137
- instructions, backside background selector 18
- instructions, cassette-door-open detection switch (SW105) 363
- instructions, control panel assembly 92
- instructions, document feeder maintenance 152
- instructions, document feeder white backing 161
- instructions, document-feeder mylar strip 170
- instructions, duplex accessory 70
- instructions, fax PCA 61
- instructions, formatter 23
- instructions, front cover 274
- instructions, fuser 83
- instructions, fuser-entrance guide 76
- instructions, hard disk drive (HDD) and solid state memory (SSM) 40
- instructions, image scanner assembly 230
- instructions, image scanner cable cover 283
- instructions, keyboard assembly (M630z) 110
- instructions, memory DIMM 54
- instructions, output bin and bin base assembly 68
- instructions, power switch assembly 314
- instructions, rear-left cover 327
- instructions, rear-right cover 323
- instructions, rear-top cover 335
- instructions, scanner control board (SCB) 185
- instructions, scanner rear cover 182
- instructions, staple cartridge 14
- instructions, toner cartridge 8
- instructions, transfer roller 144
- instructions, Tray 1 cover 287
- instructions, tray 1 pickup, feed, and separation rollers 127

L

- laser scanner
 - warnings for servicing 3
- laser/scanner assembly
 - location 795, 832, 851
 - part number 795, 832, 851
 - removing and replacing 375
- laser/scanner fan (FN102)
 - location 801, 838, 848
 - part number 801, 838, 848
 - removing and replacing 458
- left cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)
 - location 809, 836, 847
 - part number 809, 836, 847
 - removing and replacing 684
- left cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)
 - location 805, 836, 847
 - part number 805, 836, 847
 - removing and replacing 659
- left cover (HCI optional paper feeder)
 - location 813, 836, 847
 - part number 813, 836, 847
 - removing and replacing 711
- left-rear corner cover
 - location 789, 835, 846
 - part number 789, 835, 846
- lifter assembly
 - location 801, 832, 850
 - part number 801, 832, 850
 - removing and replacing 518
- lifter assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)
 - location 811, 832, 850
 - part numbers 811, 832, 850
 - removing and replacing 700
- lifter assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)
 - location 807, 832, 850
 - part number 807, 832, 850
 - removing and replacing 676
- lifter base assembly
 - removing and replacing 516
- lifter base assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)
 - location 811, 832, 850
 - part number 811, 832, 850
 - removing and replacing 699

- lifter base assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder)
 - location 807, 832, 850
 - part number 807, 832, 850
 - removing and replacing 675
- location diagram
 - covers, doors, and panels (product base) 273
- logo cover
 - location 789, 840, 849
 - part number 789, 840, 849
 - removing and replacing 307
- low-voltage power supply (LVPS)
 - location 799, 840, 853
 - part number 799, 840, 853
 - removing and replacing 479
- low-voltage power supply fan (FN104)
 - location 801, 838, 848
 - part number 801, 838, 848
 - removing and replacing 462

M

- main fan (FN101)
 - location 797, 838, 848
 - part number 797, 838, 848
 - removing and replacing 456
- memory DIMM
 - part number 772
 - removing and replacing 54
- motors
 - pickup (1x500-sheet paper feeder), removing 669
- mylar kit
 - part number 774

N

- notes iii

O

- order parts, accessories, and supplies 771
- ordering
 - accessories 771
 - parts 771
 - supplies 771
 - toner cartridge 772
- output accessory detection switch (SW104)
 - location 799, 833, 851

part number 799, 833, 851
removing and replacing 474
output bin and bin base assembly
location 789, 834, 844
part number 789, 834, 844
removing and replacing 68
output bin assembly kit
part number 772

P

paper feeder
controller PCA, removing 678,
731
front cover, removing 667
front upper cover, removing
709
left cover, removing 659, 711
lifter assembly, removing 676
lifter base assembly, removing
675
pickup assembly, removing 671
pickup drive assembly,
removing 669
rear and rear lower cover,
removing 705
rear cover, removing 658
right center cover, removing
707
right cover, removing 663
right door, removing 706
right front cover, removing 710
right lower cover, removing 708
right-front cover, removing 666
Tray 3 lifter assembly,
removing 728
Tray 3 lifter base assembly,
removing 724
Tray 3 pickup assembly,
removing 712
Tray 4 lifter assembly,
removing 729
Tray 4 lifter base assembly,
removing 726
Tray 4 pickup assembly,
removing 716
Tray 5 lifter drive assembly,
removing 730

Tray 5 pickup assembly,
removing 720
Tray pickup drive assembly,
removing 722
paper pickup assembly
removing and replacing 614
paper pickup assembly (1x500-sheet
paper feeder with cabinet)
location 811, 833, 851
part number 811, 833, 851
paper-pickup assembly (1x500-sheet
paper feeder with cabinet)
removing and replacing 695
part numbers
accessories 775
customer self-repair kits 772
service replacement kits 774
supplies 772
toner cartridge 772
parts
ordering 771
parts lists and diagrams 769
1x500-sheet paper feeder 804
1x500-sheet paper feeder with
cabinet 808
2,500-sheet high-capacity paper
feeder 812
control panel 786
covers, base product 788
document feeder and scanner
components 778
document feeder components
780
envelope feeder 824
high-voltage power supply 802
internal components, product
792
scanner control board (SCB) 784
stapling mailbox 818
upper plate assembly 790
using 776
pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper
feeder)
location 807, 833, 851
part number 807, 833, 851
removing and replacing 671
pickup drive assembly
location 795, 833, 853
part number 795, 833, 853
removing and replacing 585

pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet
paper feeder with cabinet)
location 811, 833, 850
part number 811, 833, 850
removing and replacing 692
pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet
paper feeder)
location 807, 833, 850
part number 807, 833, 850
removing and replacing 669
pickup drive assembly (HCI optional
paper feeder)
location 817, 833, 850
part number 817, 833, 850
removing and replacing 722
pickup, feed, and separation rollers,
replacing tray 1 127
power switch assembly
location 789, 833, 853
part number 789, 833, 853
removing and replacing 314

R

rear and rear lower cover (1x500-
sheet paper feeder with cabinet)
location 809, 837, 847
part number 809, 837, 847
removing and replacing 680
rear and rear lower cover (HCI
optional paper feeder)
location 813, 837, 847
part number 813, 837, 847
removing and replacing 705
rear cover (1x500-sheet paper
feeder)
location 805, 837, 847
part number 805, 837, 847
removing and replacing 658
rear-left cover
location 789, 837, 848
part number 789, 837, 848
removing and replacing 327
rear-right cover
location 789, 837, 849
part number 789, 837, 849
removing and replacing 323
rear-top cover
location 789, 837, 846
part number 789, 837, 846
removing and replacing 335

registration assembly
 location 793, 834, 851
 part number 793, 834, 851
 removing and replacing 362

removal order
 removing order 6

removal strategy
 removing and replacing 3

removing and replacing
 500-sheet trays and 2,500-sheet tray 137

 backside background selector 18

 cartridge fan (FN301) 467

 cartridge front-side fan (FN103) 460

 cartridge sensor assembly 378

 cassette pickup assembly 614

 cassette-door-open detection switch (SW105) 363

 control panel assembly 92

 controller PCA (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 702

 controller PCA (HCI optional paper feeder) 731

 DC controller 391

 DC controller shield-plate assembly 382

 document feeder white backing 161

 document-feeder hing assembly 229

 document-feeder hinge cover 358

 document-feeder mylar strip 170

 document-feeder roller and separation pad 152

 drum motor (M102) 454

 duplex accessory 70

 envelope feeder cover 282

 fax PCA 61

 feed motor (M101) 443

 feed roller assembly 584

 formatter 23

 front cover 274

 front upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 685

 front upper cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 667

 front upper cover (HCI optional paper feeder) 709

 front-left cover 307

 front-left cover and logo cover assembly 307

 fuser 83

 fuser motor (M299) 455

 fuser-entrance guide 76

 hard disk drive (HDD) 40

 high-voltage power supply (HVPS) 521

 ifter base assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 699

 image scanner assembly 230

 image scanner cable cover 283

 interconnect board (ICB) 426

 interlock switch assembly (SW101 and SW106) 471

 keyboard assembly (M630z) 110

 laser/scanner assembly 375

 laser/scanner fan (FN102) 458

 left cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 684

 left cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 659

 left cover (HCI optional paper feeder) 711

 lifter assembly 518

 lifter assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 700

 lifter assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 676

 lifter base assembly 516

 lifter base assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 675

 logo cover 307

 low-voltage power supply (LVPS) 479

 low-voltage power supply fan (FN104) 462

 main fan (FN101) 456

 memory DIMM 54

 output accessory detection switch (SW104) 474

 output bin and bin base assembly 68

 paper-pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 695

 pickup assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 671

 pickup drive assembly 585

 pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 692

 pickup drive assembly (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 669

 pickup drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) 722

 power switch assembly 314

 rear and rear lower cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 680

 rear and rear lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder) 705

 rear cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 658

 rear-left cover 327

 rear-right cover 323

 rear-top cover 335

 registration assembly 362

 reverse assembly 371

 reverse assembly fan (FN105) 464

 reverse assembly upper guide assembly 369

 right center cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 689

 right center cover (HCI optional paper feeder) 707

 right cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 663

 right door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 687

 right door (HCI optional paper feeder) 706

 right front cover (HCI optional paper feeder) 710

 right lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder) 708

 right-door hinge cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 690

 right-front cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 686

 right-front cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 666

 right-lower door 345

 scanner rear cover 182

- side-rear cover 296
- solid state memory (SSM) 40
- staple cartridge 14
- stapling mailbox driver PCA 742
- stapling mailbox handle assembly 735
- stapling mailbox output bin 3 drive assembly 764
- stapling mailbox output bin assembly 749
- stapling mailbox output bin assembly cover 740
- stapling mailbox stage assembly 761
- stapling mailbox stage top assembly 751
- stapling mailbox stapler unit 745
- stapling mailbox, front cover 733
- stapling mailbox, jogger assembly 746
- stapling mailbox, output bin 3 738
- stapling mailbox, output bin sensor PCA 744
- stapling mailbox, output bin solenoid 747
- stapling mailbox, rear cover 734
- stapling mailbox, top cover 737
- stock box and rails (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 682
- stock box door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet) 681
- temperature sensor 380
- toner cartridge 8
- transfer roller 144
- Tray 1 cover 287
- Tray 1 pickup assembly 403
- tray 1 pickup, feed, and separation rollers 127
- Tray 3 lifter assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) 728
- Tray 3 lifter base assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) 724
- Tray 3 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) 712
- Tray 4 lifter assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) 729
- Tray 4 lifter base assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) 726
- Tray 4 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) 716
- Tray 5 lifter drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) 730
- Tray 5 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder) 720
- trays 295
- removing parts
 - after-service checklist 6
 - before-service checklist 6
 - controller PCA (1x500-sheet paper feeder) 678
 - service approach 5
 - tools, required 5
- repair approach 5
- replacing parts
 - about 3
 - after-service checklist 6
 - before-service checklist 6
 - screws 3
 - service approach 5
 - tools, required 5
- reverse assembly
 - location 795, 834, 853
 - part number 795, 834, 853
 - removing and replacing 371
- reverse assembly fan (FN105)
 - removing and replacing 464
- reverse assembly upper guide assembly
 - removing and replacing 369
- reverse fan (FN105)
 - location 797, 838, 848
 - part number 797, 838, 848
- reverse guide assembly
 - location 795, 834, 853
 - part number 795, 834, 853
- right center cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)
 - location 809, 837, 847
 - part number 809, 837, 847
 - removing and replacing 689
- right center cover (HCI optional paper feeder)
 - location 813, 837, 847
 - part number 813, 837, 847
 - removing and replacing 707
- right cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)
 - location 805, 837, 847
 - part number 805, 837, 847
 - removing and replacing 663
- right door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)
 - location 809, 834, 852
 - part number 809, 834, 852
 - removing and replacing 687
- right door (HCI optional paper feeder)
 - location 813, 834, 852
 - part number 813, 834, 852
 - removing and replacing 706
- right front cover (HCI optional paper feeder)
 - location 813, 837, 846
 - part number 813, 837, 846
 - removing and replacing 710
- right lower cover (HCI optional paper feeder)
 - location 813, 837, 847
 - part number 813, 837, 847
 - removing and replacing 708
- right-door hinge cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)
 - removing and replacing 690
- right-front cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)
 - location 809, 837, 846
 - part number 809, 837, 846
 - removing and replacing 686
- right-front cover (1x500-sheet paper feeder)
 - location 805, 837, 846
 - part number 805, 837, 846
 - removing and replacing 666
- right-lower cover
 - location 789, 834, 853
 - part number 789, 834, 853
- right-lower door
 - removing and replacing 345
- rollers
 - 2,500-sheet tray, removing and replacing 137
 - 500-sheet trays, removing and replacing 137

- transfer, removing and replacing 144
- tray 1 pickup, feed, and separation rollers, replacing 127

S

- scanner control board
 - location 785, 841, 844
 - part number 785, 841, 844
 - removing and replacing 185
- scanner control board (SCB)
 - parts lists and diagrams 784
- scanner control board (SCB) kit
 - part number 774
- scanner rear cover
 - removing and replacing 182
- SCB
 - location 785, 841, 844
 - part number 785, 841, 844
 - removing and replacing 185
- screwdrivers, required 5
- screws
 - installing 3
 - types of 5
- secondary transfer roller
 - location 793, 839, 843
 - part number 793, 839, 843
- service and support information v, 2, 770
- service approach 5
- service maintenance kit
 - part number 772
- service replacement kits
 - part numbers 774
- side-rear cover
 - removing and replacing 296
- solid state memory (SSM)
 - removing and replacing 40
- solid-state memory (SSM)
 - part number 772
- staple cartridge
 - removing and replacing 14
- staple cartridge replacement kit
 - part number 772
- staples
 - part number 772
 - removing and replacing 14
- stapling mailbox
 - components 820, 822

- covers 818
 - part number 775
 - parts lists and diagrams 818
 - removal and repair 732
- stapling mailbox driver PCA
 - location 823, 831, 852
 - part number 823, 831, 852
 - removing and replacing 742
- stapling mailbox front cover
 - location 819, 831, 852
 - part number 819, 831, 852
- stapling mailbox handle assembly
 - removing and replacing 735
- stapling mailbox jogger
 - part number 823, 832, 852
- stapling mailbox output bin 3
 - location 819, 840, 852
 - part number 819, 840, 852
- stapling mailbox output bin 3 drive assembly
 - location 823, 833, 849
 - part number 823, 833, 849
- stapling mailbox output bin assembly
 - location 823, 830, 852
 - part number 823, 830, 852
 - removing and replacing 749
- stapling mailbox output bin assembly cover
 - removing and replacing 740
- stapling mailbox output bin output bin 3 drive assembly
 - removing and replacing 764
- stapling mailbox output bin sensor PCA
 - location 823, 830, 850
 - part number 823, 830, 850
- stapling mailbox output bin solenoid
 - location 823, 830, 850
 - part number 823, 830, 850
- stapling mailbox rear cover
 - location 819, 837, 847
 - part number 819, 837, 847
 - removing and replacing 734
- stapling mailbox stage assembly
 - location 821, 834, 849
 - part number 821, 834, 849
 - removing and replacing 761
- stapling mailbox stage top assembly
 - location 821, 842, 851

- part number 821, 842, 851
- removing and replacing 751
- stapling mailbox stapler unit
 - location 823, 834, 849
 - part number 823, 834, 849
 - removing and replacing 745
- stapling mailbox top cover
 - location 819, 834, 849
 - part number 819, 834, 849
- stapling mailbox, front cover
 - removing and replacing 733
- stapling mailbox, jogger assembly
 - removing and replacing 746
- stapling mailbox, output bin 3
 - removing and replacing 738
- stapling mailbox, output bin sensor PCA
 - removing and replacing 744
- stapling mailbox, output bin solenoid
 - removing and replacing 747
- stapling mailbox, top cover
 - removing and replacing 737
- static, precautions for 3
- stock box and rails (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)
 - removing and replacing 682
- stock box door (1x500-sheet paper feeder with cabinet)
 - location 809, 834, 852
 - part number 809, 834, 852
 - removing and replacing 681
- supplies
 - ordering 771
 - part numbers 772

T

- temperature sensor
 - removing and replacing 380
- tips iii
- toner cartridge
 - ordering 772
 - part numbers 772
 - removing and replacing 8
- tools, required 5
- transfer roller
 - removing and replacing 144
- transfer roller kit
 - part number 772
- transfer roller, removing and replacing 144

- tray 1
 - pickup, feed, and separation
 - rollers, removing and replacing 127
- Tray 1 cover
 - location 789, 832, 853
 - part number 789, 832, 853
 - removing and replacing 287
- Tray 1 pickup assembly
 - location 793, 832, 853
 - part number 793, 832, 853
 - removing and replacing 403
- tray 1 pickup, feed, and separation rollers
 - location 793, 841, 844
 - part number 793, 841, 844
 - removing and replacing 127
- Tray 1 roller kit
 - part number 772
- Tray 2–5 roller kit
 - part number 772
- Tray 3 lifter assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)
 - location 817, 832, 850
 - part number 817, 832, 850
 - removing and replacing 728
- Tray 3 lifter base assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)
 - location 817, 832, 850
 - part number 817, 832, 850
 - removing and replacing 724
- Tray 3 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)
 - location 815, 833, 851
 - part number 815, 833, 851
 - removing and replacing 712
- Tray 4 lifter assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)
 - part number 817, 832, 850
 - removing and replacing 729
- Tray 4 lifter base assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)
 - location 817, 832, 850
 - part number 817, 832, 850
 - removing and replacing 726
- Tray 4 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)
 - location 815, 833, 851
 - part number 815, 833, 851
 - removing and replacing 716
- Tray 4lifter assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)
 - location 817, 832, 850
- Tray 5 lifter drive assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)
 - location 817, 832, 852
 - part number 817, 832, 852
 - removing and replacing 730
- Tray 5 pickup assembly (HCI optional paper feeder)
 - location 815, 833, 851
 - part number 815, 833, 851
 - removing and replacing 720
- trays
 - location 797, 807, 811, 815, 830, 835, 852
 - part number 797, 807, 811, 815, 830, 835, 852
 - removing and replacing 295
 - rollers, location 793, 841, 843
 - rollers, part number 793, 841, 843
 - rollers, removing and replacing 137
- troubleshooting
 - service approach 5

U

- upper plate assembly
 - parts lists and diagrams 790

W

- warnings iii

